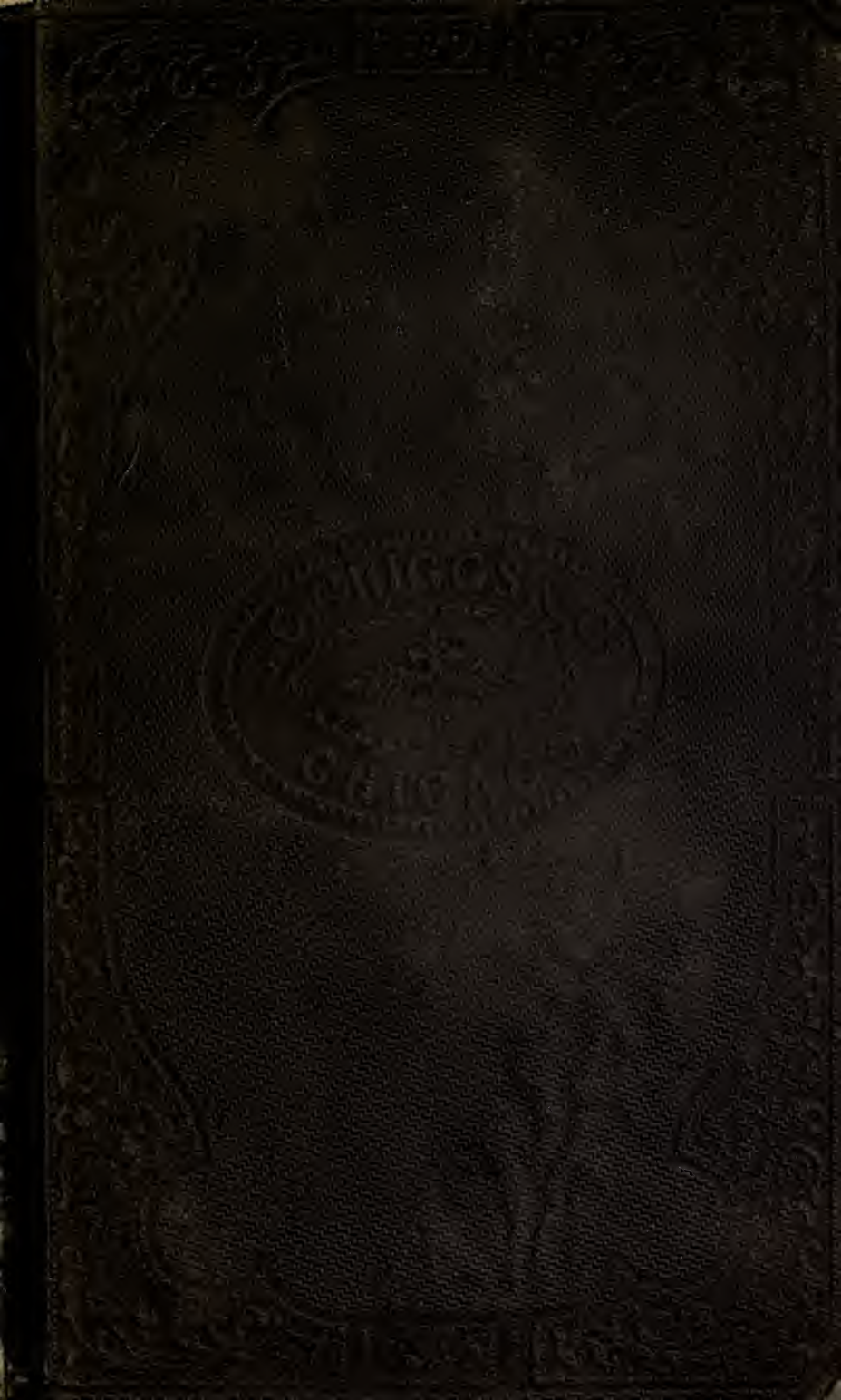
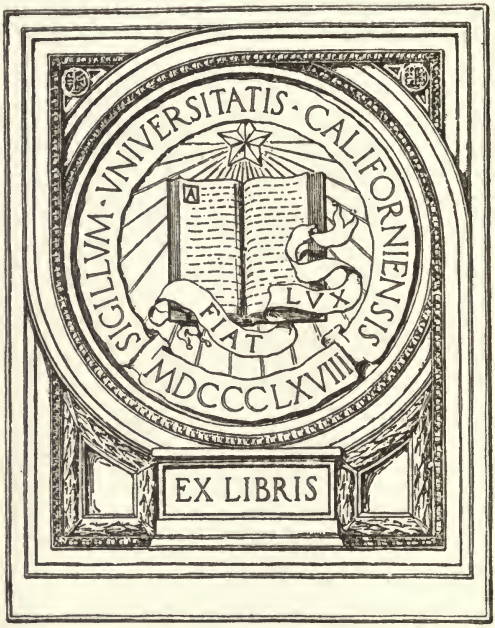




SIGILLVM · VNIVERSITATIS · CALIFORNIENSIS
FIAT LVX
MDCCCLXVIII
EX LIBRIS
BANCROFT LIBRARY

AMERICAN HISTORY:

COMPRISING

HISTORICAL SKETCHES OF THE INDIAN TRIBES;

A DESCRIPTION OF

AMERICAN ANTIQUITIES,

WITH AN INQUIRY INTO THEIR ORIGIN AND THE ORIGIN OF THE INDIAN TRIBES;

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES,

WITH APPENDICES SHOWING ITS CONNECTION WITH EUROPEAN HISTORY;

HISTORY OF THE PRESENT BRITISH PROVINCES;

HISTORY OF MEXICO;

AND HISTORY OF TEXAS.

BROUGHT DOWN TO THE TIME OF ITS ADMISSION INTO THE AMERICAN UNION.

BY MARCIUS WILLSON, 1813—1905

AUTHOR OF SCHOOL HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES, COMPREHENSIVE CHART OF AMERICAN HISTORY, ETC.

CHICAGO:
PUBLISHED BY S. C. GRIGGS & CO.,
111 LAKE STREET.
NEW YORK: IVISON & PHINNEY.

1855.

E178
.W7
1855
.X

ENTERED, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1846, by
MARCIUS WILLSON,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States, for the
Northern District of New York.

STERROTYPED BY THOMAS B. SMITH
216 WILLIAM STREET, NEW YORK

11435B
Bancroft Library

INTRODUCTION.

THE design of the following work is to present the histories of all those countries of North America that are now of sufficient political importance to demand the attention of the scholar, and awaken the interest of the general reader. As an appropriate introduction to such a work, we have given the most important, of what little is known, of the history of the Aborigines of America, together with descriptive sketches of those rude memorials of a former civilization that were once so numerous throughout our own territory; and of others, magnificent even in their desolation, which now strew the plains, and crown the hill-tops, of Mexico, Yucatan, and Central America. The probable origin of these antiquities, and of the Indian tribes, has long been a subject of the antiquarian researches of the learned.

Of the histories of the several political divisions of North America, that of our own country claims our first attention, and to it we have given an appropriate space in the present work, commensurate with its importance. Its relations with European history, and with the history of England in particular, have been dwelt upon in the several appendices, at considerable length. To the article explanatory of the character and design of those appendices, see page 107, the reader is referred for our farther views on this subject.

The third part of the volume, or, as it is called, Book III., gives the history of the present British Provinces in North America, from their earliest settlement to the present period—both under the French and under the English dominion;—the early history of Louisiana, previous to the purchase of that territory by the United States in 1803;—the history of Mexico, from the conquest by Cortez, to the commencement of the war with the United States in 1846;—and the history of Texas, from its first settlement, to the time of its admission into the American Union.

In relation to other features in the PLAN of the work, farther than the general divisions to which we have referred, a few remarks may not be inappropriate.—It is a fact, not universally known, that all the French writers on Canadian history—the writers upon Mexican history—and generally, all Catholic writers, give dates according to the New, or Gregorian Style, subsequent to the year 1582; while cotemporary English writers of American and European history retain the Old Style so late as the year 1751.* Hence discrepancies in dates, almost innumerable, are found in the works of those compilers who have either been ignorant of this fact, or have disregarded it. In the following work the author has endeavored to give the dates, *uniformly*, in New Style.

A minute MARGINAL ANALYSIS has been carried throughout the entire work—each subject being opposite that portion of the text to which it refers, and num-

* See this subject examined in a "Critical Review of American Histories," by the author of this work, published in the Biblical Repository of July, 1845.

bered to correspond with similar divisions of the text. The design of this arrangement is to give the work a better adaptation to the purposes of instruction—being better than questions for advanced pupils; while the teacher may easily convert each subject, or head, in the analysis, into a question if thought desirable. It is believed that this feature in the *plan* of the work will also prove highly acceptable to the general reader.

The marginal DATES and REFERENCES are numerous, carrying along a minute chronology with the history. This plan avoids the necessity of encumbering the text with dates, and at the same time furnishes, to the inquiring reader, a history far more minute and circumstantial than could otherwise be embraced in a volume much larger than the present. The supposed utility of the Chart, (pages 16 and 17,) may be learned from the explanation of the same on page 18.

The PROGRESSIVE SERIES of the three LARGE MAPS, on pages 20, 432, and 502, shows the state of the country embraced in the present United States at different periods. The *First* represents it as occupied by the Indian tribes, fifty years after the settlement of Jamestown, when only a few bright spots of civilization relieved the darkness of the picture. The *Second* as it was at the close of the Revolution, when almost the entire region west of the Alleghanies was a wilderness—showing how slowly settlements had advanced during the long period that the colonies were under the dominion of Great Britain. The *Third* represents the country as it now is, and as it has become under the influence of republican institutions. In place of the recent wilderness, we observe a confederacy of many states, each with its numerous cities, towns, and villages, denoting the existence of a great and happy people.

The GEOGRAPHICAL AND HISTORICAL NOTES and SMALL MAPS, at the bottoms of the pages, give the localities of all important places mentioned, and furnish that kind of geographical information respecting them, without which the history can be read with little interest or profit. Maps of important sections of the country, the vicinities of large towns, plans of battle grounds and sieges, &c., are here given on the same pages with the events referring to them, where they necessarily catch the eye of the reader, so that they can hardly fail to arrest his attention, and increase the interest that he feels in the history. The map of Mexico, page 558, has been drawn with care, and being little more than an outline of the political divisions of that extensive country, is probably sufficiently accurate. Our knowledge of the geography of Mexico, however, is yet exceedingly imperfect, and little reliance can be placed upon maps for the *distances* between places. The map of Texas, page 620, and the several small maps of particular sections of that country, will be found a great aid to the reader in perusing the history of that portion of our Republic. In addition to what are properly "embellishments," nearly ninety maps and charts, large and small, have been introduced, seven of which occupy entire pages; and nearly six hundred localities, mentioned in the history, have been described in the geographical notes. And unless the reader has as much knowledge of these localities as can be derived from the notes and maps, his knowledge of the history will be exceedingly vague and unsatisfactory. For if the names of places mentioned in history convey to our minds no meaning, they might as well be omitted entirely, and fictitious names would answer equally well. A familiarity with localities is indispensable to the ready acquisition, and the subsequent retention, of historical knowledge.

CONTENTS AND PLAN OF THE WORK.

BOOK I.

NDIAN TRIBES OF NORTH AMERICA, AND AMERICAN ANTIQUITIES.

CHAPTER I.

INDIAN TRIBES OF NORTH AMERICA.

SECTION I NORTHERN TRIBES. Esquimaux and Athapascas.—Jurisdiction over their territory. Tribes in the interior and on the coast.

SECTION II. ALGONQUIN TRIBES. Montagnars.—Algonquins.—Knisteneaux.—Ottawas.—*Pontiac.*—Mississaguies.—Micmacs.—Etchemins.—Abenakes.—New England Indians, (Massachusetts, Pawtuckets, Nipmucks, Pokanokets, and Narragansetts.) *Massasoit.—Caunbitant.—Canonicus.—Miantonomoh.—Ninigret.—Sassamon.—Philip.—Canonchet.—Annawon.* Mohegan Tribes, (Pequods, Montauks, Manhattans, Wabingas, &c.) *Uncas.—Sassacus.*—Lenni Lenapes, (Minsi and Delawares,)—*White Eyes.—Captain Pipe.*—Nanticokes.—Susquehannocks.—Mannahoacks.—Powhatan tribes.—*Powhatan.—Pocahontas.*—Shawnees.—*Cornstalk.—Tecumseh.*—Miamis and Pinckishaws.—*Little Turtle.*—Illinois.—Kickapoos.—Sacs and Foxes.—*Black Hawk.*—Potowatomies.—Menonomies.

SECTION III. IROQUOIS TRIBES. Hurons, (Wyandots, Neutrals, Erigas, Andastes,)—*Adario.*—Five Nations, (Mohawks, Oneidas, Onondagas, Cayugas, and Senecas.) *Garangula.—Hendrick.—Logan.—Thayendanega.—Shenandoa.—Red Jacket.—Farmer's Brother.—Corn Planter.—Half Town.—Big Tree.*—Tuscaroras.

SECTION IV. Catawbas.—Cherokees.—*Sequoyah.—Speckled Snake.*—Uchees.—Natches.

SECTION V. MOBILIAN TRIBES. Muscogees or Creeks, (Seminoles, Yamassees, &c.)—*McGillivray.—Weatherford.—McIntosh.—Osceola.*—Chickasas.—*Moncatchtape.*—Choctas.—*Mushalatubee.—Pushamata.*

SECTION VI. DAHCOTAH OR SIOUX TRIBES. Winnebagoes.—Assiniboins, and Sioux Proper.—Minetaree Group, (Minetarees, Mandans, and Crows.)—Southern Sioux Tribes, (Arkansas, Osages, Kanzas, Iowas, Missouries, Otoes, and Omahas.)—Other Western Tribes, (Black Feet, Rapids, and Pawnees.)—*Petalesharoo.*—Oregon Tribes.

SECTION VII. Physical Character, Language, Government, Religion, and Traditions of the Aborigines. - - - - - - - - - - - - Pages, 21—62

CHAPTER II.

AMERICAN ANTIQUITIES.

SECTION I. ANTIQUITIES FOUND IN THE UNITED STATES. Ornaments.—Warlike instruments Domestic utensils.—Earthen ware.—Pitcher found at Nashville.—Triune vessel.—Idols.—Medals.—Mirrors.—Mural remains, &c., found at Marietta.—At Circleville.—Near Newark. Near Somerset.—Near Chilicothe.—At the mouth of the Sciota R.—In Missouri, &c.—Mounds in various places.

SECTION II. ANTIQUITIES FOUND IN OTHER PORTIONS OF THE CONTINENT. Mexican Pyramids, Ruins, &c.—Ruins of Palenque.—Of Copan.—Of Chichen.—Of Uxmal.—Of Labna and Kewick. - - - - - - - - - - - - - - Pages, 62—87.

CHAPTER III.

SUPPOSED ORIGIN OF THE ANTIQUITIES, AND OF THE INDIAN TRIBES.

The Mural Remains, Mounds, &c., found in the United States; and the ruined edifices of Mexico, Yucatan, Central America, &c., attributed to the Aborigines.—Evidences of a Common Origin of all the American Tribes.—The subject of the acquaintance of the Ancients with America examined.—Probable Asiatic Origin of all the American Tribes.—Conclusion—Early American civilization.—Reason and Nature *versus* Revelation. - - Pages, 87—95.

BOOK II.

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

INTRODUCTORY.

I. The Public Seals or Coats of Arms of the several United States.—Engraved copies, and descriptions of the same. II. Character and design of the several Appendices to the History of the United States III. Geography of the United States. - - - Pages, 97—110

PART I.

VOYAGES AND DISCOVERIES.

CHAPTER I.

VOYAGES, CONQUESTS, AND DISCOVERIES, IN THE SOUTHERN PORTIONS OF NORTH AMERICA.

DIVISIONS. I. DISCOVERY OF AMERICA BY COLUMBUS. Other claims to the Discovery.—Icelandic Claim.—Superior merit of the claims of Columbus.—Long a prevalent error respecting the Discovery.—Extent of the discoveries of Columbus.—The West Indies.—Yucatan. Discovery of the Pacific.—II. JUAN PONCE DE LEON. Tradition of the Fountain of Life Discovery of Florida by De Leon.—III. DE AYLLON. Discovery of Carolina.—Hospitality of the Natives, and Perfidy of the Spaniards.—IV. CONQUEST OF MEXICO. Yucatan explored.—Discovery of Mexico.—Invasion by Cortez.—Final conquest of the Country.—Magellan —First circumnavigation of the Globe.—V. PAMPHILIO DE NARVAEZ. His invasion of Florida.—VI. FERDINAND DE SOTO. His landing in Florida.—Wanderings of the Spaniards.—Battles with the Natives.—Death of De Soto.—Fate of his Companions. Pages, 111—125

CHAPTER II.

NORTHERN AND EASTERN COASTS OF NORTH AMERICA.

DIVISIONS. I. JOHN AND SEBASTIAN CABOT. Their first voyage to America and discovery of Labrador and Newfoundland.—Second voyage of Sebastian.—His subsequent Voyages II. GASPAR CORTEREAL. His voyages.—III. VERRAZANI. Explores the coast from Wilmington, N. C. to Newfoundland.—Names the country *New France*.—IV. JAMES CARTIER. His voyages to America.—Explores the St. Lawrence.—V. ROBERVAL. Appointed Viceroy of New France.—Sends Cartier on his third voyage.—The two voyages of Roberval.—VI. VOYAGES OF RIBAULT, LAUDONNIERE, AND MELENDEZ.—Founding of St. Augustine.—VII. GILBERT, RALEIGH, AND GRENVILLE. Amidas and Barlow.—Attempted settlements at Roanoke.—VIII. MARQUIS DE LA ROCHE. Attempts to form a Settlement.—IX. BARTHOLOMEW GOSNOLD. Attempted settlement at Martha's Vineyard.—Martin Pring.—X. DE MONTS. Extensive grant to him.—Founding of Port Royal.—Champlain sent to New France.—Founding of Quebec.—XI. NORTH AND SOUTH VIRGINIA. Plymouth and London Companies.—Attempted settlement at Kennebec.—Settlement of Jamestown.— Pages, 125—138.

APPENDIX TO THE PERIOD OF VOYAGES AND DISCOVERIES.

Importance of examining English History in connection with our own.—Henry the Seventh. English claims to American territory.—Cabot.—Early relations of England with America.—Character of Henry the Seventh.—State of England at this Period.—Political policy of Henry and its Effects.—Feudal System.—Power of the Barons.—The Clergy, Religious Sanctuaries, &c.—Morals, Criminal Statistics, &c.—Attempts to regulate Commerce, Agriculture, Manufactures, &c.—Usury —Monopolies.—Army and Navy of England.—Population —Judicial Tribunals.—Arbitrary Powers of the Tudor Princes.—Liberties of the People.—Mode of Living. Buildings.—Domestic Economy, &c.—Indebtedness of America to Europe.—The AFRICAN SLAVE TRADE. History of the origin of the English branch of it. The REFORMATION. Luther. Zuinglius.—Spread of Protestantism.—The Reformation in England, as connected with English Literature.—Connection of Henry the Eighth with the Reformation.—The Reformation completed under Edward the Sixth.—Intolerance of the Reformers.—Papacy reestablished under Queen Mary.—Persecution of the Reformers.—Supremacy of the Royal Prerogative at this period. Elizabeth.—Protestantism restored.—Growing opposition to Episcopacy.—The Scottish Clergy The Two Parties among the Reformers.—The PURITAN Party. Its Character.—Political aspect of the controversy.—The Puritans in Parliament.—The Brownists.—Treatment of the Puritans under Elizabeth.—Under James the First.—Emigration of the Puritans.—The Puritans in Holland. Political principles of the Puritans.—The *Compact* entered into by them at Plymouth.—Indebtedness of England to the Puritans.—Their Intolerance.—Object in Emigrating.—The Quakers.—Conclusion. - - - - - - - - - Pages, 138—161.

PART II.

EARLY SETTLEMENTS AND COLONIAL HISTORY.

CHAPTER I.

COLONIAL HISTORY OF VIRGINIA.

DIVISIONS.—I. VIRGINIA UNDER THE FIRST CHARTER. Government.—Dissensions.—Character of the Emigrants.—The Natives.—Sufferings of the Colony.—Conspiracy.—Government of Smith.—Smith taken Prisoner by the Indians.—His life saved by Pocahontas.—Condition of the Colony.—Exploration of the Country by Smith.—II. VIRGINIA UNDER THE SECOND CHARTER. Changes in the Government.—Shipwreck of Emigrants.—Smith's Administration.—His Return to England.—The "Starving Time."—Lord Delaware.—Sir Thomas Dale. Sir Thomas Gates.—III. VIRGINIA UNDER THE THIRD CHARTER. Changes in the Government.—Pocahontas.—Argall's Expeditions.—Sir Thomas Dale's Administration.—Argall's. Yeardley's.—House of Burgesses.—Slavery.—Transportation of Females to Virginia. Written Constitution.—Indian Conspiracy and Massacre.—Dissolution of the London Company.—Royal Government.—IV. VIRGINIA FROM THE DISSOLUTION OF THE LONDON COMPANY TO THE COMMENCEMENT OF THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.—The new Government of the Colony.—Administration of Harvey.—Of Berkeley.—Second Indian Massacre and War.—Virginia during the Civil War in England.—During the Commonwealth.—After the Restoration of Charles II.—Commercial Restrictions.—Liberties of the People Abridged. Indian War.—Bacon's Rebellion.—Cruelty of Berkeley.—Proprietary Government.—Royal Government Restored. - - - - - - - - - - Pages, 161—178.

CHAPTER II.

COLONIAL HISTORY OF MASSACHUSETTS.

SECTION I. MASSACHUSETTS, FROM ITS EARLIEST HISTORY, TO THE UNION OF THE NEW ENGLAND COLONIES IN 1643.—I. *Early History.* Exploration of the Country.—Smith's attempts to establish a Colony.—The Plymouth Company, and the Council of Plymouth.—Charter of the Latter.—II. *Plymouth Company.* The Puritans.—Emigration to America.—Sufferings. Samoset.—Massasoit.—Canonicus.—Weston's Colony.—The London partners of the Puritans.—III. *Massachusetts Bay Colony.* Attempted Settlement at Cape Ann.—Settlement of Salem.—Government.—Changes in 1634.—Roger Williams.—Peters and Vane.—Emigration to the Connecticut.—Mrs. Hutchinson.—Pequod War.—Attempts in England to prevent Emigration.—Education.—IV. *Union of the New England Colonies.* Causes that led to it.—Terms of the Confederacy. V. *Early Laws and Customs.*

SECTION II. MASSACHUSETTS FROM THE UNION OF THE NEW ENGLAND COLONIES TO THE CLOSE OF KING WILLIAM'S WAR IN 1697.—I. *Events from the Union to King Philip's War.*—Massachusetts during the Civil War in England.—During the Commonwealth.—Early History of Maine.—Persecution of Quakers.—Restrictions upon Commerce.—Royal Commissioners.—II. *King Philip's War.* Causes of the War.—Attack upon Swanzey.—The Narragansetts.—Events at Tiverton.—Brookfield.—Deerfield.—Hadley.—Bloody Brook.—Springfield.—Hatfield.—Attack upon the Narragansett Fortress.—Death of Philip.—III. *Controversies and Royal Tyranny.* Andros.—IV. *Massachusetts during King William's War.* Causes of the War.—Inroads of French and Indians.—Expedition against Canada. New Charter, and Royal Government.—Salem Witchcraft.—Concluding Events of the War.

SECTION III. MASSACHUSETTS FROM THE CLOSE OF KING WILLIAM'S WAR, TO THE COMMENCEMENT OF THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR IN 1754.—I. *Massachusetts during Queen Anne's War.* Causes of the War.—Indian Attack on Deerfield.—Conquest of Acadia.—Attempted Conquest of Canada.—Treaty of Utrecht.—II. *King George's War.* Causes that led to it.—Expedition against, and Conquest of Louisburg.—Treaty of Aix La Chapelle. Pages, 178—205.

CHAPTER III.

COLONIAL HISTORY OF NEW HAMPSHIRE.

History of New Hampshire intimately connected with that of Massachusetts.—Grant to Gorges and Mason.—First Settlements.—Union with Massachusetts.—Separation.—First Legislature.—Union.—Separation.—Union again.—Masonian Controversy.—Final Separation from Massachusetts.—Indian Wars. - - - - - - - - - Pages, 205—208.

CHAPTER IV.

COLONIAL HISTORY OF CONNECTICUT.

DIVISIONS. -I. *Early Settlements.*—Windsor, Hartford, Wethersfield, and Saybrook.—II. *Pequod War.* Alliance of the Pequods and Narragansetts.—Destruction of the Pequod Fort, and Dispersion of the Tribe.—III. *New Haven Colony.* Settlement of New Haven.—Government.—IV. *Connecticut under her own Constitution.* The Connecticut Towns withdrawn from the Jurisdiction of Massachusetts.—The Constitution adopted by Them.—Purchase of Saybrook.—V. *Connecticut under the Royal Charter.* Liberality of the Charter.—Connecticut during King Philip's War.—Andros in Connecticut.—Events during King William's War.—Fletcher's Visit to Hartford.—Yale College.—Laws, Manners, Customs, &c Pages 208—215

CHAPTER V.

COLONIAL HISTORY OF RHODE ISLAND.

Roger Williams.—Founding of Providence.—Religious Toleration.—Mr. Williams's Mediation with the Pequods and Narragansetts.—Providence during the Pequod War.—Portsmouth and Newport.—Charter from Parliament.—Government and Early Laws of Rhode Island.—Charter from the King.—Andros. - - - - - - - - - - Pages, 215—218.

CHAPTER VI.

COLONIAL HISTORY OF NEW YORK.

SECTION I.—NEW NETHERLANDS, previous to its Conquest by the English in 1664. Voyages of Henry Hudson.—Dutch settlements at New York and Albany.—Dutch.—New Jersey.—"Charter of Liberties."—Colony of De Vriez in Delaware.—The Dutch in Connecticut. On Long Island.—Swedish Settlements in Delaware.—Indian Wars.—Kieft.—Stuyvesant. Subjugation of the Swedish Colony by the Dutch. Conquest of New Netherlands by the English.

SECTION II. NEW YORK, from the Conquest of New Netherlands, to the Commencement of the French and Indian War.—Administration of Nichols.—Of Lovelace.—Reconquest of the Country by the Dutch.—Restoration to England.—Administration of Andros.—Of Dongan.—The French and the Iroquois.—Andros Again.—Leisler and Milborne —Destruction of Schenectady.—Expedition against Montreal.—Execution of Leisler and Milborne. Sloughter.—Fletcher.—Bellamont.—Lord Cornbury.—New York during Queen Anne's War.—The Tuscaroras.—French Forts, &c.—Administration of Gov. Cosby.—Negro Plot. Pages, 218—236.

CHAPTER VII.

COLONIAL HISTORY OF NEW JERSEY.

Early Settlements.—Constitution of the Colony.—Difficulties with the Proprietors, and the Duke of York.—Division of the Province.—Government.—Conflicting Claims of the Proprietors: New Jersey under the Royal Government. - - - - - - - Pages, 236—240.

CHAPTER VIII.

COLONIAL HISTORY OF MARYLAND.

Early Exploration of the Country.—Settlements.—Lord Baltimore.—His Charter.—Settlement of St. Mary's.—Difficulties with Clayborne.—Laws.—Indian War.—Insurrection.—Religious Toleration.—Dissensions, and Civil War.—A Royal Government in Maryland.—Restoration of the Proprietor. - - - - - - - - - - - - - Pages, 240--245.

CHAPTER IX.

COLONIAL HISTORY OF PENNSYLVANIA.

Settlements of the Swedes.—Grant to Wm. Penn.—His Regulations for the Government of the Colony.—"The Territories."—Indian Treaty.—Founding of Philadelphia.—A "Charter of Liberties."—Withdrawal of Delaware.—Death of Penn, and subsequent History of the Colony. Pages, 245—250.

CHAPTER X.

COLONIAL HISTORY OF NORTH CAROLINA.

Raleigh's attempted Settlements.—Grant to Sir Robert Heath.—To Clarendon and Others. Albemarle Colony.—Clarendon Colony.—Locke's Constitution.—Dissensions.—Sothel.—Archdale.—French and German Emigrants.—Indian Tribes.—War with the Tuscaroras.—Separation of the two Carolinas. - - - - - - - - - - Pages, 250—255

CHAPTER XI.

COLONIAL HISTORY OF SOUTH CAROLINA.

Charter of Clarendon.—Cartaret County Colony.—Founding of Charleston.—Indian War.—Port Royal.—French Hugenots.—Colleton's Administration.—Sothel's.—Ludwell's.—Archdale.—Expedition against St. Augustine.—Indian War.—Religious Dissensions.—Spanish Invasion.—War with the Yamassees —Domestic Revolution.—Royal Government. - Pages, 255--261

CHAPTER XII.

COLONIAL HISTORY OF GEORGIA.

Oglethorpe.—First Charter of Georgia.—Settlement of Savannah.—Indian Treaty.—Regulations of the Trustees.—Preparations for War with the Spaniards.—Wesley.—Whitefield.—Expedition against St. Augustine.—Spanish Invasion.—Changes in the Government.—Slavery Pages, 261—268.

CHAPTER XIII.

THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

DIVISIONS.—I. CAUSES OF THE WAR, AND EVENTS OF 1754. English Claims to the Country. French Claims.—The Ohio Company.—Washington's Embassy.—Jumonville. —Fort Necessity.—Albany Convention, and Plan of the Union.—II. 1755: *Expeditions of Monckton, Braddock, Shirley and Johnson.* Reduction of Nova Scotia.—Braddock's Defeat.—Failure of the Expedition against Niagara.—Expedition against Crown Point.—Defeat of Dieskau. III. 1756: *Delays; Loss of Oswego; Indian Incursions.* Plan of the Campaign.—Abercrombie and Lord Loudon.—Montcalm reduces Oswego.—Armstrong's Expedition.—IV. 1757: *Designs against Louisburg, and Loss of Fort Wm. Henry.* Plan of the Campaign. Montcalm reduces Fort Wm. Henry.—V. 1758: *Reduction of Louisburg; Abercrombie's Defeat; The Taking of Forts Frontenac and Du Quesne.* The Pitt Ministry.—Siege and Conquest of Louisburg.—Abercrombie's Repulse at Ticonderoga.—Expedition against Fort Frontenac.—Against Fort Du Quesne.—VI. 1759 to 1763: *Ticonderoga and Crown Point Abandoned; Niagara Taken; Conquest of Quebec; Of all Canada; War with the Cherokees; Peace of* 1763. - - - - - - - - - - Pages, 266—285

APPENDIX TO THE COLONIAL HISTORY.

Design of the Appendix.—JAMES I. 1603—1625.—Political Aspect of Religious Controversies at this Period.—The Puritans.—Policy of James.—His Character.—American Colonization. Virginia Charters.—Popular Liberty.—The Plymouth Company.—CHARLES I. 1625—1649. His Character.—Controversies with Parliament.—His Arbitrary Measures.—Hampden.—Ecclesiastical Policy of Charles.—Commotions in Scotland.—Strafford.—Civil War.—Execution of the King.—Relations of England with her American Colonies during this Reign.—THE COMMONWEALTH. 1649—1660. The Character of Religious Parties.—Supremacy of the Independents Oliver Cromwell.—War with Holland.—Overthrow of the Long Parliament.—Barebone's Parliament.—Cromwell installed as Lord Protector.—War with Spain.—Cromwell's Administration and Death.—Richard Cromwell.—Restoration of Monarchy.—Relations with the American Colonies during the Commonwealth.—CHARLES II. 1660—1685. Character of Charles II.—Change in the Sentiments and Feelings of the Nation.—War with Holland.—Treaty of Breda. Another War.—Treaty of Nimeguen.—Domestic Administration of Charles.—Whigs and Tories.—The various Navigation Acts.—Bold Stand of Massachusetts in Defence of her Liberties. Rhode Island and Connecticut.—Controversy with the Royal Commissioners.—With the King Subversion of the Dutch Power in America.—Pennsylvania.—Origin, Practices, and Principles of the Quakers.—Quaker Colonization in America.—JAMES II. 1685—1688. General Character of his Reign.—Monmouth's Rebellion.—Landing of William in England, and Flight of James Relations of James with the American Colonies.—WILLIAM AND MARY. 1688—1702. Character of the Revolution of 1688.—Rebellion in Scotland.—War with France.—Treaty of Ryswick. Policy of William towards the Colonies.—Colonial Relations during His Reign.—ANNE. 1702—1714. War of the Spanish Succession.—Treaty of Utrecht.—The Slave Trade.—GEORGE I. 1714—1727. Rebellion in Scotland.—GEORGE II. 1727—1760. Walpole.—War with Spain. War of the Austrian Succession.—Treaty of Aix la Chapelle.—The "Seven Years War." Conclusion. Education; Manners; Morals; Religion, &c., in the American Colonies Pages, 285—335

PART III.

AMERICAN REVOLUTION.

CHAPTER I.

CAUSES WHICH LED TO THE REVOLUTION.

Long Series of Aggressions upon the Colonies.—Design of Taxing the Colonies.—The Stamp Act of 1765.—Its Effects upon the Colonies.—First Colonial Congress.—Repeal of the Stamp Act.—New Scheme of Taxing America.—Excitement produced by it.—British Troops sent to America.—Affray in Boston.—Royal Regulation of 1772.—Destruction of Tea at Boston.—Boston Port Bill.—Massachusetts Charter subverted.—Second Colonial Congress.—Determined Oppression.—Determined Resistance. - - - - - - - - Pages, 335—347

CHAPTER II.

EVENTS DURING THE YEAR 1775.

Battle of Lexington.—Expedition of Allen and Arnold.—Battle of Bunker's Hill.—Congress.—Washington appointed to the Command of the Army.—The Royal Governors.—Invasion of Canada.—Surrender of St. Johns.—Of Montreal.—Assault of Quebec.—Repulse.—Retreat of the Army. - - - - - - - - - - - Pages, 347—355.

CHAPTER III.

EVENTS DURING THE YEAR 1776.

The Siege of Boston continued.—Boston evacuated by the British.—Attack on Sullivan's

Island.—Formidable Warlike Preparations of England.—Declaration of Independence.—Battle of Long Island.—Of White Plains.—Capture of Fort Washington.—Retreat of the Americans through New Jersey.—Capture of General Lee.—Battle of Trenton.—Situation of the Armies at the Close of the Year. - - - - - - - - - - Pages, 355--366.

CHAPTER IV.

EVENTS DURING THE YEAR 1777.

Battle of Princeton.—Other Successes of Washington.—Congress.—French Assistance.—Lafayette.—British Expedition up the Hudson.—Tryon's Expedition to Danbury.—Sag Harbor. Movements of the Armies in New Jersey.—Capture of General Prescott.—Battle of Brandywine.—Wayne surprised.—Battle of Germantown.—Burgoyne's Expedition.—Battle of Bennington.—Siege of Fort Schuyler.—Battles of Stillwater and Saratoga.—Burgoyne's Surrender.—Forts Mercer and Mifflin, on the Delaware.—Valley Forge.—Articles of Confederation. Pages, 366—380.

CHAPTER V.

EVENTS DURING THE YEAR 1778.

Conciliatory Measures of the British Government.—Treaty with France.—Count D'Estaing. Battle of Monmouth.—The Hostile Armies in Rhode Island.—The French and English Fleets. Expeditions of Grey and Ferguson.—Attack on Wyoming.—On Cherry Valley.—Loss of Savannah.—Result of the Campaign. - - - - - - - - - Pages, 380—385

CHAPTER VI.

EVENTS DURING THE YEAR 1779.

The War at the South.—Defeat of the Tories under Col. Boyd.—Defeat of General Ash. Battle of Stono Ferry.—Tryon's Expedition against Connecticut.—Capture of Stony Point. Paulus Hook.—Penobscot.—Sullivan's Expedition against the Six Nations.—Siege of Savannah. Spain Involved in the War.—Paul Jones.—Result of the Campaign. - Pages, 385—391.

CHAPTER VII.

EVENTS DURING THE YEAR 1780.

Siege of Charleston.—Americans surprised at Monk's Corner.—Surrender of Charleston. Other Successes of the British.—Sumpter and Marion.—Battle of Sanders' Creek.—Defeat of Sumpter.—Battle of King's Mountain.—Other Successes of the Americans.—Knyphausen's Expedition into New Jersey.—Admiral de Ternay.—Treachery of Arnold.—Fate of Andre.—Holland involved in the War. - - - - - - - - - Pages, 391—397.

CHAPTER VIII.

EVENTS DURING THE YEAR 1781.

Revolt of the Pennsylvania Troops.—Robert Morris.—Arnold's Depredations in Virginia.—Battle of the Cowpens.—Cornwallis's Pursuit of Morgan—Defeat of a Body of Loyalists.—Battle of Guilford Court House.—Of Hobkirk's Hill.—Assault of Ninety Six.—Fate of Colonel Hayne. Battle of Eutaw Springs.—Close of the Campaign at the South.—Arnold's Expedition to Connecticut.—Siege of Yorktown.—Surrender of Cornwallis. - - - Pages, 397—407

CHAPTER IX.

CLOSE OF THE WAR, AND ADOPTION OF THE CONSTITUTION.

Changes in the Policy of the British Government.—Peace concluded with England.—Disbanding of the American Army.—Retirement of Washington to Private Life.—Condition of the Country.—National Convention.—Adoption of the Present Constitution.—Washington elected First President. - - - - - - - - - - - - Pages, 407--411.

APPENDIX TO THE REVOLUTION.

The Struggle between England and her Colonies—how viewed by European Nations, generally.—By the *People* of England, &c.—Effects produced in London by Intelligence of the Battle of Lexington.—Discontents in the English Army.—Whigs and Tories.—Duke of Grafton. Marquis of Rockingham.—Violent Debates in Parliament.—Lord Mansfield.—Mr. Fox.—German Auxiliaries.—Dukes of Richmond and Cumberland.—Perseverance of the Ministry.—American Privateers.—Opening of Parliament in Oct., 1776.—King's Speech.—Ministerial Address.—Protest of the Peers.—Motion of Lord Cavendish.—War Expenses.—Lord Chatham's Motion Arrogance of the Court Party.—Opening of Parliament, Nov., 1777.—King's Speech.—Ministerial Addresses —Earl of Chatham's Remarks.—Intelligence of the Defeat of Burgoyne.—New Measures for supplying the Army.—Mr. Fox.—Conciliatory Measures of Lord North.—American Treaty with France.—Divisions among the Whig Opposition.—Last Public Appearance of the Earl of Chatham.—Commencement of War between France and England.—War in the West Indies.—In the East Indies.—War with Spain.—With Holland.—Armed Neutrality of the Northern Powers.—Siege of Gibraltar.—Surrender of Cornwallis.—Attack on Gibraltar.—Articles of Peace.—Remarks on the Character of the War. - - Pages, 411--432

PART IV.

THE UNITED STATES.

FROM THE ORGANIZATION OF THE GOVERNMENT UNDER THE FEDERAL CONSTITUTION, IN 1789, TO THE YEAR 1845.

CHAPTER I.

WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION.

Washington's Inaugural Address.—Measures of the First Session of the Congress.—Of the Second Session.—Indian War.—Harmer's Defeat.—National Bank.—Vermont.—St. Clair's Defeat.—Kentucky.—The French Minister Genet.—General Wayne.—Whiskey Insurrection. Jay's Treaty.—Treaty of Greenville.—Treaty with Spain.—With Algiers.—Washington's Farewell Address. - - - - - - - - - - - - - - Pages, 432–439.

CHAPTER II.

ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION.

Difficulties with France.—Death of Washington.—His Character.—Seat of Government. Mississippi Territory.—Treaty with France.—Alien and Sedition Laws. Pages, 439–443.

CHAPTER III.

JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

Changes Introduced.—Ohio.—Purchase of Louisiana.—War with Tripoli.—Death of Hamilton.—Michigan.—Burr's Conspiracy.—Difficulties with England and France.—American Embargo. - - - - - - - - - - - - - - Pages, 443—447

CHAPTER IV.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION.

SECTION I. 1809-10-11 :—Continued Difficulties with England.—Battle of Tippecanoe.

SECTION II. 1812 :—Declaration of War Against England.—The Army.—General Hull —Loss of Mackinaw.—Colonel Miller.—Surrender of Detroit.—Battle of Queenstown.—The Constitution and Guerriere.—Wasp and Frolic.—United States and Macedonian.—Constitution and Java.

SECTION III. 1813 :—Positions of the American Forces. —Battle of Frenchtown.—Siege of Fort Meigs.—Defence of Fort Sandusky.—Battle of Lake Erie.—Of the Thames.—Fort Mims. Tohopeka.—Capture of York.—Attack on Sacketts Harbor.—Events on the Niagara Frontier.—On the St. Lawrence.—Naval Battles.—Hornet and Peacock.—Chesapeake and Shannon.—Argus and Pelican.—The Boxer.—The Essex.—War on the Sea-board.

SECTION IV. 1814 :—Fort Erie.—Battle of Chippewa.—Of Lundy's Lane.—Of Plattsburg.—Of Bladensburg.—Burning of the Capitol.—Events near Baltimore.—At Stonington.—Capture of Pensacola.—Battle of New Orleans.—Hartford Convention.—War with Algiers. Second National Bank. - - - - - - - - - - - Pages, 447–470.

CHAPTER V.

MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION.

State of the Country.—Difficulties with the Creeks and Seminoles.—Capture of St. Marks and Pensacola.—Purchase of Florida.—The Missouri Question.—Lafayette's Visit. Pages, 470–473.

CHAPTER VI.

J. Q. ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION.

Controversy with Georgia.—Deaths of the Ex-Presidents, Adams and Jefferson.—The Election of 1828. - - - - - - - - - - - - - - Pages, 473—474.

CHAPTER VII.

JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

Removal from Office.—United States Bank.—Winnebago War.—Tariff, and State Rights. The Cherokees.—Seminole War. - - - - - - - - - - Pages, 474—478.

CHAPTER VIII.

VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION.

Condition of the Country.—Specie Circular.—Independent Treasury.—Seminole War Continued.—Election of 1840. - - - - - - - - - Pages, 479—482.

CHAPTER IX.

HARRISON'S ADMINISTRATION.

Harrison's Inaugural Address.—His Cabinet.—His Sudden Death. - - Pages, 482, 483

CHAPTER X.

TYLER'S ADMINISTRATION.

Repeal of the Independant Treasury Bill.—North Eastern Boundary Treaty.—Difficulties in Rhode Island.—Annexation of Texas. - - - - - - - - - - Pages, 483, 484

CHAPTER XI.

POLK'S ADMINISTRATION.

War with Mexico. - - - - - - - - - - - - - - Pages, 485—498

CHAPTER XII.

TAYLOR'S ADMINISTRATION. - - - Pages, 498—503

CHAPTER XIII.

FILLMORE'S ADMINISTRATION. - - Pages, 504—508

APPENDIX TO THE PERIOD SUBSEQUENT TO THE REVOLUTION.

The Government of the United States as Compared with Other Federal Governments.—The Early Federalists and Anti-Federalists.—Final General Approval of the Constitution.—The French Revolution.—Aggressions on the Part of England in 1693.—Jay's Treaty.—Renewed Aggressions of England.—Excited State of Public Feeling.—French Berlin Decree.—British Decree of Jan. 1807.—Pinckney and Monroe's Treaty.—British Orders in Council.—Milan Decree.—American Embargo.—Non-Intercourse Law.—The Erskine Treaty.—Repeal of the Orders in Council.—Extent of British Depredations on American Commerce.—The "Peace Party" of 1812.—Declaration of War.—Federal Opposition.—Hartford Convention.—The Subject of Commercial Restrictions.—Imports and Exports.—The Different Eras of Federalism.—Its Principles.—Political Questions Since the War of 1812.—Legal and Moral View of the War with Mexico.—Ultimate Destiny of the American Confederacy. - Pages, 509—536

BOOK III.

EARLY FRENCH SETTLEMENTS IN NORTH AMERICA; PRESENT BRITISH PROVINCES; MEXICO; AND TEXAS.

PART I.

EARLY FRENCH SETTLEMENTS, AND PRESENT BRITISH PROVINCES IN NORTH AMERICA.

CHAPTER I.

HISTORY OF CANADA UNDER THE FRENCH.

Introduction to the History of Canada.—Champlain's Discoveries, and Relations with the Hurons and Algonquins.—Various Expeditions Against the Iroquois.—De Caen Governor. Champlain Restored.—Conquest of New France by the English in 1629.—Peace of 1632.—Missionary Establishments.—Wars Between the Algonquins and Iroquois, involving the French. Administration of De Tracy.—Of De Courcelles.—Of Frontenac.—De La Barre and De Nonville.—Second Administration of Frontenac.—Canada During King William's War.—During Queen Anne's War.—Encroachments of the French on the Territory of the English.—Conquest of Canada. - - - - - - - - - - - - - - Pages, 3—15

CHAPTER II.

EARLY HISTORY OF LOUISIANA.

Jesuit Missionaries.—Discovery of the Mississippi.—Expedition and Discoveries of La Salle and his Companions.—La Salle's Colony in Texas.—Death of La Salle.—Settlements in Upper Louisiana.—In Southern Louisiana.—Crozat.—The Mississippi Company.—Destruction of the French Post at Natchez.—War with the Natches.—With the Chickasas.—The Treaty of 1763. Louisiana during the American Revolution.—Treaty of 1795.—Violated by the Spaniards. Treaty of San Ildephonso.—Purchase of Louisiana by the United States. Pages, 15—27

CHAPTER III.

HISTORY OF CANADA UNDER THE ENGLISH.

The Change of Dominion.—Canada During the American Revolution.—Division of Canada. Government of the two Provinces.—Canada During the War of 1812-14.—Administration of Sir Gordon Drummond.—Sir John Sherbrooke.—Duke of Richmond.—Lord Dalhousie.—Controversies with the Assembly.—Sir James Kempt.—Lord Aylmer.—Increasing Dissensions. Lord Gosford.—Sir Francis Bond Head.—The Crisis.—CANADIAN REBELLION.—Union of the two Canadas. - - - - - - - - - - - - - - Pages, 27—40

CHAPTER IV.

NOVA SCOTIA.

Its Early History.—Domestic Dissensions.—Repeated Conquests of the Country by the Eng lish.—Final Conquest in 1710.—Nova Scotia during King George's War.—English Colonization. Rebellion of the French Inhabitants.—Their subjugation, and banishment.—Nova Scotia during and subsequent to the American Revolution. - - - - Pages, 40—48

CHAPTERS V, VI, AND VII.

NEW BRUNSWICK, PRINCE EDWARD'S ISLAND, AND NEWFOUNDLAND.

PART II.

HISTORY OF MEXICO.

CHAPTER I.

ABORIGINAL MEXICO.

History of the Toltecs —The Chichemecas.—The Aztecs or Mexicans.—Their Knowledge of the Arts.—Political Institutions.—The Court of Montezuma.—Wars, and Human Sacrifices. Pages, 57—68.

CHAPTER II.

COLONIAL HISTORY OF MEXICO.

The Spanish Conquest.—Condition of the Aborigines.—General Policy of the Spanish Colonial Government.—Abuses Perpetrated under it.—Condition of Mexico at the Beginning of the Present Century. - - - - - - - - - - - - - Pages, 69—72.

CHAPTER III.

MEXICO DURING THE FIRST REVOLUTION.

Situation of Spain in 1808.—General Situation of the Spanish American Colonies at this Period.—Dissensions in Mexico.—Commencement of the Revolution.—Successes of Hidalgo. His Reverses and Death.—Rayon.—Career of Morelos.—Other Insurgent Chiefs.—Victoria. Mina's Invasion.—Close of the First Revolution in 1819. - - - Pages, 73—88.

CHAPTER IV.

MEXICO, FROM THE CLOSE OF THE FIRST REVOLUTION, TO THE ADOPTION OF THE FEDERAL CONSTITUTION OF 1824.

Divisions among the Mexican Spaniards.—Designs of the Viceroy.—Revolt of Iturbide and Plan of Iguala.—Success of the Revolution.—Parties in the Congress.—Iturbide Proclaimed and Elected Emperor.—Overthrow of his Government.—Constitution of 1824.—Fate of Iturbide. Pages, 89—95.

CHAPTER V.

MEXICO, FROM THE ADOPTION OF THE FEDERAL CONSTITUTION OF 1824, TO THE COMMENCEMENT OF THE WAR WITH THE UNITED STATES IN 1846.

The Presidency of Victoria.—The Scotch and the York Lodges.—Presidential Election of 1826 Civil War.—Election of 1828.—Santa Anna heads a Rebellion.—Success of the Revolutionists Pillaging of Mexico.—Guerrero becomes President.—Spanish Invasion.—Bustamente's Rebellion, and Overthrow of Guerrero.—Bustamente's Administration.—Rebellion and Death of Guerrero.—Santa Anna overthrows Bustamente's Administration.—Pedraza.—Santa Anna's Presidency.—Duran.—Santa Anna Overthrows the Federal Constitution.—The Texans Refuse to Submit to his Usurpation.—Mexia.—Santa Anna's Invasion of Texas.—Bustamente's Presidency.—Mexia's Second Rebellion.—French Blockade of the Coast.—Insurrection in the Capital.—Yucatan.—Paredes at the head of the Revolution of 1841.—"Plan of Tucubaya."—Santa Anna at the head of the Government.—His Government Overthrown by Paredes.—His Banishment.—Difficulties with the United States.—Herrera's Administration.—Revolt of Paredes, and Overthrow of Herrera.—Commencement of War between the United States and Mexico Santa Anna Restored to Power.—Concluding Remarks on Mexican History. Pages, 95—117

PART III.

HISTORY OF TEXAS.

CHAPTER I.

TEXAS, AS A PART OF MEXICO, WHILE UNDER THE SPANISH DOMINION. [1521–1821.]

Indian Tribes.—La Salle's Colony at Matagorda.—De Leon's Expedition.—First Spanish Settlements.—Hostilities between the French and Spaniards.—Western Louisiana.—Spanish Missions.—Texas during the Mexican Revolution.—Expedition of Toledo and Guttierez.—Mina and Perry.—General Long's Expedition.—French Colony in Texas - Pages, 119—128.

CHAPTER II.

EVENTS FROM THE TIME OF THE ESTABLISHMENT OF MEXICAN INDEPENDENCE, TO THE TIME OF THE DECLARATION OF THE INDEPENDENCE OF TEXAS. [1821–1836.]

The Spanish Treaty of 1819.—The Founding of Austin's Colony.—Texas Annexed to Coahuila.—State Constitution.—Colonization Laws.—Character of the Texan Population.—The "Fredonian War."—Mexican Garrisons in Texas.—Propositions of the United States for the Purchase of Texas.—Mexican Decree of 1830.—Arbitrary Acts of Mexican Officers.—Difficulties at Anahuac and Velasco.—Mexia sent to Texas.—Garrisons Withdrawn.—Convention at San Felipe.—Austin's Imprisonment in Mexico.—The Two Parties in the State Legislature Among the Americans of Texas.—Dissensions.—Disturbances at Anahuac.—Adherence of Texas to the Mexican Constitution of 1824.—Affair at Gonzalez.—Capture of Goliad by the Texans.—Engagement near Bexar.—Convention at San Felipe and Declaration of Rights.—Provisional Government.—Capture of Bexar by the Texans.—Santa Anna's Invasion.—*Fall of the Alamo.* - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - Pages, 128—150

CHAPTER III.

EVENTS FROM THE DECLARATION OF THE INDEPENDENCE OF TEXAS, TO THE ANNEXATION OF TEXAS TO THE AMERICAN UNION. [1836–1845.]

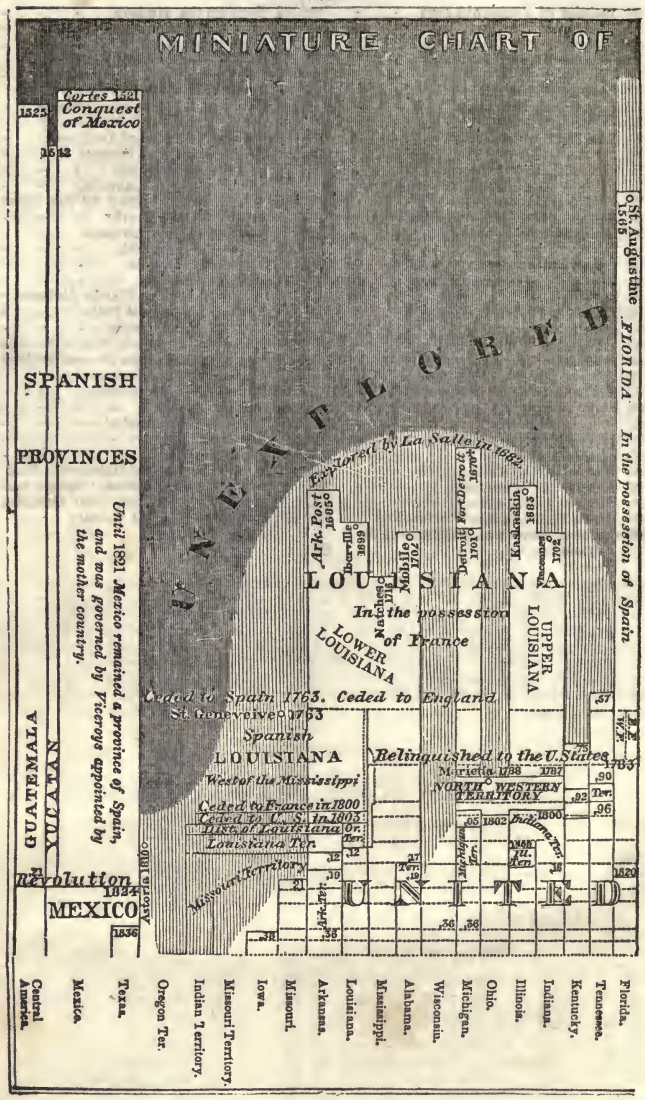
Convention.—Declaration of Independence.—Organization of the Government.—President's Address.—Advance of the Mexican Army.—Murder of King and his Party.—Fannin's Battle. Surrender.—Massacre of Him and his Party.—Santa Anna Advances from Bexar.—*Battle of San Jacinto*, and Capture of Santa Anna.—Retreat of the Mexican Forces.—Final Liberation of Santa Anna.—Recognitions of Texan Independence by the United States, France, and England.—Relations with Mexico.—The Santa Fe Expedition.—Departure from Austin.—Sufferings of the Party.—Surrender to the Mexicans.—Sent to Mexico and Imprisoned.—Invasions of Texas in 1842.—Account of the Mier Expedition.—Admission of Texas into the American Union.—Concluding Remarks. - - - - - - - - - Pages, 151—170.

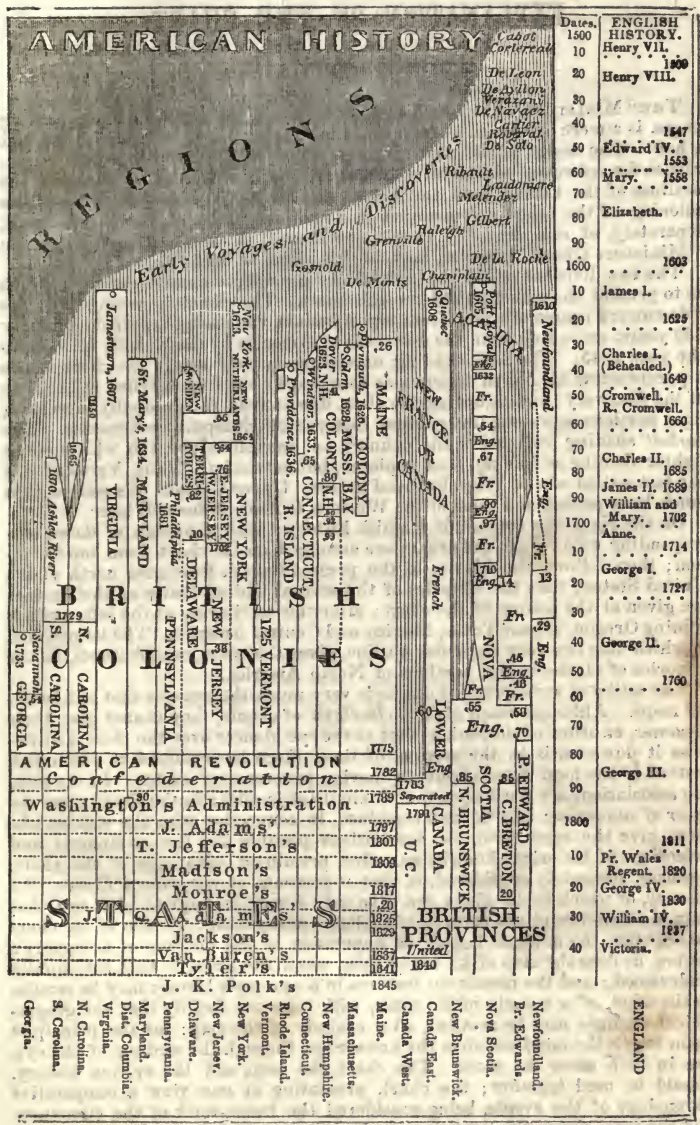
EMBELLISHMENTS, MAPS, CHARTS, PLANS, &C.,

CONTAINED IN THE FOLLOWING WORK.

		Pages.
1	CHART OF AMERICAN HISTORY	16-17
2	MAP OF THE INDIAN TRIBES - -	20
3	Plan of Ruins at Marietta, Ohio -	66
4	Ruins at Circleville - - -	66
5	Ruins near Newark - - -	67
6	Ruins near Somerset - - -	67
7	On the North Branch of Paint Creek	67
8	On Paint Creek, nearer Chilicothe -	69
9	At the Mouth of the Sciota River -	70
10	Map of Yucatan and the Adjoining Provinces - - - - -	74
11	Plan of the Ruins of Palenque -	74
12	Building called the Palace - -	75
13	Plan of the Ruins of Copan -	76
14	Stone Altar found at Copan -	78
15	Plan of the Ruins of Chichen -	79
16	Plan of the Ruins of Uxmal	83
17	The "House of the Governor" -	84
18	Ground Plan of the Same -	84
19	Stone Building at Labna -	86
20	Doorway of a Building at Kewick	87
21	LANDING OF THE PILGRIMS - -	96
22	Heraldric Colors - - - -	97
52	(30) Seals of the States and Territories - - - - -	98, 106
53	Seal of the United States -	106
54	Valley of Mexico - -	116
55	Vicinity of Pensacola - -	122
56	Vicinity of Montreal -	128
57	Port Royal Island and Vicinity -	129
58	Vicinity of St. Augustine - -	130
59	Harbor of St. Augustine -	130
60	Roanoke Island and Vicinity -	131
61	Vicinity of Jamestown - -	136
62	POCAHONTAS SAVING THE LIFE OF CAPTAIN SMITH - -	161
63	Plymouth and vicinity - - -	181
64	Vicinity of Boston - - -	184
65	Valley of the Conn. River, in Mass.	194
66	Narragansett Fort and Swamp -	195

		Page.
67	Vicinity of Pemaquid Fort	198
68	Vicinity of Portland	198
69	Louisburg and Vicinity, in 1745	203
70	Island of Cape Breton	203
71	Vicinity of Portsmouth	206
72	Vicinity of Hartford	208
73	New Haven and Vicinity	211
74	Vicinity of Providence	215
75	New York and Vicinity	220
76	Albany and Vicinity	221
77	Northern part of Delaware	223
78	Vicinity of Annapolis	240
79	Philadelphia and Vicinity	248
80	Vicinity of Wilmington, N. C.	251
81	Charleston and Vicinity	256
82	Savannah and Vicinity	261
83	Vicinity of Frederica, Geo.	262
84	Death of General Wolfe	267
85	Forts in New Brunswick	272
86	Vicinity of Lake George	273
87	Forts at Oswego	275
88	Vicinity of Quebec	280
89	Battle of Bunker's Hill	335
90	Plan of the Siege of Boston	349
91	Battle of Long Island	359
92	Westchester County	362
93	Forts Lee and Washington	362
94	Seat of War in New Jersey	363
95	Trenton in 1776	364
96	Places West of Philadelphia	372
97	Vicinity of Ticonderoga	374
98	Fort Schuyler on the Mohawk	376
99	Towns of Saratoga and Stillwater	376
100	Camps of Gates and Burgoyne at Saratoga	376
101	Forts on the Hudson	377
102	Plan of Fort Mercer	378
103	Battle of Monmouth	381
104	Seat of War in South Carolina	392
105	Battle of Sander's Creek	393
106	Surrender of Cornwallis	397
107	Battle of Guilford Court House	401
108	Battle of Hobkirk's Hill	401
109	Plan of the Siege of Yorktown	404
110	New London and Vicinity	405
111	Vicinity of Gibraltar	429
112	The Fortress of Gibraltar	429
113	Map of the Country at the close of the Revolution	432
114	Vicinity of New Orleans	438
115	District of Columbia	442
116	Vicinity of Detroit	449
117	Niagara Frontier	451
118	Seat of the Creek War in Alabama	456
119	Vicinity of Niagara Falls	462
120	Vicinity of Baltimore	465
121	Seat of the Seminole War in Florida	478
122	Map of the United States in 1845	502
123	Map of British America	2
"	Forts in New Brunswick	45
124	Map of Mexico	56
125	Vicinity of the Capital	67
126	Map of Texas	118
127	Vicinity of Bexar	122
128	Map of the Bays of Matagorda, Espiritu Santo, Aransas, Copano, and Corpus Christi and their Vicinities	142
129	Galveston Bay and Vicinity	157


MINIATURE CHART OF
UNEXPLORED
Explored by La Salle in 1682
Cortes 1521
Conquest of Mexico
1525
1542
SPANISH
PROVINCES
Until 1821 Mexico remained a province of Spain, and was governed by Viceroys appointed by the mother country.
GUATEMALA
YUCATAN
Revolution
1824
MEXICO
1836
Astoria 1810
St. Augustine 1565
FLORIDA
In the possession of Spain
Ark. Post 1685
Iberville 1699
Mobile 1702
Natches 1715
Fort Detroit 1701
Detroit 1670
Kaskaskia 1683
Vincennes 1702
LOUISIANA
In the possession of France
LOWER LOUISIANA
UPPER LOUISIANA
Ceded to Spain 1763. Ceded to England
St. Geneveive 1763
Spanish
LOUISIANA
West of the Mississippi
Ceded to France in 1800
Ceded to U. S. in 1803
Dist. of Louisiana
Louisiana Ter.
Missouri Territory
Relinquished to the U. States
Marietta 1788
1787
NORTH WESTERN TERRITORY
1800
1802
Indiana Ter.
Michigan Ter.
Ill. Ter.
1820
UNITED
Central America.
Mexico.
Texas.
Oregon Ter.
Indian Territory.
Missouri Territory.
Iowa.
Missouri.
Arkansas.
Louisiana.
Mississippi.
Alabama.
Wisconsin.
Michigan.
Ohio.
Illinois.
Indiana.
Kentucky.
Tennessee.
Florida.


AMERICAN HISTORY
Dates.
ENGLISH HISTORY.
1500 Henry VII.
10
1509
20 Henry VIII.
30
40
1547
50 Edward IV.
1553
60 Mary. 1558
70
80 Elizabeth.
90
1600
1603
10 James I.
20
1625
30 Charles I.
40 (Beheaded.)
1649
50 Cromwell.
R. Cromwell.
60
1660
70 Charles II.
80
1685
90 James II. 1689
1700 William and Mary. 1702
10 Anne. 1714
George I.
20
1727
30
40 George II.
50
1760
60
70
80
90 George III.
1800
1811
10 Pr. Wales Regent. 1820
20 George IV.
1830
30 William IV.
1837
40 Victoria.
REGIONS
Early Voyages and Discoveries
Cabot
Cortereal
De Leon
De Ayllon
Verrazano
De Narvaez
Cartier
Roberval
De Soto
Ribaulx
Laudonnière
Melendez
Gilbert
Raleigh
Grenville
Gosnold
De Monts
De La Roche
Champlain
Quebec 1608
Port Royal 1605
Acadia
Newfoundland
New York
NEW NETHERLANDS
New Sweden
Jamestown, 1607.
St. Mary's, 1634.
Plymouth, 1620.
Salem 1628.
Dover
Portsmouth, 1623.
Windsor 1633.
Providence, 1636.
Ashley River
Savannah
BRITISH COLONIES
S. CAROLINA
N. CAROLINA
VIRGINIA
MARYLAND
PENNSYLVANIA
DELAWARE
NEW JERSEY
NEW YORK
R. ISLAND
CONNECTICUT
N. HAMPSHIRE
MASS. BAY COLONY
MAINE COLONY
VERMONT
GEORGIA
NEW FRANCE OR CANADA
French
LOWER CANADA
NOVA SCOTIA
P. EDWARD
C. BRETON
N. BRUNSWICK
U. C.
BRITISH PROVINCES
United
Separated
AMERICAN REVOLUTION
Confederation
Washington's Administration
J. Adams'
T. Jefferson's
Madison's
Monroe's
J. Q. Adams'
Jackson's
Van Buren's
Tyler's
J. K. Polk's
STATES
1775
1782
1783
1789
1797
1801
1809
1817
20
1825
1829
1837
1841
1845
Maine.
Massachusetts.
New Hampshire.
Connecticut.
Rhode Island.
Vermont.
New York.
New Jersey.
Delaware.
Pennsylvania.
Maryland.
Dist. Columbia.
Virginia.
N. Carolina.
S. Carolina.
Georgia.
Canada West.
Canada East.
New Brunswick.
Nova Scotia.
Newfoundland.
Pr. Edward.
ENGLAND

EXPLANATION OF THE CHART.

THE "MINIATURE CHART OF AMERICAN HISTORY," found on the two preceding pages, is a mere outline of a larger chart measuring about four feet by five and a half. The design of the small chart is, principally, to furnish, by its convenience for reference, additional aid to those pupils who may be studying the outlines of the history from the larger one; for as the small chart wants the coloring of the other, and many of its important features, it will be found, separately, of comparatively little importance. A brief explanation of the "Miniature Chart," however, may, in this place, be useful.

The two divisions of the chart should be considered as brought together, so as to present the whole united on one sheet. The chart is arranged in the "downward course of time," from top to bottom, embracing a period of nearly 350 years, extending from the discovery of America by the Cabots, in 1497, to the year 1845. The dark shading, extending entirely across the chart at the top, represents all North America as occupied by the Indian tribes at the time of the discovery; and following the chart downwards, the gradually increasing light portions represent the gradual increase of European settlements. The *darkest* shading represents the country as unexplored by the whites;—the lighter shading as having been explored, but *not settled.* Thus, Vermont was the last settled of the New England States; Upper Canada was settled at a much later period, and some of the Western United States still later.

On the right is a column of English history; then a column of dates, corresponding with which the events are arranged on the chart from top to bottom; then follows the history of the present British Provinces north of the United States: then the histories of the several United States as their names are given at the bottom of the chart; after the territories, at the left, and adjoining Oregon, appear Texas, Mexico, and Central America. The large chart, of which this is a very imperfect outline, gives the prominent features, in the histories of all the settled portions of North America.

The *utility* of well-arranged charts is very much the same as that of historical maps. Although maps give the *localities* of events, they cannot give their *sequences*, or order of succession; but as the eye glances over the *chart*, and follows it downwards in the stream of time, there is presented to the mind, instead of one local fixed picture, a moving panorama of events. In the map, the associations are fixed upon the proximity of *locality;* in the chart, upon the *order of succession:* and the two combined, in connection with the written history, give the most favorable associations possible for the attainment and retention of historical knowledge. One prominent advantage of the chart, however, separately considered, is, that it presents at one view a *Comparative History*, of which books alone can give only a very inadequate idea, and that only to a well-disciplined memory of arbitrary associations. A view of the chart makes upon the mind as lasting an impression of the outlines of a country's *history*, as does the map of its *topography*, when the plans of both are equally understood; and the prominent features in a country's history may be *recallea* to the mind, after a study of the chart, with the same facility that the geographical outlines may be recalled, after a study of the map; for the principles upon which the mind acquires the knowledge, through the medium of the eye, are in both cases the same. The chart, the map, and the written history, should be used together; the chart, presenting at one view a comparative chronology of the events, being considered the frame-work of the structure and the map, giving the localities, the basis upon which it stands.

BOOK I.

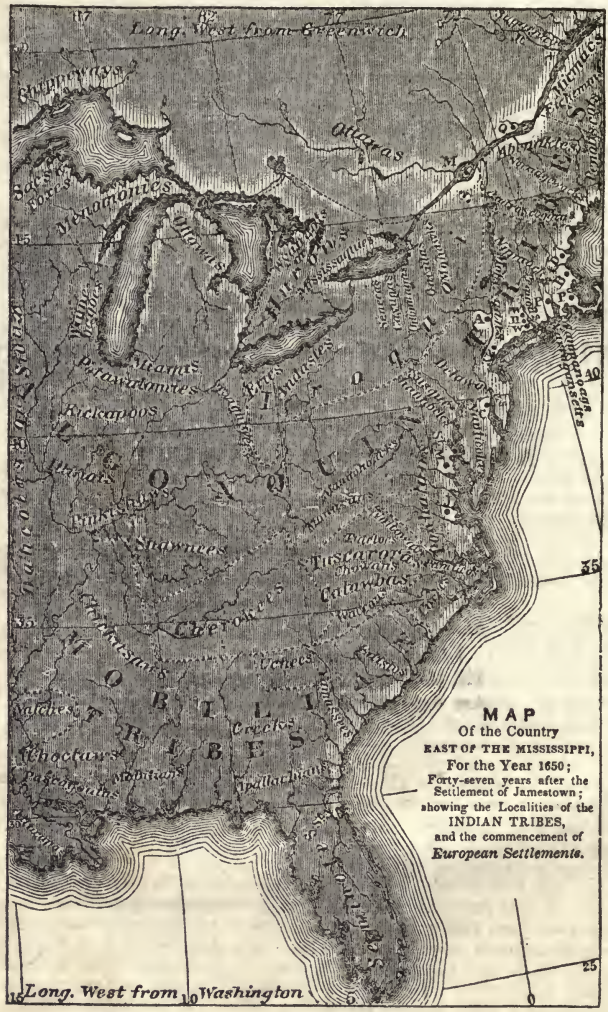
INDIAN TRIBES OF NORTH AMERICA

AND

AMERICAN ANTIQUITIES.

"They waste us; ay, like April snow
In the warm noon, we shrink away;
And fast they follow as we go
Towards the setting day,—
Till they shall fill the land, and we
Are driven into the western sea."

BRYANT.



MAP
Of the Country
EAST OF THE MISSISSIPPI,
For the Year 1650;
Forty-seven years after the Settlement of Jamestown; showing the Localities of the
INDIAN TRIBES,
and the commencement of
European Settlements.

CHAPTER I.

INDIAN TRIBES OF NORTH AMERICA.

[The brief notice, here given, of the Indian tribes of North America, is confined principally to those formerly and at present found within the United States and their Territories. For a more extended account the reader is referred to the numerous works on Indian History and Biography, found in the public libraries of our cities; and especially to the able work of the Hon. Albert Gallatin, published in volume second of the "Transactions of the American Antiquarian Society," and to Drake's "Biography and History of the Indian Tribes of North America," Edition of 1841. The History of the more civilized tribes of early Mexico will be found under the head of Mexican History, see Book III., p. 57.]

SECTION I.

NORTHERN TRIBES.

ANALYSIS.

1. The Northern Tribes.—Their locality.

2. Locality of the Esquimaux.

3. Indians of Greenland.

4. Esquimaux in Asia.

5. Esquimaux confined to the coast.

6. Divisions of the Esquimaux.

7. Dialects.

8. Trade.

9. Tribes in the interior.

10. How grouped.

[1]The northern tribes of North America, embracing the great divisions known as the Esquimaux and the Athapascas, and some small tribes bordering on the Pacific Ocean, are found north of the fifty-second parallel of latitude. [2]The Esquimaux* Indians encircle the whole northern portion of the continent, from the southern point of Alaska on the west, to the Gulf of St. Lawrence on the east. [3]The only Indians found in Greenland are Esquimaux. [4]A tribe of the same family is likewise found on the western shore of Behring Straits; and it is believed to be the only Asiatic tribe belonging to the race of any North American Indians. [5]The Esquimaux are not found far in the interior, but are confined mostly to the shores of the ocean, and of large gulfs and bays.

[6]There are two divisions of these people, the eastern and the western Esquimaux. The dividing line is a little west of Mackenzie's River. [7]The western Esquimaux speak a dialect so different from the eastern, that it is, at first, difficult for them to understand each other. [8]The two divisions have for some years past carried on considerable trade with each other; the western Indians dealing in iron tools and other articles of Russian manufacture, and the eastern in seal skins, oil, and furs.

[9]In the interior, extending from Churchill River and Hudson's Bay to within about one hundred miles of the Pacific, is a large number of tribes speaking kindred languages. [10]They have been grouped in one division, and are called Athapascas, from the original name of the lake

* From "*Eskimantick*," Eaters of raw fish.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Their wars.*
2. *Tribes on the coast.*

since called "Lake of the Hills." [1]They are the hereditary enemies of the Esquimaux, and are in a state of perpetual warfare with them. [2]West of the Athapascas, on the sea-coast and islands, are several tribes which speak dialects different both from the Esquimaux and the Athapascas.

3. *Jurisdiction over the territory of the Esquimaux and the Athapascas.*

[3]The extensive territory occupied by the Esquimaux and the Athapascas is claimed by the English, and the whole is under the jurisdiction of the Hudson's Bay Company, whose trading posts extend from James Bay, west, to the Pacific Ocean, and north, nearly to the Polar Sea.

4. *Character and occupation of the Northern Tribes.*

[4]The Esquimaux are a dwarfish race, and obtain a precarious livelihood mostly by fishing. The Athapascas, and some of their southern neighbors, are almost entirely employed in obtaining furs, for the purpose of selling them to the Company, or in conveying the provisions and stores of the Company to the different posts, and bringing back the furs there collected.

SECTION II.

ALGONQUIN TRIBES.

5. *Montagnars.*
a. Mon-tang-yar.
6. *Algonquins.*

[5]At the first settlement of Canada, the St. Lawrence Indians were generally designated by the name of *Montagnars*,[a] or Mountain Indians, from a range of hills or mountains west of Quebec. [6]The tribes found on the Ottawa River, however, speaking a different dialect, were called *Algonquins*.

7. *Distinction between these names, and extent of the latter term.*

[7]The distinction between the Montagnars and the Algonquins was kept up for some time, until the latter term finally prevailed, and was applied, by the French, to that great family of tribes extending throughout the eastern portions of North America, and speaking dialects of a common language.

8. *Original application of the term.*

[8]It is difficult to ascertain whether the term Algonquin belonged, originally, to any particular tribe, or was used as a generic appellation.

9. *The Knistenaux Indians, and the Chippewas.*
b. Nis-te-no.

[9]*The Knistenaux*[b] *Indians*, the most northerly division of the Algonquin family, are a numerous tribe, and are still found throughout a large tract of country, extending from Labrador to the Rocky Mountains. *The Chippewas*, likewise a numerous Algonquin tribe, are now found on the western shores of Lake Superior.

10. *The Ottawas.*

[10]*The Ottawas*, found on the river of that name, were an Algonquin tribe, formerly residing on the western shores of Lake Huron.

11. *Their jurisdiction.*

[11]Their claims to the right of sovereignty over the Ottawa River were generally recognized, and they exacted a tribute from all the Indians going to or

coming from the country of the Hurons. The Algonquin tribes of the Ottawa River were allied with the Hurons in their wars with the Five Nations; and after the almost total destruction of the Hurons in 1650, a part of the Ottawas, accompanied by a few Hurons, after some wanderings, joined their kindred tribes at the south of Lake Superior.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Their alliance with the Hurons, dispersion, war with the English, and wanderings.*

The Ottawas subsequently, in 1671, removed to the vicinity of Michilimackinac, and finally returned to their original seats on the west side of Lake Huron, and until recently have continued to occupy a great portion of the Michigan peninsula. Under Pontiac, their chief, they were at the head of the great Indian confederacy of 1763, which in a short time captured nearly all the British posts on the western frontier. At the time of their dispersion, in 1650, portions of the Ottawas sought refuge among the French, and their descendants still reside in several villages of Lower Canada.

PONTIAC, a chief of the Ottawa nation, was one of the most famous Indian warriors ever known to the English, not excepting even King Philip or Tecumseh.

He is first brought to the notice of the English after the fall of Quebec in 1760, when Major Rogers was sent into the western country to take possession of the posts stipulated to be surrendered by the French. Pontiac had previously been warmly attached to the French, and had assisted them in their Indian wars. On his way Major Rogers was met by ambassadors from Pontiac, desiring him to halt until their chief could see him with his own eyes, and likewise informing him that Pontiac was the king and lord of that country.

Pontiac soon met the English officer and demanded his business, and haughtily asked him how he dared enter the country of the Indians without permission from their chief. Finally, however, he smoked the pipe of peace with the officer, and gave him permission to pass through the country unmolested, with the assurance that he should be protected from the fury of those Indians who were hostile towards him and wished to cut him off. Major Rogers observes, that, during several conferences which he had with him, "Pontiac discovered great strength of judgment, and a thirst after knowledge."

Soon after this Pontiac became hostile to the English, probably because he observed in them a design to extend their sovereignty over his country. He was willing to allow the English to settle in his dominions if they would acknowledge *him* as their sovereign; but he declared, that if they did not conduct themselves according to his wishes, "he would shut up the way" and keep them out. He continued, however, with Indian craft and cunning, to express his friendship for the English until he had united the strength of many tribes to his own The Miamis, Ottawas, Chippewas, Wyandots, Pottowattomies, Mississaguies, Shawnees, Outagamies or Foxes, and Winnebagoes, constituted his power, as they did, in after times, that of Tecumseh.

With such secrecy and adroitness were the plans of Pontiac developed, that he dissipated the fears of the commandants of all the Western posts until the very moment that the blow was struck; and within fifteen days, in the summer of 1763, all the English garrisons and posts in the West, but three, fell into his hands. At Michilimackinac, the Ottawas, to whom the assault was intrusted, got into the fort by stratagem, while engaged in a great game of ball, to which the officers were invited. Only Niagara, Pittsburg, and Detroit escaped. Pittsburg was saved by the expedition of Colonel Boquet, who dispersed the besiegers at the point of the bayonet.

Detroit was saved by information conveyed to the commandant by an Indian woman, the night before the premeditated attack, which was to be made while Pontiac and his warriors should be holding a friendly council with the garrison. The Indians continued the siege of the place until the spring of 1764, when General Bradstreet arriving with reenforcements, the different tribes came in, and peace was established. Pontiac, however, took no part

in the negociations, but abandoned the country and repaired to Illinois, where he was not long after assassinated by a Peoria Indian—but for what cause has not been satisfactorily shown.

It is said that in the war of 1763, usually called "Pontiac's War," this chief appointed a commissary, and began to make and issue bills of credit, which were received by the French inhabitants, and punctually redeemed by Pontiac. His bills, or notes, were made of bark, on which was drawn the figure of the commodity which he wished to obtain in exchange, with the shape of an otter, the insignia or arms of his nation, drawn under it.

ANALYSIS.

1. *The Mississaguies.*

[1]*The Mississaguies*, a tribe found south of the River Ottawa, and adjoining the Hurons, appear to have separated their cause from that of their kindred tribes, and to have been either in alliance with the Five Nations, or permitted to remain neutral. Remnants of this tribe are still found in Canada.

2. *Micmacs.*

[2]*The Micmacs*, first called by the French *Souriquois*, held possesssion of Nova Scotia and the adjacent isles, and were early known as the active allies of the French.

3. *Etchemins.*

[3]*The Etchemins*, or "Canoemen," embraced the tribes of the St. John's River, and extended westwardly along the sea-shore as far as Mount Desert Isle.

4. *Abenakes.—Their principal tribes.*

[4]Abenakes. Next to the Etchemins were found the Abenakes, extending to the Saco River, and consisting of several tribes, the principal of which were the *Penobscots*, the *Norridgewocks*, and the *Androscoggins*.

5. *Converted by the Jesuits. Attached to the French.*

[5]The Micmacs, the Etchemins, and the Abenakes, were early converted by the French Jesuits. They remained firmly attached to the French until the conquest of Canada in 1760, and were almost constantly in a state of hostilities with the British Colonies.

6. *Withdrawal to Canada.*

[6]In the year 1754, all the Abenakes, with the exception of the Penobscots, who still reside on the river to which they have given their name, withdrew to Canada.

7. *Neutrality.*

[7]The Penobscot, the Passamaquoddy, and the St. John Indians, remained neutral during the war of the Revolution.

8. *New England Indians.*

[8]New England Indians. The New England Indians, as they have generally been called, embraced the tribes from the Saco River to the eastern boundary of Connecticut.

9. *Principal tribes, and localities.*

[9]Their principal tribes were, 1st, *The Massachusetts*, adjoining the Bay of that name: 2d, *The Pawtuckets*, north east of the Massachusetts, and embracing the Penacooks of New Hampshire: 3d, *The Nipmucks*, north of the Mohegans, and occupying the central parts of Massachusetts: 4th, *The Pokanokets*, to whom the Wampanoags belonged, extending from the shores of Massachusetts Bay to Bristol in Rhode Island: and 5th, *The Narragansetts*, in the remaining portion of Rhode Island.

10. *Subdivisions.*

[10]These divisions, however, were subdivided into a number of petty cantons, or small tribes, each having its

ANALYSIS.

own sachem, or chief, who was in a great degree independent of the others. [1]Thus, the Pokanokets were divided into nine separate cantons or tribes, each having its petty sagamore or chief, but all subject to one grand sachem, who was also chief of the Wampanoags.

1. *Example.*

[2]The population of the New England Indians had been greatly diminished by a fatal epidemic which prevailed a short time before the arrival of the Puritans; but their number is supposed to have been much greater, in proportion to the extent of territory occupied by them, than was found elsewhere on the shores of the Atlantic. For this, two causes have been assigned.

2. *Population.*

[3]First;—The New England Indians were supported mostly by fishing; and the supply of food thus obtained is greater, and more uniform than that afforded by hunting. It was found, accordingly, that the Narragansetts were, in proportion to their territory, the most populous of the New England tribes. In the second place;—it appears probable that the New England Indians had been obliged to concentrate themselves along the sea-coast, in order to be able to resist the attacks of the Five Nations, with whom they were almost constantly at war. [4]The Maquas, or Mohawks, were the most formidable of their adversaries, and so great was the terror which they excited in the less warlike tribes of New England, that the appearance of four or five Mohawks in the woods, would often frighten them from their habitations, and drive them to seek shelter in their forts, for safety.

3. *Causes of the increased population of the New England tribes.*

4. *The Mohawks.*

[5]The Indians east of the Connecticut River never were, however, actually subjugated by the Five Nations; and in 1671 a permanent peace was established between them, through the interference of the English, and the Dutch at Albany. [6]After the termination of King Philip's war,[a] in 1676, which resulted in the defeat of the hostile Indians, most of the survivors either joined the eastern tribes, or sought refuge in Canada, whence they continued to harass the frontiers of New England, until the final overthrow of the French, in 1763.[b] [7]Since that period, the eastern Indians have remained friendly, but their numbers are said to amount now to only a few hundred, and their languages, with the exception of the Narragansett, are nearly extinct.

5. *Indians east of the Connecticut.*

6. *The survivors of King Philip's war.*

a. See p. 196.

b. See p. 283.

7. *Eastern Indians since 1763.*

For the purpose of giving some farther information about the New England tribes, we subjoin a brief notice of several of their principal chiefs.

The first chief with whom the people of Plymouth became acquainted, was MASSASOIT, grand Sachem of the Wampanoags, whose principal residence was at Pokanoket, now Bristol, Rhode Island. It appears that, at one time, before he was known to the whites, Massasoit carried on successful wars "against many nations of Indians" whom he made tributary to him; and yet, with such kind paternal authority did he rule over them, that all appeared to

revere him, and to consider themselves happy in being under his authority. So long as he lived he was a friend to the English, although they committed repeated usurpations upon his lands and liberties. Before his death, which is supposed to have occurred in 1662, he had been induced to cede away, at different times, nearly all his lands to the English.

One of the most renowned captains, or war-chiefs, within the dominions of Massasoit, was Caunbitant, whose residence was at a place in the present town of Swanzey. The English were always viewed by him as intruders, and enemies of his race; and there is but little doubt that he intended to wrest the country out of their hands on the first opportunity.

Hobomok, another of the chief captains of Massasoit, and greatly beloved by him, was a firm friend of the English, and also a professed Christian.

The great Sachem of the *Narragansetts* at the time of the settlement of New England, was Canonicus; who ruled in great harmony, in connection with a younger Sachem, his nephew, Miantonomoh. It was Canonicus who, in 1622, sent into Plymouth a bundle of arrows wrapped in a rattlesnake's skin, as a challenge for war. Although the people of Plymouth and Boston were at times jealous of Canonicus, yet he is often mentioned with great respect by Roger Williams, who says, "Were it not for the favor that God gave me with Canonicus, none of these parts, no, not Rhode Island, had been purchased or obtained; for I never got anything of Canonicus but by gift."

Under Canonicus and Miantonomoh, the Narragansetts assisted the English in the Pequod war; but, soon after, Miantonomoh was accused of plotting against them, and he was repeatedly obliged to visit Boston, to free himself from the suspicion excited against him by his enemies, and chiefly by Uncas, Sagamore of the Mohegans, against whom he finally declared war. In this war, Miantonomoh was taken prisoner by Uncas, and being delivered into the hands of the English, the commissioners of the United colonies decided that "he ought to be put to death," and that his execution should be intrusted to Uncas himself, by whom he was accordingly slain. From all the accounts that we have of the relations between the English and Miantonomoh, we are forced to the conclusion, that, in the conduct of the former, there was much deserving of censure.

Ninigret, a cousin of Miantonomoh, also a distinguished chief, was Sachem of the *Nianticks*, a Narragansett tribe. As he was an enemy of Uncas and the Mohegans, the English were ever jealous of him; and it is believed that he once endeavored to organize a plan for their extermination; yet he took no part in Philip's war, being at that time very old, and having withdrawn himself and tribe from the nation to which they belonged.

John Sassamon, a Pokanoket Indian, and subject of Philip, became a convert to Christianity,—learned the English language—was able to read and write—and translated some of the Bible into the Indian tongue. On account of his learning he was at one time employed by Philip as his secretary or interpreter. He was afterwards employed by the English, as an instructor and preacher among the converted Indians. When he learned that his countrymen were plotting a war against the English, he communicated his discovery to the latter. For this he was considered by his countrymen a traitor and an outlaw, and, according to the laws of the Indians, deserving of death Early in the spring of 1675, Sassamon was found murdered. Three Indians were arraigned for the murder, by the English, convicted and executed.

Some authorities, however, state that Sassamon was murdered by his countrymen for teaching Christian doctrines;—that the English tried and executed the murderers,—and that Philip was so exasperated against the English for this act, that, from that time, he studied to be revenged on them. By some this has been assigned, erroneously we believe, as the principal cause of King Philip's war.

Philip of *Pokanoket*, whose Indian name was *Pometacom* or *Metacomet*, was the most renowned of all the chiefs of the New England tribes. He was a son of Massasoit, who is supposed to have died early in 1662, and who was succeeded by his eldest son Alexander: but the latter dying a few months after, Philip himself became, by the order of succession, head chief of the Wampanoags. We find the following account of the origin of the names of these chiefs: "After Massasoit was dead, his two sons, called *Wamsutta* and *Metacomet*, came to the court at Plymouth; pretending high respect for the English, and therefore desired that English names might be given them; whereupon the court there named Wamsutta, the elder brother, *Alexander;* and Metacomet, the younger brother, *Philip*." Of the celebrated war which Philip waged against the New England Colonies, an account has elsewhere been given.* With the

* See page 192.

soul of a hero, and the genius of a warrior, he fought bravely, although in vain, to stay the tide that was fast sweeping to destruction the nation and the race to which he belonged.

CANONCHET, or, as he was sometimes called, *Nanuntenoo*, a son of Miantonomoh, took part in Philip's war against the English; although, but a short time previous, he had signed a treaty of peace with them. He is described by the early historians, as "the mighty sachem of the Narragansetts," and "heir of all his father's pride and insolence, as well as of his malice against the English." When taken prisoner, in April, 1676, it is said that "his carriage was strangely proud and lofty," and that, at first, he would make no other reply to the questions put to him, than this,—'that he was born a prince, and if princes came to speak with him he would answer, but none present being such, he thought himself obliged, in honor, to hold his tongue.' When it was announced to him that he must be put to death, he is reported to have said, "*I like it well; I shall die before my heart is soft, or have said any thing unworthy of myself.*"

One of Philip's most famous counsellors or captains was *Annawon*, a Wampanoag chief, who had also served under Massasoit, Philip's father. He was taken prisoner by Captain Church, through the treachery of some of his own company. It is said that Annawon confessed 'that he had put to death several of the English that had been taken alive, and could not deny but that some of them had been tortured.' Although Captain Church entreated hard for the life of the aged chief, yet he was remorselessly executed

ANALYSIS

1. *Mohegans.*

[1]MOHEGANS. To the many independent tribes extending from the eastern New England Indians to the Lenni Lenapes on the south, the term Mohegan, the name of a tribe on the Hudson, has sometimes been applied; although all these tribes appear to have differed but little, in their languages, from the more eastern Indians.

2. *Pequods.*

[2]The Pequods were the most important, and, until the revolt of Uncas, the ruling tribe of this family, and their sovereignty was once acknowledged over a portion of Long Island. It is said that they, "being a more fierce, cruel, and warlike tribe than the rest of the Indians, came down out of the more inland parts of the continent, and by force seized upon one of the goodliest places near the sea, and became a terror to all their neighbors." The peace of the New England colonies was early disturbed by a war with this tribe.

3. *Long Island Indians.*

[3]There were thirteen distinct tribes on Long Island, over whom the *Montauks*, the most eastern tribe, exercised some kind of authority; although the Montauks themselves had been tributary to the Pequods, before the subjugation of the latter by the English.

4. *The Manhattans*

[4]From the *Manhattans*, the Dutch purchased Manhattan Island; but they appear to have been frequently in a state of hostility with those Indians, and to have been reduced to great distress by them in 1643. In 1645, however, the Manhattans and the Long Island Indians were defeated[a] in a severe battle, which took place at Horseneck. [5]In 1663, the *Wabingas*, or Esopus Indians, commenced hostilities against the Dutch, but were soon defeated. [6]Many of the Mohegan tribes were reduced to subjection by the Five Nations, to whom they paid an annual tribute; but the Mohegans proper, or "River

a. See p.

5. *Wabingas.*

6. *Wars between the Mohegans and Five Nations.*

ANALYSIS. Indians," carried on war against the Five Nations as late as 1673, when peace was established between them, through the influence of the Governor of New York.

1. *Remnant of the Mohegans.* [1]In 1768 the remnant of the Mohegans was settled in the north east corner of New London, about five miles south of Norwich, at which place they had a reservation.

When the Mohegans were first known to the English, UNCAS was the head chief of that nation. He has received no very favorable character from the historians of New England, being represented as wicked, wilful, intemperate, and otherwise vicious, and an opposer of Christianity. He was originally a Pequod chief, but, upon some contentions in that ill-fated nation, he revolted, and established his authority in opposition to his sachem Sassacus, thus causing a division in the Pequod territories. Uncas early courted the favor of the English, doubtless owing to the fear he entertained of his other powerful and warlike neighbors. He joined the English in the war against the Pequods, his kindred; but, after the war, he relented his severity against his countrymen, and endeavored to screen some of them from their more vindictive enemies, the English.

He was often accused, before the English commissioners, of committing the grossest insults on other Indians under the protection of the English, but the penalties adjudged against him, and members of his tribe, were always more moderate than those imposed upon the less favored Narragansetts, for which, the only reason that can be assigned is, that the safety of the English seemed to require that they should keep on friendly terms with the Mohegans, the most powerful of the tribes by which they were surrounded. Uncas lived to a great age, as he was a sachem before the Pequod war of 1637, and was alive in 1680. His grave, surrounded by an inclosure, may be seen at this day in a beautiful and romantic spot, near the falls of Yantic River, in Norwich.

The first great chief of the Pequod nation, with whom the English were acquainted, was SASSACUS, whose name was a terror to all the neighboring tribes of Indians. He had under him, at one time, no less than twenty-six sachems, and 4000 men fit for war, and his dominions extended from Narragansett Bay to the Hudson River. Sassacus was early involved in difficulties with the English, and also with the Narragansetts, and others of his Indian neighbors. When one of his principal forts was attacked and destroyed by the English in 1637, Sassacus himself destroyed the other, and then fled to the Mohawks, who treacherously slew him, and sent his scalp to the English.

2. *The Lenni Lenape tribes.* [2]LENNI LENAPES. Next south and west of the Mohegans were the Lenni Lenapes, consisting of two tribes, or divisions, the *Minsi* and the *Delawares*. The term Lenni Lenape has sometimes been used as a generic term, and applied to all the tribes of the Algonquin family.

3. *Their localities.* [3]The Minsi occupied the northern portion of New Jersey, north of the Raritan, extending across the Delaware into Pennsylvania; and the Delawares the southern portion of New Jersey, and the entire valley of the Schuylkill.

4. *By what name first known, and how situated.* [4]Both divisions are best known in history by the name of Delawares. When they were first known to the English they were found in subjection to the Five Nations, by whom they were distinguished by the scornful epithet of "women."

5. *Their final subjection and vassalage.* [5]Their final subjection is supposed to have taken place about the year 1650, when they were reduced to a state of vassalage, being prohibited from carrying on war, or making sales of land, without the consent of their conquerors.

ANALYSIS.

1. *The Delawares driven from their original seats.*

2. *The removal of a part west of the Alleghanies.*

3. *The course pursued by those who remained.*

4. *Peace with them, and their final removal.*

5. *Their conduct during the Revolution.*

6. *Of the part they took in the great Western Indian Confederacy, and the subsequent cession of their lands.*

7. *Their conduct during the last war, their number present situation, &c.*

[1]The increase of the white population soon drove the Delawares from their original seats, and compelled them to take refuge on the waters of the Susquehanna and Juniata, on lands belonging to their conquerors, the Five Nations. [2]Many of the Delawares removed west of the Alleghany Mountains between 1740 and 1750, and obtained from their ancient allies, the Hurons, the grant of a tract of land lying principally on the Muskingum. [3]The great body of the nation, however, still remained in Pennsylvania, and, encouraged by the western tribes and by the French, they endeavored to shake off the yoke of the Five Nations, and joined the Shawnees, against the English, in the French and Indian War. [4]Peace was made with them at Easton, Pennsylvania, in 1758; and in 1768 they removed altogether beyond the Alleghanies.

[5]Although a portion of the Delawares adhered to the Americans during the war of the Revolution, yet the main body, with all the western tribes, took part with the British. [6]The Delawares were at the head of the western confederacy of Indians which was dissolved by the decisive victory of General Wayne in 1794; and by the treaty of Greenville, in 1795, they ceded to the United States the greater part of the lands allotted them by the Wyandots or Hurons, receiving in exchange, from the Miamis, a tract of land on the White River of the Wabash. [7]They remained quiet during the second war with the British, and in 1819 ceded their lands to the United States. Their number was then about eight hundred. A few had previously removed to Canada: most of the residue have since removed west of the Mississippi. The number of these, in 1840, was estimated at four hundred souls.

A prominent chief of the Delawares, distinguished at the time of the American Revolution, was Captain WHITE EYES, called, by way of distinction, "the first captain among the Delawares." He became chief sachem in 1776, having previously been chief counsellor to *Netawatwees*, the former chief. He belonged to that portion of the Delawares who adhered to the Americans during the war. He was a firm friend of the missionaries, and it is said that he looked forward with anxiety to the time when his countrymen should become Christians, and enjoy the benefits of civilization. He died of the small pox, at Philadelphia, in 1780.

Another Delaware chief, who lived at the same time with White Eyes, was Captain PIPE, who belonged to the Wolf tribe. He secretly favored the British on the breaking out of the Revolution, but his plans for inducing his nation to take up arms against the Americans were for some time defeated by the vigilance of White Eyes; but the Delawares finally became divided, most of them, under Captain Pipe, taking part with the British. From a speech which Captain Pipe made to the British commandant at Detroit, it is believed that he regretted the course that he had taken, perceiving that the Indians, in taking part in the quarrels of their white neighbors, had nothing to gain, and much to lose. He remarked that the cause for which he was fighting was not the cause of the Indians—that after he had taken up the hatchet he did not do with it all that he might have done, for his heart failed him—he had distinguished between the innocent and the guilty—he had spared some, and hoped the British would not destroy what he had saved.

ANALYSIS.

1. Locality of the Nanticokes.
2. The Conoys.
3. Their subjugation.
4. Their removals and conduct during the Revolution.
5. Their present situation.

[1]NANTICOKES. The Indians of the eastern shore of Maryland have been embraced under the general designation of Nanticokes. [2]The *Conoys* were either a tribe of the Nanticokes, or were intimately connected with them. [3]The whole were early subdued by the Five Nations, and forced to enter into an alliance with them. [4]During the early part of the eighteenth century they began to remove up the Susquehanna, where they had lands allotted them by the Five Nations, and where they remained until the commencement of the war of the Revolution, when they removed to the west, and joined the British standard. [5]They no longer exist as a nation, but are still found mixed with other tribes, both in the United States and in Canada.

6. First discovery of the Susquehannocks.
7. Their situation and possessions.
8. Their subjugation and subsequent history.

SUSQUEHANNOCKS. [6]The Susquehannock, or Canestagoe Indians, were first discovered by Captain Smith, in his exploring expedition up the Chesapeake and the Susquehanna in 1608. [7]They were found fortified east of the Susquehanna, to defend themselves against the incursions of the Five Nations. They possessed the country north and west of the Nanticokes, from the Lenni Lenapes to the Potomac. [8]They were conquered by Maryland and the Five Nations in 1676, when it appears that a portion were carried away and adopted by the Oneidas. What became of the remainder is uncertain. There is no remnant whatever of their language remaining.

9. The Mannahoacks, and their localities.
10. Name of the confederacy.
11. Their supposed origin.

[9]MANNAHOACKS. The Mannahoacks were a confederacy of highland or mountain Indians, consisting of eight tribes, located on the various small streams between the head waters of the Potomac and York River. [10]The most powerful of these tribes gave its name to the confederacy. [11]They are supposed to have been an Algonquin tribe, although no specimen of their language has been preserved.

12. The localities of the Monacans, their supposed origin, and their history.

MONACANS. [12]The Monacans were situated principally on the head waters of James River. The Tuscaroras appear likewise to have been early known in Virginia under the name of Monacans, and it is uncertain whether the latter were of Iroquois or Algonquin origin. It is not improbable, however, that those embraced under the general designation of Monacans, were Algonquin tribes, and tributaries of the Tuscaroras; but as no remnant of their language remains, their origin cannot be satisfactorily determined. Of their history little is known.

13. Extent and locality of the Powhatan nation.
14. The Accohannocks, and Accomacs.

POWHATANS. [13]The Powhatan nation embraced a confederacy of more than twenty tribes, extending from the most southern tributaries of James River, on the south, to the Patuxent on the north. [14]The Accohannocks and the

ANALYSIS.

Accomacs, on the eastern shore of Chesapeake Bay, have also been considered a part of this nation. [1]Powhatan was the great chief of this confederacy, at the time of the first settlement of Virginia. [2]Soon after his death the Indians made an attempt, in 1622, to destroy the infant colony, in which they nearly succeeded, but were finally defeated. In 1644 they made another effort, which terminated in a similar manner; and in 1676, during "Bacon's Rebellion," their total subjugation was effected. [3]From that time they had lands reserved to them, but they have gradually dwindled away, and it is believed that not a single individual now remains who speaks the Powhatan language.

1. The great chief of the confederacy.

2. Their wars with the whites, and their final subjugation.

3. Their subsequent history.

[4]South of the Powhatans, on the sea-coast, were several petty Algonquin tribes, whose history is little known. The principal were the Corees, and Cheraws, or Coramines, in the vicinity of Cape Fear River, which was probably the southern limit of the Algonquin speech.

4. Algonquin tribes south of the Powhatans.

When POWHATAN was first known to the English, he was about sixty years of age, of a grave aspect, tall, and well proportioned—exceedingly vigorous—and capable of sustaining great hardships. His authority extended over many nations or tribes, most of which he had conquered. The English at first erroneously supposed that his was the name of the country; but the error has prevailed, and his people have ever since been called the *Powhatans*. According to the law of succession in his nation, his dominions did not fall to his children, but first to his brothers, then to his sisters, the eldest having precedency.

He usually kept a guard of forty or fifty warriors around him, especially when he slept; but after the English came into the country he increased the number of his guard to about two hundred. Powhatan at first practiced much deception towards the English, and his plans for their destruction manifested great cunning and sagacity. But he found in Captain Smith an adversary even more wily than himself, and failing in all his plans to overreach him, he finally concluded to live in peace with the English, especially after the friendship of the two people had been cemented by the marriage of his favorite daughter *Pocahontas*.

When Pocahontas accompanied her husband to England, Powhatan sent with her one of his favorite counsellors, whom he instructed to learn the state of the country—to note the number of the people—and, if he saw Captain Smith, to make him show him the God of the English, and the king and queen. When he arrived at Plymouth, he began, accordingly, *to number the people*, by cutting in a stick, a notch for every person whom he saw. But he was soon obliged to abandon his reckoning. On his return, being questioned by Powhatan about the numbers of the English, he gave the following well known answer, "*Count the stars in the sky, the leaves on the trees, and the sands upon the sea-shore, for such is the number of the people of England.*"

Of the descendants of Pocahontas, the following is believed to be a correct account.—The son of Pocahontas, whose name was Thomas Rolfe, was educated in London by his uncle, Mr. Henry Rolfe. He afterwards came to America, where he became a gentleman of considerable distinction, and possessed an ample fortune. He left an only daughter, who having married Colonel Robert Bolling, died leaving an only son, Major John Bolling, who was the father of Colonel John Bolling and several daughters; one of whom married Colonel Richard Randolph, from whom were descended the distinguished *John Randolph*, and those bearing that name in Virginia at this day.—(Drake's Ind. Hist.)

SHAWNEES. [5]The history of the Shawnees previous to the year 1680 is involved in much obscurity, and the different notices of them are difficult to be reconciled. [6]Their

5. Early history of the Shawnees.

6. Their original seats.

ANALYSIS.

1. Their dispersion.

2. War with the Five Nations, and their defeat.

3. Their settlements among the Catawbas, and Creeks.

4. The Pennsylvania Shawnees.

5. Their removal west of the Alleghanies.

6. Their conduct during the French and Indian War.

7. Their hostilities against the western settlements.

8. Their conduct during and subsequent to the war of the Revolution.

9. During the second war.

10. Their present localities and numbers.

original seats, according to the French accounts, were between the Ohio and the Cumberland River, but it is supposed that they were driven away by the Chickasas and the Cherokees early in the seventeenth century. [1]Thence some of them penetrated as far east as the country of the Susquehannocks, while others crossed the Ohio and occupied the country on and adjacent to the Sciota. [2]Here they joined the neighboring tribes, the Eries and the Andastes, in the war against the Five Nations; but, with their allies, they were defeated and dispersed in 1672. [3]Soon after, a considerable portion of them formed a settlement in the vicinity of the Catawba country, but being driven away by the Catawbas, they found an asylum in the Creek country.

[4]The Pennsylvania Shawnees, although not reduced to the humiliating state in which the Delawares were found, acknowledged the sovereignty of the Five Nations. [5]They preceded the Delawares in removing west of the Alleghanies, and received from the Wyandots the country about the Sciota, where their kindred had formerly resided, and who now returned from the Creek country and joined them.

[6]The Shawnees were among the most active allies of the French during the "French and Indian war;" and even after its termination, by the conquest of Canada, in connection with the Delawares they continued hostilities, which were terminated only after the successful campaign[a] of General Bouquet in 1763. [7]The first permanent settlements of the Americans beyond the Alleghanies were immediately followed by a new war with the Shawnees, which ended in their defeat, in a severe engagement at the mouth of the Kanhawa, in 1774.[b] [8]They took an active part against the Americans during the war of the Revolution, and also during the following Indian war, which was terminated by the treaty of Greenville in 1795. [9]A part of them also, under Tecumseh, fought against the Americans during the second war with England. [10]Most of the tribe are now located west of the Mississippi. The number of these, in 1840, was estimated at fifteen hundred souls.

a. See p. 23, account of Pontiac.

b. See pp. 32, 33, Cornstalk and Logan.

CORNSTALK was a noted Shawnee chief and warrior, who, although generally friendly to the Americans, and at all times the advocate of honorable peace, united with Logan in the war of 1774, which was terminated by the great battle of Point Pleasant, on the Kanhawa, in October of the same year. During that battle the voice of Cornstalk was often heard above the din of strife, calling on his men in these words, "Be strong! be strong!" His advice had been against hazarding a battle, but when the other chiefs had decided against him, he said his warriors should fight, and if any one should flinch in the contest, or attempt to run away, he would kill him with his own hand. And he made good his word. For when some of his warriors began to waver, he is said to have sunk his tomahawk into the head of one who was

cowardly endeavoring to escape from the conflict. After the battle, which was unfortunate to the Indians, Cornstalk himself went to the camp of the whites to solicit peace.

This chief was remarkable for many great and noble qualities, and it is said that his powers of oratory were unsurpassed by those of any chief of his time. His death was most melancholy and deplorable. He was barbarously murdered by some infuriated soldiers, while he was a hostage at the fort at Point Pleasant, to which place he had gone voluntarily, for the purpose of preserving peace between the whites and some of the tribes that were desirous of continuing the war. As he saw the murderers approaching, and was made acquainted with their object, turning to his son, who had just come to visit him, he said, "*My son, the Great Spirit has seen fit that we should die together, and has sent you to that end. It is his will, and let us submit.*" Turning towards the murderers he met them with composure—fell—and died without a struggle. His son was shot upon the seat on which he was sitting when his fate was first disclosed to him.

While our histories record with all possible minuteness, the details of Indian barbarities, how seldom do they set forth, in their true light, those "wrongs of the Indian" that made him the implacable foe of the white man.

TECUMSEH, another celebrated chief of the Shawnee nation, whose name is as familiar to the American people as that of Philip of Mount Hope, or Pontiac, and which signifies *a tiger crouching for his prey*, was born about the year 1770, on the banks of the Sciota, near the present Chilicothe. His father was killed in the battle of Kanhawa, in 1774.

The superior talents of Tecumseh, then a young chief, had made him conspicuous in the western war which terminated in the treaty of Greenville in 1795, and he appears soon after, in conjunction with his brother the *Prophet*, to have formed the plan of a confederacy of all the western tribes for the purpose of resisting the encroachments of the whites, and driving them back upon their Atlantic settlements. In this plan the Prophet was first distinguished, and it was some time before it was discovered that Tecumseh was the principal actor.

Tecumseh addressed himself to the prejudices and superstitions of the Indians—to their love of country—their thirst for war—and their feelings of revenge; and to every passion that could unite and influence them against the whites. He thus acquired, by perseverance, by assuming arts of popularity, by dispatching his rivals under charges of witchcraft, and by a fortunate juncture of circumstances, a powerful influence over his countrymen, which served to keep the frontiers in constant alarm many years before the war actually commenced.

In 1807 messengers were sent to the tribes of Lake Superior, with speeches and the usual formalities, urging them to repair immediately to the rendezvous of the Prophet. They were told that the world was approaching its end; that that distant part of the country would soon be without light, and the inhabitants would be left to grope their way in total darkness, and that the only spot where they would be able to distinguish objects, was the Prophet's station, on the Wabash. Many cogent arguments were also used to induce them to refrain from the use of civilized manufactures, to resume the bow, to obtain fire by the ancient method, to reject the use of ardent spirits, and to live as in primitive times, before they were corrupted by the arts of the white man.

Numerous bands of the credulous Indians, obeying this summons, departed for the Prophet's station, and the whole southern shore of Lake Superior was depopulated. Much suffering was occasioned, and numbers of the Indians died by the way; yet in 1808 the Prophet had collected around him more than a thousand warriors from different tribes—designed as the nucleus of a mighty nation. It was not so easy a matter, however, to keep these motley bands together, and they soon began to stray away to their former hunting grounds, and the plan of the brothers was partially defeated.

In 1809, during the absence of Tecumseh, General Harrison, by direction of the government, held a treaty with several tribes, and purchased of them a large and valuable tract of land on the Wabash. When Tecumseh, on his return, was informed of this treaty, his indignation knew no bounds. Another council was called, when Tecumseh clearly and undisguisedly marked out the policy he was determined to pursue. He denied the right of a few tribes to sell their lands—said the Great Spirit had given the country to his red children in common, for a perpetual inheritance—that one tribe had no right to sell to another, much less to strangers. unless all the tribes joined in the treaty. "The Americans," said he, "have driven us from the seacoast—they will shortly push us into the lake, and we are determined to make a stand where we are." He declared that he should adhere to the *old boundary*, and that unless the lands

purchased should be given up, and the whites should agree never to make another treaty without the consent of all the tribes, his unalterable resolution was *war*.

Several chiefs of different tribes,—Wyandots, Kickapoos, Potowatomies, Ottawas, and Winnebagoes, then arose, each declaring his determination to stand by Tecumseh, whom they had chosen their leader. When asked, finally, if it were his determination to make war unless his terms were complied with, he said, "It is my determination; nor will I give rest to my feet, until I have united all the red men in the like resolution." When Harrison told him there was no probability that the President would surrender the lands purchased, he said, "Well, I hope the Great Spirit will put sense enough into the head of your great chief to induce him to direct you to give up the land. It is true, he is so far off he will not be injured by the war. He may sit still in his town, and drink his wine, whilst you and I will have to fight it out."

The following circumstance, characteristic of the spirit which actuated the haughty chief, occurred during the council. After Tecumseh had made a speech to General Harrison, and was about to seat himself, it was observed that no chair had been placed for him. One was immediately ordered by the General, and as the interpreter handed it to him he said, "Your father requests you to take a chair." "*My father?*" said Tecumseh, with great indignity of expression, "*The sun is my father, and the earth is my mother, and on her bosom will I repose;*" and wrapping his mantle around him, he seated himself, in the Indian manner, upon the ground.

The exertions of Tecumseh, in preparing for the war which followed, were commensurate with the vastness of his plans; and it is believed that he visited, in person, all the tribes from Lake Superior to Georgia.—The details of that war have been given in another part of this work. (See p. 32.)

It is believed that Tecumseh never exercised cruelty to prisoners. In a talk which he had with Governor Harrison, just before hostilities commenced, the latter expressed a wish, that, if war must follow, no unnecessary cruelties should be allowed on either side; to which Tecumseh cordially assented. It is known that, at one time, when a body of the Americans were defeated, Tecumseh exerted himself to put a stop to the massacre of the soldiers, and that, meeting with a Chippewa chief, who would not desist by persuasion nor threats, he buried his tomahawk in his head.

When Tecumseh fell, the spirit of independence, which for a while had animated the western tribes, seemed to perish with him; and it is not probable that a chief will ever again arise to unite them in another confederacy equally powerful.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Miamis and Pinckishaws, and the territory claimed by them.*

2. *Their relations with the Five Nations.*

3. *With the United States.*

4. *Their lands and numbers.*

MIAMIS AND PINCKISHAWS. [1]The Pinckishaws are not mentioned by the French missionaries, who probably considered them as part of the Miamis. The territory claimed by these two tribes extended from the Maumee River of Lake Erie to the high lands which separate the waters of the Wabash from those of the Kaskaskias River. The Miamis occupied the northern, and the Pinckishaws the southern portion of this territory. [2]The Miamis were called *Twightees* by the Five Nations, against whom they carried on a sanguinary war, in alliance with the French. [3]They have been one of the most active western tribes in the Indian wars against the United States. [4]They have ceded most of their lands, and, including the Pinckishaws, were said to number, in 1840, about two thousand souls.

LITTLE TURTLE was a distinguished chief of the Miamis during the western Indian wars which followed the American Revolution. He was the son of a Miami chief and Mohegan woman, and as, according to the Indian law, the condition of the woman adheres to the offspring, he was not a chief by birth, but was raised to that standing by his superior talents.

Possessing great influence with the western tribes, as one of their leaders, he fought the armies of General Harmar, St. Clair, and General Wayne, and, at least in one of the battles, the disastrous defeat of St. Clair, he had the chief command. It is said, however that he was

not for fighting General Wayne at the rapids of the Maumee, and that in a council held the night before the battle he argued as follows: "We have beaten the enemy twice under separate commanders. We cannot expect the same good fortune always to attend us. The Americans are now led by a chief who never sleeps: the night and the day are alike to him. And during all the time that he has been marching upon our villages, notwithstanding the watchfulness of our young men, we have never been able to surprise him. Think well of it. There is something whispers me it would be prudent to listen to his offers of peace." The other chiefs, however, decided against him, and he did his duty in the day of battle: but the result proved his anticipations correct.

From his irresistible fury in battle the Indians sometimes called him the *Big-Wind*, or *Tornado;* and also *Sukachgook*, or the *Black Snake*, because they said he possessed all the art and cunning of that reptile. But he is said to have been as humane as he was courageous, and that "there have been few individuals among the aborigines who have done so much to abolish the rites of human sacrifice."

When Little Turtle became convinced that all resistance to the whites was vain, he induced his nation to consent to peace, and to adopt agricultural pursuits. In 1797 he visited Philadelphia, where the celebrated traveler Volney became acquainted with him. He gives us some interesting information concerning the character of this noted chief.

Little Turtle also became acquainted, in Philadelphia, with the renowned Polish patriot Kosciusko; who was so well pleased with him, that on parting, he presented the chief a pair of beautiful pistols, and an elegant and valuable robe made of sea-otter skin. Little Turtle died at Fort Wayne, in the summer of 1812.

ILLINOIS. [1]The Illinois, formerly the most numerous of the western Algonquins, numbering, when first known, ten or twelve thousand souls, consisted of five tribes; the *Kaskaskias*, *Cahokias*, *Tamaronas*, *Peorias*, and *Mitchigamias;* the last, a foreign tribe from the west side of the Mississippi, but admitted into the confederacy. [2]The Illinois, being divided among themselves, were ultimately almost exterminated by the surrounding hostile tribes, and the Iroquois; and when, in 1818, they ceded all their lands to the United States, their numbers were reduced to about three hundred souls.

ANALYSIS.

1. *The numbers, and tribes, of the Illinois Indians.*

2. *Their history.*

KICKAPOOS. [3]The Kickapoos claimed all the country north of the mouth of the Illinois, and between that river and the Wabash, the southern part of their territory having been obtained by conquest from the Illinois. In 1819 they made a final cession of all their lands to the United States.

3. *The Kickapoos.*

SACS AND FOXES. [4]The Sacs,* and the Foxes or Outagamies, are but one nation, speaking the same language. [5]They were first discovered by the French, on Fox River, at the southern extremity of Green Bay, somewhat farther east than the territory which a portion of them have occupied until recently. [6]The Foxes were particularly hostile to the French, and in 1712, in conjunction with some other tribes, they attacked[a] the French fort at Detroit, then defended by only twenty men. The French were however relieved by the Ottawas, Hurons, Potowatomies, and other friendly tribes, and a great part of the besieging force was either destroyed or captured.

4. *Identity of the Sacs and Foxes.*

5. *Their original seats.*

6. *Their hostilities with the French.*

a. See p.

* Or *Sawks.*

ANALYSIS.

1. *With the Illinois.*

2. *With the Iowas.*

3. *Their lands.*

[1]The Foxes, united with the Kickapoos, drove the Illinois from their settlements on the river of that name, and compelled them, in 1722, to take refuge in the vicinity of the French settlements. [2]The Iowas, a Sioux tribe, have been partly subjugated by them and admitted into their alliance. During the second war with Great Britain, a part of the Sacs, under their chief Black Hawk, fought against the Americans. [3]In 1830, the Sacs and Foxes ceded to the United States all their lands east of the Mississippi, although portions of these tribes, as late as 1840, were still found east of that river, and west of the territory of the Chippewas. The treaty of 1830 was the cause of a war with a portion of the Sacs, Foxes, and Winnebagoes, usually called "Black Hawk's war."[a]

a. See p. 474.

One of the most prominent chiefs of the Sacs, with whom we are acquainted, was BLACK HAWK, the leader in what is usually called "Black Hawk's war." From the account which he has given in the narrative of his life, dictated by himself, it appears that he was born on Rock River, in Illinois, about the year 1767;—that he joined the British in the second war with Great Britain; and that he fought with them in 1812, near Detroit; and probably was engaged in the attack on the fort at Sandusky.

The war in which he was engaged in 1832, was occasioned, like most Indian wars, by disputes about lands. In July, 1830, by treaty at Prairie du Chien, the Sacs, Foxes, and other tribes, sold their lands east of the Mississippi to the United States. *Keokuck* headed the party of Sacs that made the treaty, but Black Hawk was at the time absent, and ignorant of the proceedings. He said that Keokuck had no right to sell the lands of other chiefs,—and Keokuck even promised that he would attempt to get back again the village and lands which Black Hawk occupied.

In the winter of 1830, while Black Hawk and his party were absent, on their usual winter's hunt, the whites came and possessed their beautiful village at the mouth of Rock River. When the Indians returned they were without a home, or a lodge to cover them. They however declared that they would take possession of their own property, and the whites, alarmed, said *they would live and plant with the Indians.*

But disputes soon followed,—the Indians were badly treated, the whites complained of *encroachments*, and called upon the governor of Illinois for protection, and a force was ordered out to remove the Indians. Black Hawk, however, agreed to a treaty, which was broken the same year by both parties. War followed, and Black Hawk was defeated and taken prisoner. (*See p.* 475.) The following is said to be a part of the speech which he made when he surrendered himself to the agent at Prairie du Chien: (Pra-re doo She-ong.)

"You have taken me prisoner, with all my warriors. I am much grieved, for I expected, if I did not defeat you, to hold out much longer, and give you more trouble before I surrendered. I tried hard to bring you into ambush, but your last general understands Indian fighting. The first one was not so wise. When I saw that I could not beat you by Indian fighting, I determined to rush on you, and fight you face to face. I fought hard. But your guns were well aimed. The bullets flew like birds in the air, and whizzed by our ears like the wind through the trees in the winter. My warriors fell around me; it began to look dismal. I saw my evil day at hand. The sun rose dim on us in the morning, and at night it sunk in a dark cloud, and looked like a ball of fire. That was the last sun that shone on Black Hawk. His heart is dead, and no longer beats quick in his bosom. He is now a prisoner to the white men; they will do with him as they wish. But he can stand torture, and is not afraid of death. He is no coward. Black Hawk is an Indian."

4. *The Potowatomies.*

5. *Where found in 1671.*

POTOWATOMIES. [4]The Potowatomies are intimately connected by alliance and language with the Chippewas and Ottawas. [5]In 1671 they were found by the French on

the islands at the entrance of Green Bay. [1]In 1710 they had removed to the southern extremity of Lake Michigan, on lands previously occupied by the Miamis. [2]The Chippewas, Ottawas, and Potowatomies, numbering more than twenty thousand souls, are now the most numerous tribes of the Algonquin family. [3]All the other Algonquin tribes were estimated in 1840, not to exceed twenty-five thousand souls.

ANALYSIS.

1. *In 1710.*
2. *Numbers of the Chippewas, Ottawas, and Potowatomies.*
3. *Of the other Algonquin tribes.*

MENONOMIES. [4]The Menonomies,* so called from the wild rice which grows abundantly in their country, are found around the shores of Green Bay, and are bounded on the north by the Chippewas, on the south by the Winnebagoes, and on the west by the Sacs, Foxes, and Sioux. When first visited by the French Jesuits, in 1699, they occupied the same territory as at present. [5]They are supposed to number about four thousand two hundred souls.

4. *The Menonomies, and their country, now, and when first visited.*
5. *Their numbers.*

SECTION III.

IROQUOIS TRIBES.

[6]On the shores of the Lakes Ontario, Erie and Huron, were found the Hurons and the Iroquois, speaking a language different from the Algonquin; and, in the northern part of Carolina, bordering on Virginia, were found the Tuscaroras, also speaking a dialect of the same language. [7]These several divisions have been classed as the "Iroquois Tribes," although the term Iroquois has been generally restricted to the Five Nations, who resided south of Lake Ontario, in the present state of New York.

6. *Localities of the Iroquois tribes.*
7. *The term "Iroquois."*

HURONS. [8]The Hurons, when first known to the French, consisted of four nations:—the *Wyandots*, or Hurons, consisting of five tribes, who gave their name to the confederacy; the *Attiouandirons*, or Neutral Nation; the *Erigas*, and the *Andastes*. [9]The former two possessed the territory north of Lake Erie, and adjoining Lake Huron; and the latter two, a territory south of Lake Erie, in the present state of Ohio. [10]When the French arrived in Canada, the Wyandots were found at the head of a confederacy of Algonquin tribes, and engaged in a deadly war with their kindred, the Five Nations.

8. *The divisions of the Hurons.*
9. *Localities of the tribes.*
10. *Wars between the Wyandots and the Five Nations.*

After a long series of wars, in 1649 the Five Nations, with all their forces, invaded the Huron country,—successively routed their enemies, and massacred great numbers of them. In the following year the attack was re-

* From *Monomonick*, "wild rice."

ANALYSIS.

newed, and the Wyandots were entirely dispersed, and many of them driven from their country. The result of he same war occasioned the dispersion of the Wyandot allies, the Algonquin tribes of the Ottawa River. [1]A part of the Wyandots sought the protection of the French at Quebec; others took refuge among the Chippewas of Lake Superior, and a few detached bands surrendered, and were incorporated among the Five Nations.

1. *Dispersion of the Wyandots.*

[2]Among the Wyandots who fled to the Chippewas, the tribe of the Tionontates was the most powerful. After an unsuccessful war with the Sioux, in 1671 they removed to the vicinity of Michilimackinac, where they collected around them the remnants of their kindred tribes. They soon removed to Detroit, where they acted a conspicuous part in the ensuing conflicts between the French and the Five Nations.

2. *The Tionontates, and their history.*

[3]The Wyandots, although speaking a different language, exerted an extensive influence over the Algonquin tribes. Even the Delawares, who claimed to be the elder branch of the Algonquin nation, and called themselves the grandfathers of their kindred tribes, acknowledged the superiority of the Wyandots, whom they called their uncles. [4]Even after their dispersion by the Five Nations, the Wyandots assumed the right of sovereignty over the Ohio country, where they granted lands to the Delawares and the Shawnees.

3. *Influence of the Wyandots over the Algonquin tribes.*

4. *Their sovereignty over the Ohio country.*

[5]Even Pennsylvania thought it necessary to obtain from the Wyandots a deed of cession for the north-western part of the state, although it was then in the actual possession of the Algonquins. [6]Although the treaty of Greenville, in 1795, was signed by all the nations which had taken part in the war, yet it was from the Wyandots that the United States obtained the principal cession of territory. [7]About five hundred and seventy Wyandots were still remaining in Ohio in 1842. A still smaller part of the nation, which joined the British during the last war, resides in Canada.

5. *Over a part of Pennsylvania.*

6. *Cession of lands at the treaty of Greenville.*

7. *The Wyandots in 1842.*

[8]South of the Wyandots, on the northern shore of Lake Erie, was a Huron tribe, which, on account of the strict neutrality it preserved during the wars between the Five Nations and the other Hurons, was called the "Neutral Nation." Notwithstanding their peaceful policy, however, most of them were finally brought under the subjection of the Five Nations not long after the dispersion of the Wyandots.*

8. *Locality and history of the "Neutral Nation."*

* *Note.*—What little is known of the "Neutral Nation" is peculiarly interesting. "The Wyandot tradition represents them as having separated from the parent stock during the bloody wars between their own tribe and the Iroquois, and having fled to the Sandusky River, in Ohio, for safety. Here they erected two forts within a short distance of each other, and

ANALYSIS.

1. *The Eries.*

2. *Locality and history of the Andastes.*

[1]The *Erigas*, or Eries, a Huron tribe, were seated on the southern shores of the Lake which still bears their name. They were subdued by the Five Nations in 1655, but little is known of their history. [2]The *Andastes*, another Huron tribe, more formidable than the Eries, were located a little farther south, principally on the head waters of the Ohio. The war which they sustained against the Five Nations lasted more than twenty years, but although they were assisted by the Shawnees and the Miamis, they were finally destroyed in the year 1672.

Of the chiefs of the Hurons, whose history is known to us, the most distinguished is ADARIO, or *Kondiaronk;* or, as he was called by the whites, *The Rat.* Charlevoix speaks of him as "a man of great mind, the bravest of the brave, and possessing altogether the best qualities of any chief known to the French in Canada." During the war which De Nonville, the French governor of Canada, waged against the Iroquois, during several years subsequent to 1685, Adario, at the head of the Hurons, rendered him efficient assistance, under the promise that the war should not be terminated until the Iroquois, long the inveterate enemies of the Hurons, were destroyed, or completely humbled. Yet such were the successes of the Iroquois, that, in 1688, the French governor saw himself under the necessity of concluding with them terms of peace. Adario, however, perceiving that if peace were concluded, the Iroquois would be able to direct all their power against the Hurons, took the following savage means of averting the treaty.

Having learned that a body of Iroquois deputies, under the Onondaga chief *Dekanisora*, were on their way to Montreal to conclude the negotiation, he and a number of his warriors lay in ambush, and killed or captured the whole party, taking the Onondaga chief prisoner. The latter, asking Adario, how it happened that he could be ignorant that the party surprised was on an embassy of peace to the French, the subtle Huron, subduing his angry passions, expressed far greater surprise than Dekanisora—protesting his utter ignorance of the fact, and declaring that the French themselves had directed him to make the attack, and, as if struck with remorse at having committed so black a deed, he immediately set all the captives at liberty, save one.

In order farther to carry out his plans, he took his remaining prisoner to Michilimackinac, and delivered him into the hands of the French commandant, who was ignorant of the pending negotiation with the Iroquois, and who was induced, by the artifice of Adario, to cause his prisoner to be put to death. The news of this affair the cunning chief caused to be made known to the Iroquois by an old captive whom he had long held in bondage, and whom he now caused to be set at liberty for that purpose.

The indignation of the Iroquois at the supposed treachery of the French knew no bounds, and although De Nonville disavowed, in the strongest terms, the allegations of the Huron, yet the flame once kindled could not easily be quenched. The deep laid stratagem of the Huron succeeded, and the war was carried on with greater fury than ever. The Iroquois, in the following year, twice laid waste the island of Montreal with fire and sword, carrying off several hundred prisoners. Forts Frontenac and Niagara were blown up and abandoned, and at one time the very existence of the French colony was threatened. (See page 513.)

Adario finally died at Montreal, at peace with the French, in the year 1701. He had accom-

---

assigned one to the Iroquois, and the other to the Wyandots and their allies, where their war parties might find security and hospitality, whenever they entered this neutral territory.

"Why so unusual a proposition was made and acceded to, tradition does not tell. It is probable, however, that superstition lent its aid to the institution, and that it may have been indebted, for its origin, to the feasts, and dreams, and juggling ceremonies, which constituted the religion of the aborigines. No other motive was sufficiently powerful to stay the hand of violence, and to counteract the threat of vengeance.

"But an intestine feud finally arose in this neutral nation; one party espousing the cause of the Iroquois, and the other of their enemies, and like most civil wars, this was prosecuted with relentless fury." Thus the nation was finally broken up,—a part uniting with the victorious Iroquois, and the rest escaping westward with the fugitive Wyandots.—*Schoolcraft.*

panied thither the heads of several tribes to make a treaty. At his funeral the greatest display was made, and nothing was omitted which could inspire the Indians present with a conviction of the great respect in which he was held by the French.

ANALYSIS.

1. The different names, and the localities of the Five Nations.

THE FIVE NATIONS. (*Iroquois Proper.*) [1]The confederacy generally known as the "Five Nations," but called by the French "Iroquois;" by the Algonquin tribes "Maquas" or "Mingoes;"* and by the Virginians, "Massawomeks;" possessed the country south of the River St. Lawrence and Lake Ontario, extending from the Hudson to the upper branches of the Alleghany River and Lake Erie.

2. The several tribes of the confederacy.

[2]They consisted of a confederacy of five tribes; the *Mohawks*, the *Oneidas*, the *Onondagas*, the *Cayugas*, and the *Senecas*. The great council-fire of the confederacy was in the special keeping of the Onondagas, and by them was always kept burning.

3. Origin of the confederacy.

4. The numerous wars carried on by the Five Nations.

[3]It is not known when the confederacy was formed, but it is supposed that the Oneidas and the Cayugas were the younger members, and were compelled to join it. [4]When the Five Nations were first discovered, they were at war with nearly all the surrounding tribes. They had already carried their conquests as far south as the mouth of the Susquehanna; and on the north they continued to wage a vigorous warfare against the Hurons, and the Algonquins of the Ottawa River, until those nations were finally subdued. The Eries were subdued and almost destroyed by them in 1655.

With the Hurons, &c.

The Eries.

5. Wars with the Miamis and Ottawas.

The Andastes.

The Cherokees and Catawbas.

[5]As early as 1657 they had carried their victorious arms against the Miamis, and the Ottawas of Michigan; and in 1672 the final ruin of the Andastes was accomplished. In 1701 their excursions extended as far south as the waters of Cape Fear River; and they subsequently had repeated wars with the Cherokees and the Catawbas, the latter of whom were nearly exterminated by them. When, in 1744, they ceded a portion of their lands to Virginia, they absolutely insisted on the continued privilege of a war-path through the ceded territory. From the time of the first settlements in the country they uniformly adhered to the British interests, and were, alone, almost a counterpoise to the general influence of France over the other Indian nations. [6]In 1714 they were joined by the *Tuscaroras* from North Carolina, since which time the confederacy has been called the SIX NATIONS.

6. Why called the "Six Nations."

7. Their relations with the United States.

[7]The part they took during the war of the Revolution is thus noticed by De Witt Clinton:—"The whole confederacy, except a little more than half of the Oneidas, took up arms against us. They hung like the scythe of death upon

* The term "Maquas" or "Mingoes" was more particularly applied to the Mohawks.

the rear of our settlements, and their deeds are inscribed, with the scalping-knife and the tomahawk, in characters of blood, on the fields of Wyoming and Cherry-Valley, and on the banks of the Mohawk." Since the close of that war they have remained on friendly terms with the States. [1]The Mohawks, however, were obliged, in 1780, to abandon their seats and take refuge in Canada. [2]In the beginning of the seventeenth century the numbers of the Iroquois tribes amounted to forty thousand. They are now reduced to about seven thousand, only a small remnant of whom now remain in the State of New York. The remainder are separated, and the confederacy is broken up, a part being in Canada, some in the vicinity of Green Bay, and others beyond the Mississippi.

ANALYSIS.

1. The Mohawks.

2. The numbers, and present localities of the Iroquois tribes.

[3]For the ascendency which the Five Nations acquired over the surrounding tribes, several causes may be assigned. They were farther advanced in the few arts of Indian life than the Algonquins, and they discovered much wisdom in their internal policy, particularly in the formation and long continuance of their confederacy,—in attacking, by turns, the disunited tribes by which they were surrounded; and instead of extending themselves, and spreading over the countries which they conquered, remaining concentrated in their primitive seats, even at the time of their greatest successes.

3. Causes of the ascendency which the Five Nations acquired over the surrounding tribes

Their internal policy.

[4]Their geographical position was likewise favorable, for they were protected against sudden or dangerous attacks, on the north by Lake Ontario, and on the south by extensive ranges of mountains. [5]Their intercourse with Europeans, and particularly with the Dutch, at an early period, by supplying them with fire-arms, increased their relative superiority over their enemies; while, on the other hand, the English, especially in New England, generally took great precaution to prevent the tribes in their vicinity from being armed, and the Indian allies of the French, at the north and west, were but partially supplied.

4. Their geographical position.

5. Their intercourse with Europeans.

One of the earliest chiefs of the Five Nations, with whom history makes us acquainted, was GARANGULA, who was distinguished for his sagacity, wisdom, and eloquence. He is first brought to our notice by a manly and magnanimous speech which he made to the French governor-general of Canada, M. De La Barre, who, in 1684, marched into the country of the Iroquois to subdue them. A mortal sickness having broken out in the French army, De La Barre thought it expedient to attempt to disguise his designs of immediate war; but, at the same time, in a lofty tone he threatened hostilities if the terms of future peace which he offered were not complied with. Garangula, an Onondaga chief, appointed by the council to reply to him, first arose, and walked several times around the circle, when, addressing himself to the governor, he began as follows:

"Yonnondio;* I honor you, and the warriors that are with me likewise honor you. Your

* The Iroquois gave the name *Yonnondio* to the governors of Canada, and *Corlear* to the governors of New York.

interpreter has finished your speech. I now begin mine. My words make haste to reach your ears. Hearken to them.

"*Yonnondio;* you must have believed, when you left Quebec, that the sun had burned up all the forests, which render our country inaccessible to the French; or that the lakes had so far overflown their banks, that they had surrounded our castles, and that it was impossible for us to get out of them. Yes, surely, you must have dreamed so, and the curiosity of seeing so great a wonder has brought you so far. Now you are undeceived, since that I and the warriors here present are come to assure you that the Senecas, Cayugas, Onondagas, Oneidas, and Mohawks, are yet alive. I thank you in their name for bringing back into their country the calumet, which your predecessor received at their hands. It was happy for you that you left under ground that murdering hatchet that has so often been dyed in the blood of the Indians.

"Hear *Yonnondio;* I do not sleep; I have my eyes open; and the sun which enlightens me, discovers to me a great captain at the head of a company of soldiers, who speaks as if he were dreaming. He says that he came to the lake, only to smoke the great calumet with the Onondagas. But Garangula says that he sees the contrary; that it was to knock them on the head, if sickness had not weakened the arms of the French. I see Yonnondio raving in a camp of sick men, whose lives the Great Spirit has saved by inflicting this sickness on them."

In this strain of indignant contempt the venerable chief continued at some length—disclosing the perfidy of the French and their weakness—proclaiming the freedom and independence of his people—and advising the French to take care for the future, lest they should choke the tree of peace so recently planted.

De La Barre, struck with surprise at the wisdom of the chief, and mortified at the result of the expedition, immediately returned to Montreal.

One of the most renowned warriors of the Mohawk tribe was a chief by the name of Hendrick, who, with many of his nation, assisted the English against the French in the year 1755. He was intimate with Sir William Johnson, whom he frequently visited at the house of the latter. At one time, being present when Sir William received from England some richly embroidered suits of clothes, he could not help expressing a great desire for a share in them. He went away very thoughtful, but returned not long after, and with much gravity told Sir William that he had dreamed a dream. The latter very concernedly desired to know what it was. Hendrick told him he had dreamed that Sir William had presented him one of his new suits of uniform. Sir William could not refuse the present, and the chief went away much delighted. Some time after the General met Hendrick, and told him *he* had dreamed a dream. The chief, although doubtless mistrusting the plot, seriously desired to know what it was, as Sir William had done before. The General said he dreamed that Hendrick had presented him a certain tract of valuable land, which he described. The chief immediately answered, "It is yours;" but, shaking his head, said, "Sir William, me no dream with you again."

Hendrick was killed in the battle of Lake George in 1755. When General Johnson was about to detach a small party against the French, he asked Hendrick's opinion, whether the force were sufficient, to which the chief replied, "If they are to fight, they are too few. If they are to be killed they are too many." When it was proposed to divide the detachment into three parties, Hendrick, to express the danger of the plan, taking three sticks, and putting them together, said to the General, "You see now that it is difficult to break these; but take them one by one and you may break them easily."

When the son of Hendrick, who was also in the battle, was told that his father was killed,—putting his hand on his breast, and giving the usual Indian groan, he declared that he was still alive in that place, and stood there in his son.

Logan was a distinguished Iroquois (or Mingo) chief, of the Cayuga tribe. It is said, that, "For magnanimity in war, and greatness of soul in peace, few, if any, in any nation, ever surpassed Logan." He was uniformly the friend of the whites, until the spring of 1774, when all his relatives were barbarously murdered by them without provocation. He then took up the hatchet, engaged the Shawnees, Delawares, and other tribes to act with him, and a bloody war followed. The Indians however were defeated in the battle of Point Pleasant, at the mouth of the Great Kanhawa, in October 1774, and peace soon followed. When the proposals of peace were submitted to Logan, he is said to have made the following memorable and well known speech.

"I appeal to any white man to say, if ever he entered Logan's cabin hungry, and he gave him no meat; if ever he came cold and naked, and he clothed him not.

"During the course of the last long and bloody war, Logan remained idle in his cabin, an advocate for peace. Such was my love for the whites, that my countrymen pointed as they passed, and said, '*Logan* is the friend of white men.'

"I had even thought to have lived with you, but for the injuries of one man. Colonel *Cresap*, the last spring, in cold blood, and unprovoked, murdered all the relations of *Logan*, not even sparing my women and children.

"There runs not a drop of my blood in the veins of any living creature. This called on me for revenge. I have sought it. I have killed many. I have fully glutted my vengeance. For my country, I rejoice at the beams of peace. But do not harbor a thought that mine is the joy of fear. *Logan* never felt fear. He will not turn on his heel to save life. Who is there to mourn for *Logan*?—Not one!"

Of this specimen of Indian eloquence Mr. Jefferson remarks, "I may challenge all the orations of Demosthenes and Cicero, and of any more eminent orator, if Europe has furnished more eminent, to produce a single passage superior to the speech of Logan."

THAYENDANEGA, known to the whites as Colonel *Joseph Brant*, was a celebrated Iroquois chief of the Mohawk tribe. He was born about the year 1742, and at the age of nineteen was sent by Sir William Johnson to Lebanon, in Connecticut, where he received a good English education. It has been said that he was but half Indian, but this is now believed to be an error, which probably arose from the known fact that he was of a lighter complexion than his countrymen in general.

He went to England in 1775, and after his return took up arms against the Americans, and received a Colonel's commission in the English army. "Combining the natural sagacity of the Indian, with the skill and science of the civilized man, he was a formidable foe, and a dreadful terror to the frontiers." He commanded the Indians in the battle of Oriskana, which resulted in the death of General Herkimer:* he was engaged in the destruction of Wyoming,† and the desolation of the Cherry Valley settlements,‡ but he was defeated by the Americans, under General Sullivan, in the "Battle of the Chemung."§

Notwithstanding the numerous bloody scenes in which Brant was engaged, many acts of clemency are attributed to him, and he himself asserted that, during the war, he had killed but one man, a prisoner, in cold blood—an act which he ever after regretted; although, in that case, he acted under the belief that the prisoner, who had a natural hesitancy of speech, was equivocating, in answering the questions put to him.

After peace had been concluded with England, Brant frequently used his exertions to prevent hostilities between the States and the Western tribes. In 1779 he was legally married to an Indian daughter of a Colonel Croghan, with whom he had previously lived according to the Indian manner. Brant finally settled on the western shore of Lake Ontario, where he lived after the English fashion. He died in 1807.—One of his sons has been a member of the Colonial Assembly of Upper Canada.

An Oneida chief of some distinction, by the name of SHENANDOA, was contemporary with the missionary Kirkland, to whom he became a convert. He lived many years of the latter part of his life a believer in Christianity.

In early life he was much addicted to intoxication. One night, while on a visit to Albany to settle some affairs of his tribe, he became intoxicated, and in the morning found himself in the street, stripped of all his ornaments, and nearly every article of clothing. This brought him to a sense of his duty—his pride revolted at his self-degradation, and he resolved that he would never again deliver himself over to the power of *strong water*.

In the Revolutionary war this chief induced most of the Oneidas to take up arms in favor of the Americans. Among the Indians he was distinguished by the appellation of 'the white man's friend.'—He lived to the advanced age of 110 years, and died in 1816. To one who visited him a short time before his death, he said, "I am an aged hemlock; the winds of a hundred winters have whistled through my branches, and I am dead at the top. The generation to which I belonged has run away and left me: why I live, the great Good Spirit only knows. Pray to the Lord that I may have patience to wait for my appointed time to die."—From attachment to Mr. Kirkland he had often expressed a strong desire to be buried near him, that he might (to use his own expression,) '*Go up with him at the great resurrection.*' His request was granted, and he was buried by the side of his beloved minister, there to wait the coming of the Lord in whom he trusted.

---

* See page 376. † Page 383. ‡ Page 384. § Page 389.

One of the most noted chiefs of the Seneca tribe was SAGOYEWATHA, called by the whites *Red Jacket*. Although he was quite young at the time of the Revolution, yet his activity and intelligence then attracted the attention of the British officers, who presented him a richly embroidered scarlet jacket. This he wore on all public occasions, and from this circumstance originated the name by which he is known to the whites.

Of his early life we have the following interesting reminiscence. When Lafayette, in 1825, was at Buffalo, Red Jacket, among others, called to see him. During the conversation, he asked the General if he recollected being present at a great council of all the Indian nations, held at Fort Schuyler in 1784. Lafayette replied that he had not forgotten that great event, and asked Red Jacket if he knew what had become of the young chief, who, in that council, opposed with such eloquence the burying of the tomahawk. Red Jacket replied, "*He is before you.* The decided enemy of the Americans, so long as the hope of successfully opposing them remained, but now their true and faithful ally unto death."

During the second war with Great Britain, Red Jacket enlisted on the American side, and while he fought with bravery and intrepidity, in no instance did he exhibit the ferocity of the savage, or disgrace himself by any act of inhumanity.

Of the many truly eloquent speeches of Red Jacket, and notices of the powerful effects of hi oratory, as described by eye-witnesses, we regret that we have not room for extracts. One who knew him intimately for more than thirty years speaks of him in the following terms.

"Red Jacket was a perfect Indian in every respect; in costume, in his contempt of the dress of the white men, in his hatred and opposition to the missionaries, and in his attachment to, and veneration for the ancient customs and traditions of his tribe. He had a contempt for the English language, and disdained to use any other than his own. He was the finest specimen of the Indian character that I ever knew, and sustained it with more dignity than any other chief. He was second to none in authority in his tribe. As an orator he was unequalled by any Indian I ever saw. His language was beautiful and figurative, as the Indian language always is,—and delivered with the greatest ease and fluency. His gesticulation was easy, graceful, and natural. His voice was distinct and clear, and he always spoke with great animation. His memory was very retentive. I have acted as interpreter to most of his speeches, to which no translation could do adequate justice."

A short time before the death of Red Jacket there seemed to be quite a change in his feelings respecting Christianity. He repeatedly remarked to his wife that he was sorry that he had persecuted her for attending the religious meetings of the Christian party,—that she was right and he was wrong, and, as his dying advice, told her, "*Persevere in your religion, it is the right way.*"

He died near Buffalo, in January, 1832, at the age of 78 years.

Another noted Seneca chief was called FARMER'S BROTHER. He was engaged in the cause of the French in the "French and Indian war." He fought against the Americans during the Revolution, but he took part with them during the second war with Great Britain, although then at a very advanced age. He was an able orator, although perhaps not equal to Red Jacket.

From one of his speeches, delivered in a council at Genesee River in 1798, we give an extract, containing one of the most sublime metaphors ever uttered. Speaking of the war of the Revolution he said, "This great contest threw the inhabitants of this whole island into a great tumult and confusion, like a raging whirlwind, which tears up the trees, and tosses to and fro the leaves, so that no one knows from whence they come, or where they will fall. *At length the Great Spirit spoke to the whirlwind, and it was still.* A clear and uninterrupted sky appeared. The path of peace was opened, and the chain of friendship was once more made bright."

Other distinguished chiefs of the Senecas were CORN PLANTER, HALF TOWN, and BIG TREE; all of whom were friendly to the Americans after the Revolution. The former was with the English at Braddock's defeat, and subsequently had several conferences with President Washington on subjects relating to the affairs of his nation. He was an ardent advocate of temperance. He died in March, 1836, aged upwards of 100 years.

ANALYSIS. TUSCARORAS. [1]The southern Iroquois tribes, found on the borders of Pennsylvania and North Carolina, and extending from the most northern tributary streams of the

1. *Early seats, names, and*

Chowan to Cape Fear River, and bounded on the east by the Algonquin tribes of the sea-shore, have been generally called *Tuscaroras*, although they appear to have been known in Virginia, in early times, under the name of Monacans. The Monacans, however, were probably an Algonquin tribe, either subdued by the Tuscaroras, or in alliance with them. Of the southern Iroquois tribes, the principal were the *Chowans*, the *Meherrins* or *Tuteloes*, the *Nottaways* and the *Tuscaroras;* the latter of whom, by far the most numerous and powerful, gave their name to the whole group.

ANALYSIS. *divisions, of the Southern Iroquois tribes.*

[1]The Tuscaroras, at the head of a confederacy of southern Indians, were engaged in a war with the Carolina settlements from the autumn of 1711 to the spring of 1713.[a] [2]They were finally subdued, and, with most of their allies, removed north in 1714, and joined the *Five* Nations, thus making the *Sixth*. [3]So late as 1820, however, a few of the Nottaways were still in possession of seven thousand acres of land in Southampton County, Virginia.

1. *War of the Tuscaroras with the Carolinians.*

a. See p. 254.

2. *Their removal to the north.*

3. *The Nottaways.*

SECTION IV.

CATAWBAS, CHEROKEES, UCHEES AND NATCHES.

CATAWBAS. [4]The Catawbas, who spoke a language different from any of the surrounding tribes, occupied the country south of the Tuscaroras, in the midlands of Carolina. [5]They were able to drive away the Shawnees, who, soon after their dispersion in 1672, formed a temporary settlement in the Catawba country. In 1712 they are found as the auxiliaries of Carolina against the Tuscaroras. In 1715 they joined the neighboring tribes in the confederacy against the southern colonies, and in 1760, the last time they are mentioned by the historians of South Carolina, they were auxiliaries against the Cherokees.

4. *Locality of the Catawbas.*

5. *Their hostilities with the Shawnees, the Tuscaroras, the Southern Colonies, and the Cherokees.*

[6]They are chiefly known in history as the hereditary foes of the Iroquois tribes, by whom they were, finally, nearly exterminated. [7]Their language is now nearly extinct, and the remnant of the tribe, numbering, in 1840, less than one hundred souls, still lingered, at that time, on a branch of the Santee or Catawba River, on the borders of North Carolina.

6. *Wars with the Iroquois.*

7. *Their language, numbers, and present seats.*

CHEROKEES. [8]Adjoining the Tuscaroras and the Catawbas on the west, were the Cherokees, who occupied the eastern and southern portions of Tennessee, as far west as the Muscle Shoals, and the highlands of Carolina, Georgia, and Alabama. [9]They probably expelled the Shawnees from the country south of the Ohio, and appear to have been

8. *Locality of the Cherokees.*

9. *Their expulsion of the Shawnees.*

ANALYSIS.

1. *Their conduct in 1712 and 1715.*

2. *Hostilities with the Five Nations, and subsequent alliance with the British.*

3. *War with the English.*

a. Doo Kane.

4. *Their conduct during the Revolution, and the last war with G. Britain.*

5. *Their civilization, population, &c.*

perpetually at war with some branch of that wandering nation. [1]In 1712 they assisted the English against the Tuscaroras, but in 1715 they joined the Indian confederacy against the colonies.

[2]Their long continued hostilities with the Five Nations were terminated, through the interference of the British government, about the year 1750; and at the commencement of the subsequent French and Indian war, they acted as auxiliaries of the British, and assisted at the capture of Fort Du Quesne.[a] [3]Soon after their return from this expedition, however, a war broke out between them and the English, which was not effectually terminated until 1761. [4]They joined the British during the war of the Revolution, after the close of which they continued partial hostilities until the treaty of Holston, in 1791; since which time they have remained at peace with the United States, and during the last war with Great Britain they assisted the Americans against the Creeks.

[5]The Cherokees have made greater progress in civilization than any other Indian nation within the United States, and notwithstanding successive cessions of portions of their territory, their population has increased during the last fifty years. They have removed beyond the Mississippi, and their number now amounts to about fifteen thousand souls.

One of the most remarkable discoveries of modern times has been made by a Cherokee Indian, named George Guess, or *Sequoyah*. This Indian, who was unacquainted with any language but his own, had seen English books in the missionary schools, and was informed that the characters represented the words of the spoken language. Filled with enthusiasm, he then attempted to form a written language for his native tongue. He first endeavored to have a separate character for each word, but he soon saw the impracticability of this method. Next discovering that the same syllables, variously combined, perpetually recurred in different words, he formed a character for each *syllable*, and soon completed a *syllabic alphabet*, of eighty-five characters, by which he was enabled to express all the words of the language.

A native Cherokee, after learning these eighty-five characters, requiring the study of only a *few days*, could read and write the language with facility; his education in orthography being then complete; whereas, in our language, and in others, an individual is obliged to learn the orthography of many thousand words, requiring the study of *years*, before he can write the language; so different is the orthography from the pronunciation. The alphabet formed by this uneducated Cherokee soon superseded the English alphabet in the books published for the use of the Cherokees, and in 1826 a newspaper called the *Cherokee Phœnix*, was established in the Cherokee nation, printed in the new characters, with an English translation.

At first it appeared incredible that a language so copious as the Cherokee should have but eighty-five syllables, but this was found to be owing to a peculiarity of the language—the almost uniform prevalence of vocal or nasal terminations of syllables. The plan adopted by Guess, would therefore, probably, have failed, if applied to any other language than the Cherokee.

We notice a Cherokee chief by the name of Speckled Snake, for the purpose of giving a speech which he made in a council of his nation which had been convened for the purpose of hearing read a *talk* from President Jackson, on the subject of removal beyond the Mississippi. The speech shows in what light the encroachments of the whites were viewed by the Cherokees. Speckled Snake arose, and addressed the council as follows:

"*Brothers!* We have heard the talk of our great father; it is very kind. He says he loves his red children. *Brothers!* When the white man first came to these shores, the Muscogees gave him land, and kindled him a fire to make him comfortable; and when the pale faces of the south* made war upon him, their young men drew the tomahawk, and protected his head from the scalping knife. But when the white man had warmed himself before the Indian's fire, and filled himself with the Indian's hominy, he became very large; he stopped not for the mountain tops, and his feet covered the plains and the valleys. His hands grasped the eastern and the western sea. Then he became our great father. He loved his red children; but said, 'You must move a little farther, lest I should, by accident, tread on you.' With one foot he pushed the red man over the Oconee, and with the other he trampled down the graves of his fathers. But our great father still loved his red children, and he soon made them another talk. He said much; but it all meant nothing, but 'move a little farther; you are too near me.' I have heard a great many talks from our great father, and they all began and ended the same.

"*Brothers!* when he made us a talk on a former occasion, he said, 'Get a little farther; go beyond the Oconee and the Oakmulgee; there is a pleasant country.' He also said, 'It shall be yours forever.' Now he says, 'The land you live in is not yours; go beyond the Mississippi; there is game; there you may remain while the grass grows or the water runs.' *Brothers!* will not our great father come there also? He loves his red children, and his tongue is not forked."

ANALYSIS.

UCHEES. [1]The Uchees, when first known, inhabited the territory embraced in the central portion of the present State of Georgia, above and below Augusta, and extending from the Savannah to the head waters of the Chatahooche. [2]They consider themselves the most ancient inhabitants of the country, and have lost the recollection of ever having changed their residence. [3]They are little known in history, and are recognized as a distinct family, only on account of their exceedingly harsh and guttural language. [4]When first discovered, they were but a remnant of a probably once powerful nation; and they now form a small band of about twelve hundred souls, in the Creek confederacy.

1. *Locality of the Uchees.*
2. *Their opinion of their antiquity.*
3. *Their history and language.*
4. *Supposition concerning them,—population, and present situation.*

NATCHES. [5]The Natches occupied a small territory on the east of the Mississippi, and resided in a few small villages near the site of the town which has preserved their name. [6]They were long supposed to speak a dialect of the Mobilian, but it has recently been ascertained that their language is radically different from that of any other known tribe. [7]They were nearly exterminated in a war with the French in 1730,[a] since which period they have been known in history only as a feeble and inconsiderable nation, and are now merged in the Creek confederacy. In 1840 they were supposed to number only about three hundred souls.

5. *Locality of the Natches.*
6. *Their language.*
7. *Their war with the French, subsequent history, and present numbers.*

a. See p. 524

* The Spaniards from Florida.

SECTION V.

MOBILIAN TRIBES.

ANALYSIS.

1. *The confederacies known as the Mobilian Tribes.*

[1]With the exception of the Uchees and the Natches, and a few small tribes west of the Mobile River, the whole country from the Mississippi to the Atlantic, south of the Ohio River and the territory of the Cherokees, was in the possession of three confederacies of tribes, speaking dialects of a common language, which the French called MOBILIAN, but which is described by Gallatin as the *Muscogee Chocta.*

2. *The country embraced by the Creeks.*

MUSCOGEES OR CREEKS. [2]The Creek confederacy extended from the Atlantic, westward, to the dividing ridge which separates the waters of the Tombigbee from the Alabama, and embraced the whole territory of Florida.

3. *The Seminoles.*

[3]The *Seminoles* of Florida were a detached tribe of the Muscogees or Creeks, speaking the same language, and considered a part of the confederacy until the United States treated with them as an independent nation.

4. *Supposed antiquity of the Creeks.*

[4]The Creeks consider themselves the aborigines of the country, as they have no tradition of any ancient migration, or union with other tribes.

5. *Origin of the Yamassees, and their history.*

[5]The *Yamassees* are supposed to have been a Creek tribe, mentioned by early writers under the name of Savannas, or Serannas. In 1715 they were at the head of a confederacy of the tribes extending from Cape Fear River to Florida, and commenced a war against the southern colonies, but were finally expelled from their territory, and took refuge among the Spaniards in Florida.

6. *Wars of the Creeks with the Americans.*

[6]For nearly fifty years after the settlement of Georgia, no actual war took place with the Creeks. They took part with the British against the Americans during the Revolution, and continued hostilities after the close of the war, until a treaty was concluded with them at Philadelphia, in 1795. A considerable portion of the nation also took part against the Americans in the commencement of the second war with Great Britain, but were soon reduced to submission.

7. *Seminole hostilities.*

a. See pp. 471 and 477.

[7]The Seminoles renewed the war in 1818, and in 1835 they again commenced hostilities, which were not finally terminated until 1842.[a]

8. *Treaties, and cessions of lands.*

[8]The Creeks and Seminoles, after many treaties made and broken, have at length ceded to the United States the whole of their territory, and have accepted, in exchange, lands west of the Mississippi.

9. *The present Creek confederacy.*

[9]The Creek confederacy, which now includes the Creeks, Seminoles, Hitchitties, Alibamons, Coosadas, and Natches, at present numbers

about twenty-eight thousand souls, of whom twenty-three thousand are Creeks. [1]Their numbers have increased during the last fifty years.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Increase of numbers.*

One of the most noted chiefs of the Creek nation was ALEXANDER M'GILLIVRAY, son of an Englishman by that name, who married a Creek woman, the governess of the nation. He was born about the year 1739, and at the early age of ten was sent to school in Charleston. Being very fond of books, especially histories, he acquired a good education. On the death of his mother he became chief sachem of the Creeks, both by the usages of his ancestors, and by the election of the people. During the Revolutionary War he was at the head of the Creeks, and in the British interest; but after the war he became attached to the Americans, and renewed treaties with them. He died at Pensacola, Feb. 17, 1793.

Another distinguished chief of the Creeks, conspicuous at a later period, was WEATHERFORD, who is described as the key and corner-stone of the Creek confederacy during the Creek war which was terminated in 1814. His mother belonged to the tribe of the Seminoles, but he was born and brought up in the Creek nation.

In person, Weatherford was tall, straight, and well proportioned; while his features, harmoniously arranged, indicated an active and disciplined mind. He was silent and reserved in public, unless when excited by some great occasion; he spoke but seldom in council, but when he delivered his opinions, he was listened to with delight and approbation. He was cunning and sagacious, brave and eloquent; but he was also extremely avaricious, treacherous, and revengeful, and devoted to every species of criminal carousal. He commanded at the massacre of Fort Mims* which opened the Creek war, and was the last of his nation to submit to the Americans.

When the other chiefs had submitted, General Jackson, in order to test their fidelity, ordered them to deliver Weatherford, bound, into his hands, that he might be dealt with as he deserved. But Weatherford would not submit to such degradation, and proceeding in disguise to the head-quarters of the commanding officer, under some pretence he gained admission to his presence, when, to the great surprise of the General, he announced himself in the following words.

"I am Weatherford, the chief who commanded at the capture of Fort Mims. I desire peace for my people, and have come to ask it." When Jackson alluded to his barbarities, and expressed his surprise that he should thus venture to appear before him, the spirited chief replied. "I am in your power. Do with me as you please. I am a soldier. I have done the whites all the harm I could. I have fought them, and fought them bravely. If I had an army I would yet fight.—I would contend to the last: but I have none. My people are all gone. I can only weep over the misfortunes of my nation."

When told that he might still join the war party if he desired; but to depend upon no quarter if taken afterwards; and that unconditional submission was his and his people's only safety, he rejoined in a tone as dignified as it was indignant. "You can safely address me in such terms now. There was a time when I could have answered you:—there was a time when I had a choice:—I have none now. I have not even a hope. I could once animate my warriors to battle—but I cannot animate the dead. Their bones are at Talladega. Tallushatches, Emucfau, and Tohopeka. I have not surrendered myself without thought. While there was a chance of success I never left my post, nor supplicated peace. But my people are gone, and I ask it for my nation, not for myself. You are a brave man, I rely upon your generosity. You will exact no terms of a conquered nation, but such as they should accede to."

Jackson had determined upon the execution of the chief, when he should be brought in bound, as directed; but his unexpected surrender, and bold and manly conduct, saved his life.

A Creek chief, of very different character from Weatherford, was the celebrated but unfortunate General WILLIAM MCINTOSH. Like M'Gillivray he was a half breed, and belonged to the Coweta tribe. He was a prominent leader of such of his countrymen as joined the Americans in the war of 1812, 13, and 14. He likewise belonged to the small party who, in 1821, 23, and 25, were in favor of selling their lands to the Americans. In February, of the latter year, he concluded a treaty for the sale of lands, in opposition to the wishes of a large majority of his

* See page 456.

nation. For this act the laws of his people denounced death upon him, and in May, his house was surrounded and burned, and McIntosh and one of his adherents, in attempting to escape were shot. His son, Chilly McIntosh, was allowed to leave the house unharmed.

Among the Seminoles, a branch of the Creek nation, the most distinguished chief with whom the whites have been acquainted, was *Powell*, or, as he was commonly called, Osceola. His mother is said to have been a Creek woman, and his father an Englishman. He was not a chief by birth, but raised himself to that station by his courage and peculiar abilities.

He was opposed to the removal of his people west of the Mississippi, and it was principally through his influence that the treaties for removal were violated, and the nation plunged in war. He was an excellent tactician, and an admirer of order and discipline. The principal events known in his history will be found narrated in another part of this work.*

Other chiefs distinguished in the late Seminole war, were *Micanopy*, called the king of the nation, *Sam Jones*, *Jumper*, *Coa-Hadjo* (Alligator), *Charles Emathla*, and *Abraham*, a negro

ANALYSIS.

1. *The territory of the Chickasas.*
2. *Character of the nation.*
3. *Their relations with the English and the French.*
4. *With the U. States.*
5. *Their numbers.*

Chickasas. [1]The territory of the Chickasas, extending north to the Ohio, was bounded on the east by the country of the Shawnees, and the Cherokees; on the south by the Choctas, and on the west by the Mississippi River. [2]The Chickasas were a warlike nation, and were often in a state of hostility with the surrounding tribes. [3]Firm allies of the English, they were at all times the inveterate enemies of the French, by whom their country was twice unsuccessfully invaded, once in 1736, and again in 1740. [4]They adhered to the British during the war of the Revolution, since which time they have remained at peace with the United States. [5]Their numbers have increased during the last fifty years, and they now amount to between five and six thousand souls.

Du Pratz, in his History of Louisiana, gives an account of a very intelligent Chickasaw Indian, of the Yazoo tribe, by the name of *Moncatchtape*, who travelled many years for the purpose of extending his knowledge, but, principally, to ascertain from what country the Indian race originally came.

He first journeyed in a northeasterly direction until he came upon the ocean, probably near the Gulf of St. Lawrence. After returning to his tribe, he again set out, towards the northwest —passed up the Missouri to its sources—crossed the mountains, and journeyed onwards until he reached the great Western Ocean. He then proceeded north, following the coast, until the days became very long and the nights very short, when he was advised by the old men of the country to relinquish all thoughts of continuing his journey. They told him that the land extended still a long way between the north and the sun setting, after which it ran directly west, and at length was cut by the great water from north to south. One of them added, that, when he was young, he knew a very old man who had seen that distant land before it was cut away by the great water, and that when the great water was low, many rocks still appeared in those parts.—Finding it therefore, impracticable to proceed any farther, Moncatchtape returned to his own country by the route by which he came. He was five years absent on this second journey.

This famous traveller was well known to Du Pratz about the year 1760. By the French he was called the *Interpreter*, on account of his extended knowledge of the languages of the Indians. "This man," says Du Pratz, "was remarkable for his solid understanding, and elevation of sentiment; and I may justly compare him to those first Greeks, who travelled chiefly into the east, to examine the manners and customs of different nations, and to communicate to their fellow citizens, upon their return, the knowledge which they had acquired."

The narrative of this Indian, which is given at considerable length, in his own words, appears to have satisfied Du Pratz that the aborigines came from the continent of Asia, by way of Behring's Straits.

* See pages 477 and 481.

ANALYSIS.

1. *The territory of the Choctas.*

2 *Peaceable character of the Choctas.*

3. *Their numbers, &c.*

CHOCTAS. [1]The Choctas possessed the territory bordering on that of the Creeks, and extending west to the Mississippi River. [2]Since they were first known to Europeans they have ever been an agricultural and a peaceable people, ardently attached to their country; and their wars, always defensive, have been with the Creeks. Although they have had successively, for neighbors, the French, the Spanish, and the English, they have never been at war with any of them. [3]Their numbers now amount to nearly nineteen thousand souls, a great portion of whom have already removed beyond the Mississippi.

We notice MUSHALATUBEE and PUSHAMATA, two Choctaw Chiefs, for the purpose of giving the speeches which they made to Lafayette, at the city of Washington, in the winter of 1824. Mushalatubee, on being introduced to Lafayette, spoke as follows:

"You are one of our fathers. You have fought by the side of the great *Washington*. We will receive here your hand as that of a friend and father. We have always walked in the pure feelings of peace, and it is this feeling which has caused us to visit you here. We present you pure hands—hands that have never been stained with the blood of Americans. We live in a country far from this, where the sun darts his perpendicular rays upon us. We have had the French, the Spaniards, and the English for neighbors; but now we have only the Americans; in the midst of whom we live as friends and brothers."

Then Pushamata, the head chief of his nation, began a speech in his turn, and expressed himself in the following words:

"Nearly fifty snows have passed away since you drew the sword as a companion of *Washington*. With him you combated the enemies of America. You generously mingled your blood with that of the enemy, and proved your devotedness to the cause which you defended. After you had finished that war you returned into your own country, and now you come to visit again that land where you are honored and loved in the remembrance of a numerous and powerful people. You see everywhere the children of those for whom you defended liberty crowd around you and press your hands with filial affection. We have heard related all these things in the depths of the distant forests, and our hearts have been filled with a desire to behold you. We are come, we have pressed your hand, and we are satisfied. This is the first time that we have seen you, and it will probably be the last. We have no more to add. The earth will soon part us forever."

It was observed that, in pronouncing these last words, the old chief seemed agitated by some sad presentiment. In a few days he was taken sick, and he died before he could set out to return to his own people. He was buried with military honors, and his monument occupies a place among those of the great men in the cemetery at Washington.

4. *Tribes between the Mobile and the Mississippi, &c.*

5. *The numerous distinct tribes on the Red River, and south of it.*

[4]Of the tribes which formerly inhabited the sea-shore between the Mobile and the Mississippi, and the western bank of the last mentioned river, as far north as the Arkansas, we know little more than the names. [5]On the Red River and its branches, and south of it, within the territory of the United States, there have been found, until recently, a number of small tribes, natives of that region, who spoke no less than *seven distinct languages;* while, throughout the extensive territory occupied by the Esquimaux, Athapascas, Algonquins, and Iroquois, there is not found a single tribe, or remnant of a tribe, that speaks a dialect which does not belong to one or another of those families.

ANALYSIS.

1. *The diversity of languages found in this region,—how accounted for.*

[1]To account for this great diversity of distinct languages in the small territory mentioned, it has been supposed that the impenetrable swamps and numerous channels by which the low lands of that country are intersected, have afforded places of refuge to the remnants of conquered tribes; and it is well known, as a peculiarity of the Aborigines of America, that small tribes preserve their language to the last moment of their existence.

SECTION VI.

DAHCOTAH, OR SIOUX TRIBES.

2. *Extent of the Dahcotah, or Sioux tribes.*

[2]On the west of the Mississippi River, extending from lands south of the Arkansas, to the Saskatchewan, a stream which empties into Lake Winnipeg, were found numerous tribes speaking dialects of a common language, and which have been classed under the appellation of *Dahcotas* or *Sioux*. [3]Their country was penetrated by French traders as early as 1659, but they were little known either to the French or the English colonists, and it is but recently that they have come into contact with the Americans. [4]One community of the Sioux, the *Winnebagoes*, had penetrated the territory of the Algonquins, and were found on the western shore of Lake Michigan.

3. *The earliest knowledge we have of them.*

4. *Situation of the Winnebagoe tribe.*

5. *Classification of the nations which speak the Sioux language.*

[5]The nations which speak the Sioux language have been classed, according to their respective dialects and geographical position, in four divisions, viz., 1st, the Winnebagoes; 2d, Assiniboins and Sioux proper; 3d, the Minetaree group; and 4th, the southern Sioux tribes.

6. *Early history of the Winnebagoes.*

1. Winnebagoes. [6]Little is known of the early history of the Winnebagoes. They are said to have formerly occupied a territory farther north than at present, and to have been nearly destroyed by the Illinois about the year 1640. They are likewise said to have carried on frequent wars against the Sioux tribes west of the Mississippi. [7]The limits of their territory were nearly the same in 1840 as they were a hundred and fifty years previous, and from this it may be presumed that they have generally lived, during that time, on friendly terms with the Algonquin tribes, by which they have been surrounded.

7. *The limits of their territory.*

8. *Their conduct during the second war with Great Britain; and their war against the U. States in 1832.*

[8]They took part with the British against the Americans during the war of 1812–14, and in 1832 a part of the nation, incited by the famous Sac chief, Black Hawk, commenced an indiscriminate warfare against the border settlements by which they were surrounded, but were soon

obliged to sue for peace. [1]Their numbers in 1840 were estimated at four thousand six hundred.*

ANALYSIS.

1. *Their numbers in 1840.*

2. ASSINIBOINS, AND SIOUX PROPER. [2]The Assiniboins are a Dahcota tribe who have separated from the rest of the nation, and, on that account, are called "Rebels" by the Sioux proper. [3]They are the most northerly of the great Dahcota family, and but little is known of their history. [4]Their number is estimated by Lewis and Clarke at rather more than six thousand souls.

2. *The Assiniboins.*

3. *Locality and history.*

4. *Numbers.*

[5]The Sioux proper are divided into seven independent bands or tribes. They were first visited by the French as early as 1660, and are described by them as being ferocious and warlike, and feared by all their neighbors. [6]The seven Sioux tribes are supposed to amount to about twenty thousand souls.†

5. *Divisions and character of the Sioux proper*

6. *Numbers.*

3. MINETAREE GROUP. [7]The *Minetarees*, the *Mandans*, and the *Crows*, have been classed together, although they speak different languages, having but remote affinities with the Dahcota. [8]The Mandans and the Minetarees cultivate the soil and live in villages; but the Crows are an erratic tribe, and live principally by hunting. [9]The Mandans are lighter colored than the neighboring tribes, which has probably given rise to the fabulous account of a tribe of white Indians descended from the Welch, and speaking their language. [10]The Mandans number about fifteen hundred† souls; the Minetarees and the Crows each three thousand.†

7. *Minetaree group*

8. *Character of the different tribes.*

9. *Peculiarity of the Mandans.*

10. *Numbers of the tribes.*

4. SOUTHERN SIOUX TRIBES. [11]The Southern Sioux consist of eight tribes, speaking four or five kindred dialects. Their territory originally extended from below the mouth of the Arkansas to the present northern boundary of the State of Missouri, and their hunting grounds westward to the Rocky Mountains. [12]They cultivate the soil and live in villages, except during their hunting excursions. [13]The three most southerly tribes are the *Quappas* or *Arkansas*, on the river of that name, the *Osages*, and the *Kanzas*, all south of the Missouri River. [14]The Osages are a numerous and powerful tribe, and, until within a few years past, have been at war with most of the neighboring tribes, without excepting the Kanzas, who speak the same dialect. The territory of the Osages lies immediately north of that allotted to the Cherokees, the Creeks, and the Choctas.

11. *The Southern Sioux; their territory, and hunting grounds.*

12. *Their character.*

13. *The three Southern tribes.*

14. *The Osages, their wars, territory, &c.*

[15]The five remaining tribes of this subdivision are the *Iowas*, the *Missouries*, the *Otoes*, the *Omahas*, and the *Puncahs*. [16]The principal seats of the Iowas are north of the River Des Moines, but a portion of the tribe has joined

15. *The names of the other tribes.*

16. *The Iowas.*

* Estimate of the War Department.

† Gallatin's estimate, 1836

ANALYSIS.

the Otoes, and it is believed that both tribes speak the same dialect. [1]The Missouries were originally seated at the mouth of the river of that name. They were driven away from their original seats by the Illinois, and have since joined the Otoes. They speak the Otoe dialect.

1. The Missouries.

2. The Otoes, and Omahas.

[2]The Otoes are found on the south side of the Missouri River, and below the mouth of the River Platte; and the Omahas above the mouth of the Platte River.

3. The Puncahs.

[3]The Puncahs, in 1840, were seated on the Missouri, one hundred and fifty miles above the Omahas. They speak the Omaha dialect.

4. The numbers of the Southern Sioux tribes.

[4]The residue of the Arkansas (now called Quappas) number about five hundred souls; the Osages five thousand; the Kanzas fifteen hundred; and the five other tribes, together, about five thousand.*

OTHER WESTERN TRIBES.

5. The Black Feet; their territory, population, and wars.

[5]Of the Indian nations west of the Dahcotas, the most numerous and powerful are the *Black Feet*, a wandering and hunting tribe, who occupy an extensive territory east of the Rocky Mountains. Their population is estimated at thirty thousand. They carry on a perpetual war with the Crows and the Minetarees, and also with the Shoshones or Snake Indians, and other tribes of the Rocky Mountains, whom they prevent from hunting in the buffalo country.

6. The Rapid Indians, and the Arapahas.

[6]The *Rapid Indians*, estimated at three thousand, are found north of the Missouri River, between the Black Feet and the Assiniboins. The Arapahas are a detached and wandering tribe of the Rapids, now intimately connected with the Black Feet.

7. The Pawnees.

[7]The *Pawnees* proper inhabit the country west of the Otoes and the Omahas. They bestow some attention upon agriculture, but less than the southern Sioux tribes. They were unknown to the Americans before the acquisition of Louisiana.

One of the latest attempts at human sacrifice among the Pawnees was happily frustrated in the following manner:

A few years previous to 1821, a war party of Pawnees had taken a young woman prisoner, and on their return she was doomed to be sacrificed to the "Great Star," according to the usages of the tribe. She was fastened to the stake, and a vast company had assembled to witness the scene. Among them was a young warrior, by the name of *Petalesharoo*, who, unobserved, had stationed two fleet horses at a small distance, and was seated among the crowd as a silent spectator. All were anxiously waiting to enjoy the spectacle of the first contact of the flames with their victim; when, to their astonishment, the young warrior was seen rending asunder the cords which bound her, and, with the swiftness of thought, bearing her in his arms beyond the

* Gallatin's estimate

amazed multitude; where, placing her upon one horse, and mounting himself upon the other, he bore her off safe to her friends and country. The act would have endangered the life of an ordinary chief; but such was the sway of Petalesharoo in his tribe, that no one presumed to censure his interference.

What more noble example of gallant daring is to be found among all the tales of modern chivalry?

ANALYSIS.

1. Other western tribes.

[1]Of the other western tribes within the vicinity of the Rocky Mountains, and also of those inhabiting the Oregon territory, we have only partial accounts; and but little is known of their divisions, history, language, or numbers.

2. Oregon tribes.

[2]It is a known fact, however, that the Oregon tribes have few or no wars among themselves, and that they do not engage in battle except in self defence, and then only in the last extremity. Their principal encounters are with the Blackfeet Indians, who are constantly roving about, on both sides of the mountains, in quest of plunder.

SECTION VII.

PHYSICAL CHARACTER, LANGUAGE, GOVERNMENT, RELIGION, AND TRADITIONS OF THE ABORIGINES.

3. Great uniformity in the natural characteristics of the Aborigines, and the evidence thereby exhibited.

PHYSICAL CHARACTER. 1. [3]In their physical character—their form, features, and color, and other natural characteristics, the aborigines, not only within the boundaries of the United States, but throughout the whole continent, presented a great uniformity; exhibiting thereby the clearest evidence that all belonged to the same great race, and rendering it improbable that they had ever intermingled with other varieties of the human family.

4. The form of the Indian, his color, eyes, hair, nose, lips, cheek-bones, beard, forehead, diseases, &c.

2. [4]In form, the Indian was generally tall, straight and slender; his color was of a dull copper, or reddish brown,—his eyes black and piercing,—his hair coarse, dark, and glossy, and never curling,—the nose broad,—lips large and thick,—cheek bones high and prominent,—his beard light,—his forehead narrower than the European,—he was subject to few diseases, and natural deformity was almost unknown.

5. The mind of the Indian compared with that of the European.

3. [5]In mind, the Indian was inferior to the European, although possessed of the same natural endowments; for he had cultivated his perceptive faculties, to the great neglect of his reasoning powers and moral qualities.

6. His senses memory, imagination, limited knowledge, abstract truths, &c.

[6]The senses of the Indian were remarkably acute;—he was apt at imitation, rather than invention; his memory was good: when aroused, his imagination was vivid, but wild as nature: his knowledge was limited by his experience, and he was nearly destitute of abstract moral

ANALYSIS.

1. The attachments of the Indian, his opposition to civilization, repugnance to labor, &c.

truths, and of general principles. [1]The Indian is warmly attached to hereditary customs and manners,—to his ancient hunting grounds and the graves of his fathers; he is opposed to civilization, for it abridges his freedom; and, naturally indolent and slothful, he detests labor, and thus advances but slowly in the improvement of his condition.*

2. The principle which has governed in the division of the different tribes into families or nations.

3. Caution necessary in the application of this principle.

LANGUAGE. 1. [2]The discovery of a similarity in some of the primitive words of different Indian languages, showing that at some remote epoch they had a common origin, is the principle which has governed the division of the different tribes into families or nations. [3]It must not, therefore, be understood, that those which are classed as belonging to the same nation, were under the same government; for different tribes of the same family had usually separate and independent governments, and often waged exterminating wars with each other.

4. Diversity of dialects among those classed as belonging to the same family.

2. [4]There were no national affinities springing from a common language: nor indeed did those classed as belonging to the same family, always speak dialects of a common language, which could be understood by all; for the classification often embraced tribes, between whose languages there was a much less similarity than among many of those of modern Europe.

5. The differences and the similarities observable in the Indian languages.

6. Conclusion deduced from these circumstances, and also from the dissimilarity of the Indian and the European languages.

3. [5]Although the Indian languages differ greatly in their words, of which there is, in general, a great profusion; and although each has a regular and perfect system of its own, yet in grammatical structure and form, a great similarity has been found to exist among all the languages from Greenland to Cape Horn. [6]These circumstances appear to denote a common but remote origin of all the Indian languages; and so different are they from any ancient or modern language of the other hemisphere, as to afford conclusive proof that if they were ever derived from the Old World, it must have been at a very early period in the world's history.

7. Characteristics of the language of the Indian, and its destitution of abstract terms.

4. [7]The language of the Indian, however, although possessed of so much system and regularity, showed but little mental cultivation; for although profuse in words to express all his desires, and to designate every object of his experience; although abounding in metaphors and glowing with allegories, it was incapable of expressing abstract and moral truths; for, to these subjects, the Indian had

* Labor, in every aspect, has appeared to our Indians to be degrading. "I have never,' said an Indian chief at Michilimackinac, who wished to concentrate the points of his honor, "I have never run before an enemy. I have never cut wood nor carried water. I have never been disgraced with a blow. I am as free as my fathers were before me."—*Schoolcraft.*

never directed his attention; and he needed no terms to express that of which he had no conception.

ANALYSIS.

5. [1]He had a name for Deity, but he expressed his attributes by a circumlocution;—he could describe actions, and their effects, but had no terms for their moral qualities. [2]Nor had the Indian any written language. The only method of communicating ideas, and of preserving the memory of events by artificial signs, was by the use of knotted cords, belts of wampum, and analogous means; or by a system of pictorial writing, consisting of rude imitations of visible objects. Something of this nature was found in all parts of America.

1. Illustration.

2. The absence of any written language and the want of it how partially supplied.

GOVERNMENT. 1. [3]In some of the tribes, the government approached an absolute monarchy; the will of the sachem being the supreme law, so long as the respect of the tribe preserved his authority. [4]The government of the Five Nations was entirely republican. [5]In most of the tribes, the Indians, as individuals, preserved a great degree of independence, hardly submitting to any restraint.

3. The government in some of the tribes.

4. Among the Five Nations.

5. Individual independence.

2. [6]Thus, when the Hurons, at one time, sent messengers to conclude a treaty of peace with the Iroquois, a single Indian accompanied the embassy in a hostile character, and no power in the community could deter him. The warrior, meeting one of his enemies, gratified his vengeance by dispatching him. It seems the Iroquois were not strangers to such sallies, for, after due explanation, they regarded the deed as an individual act, and the negotiation was successfully terminated.*

6. Illustration of this principle.

3. [7]The nominal title of chief, although usually for life, and hereditary, conferred but little power, either in war or in peace; and the authority of the chieftain depended almost entirely on his personal talents and energy. [8]Public opinion and usage were the only laws of the Indian.†

7. The title and authority of a chief.

8. What constituted the laws of the Indian.

4. [9]There was one feature of aristocracy which appears to have been very general among the Indian tribes, and to have been established from time immemorial. This was a division into clans or tribes, the members of which were dispersed indiscriminately throughout the whole nation. [10]The principal regulation of these divisions, was, that no man could marry in his own clan, and that every child belonged to the clan of its mother. [11]The obvious

9. Prevalent feature of aristocracy, a division into clans.

10. Principal regulation of these divisions.

11 Design of this system.

* Champlain, tome ii., p. 79—89.

† In an obituary notice of the celebrated M'Gillivray, emperor of the Creeks, who died in 1793, it is said:—"This idolized chief of the Creeks styled himself king of kings. But alas, he could neither restrain the meanest fellow of his nation from the commission of a crime, nor punish him after he had committed it! He might persuade or advise, all the good an Indian king or chief can do"

ANALYSIS.

design of this system was the prevention of marriages among near relations,—thereby checking the natural tendency towards the subdivision of the nation into independent communities.

1. Ordinary number of clans, and how distinguished.
2. The Huron clans
3. The Iroquois.

5. [1]Most of the nations were found divided into three clans, or tribes, but some into more,—each distinguished by the name of an animal. [2]Thus the Huron tribes were divided into three clans,—the Bear, the Wolf, and the Turtle. [3]The Iroquois had the same divisions, except that the clan of the Turtle was divided into two others.

4. The Delaware, Sioux, Shawnee, and Chippewa clans.

[4]The Delawares were likewise divided into three clans; the various Sioux tribes at present into two large clans, which are subdivided into several others: the Shawnees are divided into four clans, and the Chippewas into a larger number.

5. Of the punishment of crimes among some of the Southern tribes.

6. [5]Formerly, among some of the southern tribes, if an individual committed an offence against one of the same clan, the penalty, or compensation, was regulated by the other members of the clan; and in the case of murder, the penalty being death, the nearest male relative of the deceased was the executioner. If an injury was committed by a member of another clan, then the clan of the injured party, and not the party himself, demanded reparation; and in case of refusal, the injured clan had the right to do itself justice, by inflicting the proper penalty upon the offender.

6. Peculiar institution among the Cherokees.
7. An institution somewhat similar among the Creeks.

7. [6]An institution peculiar to the Cherokees was the setting apart, as among the Israelites of old, a city of refuge and peace, which was the residence of a few sacred "beloved men," in whose presence blood could not be shed, and where even murderers found, at least a temporary asylum. [7]Of a somewhat similar nature was once the division of towns or villages, among the Creeks, into White and Red towns,—the former the advocates of peace, and the latter of war; and whenever the question of war or peace was deliberately discussed, it was the duty of the former to advance all the arguments that could be suggested in favor of peace.

8. Uniformity of religious belief.
9. Belief in a Supreme Being, and in the immortality of the soul.
10. Numerous deities and spirits believed in by the Indian.

Religion. 1. [8]The religious notions of the natives, throughout the whole continent, exhibited great uniformity. [9]Among all the tribes there was a belief, though often vague and indistinct, in the existence of a Supreme Being, and in the immortality of the soul, and its future state. [10]But the Indian believed in numberless inferior Deities;—in a god of the sun, the moon, and the stars; of the ocean and the storm;—and his superstition led him to attribute spirits to the lakes and the rivers, the valleys and the mountains, and to every power which he could not fathom.

and which he could neither create nor destroy. [1]Thus the Deity of the Indian was not a unity; the Great Spirit that he worshipped was the embodiment of the material laws of the Universe,—the aggregate of the mysterious powers by which he was surrounded.

ANALYSIS.

1. *The nature of his notions of the Great Spirit.*

2. [2]Most tribes had their religious fasts and festivals; their expiatory self punishments and sacrifices; and their priests, who acted in the various capacities of physicians, prophets, and sorcerers.* [3]The Mexicans paid their chief adoration to the sun, and offered human sacrifices to that luminary. [4]The Natches, and some of the tribes of Louisiana, kept a sacred fire constantly burning, in a temple appropriated to that purpose. The Natches also worshipped the sun, from whom their sovereign and the privileged class claimed to be descended; and at the death of the head chief, who was styled the Great Sun, his wives and his mother were sacrificed. [5]Until quite recently the practice of annually sacrificing a prisoner prevailed among the Missouri Indians and the Pawnees.†

2. *Fasts, sacrifices, priests, &c.*

3. *Mexican worship.*

4. *Religious rites and worship of the Natches.*

5. *Practice of the Missouries and Pawnees.*

3. [6]A superstitious reverence for the dead has been found a distinguishing trait of Indian character. Under its influence the dead were wrapped and buried in the choicest furs, with their ornaments, their weapons of war, and provisions to last them on their solitary journey to the land of spirits. Extensive mounds of earth, the only monuments of the Indian, were often erected over the graves of illustrious chieftains; and some of the tribes, at stated intervals collected the bones of the dead, and interred them in a common cemetery. [7]The Mexicans, and some of the tribes of South America, frequently buried their dead beneath their houses; and the same practice has been traced among the Mobilian tribes of North America. [8]One usage, the burial of the dead in a *sitting posture*, was found almost universal among the tribes from Greenland to Cape Horn, showing that some common superstition pervaded the whole continent.

6. *Reverence for, and burial of the dead*

7. *Mexican mode of burial.*

8. *Burial in a sitting posture.*

TRADITIONS. 1. [9]As the graves of the red men were their only monuments, so traditions were their only history. [10]By oral traditions, transmitted from father to son,

9. *The only monuments and history of the red men.*

10. *Oral traditions.*

* The Indians possessed some little skill in medicine, but as all diseases of obscure origin were ascribed to the secret agency of malignant powers or spirits, the physician invested himself with his mystic character, when he directed his efforts against these invisible enemies. By the agency of dreams, mystical ceremonies, and incantations, he attempted to dive into the abyss of futurity, and bring to light the hidden and the unknown. The same principle in human nature,—a dim belief in the spirit's existence after the dissolution of the body, and of numerous invisible powers, of good and of evil, in the universe around him,—principles which wrap the mind of the savage in the folds of a gloomy superstition, and bow him down, the tool of jugglers and knaves,—have, under the light of Revelation, opened a pathway of hope to a glorious immortality, and elevated man in the scale of being to hold converse with his Maker.

† Archæologia Americana, vol. ii., p. 132. See also p. 54, notice of *Petalesharoo*.

ANALYSIS.

they preserved the memory of important events connected with the history of the tribe—of the deeds of illustrious chieftains—and of important phenomena in the natural world. [1]Of their traditions, some, having obvious reference to events recorded in scripture history, are exceedingly interesting and important, and their universality throughout the entire continent, is conclusive proof that their origin is not wholly fabulous.

1. Importance and origin of some of the traditions.

2. [2]Thus the wide spread Algonquin tribes preserved a tradition of the original creation of the earth from water, and of a subsequent general inundation. [3]The Iroquois tribes likewise had a tradition of a general deluge, but from which they supposed that no person escaped, and that, in order to repeople the earth, beasts were changed into men. [4]One tribe held the tradition, not only of a deluge, but also of an age of fire, which destroyed every human being except one man and one woman, who were saved in a cavern.

2. A prevalent tradition of the Algonquins.

3. Of the Iroquois.

4. Tradition of an age of fire.

3. [5]The Tamenacs, a nation in the northern part of South America, say that their progenitor *Amalivica*, arrived in their country in a bark canoe, at the time of the great deluge, which is called the age of water. This tradition, with some modifications, was current among many tribes; and the name of Amalivica was found spread over a region of more than forty thousand square miles, where he was termed the "Father of Mankind."

5. Peculiar tradition of the Tamenacs.

4. [6]The aboriginal Chilians say that their progenitors escaped from the deluge by ascending a high mountain, which they still point out.

6. Of the Chilians.

[7]The Muyscas of New Grenada have a tradition that they were taught to clothe themselves, to worship the sun, and to cultivate the earth, by an old man with a long flowing beard; but that his wife, less benevolent, caused the valley of Bogota to be inundated, by which all the natives perished, save a few who were preserved on the mountains.

7. Of the Muyscas of New Granada.

5. [8]A tradition said to be handed down from the Toltecs, concerning the pyramid of Cholula, in Mexico, relates, that it was built by one of seven giants, who alone escaped from the great deluge, by taking refuge in the cavern of a lofty mountain. The bricks of which the pyramid was composed were made in a distant province, and conveyed by a file of men, who passed them from hand to hand. But the gods, beholding with wrath the attempt to build an edifice whose top should reach the clouds, hurled fire upon the pyramid, by which numbers of the workmen perished. The work was discontinued.

8. Tradition concerning the pyramid of Cholula.

and the monument was afterwards dedicated to the 'GOD OF THE AIR.'

ANALYSIS.

6. [1]The Mexicans ascribed all their improvements in the arts, and the ceremonies of their religion, to a white and bearded man, who came from an unknown region, and was made high priest of the city of Tula. From the numerous blessings which he bestowed upon mankind, and his aversion to cruelty and war, his was called the golden age, and the era of peace. Having received from the Great Spirit a drink which made him immortal, and being inspired with the desire of visiting a distant country, he went to the east, and, disappearing on the coast, was never afterwards seen. [2]In one of the Mexican picture writings there is a delineation of a venerable looking man, who, with his wife, was saved in a canoe at the time of the great inundation, and, upon the retiring of the waters of the flood, was landed upon a mountain called Colhuacan. Their children were born dumb, and received different languages from a dove upon a lofty tree.

1. Of the great teacher of the Mexicans.

2. Tradition preserved in one of the Mexican picture writings.

7. [3]The natives of Mechoacan are said by Clavigero, Humboldt, and others, to have a tradition, which, if correctly reported, accords most singularly with the scriptural account of the deluge. The tradition relates that at the time of the great deluge, Tezpi, with his wife and children, embarked in a *calli* or house, taking with them several animals, and the seeds of different fruits; and that when the waters began to withdraw, a bird, called *aura*, was sent out, which remained feeding upon carrion; and that other birds were then sent out, which did not return, except the humming bird, which brought a small branch in its mouth.

3. Important tradition of the natives of Mechoacan.

8. [4]These traditions, and many others of a similar character that might be mentioned, form an important link in the chain of testimony which goes to substantiate the authenticity of Divine Revelation. [5]We behold the unlettered tribes of a vast continent, who have lost all knowledge of their origin, or migration hither, preserving with remarkable distinctness, the apparent tradition o. certain events which the inspired penman tells us happened in the early ages of the world's history. [6]We readily detect, in several of these traditions, clouded though they are by fable, a striking coincidence with the scriptural accounts of the creation and the deluge; while in others we think we see some faint memorials of the destruction of the "cities of the plain" by "fire which came down from heaven," and of that "confusion of tongues" which fell upon the descendants of Noah in the plains of Shinar.

4. Nature of the testimony furnished by these traditions.

5. The simple facts which they exhibit.

6. Coincidence of these traditions with certain scriptural accounts.

ANALYSIS.

1. Difficulty in the supposition that the scriptural account of the deluge, &c., is a fable.

2. The alternative of those who tolerate such a supposition.

9. [1]If the scriptural account of the deluge, and the saving of Noah and his family be only a "delusive fable;" at what time, and under what circumstances, it may be asked, could such a fable have been imposed upon the world for a fact, and with such impressive force that it should be universally credited as true, and transmitted, in many languages, through different nations, and successive ages, by oral tradition alone? [2]Those who can tolerate the supposition of such universal credulity, have no alternative but to reject the evidence derived from all human experience, and, against a world of testimony weighing against them, to oppose merely the bare assertion of infidel unbelief.

CHAPTER II.

AMERICAN ANTIQUITIES

SECTION I.

ANTIQUITIES FOUND IN THE UNITED STATES.

3. Antiquities of the Indians of the present race.

4. Consist of what.

5. Where found, and evidences of what.

6. Modern mounds for burial; how distinguished from the ancient tumuli.

1. [3]The Antiquities of the Indians of the present race are neither numerous nor important. [4]They consist chiefly of ornaments, warlike instruments, and domestic utensils; such as rude stone axes or tomahawks, knives and chisels, pipes, flint arrow-heads, an inferior kind of earthenware, and mortars that were used in preparing maize or corn for food. [5]These specimens of aboriginal art and ingenuity are frequently discovered in the cultivation of new lands, in the vicinity of old Indian towns, and particularly in the Indian burying places; but they present no evidences of a state of society superior to what is found among the Indians of the present day. [6]Some tribes erected mounds over the graves of illustrious chieftains; but these works can generally be distinguished from those ancient tumuli which are of unknown origin, by their inferior dimensions, their isolated situations, and the remains of known Indian fabrics that are found within them.

Modern fragments sometimes mistaken for ancient relics.

2. [7]As articles of modern European origin, occasionally found in the Western States, have sometimes been blended with those that are really ancient, great caution is requisite in receiving accounts of supposed antiquities, lest our credulity should impose upon us some modern fragment

for an ancient relic. [1]As the French, at an early period, had establishments in our western territory, it would be surprising if the soil did not occasionally unfold some lost or buried remains of their residence there; and accordingly there have been found knives and pickaxes, iron and copper kettles, and implements of modern warfare, together with medals, and French and English coins; and even some ancient Roman coins were found in a cave in Tennessee; but these had doubtless been deposited there, and perhaps in view of the exploration of the cave, by some European since the country was traversed by the French. [2]But, notwithstanding some reported discoveries to the contrary, it is confidently believed that there has not been found, in all North America, a single medal, coin, or monument, bearing an inscription in any known language of the Old World, which has not been brought, or made here, since the discovery by Columbus.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Implements of French manufacture; French, English, and Roman coins.*

2. *Reported discoveries of ancient coins &c.*

3. [3]There are, however, within the limits of the United States, many antiquities of a remarkable character, which cannot be ascribed either to Europeans or to the present Indian tribes, and which afford undoubted proofs of an origin from nations of considerable cultivation, and elevated far above the savage state. [4]No articles of mechanical workmanship are more enduring than fragments of earthen ware, specimens of which, coeval in date with the remotest periods of civilization, have been found among the oldest ruins of the world. [5]Numerous specimens, moulded with great care, have also been discovered in the western United States, and under such circumstances as to preclude the possibility of their being of recent origin.

3. *Remarkable antiquities, confessedly ancient.*

4. *Preservation of earthen ware.*

5. *Specimens found in the United States.*

4. [6]Some years since, some workmen, in digging a well near Nashville, Tennessee, discovered an earthen pitcher, containing about a gallon, standing on a rock twenty feet below the surface of the earth. Its form was circular, and it was surmounted at the top by the figure of a female head covered with a conical cap. The head had strongly marked Asiatic features, and large ears extending as low as the chin.*

6. *Earthen pitcher found at Nashville.*

5 [7]Near some ancient remains on a fork of the Cumberland River, a curious specimen of pottery, called the "Triune vessel," or "Idol," was found about four feet below the surface of the earth. It consists of three hollow heads, joined together at the back by an inverted bell-shaped hollow stem or handle. The features bear a strong resemblance to the Asiatic. The faces had been painted

7. *The "Triune Vessel" found on a fork of the Cumberland River.*

* Archæologia Americana, vol. 1. p. 214.

ANALYSIS.

with red and yellow, and the colors still retained great brilliancy. The vessel holds about a quart, and is composed of a fine clay, which has been hardened by the action of fire.

1. Idol of clay and gypsum found near Nashville.

6. [1]Near Nashville, an idol composed of clay and gypsum has been discovered, which represents a man without arms, having the hair plaited, a band around the head, and a flattened lump or cake upon the summit. It is said in all respects to resemble an idol found by Professor Pallas in the southern part of the Russian empire.*

2. Ashes and earthen ware found at Salt Springs.

7. [2]In an ancient excavation at the State salt works in Illinois, ashes and fragments of earthen ware were found at great depths below the surface; and similar appearances have been discovered at other works; which renders it probable that these springs were formerly worked by a civilized people, for the manufacture of salt.†

3. Remains of fire-places and chimneys.

[3]Remains of fire-places and chimneys have been discovered in various places, several feet below the surface of the earth, and where the soil was covered by the heaviest forest trees; from which the conclusion is probable that eight or ten hundred years had elapsed since these hearths were deserted.‡

4. Medals representing the sun; copper vessels, silver cup, &c.

8. [4]Medals, representing the sun, with its rays of light, have been found at various places in the Western States, together with utensils and ornaments of copper, sometimes plated with silver: and in one instance, in a mound at Marietta, a solid silver cup was found, with its surface smooth and regular, and its interior finely gilded.§

5. Various articles of copper.

[5]Articles of copper, such as pipe-bowls, arrow-heads, circular medals, &c., have been found in more than twenty mounds.

6. Mirrors of isinglass; iron.

[6]Mirrors of isinglass have been found in many places. Traces of iron wholly consumed by rust have been discovered in a few instances.

7. Articles of pottery.

[7]Some of the articles of pottery are skilfully wrought and polished, glazed and burned, and are in no respects inferior to those of modern manufacture.‖

8. These examples; their origin.

9. [8]These are a few examples of the numerous articles of mechanical workmanship that have been discovered, and which evidently owe their origin to some former race, of far greater skill in the arts, than the present Indian tribes possess.

9. More important antiquities; their character and extent.

[9]But a class of antiquities, far more interesting than those already mentioned, and which afford more decisive proof of the immense numbers, and at least

* Archæologia Americana, vol. i. p. 11, and Pallas's Travels vol. 2nd.

† Some of the Indian tribes made use of *rock* salt, but it is not known that they understood the process of obtaining it by evaporation or boiling.

‡ Archæologia Am. vol. i. p. 202.

§ Schoolcraft's View, p. 276.

‖ Schoolcraft's Mississippi, vol. i. 202, and Archæologia Am. vol. i. p. 227.

partial civilization of their authors, consists of embankments of earth, trenches, walls of stone, and mounds, which are found in great numbers in the states bordering upon the Mississippi and its branches,—in the vicinity of the Great Lakes and their tributaries,—and in the Southern States and Florida. ANALYSIS.

10. [1]Although upwards of a hundred remains of what were apparently rude ancient forts or defensive fortifications, some of which were of considerable dimensions, have been discovered in the state of New York alone, yet they increase in number and in size towards the southwest. Some of the most remarkable only can be described. *1. Rude ancient fortresses.*

11. [2]At Marietta, Ohio, on an elevated plain above the present bank of the Muskingum, were, a few years since, some extraordinary remains of ancient works[a] which appear to have been fortifications. [3]They consisted, principally, of two large oblong inclosures, the one containing an area of forty, and the other of twenty acres, together with several mounds and terraces, the largest mound being one hundred and fifteen feet in diameter at the base, and thirty feet in altitude. *2. Ruins at Marietta.* *a. See No. 1, next page.* *3. Consist of what.*

12. [4]The fortresses were encompassed by walls of earth, from six to ten feet high, and thirty feet in breadth. On each side of the larger inclosure were three entrances, at equal distances apart, the middle being the largest, especially on the side towards the Muskingum. This entrance was guarded by two parallel walls of earth, two hundred and thirty feet apart, and three hundred and sixty feet in length, and extending down to the former bank of the Muskingum. *4. Description of the larger inclosure.*

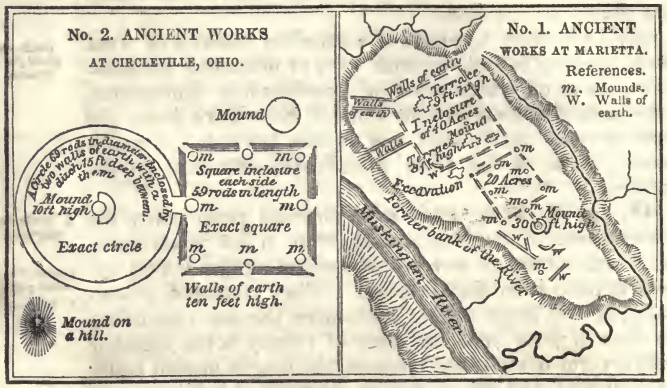
13. [5]Within the inclosed area, near the northwest corner, was an oblong terrace, one hundred and eighty eight feet in length, and nine feet high,—level on the summit, and having, on each side, regular ascents to the top. Near the south wall was another similar terrace; and at the southeast corner a third. Near the centre was a circular mound, thirty feet in diameter, and five feet high; and at the southwest corner, a semicircular parapet, to guard the entrance in that quarter. *5. Appearances within the inclosed area.*

14. [6]The smaller fort had entrances on each side, and at each corner; most of the entrances being defended by circular mounds within. [7]The conical mound, near the smaller fort, was surrounded by a ditch, and an embankment, through which was an opening towards the fortification, twenty feet in width. This mound was protected, in addition, by surrounding parapets and mounds, and outworks of various forms. [8]Between the fortresses were *6. The larger fort or inclosure.* *7. Conical mound near it.* *8. Excavations.*

ANALYSIS.

1. *Their probable design.*

found excavations, one of which was sixty feet in diameter at the surface, with steps formed in its sides. [1]These excavations were probably wells that supplied the inhabitants with water.



2. *Works at Circleville.*

b. See No. 2.

3. *The square inclosure.*

4. *The circular inclosure.*

5. *Central mound.*

6. *Semicircular pavement, and inclined plane.*

15. [2]At Circleville, near the Sciota River, were two earthen inclosures[b] connected with each other; one an *exact circle*, and the other an *exact square;* the diameter of the former being sixty nine rods, and each side of the latter fifty nine. [3]The wall of the square inclosure was about ten feet in height, having seven openings or gateways, each protected by a mound of earth. [4]The circular inclosure was surrounded by two walls, with a ditch between them; the height from the bottom of the ditch to the top of the walls being twenty feet. [5]In the centre of the inclosure was a mound ten feet high, thirty feet in diameter at the summit, and several rods at the base. [6]East of the mound—partially inclosing it, and extending five or six rods, was a semicircular pavement, composed of pebbles, such as are found in the bed of the adjoining river,—and an inclined plane leading to the summit.

7. *Contents of the mound.*

16. [7]On removing the earth composing the mound, there were found, immediately below it, on the original surface of the earth, two human skeletons partially consumed by fire, and surrounded by charcoal and ashes, and a few bricks well burnt;—also a large quantity of arrow-heads, —the handle of a small sword or knife, made of elk-horn, having a silver ferule around the end where the blade had been inserted, and showing the appearance of a blade which had been consumed by rust,—a large mirror of isinglass three feet in length and eighteen inches in width, and on the mirror the appearance of a plate of iron which

had likewise been consumed by rust. [1]A short distance beyond the inclosure, on a hill, was another high mound, which appears to have been the common cemetery, as it contained an immense number of human skeletons, of all sizes and ages.

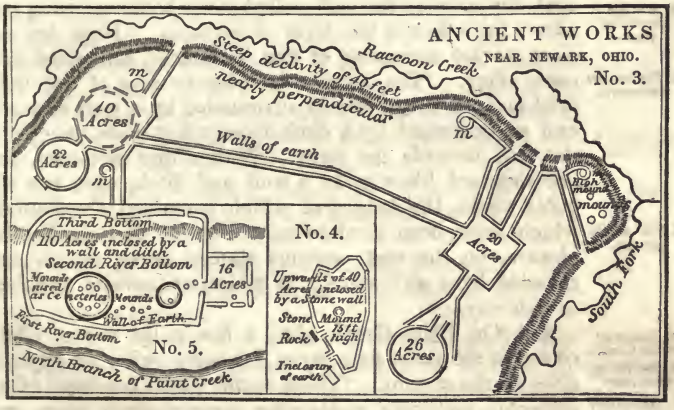
ANALYSIS.

1. *Mound beyond the inclosure.*

17. [2]Near Newark, in Licking County, on an extensive and elevated plain at the junction of two branches of the Muskingum, were the remains of ancient works of a still more interesting character.[a] At the western extremity of these works was a circular fort containing twenty two acres, on one side of which was an elevation thirty feet high, built partly of earth, and partly of stone. This circular fort was connected, by parallel walls of earth, with an octagonal fort containing forty acres, the walls of which were ten feet high. To this fort were eight openings or gateways, about fifteen feet in width, each protected by a mound of earth on the inside.

2. *Ancient works near Newark, Ohio.*

a. See No. 3 below.



18. [3]From the fort, parallel walls of earth proceeded to the former basin of the river:—others extended several miles into the country;—and others on the east to a square fort containing twenty acres, nearly four miles distant.* From this latter fort parallel walls extended to the river, and others to a circular fort a mile and a half distant, containing twenty six acres, and surrounded by an embankment from twenty five to thirty feet high. Farther north and east, on elevated ground protected by intrenchments, were mounds containing the remains of the dead. It has been supposed that the parallel walls, extending

3. *Parallel walls of earth: other forts or inclosures: mounds &c*

* The proportionate length of the parallel walls of earth in the engraved *plan*, has been diminished, for want of room.

ANALYSIS. south, connected these works with others thirty miles distant.

1. *Ancient ruin near Somerset, in Ohio.*
a. See No. 4, preceding page.

19. [1]Near Somerset, in Perry County, is an ancient ruin,[a] whose walls, inclosing more than forty acres, were built with rude fragments of rocks, which are now thrown down, but which were sufficient to construct a wall seven feet in height, and five or six in thickness. The inclosure has two openings, before one of which is a large and high rock, protecting the passage. Near the centre of the work is a circular conical mound, fifteen or twenty feet in height; and in the line of the wall, and forming a part of it, is one of smaller dimensions. Near the southern extremity of the inclosure is a small work, containing half an acre, whose walls are of earth, but only a few feet in height.

2. *Works on the North Branch of Paint Creek.*
b. See No. 5, preceding page.
3. *The largest inclosure.*
4. *The smaller one.*

20. [2]A short distance west of Chilicothe, on the North Branch of Paint Creek, there are several successive natural deposites of the soil, called river bottoms, rising one above the other in the form of terraces. Here are ancient works[b] consisting of two inclosures, connected with each other. [3]The largest contains an area of one hundred and ten acres, wholly surrounded by a wall of earth, and encompassed by a ditch twenty feet wide, except on the side towards the river. Within this inclosure, and encompassed likewise by a wall and ditch, were two circular works, the largest of which contained six mounds, which have been used as cemeteries. [4]The smaller inclosure, on the east, contains sixteen acres, and is surrounded by a wall merely, in which are several openings or gateways.

5. *Ruins at Paint Creek.*
c. See No. 6, next page.
6. *Inclosures on the north side o the stream.*
7. *Mounds, wells, elevations, &c.*
d. See *a* in the engraving.

21. [5]On Paint Creek, also, a few miles nearer Chilicothe, in the same state, were extensive ruins[c] on opposite sides of the stream. [6]Those on the north consisted of an irregular inclosure, containing seventy seven acres, and two adjoining ones, the one square and the other circular, the former containing twenty seven and the latter seventeen acres. [7]Within the large inclosure were several mounds and wells, and two elliptical elevations, one of which[d] was twenty five feet high and twenty rods long. This was constructed of stones and earth, and contained vast quantities of human bones.

8. *Other works.*
e. See *b.*
f. See *c.*

22. [8]The other[e] elliptical elevation was from eight to fifteen feet high. Another work,[f] in the form of a half moon, was bordered with stones of a kind now found about a mile from the spot. Near this work was a mound five feet high and thirty feet in diameter, composed entirely of red ochre, which was doubtless brought from a hill at a great distance from the place.

ANALYSIS.

23. [1]The walls of the ruins on the south side of the stream were irregular in form, and about ten feet high. The principal inclosure contained eighty four acres, and the adjoining square twenty seven. A small rivulet, rising without the inclosure, passes through the wall, and loses itself in an aperture in the earth, supposed to have been originally a work of art.

1. Ruins on the south side of the stream.

24. [2]East of these works, on the summit of a rocky precipitous hill, about three hundred feet in height, rises a wall of unhewn stone, inclosing an area of one hundred and thirty acres. The wall was on the very edge of the hill, and it had two gateways, one opening directly towards the creek. [3]A large quantity of ashes and cinders, several feet in depth, was found within the inclosure, adjoining the wall on the south side. [4]Below the hill, in the slate-rock which forms the bed of the creek, are four wells, several feet in depth. Each was found covered by a large stone, having an aperture through the centre. It is believed that the stream has changed its channel since the wells were excavated.

2. Stone wall.

3. Ashes and cinders.

4. Wells

25. [5]At the mouth of the Sciota River, on both sides of the Ohio, are ruins of ancient works several miles in extent.[a] On the south side of the Ohio, opposite Alexandria, is an extensive inclosure, nearly square, whose walls of earth are now from fourteen to twenty feet in height. At the southwest corner is a mound twenty feet in height, and covering about half an acre. Both east and west of the large inclosure are walls of earth nearly parallel—half a mile or more in length—about ten rods apart—and at present from four to six feet in height.

5. Ruins opposite the mouth of the Sciota River.

a. See No. 7. next page.

26. [6]On the north side of the river are similar ruins, but more intricate and extensive. Walls of earth, mostly parallel, commencing near the Sciota, after running a distance of nearly four miles, and ascending a high hill, terminate near four mounds, three of which are six feet in height, covering nearly an acre each. The fourth and largest is twenty feet high, and has a raised walk ascend-

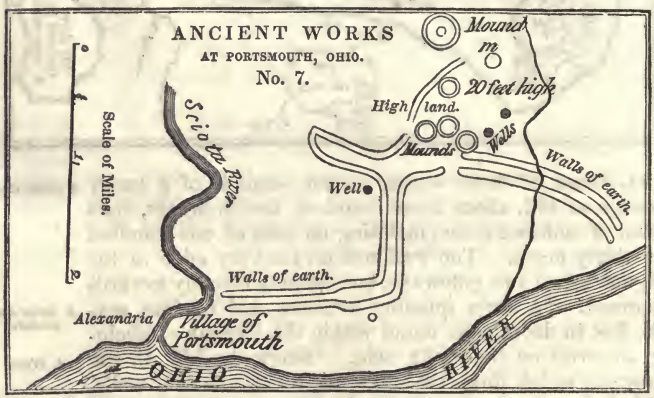
6. Similar ruins at the mouth of the Sciota, on the north side of the Ohio; parallel walls of earth.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Mounds, wells, &c.*

ing to its summit, and another descending from it. [1]Near this was a mound twenty five feet in height, containing the remains of the dead; and about a quarter of a mile northwest another mound had been commenced. On the brow of the hill is a well now twenty feet deep, and two others near, of less depth. From the summit of the hill are parallel walls, nearly two miles in length, extending eastwardly to a bend in the Ohio, and thus embracing an area of several square miles within the circuit of the works and the river.

Parallel walls.



2. *Ruins throughout the Mississippi Valley.*

27. [2]Ruins similar to those already mentioned are found in great numbers throughout almost the entire valley of the Mississippi, but those in the State of Ohio have been the most carefully surveyed, and the most accurately described. [3]In Missouri are the remains of several *stone* works; and in Gasconade county are the ruins of an ancient town, regularly laid out in streets and squares. The walls of the ruins were found covered with large cotton trees, a species of poplar, of full growth. [4]Similar remains have been discovered in the territory west of the State of Missouri, and also on the Platte River, the Kanzas, and the Arkansas.

3. *Stone walls in Missouri.*

4. *Ruins farther west.*

5. *Mounds throughout the United States.*

28. [5]Mounds, likewise, of various forms, square, oblong, or circular at the base, and flat or conical at the summit, have been found in great numbers throughout the United States; sometimes in isolated positions, but mostly in the vicinity of the mural remains. [6]Some were used as general cemeteries, and were literally filled with human bones: others appear to have been erected as monuments over the ashes of the dead, their bodies having

6. *Their uses.*

first been burned, a custom not usually prevalent with the Indians of the present day. The object of others is not certainly known, but probably some were designed for defence, and others for religious purposes. ANALYSIS.

29. [1]There were several extensive mounds on the site of Cincinnati. One of these, first described in 1794, had then on its surface the stumps of oak trees several feet in diameter.* Beneath it were found the remains of a human body, and various ornaments and instruments of lead, copper, and of stone. [2]Beneath an extensive mound in Lancaster, Ohio, was found a furnace, eighteen feet long and six wide, and upon it was placed a rude vessel of earthenware, of the same dimensions, containing a number of human skeletons. Underneath the vessel was a thick layer of ashes and charcoal.† *1. Mounds at Cincinnati.* *2. Mound at Lancaster, Ohio.*

30. [3]Near Wheeling, Virginia, was a mound seventy feet in height, and sixty feet in diameter at the summit. Near it were three smaller mounds, one of which has been opened. It was found to contain two vaults, built of pillars of wood supporting roofs of stone; and within them were human bones, together with beads of bone or ivory, copper wristlets, plates of mica, marine shells, and in one a stone marked with unknown characters. [4]Nearly opposite St. Louis, in Illinois, within a circuit of five or six miles, are upwards of one hundred and sixty mounds; and in the vicinity of St. Louis they are likewise numerous. *3. Mounds near Wheeling, Virginia.* *4. Mounds opposite St. Louis*

31. [5]About eleven miles from the city of Natches, in Mississippi, is a group of mounds, one of which is thirty-five feet high, embracing on its summit an area of four acres, encompassed by an embankment around the margin. Some, however, have supposed that this is a natural hill, to which art has given its present form. On the summit of this elevation are six mounds, one of which is still thirty feet high, and another fifteen.‡ *5. Mounds near Natchez, in Mississippi.*

32. [6]Upon the north side of the Etowah River, in Georgia, is a mound seventy-five feet high, and more than three hundred in diameter at its base, having an inclined plane ascending to its summit.§ [7]The mounds of Florida are numerous and extensive, many of them near the sea coast being composed of shells. *6. Mound in Georgia.* *7. Mounds of Florida.*

33. [8]Such is the general character of the numerous ancient remains that have been found in so great num- *8. Character and extent of the mounds in the United States.*

* Transactions of the Amer. Philo. Soc. vol. iv., p. 178.
† Silliman's Journal, vol. i., p. 428. ‡ Bradford's American Antiquities, p. 58.
§ Silliman's Journal, vol. i., p. 322. It appears that some mounds of this description were constructed by the ancestors of the present Indians. See T. Irving's Florida, vol. i., pp. 148, 149.

ANALYSIS.

bers throughout the United States. West of the Alleghanies, the number of the *mural remains* alone has been estimated at more than five thousand, and the mounds at a much greater number. [1]That they were the work of multitudes of the human family, who were associated in large communities, who cultivated the soil, and who had arrived at a degree of civilization considerably beyond that of the present Indian tribes, cannot be doubted. But the names and the history of these people we shall probably never with certainty learn. Curtained by the hand of time, which has left no written records, if any ever existed, their all but a few earth-embosomed relics have passed into oblivion. [2]At the period of the first discovery of the continent, not only had this unknown but numerous people passed away from their ancient dwelling places, but ages must have elapsed since their "altars and their fires" were deserted; for over all the monuments which alone perpetuate the knowledge of their existence, the forest had already extended its shades, and NATURE had triumphantly resumed her empire, cheating the wondering European with the belief that her solitudes had never before been broken but by the wild beasts that roamed here, or the stealthy footsteps of the rude Indian.

1. The work of a numerous, and partially civilized, but unknown people.

2. Evidence of the antiquity of the ruins described.

SECTION II.

ANTIQUITIES FOUND IN OTHER PORTIONS OF THE CONTINENT.

1. [3]Although the deserted remains that have been described, and others of a similar character—the work of a people apparently long extinct, were the only evidence of a former civilization within the limits of the United States; yet a far different spectacle was presented on entering the regions farther south, where, instead of the buried relics of a former greatness, its living reality was found.

3. Increasing evidences of civilization as we proceed farther south.

2. [4]When the Spanish invaders landed on the coast of Mexico and in Peru, they found there, instead of feeble wandering tribes, as at the north, populous and powerful agricultural nations, with regular forms of government, established systems of law and religion, immense cities, magnificent edifices and temples, extensive roads,* aqueducts, and other public works; all showing a high degree of advancement in many of the arts, and rivalling, in

4. Mexico and Peru at the time of their discovery by the Spaniards.

* "At the time when the Spaniards entered Peru, no kingdom in Europe could boast of any work of public utility that could be compared with the great roads formed by the Incas.' —*Robertson's America*

many respects, the regularly organized states of the Old World.

ANALYSIS.

3. [1]The Mexicans constructed pyramids and mounds far more extensive than those which have been discovered in the United States. Within the city of Mexico alone, were more than two thousand pyramidal mounds, the largest of which, in the central square of the city, was constructed of clay, and had been erected but a short time before the landing of Cortes. It had five stories, with flights of stairs leading to its superior platform; its base was three hundred and eighteen feet in length; its height was one hundred and twenty-one feet, and it was surrounded by a wall of hewn stone. This pyramid was dedicated to one of the Mexican gods, and sacrifices were offered upon its summit.

1. Mexican pyramids and mounds: great pyramid in the city of Mexico.

4. [2]In Tezcuco was a pyramid constructed of enormous masses of basalt, regularly cut, and beautifully polished, and covered with sculptures. There are still seen the foundations of large edifices, and the remains of a fine aqueduct in a state of sufficient preservation for present use.—[3]Near the city of Cholula, was the largest pyramid in Mexico. This also was designed for religious purposes, and was sacred to the "God of the Air." It was constructed of alternate layers of clay and unburnt brick, and was one thousand four hundred and twenty-three feet in length, and one hundred and seventy-seven feet in height.

2. Pyramid, and other works in Tezcuco.

3. Pyramid of Cholula.

5. [4]Such was the character of some of the Mexican pyramids, the ruins of many of which, imposingly grand even in their desolation, still crown the hill-tops, and strew the plains of Mexico. The remains of extensive public edifices of a different character, devoted to the purposes of civil life, and many of them built of hewn and sculptured stone, are also numerous. [5]The soil of Mexico was under a rich state of cultivation, and the cities were not only numerous, but some of them are supposed to have contained one or two hundred thousand inhabitants. The city of Tezcuco, which was even larger than that of Mexico, was estimated by early writers to contain one hundred and forty thousand houses.

4. General character and extent of the ruins found in Mexico.

5. Agriculture, cities, and population of Mexico.

6. [6]Extensive ruins of cities, containing the remains of pyramids and the walls of massive buildings, broken columns, altars, statues, and sculptured fragments, showing that their authors had attained considerable knowledge of the arts, and were a numerous, although an idolatrous people, are likewise found in great numbers throughout Chiapas and Yucatan; and in the neighboring Central American provinces of Honduras and Guatimala. Only

6. Nature and extent of the ruins found in Yucatan and Central America.

Yucatan, and the adjoining Provinces.

a few of these structures, and perhaps those not the most interesting or important, can be described here; but this brief notice of them will convey a knowledge of their general character.* The annexed map shows the localities of the ruins that are described, the most important of which are those of Palenque in Chiapas, of Copan in Honduras, and of Uxmal and Chichen in Northern Yucatan.

ANALYSIS.

RUINS OF PALENQUE.

1. Ruins of Palenque.

1. [1]The ruins of Palenque, in the province of Chiapas, bordering upon Yucatan, are the first which awakened attention to the existence of ancient and unknown cities in America. [2]They were known to the Spaniards as early as 1750; and in 1787 they were explored by order of the King of Spain, under a commission from the government of Guatimala. The account of the exploration was however locked up in the archives of Guatimala until the time of the Mexican Revolution. In 1822 an English translation was published in London, which was the first notice in Europe of the discovery of these ruins.

2. Our first knowledge of them.

a. See No. 1.

3. The elevation on which

2. [4]The principal of the structures that have been described,[a] stands on an artificial elevation, forty feet

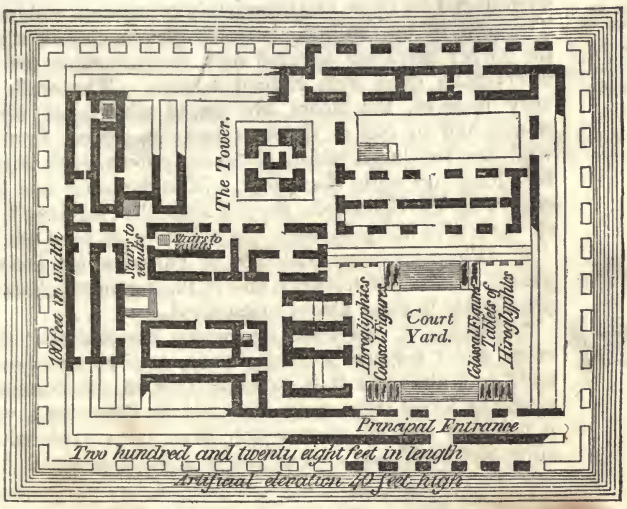
* For the description of the Ruins of Palenque, Copan, Chichen, Uxmal, &c., we are mainly indebted to the valuable works of Mr. Stephens. The illustrative engravings are likewise taken, by permission, from the same works, to which the reader is referred for the fullest description which has yet been published of the Ruins in this portion of America. *See Stephens' 'Central America, Chiapas, and Yucatan,"* 2 vols. 1841; and Stephens' "*Incidents of Travel in Yucatan,*" 2 vols. 1843.

ANALYSIS.

high, three hundred and ten feet in length, and two hundred and sixty in width. This elevation was formerly faced with stone, which has been thrown down by the growth of trees, and its form is now hardly distinguishable. [1]The building itself, which is called by the natives "The Palace," is about twenty-five feet high, and measures two hundred and twenty-eight feet front, by one hundred and eighty feet deep. The front originally contained fourteen doorways, with intervening piers, of which all but six are now in ruins.

stands the principal of the ruins of Palenque.

1. The building called "The Palace."



PLAN OF PALENQUE, No. 1, CALLED THE PALACE. The dark parts represent the walls that are still standing. The other walls are in ruins.

3. [2]The walls are of stone, laid with mortar and sand, and the whole is covered by a fine plaster, or *stucco*, nearly as hard as stone, and painted. [3]The piers are covered with human figures, hieroglyphics, and ornaments. [4]The building has two parallel corridors, or galleries, running lengthwise on all four of its sides, the floors of which are covered with an exceedingly hard cement, and the walls ornamented. [5]In the eastern part of the building, a range of stone steps, thirty feet long, leads from the inner corridor to a rectangular court yard, eighty feet long by seventy broad, now encumbered by trees, and strewed with ruins.

2. Walls of the building.

3. Piers.

4. Corridors.

5. Stone steps and court yard.

4. [6]On each side of the steps are the forms of gigantic human figures, nine or ten feet high, carved on stone, with rich head-dresses and necklaces; and on the farther side

6. Sculptured human figures.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Stone tower.*

2. *Ornaments, and plan o the rooms.*

3. *Description of the building called the "Tribunal of Justice."*

a. See No. 2, page 74.

4. *Other buildings.*

5. *Extent of the ruins of Palenque.*

of the court yard, on each side of a corresponding fligh. of steps, are similar figures. [1]In one part of the building is a substantial stone tower of three stories, thirty feet square at the base, and rising far above the surrounding walls. [2]The ornaments throughout the building are so numerous, and the plan of the rooms so complicated, as to forbid any attempt at minute description.

5. [3]Immediately adjoining the building above described is another,[a] but of smaller dimensions, although placed on a more elevated terrace. Both terrace and building are surrounded by trees, and completely overgrown with them. The front of the building is richly ornamented in stucco, the corner piers are covered with hieroglyphics, and the intervening ones with human figures. The walls are very massive, the floors are paved with large square stones, and in one of the corridors, projecting from the wall, are two large tablets of hieroglyphics, each thirteen feet long and eight feet high. This building has been called, by the Spaniards, the "Tribunal of Justice;" and the tablets of hieroglyphics, the "Tables of the Law."

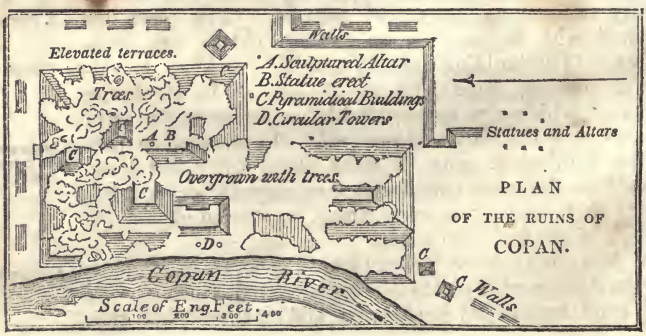
6. [4]The remaining buildings of Palenque are likewise placed on elevated terraces, and in their general character are similar to those already described.

[5]Although it has been repeatedly asserted that these ruins cover a space of from twenty to sixty miles in extent, and although it is possible that in the dense surrounding forest other ruins may yet be discovered, yet it is believed that all those which have been explored are embraced within an area of less than an acre.

RUINS OF COPAN.

6. *Situation of the ruins of Copan.*

1. [6]The ruins of Copan, in the western part of Honduras, adjoining the province of Guatimala, are on the east.



PLAN OF THE RUINS OF COPAN.

ern bank of a small stream that falls into the Bay of Honduras. [1]A wall of cut stone, from sixty to ninety feet high, running north and south along the margin of the stream,—its top covered with furze and shrubbery,—is yet standing in a state of good preservation; and other walls of a similar character surround the principal ruins. [1]Within these walls are extensive terraces and pyramidal buildings, massive stone columns, idols, and altars, covered with sculpture; some of which are equal in workmanship to the finest monuments of the Egyptians, and all now enveloped in a dense and almost impenetrable forest.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Walls surrounding the ruins.*

2. *Character of the ruins within the walls.*

2. [3]The description given by Mr. Stephens, of the impressions made upon him by the first view of these ruins, is so graphic, that we present it here, although in a condensed form, yet as nearly as possible in the language of the writer. [4]After working his way over the walls and through the thick wood to the interior of the inclosure, "we came," he says, "to an area so covered with trees, that at first we could not make out its form, but which, on clearing the way, we ascertained to be a square, with steps on all the sides, almost as perfect as those of the Roman amphitheatre.

3. *The description given by Mr. Stephens.*

4. *Interior of the inclosure.*

3. [5]"These steps, ornamented with sculpture, we ascended, and reached a broad terrace a hundred feet high, overlooking the river, and supported by the wall which we had seen from the opposite bank. The whole terrace was covered with trees; and even at this height from the ground were two gigantic cotton trees, about twenty feet in circumference, extending their half naked roots fifty or a hundred feet around, binding down the ruins, and shading them with their wide spreading branches.

5. *Broad and lofty terrace.*

4. [6]"We sat down on the edge of the wall, and strove in vain to penetrate the mystery by which we were surrounded. Who were the people that built this city? Historians say America was peopled by savages; but savages never reared these structures—savages never carved these stones. We asked our Indian attendants who erected these works, and their dull answer was, 'Who knows?' There were no associations connected with the place, none of those stirring recollections which hallow Rome, and Athens, and

6. *"Who built the city?"*

'The world's great mistress on the Egyptian plain;'

but architecture, sculpture, and painting,—all the arts which embellished life,—had flourished in this overgrown forest. Orators, warriors, and statesmen,—beauty, ambition, and glory, had lived and passed away, and none could tell of their past existence.

Its departed glory.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Its desolation and mystery.*

5. [1]"The city was desolate. It lay before us like a shattered bark in the midst of the ocean, her masts gone, her name effaced, her crew perished, and none to tell whence she came, to whom she belonged, how long on her voyage, or what caused her destruction. All was mystery,—dark, impenetrable mystery; and every circumstance increased it. An immense forest shrouded the ruins, hiding them from sight, heightening the impression and moral effect, and giving an intensity and almost wildness to the interest."

2. *Extent of the ruins.*

a. See p. 76.

3. *Terraces, sculptured fragments, carved heads, "idols," "altars," &c.*

6. [2]The ruins extend along the river more than two miles, but the principal portion of them is represented on the annexed *Plan*.[a] [3]The numerous terraces and pyramids are walled with cut stone; and sculptured fragments abound throughout the ruins. Remains of carved heads, of gigantic proportions, ornament many of the terraces; and numerous colossal statues, or "idols," of solid stone, from ten to fifteen feet in height, are found; some erect, others fallen. There are likewise many "altars," all of a single block of stone,—some richly ornamented, but each differing from all the rest,—many of them now much faded and worn by their long exposure to the elements. Some are in their places before the idols; others are overthrown, and partially or wholly buried in the earth.

Solid Stone Altar, found at Copan; six feet square and four feet high, the top covered with hieroglyphics.

4. *Description of one of the altars.*

7. [4]One of these sculptured altars, standing on four globes cut out of the same stone, was six feet square and four feet high, with its top covered with hieroglyphics, and each side representing four individuals. The figures sit cross-legged, in the oriental custom;—the head-dresses are remarkable for their curious and complicated forms;—all have breastplates; and each holds some article in his

hand. The absence of all representations of weapons of war, and the nature of the ornaments, induces the belief that the people were not warlike, but peaceable, idolatrous, and probably easily subdued. ANALYSIS.

8. [1]Two or three miles from the ruins, there is a stony range where are quarries from which the stones for the walls and buildings of Copan were evidently taken. There are huge blocks of stone of different degrees of finish; and others are found on the way to the city, where they were probably abandoned when the labors of the workmen were arrested. 1. *Quarries.*

RUINS OF CHICHEN.

1. [2]The ruins of Chichen, in the central part of northern Yucatan,[a] are about thirty miles west of Valladolid; and as the high road passes through them, they are probably better known than any other ruins in the country. The buildings which are still standing are laid down on the annexed "Plan." The whole circumference occupied by them is about two miles, although ruined buildings appear beyond these limits. 2. *Situation and extent of the ruins of Chichen.* a. See Map, p. 74.

PLAN OF THE RUINS OF CHICHEN.

2. [3]Following the pathway from the "Modern Buildings," as denoted on the annexed Plan, at the distance of thirty or forty rods we arrive at the building represented as No. 1. This building faces the east, and measures one hundred and forty-nine feet in front, by forty-eight feet deep. The whole exterior is rude and without ornament of any kind. In the centre of one side, a grand staircase, forty-five feet wide, now in ruins, rises to the roof of the building. The whole number of apartments is eighteen; one of which, from its darkness, and from the sculpture on the lintel of its doorway, has given a 3. *Description of building No. 1.*

ANALYSIS.

name to the whole building,—signifying, in the Indian language, the "Writing in the dark."

1. *The "House of the Nuns."*

a. See No. 2, preceding page.

2. *Exterior buildings.*

3. [1]Leaving this building, and following the pathway about thirty rods westward, we reach a majestic pile of buildings, called the "House of the Nuns;"[a] remarkable for its good state of preservation, and the richness and beauty of its ornaments. [2]On the left, as we approach, is a building measuring thirty-eight feet by thirteen; and on the right is another which is twenty-six feet long, fourteen deep, and thirty-one high. The latter has three cornices, and the spaces between are richly ornamented.

3. *The principal pile of buildings, with its several staircases, platforms, and ranges.*

4. [3]The principal pile of buildings consists of three structures, rising one above another. On the north side, a grand staircase, of thirty-nine steps, fifty-six feet wide and thirty-two feet high, rises to the top of the first range, upon which stands a second range of buildings, with a platform of fourteen feet in front extending all round. From the back of this platform, on the south side, the grand staircase rises again, fifteen steps, to the roof of the second range; which forms a platform in front of the third range. These several buildings rest on a structure solid from the ground, the roof of the lower range being merely a platform in front of the upper one. [4]The circumference of the whole structure is six hundred and thirty-eight feet, and its height is sixty-five feet.

4. *Circumference and height of the structure.*

5. *Upper platform, apartments, inner walls, paintings, &c.*

5. [5]The upper platform forms a noble promenade, and commands a magnificent view of the whole surrounding country. The apartments are too numerous to be described. The inner walls of some had been covered with painted designs, now much defaced, but the remains of which present colors, in some places still bright and vivid. Among these remains are detached portions of human figures, well drawn,—the heads adorned with plumes of feathers, and the hands bearing shields and spears.

6. *The Caracol.*

b. See No 3, preceding page.

7. *Staircase and balustrades.*

6. [6]At the distance of four hundred feet northward from the "House of the Nuns," stands a circular building,[b] twenty-two feet in diameter, upon the uppermost of two extensive terraces. On account of its interior arrangements, this building is known as the *Caracol* or "Winding staircase." [7]A staircase forty-five feet wide, and containing twenty steps, rises to the platform of the first terrace. On each side of this staircase, forming a sort of balustrade, were the entwined bodies of two gigantic sculptured serpents, three feet wide,—portions of which are still in their places.

8. *Second staircase.*

7. [8]The platform of the second terrace is reached by another staircase, and in the centre of the steps are the remains of a pedestal six feet high, on which probably

once stood an idol. [1]The inner walls of the building are plastered, and ornamented with paintings now much defaced. [2]The height of the building, including the terraces, is little short of sixty feet.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Inner walls.*
2. *Height of the building.*

8. [3]A few hundred feet northwest from the building last described, are two others,[a] each upon elevated terraces. [4]The most interesting object in the first of these, which is yet in a state of good preservation, is a large stone tablet covered with hieroglyphics. The farther terrace and building are fast going to decay.—[5]These are the only buildings which are still standing on the west side of the high road, but the vestiges of extensive mounds, with remains of buildings upon them, and colossal stones, and fragments of sculpture, strew the plain in great profusion.

3. *Other buildings.*
a. See 4 & 5, page 79.
4. *Hieroglyphics.*
5. *Mounds, ruins, fragments, &c.*

9. [6]Passing from these ruins across the high road, we come to the Castle or Tower,[b] the grandest and most conspicuous object among the ruins of Chichen. [7]It stands upon a lofty mound faced with stone, measuring, at the base, two hundred and two feet, by one hundred and ninety-six, and rising to the height of seventy-five feet. [8]On the west side is a staircase thirty-seven feet wide; and on the north is one forty-four feet wide, and containing ninety steps. At the foot of this staircase are two colossal serpents' heads, ten feet in length, with mouths open and tongues protruding. [9]The platform on the top of the mound measures sixty-one feet by sixty-four, and the building forty-three by forty-nine.

6. *The "Tower."*
b. See No. 6, page 79.
7. *The mound on which it stands.*
8. *Staircases, and serpent's heads.*
9. *Upper platform, &c.*

10. [10]Single doorways face the east, south, and west, having massive lintels of wood covered with elaborate carvings, and jambs ornamented with sculptured human figures. The principal doorway facing the north is twenty feet wide, and has two massive columns, eight feet eight inches high, with large projections at the base, entirely covered with elaborate sculpture. [11]The building itself is twenty feet high, forming, in the whole, an elevation of nearly a hundred feet.—[12]A short distance east of this structure is an area of nearly four hundred feet square, inclosed by groups of small stone columns from three to six feet high, each consisting of several separate pieces, like millstones.

10. *Doorways.*
11. *Height of the building.*
12. *Groups of columns.*

11. [13]Several hundred feet northwest is another structure,[c] consisting of immense parallel walls, each two hundred and seventy-four feet long, thirty feet thick, and one hundred and twenty feet apart. [14]One hundred feet from each extremity, facing the open space between the walls, are two buildings considerably in ruins,—each exhibiting the remains of two columns, richly ornamented, rising

13. *Immense parallel walls.*
c. See No. 7, page 79.
14. *Buildings at the extremities.*

ANALYSIS.

1. *Massive stone rings.*

among the rubbish. [1]In the centre of the great stone walls, exactly opposite each other, and at the height of twenty feet from the ground, are two massive projecting stone rings, four feet in diameter and thirteen inches thick, having on the border two sculptured entwined serpents.

2. *Importance of these rings.*

3. *Herrera's account of similar rings, and their uses.*

12. [2]These stone rings are highly important, as a ray of historic light gleams upon them, showing the probable object and uses of this extraordinary structure. [3]Herrera, in his account of the diversions of Montezuma, in describing a game of Ball, has the following language: "The place where they played was a ground room,—long, narrow, and high, but wider above than below, and higher on the sides than at the ends; and they kept it very well plastered, and smooth, both the walls and the floor. *On the side walls they fixed certain stones like those of a mill, with a hole quite through the middle*, just as big as the ball; and he that could strike it through there won the game."

4. *Important fact established from this circumstance.*

[4]If the objects of this structure are identical with the Tennis Court, or Ball Alley, in the city of Mexico, the circumstance establishes, with little doubt, an affinity between the people who erected the ruined cities of Yucatan, and those who inhabited Mexico at the time of the conquest.

5. *Description of a building adjoining one of these parallel walls.*

13. [5]At the southern extremity of the most eastern of these parallel walls, and on the outer side, is a building consisting of two ranges; one even with the ground, and the other about twenty-five feet above it,—the latter being in a state of good preservation, and having conspicuous, on the cornice, a procession of tigers or lynxes. The rooms of both divisions abound with sculptures, and designs in painting, representing human figures, battles, houses, trees, and scenes of domestic life.

RUINS OF UXMAL.*

6. *Ruins of Uxmal.*

1. [6]The ruins of Uxmal are about fifty miles south of Merida, the principal city and the capital of Yucatan.

7. *The "House of the Governor."*

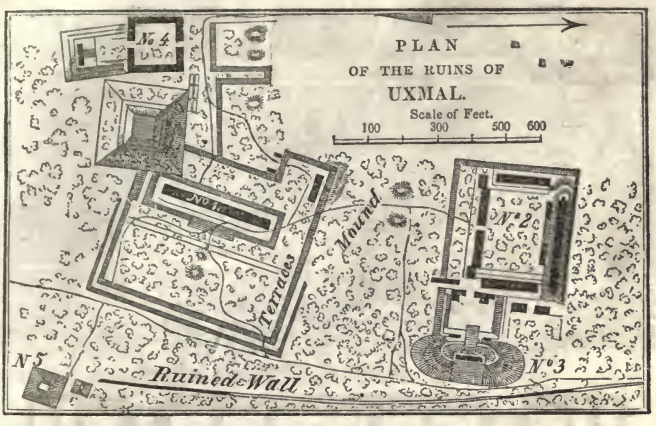
a. See No. 1, next page.

8. *How situated.*

9. *The first and second terraces.*

[7]The most conspicuous building among the ruins is called the "House of the Governor,"[a] so named by the Indians, who supposed it the principal building of the ancient city, and the residence of its ruler. [8]This building stands on the uppermost of three ranges of terraces, each walled with cut stone. [9]The first terrace is five hundred and seventy-five feet in length, and three feet high. Above this, leaving a platform fifteen feet wide, rises a second terrace, twenty feet high, and five hundred forty-five feet long,—having rounded corners instead of

* Pronounced Oox-mal. The *u*, in Spanish, when sounded, is pronounced like double o



sharp angles. [1]The several terraces were found covered with trees, which have been cleared away since the exploration of the ruins.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Terraces, how covered.*

2. [2]In the middle of the second terrace is an inclined, broken, round pillar, five feet in diameter and eight feet high. [3]Two hundred and fifty feet from the front of this second terrace, rises a grand staircase, one hundred and thirty feet broad, and containing thirty-five steps, ascending to a third terrace nineteen feet above the second. [4]This uppermost terrace is three hundred and sixty feet long, and nearly a hundred broad; and on its platform stands a noble stone building, of elegant proportions, three hundred and twenty-two feet in length, thirty-nine feet broad, and twenty-four feet high. The front view of a portion of this building is represented in the annexed engraving. (See next page.)

2. *Broken pillar.*

3. *Staircase.*

4. *Uppermost terrace; and building on its platform.*

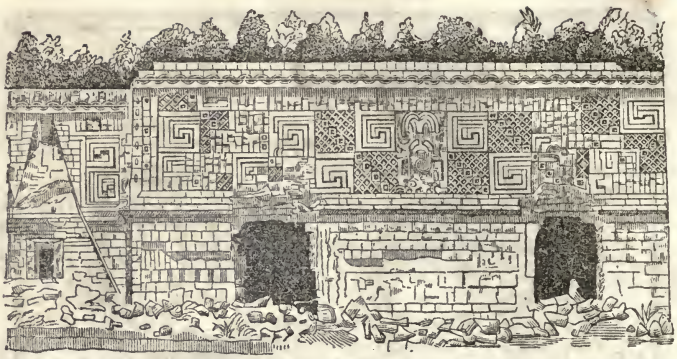
3. [5]This front has thirteen doorways, the principal of which is in the centre, opposite the range of steps leading up the terrace. The centre door is eight feet six inches wide, and eight feet ten inches high. The others are of the same height, but two feet less in width. [6]The walls of the edifice are of plain stone up to the mouldings that run along the tops of the doorways; above which, to the top of the building, are ornaments and sculptured work in great profusion, without any rudeness in the designs, but of symmetrical proportions, and rich and curious workmanship. [7]The building is divided into two ranges of rooms from front to rear.[a] The floors are of cement, and the walls are of square stones smoothly polished, and laid with as much regularity as under the rules of the best modern masonry.

5. *The front doorways of the building.*

6. *Walls of the edifice.*

7. *The rooms.*

a. See the 'Plan,' next page.



Front View of Part of Building No I, Uxmal.

Ground Plan of Building No. I, Uxmal.

ANALYSIS.

1. *The roof.*

2. *Lintels of the doorways.*

4. [1]The roof, like those of most of the ruins in Yucatan, forms a triangular arch, constructed with stones overlapping, and covered by a layer of flat stones. A thick vegetable mould has accumulated on the roof, and the whole is overgrown with shrubbery. [2]The lintels of all the doorways are of *sapote* wood, many of them still hard and sound in their places, but others perforated by worm-holes, cracked, and broken, and to the decay of which the falling of the walls may be attributed. Had the lintels been of stone, as they are in most of the ruins of Yucatan, the principal buildings of Uxmal would be almost entire at this day.

3. *Description of the "House of the Turtles."*

a. See the 'Plan,' page 83.

5. [3]At the northwest corner of the second terrace,[a] there is a building which has been called the "House of the Turtles," a name which originated from a row of turtles sculptured on the cornice. This building is ninety-four feet in front, and thirty-four feet deep. It wants the rich and gorgeous decorations of the "House of the Governor," but it is distinguished for the justness and beauty of its proportions, and the chasteness and simplicity of its ornaments. This noble building is, however, fast going to decay. The roof has fallen, and the walls are tottering, and with a few more returns of the rainy season the whole will be a mass of ruins.*

4. *Two ruined edifices farther north.*

6. [4]A short distance north of this building are two ruined edifices, seventy feet apart, each being one hundred

* Stephens. 1841.

ANALYSIS.

and twenty-eight feet long, and thirty feet deep. The sides facing each other are embellished with sculpture; and there remain, on both, the fragments of entwined colossal serpents, which once extended the whole length of the walls.

1. Four ranges of edifices.

7. [1]Continuing still farther north, in the same direction, we arrive at an extensive pile of ruins,[a] comprising four great ranges of edifices, placed on the uppermost of three terraces, nineteen feet high. [2]The plan of the buildings is quadrangular, with a courtyard in the centre. The entrance on the south is by a gateway ten feet eight inches wide, spanned by a triangular arch. [3]The walls of the four buildings, overlooking the courtyard, are ornamented, from one end to the other, with rich and intricate carving, presenting a scene of strange magnificence.

a. See No. 2 page 83

2. Plan of the buildings. The entrance on the south.

3. Ornamented walls.

4. Building on the west of the courtyard, with its colossal sculptured serpents.

8. [4]The building on the western side of the courtyard is one hundred and seventy-three feet long, and is distinguished by two colossal entwined serpents, running through and encompassing nearly all the ornaments throughout its whole length. These serpents are sculptured out of small blocks of stone, which are arranged in the wall with great skill and precision. One of the serpents has its monstrous jaws extended, and within them is a human head, the face of which is distinctly visible in the carving. [5]The whole number of apartments opening upon the courtyard is eighty-eight.

5. Apartments.

6. Another courtyard, mound, and "House of the Dwarf."

9. [6]East of, and adjoining the range of buildings just described, is another extensive courtyard; passing through which we arrive at a lofty mound[b] faced with stone, eighty-eight feet high, and having a building seventeen feet high on its summit; making, in the whole, a height of one hundred and five feet. This building is called the "House of the Dwarf," and the Indians have a curious legend concerning its erection. It presents the most elegant and tasteful arrangement of ornaments to be seen in Uxmal, but of which no adequate idea can be given but in a large engraving.

b. See No. 3 page 83.

7. Other buildings at Uxmal.

10. [7]There are several other extensive buildings at Uxmal; but a sufficient number have been described to give an idea of their general character. They cannot be fully understood without elaborate engravings accompanying the descriptions, for which the reader is again referred to the highly valuable works of Mr. Stephens.

8. Subterraneous chambers in the vicinity of the ruins.

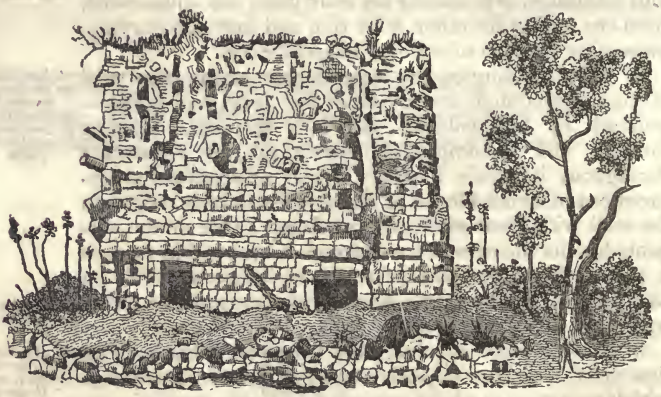
11. [8]Another interesting feature of these ruins, however, should not be overlooked. Subterraneous chambers are scattered over the whole ground covered by this ruined city. They are dome-shaped—from eight to ten feet deep, and from twelve to twenty in diameter,—the walls

ANALYSIS.

and ceilings being plastered, and the floors of hard mortar. Their only opening is a circular hole at the top, barely large enough to admit a man. The object of these chambers is unknown. Some have supposed them intended as cisterns, or reservoirs; and others, that they were built for granaries, or storehouses.

1. *Ruins, south and southwest of Uxmal.*
2. *At Labna.*
a. See Map, page 74.

12. [1]South and south-east of Uxmal is a large extent of country which is literally covered with ruins, but few of which have yet been thoroughly explored. [2]At Labna[a] there are several curious structures as extraordinary as those of Uxmal, one of which is represented by the following engraving.



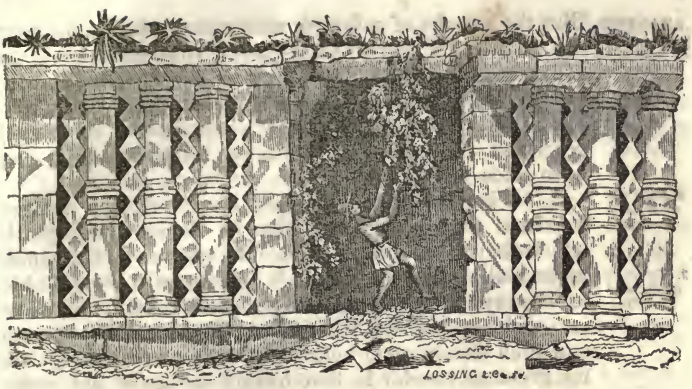
Building at Labna, 40 feet high, placed on an artificial elevation 45 feet high.

3. *Description of the building.*

13. [3]This building, which stands on an artificial mound, faced with stone, forty-five feet high, rises nearly forty feet above the summit of the mound, making in all a height of more than eighty feet. The building is forty three feet in front, and twenty in depth; and the exterior walls were once covered with colossal figures and ornaments in stucco, most of which are now broken and in fragments. Along the top, standing out on the wall, is a row of death's heads; and underneath are two lines of human figures, of which scattered arms and legs alone remain.

4. *Ruins at Kewick.*
b. See Map page 74.

14. [4]At Kewick,[b] a short distance south of Labna, are numerous ancient buildings, now mostly in ruins, but remarkable for the neatness and simplicity of their architecture, and the grandeur of their proportions. An engraving of the principal doorway of one of these buildings is given on the opposite page.



PRINCIPAL DOORWAY OF A BUILDING AT KEWICK.

CHAPTER III.

ANALYSIS.

SUPPOSED ORIGIN OF THE AMERICAN ANTIQUITIES, AND OF THE INDIAN TRIBES.

1. [1]We have now closed our descriptive account of American Antiquities, and shall proceed, in the same brief manner, to consider the question of their origin, and the origin of the Indian tribes.

1. Object of this Chapter.

[2]With regard to most, if not all, of the ruined structures found in Mexico, Yucatan, and Central America; and also in Peru; there appears now but little difficulty in satisfactorily ascribing their origin to the *aborigines* who were in possession of those countries at the time of their discovery by Europeans. [3]It is known that, at the time of the conquest of Mexico and the adjacent provinces, edifices, similar to those whose ruins have been described, were in the possession and actual occupation of the native inhabitants. Some of these structures already bore the marks of antiquity, while others were evidently of recent construction.

2. The ruined edifices found in Mexico, Yucatan, &c. attributed to the aborigines.

3. Known to have been in their possession at the time of the conquest.

2. [4]The glowing accounts which Cortez and his companions gave of the existence of extensive cities, and magnificent buildings and temples, in the actual use and occupation of the Indians, were so far beyond what could be conceived as the works of "*ignorant savages*," that modern historians, Robertson among the number, have been inclined to give little credit to their statements.

4. The accounts given by Cortez and his companions; why discredited by modern writers.

ANALYSIS.

1. Evidences in favor of those accounts.

[1]But the wrecks of a former civilization which now strew the plains of Yucatan and Central America, confirm the accounts of the early historians; for these buildings, whether desolate or inhabited, were then there, and at least more perfect than they are now; and some of them were described as occupying the same localities where they have since been found.

2. First discoveries in Yucatan.

3. Herrera's account of Yucatan.

3. [2]When the Spaniards first discovered the coast of Yucatan, they observed, along its shores, "villages in which they could distinguish houses of stone that appeared white and lofty at a distance." [3]Herrera, a Spanish historian, says of Yucatan,—"The whole country is divided into eighteen districts; and in all of them were so many and such stately stone buildings that it was amazing; and the greatest wonder is, that having no use of any metal, they were able to raise such structures, which seem to have been *temples;* for their houses were always of timber, and thatched."

4. The account given by Bernal Diaz, of the natives of Yucatan.

5. Of the buildings which he saw there.

6. Of the country nearer Mexico.

4. [4]Another writer, Bernal Diaz, who accompanied the expeditions of Cortez, speaks of the Indians of a large town in Yucatan, as being "dressed in cotton mantles,"—and of their buildings as being "constructed of *lime* and *stone*, with figures of *serpents* and of *idols* painted upon the walls." [5]At another place he saw "two buildings of lime and stone, well constructed, each with steps, and an altar placed before certain figures, the representations of the gods of these Indians." [6]Approaching Mexico, he says, "appearances demonstrated that we had entered a new country; for the *temples were very lofty;* and, together with the *terraced buildings*, and the houses of the caciques, being plastered and whitewashed, appeared very well, and resembled some of our towns in Spain."

7. Of the city of Cholula.

8. General character of the accounts given by the Spanish writers.

9. The conclusion arrived at.

5. [7]The city of Cholula was said to resemble Valladolid. It "had at that time above a hundred *lofty white towers*, which were the temples of their idols." [8]The Spanish historians speak repeatedly of *buildings of lime and stone, painted* and *sculptured ornaments*, and *plastered walls; idols, courts, strong walls*, and *lofty temples, with high ranges of steps*,—all the work of the *Indians*, the inhabitants of the country. [9]In all these accounts we easily recognize the ruined edifices which have been recently discovered; and cannot doubt that they owe their origin to the ancestors of the Indians who now reside there—subdued—broken in spirit—and degraded, and still held in a sort of vassalage by the Spanish inhabitants.

10. Supposed common origin of all the American tribes.

6. [10]Nor indeed is there any proof that the semi-civilized inhabitants of Mexico, Yucatan, and Central America, were a race different from the more savage tribes by

which they were surrounded: but, on the contrary, there is much evidence in favor of their *common* origin, and in proof that the present tribes, or at least many of them, are but the dismembered fragments of former nations. ANALYSIS.

7. [1]The present natives of Yucatan and Central America, after a remove of only three centuries from their more civilized ancestors, present no diversities, in their natural capacities, to distinguish them from the race of the common Indian. [2]And if the Mexicans and the Peruvians could have arisen from the savage state, it is not improbable that the present rude tribes may have remained in it; or, if the latter were once more civilized than at present,—as they have relapsed into barbarism—so others may have done.

1. Their similar natural capacities.

2. Supposed changes through which they may have passed.

8. [3]The anatomical structure of the skeletons found within the ancient mounds of the United States, does not differ more from that of the present Indians than tribes of the latter, admitted to be of the same race, differ from each other. In the physical appearance of all the American aborigines, embracing the semi-civilized Mexicans, the Peruvians, and the wandering savage tribes, there is a striking uniformity; nor can any distinction of races here be made.

3 Anatomical structure, and present physical appearances

9. [4]In their languages there is a general unity of structure, and a great similarity in grammatical forms, which prove their common origin; while the great diversity in the words of the different languages, shows the great antiquity of the period of peopling America. [5]In the generally uniform character of their religious opinions and rites, we discover original unity and an identity of origin; while the diversities here found, likewise indicate the very early period of the separation and dispersion of tribes. [6]Throughout most of the American tribes have been found traces of the pictorial delineations, and hieroglyphical symbols, by which the Mexicans and the Peruvians communicated ideas, and preserved the memory of events.*

4. Great antiquity of the period of peopling America, and the common origin of the aborigines, shown by the languages of the tribes.

5. By their religious opinions.

6. By their pictorial delineations.

10. [7]The mythological traditions of the savage tribes, and the semi-civilized nations, have general features of resemblance,—generally implying a migration from some other country,—containing distinct allusions to a deluge—and attributing their knowledge of the arts to some fabulous teacher in remote ages. [8]Throughout nearly the whole continent, the dead were buried in a sitting posture; the smoking of tobacco was a prevalent custom, and the calumet, or pipe of peace, was everywhere deemed sacred. And, in fine, the numerous and striking analogies

7. By the similarity of their traditions.

8. By their common mode of burial, and other striking analogies.

* See Mexican History, page 502.

ANALYSIS.

between the barbarous and the cultivated tribes, are sufficient to justify the belief in their primitive relationship and common origin.

1. Condition of the earliest inhabitants of America unknown.

11. [1]But whether the first inhabitants were rude and barbarous tribes, as has been generally supposed, or were more enlightened than even the Mexicans and the Peruvians, is a point which cannot be so satisfactorily determined. [2]But, whichever may have been the case, it is certain that these nations were not the founders of civilization on this continent; for they could point to antiquities which were the remains of a former civilization.

2. A civilization anterior to that of the Mexicans and the Peruvians.

3. Ancient structures throughout South America.

12. [3]The Incas of Peru, at the time of the conquest, acknowledged the existence of ancient structures, of more remote origin than the era of the foundation of their empire; and these were undoubtedly the models from which they copied; and throughout an extent of more than three thousand miles, in South America, ancient ruins have been discovered, which cannot be attributed to the Peruvians, and which afford indubitable evidence of the previous existence of a numerous, agricultural, and highly civilized people.

4. Ancient edifices in Mexico attributed to the Toltecs.

5. May not the Toltecs have been the authors of the works found in the United States?

13. [4]The Mexicans attributed many ancient edifices in their country to the Toltecs, a people who are supposed to have arrived in Mexico during the latter part of the sixth century. [5]It is said that the Toltecs came from the north; and it is highly probable, although but mere conjecture, that they previously occupied the valley of the Mississippi and the adjacent country, as far as the Alleghanies on the east, the Lakes on the north, and Florida on the south, and that they were the authors of the works whose remains have been found in the United States.

6. Another question: Who first settled America?

14. [6]But still another question arises: when, how, and by whom was America first settled?—and who were the ancestors of the present Indian tribes? We shall notice the most prominent of the many theories that have been advanced upon this subject, and close with that which appears to us the most reasonable.

7. Believed by many that the ancients were acquainted with America.

[7]It is believed by many that the ancients were not unacquainted with the American continent; and there are indeed some plausible reasons for believing that an extensive island, or continent, once existed in the Atlantic Ocean, between Europe and America, but which afterwards disappeared.

8. A dialogue by Theopompus.

9. The Carthaginian navigator.

15. [8]In a dialogue written by *Theopompus*, a learned historian who lived in the time of Alexander the Great, one of the speakers gives an account of a continent of very great dimensions, larger than either Asia or Africa, and situated beyond these in the ocean. [9]It is said that *Hanno*,

ANALYSIS.

the great Carthaginian navigator, sailed westward, from the Straits of Gibraltar, thirty days; and hence it is inferred by many that he must have visited America, or some of its islands. [1]*Diodorus Siculus* says, that "towards Africa, and to the west of it, is an immense island in the broad sea, many days' sail from Lybia. Its soil is very fertile, and its surface variegated with mountains and valleys. Its coasts are indented with many navigable rivers, and its fields are well cultivated."

1. *The account given by Diodorus Siculus*

16. [2]*Plato's* account, however, is the most full, and more to be relied on than that of any other of the ancients. The most important part of it is as follows: "In those early times the Atlantic was a most broad island; and there were extant most powerful kings in it, who, with joint forces, attempted to occupy Asia and Europe. And so a most grievous war was carried on, in which the Athenians, with the common consent of the Greeks, opposed themselves, and they became the conquerors. But that Atlantic island, by a flood and earthquake, was indeed suddenly destroyed; and so that warlike people were swallowed up."

2. *Plato's account.*

17. [3]Again he adds, "An island in the mouth of the sea, in the passage to those straits, called the pillars of Hercules, did exist; and that island was larger than Lybia and Asia; from which there was an easy passage over to other islands, and from those islands to that continent, which is situated out of that region." Plato farther remarks that "*Neptune* settled in this island, and that his descendants reigned there, from father to son, during a space of nine thousand years. They also possessed several other islands; and, passing into Europe and Africa, subdued all Lybia as far as Egypt, and all Europe to Asia Minor. At length the island sunk under water, and for a long time afterwards the sea thereabouts was full of rocks and shoals."

3. *Continuation of Plato's account.*

18. [4]These accounts, and many others of a similar character, from ancient writers, have been cited, to prove that America was peopled from some of the eastern continents, through the medium of islands in the Atlantic, which have since disappeared. Various writers have thought that they could perceive in the languages, customs, and religion of the Indians, analogies with those of the Greeks, the Latins, the Hindoos, and the Hebrews; and thus the Indians have been referred, by one, to a Grecian; another, to a Latin; a third, to a Hindoo, and a fourth, to Hebrew origin. Others, with equal show of argument, deduce their origin from the Phœnicians; and thus almost every country of the old world has claimed

4. *The importance attached by many to these accounts; and the various origins attributed to the aborigines.*

ANALYSIS.

the honor of being the first discoverer of the new, and hence the progenitor of the Indians.

1 *The theory of Voltaire and Lord Kames.*

19. [1]Others, again, among whom may be numbered Voltaire and Lord Kames, finding a difficulty in reconciling the varieties of complexion and feature, found among the human family, with the Scriptural account that all are descended from the same pair, have very summarily disposed of the whole matter, by asserting, that "America has not been peopled from any part of the old world."

2. *No necessity for the last mentioned theory.*

20. [2]We believe, however, that in order to account for the peopling of America, there is no necessity for resorting to the supposition that a new creation of human beings may have occurred here.

3. *No evidence that different European colonies have ever been established here.*

[3]And, with regard to the opinion entertained by some, that colonies from different European nations, and at different times, have been established here, we remark, that, if so, no distinctive traces of them have ever been discovered; and there is a uniformity in the physical appearance of all the American tribes, which forbids the supposition of a mingling of different races.

4. *Navigation among the ancients.*

21 [4]There is no improbability that the early Asiatics reached the western shores of America through the islands of the Pacific. There are many historical evidences to show that the ancients were not wholly ignorant of the art of navigation. In the days of Solomon, the navy of Hiram, king of Tyre, brought gold from Ophir; and the navy of Solomon made triennial voyages to Tarshish.*

5. *Commerce, voyages, &c., among the ancients; Carthaginians, Hindoos, Portuguese, &c.*

22. [5]The aromatic productions of the Moluccas were known at Rome two hundred years before the Christian era; and vessels of large size then visited the ports of the Red Sea.† The British islands were early visited by the Phœnicians; and the Carthaginians are believed to have circumnavigated Africa. The ancient Hindoos had vessels, some of great size, but the commerce of the Indies was principally in the hands of the Arabians and the Malays. When the Portuguese first visited the Indian Archipelago they met with large Malay fleets, some of the vessels of which were large galleys.

6. *Adventitious causes may have brought the Asiatics to the American coast.*

23. [6]But without attributing to the Asiatics any greater maritime knowledge than the rude South Sea islanders were found to possess, yet, by adventitious causes, such as the drifting of canoes, and adventurous voyages, it is highly probable that the people of Asia might, in progress of time, have reached the western shores of the American

* 1 Kings, ch. 10.

† Crichton's Hist. Arabia

continent. [1]But the extensive distribution of the Red or Mongolian race, throughout nearly all the habitable islands of the Pacific, however distant from each other, or far removed from the adjoining continents, presents *facts* which cannot be disputed, and relieves us from the necessity of arguing in support of probabilities.

ANALYSIS.

1. The extensive distribution of the red race establishes the probability of our supposition.

24. [2]That some of the northern, and rudest of the American tribes, early migrated from Siberia, by Behring's Straits, is not at all improbable. The near approach of the two continents at that point, and the existence of intervening islands, would have rendered the passage by no means difficult. [3]But should we even trace *all* the American tribes to that source, we still ascribe to them an Asiatic origin, and include them in the Mongolian race.

2. Possible that some tribes came by way of Behring's Straits.

3. The theory not affected by this supposition.

CONCLUSION.

1. [4]From the circumstances which have been narrated, it seems reasonable to conclude that the Red race, at an early period, and while in a state of partial civilization, emerging from Oriental Asia, spread over a large portion of the globe; and that through the archipelagos of the Pacific, and, perhaps, also by way of Behring's Straits, they reached the western continent,—leaving in their way, in the numerous islands of the sea, evident marks of their progress; and bringing with them the arts, the customs, the religion, and the languages of the nations from which they separated,—traces of which, faint, indeed, through the lapse of ages, it is believed could still be recognized among the Mexicans and the Peruvians at the time of the discovery of those people.

4. Probability of the early and extensive diffusion of the red race.

2. [5]Whatever may have been the origin and history of the more savage tribes of the north, it is believed that the western shores of this continent, and perhaps both Mexico and Peru,—equally distant from the equator, and in regions the most favorable for the increase and the support of human life, were the radiating points of early American civilization; from which, as from the hearts of empire, pulsation after pulsation sent forth their streams of life throughout the whole continent. [6]But the spread of civilization appears to have been restricted, as we might reasonably expect to find it, to those portions of the continent where the rewards of agriculture would support a numerous population. Hence, following the course of this civilization, by the remains it has left us, we find it limited by the barren regions of Upper Mexico, and the snows of

5. The probable radiating points of early American civilization.

6. The spread of that civilization how restricted, and the evidences thereof.

ANALYSIS. Canada on the north, and the frosts of Patagonia on the south; and while in Mexico and Peru are found its grandest and most numerous monuments, on the outskirts they dwindle away in numbers and in importance.

1. The speculations into which the extent and grandeur of these remains lead us.

3. [1]Considering the vast extent of these remains, spreading over more than half the continent, and that in Mexico and South America, after the lapse of an unknown series of ages, they still retain much of ancient grandeur which "Time's effacing fingers" have failed to obliterate, it is certainly no wild flight of the imagination to conjecture that in *ancient* times, even coeval with the spread of science in the east, empires may have flourished here that would vie in power and extent with the Babylonian, the Median, or the Persian; and cities that might have rivalled Nineveh, and Tyre, and Sidon; for of these empires and these cities, the plains of Asia now exhibit fewer, and even less imposing relics, than are found of the former inhabitants of this country.

2. Moral reflections: REASON and NATURE *versus* REVELATION.

4. [2]It appears, therefore, that on the plains of America, surrounded by all that was lovely and ennobling in nature, the human mind had for ages been left free, in its moral and social elements, to test its capacity for self-improvement. Let the advocates of REASON, in opposition to REVELATION, behold the result. In the twilight of a civilization that had probably sprung from Revelation, but which had lost its warmth while it retained some portion of its brightness, *mind* had, indeed, risen at times, and, under favoring circumstances, to some degree of power;—as was exhibited in those extensive and enduring structures, which were erected for amusements and pleasure, or worship, or defence; but, at the time of the discovery, the greater portion of the continent was inhabited by savage hordes, who had doubtless relapsed from a former civilization into barbarism. Even in the brightest portions, deep ignorance brooded over the soul; and, on temples dedicated to the sun, human sacrifices were made, to appease the wrath of offended gods, or propitiate their favor. The system of NATURE had been allowed the amplest field for development; its capacities had been fully tried; and its inadequacy to elevate man to his proper rank in the scale of being, had been fully proved. It was time, then, in the wisdom of Providence, for a new order of things to arise; for Reason to be enlightened by Revelation, and for the superstitions of a pagan polytheism to give place to the knowledge of one God, the morality of the Gospel, and the religion of the Redeemer.

BOOK II.

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES

"Westward the star of empire takes its way;
The first four acts already past,—
The fifth shall close the drama with the day;
Time's noblest empire is the last."

BERKELEY

LANDING OF THE PILGRIMS AT PLYMOUTH DECEMBER 21st. 1620.

THE PUBLIC SEALS, OR COATS OF ARMS.

OF THE SEVERAL UNITED STATES.

As the engraved copies of the Public Seals, or Coats of Arms of the several United States, would possess little interest without the appropriate Descriptions or Explanations accompanying them, and as the latter cannot be fully understood without a knowledge of the *Heraldric terms*, in which those descriptions are often worded, we deem it important to give a brief account of the origin, nature, and design, of these and similar emblematical devices.

In the early ages of the world, and even among the rudest people, various devices, signs, and marks of honor, were used to distinguish the great and noble from the ignoble vulgar. Thus we find in the writings of Homer, Virgil, and Ovid, that their heroes had divers figures on their shields, whereby their persons were distinctly known. Nations also adopted symbolical signs of distinction, which they displayed on their banners and arms. Thus the national emblem of the Egyptians was an *Ox*, of the Athenians an *Owl*, of the Goths a *Bear*, of the Romans an *Eagle*, of the Franks a *Lion*, and of the Saxons a *Horse*. Even the North American savages had their distinctive emblems. Thus the Otter was the emblem of the Ottawas; and the Wolf, the Bear, and the Turtle, of the divisions of the Iroquois tribes;—and these devices were often painted on the bodies of their warriors.

It is supposed that, in Europe, the Crusades and Tournaments were the cause of methodizing and perfecting into a science the various national, family, and individual emblems, to which was given the name of *Heraldry;* a term which embraced, originally, not only all that pertains to *Coats of Arms*, but also to the marshalling of armies, solemn processions, and all ceremonies of a public nature.

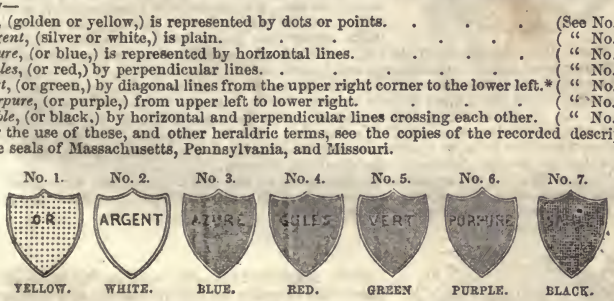
The term "Coats of Arms" probably originated from the circumstance that the ancients embroidered various colored devices on the coats they wore over their armor. Also, those who joined the Crusades, and those who enlisted in the tournaments, had their devices depicted on their *arms*, or armor—as on their shields, banners, &c.; and as the *colors* could not here be retained, particular marks were used to represent them.

All coats of arms, formed according to the rules of Heraldry, are delineated on *Shields* or *Escutcheons*, which are of various forms, oval, triangular, heptagonal, &c. The parts composing the escutcheon, or represented on it, are Tinctures, Furs, Lines, Borders, and Charges. The description of the first and last only, is essential to our purpose.

By TINCTURES is meant the various *colors* used, the names and marks of which are as follow—

Or, (golden or yellow,) is represented by dots or points.	(See No. 1.)
Argent, (silver or white,) is plain.	(" No. 2.)
Azure, (or blue,) is represented by horizontal lines.	(" No. 3.)
Gules, (or red,) by perpendicular lines.	(" No. 4.)
Vert, (or green,) by diagonal lines from the upper right corner to the lower left.*	(" No. 5.)
Purpure, (or purple,) from upper left to lower right.	(" No. 6.)
Sable, (or black,) by horizontal and perpendicular lines crossing each other.	(" No. 7.)

For the use of these, and other heraldric terms, see the copies of the recorded descriptions of the seals of Massachusetts, Pennsylvania, and Missouri.



Sometimes, although seldom, the names of the precious stones are used to represent colors. See the recorded description of the seal of Massachusetts.

CHARGES are whatever are represented on the field of the escutcheon; the principal of which, in addition to natural and celestial figures, are the Chief, the Pale, the Bend, the Fess, the Bar, the Cheveron, the Cross, and the Saltier; each of which, although occupying its appropriate space and position in the escutcheon, and governed by definite rules, admits of a great variety of representations

The external ornaments of the escutcheon are Crowns, Coronets, Mitres, Helmets, Mantlings,

* In all heraldric descriptions, that which is called the *right* side, is opposite the spectator's *left hand*; and *vice versa*.

Caps, Wreaths, Crests, Scrolls, and Supporters. Some escutcheons have none of these ornaments, and others nearly all of them. The last mentioned are placed on the side of the escutcheon, standing on a scroll, and are thus named because they appear to *support* or hold up the shield. (See the seals of Maine, New York, New Jersey, Arkansas, Missouri, and Michigan.)

It will be seen that the Coats of Arms of many of the States do not strictly follow the rules of Heraldry, inasmuch as they are not represented on *shields*, or *escutcheons*, unless the entire circular seals be deemed the escutcheons, of which there would be no impropriety, except that some would then contain the figures of shields within shields. The design and the effect however are the same in both cases, whether the shield be or be not used. Where the heraldric terms are used in the recorded descriptions of the seals, we have written the descriptions anew, giving their purport in our own language, with the exception of the descriptions of the seals of Massachusetts, Pennsylvania, and Missouri, which, for the purpose of illustration, we have given in both forms.

The seals of the several States, on which are delineated the Coats of Arms which they have adopted, are used by the proper authorities to attest and give validity to public records and documents; and to many public writings the "Great Seal of State" is an essential requisite. In addition, these Coats of Arms of the States are interesting historical records, all having some peculiar significancy of meaning—being emblematical of what each State deemed appropriate to express the peculiar circumstances, character, and prospects of its people—and many of them enforcing, by significant mottoes, great moral and political truths, and shadowing forth, by their various representatives of agriculture, commerce, and the arts—liberty, justice, and patriotism, the future greatness and glory of the nation. Viewed in this light, these devices convey many useful lessons, and are interesting and appropriate embellishments for a History of our Country. Such is our apology for introducing them here.

The engravings of most of the seals will be found different, in many respects, from those hitherto presented to the public. In this matter we have studied ACCURACY, disregarding those *additions* and *changes* which the *fancy* of artists has substituted in the place of the original designs. In order to obtain correct copies, we have been at the trouble of procuring *impressions from the original seals;* and also, where they have been preserved, the *recorded descriptions*, found in the offices of the secretaries of state.

MAINE.—The *Coat of Arms* of the State of Maine, as delineated on the seal of the State, consists of a white or silver shield, on which is represented a Pine Tree; and at the foot of the same a Moose Deer, in a recumbent posture. The Shield is supported, on the right, by a Husbandman resting on a scythe, and on the left, by a Seaman resting on an anchor. The masts of a ship appear in the distance on the left. In the foreground are represented sea and land; and under the shield is the name of the State, in large Roman capitals. Above the shield, for a "Crest," is the North Star; and between the star and the shield is the motto, DIRIGO, "I direct."

The *Pine Tree*, represented on the escutcheon, called the *Mast Pine*—an evergreen of towering height and enormous size—the largest and most useful of American pines, and the best timber for masts, is one of the staples of the commerce of Maine, as well as the pride of her forests.

The *Moose Deer*, the largest of the native animals of the State, which retires before the approaching steps of human inhabitancy, and is thus an emblem of liberty, is here represented quietly reposing, to denote the extent of uncultivated lands which the State possesses

As in the Arms of the United States a cluster of stars represents the States composing the Nation, so the *North Star* may be considered particularly applicable to the most northern member of the confederacy, and as it is a directing point in navigation, (*Dirigo*,) and is here used to represent the State, so the latter may be considered the citizen's guide, and the object to which the patriot's best exertions should be directed.

The "Supporters" of the shield—a Husbandman on one side representing Agriculture, and a Seaman on the other representing Commerce and Fisheries—indicate that the State is *supported* by these primary vocations of its inhabitants.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.—The seal of the State of New Hampshire contains the following device and inscription Around a circular field, encompassed by a wreath of laurels, are the words in Roman capitals, SIGILLUM REIPUBLICÆ NEO HANTONIENSIS, "The Seal of the State of New Hampshire," with the date "1784," indicating the period of the adoption of the State Constitution. On the field in the foreground, are represented land and water—on the verge of the distant horizon a rising sun. (the rising destiny of the State,) and a ship on the stocks, with the American banner displayed.

VERMONT.—We are informed by the Secretary of State of Vermont that there are no records in the secretary's office giving a description of the State Seal, or showing the time of establishing it. Ira Allen, however, the historian of Vermont, and her first secretary, states that the seal was established by the Governor and Council in 1778—that the tree on the seal was an evergreen with fourteen branches, thirteen of them representing the thirteen original States, and the small branch at the top representing the State of Vermont supported by the others. In the distance is seen a range of hills representing the Green Mountains; and in the foreground a Cow and sheaves of wheat, indicating an agricultural and grazing country. Around the border of the seal, in Roman capitals, are the words, VERMONT. FREEDOM AND UNITY.

MASSACHUSETTS.—The following is a copy of the recorded description of the Coat of Arms of Massachusetts, as adopted December 13th, 1780.

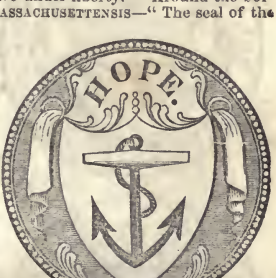
Sapphire: an Indian dressed in his shirt, moccasins, belted, proper: in his dexter hand a bow, topaz: in his sinister an arrow, its point towards the base. On the dexter side of the Indian's head a star, pearl, for one of the United States of America. Crest, on a wreath, a dexter arm, clothed and ruffled, proper, grasping a broadsword, the pommel and hilt topaz, with this motto, "Ense petit placidam, sub libertate quietem," and around the seal, "Sigillum Reipublicæ Massachusettensis."

We give the following as a free translation of the same, with a few additions.

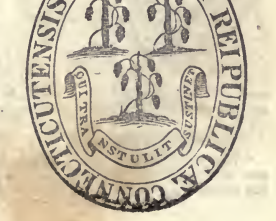
On the blue ground of an irregularly formed escutcheon, an Indian is represented, dressed with belted hunting shirt and moccasins. In his right hand is a golden bow, and in his left an arrow, with the point towards the base of the escutcheon. On the right side of the Indian's head is a white or silver star, denoting one of the United States of America. For the crest of the escutcheon is a wreath, from which extends a right arm, clothed and ruffled, (the natural color,) grasping a broadsword, the pommel and hilt of which are of gold. Around the escutcheon, on a waving band or label, are the words *Ense petit placidam sub libertate quietem;* "By the sword she seeks peace under liberty." Around the border of the seal are the words, SIGILLUM REIPUBLICÆ MASSACHUSETTENSIS—"The seal of the State of Massachusetts."

RHODE ISLAND.—The Arms of the State of Rhode Island, as represented on the Seal of the State, consist of a white or silver shield, on which is an anchor with two flukes, and a cable attached. Above the shield, in Roman capitals, is the word HOPE; and from each upper corner of the shield is suspended an unlettered label.

The white escutcheon, and the symbol represented on it, are designed as an allusion to those principles of civil and religious liberty which led to the founding of the colony of Rhode Island, and in which the faith of the citizens of the State is still deeply *anchored*. The motto HOPE, above the escutcheon, directs the mind to the uncertain future, anticipating the growing prosperity of the State, and the perpetuity of its free institutions; while the unlettered labels, denoting that events are still progressing in the march of Time, wait the completion of History, before the destiny of the State shall be recorded on them.



CONNECTICUT.—The Seal of Connecticut is of an oval form, plain, and without any ornamental devices, two inches and three eighths in length, and one inch and seven-eighths in breadth. On it are delineated three Grape Vines, each winding around and sustained by an upright support, the whole representing the three settlements, Hartford, Windsor, and Wethersfield, which formed the early Connecticut colony. In the lower part of the seal is the motto, QUI TRANSTULIT SUSTINET—"He who transplanted still sustains." Around the border are the words SIGILLUM REIPUBLICÆ CONNECTICUTENSIS—"The Seal of the State of Connecticut." Formerly the seal had a hand on the left, pointing with the forefinger to the vines; but that seal has been broken, and the present seal substituted in its place.



NEW YORK.—The following is a description of the present seal of the State of New York, constructed according to Act of March 27, 1809. A shield, or escutcheon, on which is represented a rising sun, with a range of hills, and water in the foreground. Above the shield for the Crest, is represented, on a wreath, a half globe, on which rests a startled eagle, with outstretched pinions. For the supporters of the shield, on the right is represented the figure of *Justice*, with the sword in one hand, and the scales in the other; and on the left the Goddess of *Liberty*, with the wand and cap* in her left hand, and the olive branch of peace in the right. Below the shield is the motto, Excelsior, "More elevated," denoting that the course of the State is *onward* and *higher*. Around the border of the seal is the inscription, The Great Seal of the State of New York.

NEW JERSEY.—The Arms of the State of New Jersey, as represented on the Seal of the State, consist of a white shield or escutcheon, bearing three ploughs—representing the agricultural interests of the State. The Crest is a horse's head, supported by a full faced, six barred helmet, resting on a vase—the latter resting on the top of the escutcheon. The Supporters are *Liberty* on the right, with her wand and cap, and *Ceres*, the goddess of corn and harvest, on the left, her right hand resting on the escutcheon, and her left supporting the *Cornucopia*, or horn of plenty, filled with fruits and flowers. Around the border of the seal are the words, The Great Seal of the State of New Jersey, and at the base the date of its adoption in numeral letters, MDCCLXXVI. (1776.)

DELAWARE.—The Arms of the State of Delaware consist of an azure shield or escutcheon, divided into two equal parts by a white band or girdle. On the base part of the escutcheon is represented a Cow, and in the upper part are two symbols, designed probably to represent the agricultural interests of the State—the one appearing to be a sheaf of wheat, and the other a stalk of tobacco. The Crest consists of a wreath, supporting a ship under full sail, having the American banner displayed. Surrounding the escutcheon, on a white field, are wreaths of flowers, branches of the Olive, and other symbols. At the bottom of the seal is the date of its adoption, MDCCXCIII. (1793.) and around the border the words Great Seal of the State of Delaware. (No description of the seal can be found in the Secretary's office, and we have been obliged to describe it from a wax impression.)

PENNSYLVANIA.—The following is a copy of the recorded description of the Seal of Pennsylvania.

'The shield is parted per fess, Or: charged with a Plough, proper. In Chief, on a sea wavy, proper, a ship under full sail, surmounted with a sky, azure; and in base, on a field vert, three garbs, Or: on the dexter a stalk of maize, and on the sinister an olive branch; and for the Crest, on a wreath of the flowers of the same, a bald Eagle, proper, perched, with wings extended. Motto—"Virtue, Liberty, and Independence." Around the margin, "Seal of the State of Pennsylvania." The reverse, Liberty, trampling on a Lion, gules, the emblem of Tyranny. Motto—"Both can't survive."'

We give the following as a free translation of the same.

The shield is parted by a yellow or golden band or girdle, on which is represented a Plough in its natural color. In the upper part of the escutcheon, on the waves of the sea, is represented a ship under full sail, surmounted by an azure sky.

---

* The wand or rod, and cap, are symbols of independence; because, among the ancients, the former was used by the magistrates in the ceremony of manumitting slaves; and the latter was worn by the slaves who were soon to be set at liberty.

At the base of the escutcheon, on a green field, are three golden sheaves of wheat. On the right of the escutcheon is a stalk of maize, and on the left an olive branch, and for the Crest, on a wreath of the flowers of the olive, is perched a Bald Eagle, in its natural color, with wings extended, holding in its beak a label,* with the motto, "Virtue, Liberty, and Independence." Around the margin of the seal are the words, SEAL OF THE STATE OF PENNSYLVANIA.

(The reverse side of the seal represents the Goddess of Liberty trampling on a Red Lion, the emblem of Tyranny Motto, "Both can't survive.")

VIRGINIA.—On the Seal of Virginia, the Goddess of *Virtue*, the genius of the Commonwealth, is represented dressed like an Amazon, resting on a spear with one hand, and holding a sword in the other, and treading on *Tyranny*, represented by a man prostrate, a crown fallen from his head, a broken chain in his left hand, and a scourge in his right. Above Virtue, on a label, is the word VIRGINIA; and underneath, the words, *Sic semper tyrannis*, "Thus we *serve* tyrants."

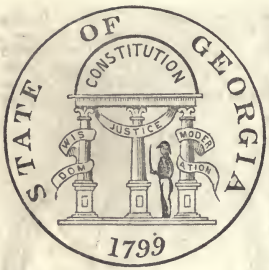
(This seal also has a reverse side, on which is represented a group, consisting of three figures. In the centre is *Liberty*, with her wand and cap; on the right side *Ceres*, with the cornucopia in one hand, and an ear of wheat in the other; and on her left side *Eternity*, holding in one hand the Globe, on which rests the *Phœnix*, the fabulous bird of the ancients, that is said to rise again from its own ashes.)

MARYLAND.—The device on the Seal of the State of Maryland, consists of the American Eagle with wings displayed, having on its breast an escutcheon, the chief or upper part of which is azure, the remaining portion being occupied by vertical stripes of white and red. In the dexter talon of the Eagle is the olive branch of peace, and in the sinister a bundle of three arrows, denoting the three great branches of government, the Executive, the Legislative, and the Judiciary. In a semicircle, over the head of the Eagle, are thirteen stars, representing the thirteen original States. The inner border of the seal contains the words, SEAL OF THE STATE OF MARYLAND. The outer border is ornamental, as seen in the engraving.

NORTH CAROLINA.—The figures represented on the Seal of North Carolina are the Goddess of *Liberty* on the right, and on the left, *Ceres*, the goddess of corn and harvest. Liberty is represented standing, with her wand and cap in her left hand, and in her right hand the scroll of the Declaration of American Independence. Ceres is represented sitting beneath a canopy, on a bank covered with flowers, having in her right hand three ears or heads of wheat, and in her left the *cornucopia*, or horn of plenty, filled with the fruits of the earth.

SOUTH CAROLINA.—We have not been able to obtain any "recorded description" of the Seal of South Carolina. The device appears to be a Date Tree, or the Great Palm, here emblematical of the State, and supported or guarded by two cross-pieces, to which is attached a scroll or label. Branches of the Palm were worn by the ancients in token of victory, and hence the emblem signifies *superiority*, *victory*, *triumph*. On the border of the seal is the motto, ANIMIS OPIBUSQUE PARATI, "Ready (to defend it) with our lives and property." This seal has a reverse side on which is the motto, DUM SPIRO, SPERO; "while I live I hope."

* The label and motto were never put on the original seal, for want of room. The seal of this state is generally represented with a Horse on each side of the escutcheon as *supporters*, but there is nothing of the kind on the original seal.



GEORGIA.—On the Seal of the State of Georgia are represented three pillars supporting an Arch, on which is engraven the word CONSTITUTION. The three pillars which support the "*Constitution*," are emblematical of the three departments of the State Government—the Legislature, the Judiciary, and the Executive. On a wreath of the first pillar, on the right,* representing the Legislature, is the word *Wisdom;* on the second, representing the Judiciary, is the word *Justice;* and on the third, representing the Executive, is the word *Moderation*. On the right of the last pillar is a man standing with a drawn sword, representing the aid of the military in defence of the Constitution. Around the border of the seal are the words STATE OF GEORGIA, 1799.

(On the reverse side of the seal is the following device. On one side is a view of the sea shore, with a ship riding at anchor near a wharf, bearing the flag of the United States, and receiving on board hogsheads of tobacco and bales of cotton—emblematical of the exports of the State. At a small distance is a loaded boat landing from the interior, and representing the internal traffic of the State. In the background a man is represented ploughing, and a flock of sheep reposing in the shade of a tree. Around the border is the motto, "*Agriculture and Commerce*, 1799.)

FLORIDA.—In the centre of the Seal of Florida is represented the American Eagle, "the bird of liberty," grasping in the left talon an olive branch, and in the right a buudle of three arrows. In a semicircle above are thirteen stars, representing the thirteen original States, while the ground is represented as covered with the Prickly Pear, a fruit common to the country, and which, from its being armed at all points, must be handled with great care. The appropriate motto of the Prickly Pear is "*Let me alone.*"

(This is the description of the Seal of the Territory of Florida, which is made the Seal of the State, until a new one shall be adopted.)

ALABAMA.—The Seal of Alabama contains a neatly engraved map of the State, with the names of the rivers, and the localities of the principal towns that existed at the time of the establishment of the Territorial government in 1817. Around the border of the seal are the words ALABAMA EXECUTIVE OFFICE.—(This was the Territorial Seal, which has been adopted by the State Government.)

MISSISSIPPI.—In the centre of the Seal of Mississippi is represented the American Eagle, grasping an Olive branch in the left talon, and a bundle of four arrows in the right. Around the border of the seal are the words, THE GREAT SEAL OF THE STATE OF MISSISSIPPI.

* Fronting the spectator, as usu

LOUISIANA.—On the Seal of Louisiana is represented a Pelican standing by her nest of young ones, in the attitude of "protection and defence," and in the act of feeding them. All share alike her maternal assiduity. The mother bird is here emblematic of the general government of the Union, while the birds in the nest represent the several States. Above are the scales of JUSTICE, emblematic of the device below, and denoting that such is the watchful care and guardianship which the government of the Union is bound to bestow alike upon all the members of the confederacy.

The semi-circle of eighteen stars represents the number of States at the time of the admission of Louisiana. In the upper part of the border of the Seal are the words, STATE OF LOUISIANA, and in the lower part, the words, UNION AND CONFIDENCE.

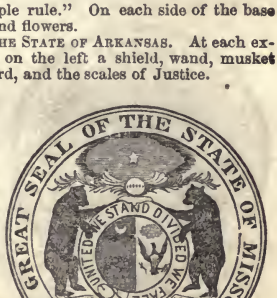
TEXAS.—The Great Seal of Texas consists of a White Star of five points, on an azure field, encircled by branches of the Live Oak and the Olive. Before the annexation of Texas to the United States, the Seal bore the device, REPUBLIC OF TEXAS. The Live Oak, (*Quercus virens*,) which abounds in the forests of Texas, is a strong and durable timber, very useful for ship-building, and forming a most important article of export.

ARKANSAS.—The Arms of Arkansas, as represented on the Seal of the State, consist of a shield or escutcheon, the base of which is occupied by a blue field, on which is a white or silver *Star*, representing the State. The "fess" part, or middle portion, is occupied by a *Bee-Hive*, the emblem of industry, and a *Plough*, representing agriculture; while the "chief," or upper part of the escutcheon is occupied by a *Steam-Boat*, the representative of the commerce of the State.

For the "*Crest*" is represented the goddess of *Liberty*, holding in one hand her wand and cap, and a wreath of laurel in the other, surrounded by a constellation of stars, representing the States of the Union.

The "*Supporters*" of the escutcheon are two Eagles; the one on the left grasping in its talons a bundle of arrows, and the one on the right an olive branch—and extending from the talons of the one to those of the other is a label containing the motto, *Regnant Populi*, "The People rule." On each side of the base point of the escutcheon is a *cornucopia* filled with fruits and flowers.

Around the border of the seal are the words, SEAL OF THE STATE OF ARKANSAS. At each extremity of the word Arkansas are additional emblems: on the left a shield, wand, musket with bayonet, and cap of Liberty; and on the right a sword, and the scales of Justice.



MISSOURI.—The following is a copy of the recorded description of the Great Seal of Missouri. "Arms parted per pale; on the dexter side, gules, the White or Grizzly Bear of Missouri, passant, guardant, proper: on a Chief, engrailed, azure, a crescent, argent: on the sinister side, argent, the Arms of the United States;—the whole within a band inscribed with the words, 'United we stand, divided we fall.' For the Crest, over a helmet full faced, grated with six bars, or, a cloud proper, from which ascends a star argent, and above it a constellation of twenty-three smaller stars argent, on an azure field, surrounded by a cloud proper. Supporters, on each side a White or Grizzly Bear of Missouri, rampant, guardant, proper, standing on a scroll inscribed with the motto, *Salus populi, suprema lex esto*, and under the scroll the numerical letters MDCCCXX,—the whole surrounded by a scroll inscribed with the words, THE GREAT SEAL OF THE STATE OF MISSOURI."—The following is a free translation of the above.

The Arms of Missouri are represented on a circular escutcheon, divided by a perpendicular line into two equal portions. On the right side, on a red field, is the White or Grizzly Bear of Missouri, in its natural color, walking guardedly. Above this device, and separated from it by an engrailed* line, is an azure field, on which is represented a white or silver crescent. On the left side of the escutcheon, on a white field, are the Arms of the United States Around the border of the escutcheon are the words, "United we stand, divided we fall." For the "Crest," over a yellow or golden helmet, full faced, and grated with six bars, is a cloud in its natural color, from which ascends a silvery star, (representing the State of Missouri,) and above it a constellation of twenty-three smaller stars, on a blue field surrounded by a cloud. (The twenty-three stars represent the number of States in the Union at the time of the admission of Missouri.) For "Supporters," on each side of the escutcheon is a Grizzly Bear in the posture of attack, standing on a scroll inscribed with the motto, *Salus populi, suprema lex esto*—"The public safety is the supreme law;" and under the scroll the numerical letters MDCCCXX, the date of the admission of Missouri into the Union. Around the border of the seal are the words, THE GREAT SEAL OF THE STATE OF MISSOURI.

TENNESSEE.—The Seal of Tennessee contains the following device. The upper half of the seal is occupied by a stalk of Cotton, a Sheaf of Wheat and a Plough, below which is the word AGRICULTURE. The lower half is occupied by a loaded Barge, beneath which is the word COMMERCE. In the upper part of the seal are the numerical letters XVI, denoting that Tennessee was the sixteenth State admitted into the Union. Around the border are the words, THE GREAT SEAL OF THE STATE OF TENNESSEE, with the date 1796, the period of the formation of the state government, and admission into the Union.

KENTUCKY.—On the Seal of Kentucky is the plain and unadorned device of two friends embracing, with this motto below them—"*United we stand, divided we fall.*" In the upper portion of the border are the words, SEAL OF KENTUCKY.

OHIO.—On the Seal of Ohio appears the following device: In the central portion is represented a cultivated country, with a bundle of seventeen Arrows on the left, and on the right a Sheaf of Wheat, both erect, and in the distance a range of mountains, skirted at their base by a tract of woodland. Over the mountain range appears a rising sun. On the foreground are represented an expanse of water and a Keel-Boat. Around the border are the words, THE GREAT SEAL OF THE STATE OF OHIO, with the date, 1802, the period of the admission of Ohio into the Union. The bundle of *seventeen arrows* represents the number of *States* existing at that time.

* An *engrailed* line is a line indented with curves, thus ~~~~~~~~~~

INDIANA.—On the Seal of Indiana is represented a scene of prairie and woodland, with the surface gently undulating—descriptive of the natural scenery of the State. In the foreground is a Buffalo, once a native animal of the State, apparently startled by the axe of the Woodman or Pioneer, who is seen on the left, felling the trees of the forest—denoting the advance of civilization westward. In the distance, on the right, is seen the sun just appearing on the verge of the horizon. Around the upper portion of the seal are the words, INDIANA STATE SEAL.

ILLINOIS.—In the centre of the Seal of Illinois is represented the American Eagle, grasping in its left talon a bundle of three arrows, and in the right an olive branch, and bearing on its breast a shield or escutcheon, the lower half of which is represented of a red color, and the upper half blue, the latter bearing three white or silvery stars. From the beak of the Eagle extends a label bearing the motto, "*State Sovereignty; National Union.*" Around the border of the seal are the words, SEAL OF THE STATE OF ILLINOIS, with the date, "Aug. 26, 1818."

MICHIGAN.—The Arms of the State of Michigan, as exhibited on the Seal of the State, consist of a shield, or escutcheon, on which is represented a Peninsula extending into a lake, with the sun rising, and a man standing on the peninsula, with a gun in his hand. Below the escutcheon, on a band or label, are the words, *Si quæris peninsulam amœnam, circumspice*—"If you seek a delightful country, (peninsula,) behold it." On the upper part of the escutcheon is the word *Tuebor*—"I will defend it." The "Supporters" of the escutcheon are, a Moose on the left, and on the right, the common Deer, both natives of the forests of Michigan. For the "Crest," is represented the Eagle of the United States, above which is the motto, *E pluribus unum.* Around the border of the seal are the words, THE GREAT SEAL OF THE STATE OF MICHIGAN, with the numerals, A.D. MDCCCXXXV, the date of the formation of the State government.

IOWA.—The Seal of Iowa contains the following simple device: An Eagle in the attitude of flight, grasping in its dexter talon a Bow, and holding in its beak an arrow. Around the border of the seal are the words, SEAL OF THE TERRITORY OF IOWA. (No State Seal has yet been adopted.)

WISCONSIN. The Seal of Wisconsin presents a view of land and water scenery, designed to represent the agricultural, commercial, and mining interests of the State. In the foreground is a man ploughing with a span of horses: the middle ground is occupied by a barrel, a cornucopia, an anchor, a sheaf of wheat, a rake, and a pile of lead in bars—the latter, the most important of the mineral products of the State. The two great lakes that border the State—Lakes Michigan and Superior, have their representatives; on one of which is seen a sloop, and on the other a steamboat—and on the shore an Indian pointing towards the latter. In the distance is a level prairie, skirted, on the horizon, by a range of woodland, and having on the left a Light-house and School Building, and in the centre the State-house of Wisconsin. In a semicircle above are the words: "Civilitas Successit Barbarum," *Civilization has succeeded Barbarism.*

At the bottom of the Seal is the date of the formation of the Territorial Government, Fourth of July, 1836, and around the Seal, in Roman capitals, the words, The Great Seal of the Territory of Wisconsin.

UNITED STATES.

The following is the recorded description of the device of the Seal of the United States, as adopted by Congress on the 20th of June, 1782.

"Arms: Paleways of thirteen pieces, argent and gules; a chief azure; the escutcheon on the breast of the American Eagle displayed, proper, holding in his dexter talon an olive branch, and in his sinister a bundle of thirteen arrows, all proper, and in his beak a scroll inscribed with this motto, 'E pluribus unum'

"For the Crest: Over the head of the Eagle, which appears above the escutcheon, a glory, or, breaking through a cloud, proper, and surrounding thirteen stars forming a constellation, argent, on an azure field."

This seal has a Reverse side, on which the following is the description.

"Reverse: A Pyramid unfinished. (Representing the American Confederacy as still incomplete,—the structure to be carried upwards as new States are admitted into the Union.) In the zenith an Eye in a triangle, (representing the All-seeing Eye,) surrounded by a glory proper. Over the eye these words, 'Annuit cœptis,' (God has favored the undertaking.) On the base of the pyramid the numerical letters MDCCLXXVI, (1776,) and underneath the following motto, 'Novus ordo seclorum,' " (A new series of ages; —denoting that a new order of things has commenced in this western world.)

Note:—Although we have made all the engraved copies of the Seals of the States of uniform size, yet the original seals are of different sizes. We give their diameters in inches, commencing with the smallest.

Rhode Island and Texas, 1 1-2 inches; Iowa, 1 5-8; Kentucky, Tennessee, Louisiana, Arkansas, and Maryland, 1 3-4; New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Ohio, Indiana, Florida, South Carolina, and Mississippi, 2; New York and Vermont, 2 1-8; Pennsylvania, North Carolina, Georgia, Illinois, and the Seal of the United States, (which is engraved the full size,) 2 1-4; Connecticut, (oval,) 2 3-8 long, and 1 7-8 broad; Delaware, Alabama, Maine, and Missouri, 2 3-8; New Jersey and Michigan, 2 1-2; Virginia, 3 inches.

CHARACTER AND DESIGN OF THE SEVERAL APPENDICES TO THE HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Historical instruction National events, proper subjects of philosophical inquiry.*

2. *History has been styled, "Philosophy teaching by example." This view of its design often neglected.*

3. *Proper plan and object of an elementary historical work.*

4. *What further is expected to be accomplished by the plan.*

5. *What advance might next be made.*

6. *How illustrated.*

7. *What might be learned from this system.*

8. *Importance of historical knowledge, and value of different histories.*

9. *Certain historical researches, comparatively of little value.*

1. [1]The mere detail of such events as most attract public attention while they are occurring, embraces but a small portion of the instruction which History is capable of affording. The actions of individuals do not occur without motives, nor are national events ever attributable to chance origin; and the latter are as much the proper subjects of philosophical inquiry as the former.

2. [2]Could we ascertain the causes of all the prominent events which history relates, history would then become what it has been styled by an ancient writer, ' philosophy teaching by examples." Much may doubtless be done to make history accord more truly with this definition, for too often is this view of its design neglected even in our more prominent and larger works; and wars, and revolutions, and all great public events, are described with minuteness, while the social, moral, and intellectual progress of the people, and the causes that are working these changes, receive too little of that attention which their importance demands.

3. [3]The former plan, however, that of narrative principally, is essential in an elementary work, the object of which should be to interest the youthful mind by vivid representations of striking characters and incidents, and thereby to render the great events and divisions of history familiar to it. [4]The mind will thus be prepared to derive benefit from any accidental reading that is in any manner associated with the same subjects: it will have a groundwork to build upon; for these familiar localities, like points of magnetic attraction, will gather around them whatever comes within the circle of their influence.

4. [5]Being thus prepared by a familiarity with our subject, we may advance a step, and enter upon the field of philosophical inquiry. [6]Let us suppose, for example, that for every law found in the history of a people, we should attempt to ascertain the reasons which induced the legislator to give it his sanction, and its probable effects upon the community. [7]The entire social relations of a people might thus be developed, their manners, customs and opinions, their ignorance and their knowledge, their virtues and their vices; and the national progress would be traced far more clearly in those silently operating causes, than in the spectacle of the merely outward changes produced by them. Indeed, a mere narrative of the ordinary events of history can be justly regarded as of utility, only so far as it furnishes the basis on which a more noble superstructure, the "philosophy of history," is to be reared.

5. [8]The importance of historical knowledge should be estimated by the principles, rather than by the facts with which it furnishes us; and the comparative value, to us, of the histories of different nations, should be estimated by the same standard. [9]Therefore a mere narrative of ancient dynasties and wars, which should throw no light upon the character and circumstances of the people, would furnish no valuable information to reward the student's toil. He may be moved by a curiosity, liberal indeed and commendable, to explore the uncertain annals of fabulous ages, and attempt to trace

ANALYSIS.

out the histories of the early Egyptians, the Chinese, the Persians, and the Hindoos; but from them he may expect to derive few principles applicable to the present state of the world.

1. Comparative values of different portions of modern history.

6. [1]And indeed, after passing over the days of Grecian and Roman glory, we shall find little that is valuable, even in modern history, until we come to the period of the discovery of America, when various causes were operating to produce a great revolution in human affairs throughout the world. [2]The period of the dark ages had passed, and literature and science had begun to dawn again upon Europe: the art of printing, then recently invented, greatly facilitated the progress of improvements; the invention of gunpowder changed the whole art of war; and the Reformation soon began to make such innovations in religion as changed the moral aspect, not only of the states which embraced its principles, but of those even that adhered to the ancient faith and worship.

2. Important changes about the time of the discovery of America.

3. Causes that render American history peculiarly important.

7. [3]Among modern histories, none is more interesting in its details, or more rich in principles, than that of our own country; nor does any other throw so much light on the progress of society, the science of public affairs, and the arts of civil government. In this particular we claim an advantage over even England herself,—the most free, the most enlightened of the states of the old world. For, since our destiny became separate from hers, our national advancement has been by far the most rapid; and before that period both formed but separate portions of one people, living under the same laws, speaking, as now, the same language, and having a common share in the same history.

4. Why the study of American history claims our first regard.

5. Period of the commencement of American history.

8. [4]The study of American history, therefore, in preference to any other, claims our first regard, both because it is our own history, and because of its superior intrinsic importance. [5]But here the question arises, as we were colonies of Great Britain, when and where does our history commence? We answer, that although the annals we can strictly call our own commence with our colonial existence, yet if we are to embrace also the philosophy of our history, and would seek the causes of the events we narrate, we must go so far back in the annals of England as we can trace those principles that led to the founding of the American colonies, and influenced their subsequent character and destiny. [6]Viewing the subject in this light, some acquaintance with English history becomes necessary to a proper understanding of our own; and this leads us to a development of the plan we have adopted for the more philosophical portion of our work.

6. To what this view of the subject leads us.

7. Why the term "United States" is applied to the following history.

9. [7]Although the history of the "*United States*" does not properly extend back to the period when those states were dependent colonies, yet we have adopted the term "United States" for the title of a work embracing the whole period of our history, because it is more convenient than any other term, and because custom sanctions it. [8]This History we have divided into Four Parts. The first embraces the period of Voyages and Discoveries, extending from the discovery of this western world to the settlement of Jamestown in Virginia. We have given in this part a narrative of the prominent events that preceded the founding of the English American colonies, and this is all that could be given of what is properly *American* history during this period.

8. Part First of this history.

9. Character of the first appendix.

10. [9]In the "Appendix to the period of Voyages and Discoveries," we have taken up that portion of the history of England contained between the time of the discovery of America, and the planting of the first English colonies in the New World, with the design of examining the condition of the people of England during that pe-

riod, the nature of their institutions and laws, and whatever can throw light upon the character and motives of those who founded the American colonies, and who, we should naturally suppose, brought with them, to this then wilderness world, the manners, customs, habits, feelings, laws, and language of their native land. [1]But it is the social, rather than the political history of England—the internal, rather than the external, that is here important to us, and it is to this, therefore, that we have mostly confined our attention. [2]We hope thus to have prepared the advanced student to enter upon the study of our colonial history with additional interest, and with more definite views of the nature and importance of the great drama that is to be unfolded to him.

ANALYSIS.

1. *To what portion of English history we have mostly confined our attention*

2. *The objects hoped to be gained by this course.*

11. [3]At the close of Part Second, embracing the period of our colonial history, and also at the close of Part Third, embracing the period of the Revolution, we have given, in an Appendix, some farther account of such European events as are intimately connected with our own history, and which serve to give us a more comprehensive and accurate view of it than we could possibly obtain by confining ourselves exclusively to our own annals; in connection with which we have examined the policy of England towards her colonies—the influences exerted by each upon the other—the difficulties of our situation—the various peculiarities exhibited among ourselves, and the germs of our subsequent national character.

3. *Additions to Part Second and Part Third.*

As, during the fourth period of our history, our relations with England were those of one independent nation with another, England no longer claims any special share of our attention, and at the close of this period we have examined briefly the character, tendency, and influences of our national government, and have also given an *historical* sketch of some important political questions that have been but briefly noticed in the narrative part of the work.

4. *At the close of Part Fourth.*

12. [5]The design of the several Appendices is, therefore, to explain the influences which operated in moulding the character of our early English fathers, to develop the causes which led to the planting of the American colonies, and to illustrate the subsequent social and political progress of the American people; or, in other words, to give a simple and plain, but philosophical history of AMERICAN CIVILIZATION.

5. *General character and design of the several appendices*

GEOGRAPHICAL DESCRIPTION OF THE COUNTRY EMBRACED WITHIN THE UNITED STATES AND THEIR TERRITORIES.

The United States and their territories, occupying the middle division of North America, lie between the 25th and the 54th degrees of North latitude, and the 67th and the 125th degrees of West longitude, extending from the Atlantic to the Pacific Ocean, and containing an area of about 2,600,000 square miles. They have a frontier of about 10,000 miles; a sea coast of 3,600 miles; and a lake coast of 1200 miles.

This vast country is intersected by two principal ranges of mountains, the Alleghany and the Rocky Mountains,—the former in the East, running nearly parallel to the Atlantic coast, from Georgia to New York; and the latter in the West, crossing the territory in a direction nearly parallel to the coast of the Pacific. The Alleghanies run in separate and somewhat parallel ridges, with a breadth of from 60 to 120 miles, and at a distance from the sea coast of from 80 to 250 miles. The general height of the Alleghanies is only from 1000 to 2000 feet above the adjacent country, and from 2000 to 3000 feet above the level of the ocean. The highest peak in this range is the Black Mountain, in the western part of North Carolina, which is 6,476 feet high. The Rocky Mountains, which may be regarded as a part of the great chain of the Cordilleras, are at an average distance of about 600 miles from the Pacific Ocean, and have a general height of about 8000 or 9000 feet above the level of the sea, but not more than 5000 feet above the surrounding country. Some of their most elevated peaks rise to the height of 10,000 or 12,000 feet.

East of the Alleghany Mountains the rivers flow into the Atlantic: West of the Rocky Mountains they centre mostly in the Columbia, which flows into the Pacific; while between these great mountain ranges, the many and large streams centre in the valley which lies between them, and through the channel of the Mississippi seek an outlet in the Gulf of Mexico.

The Atlantic coast is indented by numerous bays, and has a great number of excellent harbors. The soil of New England is generally rocky, and rough, and better adapted to grazing than to grain, with the exception of the valleys of the rivers, which are highly fertile. South of New England, and east of the Alleghanies generally, the soil has but moderate fertility, being light and sandy on the coast, but of better quality farther inland. Throughout the extensive valley of the Mississippi the soil is generally of excellent quality, the middle section, however, being the most fertile. West of Missouri, skirting the base of the Rocky Mountains, are extensive sandy wastes, to which has been given the name of the "Great American Desert."

Oregon Territory, lying west of the Rocky Mountains, is divided into three belts, or sections, separated by ranges of mountains running nearly parallel to the coast of the Pacific. The western section, extending from the ocean to the Cascade Mountains, embracing a width of from 100 to 150 miles, is generally fertile, and near the foot of the Cascade range the climate and soil are adapted to all the kinds of grain that are found in temperate climates. The soil of the second or middle section of Oregon, embraced between the Cascade range and the Blue Mountains, is generally a light sandy loam, the valleys only being fertile. The third or eastern section of Oregon, between the Blue and the Rocky Mountains, is a rocky, broken, and barren country.

More particular Geographical descriptions of the several states embraced in the American Union, and of the most important lakes, bays, rivers, towns, &c., will be found in the Geographical Notes throughout the work. The Geographical description of Texas, now a part of the Republic, will be found on pages 621, 622.

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

PART I.

VOYAGES AND DISCOVERIES.

EXTENDING FROM THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA, BY COLUMBUS, IN 1492; TO THE SETTLEMENT OF JAMESTOWN, VIRGINIA, IN 1607; EMBRACING A PERIOD OF 115 YEARS.

ANALYSIS.

Subject of Part I.

CHAPTER I.

EARLY SPANISH VOYAGES, CONQUESTS, AND DISCOVERIES, IN THE SOUTHERN PORTIONS OF NORTH AMERICA.

Of Chapter I.

DIVISIONS.

I. Discovery of America by Columbus.—II. Juan Ponce de Leon in Florida.—III. De Ayllon in Carolina.—IV. Conquest of Mexico.—V. Pamphilo de Narvaez.—VI. Ferdinand de Soto.

The Divisions of Chapter I.

I. DISCOVERY OF AMERICA BY COLUMBUS.—1. [1]The discovery[a] of America by Christopher Columbus, may be regarded as the most important event that has ever resulted from individual genius and enterprise. [2]Although other claims to the honor of discovering the Western hemisphere have been advanced, and with some appearance of probability, yet no clear historic evidence exists in their favor. [3]It has been asserted that an Iceland* bark, in the early part of the eleventh century, having been driven southwest from Greenland† by adverse winds, touched[b] upon the coast of Labrador;‡—that subsequent voyages were made; and that colonies were established in Nova Scotia,§ or in Newfoundland.‖

1. *Discovery of America by Columbus.*

a. Oct. 12, 1492, Old Style; or, Oct. 21, New Style.

2. *Other claims to the Discovery.*

3. *Icelandic claim.*

b. 1001.

* GEOGRAPHICAL NOTES.—1. *Iceland* is an island in the Northern Ocean, remarkable for its boiling springs (the Geysers), and its flaming volcano, Mount Hecla. It was discovered by a Norwegian pirate, in the year 861, and was soon after settled by the Norwegians; but it is supposed that the English and the Irish had previously made settlements there, which were abandoned before the time of the Norwegian discovery.

† *Greenland* is an extensive tract of barren country, in the northern frozen regions; separated from the western continent by Baffin's Bay and Davis's Strait. It was discovered by the Norwegians thirty years after the discovery of Iceland, and a thriving colony was planted there; but from 1406 until after the discovery by Columbus, all correspondence with Greenland was cut off, and all knowledge of the country seemed to be buried in oblivion.

‡ *Labrador*, or New Britain, is that part of the American coast between the Gulf of St. Lawrence and Hudson's Bay; a bleak and barren country, little known, and inhabited chiefly by Indians.

§ *Nova Scotia* is a large peninsula, southeast from New Brunswick, separated from it by the Bay of Fundy, and connected with it by a narrow isthmus only nine miles across.

‖ *Newfoundland* is a hilly and mountainous island on the east side of the Gulf of St. Law

ANALYSIS.

1. *Superior merit of the claims of Columbus.*

2. [1]But even if it be admitted that such a discovery was made, it does not in the least detract from the honor so universally ascribed to Columbus. The Icelandic discovery, if real, resulted from chance,—was not even known to Europe,—was thought of little importance,—and was soon forgotten; and the curtain of darkness again fell between the Old world and the New. The discovery by Columbus, on the contrary, was the result of a theory matured by long reflection and experience; opposed to the learning and the bigotry of the age; and brought to a successful demonstration, after years of toil against opposing difficulties and discouragements.

2. *Prevalent error respecting the discovery by Columbus.*

3. [2]The nature of the great discovery, however, was long unknown; and it remained for subsequent adventurers to dispel the prevalent error, that the voyage of Columbus had only opened a new route to the wealthy, but then scarcely known regions of Eastern Asia.

3. *Extent of his discoveries.*

a. 1492 to 1498.

b. Aug. 10th.

[3]During several years,[a] the discoveries of Columbus were confined to the islands of the West Indies;* and it was not until August,[b] 1498, six years after his first voyage, that he discovered the main land, near the mouth of the Orinoco;† and he was then ignorant that it was any thing more than an island.

4. *The W. Indies.*

5. *Discovery of Yucatan, and first colony on the Continent.*

6. *Discovery of the Pacific.*

a. 1513.

4. [4]The principal islands of the West Indies,—Cuba,‡ St. Domingo,§ and Porto Rico,‖ were soon colonized, and subjected to Spanish authority. [5]In 1506 the eastern coast of Yucatan¶ was discovered; and in 1510 the first colony on the continent was planted on the Isthmus of Darien.** [6]Soon after, Vasco Nunez de Balboa, governor of the colony, crossed the Isthmus, and from a mountain on the other side of the Continent discovered[c] an Ocean, which being seen in a southerly direction, at first received the name of the *South Sea*.

7. *De Leon.*

II. Juan Ponce de Leon in Florida.—1. [7]In 1512 Juan Ponce de Leon, an aged veteran, and former govenor of Porto Rico, fitted out three ships, at his own ex-

---

rence; nearly a thousand miles in circumference, deriving all its importance from its extensive fisheries.

* The *West Indies* consist of a large number of islands between North and South America, the most important of which are Cuba, St. Domingo, Jamaica, and Porto Rico.

† The *Orinoco* is a river on the northeast coast of South America.

‡ *Cuba*, one of the richest islands in the world, is the largest of the West Indies, being 760 miles in length from southeast to northwest, and about 50 miles in breadth. Its northern coast is 150 miles south from Florida.

§ *St. Domingo*, or Hayti, formerly called Hispaniola, is a large island, lying between Cuba and Porto Rico, and about equally distant from each.

‖ *Porto Rico* is a fertile island of the West Indies, 60 miles southeast from St. Domingo. It is 140 miles long from east to west, and 36 broad.

¶ *Yucatan*, one of the States of Mexico, is an extensive peninsula, 150 miles S. W. from Cuba, and lying between the Bays of Honduras and Campeachy.

** The *Isthmus of Darien* is that narrow neck of land which connects North and South America. It is about 300 miles in length, and, in the narrowest part, is only about 30 miles cross.

pense, for a voyage of discovery. [1]A tradition prevailed among the natives of Porto Rico, that in a neighboring island of the Bahamas* was a fountain which possessed the remarkable properties of restoring the youth, and of perpetuating the life of any one who should bathe in its stream, and drink of its waters. [2]Nor was this fabulous tale credited by the uninstructed natives only. It was generally believed in Spain, and even by men distinguished for virtue and intelligence.

1512.

1. *Tradition of the Fountain of Life.*

2. *By whom credited.*

2. [3]In quest of this fountain of youth Ponce de Leon sailed[a] from Porto Rico in March, 1512; and after cruising some time among the Bahamas, discovered[b] an unknown country, to which, from the abundance of flowers that adorned the forests, and from its being first seen on Easter† Sunday, (which the Spaniards call *Pascua Florida*,) he gave the name of Florida.‡

3. *Account of the discovery of Florida.*

a. March 13.

b. April 6.

3. [4]After landing[c] some miles north of the place where St. Augustine§ now stands, and taking formal possession of the country, he explored its coasts; and doubling its southern cape, continued his search among the group of islands which he named the Tortugas:‖ but the chief object of the expedition was still unattained, and Ponce de Leon returned to Porto Rico, older than when he departed. [5]A few years later, having been appointed governor of the country which he had discovered, he made a second voyage to its shores, with the design of selecting a site for a colony; but, in a contest with the natives, many of his followers were killed, and Ponce de Leon himself was mortally wounded.

4. *Extent of De Leon's discoveries.*

c. April 18.

5. *Result of the second voyage.*

III. DE AYLLON IN CAROLINA.—1. [6]About the time of the defeat of Ponce de Leon in Florida, a company of seven wealthy men of St. Domingo, at the head of whom was Lucas Vasquez de Ayllon,[d] judge of appeals of that island, despatched[e] two vessels to the Bahamas, in quest of laborers for their plantations and mines. [7]Being driven northward from the Bahamas, by adverse winds, to the coast of Carolina, they anchored at the mouth of the Cambahee¶ river, which they named the Jordan. The country they called Chicora.

6. *Enterprise of De Ayllon.*

d. Pronounced Ail-yon.

e. 1520.

7. *Discovery of Carolina.*

* The *Bahamas* are an extensive group of islands lying east and southeast from Florida. They have been estimated at about 600 in number, most of them mere cliffs and rocks, only 14 of them being of any considerable size.

† *Easter* day, a church festival observed in commemoration of our Savior's resurrection, is the Sunday following the first full moon that happens after the 20th of March.

‡ *Florida*, the most southern portion of the United States, is a large peninsula about two thirds of the size of Yucatan. The surface is level, and is intersected by numerous ponds, lakes, rivers, and marshes.

§ See note and map, p. 130.

‖ The *Tortugas*, or Tortoise Islands, are about 100 miles southwest from the southern cape of Florida.

¶ The *Cambahee* is a small river in the southern part of South Carolina, emptying into St. Helena Sound, 35 miles southwest from Charleston. (See map, p. 129.)

ANALYSIS.

1. Hospitality of the natives, and perfidy of the Spaniards.

2. Result of the enterprise.

2. [1]Here the natives treated the strangers with great kindness and hospitality, and being induced by curiosity, freely visited the ships; but when a sufficient number was below the decks, the perfidious Spaniards closed the hatches and set sail for St. Domingo. [2]One of the returning ships was lost, and most of the Indian prisoners in the other, sullenly refusing food, died of famine and melancholy.

3. Account of the second voyage, and its result.

3. [3]Soon after this unprofitable enterprise, De Ayllon, having obtained the appointment of governor of Chicora, sailed with three vessels for the conquest of the country. Arriving in the river Cambahee, the principal vessel was stranded and lost. Proceeding thence a little farther north, and being received with apparent friendship at their landing, many of his men were induced to visit a village, a short distance in the interior, where they were all treacherously cut off by the natives, in revenge for the wrongs which the Spaniards had before committed. De Ayllon himself was surprised and attacked in the harbor;—the attempt to conquer the country was abandoned;—and the few survivors, in dismay, hastened back to St. Domingo.

4. Yucatan explored.

a. Note p. 112.

b. March, 1517.

5. Wonder of the Spaniards excited.

6. Character of the natives.

IV. Conquest of Mexico.*—1. [4]In 1517 Francisco Fernandez de Cordova, sailing from Cuba[a] with three small vessels, explored[b] the northern coast of Yucatan. [5]As the Spaniards approached the shore, they were surprised to find, instead of naked savages, a people decently clad in cotton garments; and, on landing, their wonder was increased by beholding several large edifices built of stone. [6]The natives were much more bold and warlike than those of the islands and the more southern coasts, and every where received the Spaniards with the most determined opposition.

7. Result of the expedition.

8. Discovery of Mexico.

c. May, June, 1518.

2. [7]At one place fifty-seven of the Spaniards were killed, and Cordova himself received a wound, of which he died soon after his return to Cuba. [8]But notwithstanding the disastrous result of the expedition, another was planned in the following year; and under the direction of Juan de Grijalva, a portion of the southern coast of Mexico was explored,[c] and a large amount of treasure obtained by trafficking with the natives.

9. Designs of conquest.

3. [9]Velasquez, governor of Cuba, under whose auspices the voyage of Grijalva had been made, enriched by the result, and elated with a success far beyond his ex

* *Mexico* is a large country southwest from the United States, bordering on the Gulf of Mexico on the east, and the Pacific Ocean on the west. It is about two-thirds as large as the United States and their territories. The land on both coasts is low, but in the interior is a large tract of *table lands* 6 or 8000 feet above the level of the sea. (See also page 569.)

pectations, now determined to undertake the conquest of the wealthy countries that had been discovered, and hastily fitted out an armament for the purpose. [1]Not being able to accompany the expedition in person, he gave the command to Fernando Cortez, who sailed with eleven vessels, having on board six hundred and seventeen men. In March, 1519, Cortez landed in Tabasco,* a southern province of Mexico, where he had several encounters with the natives, whom he routed with great slaughter.

1518.

Account of the invasion of Mexico by Cortez.

4. [2]Proceeding thence farther westward, he landed[a] at San Juan de Ulloa,† where he was hospitably received, and where two officers of a monarch who was called Montezuma, come to inquire what his intentions were in visiting that coast, and to offer him what assistance he might need in order to continue his voyage. [3]Cortez respectfully assured them that he came with the most friendly sentiments, but that he was intrusted with affairs of such moment by the king, his sovereign, that he could impart them to no one but to the emperor Montezuma himself, and therefore requested them to conduct him into the presence of their master.

a. April 12.

2. Cortez received by the officers of Montezuma.

3. Assurances given, and request made by Cortez.

5. [4]The ambassadors of the Mexican monarch, knowing how disagreeable such a request would be, endeavored to dissuade Cortez from his intentions; at the same time making him some valuable presents, which only increased his avidity. Messengers were despatched to Montezuma, giving him an account of every thing that had occurred since the arrival of the Spaniards: [5]Presents of great value and magnificence were returned by him, and repeated requests were made, and finally commands given, that the Spaniards should leave the country; but all to no purpose.

4. Course pursued by the Mexican ambassadors

5. By Montezuma

6. [6]Cortez, after destroying his vessels, that his soldiers should be left without any resources but their own valor, commenced[b] his march towards the Mexican capital. [7]On his way thither, several nations, that were tributary to Montezuma, gladly threw off their allegiance and joined the Spaniards. Montezuma himself, alarmed and irresolute, continued to send messengers to Cortez, and as his hopes or his fears alternately prevailed, on one day gave him permission to advance, and, on the next, commanded him to depart.

6. By Cortez.

b. August 26.

7. Events that occurred on the march of Cortez towards the Mexican capital.

7. [8]As the vast plain of Mexico opened to the view of the Spaniards, they beheld numerous villages and culti-

8. Appearance of the plain of Mexico and the city.

* *Tabasco*, one of the southern Mexican States, adjoins Yucatan on the southwest.

† *San Juan de Ulloa* is a small island, opposite Vera Cruz, the principal eastern seaport of Mexico. It is 180 miles south of east from the Mexican capital, and contains a strong fortress. The old Spanish fort was built of coral rocks taken from the bottom of the sea

ANALYSIS.

vated fields extending as far as the eye could reach, and in the middle of the plain, partly encompassing a large lake, and partly built on islands within it, stood the city* of Mexico, adorned with its numerous temples and turrets; the whole presenting to the Spaniards a spectacle so novel and wonderful that they could hardly persuade themselves it was any thing more than a dream. [1]Montezuma received[a] the Spaniards with great pomp and magnificence, admitted them within the city, assigned them a spacious and elegant edifice for their accommodation, supplied all their wants, and bestowed upon all, privates as well as officers, presents of great value.

1. *Montezuma's reception of the Spaniards.*
a. Nov.

8. [2]Cortez, nevertheless, soon began to feel solicitude for his situation. He was in the middle of a vast empire, —shut up in the centre of a hostile city,—and surrounded by multitudes sufficient to overwhelm him upon the least intimation of the will of their sovereign. [3]In this emergency, the wily Spaniard, with extraordinary daring, formed and executed[b] the plan of seizing the person of the Mexican monarch, and detained him as a hostage for the good conduct of his people. He next induced him, overawed and broken in spirit, to acknowledge himself a vassal of the Spanish crown, and to subject his dominions to the payment of an annual tribute.

2. *Embarrassing situation of Cortez.*

3. *Seizure and treatment of Montezuma.*
b. Dec.

1520.

9. [4]But while Cortez was absent,[c] opposing a force that had been sent against him by the governor of Cuba, who had become jealous of his successes, the Mexicans, incited by the cruelties of the Spaniards who had been left to guard the capital and the Mexican king, flew to arms. [5]Cortez, with singular good fortune, having subdued his enemies, and incorporated most of them with his own forces, returning, entered[a] the capital without molestation.

4. *Cortez called from the capital, and the Mexicans rise in arms.*
c. May.

5. *Good fortune of Cortez.*
a. July 4.

10 [6]Relying too much on his increased strength, he soon laid aside the mask of moderation which had hitherto concealed his designs, and treated the Mexicans like conquered subjects. They, finally convinced that they had

6. *His treatment of the Mexicans—what followed.*

* The *city of Mexico*, built by the Spaniards on the ruins of the ancient city, was long the largest town in America, but is now inferior to New York and Philadelphia. It is 170 miles from the Gulf of Mexico, and 200 from the Pacific Ocean, and is situated near the western bank of Lake Tezcuco, in the delightful Vale of Mexico, or, as it was formerly called, the Plain of Tenochtitlan, which is 230 miles in circumference, and elevated 7000 feet above the level of the ocean. The plain contains three lakes besides Tezcuco, and is surrounded by hills of moderate elevation, except on the south, where are two lofty volcanic mountains. Two of the lakes are above the level of the city, whose streets have been frequently inundated by them; but in 1689, a deep channel, 12 miles long, cut through the hills on the north, was completed, by which the superfluous waters are conveyed into the river Tula, and thence to the Panuco.

nothing to hope but from the utter extermination of their invaders, resumed their attacks upon the Spanish quarters with additional fury. [1]In a sally which Cortez made, twelve of his soldiers were killed, and the Mexicans learned that their enemies were not invincible. **1520.**

1. Loss suffered by the Spaniards.

11. [2]Cortez, now fully sensible of his danger, tried what effect the interposition of Montezuma would have upon his irritated subjects. At sight of their king, whom they almost worshipped as a god, the weapons of the Mexicans dropped from their hands, and every head was bowed with reverence; but when, in obedience to the command of Cortez, the unhappy monarch attempted to mitigate their rage and to persuade them to lay down their arms, murmurs, threats, and reproaches ran through their ranks;—their rage broke forth with ungovernable fury, and, regardless of their monarch, they again poured in upon the Spaniards flights of arrows and volleys of stones. Two arrows wounded Montezuma before he could be removed, and a blow from a stone brought him to the ground.

2. Interposition of Montezuma, and treatment which he received.

12. [3]The Mexicans, on seeing their king fall by their own hands, were instantly struck with remorse, and fled with horror, as if the vengence of heaven were pursuing them for the crime which they had committed. [4]Montezuma himself, scorning to survive this last humiliation, rejected with disdain the kind attentions of the Spaniards, and refusing to take any nourishment, soon terminated his wretched days.

3. Remorse and flight of the Mexicans

4. Montezuma's death.

13. [5]Cortez, now despairing of an accommodation with the Mexicans, after several desperate encounters with them, began a retreat from the capital;—but innumerable hosts hemmed him in on every side, and his march was almost a continual battle. On the sixth day of the retreat, the almost exhausted Spaniards, now reduced to a mere handful of men, encountered,[a] in a spacious valley, the whole Mexican force;—a countless multitude, extending as far as the eye could reach. [6]As no alternative remained but to conquer or die, Cortez, without giving his soldiers time for reflection, immediately led them to the charge. The Mexicans received them with unusual fortitude, yet their most numerous battalions gave way before Spanish discipline and Spanish arms.

5. Retreat of the Spaniards from Mexico

a. July 17.

6. Great battle with the Mexicans

14. The very multitude of their enemies, however, pressing upon them from every side, seemed sufficient to overwhelm the Spaniards, who, seeing no end of their toil, nor any hope of victory, were on the point of yielding to despair. At this moment Cortez, observing the great Mexican standard advancing, and recollecting to have

ANALYSIS.

heard that on its fate depended the event of every battle, assembled a few of his bravest officers, and, at their head, cut his way through the opposing ranks, struck down the Mexican general, and secured the standard. The moment their general fell and the standard disappeared, the Mexicans, panic-struck, threw away their weapons, and fled with precipitation to the mountains, making no farther opposition to the retreat of the Spaniards.

1. *Final conquest of Mexico.*

15. [1]Notwithstanding the sad reverses which he had experienced, Cortez still looked forward with confidence to the conquest of the whole Mexican empire, and, after receiving supplies and reinforcements, in December, 1520, he again departed for the interior, with a force of five hundred Spaniards and ten thousand friendly natives. After various successes and reverses, and a siege of the capital which lasted seventy-five days—the king Guatemozen having fallen into his hands,—in August, 1521, the city yielded;[a] the fate of the empire was decided; and Mexico became a province of Spain.

1521.

a. Aug. 23.

2. *Other important event requiring our notice.*

16. [2]Another important event in the list of Spanish discoveries, and one which is intimately connected with American history, being the final demonstration of the theory of Columbus, requires in this place a passing notice.

3. *Magellan, and his plan of a new route to the Indies.*

17. [3]Ferdinand Magellan, a Portuguese by birth, who had served his country with distinguished valor in the East Indies,* believing that those fertile regions might be reached by a westerly route from Portugal, proposed the scheme to his sovereign,[b] and requested aid to carry it into execution. [4]Unsuccessful in his application, and having been coldly dismissed by his sovereign without receiving any reward for his services, he indignantly renounced his allegiance and repaired to Spain.[c]

b. Emanuel.

4. *His first application for aid.*

c. 1517.

5. *Sails on his expedition.*

d. Charles V.

e. Aug. 20, 1519

6. *Account of the voyage, embracing the first circumnavigation of the Globe.*

18. [5]The Spanish emperor[d] engaging readily in the scheme which the Portuguese monarch had rejected, a squadron of five ships was soon equipped at the public charge, and Magellan set sail[e] from Seville† in August, 1519. [6]After touching at the Canaries,‡ he stood south, crossed the equinoctial line, and spent several months in exploring the coast of South America, searching for a passage which should lead to the Indies. After spending the winter on the coast, in the spring he continued his

* *East Indies* is the name given to the islands of the Indian Ocean south of Asia, together with that portion of the main land which is between Persia and China.

† *Seville* is a large city beautifully situated on the left bank of the Guadalquiver, in the southwestern part of Spain. It was once the chief market for the commerce of America and the Indies.

‡ The *Canaries* are a group of 14 islands belonging to Spain. The Peak of Teneriffe, on one of the more distant islands, is about 250 miles from the northwest coast of Africa, and 800 miles southwest from the Straits of Gibraltar.

voyage towards the south,—passing through the strait* which bears his name, and, after sailing three months and twenty-one-days through an unknown ocean, during which time his crew suffered greatly from the want of water and provisions, he discovered[a] a cluster of fertile islands, which he called the Ladrones.† 1520.

a. March 16, 1520.

19. The fair weather and favorable winds which he had experienced, induced him to bestow on the ocean through which he had passed the name of *Pacific*, which it still retains. Proceeding from the Ladrones, he soon discovered the islands now known as the *Philippines*.‡ Here, in a contest with the natives, Magellan was killed,[b] and the expedition was prosecuted under other commanders. After arriving at the Moluccas§ and taking in a cargo of spices, the only vessel of the squadron, then fit for a long voyage, sailed for Europe by way of the Cape of Good Hope,‖ and arrived[c] in Spain in September, 1522, thus accomplishing the first *circumnavigation of the globe*, and having performed the voyage in the space of three years and twenty-eight days.

b May 6

1522.

c. 17th Sept.

V. PAMPHILO DE NARVAEZ.—1. [1]In 1526, Pamphilo de Narvaez, the same who had been sent[d] by the governor of Cuba to arrest the career of Cortez in Mexico, solicited and obtained from the Spanish emperor, Charles V., the appointment of governor of Florida,[e] with permission to conquer the country. [2]The territory thus placed at his disposal extended, with indefinite limits, from the southern cape of the present Florida to the river of Palms, (now Panuco¶) in Mexico. [3]Having made extensive preparations, in April, 1528, Narvaez landed[f] in Florida with a force of three hundred men, of whom eighty were mounted, and erecting the royal standard, took possession of the country for the crown of Spain.

1526.

d See p. 116.

1. *De Narvaez, and his scheme of conquest.*

e. Note, p 113.

2. *Territory placed at his disposal.*

3. *His landing in Florida.*

1528.

f. April 22.

2. [4]Striking into the interior with the hope of finding

4. *The route and wanderings of the Spaniards.*

---

* The *Strait of Magellan* is at the southern extremity of the American continent, separating the islands of Terra del Fuego from the main land. It is a dangerous passage, more than 300 miles in length, and in some places not more than a mile across.

† The *Ladrones*, or the Islands of Thieves, thus named from the thievish disposition of the natives, are a cluster of islands in the Pacific Ocean about 1600 miles southeast from the coast of China. When first discovered, the natives were ignorant of any country but their own, and imagined that the ancestor of their race was formed from a piece of the rock of one of their islands. They were utterly unacquainted with fire, and when Magellan, provoked by repeated thefts, burned one of their villages, they thought that the fire was a beast that fed upon their dwellings.

‡ The *Philippines*, thus named in honor of Philip II. of Spain, who subjected them 40 years after the voyage of Magellan, are a group of more than a thousand islands, the largest of which is Luzon, about 400 miles southeast from the coast of China.

§ The *Moluccas*, or Spice Islands, are a group of small islands north from New Holland, discovered by the Portuguese in 1511. They are distinguished chiefly for the production of spices, particularly nutmegs and cloves.

‖ The *Cape of Good Hope* is the most important cape of South Africa, although Cape Lagullus is farther south.

¶ The *Panuco* is a small river which empties into the Gulf of Mexico 210 miles north from the Mexican capital, and about 30 miles north from Tampico.

ANALYSIS.

some wealthy empire like Mexico or Peru,* during two months the Spaniards wandered about through swamps and forests, often attacked by hordes of lurking savages, but cheered onward by the assurances of their captive guides, who, pointing to the north, were supposed to describe a territory which abounded in gold. [1]At length they arrived[a] in the fertile province of the Apallachians, in the north of Florida, but their hopes of finding gold were sadly disappointed, and the residence of the chieftain, instead of being a second Mexico, which they had pictured to themselves, proved to be a mere village of two hundred wigwams.

1. Their disappointed hopes.

a. June.

3. [2]They now directed their course southward, and finally came upon the sea, probably in the region of the Bay of Apallachee,† near St. Marks. Having already lost a third of their number, and despairing of being able to retrace their steps, they constructed five frail boats, in which they embarked,[b] but being driven out into the gulf by a storm, Narvaez and nearly all his companions perished. Four of the crew, after wandering several years through Louisiana,‡ Texas,§ and Northern Mexico, and passing from tribe to tribe, often as slaves, finally reached[c] a Spanish settlement.

2. Result of the expedition.

b. Oct.

c. 1536.

VI. Ferdinand de Soto.—1. [3]Notwithstanding the melancholy result of the expedition of Narvaez, it was still believed that in the interior of *Florida*, a name which the Spaniards applied to all North America then known, regions might yet be discovered which would vie in opulence with Mexico and Peru. [4]Ferdinand de Soto, a Spanish cavalier of noble birth, who had acquired distinction and wealth as the lieutenant of Pizarro in the conquest of Peru, and desirous of signalizing himself still farther by some great enterprise, formed the design of conquering Florida, a country of whose riches he had formed the most extravagant ideas.

3. Prevalent belief with regard to the riches of Florida.

4. Ferdinand de Soto, and his design of conquering Florida.

1538.

2. [5]He therefore applied to the Spanish emperor, and requested permission to undertake the conquest of Florida at his own risk and expense. The emperor, indulging high expectations from so noted a cavalier, not only

5. His application to the Spanish Monarch.

---

* *Peru* is a country of South America, bordering on the Pacific Ocean, celebrated for its mines of gold and silver, the annual produce of which, during a great number of years, was more than four millions of dollars. Peru, when discovered by the Spaniards, was a powerful and wealthy kingdom, considerably advanced in civilization. Its conquest was completed by Pizarro in 1532.

† *Apallachee* is a large open bay on the coast of Florida, south of the western part of Georgia. *St. Marks* is a town at the head of the bay.

‡ *Louisiana* is a name originally applied to the whole valley of the Mississippi and the country westward as far as Mexico and the Pacific Ocean. The present Louisiana is one of the United States, at the southwestern extremity of the Union.

§ *Texas*, embracing a territory as extensive as the six New England States together with New York and New Jersey, adjoins Louisiana on the west. (See also page 621.)

granted his request, but also appointed him governor-general of Fiorida for life, and also of the island of Cuba.[a] [1]De Soto soon found himself surrounded by adventurers of all classes, and in April, 1538, sailed for Cuba with a fleet of seven large and three small vessels.

1538.

a. Note, p. 112

1. *Sails for Cuba.*

3. [2]In Cuba the new governor was received with great rejoicings;—new accessions were made to his forces; and after completing his preparations, and leaving his wife to govern the island, he embarked for Florida, and early in June, 1539, his fleet anchored[b] in the Bay of Espiritu Santo,* or Tampa Bay. [3]His forces consisted of six hundred men, more than two hundred of whom were mounted, both infantry and cavalry being clad in complete armor. [4]Besides ample stores of food, a drove of three hundred swine was landed, with which De Soto intended to stock the country where he should settle; and these were driven with the expedition throughout most of the route.

2. *His reception in Cuba, and his landing in Florida.*

1539.

b. June 10.

3. *His forces.*

4. *Supplies for his army.*

4. [5]After establishing a small garrison in the vicinity of Espiritu Santo, and sending most of his vessels back to Havanna,† he commenced his march into the interior, taking with him, as interpreter, a Spaniard found among the natives, who had remained in captivity since the time of Narvaez. After wandering five months through unexplored and mostly uncultivated regions, exposed to hardships and dangers and an almost continued warfare with the natives, during which several lives were lost, the party arrived,[c] in the month of November, in the more fertile country of the Apallachians, east of the Flint river,‡ and a few leagues north of the Bay of Apallachee, where it was determined to pass the winter.

5. *Account of the wanderings of the Spaniards in the interior.*

c. Nov. 6.

5. [6]From this place an exploring party discovered the ocean in the very place where the unfortunate Narvaez had embarked. De Soto likewise despatched thirty horsemen to Espiritu Santo, with orders for the garrison to rejoin the army in their present winter quarters. The horsemen arrived with the loss of but two of their number, and the garrison rejoined De Soto, although with some loss, as, during their march, they had several desperate encounters with the natives. Two small vessels that had been retained at Espiritu Santo reached the Bay of Apallachee, and by the aid of these the coast was farther

6. *Discovery of the Ocean, and other events that followed.*

* *Espiritu Santo*, now called *Tampa Bay*, is on the western coast of Florida, 200 miles south-east from St. Marks. There is no place of anchorage between the two places.

† *Havanna*, the capital of Cuba, a wealthy and populous city, is on the north side of the island. It has the finest harbor in the world, capable of containing a thousand ships. The entrance is so narrow that but one vessel can pass at a time.

‡ The *Flint* river is in the western part of Georgia. It joins the Chattahoochee at the northern boundary of Florida, and the two united form the Apalachicola.

ANALYSIS.

explored during the winter,[a] and the harbor of Pensacola* discovered.

a. 1539-40.

1. *Manner in which the Spaniards passed their first winter.*

6. [1]The Spaniards remained five months in winter quarters at Apallachee, supplying themselves with provisions by pillaging the surrounding country; but they were kept in constant alarm by the never-ceasing stratagems and assaults of the natives. [2]At length, in the month of March, they broke up their camp, and set out[b] for a remote country, of which they had heard, to the northeast, governed, it was said, by a woman, and abounding in gold and silver. [3]De Soto had previously despatched his ships to Cuba, with orders to rendezvous in the following October at Pensacola, where he proposed to meet them, having, in the mean time, explored the country in the interior.

1540.

b. March 13.

2. *Course taken by them in the spring.*

3. *Orders given by De Soto to his ships.*

4. *Disappointed expectations.*

7. [4]Changing his course now to the northeast, De Soto crossed several streams which flow into the Atlantic, and probably penetrated near to the Savannah,† where he indeed found the territory of the princess, of whose wealth he had formed so high expectations; but, to his great disappointment, the fancied gold proved to be copper, and the supposed silver only thin plates of mica.

5. *Route of De Soto through Georgia.*

8. [5]His direction was now towards the north, to the head waters of the Savannah and the Chattahoochee,‡ whence he crossed a branch of the Apalachian§ chain which runs through the northern part of Georgia, and came upon the southern limits of the territory of the Cherokees.[c] [6]Hearing that there was gold in a region farther north, he despatched two horsemen with Indian guides, to visit the country. These, after an absence of ten days, having crossed rugged and percipitous mountains, returned to the camp, bringing with them a few specimens of fine copper or brass, but none of gold or silver.

c. Map, p. 20.

6. *Why the country of the Cherokees was visited, and the result.*

7. *Wanderings of the Spaniards in Alabama.*

9. [7]During several months the Spaniards wandered through the valleys of Alabama, obliging the chieftains, through whose territories they passed, to march with them as hostages for the good conduct of their subjects.

PENSACOLA AND VICINITY.

* *Pensacola* is a town on the northwest side of Pensacola Bay near the western extremity of Florida. The bay is a fine sheet o. water upwards of 20 miles in length from N.E. to S.W. (See Map.)

† The *Savannah* river forms the boundary line between South Carolina and Georgia.

‡ The *Chattahoochee* river rises in the northeastern part of Georgia, near the sources of the Savannah, and, after crossing the State southwest, forms the boundary between Georgia and Alabama.

§ The *Apalachian* or *Alleghany Mountains* extend from the northern part of Georgia to the State of New York, at a distance of about 250 miles from the coast, and nearly parallel to it. They divide the waters which flow into the Atlantic from those which flow into the Mississippi.

[1]In October they arrived[a] at Mauville,* a fortified Indian town near the junction of the Alabama† and the Tombeckbee. Here was fought[a] one of the most bloody battles known in Indian warfare. [2]During a contest of nine hours several thousand Indians were slain and their village laid in ashes. **1540.**

a. Oct. 28.

1. *Mauville, and the events that occurred there.*

2. *Account of great battle near Mobile*

10. The loss of the Spaniards was also great. Many fell in battle, others died of their wounds,—they lost many of their horses, and all their baggage was consumed in the flames. [3]The situation of the Spaniards after the battle was truly deplorable, for nearly all were wounded, and, with their baggage, they had lost their supplies of food and medicine; but, fortunately for them, the Indian power had been so completely broken that their enemies were unable to offer them any farther molestation.

3. *Situation of the Spaniards after the battle.*

11. [4]While at Mauville, De Soto learned from the natives that the ships he had ordered had arrived at Pensacola.[b] But, fearing that his disheartened soldiers would desert him as soon as they had an opportunity of leaving the country, and mortified at his losses, he determined to send no tidings of himself until he had crowned his enterprise with success by discovering new regions of wealth. He therefore turned from the coast and again advanced[c] into the interior. His followers, accustomed to implicit obedience, obeyed the command of their leader without remonstrance.

4. *Information received by De Soto, and his next movements.*

b. Note, p. 122

c. Nov. 28

12. [5]The following winter[d] he passed in the country of the Chickasas, probably on the western banks of the Yazoo,‡ occupying an Indian village which had been deserted on his approach. Here the Indians attacked him at night, in the dead of winter, and burned the village; yet they were finally repulsed, but not till several Spaniards had fallen. In the burning of the village the Spaniards lost many of their horses, most of their swine, and the few remaining clothes which they had saved from the fires of Mauville. During the remainder of the winter they suffered much from the cold, and were almost constantly harassed by the savages.

d. 1540-41

1541.

5. *Situation of the Spaniards during their second winter, and losses suffered by them.*

13. [6]At the opening of spring the Spaniards resumed[e] their march, continuing their course to the northwest until they came to the Mississippi§ which they crossed,

6. *They cro the Missis sippi.*

e. May 5.

---

* Pronounced *Mo-veel*, whence Mobile derives its name.

† The *Alabama* river rises in the N.W. part of Georgia, and through most of its course is called the *Coosa*. The *Tombeckbee* rises in the N.E. part of Mississippi. The two unite 35 miles north from Mobile, in the State of Alabama, and through several channels empty into Mobile Bay

‡ The *Yazoo* river rises in the northern part of the State of Mississippi, and running southwest, enters the Mississippi river 65 miles north from Natchez.

§ The *Mississippi* river, which, in the Indian language, signifies the *Father of Waters*, rises 130 miles west from Lake Superior. Its source is Itasca Lake, in Iowa Territory. After a

ANALYSIS.

probably at the lowest Chickasaw bluff, one of the ancient crossing places, between the thirty-fourth and the thirty-fifth parallel of latitude. [1]Thence, after reaching the St. Francis,* they continued north until they arrived in the vicinity of New Madrid, in the southern part of the State of Missouri.

1. *Course then taken.*

14. [2]After traversing the country, during the summer, to the distance of two or three hundred miles west of the Mississippi, they passed the winter[a] on the banks of the Wachita.† [3]In the spring they passed down that river to the Mississippi, where De Soto was taken sick and died.[b] To conceal his death from the natives, his body, wrapped in a mantle, and placed in a rustic coffin, in the stillness of midnight, and in the presence of a few faithful followers, was silently sunk in the middle of the stream.

2. *The following summer and winter.*

a. 1541-2.

1542.

3. *Death of De Soto.*

b. May 31.

15. [4]De Soto had appointed his successor, under whom the remnant of the party now attempted to penetrate by land to Mexico. They wandered several months through the wilderness, traversing the western prairies, the hunting grounds of roving and warlike tribes, but hearing no tidings of white people, and finding their way obstructed by rugged mountains, they were constrained to retrace their steps. [5]In December they came upon the Mississippi a short distance above the mouth of the Red‡ river, and here they passed the winter,[c] during which time they constructed seven large boats, or brigantines. [6]In these they embarked on the twelfth of July, in the following year, and in seventeen days reached the Gulf of Mexico. Fearing to trust themselves far from land in their frail barks, they continued along the coast, and on the twentieth of September, 1543, the remnant of the party, half naked and famishing with hunger, arrived safely at a Spanish settlement near the mouth of the river Panuco[d] in Mexico.

4. *Attempt of the Spaniards to reach Mexico by land.*

5. *Their fourth winter.*

c. 1542-3.

1543.

6. *Their subsequent course until they reach Mexico.*

d. Note, p. 119.

---

winding course of more than 3000 miles in a southerly direction, it discharges its vast flood o. turbid waters into the Gulf of Mexico. It is navigable for steam-boats to the Falls of St. Anthony, more than 2000 miles from its mouth by the river's course. The Mississippi and its tributary streams drain a vast valley, extending from the Alleghanies to the Rocky Mountains, containing more than a million of square miles of the richest country in the world ;—a territory six times greater than the whole kingdom of France.

* The *St. Francis* river rises in Missouri, and running south, enters the Mississippi 60 miles north from the mouth of the Arkansas.

† The *Wachita* river rises in the western part of the State of Arkansas, and running S.E. receives many tributaries, and enters the Red river 30 miles from the junction of the latter with the Mississippi.

‡ The *Red* river rises on the confines of Texas, forms its northern boundary, and enters the Mississippi 150 miles N.W. from New Orleans

1497.

CHAPTER II.

NORTHERN AND EASTERN COASTS OF NORTH AMERICA, FROM THE DISCOVERY OF THE CONTINENT BY THE CABOTS, IN 1497, TO THE SETTLEMENT OF JAMESTOWN, IN VIRGINIA, IN 1607. 110 YEARS. 1. *Subject of Chapter II.*

DIVISIONS.

I. [2]*John and Sebastian Cabot.—II. Gaspar Cortereal.—III. Verrazani.—IV. James Cartier.*[a]*—V. Roberval.—VI. Ribault,*[b] *Laudonniere,*[c] *and Melendez.—VII. Gilbert, Raleigh, Grenville, &c.—VIII. Marquis de la Roche.*[d]*—IX. Bartholomew Gosnold.—X. De Monts.—XI. North and South Virginia.*

(Pronounced a. Car-te-āre. b. Re-bo. c. Lo-don-e-āre. d. Roash.)

2. *Divisions of Chapter II.*

I. JOHN AND SEBASTIAN CABOT.—1. [3]Shortly after the return of Columbus from his first voyage, John Cabot, a Venetian by birth, but then residing in England, believing that new lands might be discovered in the northwest, applied to Henry VII. for a commission of discovery. Under this commission[e] Cabot, taking with him his son Sebastian, then a young man, sailed from the port of Bristol* in the spring of 1497.

3. *Account of the voyage and discovery made by the Cabots.*

e. Dated March 5th, (O. S.) 1496.

1497.

2. On the 3d of July following he discovered land, which he called Prima Vista, or first seen, and which until recently was supposed to be the island of Newfoundland,[f] but which is now believed to have been the coast of Labrador.[f] After sailing south a short distance, and probably discovering the coast of Newfoundland, anxious to announce his success, Cabot returned to England without making any farther discovery.

f. Note, p. 111

1498.

3. [4]In 1498 Sebastian Cabot, with a company of three hundred men, made a second voyage, with the hope of finding a northwest passage to India. He explored the continent from Labrador to Virginia, and perhaps to the coast of Florida;[g] when want of provisions compelled him to return to England.

4. *The second voyage by Sebastian Cabot.*

g. Note, p. 113.

1500.

4. [5]He made several subsequent voyages to the American coast, and, in 1517, entered one of the straits which leads into Hudson's Bay. In 1526, having entered the service of Spain, he explored the River La Plata, and part of the coast of South America. Returning to England during the reign of Edward VI., he was made Grand

5 *Subsequent voyages of Cabot.*

* *Bristol*, a commercial city of England, next in importance to London and Liverpool, is on the River Avon, four miles distant from its entrance into the river Severn, where commences the Bristol Channel. It is 115 miles west from London and 140 south from Liverpool.

ANALYSIS.

Pilot of the kingdom, and received a pension for his services.

1. *Account of the voyage of Cortereal.*

II. Gaspar Cortereal.—1. [1]Soon after the successful voyage of the Cabots, which resulted in the discovery of North America, the king of Portugal, in the year 1500, despatched Gaspar Cortereal to the coast of America, on a voyage of discovery. After exploring the coast of Labrador[a] several hundred miles, in the vain hope of finding a passage to India,[b] Cortereal freighted his ships with more than fifty of the natives, whom, on his return,[c] he sold into slavery.

1500.
1501.
a. Note, p. 111.
b. Note, p. 118.
c. Aug.

2. *The second voyage.*

2. [2]Cortereal sailed on a second voyage, with a determination to pursue his discovery, and bring back a cargo of slaves. Not returning as soon as was expected, his brother sailed in search of him, but no accounts of either ever again reached Portugal.

3. *Newfoundland fisheries.*

4. *Account of the voyage of Verrazani.*

1524.

III. Verrazani.—1. [3]At an early period the fisheries of Newfoundland began to be visited by the French and the English, but the former attempted no discoveries in America until 1523. [4]In the latter part of this year Francis I. fitted out a squadron of four ships, the command of which he gave to John Verrazani, a Florentine navigator of great skill and celebrity. Soon after the vessels had sailed, three of them became so damaged in a storm that they were compelled to return; but Verrazani proceeded in a single vessel, with a determination to make new discoveries. Sailing[d] from Madeira,* in a westerly direction, after having encountered a terrible tempest, he reached[e] the coast of America, probably in the latitude of Wilmington.†

1524.
d. Jan. 27.
e. March.

5. *His first landing and intercourse with the natives.*

2. [5]After exploring the coast some distance north and south, without being able to find a harbor, he was obliged to send a boat on shore to open an intercourse with the natives. The savages at first fled, but soon recovering their confidence, they entered into an amicable traffic with the strangers.

6. *Events that occurred on the coast of New Jersey.*

3. [6]Proceeding north along the open coast of New Jersey, and no convenient landing-place being discovered, a sailor attempted to swim ashore through the surf; but, frightened by the numbers of the natives who thronged the beach, he endeavored to return, when a wave threw him terrified and exhausted upon the shore. He was, however, treated with great kindness; his clothes were

---

* The *Madeiras* are a cluster of islands north of the Canaries, 400 miles west from the coast of Morocco, and nearly 700 southwest from the Straits of Gibraltar. *Madeira*, the principal island, celebrated for its wines, is 54 miles long, and consists of a collection of lofty mountains, on the lower slopes of which vines are cultivated.

† *Wilmington.* (See Note and Map, p. 251.)

dried by the natives; and, when recovered from his fright and exhaustion, he was permitted to swim back to the vessel. **1524.**

4. [1]Landing again farther north, probably near the city of New York,* the voyagers, prompted by curiosity, kidnapped and carried away an Indian child. [2]It is supposed that Verrazani entered[a] the haven of Newport,† where he remained fifteen days. Here the natives were liberal, friendly, and confiding; and the country was the richest that had yet been seen.

1. *Near New York.*

a. May 1.

2. *Character of the natives in the vicinity of Newport.*

5. [3]Verrazani still proceeded north, and explored the coast as far as Newfoundland.[b] The natives of the northern regions were hostile and jealous, and would traffic only for weapons of iron or steel. [4]Verrazani gave to the whole region which he had discovered the name of NEW FRANCE; an appellation which was afterwards confined to Canada, and by which that country was known while it remained in the possession of the French.

3. *Farther north.*

b. Note, p. 111

4. *The name New France.*

IV. JAMES CARTIER.—1. [5]After an interval of ten years, another expedition was planned by the French; and James Cartier, a distinguished mariner of St. Malo,‡ was selected to conduct a voyage to Newfoundland. After having minutely surveyed[c] the northern coast of that island, he passed through the Straits of Belleisle into the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and entered the mouth of the river of the same name; but the weather becoming boisterous, and the season being far advanced, after erecting a cross,[d]—taking possession of the country in the name of the king of France,—and inducing two of the natives to accompany him, he set sail[e] on his return, and, in less than thirty days, entered[f] the harbor of St. Malo in safety. **1534.**

5. *Account of the first voyage of Cartier.*

c. June.

d. At the bay of Gaspee.

e. Aug. 19.

f. Sept. 15.

2. [6]In 1535 Cartier sailed[g] with three vessels, on a second voyage to Newfoundland, and entering the gulf on the day of St. Lawrence, he gave it the name of that martyr. Being informed by the two natives who had returned with him, that far up the stream which he had discovered to the westward, was a large town, the capital of the whole country, he sailed onwards, entered the river St. Lawrence, and, by means of his interpreters, opened a friendly communication with the natives. **1535.**

g. May 22.

6. *Of the second voyage.*

h. In Quebec harbor. See map, p. 280.

i. Sept. 29.

7. *Exploration of the St. Lawrence, and events that happened during the winter.*

3. [7]Leaving his ship safely moored,[h] Cartier proceeded[i] with the pinnace and two boats up the river, as far as the

---

* *New York.* (See Note and Map, p. 220.)

† *Newport.* (See Note, p. 215, and Map, p. 217.)

‡ *St Malo* is a small seaport town in the N. W. part of France, in the ancient province of Brittany, or Bretagne, 200 miles west from Paris. The town is on a rocky elevation called St. Aaron, surrounded by the sea at high water, but connected with the mainland by a causeway The inhabitants were early and extensively engaged in the Newfoundland cod fishery.

ANALYSIS.

a. Oct. 13.

b. 1535-6.

1536.

c. May 13.

1. *An act of treachery.*

d. May 16.

principal Indian settlement of Hochelaga, on the site of the present city of Montreal,* where he was received[a] in a friendly manner. Rejoining his ships, he passed the winter[b] where they were anchored; during which time twenty-five of his crew died of the scurvy, a malady until then unknown to Europeans.

4. [1]At the approach of spring, after having taken formal possession[c] of the country in the name of his sovereign, Cartier prepared to return. An act of treachery, at his departure,[d] justly destroyed the confidence which the natives had hitherto reposed in their guests. The Indian King, whose kind treatment of the French merited a more generous return, was decoyed on board one of the vessels and carried to France.

2. *Prevalent opinion with regard to the value of new countries.*

V. Roberval.—1. [2]Notwithstanding the advantages likely to result from founding colonies in America, the French government, adopting the then prevalent notion that no new countries were valuable except such as produced gold and silver, made no immediate attempts at colonization.

3. *Designs and titles of Roberval.*

1540.

e. Jan.

2. [3]At length a wealthy nobleman, the Lord of Roberval, requested permission to pursue the discovery and form a settlement. This the king readily granted, and Roberval received[e] the empty titles of Lord, Lieutenant-general, and Viceroy, of all the islands and countries hitherto discovered either by the French or the English.

4. *Account of the third voyage of Cartier.*

1541.

f. June 2.

3. [4]While Roberval was delayed in making extensive preparations for his intended settlement, Cartier, whose services could not be dispensed with, received a subordinate command, and, in 1541, sailed[f] with five ships already prepared. The Indian king had in the mean time died in France; and on the arrival of Cartier in the St. Lawrence, he was received by the natives with jealousy and distrust, which soon broke out into open hostilities.

5. *Fort erected.*

1542.

[5]The French then built for their defence, near the present site of Quebec,† a fort which they named Charlesbourg, where they passed the winter.

6. *Arrival of Roberval, and the failure of his schemes.*

4. [6]Roberval arrived at Newfoundland in June of the following year, with three ships, and emigrants for found-

MONTREAL AND VIC.

* *Montreal*, the largest town in Canada, is situated on the S. E. side of a fertile island of the same name about 30 miles long and 10 broad, inclosed by the divided channel of the St. Lawrence. The city is about 140 miles S. W. from Quebec, but farther by the course of the river.

† *Quebec*, a strongly fortified city of Canada, is situated on the N. W. side of the St. Lawrence, on a promontory formed by that river and the St. Charles. The city consists of the Upper and the Lower Town,—the latter on a narrow strip of land near the water's edge; and the former on a plain difficult of access, more than 200 feet higher. Cape Diamond, the most elevated point of the Upper Town, is 345 feet above the level of the river, and commands a grand view of an extensive tract of country. (See Map, p. 280.)

ing a colony; but a misunderstanding having arisen between him and Cartier, the latter secretly set sail for France. Roberval proceeded up the St. Lawrence to the place which Cartier had abandoned, where he erected two forts and passed a tedious winter.[a] After some unsuccessful attempts to discover a passage to the East Indies,[b] he brought his colony back to France, and the design of forming a settlement was abandoned. In 1549 Roberval again sailed on a voyage of discovery, but he was never again heard of.

1542.

a. 15,23.

b. Note, p. 113

1549.

VI. RIBAULT, LAUDONNIERE, AND MELENDEZ.—1. [1]Coligni, admiral of France, having long desired to establish in America a refuge for French Protestants, at length obtained a commission from the king for that purpose, and, in 1562, despatched[c] a squadron to Florida,[d] under the command of John Ribault. [2]Arriving on the coast in May, he discovered the St. Johns River, which he named the river of May; but the squadron continued north until it arrived at Port Royal* entrance, near the southern boundary of Carolina, where it was determined to establish the colony.

1. *Attempts of Coligni to form a settlement in America.*

1562.

c. Feb. 28.

d. Note, p. 113

2. *Discoveries made.*

2. [3]Here a fort was erected, and named Fort Charles, and twenty-six men were left to keep possession of the country, while Ribault returned[e] to France for farther emigrants and supplies. [4]The promised reinforcement not arriving, the colony began to despair of assistance; and, in the following spring, having constructed a rude brigantine, they embarked for home, but had nearly perished by famine, at sea, when they fell in with and were taken on board of an English vessel.

3. *Fort erected in Carolina.*

e. July.

4. *The settlement abandoned.*

1563.

3. [5]In 1564, through the influence of Coligni, another expedition was planned, and in July a colony was established on the river St. Johns,† and left under the command of Laudonniere. [6]Many of the emigrants, however, being dissolute and improvident, the supplies of food were wasted; and a party, under the pretence of desiring to escape from famine, were permitted to embark[f] for France; but no sooner had they departed than they commenced a career of piracy against the Spanish. The remnant were on the point of embarking for France, when Ribault arrived and assumed

1564.

5. *Second colony established.*

6. *Character and conduct of the colonists.*

f. Dec.

1565.

VICINITY OF PORT ROYAL.

* *Port Royal* is an island 12 miles in length, on the coast of South Carolina, on the east side of which is situated the town of Beaufort, 50 miles S. W. from Charleston. Between the island and the mainland is an excellent harbor.

† The *St. John's*, the principal river of Florida, rises in the eastern part of the territory, about 25 miles from the coast, and runs north, expanding into frequent lakes, until within 20 miles of its mouth, when it turns to the east, and falls into the Atlantic, 35 miles north from St. Augustine. (See Map next page.)

ANALYSIS.

the command, bringing supplies, and additional emigrants with their families.

a. Note, p. 113.

1. *Events that occurred when the Spaniards heard of the settlement.*

4. [1]Meanwhile news arrived in Spain that a company of French Protestants had settled in Florida,[a] within the Spanish territory, and Melendez, who had obtained the appointment of governor of the country, upon the condition of completing its conquest within three years, departed on his expedition, with the determination of speedily extirpating the heretics.

b. Sept. 7.

2. *Arrival of Melendez, and the founding of St. Augustine.*

c. Sept. 18.

5. [2]Early in September,[b] 1565, he came in sight of Florida, and soon discovering a part of the French fleet, gave them chase, but was unable to overtake them. On the seventeenth of September Melendez entered a beautiful harbor, and the next day,[c] after taking formal possession of the country, and proclaiming the king of Spain monarch of all North America, laid the foundations of St. Augustine.*

3. *The French fleet.*

6. [3]Soon after, the French fleet having put to sea with the design of attacking the Spaniards in the harbor of St. Augustine, and being overtaken by a furious storm, every ship was wrecked on the coast, and the French settlement was left in a defenceless state.

4. *Destruction of the French colony.*

d. Oct. 1.

[4]The Spaniards now made their way through the forests, and, surprising[d] the French fort, put to death all its inmates, save a few who fled into the woods, and who subsequently escaped on board two French ships which had remained in the harbor. Over the mangled remains of the French was placed the inscription, "We do this not as unto Frenchmen, but as unto heretics." The helpless shipwrecked men being soon discovered, although invited to rely on the clemency of Melendez, were all massacred, except a few Catholics and a few mechanics, who were reserved as slaves.

5. *Manner in which the French were avenged.*

e. 1567.

7. [5]Although the French court heard of this outrage with apathy, it did not long remain unavenged. De Gourgues, a soldier of Gascony,† having fitted[e] out three ships at his own expense, sur-

VICINITY OF ST. AUGUSTINE, AND ST. JOHN'S RIVER.

HARBOR OF ST. AUGUSTINE.

* *St. Augustine* is a town on the eastern coast of Florida, 350 miles north from the southern point of Florida, and 35 miles south from the mouth of the St. Johns River. It is situated on the S. side of a peninsula, having on the east Matanzas Sound, which separates it from Anastatia island. The city is low, but healthy and pleasant.

† *Gascony* was an ancient province in the southwest of France, lying chiefly between the Garonne and the Pyrenees. "The Gascons are a spirited and a fiery race, but their habit of exaggeration, in relating their exploits, has made the term *gasconade* proverbial."

prised two of the Spanish forts on the St. Johns river, early in 1568, and hung their garrisons on the trees, placing over them the inscription, "I do this not as unto Spaniards or mariners, but as unto traitors, robbers, and murderers." De Gourgues not being strong enough to maintain his position, hastily retreated,[a] and the Spaniards retained possession of the country. **1568.** a. May.

VII. GILBERT, RALEIGH, GRENVILLE, &c.—1. [1]In 1583 Sir Humphrey Gilbert, under a charter from Queen Elizabeth, sailed[b] with several vessels, with the design of forming a settlement in America; but a succession of disasters defeated the project, and, on the homeward voyage, the vessel in which Gilbert sailed was wrecked,[c] and all on board perished. **1583.** *1. Account of the voyage of Gilbert.* b. June. c. Sept.

2. [2]His brother-in-law, Sir Walter Raleigh, not disheartened by the fate of his relative, soon after obtained[d] for himself an ample patent, vesting him with almost unlimited powers, as lord proprietor, over all the lands which he should discover between the 33d and 40th degrees of north latitude. [3]Under this patent, in 1584, he despatched, for the American coast, two vessels under the command of Philip Amidas and Arthur Barlow. **1584.** *2. Patent of Raleigh.* d. April 4. *3. Voyage of Amidas and Barlow.*

3. Arriving on the coast of Carolina in the month of July, they visited the islands in Pamlico,* and Albemarle† Sound, took possession of the country in the name of the queen of England, and, after spending several weeks in trafficking with the natives, returned without attempting a settlement. [4]The glowing description which they gave of the beauty and fertility of the country, induced Elizabeth, who esteemed her reign signalized by the discovery of these regions, to bestow upon them the name of VIRGINIA, as a memorial that they had been discovered during the reign of a maiden queen. *4. Name that was given to the country and why*

4. [5]Encouraged by their report, Raleigh made active preparations to form a settlement; and, in the following year, 1585, despatched[e] a fleet of seven vessels under the command of Sir Richard Grenville, with Ralph Lane as governor of the intended colony. After some disasters on the coast, the fleet arrived at Roanoke,‡ an island **1585.** e. April 19. *5. Account of the first attempt to form a settlement at Roanoke.*

* *Pamlico Sound* is a large bay on the coast of N. Carolina, nearly a hundred miles long from N. E. to S. W., and from 15 to 25 miles broad. It is separated from the ocean throughout its whole length by a beach of sand hardly a mile wide, near the middle of which is the dangerous Cape Hatteras. Ocracock Inlet, 35 miles S. W. from Cape Hatteras, is the only entrance which admits ships of large burden.

† *Albemarle Sound* is north of and connects with Pamlico Sound, and is likewise separated from the ocean by a narrow sand beach. It is about 60 miles long from east to west, and from 4 to 15 miles wide.

‡ *Roanoke* is an island on the coast of North Carolina, between Pamlico and Albemarle sounds. The north point of the island is 5 miles west from the old Roanoke Inlet, which is now closed. The English fort and colony were at the north end of the island. (S.

ROANOKE I. AND VICINITY.

ANALYSIS.

in Albemarle Sound, whence, leaving the emigrants under Lane to establish the colony, Grenville returned[a] to England.

a. Sept.

1586.

1. *The conduct of the colonists.*

5. [1]The impatience of the colonists to acquire sudden wealth gave a wrong direction to their industry, and the cultivation of the earth was neglected, in the idle search after mines of gold and silver. Their treatment of the natives soon provoked hostilities:—their supplies of provisions, which they had hitherto received from the Indians, were withdrawn:—famine stared them in the face; and they were on the point of dispersing in quest of food, when Sir Francis Drake arrived[b] with a fleet from the West Indies.[c]

b. June.

c. Note, p. 112.

2. *Under what circumstances the settlement was abandoned.*

6. [2]He immediately devised measures for furnishing the colony with supplies; but a small vessel, laden with provisions, which was designed to be left for that purpose, being destroyed by a sudden storm, and the colonists becoming discouraged, he yielded to their unanimous request, and carried them back to England. Thus was the first English settlement abandoned,[d] after an existence of little less than a year.

d. June 29.

3. *Events that happened soon after the departure of the colony.*

e. July.

7. [3]A few days after the departure of the fleet, a vessel, despatched by Raleigh, arrived[e] with a supply of stores for the colony, but finding the settlement deserted, immediately returned. Scarcely had this vessel departed, when Sir Richard Grenville arrived with three ships. After searching in vain for the colony which he had planted, he likewise returned, leaving fifteen men on the Island of Roanoke to keep possession of the country.

1587.

4. *Account of the second attempt to form a settlement.*

8. [4]Notwithstanding the ill success of the attempts of Raleigh to establish a colony in his new territory, neither his hopes nor his resources were yet exhausted. Determining to plant an agricultural state, early in the following year he sent out a company of emigrants with their wives and families,—granted a charter of incorporation for the settlement, and established a municipal government for his intended "city of Raleigh."

f. Aug.

5. *Disappointment that happened to the emigrants on their arrival.*

6. *The return of Captain White.*

g. Sept. 6.

7. *Under what circumstances the colony was abandoned, and finally lost.*

9. [5]On the arrival[f] of the emigrants at Roanoke, where they expected to find the men whom Grenville had left, they found the fort which had been built there in ruins; the houses were deserted: and the bones of their former occupants were scattered over the plain. At the same place, however, they determined to establish the colony; and here they laid the foundations for their "city."

10. [6]Soon finding that they were destitute of many things which were essential to their comfort, their governor, Captain John White, sailed[g] for England, to obtain the necessary supplies. [7]On his arrival he found the

nation absorbed by the threats of a Spanish invasion; and the patrons of the new settlement were too much engaged in public measures to attend to a less important and remote object. Raleigh, however, in the following year, 1588, despatched[a] White with supplies, in two vessels; but the latter, desirous of a gainful voyage, ran in search of Spanish prizes; until, at length, one of his vessels was overpowered, boarded, and rifled, and both ships were compelled to return to England.

1587.

1588.

a. May 2.

11. Soon after, Raleigh assigned[b] his patent to a company of merchants in London; and it was not until 1590 that White was enabled to return[c] in search of the colony; and then the island of Roanoke was deserted. No traces of the emigrants could be found. The design of establishing a colony was abandoned, and the country was again left[d] to the undisturbed possession of the natives.

b. March 17, 1589.

1590.

c. Aug.

d. Sept.

VIII. MARQUIS DE LA ROCHE.—1. [1]In 1598, the Marquis de la Roche, a French nobleman, received from the king of France a commission for founding a French colony in America. Having equipped several vessels, he sailed with a considerable number of settlers, most of whom, however, he was obliged to draw from the prisons of Paris. On Sable* island, a barren spot near the coast of Nova Scotia, forty men were left to form a settlement.

1598.

1. *Attempt of De la Roche to form a settlement.*

2. [2]La Roche dying soon after his return, the colonists were neglected; and when, after seven years, a vessel was sent to inquire after them, only twelve of them were living. The dungeons from which they had been liberated were preferable to the hardships which they had suffered. The emaciated exiles were carried back to France, where they were kindly received by the king, who pardoned their crimes, and made them a liberal donation

2. *Fate of the colony.*

IX. BARTHOLOMEW GOSNOLD.—1. [3]In 1602, Bartholomew Gosnold sailed[e] from Falmouth,† England, and abandoning the circuitous route by the Canaries[f] and the West Indies,[g] made a direct voyage across the Atlantic, and in seven weeks reached[h] the American continent, probably near the northern extremity of Massachusetts Bay.‡ [4]Not finding a good harbor, and sailing southward, he discovered and landed[i] upon a promontory which he called

1602.

3. *Account of the voyage of Gosnold.*

e. April 5.

f. Note, p. 118

g. Note, p. 112

h. May.

4. *Discoveries made by him.*

i. May 24.

---

* *Sable* island is 90 miles S. E. from the eastern point of Nova Scotia.

† *Falmouth* is a seaport town at the entrance of the English Channel, near the southwestern extremity of England. It is 50 miles S. W. from Plymouth, has an excellent harbor, and a roadstead capable of receiving the largest fleets.

‡ *Massachusetts Bay* is a large bay on the eastern coast of Massachusetts, between the headlands of Cape Ann on the north, and Cape Cod on the south

ANALYSIS.

a. June 1-4.

1. *Attempt to form a settlement.*

b. June 28.

2. *Length of the voyage.*

3. *Account of the voyages and discoveries of Martin Pring.*

1603.

c. Note, p. 125.

d. April 20.

e. June.

4. *Grant of land to De Monts.*

f. Nov. 8.

g. Note, p. 220.

h. Note, p. 128.

1604.

i. March 7.

j. Note, p. 111.

5. *Voyage of De Monts.*

6. *His first winter.*

k. 1604-5.

1605.

7. *Settlement of Port Royal.*

Cape Cod.* Sailing thence, and pursuing his course along the coast, he discovered[a] several islands, one of which he named Elizabeth,† and another Martha's Vineyard.‡

2. [1]Here it was determined to leave a portion of the crew for the purpose of forming a settlement, and a storehouse and fort were accordingly erected; but distrust of the Indians, who began to show hostile intentions, and the despair of obtaining seasonable supplies, defeated the design, and the whole party embarked[b] for England. [2]The return occupied but five weeks, and the entire voyage only four months.

3. [3]Gosnold and his companions brought back so favorable reports of the regions visited, that, in the following year, a company of Bristol[c] merchants despatched[d] two small vessels, under the command of Martin Pring, for the purpose of exploring the country, and opening a traffic with the natives. Pring landed[e] on the coast of Maine,—discovered some of its principal rivers,—and examined the coast of Massachusetts as far as Martha's Vineyard. The whole voyage occupied but six months. In 1606, Pring repeated the voyage, and made a more accurate survey of Maine.

X. De Monts.—1. [4]In 1603, the king of France granted[f] to De Monts, a gentleman of distinction, the sovereignty of the country from the 40th to the 46th degree of north latitude; that is, from one degree south of New York city,[g] to one north of Montreal.[h] [5]Sailing[i] with two vessels, in the spring of 1604, he arrived at Nova Scotia[j] in May, and spent the summer in trafficking with the natives, and examining the coasts preparatory to a settlement.

2. [6]Selecting an island near the mouth of the river St. Croix,§ on the coast of New Brunswick, he there erected a fort and passed a rigorous winter,[k] his men suffering much from the want of suitable provisions. [7]In the following spring, 1605, De Monts removed to a place on the Bay of Fundy;‖ and here was formed the first permanent

* *Cape Cod*, thus named from the number of codfish taken there by its discoverer, is 50 miles S. E. from Boston.

† *Elizabeth Islands* are a group of 13 islands south of Buzzard's Bay, and from 20 to 30 miles E. and S. E. from Newport, Rhode Island. Nashawn, the largest, is 7 and a half miles long. Cattahunk, the one named by Gosnold Elizabeth Island, is two miles and a half long and three quarters of a mile broad.

‡ *Martha's Vineyard*, three or four miles S. E. from the Elizabeth Islands, is 19 miles in length from E. to W., and from 3 to 10 miles in width. The island called by Gosnold Martha's Vineyard is now called No Man's Land, a small island four or five miles south from Martha's Vineyard. When or why the name was changed is not known.

§ The *St. Croix* river, called by the Indians *Schoodic*, empties into Passamaquoddy Bay at the eastern extremity of Maine. It was the island of the same name, a few miles up the river, on which the French settled. By the treaty of 1783 the St. Croix was made the eastern boundary of the United States, but it was uncertain what river was the St. Croix until the remains of the French fort were discovered.

‖ The *Bay of Fundy*, remarkable for its high tides, lies between Nova Scotia and New Bruns-

French settlement in America. The settlement was named Port Royal,* and the whole country, embracing the present New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, and the adjacent islands, was called ACADIA. **1605.**

3. [1]In 1608, De Monts, although deprived of his former commission, having obtained from the king of France the grant of the monopoly of the fur trade on the river St. Lawrence, fitted out two vessels for the purpose of forming a settlement; but not finding it convenient to command in person, he placed them under Samuel Champlain, who had previously visited those regions. **1608.** *[1] Farther account of De Monts.*

4. [2]The expedition sailed[a] in April, and in June arrived[b] at Tadoussac, a barren spot at the mouth of the Saguenay† river, hitherto the chief seat of the traffic in furs. Thence Champlain continued to ascend the river until he had passed the Isle of Orleans,‡ when he selected[c] a commodious place for a settlement, on the site of the present city of Quebec,[d] and near the place where Cartier had passed the winter, and erected a fort in 1541. From this time is dated the first permanent settlement of the French in New France or Canada. *[2] Account of the voyage of Champlain, and the settlement of Quebec.* a. April 13. b. June 3. c. July 3. d. Note, p. 280.

XI. NORTH AND SOUTH VIRGINIA.—1. [3]In 1606 James the 1st, of England, claiming all that portion of North America which lies between the 34th and the 45th degrees of north latitude, embracing the country from Cape Fear§ to Halifax,‖ divided this territory into two nearly equal districts; the one, called NORTH VIRGINIA, extending from the 41st to the 45th degree; and the other, called SOUTH VIRGINIA, from the 34th to the 38th. **1606.** *[3] North Virginia and South Virginia.*

2. [4]The former he granted[e] to a company of "Knights, gentlemen, and merchants," of the west of England, called the *Plymouth Company;* and the latter to a company of "noblemen, gentlemen, and merchants," mostly resident in London, and called the *London Company.* The intermediate district, from the 38th to the 41st degree, was open to both companies; but neither was to form a settlement within one hundred miles of the other. e. April 20. *[4] To what companies these districts were granted.*

---

wick. It is nearly 200 miles in length from S. W. to N. E., and 75 miles across at its entrance, gradually narrowing towards the head of the bay. At the entrance the tide is of the ordinary height, about eight feet, but at the head of the bay it rises 60 feet, and is so rapid as often to overtake and sweep off animals feeding on the shore.

* *Port Royal* (now Annapolis), once the capital of French Acadia, is situated on the east bank of the river and bay of Annapolis, in the western part of Nova Scotia, a short distance from the Bay of Fundy. It has an excellent harbor, in which a thousand vessels might anchor in security.

† The *Saguenay* river empties into the St Lawrence from the north, 130 miles N. E from Quebec.

‡ The *Isle of Orleans* is a fertile island in the St. Lawrence, five miles below Quebec. It is about 25 miles long and 5 broad. (See Map, p. 280.)

§ *Cape Fear* is the southern point of Smith's Island, at the mouth of Cape Fear River, on the coast of N. Carolina, 150 miles N. E. from Charleston. (See Map, p. 251.)

‖ *Halifax*, the capital of Nova Scotia, is situated on the S. W. side of the Bay of Chebucto, which is on the S. E. coast of Nova Scotia. The town is 10 miles from the sea, and has an excellent harbor of 10 square miles. It is about 450 miles N. E. from Boston.

ANALYSIS.

1. *The governments of these districts.*

3. [1]The supreme government of each district was to be vested in a council residing in England, the members of which were to be appointed by the king, and to be removed at his pleasure. The local administration of the affairs of each colony was to be committed to a council residing within its limits, likewise to be appointed by the king, and to act conformably to his instructions. [2]The effects of these regulations were, that all executive and legislative powers were placed wholly in the hands of the king, and the colonists were deprived of the rights of self-government,—and the companies received nothing but a simple charter of incorporation for commercial purposes.

2. *Effects of these regulations.*

a. Aug. 22.
b. Nov. 22.

Attempts of Plymouth Company to examine the country.

4. [3]Soon after the grant, the Plymouth Company despatched[a] a vessel to examine the country; but before the voyage was completed she was captured[b] by the Spaniards. Another vessel was soon after sent out for the same purpose, which returned with so favorable an account of the country, that, in the following year, the company sent out a colony of a hundred planters under the command of George Popham.

1607.

c. Aug. 21.

Attempted settlement at Kennebec.

d. Dec. 15.

5. [4]They landed[c] at the mouth of the Kennebec,* where they erected a few rude cabins, a store-house, and some slight fortifications; after which, the vessels sailed[d] for England, leaving forty-five emigrants in the plantation, which was named St. George. The winter was intensely cold, and the sufferings of the colony, from famine and hardships, were extremely severe. They lost their store-house by fire, and their president by death; and, in the following year, abandoned the settlement and returned to England.

5. *Expedition sent out by the London Company.*

e. Dec. 30.
f. Note, p. 131.
g. Note, p. 118.
h. Note, p. 112.
i. May 6.

6. [5]Under the charter of the London Company, which alone succeeded, three small vessels, under the command of Captain Christopher Newport, sailed[e] for the American coast in December, 1606, designing to land and form a settlement at Roanoke.[f] Pursuing the old route by the Canaries,[g] and the West Indies,[h] Newport did not arrive until April; when a storm fortunately carried[i] him north of Roanoke into Chesapeake Bay.†

* The *Kennebec*, a river of Maine, west of the Penobscot, falls into the ocean 120 miles N. E. from Boston.—The place where the *Sagadahoc colony* (as it is usually called) passed the winter, is in the present town of Phippsburg, which is composed of a long narrow peninsula at the mouth of the Kennebec River, having the river on the east. *Hills Point*, a mile above the S. E. corner of the peninsula, was the site of the colony.

† The *Chesapeake Bay*, partly in Virginia, and partly in Maryland, is from 7 to 20 miles in width, 180 miles in length from N. to S., and 12 miles wide at its entrance, between Cape Charles on the N. and Cape Henry on the S

7. [1]Sailing along the southern shore, he soon entered a noble river which he named James River,* and, after passing about fifty miles above the mouth of the stream, through a delightful country, selected[a] a place for a settlement, which was named *Jamestown*.† Here was formed the first permanent settlement of the English in the New World,—one hundred and ten years after the discovery of the continent by Cabot, and forty one years from the settlement[b] of St. Augustine in Florida.

1606.

1. *Account of the settlement of Jamestown.*

a. May 23.

b. See p. 130.

* The *James River* rises in the Alleghany Mountains, passes through the Blue Ridge, and falls into the southern part of Chesapeake Bay. Its entrance into the bay is called *Hampton Roads*, having *Point Comfort* on the north, and Willoughby Point on the south.

† *Jamestown* is on the north side of James River, 30 miles from its mouth, and 8 miles S. S. W. from Williamsburg. The village is entirely deserted, with the exception of one or two old buildings, and is not found on modern maps. (See Map.)

APPENDIX

TO THE PERIOD OF VOYAGES AND DISCOVERIES.

ANALYSIS.

1. The preceding part of our history.

1. [1]In the preceding part of our history we have passed over a period of more than one hundred years, extending from the end of the fifteenth to the beginning of the seventeenth century As this portion consists of voyages and discoveries merely, made by navigators of different nations, with no unity of action or design, we find here little or nothing that can throw light on the subsequent character of the American people.

2. Importance of examining English history in connection with our own.

2. [2]In the meantime, however, our fathers, mostly of one nation were already on the stage of action in another land, and causes and influences were operating to plant them as colonists on this then wilderness coast, and to give them those types of individual and national character which they afterwards exhibited. To England therefore, the nation of our origin, we must look, if we would know who and what our fathers were, in what circumstances they had been placed, and what characters they had formed. We shall thus be enabled to enter upon our colonial history with a preparatory knowledge that will give it additional interest in our eyes, and give us more enlarged views of its importance. Let us then, for a while, go back to England our father-land; let us look at the social, the internal history of her people, and let us endeavor to catch the spirit of the age as we pass it in review before us.

3. Henry the Seventh.

4. Intelligence of the discovery of America.

5. Columbus deprived of the patronage of Henry.

3. [3]Henry the Seventh, the first king of the house of Tudor,* was on the throne of England at the time of the discovery of America. [4]When intelligence of that important event reached England, it excited there, as throughout Europe, feelings of surprise and admiration; but in England these feelings were mingled with the regret that accident alone had probably deprived that country of the honor which Spain had won. [5]For while Columbus, with little prospect of success, was soliciting aid from the courts of Portugal and Spain, to enable him to test the wisdom of his schemes, he sent his brother Bartholomew to solicit the patronage of the king of England, who received his propositions with the greatest favor. But Bartholomew having been taken prisoner by pirates on his voyage, and long detained in captivity, it was ascertained soon after his arrival that the plans of Columbus had already been sanctioned and adopted by Ferdinand and Isabella, when the patronage of Henry was no longer needed.

6. English part America

4. [6]Although the English were thus deprived of the honor of

---

* So called because he was a descendant from Edmund Tudor. Before his accession to the throne his title was Earl of Richmond. The five Tudor sovereigns were Henry VII., Henry VIII., Edward VI., Mary, and Elizabeth. On the death of the latter the throne came into the possession of the *Stuarts* in the following manner. Margaret, eldest daughter of Henry VII., married James Stuart, King of Scotland, whose title was James V. They left one daughter, the unfortunate Mary, Queen of Scots. On the death of Elizabeth the Tudor race was extinct, and James VI. of Scotland, son of Mary of Scots, was the nearest heir to the throne of England, to which he acceded with the title of *James I.*; the first English sovereign of the house of Stuarts.

As the Tudor princes were on the throne of England during the first period of our history, and as this Appendix frequently refers to them individually, it will be well for the reader to learn the order of their succession by referring to the Chart, page . This will also serve to fix in the mind a comparative view of the two histories—English and American.

ANALYSIS.

discovering America, they were the second nation to visit its shores, and the first that reached the continent itself. Little immediate benefit was derived to England from the two voyages of Cabot, except the foundation of a claim to the right of territorial property in the newly discovered regions. [1]Cabot would willingly have renewed his voyages under the patronage of Henry, but finding him so occupied with civil dissensions at home that he could not be interested in projects of colonial settlements abroad, he transferred his services to the Spaniards, by whom he was long reverenced for his superior skill in navigation.

and found their claims to territorial property.
1. Cabot.

5. [2]From the reign of Henry the Seventh to that of Elizabeth, the English appear to have had no fixed views of establishing colonies in America; and even the valuable fisheries which they had discovered on the coast of Newfoundland, were, for nearly a century, monopolized by the commercial rivalries of France, Spain, and Portugal, although under the acknowledged right of English jurisdiction.

2. Early relations of England with America.

6. [3]Henry the Seventh was a prince of considerable talents for public affairs, but exceedingly avaricious, and by nature a despot, although his sagacity generally led him to prefer pacific counsels. His power was more absolute than that of any previous monarch since the establishment of the Great Charter,* and although his reign was, on the whole, fortunate for the nation, yet the services which he rendered it were dictated by his views of private advantage, rather than by motives of public spirit and generosity—a signal instance in which the selfishness of a monarch has been made to contribute to the welfare of his subjects. [4]The state of England at this period requires from us more than a passing notice, for here commenced those changes in the condition of her people, the influences of which have affected all their subsequent history, and, consequently, essentially modified the character of our own.

3. Character and power of Henry the Seventh.

4. Importance of knowing the state of England at this period.

7. [5]At the accession of Henry, which was at the close of the long and bloody wars between the houses of York and Lancaster, which had ruined many of the nobility of the kingdom, there was no overshadowing aristocracy, as under former kings, sufficiently united and powerful to resist the encroachments of royal authority; and the great body of the people, so long the sport of contending factions, were willing to submit to usurpations, and even injuries, rather than plunge themselves anew into like miseries. [6]In the zeal of the king however to increase his own power and give it additional security, he unconsciously contributed to the advancement of the cause of popular liberty. In proportion as the power of the nobility had been divided and weakened by the former civil wars, so had the power of the *Feudal System*† been diminished,—a far more

5. State of England at the time of the accession of Henry the Seventh.

6. Policy of Henry the Seventh, and its effects.

---

* The Great Charter, [*Magna Charta,*] was obtained from King John, by the barons, arms in hand, in the year 1215. It limited and mitigated the severities of the feudal system, diminished the arbitrary powers of the monarch, and guarantied important liberties and privileges to all classes—the barons, clergy, and people. Yet it was not till after a long and bloody struggle, during many succeeding reigns, that the peaceable enjoyment of these rights was obtained The Great Charter was signed June 15th, 1215, at a place called Runnymede, on the banks of the River Thames, between Staines and Windsor.

† *Feudal System.* At the time of the Norman conquest, in the year 1066, the people of England, then called *Anglo-Saxons*, from their mixed English and Saxon origin, were divided into three classes:—the nobles or thanes; the freemen; and the villains, or slaves. The latter, however, a very numerous class, were of several kinds, and reduced to different degrees of servitude. Those who cultivated the land were transfered with it from one proprietor to another, and could not be removed from it. Others, taken in war, were the absolute property of their masters. The power of a master however over his slaves, was not unlimited among the Anglo-Saxons, as it was among their German ancestors. If a man maimed his slave the latter recovered his freedom; if he killed him he paid a fine to the king; but if the slave did

ANALYSIS.

odious instrument of tyranny than was ever wielded by a single despot. It was the selfish policy of Henry, as we shall learn, that did the world the valuable service of giving to this system its death-blow in England.

1. Former policy of the barons.

2. Nature of their power.

3. The course which Henry took to weaken it.

8. [1]It had long been a practice among the nobles, or barons, for each to engage as many men in his service as he was able, giving them badges or liveries, by which they were kept in readiness to assist him in all wars, insurrections, and riots, and even in bearing evidence for him in courts of justice. [2]The barons had thus established petty despotisms of the most obnoxious kind, hostile alike to the power of the sovereign, and to the administration of justice among the people. [3]Jealous of the power thus exercised by the barons, and which, at times, had been the severest restraint upon the royal prerogative, the king sought to weaken it by causing severe laws to be enacted against engaging retainers, and giving badges or liveries to any but the menial servants of the baron's household. An instance of the severity of the king in causing these laws to be rigidly enforced is thus related by Hume.

---

not die within a day after the injury, the offence went unpunished. These ranks and conditions of society constituted the feudal system of England in its immature state. The conquest by William of Normandy, however, was the cause of establishing this system in its more perfect state as it then existed on the continent.

William distributed large tracts of the lands of the kingdom among his Norman followers yet to all these grants a variety of obligations was annexed. Those Saxon landholders also, who were permitted to retain their estates, were required first to surrender them to the crown, and then to receive them again on the same conditions that were exacted of the Normans. The most important of these conditions was the requirement of military service; together with certain payments, of various kinds, which constituted a considerable part of the royal revenue. Upon the non-fulfilment of the conditions on which the lands were granted, they reverted back to the sovereign. In consequence of this change in the tenures by which land was held, it became a fundamental maxim in English law, "that the king is the universal lord and original proprietor of all the lands in his kingdom." The word *feud* signified "an estate in trust," hence the propriety of calling this the "Feudal System."

Nearly the same conditions which the sovereign exacted of the barons, the latter imposed upon their vassals or tenants, who were a species of subordinate landholders; so that a feudal baron was a king in miniature, and a barony was a little kingdom. These vassals or tenants were entitled to the services of the Anglo-Saxon serfs or villains, who were annexed to the land which they cultivated. These serfs, called also *predial* slaves, possessed an imperfect kind of property of their own, in their houses, furniture and gardens; and could not be removed from the land; but the household or domestic slaves, the same as with the Saxons, were the personal property of their masters, who sold them at their pleasure, and even exported them, as articles of commerce, into foreign countries. The numbers of this latter class were greatly increased by the Norman conquest, as those who were taken prisoners at the battle of Hastings, and in subsequent revolts, were reduced to slavery.

During the fifteenth century the number, both of domestic and predial slaves, was greatly diminished, as the proprietors of land found that their work was performed to better purpose, and even at less expense, by hired servants. The numerous wars, also, in which the English were engaged during this period, contributed to the decline of slavery, by obliging the nobles to put arms into the hands of their serfs and domestics. Yet so late as the reign of Henry the Eighth, we read of English slaves, the absolute property of their masters, although at this time it was a prevailing opinion among people of all ranks, that slavery was inconsistent with the spirit of Christianity, and the rights of humanity. In the year 1514 Henry the Eighth granted an act of manumission to two of his slaves and their families, for which he assigned this reason in the preamble: "That God had at first created all men equally free by nature, but that many had been reduced to slavery by the laws of men. We believe it therefore to be a pious act, and meritorious in the sight of God, to set certain of our slaves at liberty from their bondage." It is asserted by one who wrote during the reign of Edward the Sixth, that neither predial nor domestic slaves were then found in England, although the laws still admitted both. The most obnoxious features of the Feudal System had then become extinct; although the military tenures, with their troublesome appendages, were not abolished until 1672, in the reign of Charles the Second. Even now, some honorary services, required of the ancient barons, are retained at coronations, and on other public occasions. The effects of the feudal system are also still seen in the existence of some portions of that powerful landed aristocracy which it created; and also in many peculiarities in the government and laws of England. The latter cannot be understood with any degree of accuracy without a general acquaintance with the system in which they originated.

On this subject, see all the important Histories of England: also, Blackstone's Commentaries, Book II., chapters 4, 5, and 6

ANALYSIS.

1. Anecdote o the king's severity, illustrating his favorite policy.

9. [1]"The earl of Oxford, the king's favorite general, in whom he always placed great and deserved confidence, having splendidly entertained him at his castle of Heningham, was desirous of making a parade of his magnificence at the departure of his royal guest, and ordered all his retainers, with their liveries and badges, to be drawn up in two lines, that their appearance might be more gallant and splendid. 'My lord,' said the king, 'I have heard much of your hospitality; but the truth far exceeds the report. These handsome gentlemen and yeomen, whom I see on both sides of me, are, no doubt, your menial servants.' The earl smiled, and confessed that his fortune was too narrow for such magnificence. 'They are, most of them,' subjoined he, 'my retainers, who are come to do me service at this time, when they know I am honored with your majesty's presence.' The king started a little, and said, 'By my faith, my lord, I thank you for your good cheer, but I must not allow my laws to be broken in my sight. My attorney must speak with you.' Oxford* is said to have paid no less than fifteen thousand marks, as a composition for his offence."

2. Beneficial effects of the king's policy upon the character of the English people.

10. [2]Such severity was highly effectual in accomplishing its object, and the emulation of the barons, and their love of display and magnificence gradually took a new direction. Instead of vieing with each other in the number and power of their dependents or retainers, they now endeavored to excel in the splendor and elegance of their equipage, houses, and tables. The very luxuries in which they indulged thus gave encouragement to the arts; the manners of the nobility became more refined; and the common people, no longer maintained in vicious idleness by their superiors, were obliged to learn some calling or industry, and became useful both to themselves and to others. Such were some of the beneficial effects of a law originating merely in the monarch's jealousy and distrust of the power of the nobility.

3. Abolition of the ancient law of entails—new policy.

11. [3]Another severe but covert blow upon the power of the barons was the passage of a law,† giving to them the privilege of selling or otherwise disposing of their landed estates, which before were inalienable, and descended to the eldest son by the laws of primogeniture. [4]This liberty, not disagreeable to the nobles themselves, and highly pleasing to the commons, caused the vast fortunes of the former to be gradually dissipated, and the property and influence of the latter to be increased. The effects of this, and of the former law, gradually gave a new aspect to the condition of the common people, who began to rise, only with the waning power of the Feudal System.

4. Effects of this new policy.

5. The clergy. Religious sanctuaries; vain attempts of the king to have them abolished.

12. [5]With the clergy, however, Henry was not so successful. At that time all convents, monasteries, and sanctified places of worship, were general asylums, or places of refuge, to which criminals might escape, and be safe from the vengeance of the law. This was little less than allowing an absolute toleration of all kinds of vice; yet Henry, induced principally by a jealousy of the growing power and wealth of the monastic body, in vain exerted his influence with the pope to get these sanctuaries abolished. All that he could accomplish, was, that if thieves, robbers, and murderers, who had fled for refuge to the sanctuaries, should sally out

---

* Lingard, copying from Bacon, says, "The Earl of *Essex*." Lingard states the fine at 10,000 pounds.

† According to Hallam, this was merely the re-enactment of a law passed during the reign of Richard III. If so, the law had probably fallen into disuse, or doubts of its validity may have existed.

ANALYSIS.

and commit new offences, and escape a second time, they might then be taken and delivered up to justice.

1. "*Benefit of Clergy:*" *abridgments of, and also of the privileges of the sanctuary.*

13. [1]The *benefit of clergy*,* however, was somewhat abridged; the criminal, for the first offence being burned in the hand, with a letter denoting his crime; after which he was liable to be punished capitally if convicted a second time. But in the following reign, when the Reformation had extended over England, the benefit of clergy was denied to any under the degree of sub-deacon, and the privileges of the sanctuary, as places of refuge for criminals, were abolished; but it was long before all distinctions in the penal code were removed between the clergy and other subjects.

2. *Laws relative to murder.*

14. [2]The laws relative to murder, however, even at the commencement of the sixteenth century, exhibited a spirit little less enlightened than that found among some of the savage tribes of North America. Prosecutions for murder were then, as now, carried on in the name of the sovereign, yet a limited time was specified within which the prosecution was to be commenced, and often, in the interval, satisfaction was made by the criminal, to the friends or relatives of the person murdered, and the crime was suffered to go unpunished. But now, in all civilized nations, public prosecutors are appointed, whose duty it is to bring to justice all offenders against the peace and safety of society.

3. *State of morals, criminal statistics, &c.*

15. [3]Of the state of morals during this period, we may form some idea from the few criminal statistics that have been handed down to us, although the numbers are probably somewhat exaggerated. It is stated in an act of parliament passed in the third year of the reign of Henry the Eighth, that the number of prisoners in the kingdom, confined for debts and crimes, amounted to more than sixty thousand, an assertion which appears to us scarcely credible. One writer asserts that during the same reign, of thirty-eight years, seventy-two thousand persons were executed for theft and robbery—amounting to nearly two thousand a year.

4. *Gradual diminution of capital offences.*

5. *Ascribed to what.*

6. *The principle illustrated by these facts.*

16. [4]But we are told that during the latter part of the reign of Elizabeth the number punished capitally was less than four hundred in a year, and that, about the middle of the eighteenth century, this number had diminished to less than fifty. [5]This diminution is ascribed by Hume to the great improvement in morals since the reign of Henry the Eighth, caused chiefly, he asserts, by the increase of industry, and of the arts, which gave maintenance, and, what is of almost equal importance, occupation to the lower classes. [6]If these be facts, they afford an illustration of the principle, that, in an ignorant population, idleness and vice almost inseparably accompany each other.

7. *Foreign commerce: attempts to regulate the same.*

17. [7]During the time of Henry the Seventh, foreign commerce was carried on to little extent, although the king attempted to encourage it by laws regulating trade; yet so unwise were most of these laws that trade and industry were rather hurt than promoted by

* By "benefit of clergy," is understood a provision of law by which clergymen and others set apart to perform religious services were exempted from criminal process in the ordinary courts of law, and delivered over to the *ecclesiastical* judge; so that the *church* alone took cognizance of the offence. Under this regulation, a corrupt priesthood might be guilty of the greatest enormities, with no human power to bring the offenders to justice. Originally the benefit of clergy was allowed to those only who were of the *clerical* order; but in process of time it was extended to all who could read; such persons being accounted in those days of ignorance, worthy of belonging to the clerical order. A large number of petty offences were then punishable with death to those who were not entitled to plead the benefit of clergy. —(For the various modifications and changes which the laws relating to benefit of clergy have undergone, and their influences in forming the present penal code of England, see Blackstone Book IV, chap. xxviii.)

the care and attention bestowed upon them. Laws were made against the exportation of gold and silver, and against the exportation of horses: prices were affixed to woollen cloth, to caps and hats; and the wages of laborers were regulated by law. In the following reign these unjust regulations were greatly extended, although in many instances it was impossible to enforce them. Laws were made to prohibit luxury in apparel, but without much effect: a statute was enacted to fix the price of beef, pork, mutton, and veal: and laws were passed to prevent the people from abandoning tillage and throwing their lands into pasturage.

ANALYSIS.

Other impolitic laws.

18. [1]The apparent necessity for this latter law arose from the effects of former partial and unjust enactments, which forbade the exportation of grain and encouraged that of wool. So pernicious to the great mass of the people was this system, although lucrative to the large landholders, owing to the increasing demand for wool, that the beggary and diminished population of the poorer classes were its consequences. [2]During the reign of Edward VI., a law was made by which every one was prohibited from making cloth, unless he had served an apprenticeship of seven years. This law, after having occasioned the decay of the woollen manufactures, and the ruin of several towns, was repealed in the first year of the reign of Mary, but it is surprising that it was renewed during the reign of Elizabeth.

1. Law to prevent abandonment of tillage, and its effects.

2. Law relating to the manufacture of cloth

19. [3]The loan of capital for commercial uses was virtually prohibited by the severe laws which were enacted against taking interest for money, which was then denominated usury; all evasive contracts, by which profits could be made from the loan of money, were carefully guarded against, and even the profits of exchange were prohibited as savoring of usury. It was not until 1545, during the reign of Henry the Eighth, that the first legal interest was known in England, but so strong were the prejudices of the people against the law that it was repealed in the following reign of Edward the Sixth,* and not firmly established until 1571, in the reign of Elizabeth, when the legal rate of interest was fixed at ten per cent. [4]An evidence of the increasing advance of commercial prosperity is exhibited in the fact that in 1624 the rate of interest was reduced to eight per cent.; in 1672 to six per cent.; and finally, in 1714, the last year of the reign of queen Anne, it was reduced to five per cent.

3. Laws regulating the loan of money.

4. Reduction of the rate of interest.

20. [5]One of the greatest checks to industry during most of the sixteenth century was the erection of numerous corporations, which enacted laws for their own benefit without regard to the interests of the public, often confining particular manufactures, or branches of commerce, to particular towns or incorporated companies, and excluding the open country in general. [6]As an example of the powers which these monopolies had been allowed to exercise, it may be mentioned that the company of merchant adventurers in London, had, by their own authority, debarred all other merchants from trading to certain foreign ports, without the payment, from each individual, of nearly seventy pounds sterling for the privilege.

5. Injurious monopolies.

6. Example of the powers which they were allowed to exercise.

21. [7]Many cities of England then imposed tolls at their gates; and the cities of Gloucester and Worcester, situated on the river Severn, had assumed and long exercised the authority of exacting a tribute on the navigation of that stream. Some of these corpo

7. Various corporate powers of cities

* Notwithstanding the laws against usury money was secretly loaned at this time—the common rate of interest during the reign of Edward the Sixth being fourteen per cent.

ANALYSIS.

rate powers were abrogated by Henry VII., and, as a partial check to farther abuses, a law was enacted by parliament that corporations should not make any by-laws without the consent of three of the chief officers of state. But during the reign of Edward VI. the city corporations, which, by a former law, had been abolished so far as to admit the exercise of their peculiar trades beyond the city limits, were again closed, and every one who was not a member of the corporation was thus prohibited from following the trade or profession of his choice. Such restrictions would now be deemed exceedingly tyrannical under any government, and totally at variance with sound principles of political economy.

1. *Archery, national defence, fire-arms, &c.*

22. [1]Several laws passed during the reigns of Henry VII. and Henry VIII. for the encouragement of archery, show on what the defence of the kingdom was then thought to depend. Every man was required to have a bow; and targets, to exercise the skill of the archers, were ordered to be erected in every parish, on grounds set apart for shooting exercises. In the use of the bow the English excelled all other European nations. Fire-arms, smaller than cannon, were then unknown in Europe, although gunpowder had been used during two centuries.*

2. *The English navy in early times.*

23. [2]The beginning of the English navy dates back only to the time of Henry the Seventh. It is said that Henry himself expended fourteen thousand pounds in building one ship, called the *Great Harry*. Before that time, when the sovereign wanted a fleet, he had no expedient but to hire or press the ships of the merchants. Even Henry the Eighth, in order to fit out a navy, was obliged to hire ships from some of the German cities and Italian states.

3. *Greatly improved by Elizabeth.*

[3]But Elizabeth, early in her reign, put the navy upon a better footing, by building several ships of her own, and by encouraging the merchants to build large trading vessels, which, on occasion, were converted into ships of war. So greatly did Elizabeth increase the shipping of the kingdom, that she was styled by her subjects the "Restorer of naval glory, and Queen of the northern seas."

4. *Its condition at the death of Elizabeth.*

a. March 24, old style.

5. *Population of England.*

24. [4]Yet at the time of the death of Elizabeth, in 1603,[a] only two and a half centuries ago, the entire navy of England consisted of only forty-two vessels, and the number of guns only seven hundred and fifty-four. [5]But the population of England, and indeed of all European states at that period, was probably much less than at the present day. Although some writers assert that the population of England, in the reign of Elizabeth, amounted to two millions, yet Sir Edward Coke stated, in the house of commons, in 1621, that he had been employed, with chief-justice Popham, to take a survey of all the people of England, and that they found the entire population to amount to only nine hundred thousand. Two centuries later the entire population of England numbered more than twelve millions.

6. *Prerogatives of the sovereigns of England.*

25. [6]The nature and extent of the prerogatives claimed and exercised by the sovereigns of England during the first period of our history, present an interesting subject of inquiry; as, by compa-

* It is believed that gunpowder was known in China at a very early period, but it was invented in Europe in the year 1320 by Bartholomew Schwartz, a German monk. It is known, however, that the composition of gunpowder was described by Roger Bacon in a treatise written by him in 1280.—King Edward the Third made use of cannon at the battle of Cressy in 1346, and at the siege of Calais in 1347. The first use of shells thrown from mortars was in 1495, when Naples was besieged by Charles the Eighth of France. Muskets were first used at the siege of Rhege in 1521. At first muskets were very heavy—could not be used without a rest—and were fired by match-locks. Fire-locks were first used in England during the civil wars in the reign of Charles the First.

ANALYSIS.

ring them with the powers of succeeding princes, we are enabled to trace the gradual encroachments upon the kingly authority, and the corresponding advancement of civil rights, and liberal principles of government. [1]One of the most obnoxious instruments of tyranny during the whole of the sixteenth century was the court of the *Star Chamber*, an ancient court, founded on the principles of the common law, but the powers of which were increased by act of parliament, in the reign of Henry the Seventh, to a degree wholly incompatible with the liberties of the people.

1. Court of the "Star Chamber."

26. [2]This court, one of the highest in the realm, and entirely under the influence of the monarch, consisted of the privy counsellors of the king, together with two judges of the courts of common law, who decided cases without the intervention of a jury. Its character is well described by lord Clarendon, who says that "its power extended to the asserting of all proclamations and orders of state; to the vindicating of illegal commissions, and grants of monopolies; holding for honorable that which pleased, and for just that which profited; being a court of law to determine civil rights, and a court of revenue to enrich the treasury; enjoining obedience to arbitrary enactments, by fines and imprisonments; so that by its numerous aggressions on the liberties of the people, the very foundations of right were in danger of being destroyed."

2. Composition, jurisdiction, and character of this court

27. [3]Yet notwithstanding the arbitrary jurisdiction of this court, and the immense power it gave to the royal prerogative, it was long deemed a necessary appendage of the government, and, at a later day, its utility was highly extolled by such men as Lord Bacon. [4]This court continued, with gradually increasing authority, for more than a century after the reign of Henry the Seventh, when it was finally abolished in 1641, during the reign of Charles the First, to the general joy of the whole nation.

3. How viewed during a long period.

4. Its abolition.

28. [5]During the reign of Henry the Eighth, the royal prerogative was carried to its greatest excess, and its encroachments were legalized by an act of Parliament, which declared that the king's proclamation should have all the force of the most positive law. [6]Lingard, the Catholic historian of England, asserts, that, although at the time of the accession of Henry the Eighth there existed a spirit of freedom, which, on several occasions, defeated the arbitrary measures of the court, yet before the death of Henry, the king had grown into a despot, and the people had sunk into a nation of slaves.

5. The royal prerogative during the reign of Henry the Eighth.

6. Assertion made by Lingard in relation to this subject.

29. [7]The causes of this change are ascribed to the obsequiousness of the parliaments; the assumption, by the king, of ecclesiastical supremacy, as head of the church; and the servility of the two religious parties which divided the nation, each of which, jealous of the other, flattered the vanity of the king, submitted to his caprices, and became the obsequious slaves of his pleasure. [8]Edward the Sixth, Mary, and Elizabeth, possessed nearly the same legal powers as their father Henry the Eighth; but Elizabeth had the policy not to exert all the authority vested in the crown, unless for important purposes. All these sovereigns, however, exercised the most arbitrary power in religious matters, as will be seen when we come to the subject of the Reformation.

7. The causes of this change.

8. The prerogatives exercised by Edward the Sixth, Mary, and Elizabeth.

30. [9]It should be remembered that Henry the Seventh, Henry the Eighth, Edward the Sixth, Mary, and Elizabeth, were the five sovereigns of the house of Tudor. [10]A comparative view of the state of the English government during their reigns, embracing the whole of the sixteenth century, the first period of American history, may be gathered from the following statement.

9. The Tudor sovereigns.

10. Comparative view of England during their reigns.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Arbitrary power of these sovereigns.*

2. *Restraints upon former and subsequent princes.*

3. *Comparative liberties enjoyed by the people.*

31. [1]All the Tudor princes possessed little less than absolute power over the lives, liberty, and property of their subjects, because all laws were inferior to the royal prerogative, which might at any time be exerted, in a thousand different ways, to condemn the innocent or screen the guilty. [2]The sovereigns before the Tudor princes were restrained by the power of the barons; those after them by the power of the people, exercised through the House of Commons, a branch of the English Parliament. [3]Yet under the baronial aristocracy of the feudal system, the *people* had less liberty than under the arbitrary rule of the Tudor princes. This may reconcile the apparently conflicting statements, that Henry the Seventh, and the succeeding Tudor princes, greatly extended the powers of the royal prerogative, and yet that their reigns were more favorable than those of former princes to the liberties of the people. [4]An absolute aristocracy is even more dangerous to civil liberty than an absolute monarchy. The former is the aggregate power of many tyrants: the latter, the power of but one.

4. *Absolute aristocracy, and absolute monarchy.*

5. *Mode of living among the common people of England.*

6. "*Increase of luxuries.*"

7. "*Chimneys.*"

32. [5]Of the plain, or rather rude way of living among the people of England during the first period of our history, we shall give a sketch from an historian* who wrote during the reign of Elizabeth. [6]This writer, speaking of the increase of luxuries, and of the many good gifts for which they were indebted to the blessings of Providence, says: 'There are old men yet dwelling in the village where I remain, who have noted three things to be marvelously altered in England within their sound remembrance. [7]One is the multitude of chimneys lately erected; whereas, in their young days, there were not above two or three, if so many, in most country towns,—the fire being made against the wall, and the smoke escaping through an opening in the roof.

8. "*Amendment of lodgings.*"

33. [8]'The second thing to be noticed is the great amendment of lodgings; for, said they, our fathers, and we ourselves, have lain full oft upon straw pallets, with a light covering, and a good round log under our head, instead of a bolster. If the good man of the house had a mattrass, and a sack of chaff to rest his head upon, he thought himself as well lodged as the lord of the town. Pillows were thought meet only for sick women; and as for servants, if they had any sheet above them it was well, for seldom had they any under their bodies to keep them from the pricking straws that oft ran through the canvass on which they rested.

9. *Domestic utensils.*

34. [9]'The third thing of which our fathers tell us is the exchange of wooden platters for pewter, and wooden spoons for silver or tin. For so common were all sorts of wooden vessels in old time, that a man should hardly find four pieces of pewter in a good farmer's house.' [10]Again we are told that 'In times past men were contented to dwell in houses of willow, so that the use of the oak was, in a manner, dedicated wholly to churches, princes' palaces, navigation, &c.; but now willow is rejected, and nothing but oak any where regarded: and yet, see the change: for when our houses were built of willow, then had we oaken men; but now that our houses are come to be made of oak, our men are not only become willow, but a great many altogether of straw, which is a sore alteration.

10. "*Oaken houses,*" and "*willow men.*"

11. *Personal courage.*

12. *Bodily health impaired.*

35. [11]'In former times the courage of the owner was a sufficient defence to keep the house in safety; but now the assurance of the timber must defend the house from robbing. [12]Now have we many chimneys, and yet our tender bodies complain of rheums, colds and

* Hollingshed.

catarrhs: then our fires were made in recesses against the walls, and our heads did never ache. For as the smoke, in those days, was supposed to be a sufficient hardening for the timber of the house, so it was reputed a far better medicine to keep the good man and his family from rheumatisms and colds, wherewith, as then, very few were acquainted.' ANALYSIS.

36. [1]By another writer of the same period we are informed that 'the greatest part of the cities and good towns of England then consisted only of timber, cast over with thick clay, to keep out the wind.' The same author adds that the new houses of the nobility were commonly built of brick or stone. and that glass windows were then beginning to be used in England. The floors of the best houses were of clay, strewed with rushes. 1. *City buildings and houses of the nobility.*

37. [2]We are informed that, "in the time of Elizabeth, the nobility, gentry, and students, ordinarily dined at eleven, before noon, and supped at five. The merchants dined, and supped, seldom before twelve, at noon, and six, at night, especially in London. The husbandmen dined also at high noon, as they called it, and supped at seven or eight." We are told by Hume, that Froissard mentions waiting on the Duke of Lancaster at five o'clock in the afternoon, when the latter had supped. 2. *Hours of dining and supping.*

38. [3]In reference to the growing lateness of the hours in his time, Hume has the following remarks: "It is hard to tell, why, all over the world, as the age becomes more luxurious, the hours become later. Is it the crowd of amusements that push on the hours gradually? or are the people of fashion better pleased with the secrecy and silence of nocturnal hours, when the industrious vulgar are gone to rest? In rude ages men have but few amusements and occupations, but what daylight affords them." 3. *Growing lateness of the hours*

39. [4]It was not until near the end of the reign of Henry the Eighth that apricots, melons, and currants, were cultivated in England, when they were introduced from the island of Zante. [5]Hume asserts that salads, carrots, turnips, and other edible roots, were first introduced about the same period; but from other and older writers it appears that these fruits of the garden had been formerly known and cultivated, but afterwards neglected. [6]The first turkeys seen in Europe were imported from America by Cabot, on his return from his first voyage to the western world. 4. *Apricots, melons, and currants.* 5. *Edible roots.* 6. *Turkeys.*

40. [7]Some of the early colonists sent to Virginia by Raleigh, having contracted a relish for tobacco, an herb which the Indians esteemed their principal medicine, they brought a quantity of it to England, and taught the use of it to their countrymen. The use of the "filthy weed" soon became almost universal, creating a new appetite in human nature, and forming, eventually, an important branch of commerce between England and her American colonies. It is said that Queen Elizabeth herself, in the close of her life, became one of Raleigh's pupils in the accomplishment of smoking.* [8]The 7. *Tobacco in England.* 8. *The potato.*

---

* One day, as she was partaking this indulgence, Raleigh betted with her that he could ascertain the weight of the smoke that should issue in a given time from her majesty's mouth. For this purpose, he weighed first the tobacco, and afterwards the ashes left in the pipe, and assigned the difference as the weight of the smoke. The queen acknowledged that he had gained his bet; adding that she believed he was the only alchemist who had ever succeeded in turning smoke into gold.—Stith.

It appears that the smoking of tobacco, a custom first observed among the natives of America, was at first called by the whites, "drinking tobacco." Thus in the account given by the Plymouth people of their first conference with Massasoit, it is said, "behind his back hung a little bag of tobacco, which he drank, and gave us to drink." Among the records of the Plymouth colony for the year 1646 is found an entry, that a committee was appointed "to draw up an order concerning the disorderly drinking of tobacco."

ANALYSIS.

potato, one of the cheapest and most nourishing species of vegetable food, was first brought from America into Ireland in the year 1565; but it was fifty years later before this valuable root was much cultivated in England.

1. *Indebtedness of America to Europe.*

41. [1]Nor should we neglect to mention the indebtedness which America owes to Europe. Besides a race of civilized men, the former has received from the latter a breed of domestic animals. Oxen, horses, and sheep were unknown in America until they were introduced by the English, French, Dutch and Swedes, into their respective settlements. Bees were imported by the English. The Indians, who had never seen these insects before, gave them the name of *English flies*, and used to say to each other, when a swarm of bees appeared in the woods, "Brothers, it is time for us to depart, for the white people are coming."

2. *Pocket watches.*

3. *Coaches.*

4. *Carrying of the mail.*

42. [2]About the year 1577, during the reign of Elizabeth, pocket-watches were first brought into England from Germany. [3]Soon after, the use of coaches was introduced by the Earl of Arundel. Before this time, the queen, on public occasions, rode on horseback, behind her chamberlain. [4]The mail began to be regularly carried on a few routes, during the reign of Elizabeth, although but few post offices were established until 1635, in the reign of Charles the First,—fifteen years after the founding of the Plymouth colony.

5. *African slave trade.*

43. [5]It was during the reign of Elizabeth that the African slave trade was first introduced into England; and as that inhuman traffic afterwards entailed such evils upon our own country, it may not be uninteresting to give in this place a brief account of its origin.

6. *Early introduction of slaves into America by the Spaniards.*

[6]As early as 1503 a few African slaves were sent into the New World from the Portuguese settlements on the coast of Africa; and eight years later Ferdinand of Spain permitted their importation into the Spanish colonies in greater numbers, with the design of substituting their labor in the place of that of the less hardy natives of America. But on his death the regent, cardinal Ximenes, discarded this policy, and the traffic ceased.

7. *Policy of Las Casas, and its effects.*

44. [7]A few years later, after the death of the cardinal, the worthy Las Casas, the friend and benefactor of the Indian race, in the warmth of his zeal to save the aboriginal Americans from the yoke of bondage which his countrymen had imposed upon them, but not perceiving the iniquity of reducing one race of men to slavery, under the plea of thereby restoring liberty to another, urged upon his monarch, Charles the Fifth, then king of Spain, the importation of negroes into America, to supply the Spanish plantations. Unfortunately, the plan of Las Casas was adopted, and the trade in slaves between Africa and America was brought into a regular form by the royal sanction.

8. *Noble attempt of Charles the Fifth, how defeated*

a. 1556.

9. *The slave trade encouraged in France.*

10. *In England.*

45. [8]Charles however lived long enough to repent of what he had thus inconsiderately done, and in his later years he put a stop to the slave trade, by an order that all slaves in his American dominions should be free. This order was subsequently defeated by his voluntary surrender[a] of the crown to his son, and his retirement into a monastery; and under his successors the trade was carried on with renewed vigor. [9]Louis the Thirteenth of France, who at first opposed the slave trade from conscientious scruples, was finally induced to encourage it under the persuasion that the readiest way of converting the negroes was by transplanting them to the colonies; a plea by which all the early apologists of the slave trade attempted to vindicate its practice.* [10]In England, also, the

* It has since been urged in justification of this trade, that those made slaves were generally

iniquity of the traffic was at first concealed by similar pious pretences.

ANALYSIS

46. [1]The celebrated seaman, Sir John Hawkins, afterwards created admiral and treasurer of the British navy, was the first Englishman who engaged in the slave trade. Having conceived the project of transplanting Africans to America, he communicated his plan to several of his opulent countrymen, who, perceiving the vast emolument that might be derived from it, eagerly joined him in the enterprise. [2]In 1562 he sailed for Africa, and having reached Sierra Leone he began to traffic with the natives, in the usual articles of barter, taking occasion in the meantime to give them glowing descriptions of the country to which he was bound, and to contrast its beauty and fertility with the poverty and barrenness of their own land.

1. Commencement of the English branch of the slave trade.

2. First voyage of Hawkins.

47. [3]Finding that they listened to him with implicit belief, he assured them that if any of them were willing to accompany him on his voyage, they should partake of all the advantages of the beautiful country to which he would conduct them, as a recompense for the moderate and easy labor which they should give in return. Three hundred of these unsuspecting negroes, ensnared by the artifices of the white strangers, and captivated by the European ornaments and luxuries spread before them, were thus persuaded to consent to embark for Hispaniola.

3. The natives treacherously deceived by him.

48. [4]On the night previous to their departure they were attacked by a hostile tribe, and Hawkins, hastening to their assistance, repulsed the assailants, and took a number of them prisoners, whom he conveyed on board his vessels. [5]The next day he sailed with his mixed cargo, and during the voyage, treated his voluntary captives with much greater kindness than he exercised towards the others. [6]In Hispaniola he disposed of the whole cargo to great advantage, and endeavored to inculcate on the purchasers of the negroes the same distinction in the treatment of them, which he himself had observed. But he had now placed the Africans beyond his own supervision, and the Spaniards, who had paid for all at the same rate, treated all as slaves, without any distinction.

4. Night attack.

5. The voyage.

6. Disposition of the cargo.

49. [7]On the return[a] of Hawkins to England, the wealth which he brought with him excited universal interest and curiosity respecting the manner in which it had been obtained. [8]When it was known that he had been transporting Africans to America, there to become servants or slaves to the Spaniards, the public feeling was excited against the barbarity of the traffic, and Hawkins was summoned to give an account of his proceedings before the queen, who declared, that, "if any of the Africans had been carried away without their own consent, it would be detestable, and call down the vengeance of Heaven upon the undertakers." [9]Hawkins assured her that none of the natives had been carried away by him by compulsion, nor would be in future, except such as should be taken in war: and it appears, that he was able to convince her of the justice of his policy; declaring it an act of humanity to carry men from a worse condition to a better; from a

7. Return of Hawkins to England.

a In 1563.

8. Public excitement against the traffic.

9. How allayed.

---

captives taken in battle by their countrymen, and that by purchasing them the lives of so many human creatures were saved, who would otherwise have been sacrificed to the implacable revenge of the victors. But this assertion is refuted by the fact that it was not until long after the commencement of the African slave trade that we read of the different negro nations making war upon each other and selling their captives. Mr. Brue, principal director of the early French African slave Company, says, "The Europeans were far from desiring to act as peacemakers among the negroes; which would be acting contrary to their interests; since, the greater the wars, the more slaves were procured." Bozman, another writer, director of the Dutch Company, says, "One of the former directors gave large sums of money to the negroes of one nation, to induce them to attack some of the neighboring tribes."

ANALYSIS.

state of pagan barbarism, to the enjoyment of the blessings of Christianity and civilization.

1. *Second voyage of Hawkins.* a. Oct. 18, old style. 2. *Suspicion of the natives.* 3. *Resort to violent measures.*

50. [1]In 1564 Hawkins sailed[a] with two vessels on a second voyage to the coast of Africa, and during the passage an English ship of war joined the expedition. [2]On their arrival at Sierra Leone, the negroes were found shy and reserved. As none of their companions had returned from the first voyage, they began to suspect that the English had killed and devoured them, and no persuasion could induce a second company to embark. [3]The crew of the ship of war then proposed a resort to violent measures, and in this they were seconded by the sailors under the command of Hawkins himself, and notwithstanding the protestations of the latter, who cited the express commands of the queen, and appealed to the dictates of their own consciences against such lawless barbarity, they proceeded to put their purpose in execution; observing probably, no difference between the moral guilt of calm treachery and undisguised violence.

4. *The result.* 5. *Remarks.*

51. [4]After several attacks upon the natives, in which many lives were lost on both sides, the ships were at length freighted with cargoes of human beings, who were borne away to the Spanish colonies, and there, for no crime but the misfortune of their weakness, and with no other motive, or plea of excuse, than the avarice of their captors, were consigned to endless slavery.—[5]Such was the commencement of the English branch of the African slave trade. The infamy of its origin rests upon the Old World: the evils which it has entailed are at this day the shame and the disgrace of the New.

6. *Importance of the* REFORMATION

52. [6]The importance of the REFORMATION, as connected not only with the history of England at this period, but with the advance of civilization, true religion, and republican principles, throughout all subsequent history, requires from us some account of its origin, nature, and progress.

7. *Religious aspect of Europe at the beginning of the sixteenth century.* 8. *Last exercise of the pope's supreme temporal power.*

53. [7]At the beginning of the sixteenth century, not only was the Catholic religion the only religion known in England, but also throughout all Europe; and the Pope, as the head of that religion, had recently assumed to himself both spiritual and temporal power over all the kingdoms of the world,—granting the extreme regions of the earth to whomsoever he pleased. [8]The last exercise of his supreme power in worldly matters, was the granting to the king of Portugal all the countries to the eastward of Cape Non in Africa; and to the king of Spain, all the countries to the westward of that limit; an act which, according to some, completed in his person the character of *Antichrist*, or "that man of sin, sitting in the temple of God, and showing himself as God."*

9. *Universal supremacy of papacy; by whom first interrupted.*

54. [9]At this time there was no opposition to the papal power; all heresies had been suppressed—all heretics exterminated; and all Christendom was quietly reposing in a unity of faith, rites, and ceremonies, and supinely acquiescing in the numerous absurdities inculcated by the "head of the church," when, in 1517, a single individual dared to raise his voice against the reigning empire of superstition,—the power of which has ever since been declining. This person was MARTIN LUTHER, a man of high reputation for sanctity and learning, and then professor of theology at Wittemberg on the Elbe, in the electorate of Saxony, a province of Germany.

---

* 2 Thess. 2d, 3d, 4th.—At this period the popes feared no opposition to their authority in any respect; as the commotions of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, raised by the Albigenses, Waldenses, &c., had been entirely suppressed.

ANALYSIS.

1. *The occasion of Luther's first opposition.*

2. *His gradual progress in rejecting the doctrines and rites of popery.*

55. [1]The occasion that first enlisted Luther in opposition to the church of which he was a member, was the authorized sale of indulgences, or, a remission of the punishment due to sins; a scheme which the pope, Leo X.,* had adopted, as an expedient for replenishing an exhausted treasury. [2]Luther at first inveighed against the doctrine of indulgences only; still professing a high respect for the apostolic see, and implicit submission to its authority; but as he enlarged his observation and reading, and discovered new abuses and errors, he began to doubt of the Pope's divine authority; he rejected the doctrine of his infallibility;† gradually abolished the use of mass,‡ auricular confession,§ and the worship of images;‖ denied the doctrine of purgatory,¶ and opposed the fastings in the Romish church, monastic vows, and the celibacy of the clergy.

3. *Zuinglius.*

56. [3]In 1520, Zuinglius, a man not inferior in understanding and knowledge to Luther himself, raised the standard of reform in Switzerland, aiming his doctrines at once to the overthrow of the whole fabric of popery. [4]Notwithstanding the most strenuous efforts of the Pope and the Catholic clergy to resist the new faith, the minds of men were aroused from that lethargy in which they had so long slumbered, and Protestantism** spread rapidly into every kingdom of Europe.

4. *Spread of Protestantism.*

5. *Causes which favored the introduction of the Reformation in England.*

57. [5]In England the principles of the Reformation secretly gained many partisans, as there were still in that kingdom some remains of the Lollards,†† a sect whose doctrines resembled those of Luther. But another, and perhaps more important cause, which favored the Reformation in England, was the increased attention which then

---

* This pope was exceedingly profligate, and is known to have been a disbeliever in Christianity itself, which he called "*A very profitable fable for him and his predecessors.*"

† The doctrine of *infallibility*, is that of "entire exemption from liability to err."

‡ *Mass* consists of the ceremonies and prayers used in the Romish church at the celebration of the eucharist, or sacrament of the Lord's supper;—embracing the supposed consecration of the bread and wine into the real body and blood of Christ, and offering them, so *transubstantiated*, as an expiatory sacrifice for the living and the dead. *High mass* is that sung by the choir, and celebrated with the assistance of the priests: *low mass* is that in which the prayers are barely rehearsed without singing.

§ *Auricular confession*, in the Romish church, is a private acknowledgment of sins to a priest, with a view to their absolution or pardon.

‖ The *worship of images* crept into the Romish church very gradually. Its source originated, about the latter end of the fourth century, in the custom of admitting *pictures* of saints and martyrs into the churches; but, although then considered merely as ornaments, the practice met with very considerable opposition. About the beginning of the fifth century *images* were introduced, also by way of ornament; and it continued to be the doctrine of the church until the beginning of the seventh century, that they were to be used only as *helps to devotion*, and not as *objects of worship*. Protestant writers assert that images were *worshiped*, by the monks and the populace, as early as the beginning of the eighth century. The second commandment forbids the worship of images.

¶ The doctrine of *purgatory*, which has often been misrepresented, is believed in by Catholics as follows: 1st. All sins, however slight, will be punished hereafter, if not cancelled by repentance here. 2d. Those having the stains of the smaller sins only upon them at death, will not receive eternal punishment. 3d. But as none can be admitted into heaven who are not purified from all sins, both great and small, the Catholic believes that there must, of necessity, be some place or state, where souls, not irrecoverably lost, may be purified before their admittance into heaven. This state or place, though not professing to know what or where it is, the Catholic calls *purgatory*. 4th. He also believes that those that are in this place, being the living members of Jesus Christ, are relieved by the prayers of their fellow members here on earth, as also by alms and masses, offered up to God, for their souls.

** The name *Protestants* was first given in Germany to the adherents of Luther, because, in 1529, a number of the German princes, and thirteen imperial towns, *protested* against a decree of Charles V. and the diet of Spires. The term Protestants has since been applied to all who separate from the communion of the church of Rome.

†† The *Lollards* were a religious sect which arose in Germany about the beginning of the fourteenth century. They rejected the sacrifice of the mass, extreme unction, and penances for sin,—and in other respects, differed from the church of Rome. The followers of the reformer Wickliffe, who also lived in the fourteenth century, were sometimes termed Lollards.

ANALYSIS.

1. English literature at the time of the discovery of America.

began to be paid to classical learning. [1]At the time of the discovery of America, English literature was at a very low ebb, although in almost every former age some distinguished men had arisen to dispel the gloom by which they were surrounded, and render their names illustrious. At the period of which we are now speaking the art of printing had been but recently introduced into England: books were still scarce, instructors more so, and learning had not yet become the road to preferment. The nobility in general were illiterate, and despised rather than patronized learning and learned men. "It is enough," remarked one of them, "for noblemen's sons to wind their horn, and carry their hawk fair, and leave study and learning to the children of mean people."

2. Revival of learning about the commencement of the sixteenth century.

58. [2]About the commencement of the sixteenth century, however, learning began to revive in England. The study of the Latin language first excited public attention, and so diligently was it cultivated by the eminent men of the time, that the sixteenth century may very properly be called the Latin age Both Henry the Eighth, and his distinguished minister, cardinal Wolsey, were eminent patrons of classical learning.

3. The study of Greek opposed by the Catholic clergy.

[3]At first the study of Greek met with great opposition from the Catholic clergy, and when, in 1515, the celebrated Erasmus published a copy of the New Testament in the original, it was denounced with great bitterness as an impious and dangerous book, and as tending to make heretics of those who studied it.

4. Probable tendency of the study of the Bible in the Greek language.

59. [4]And, indeed, it probably had that tendency; for before this time very few of the English theologians had made the Bible their study; and even the professors of divinity read lectures only on certain select sentences from the Scriptures, or on topics expounded by the ancient schoolmen. But the study of the Bible aroused a spirit of inquiry even among the few who were able to read it in the original; as its real doctrines began to be known, the reputation of scholastic divinity diminished; the desire of deducing religious opinions from the word of God alone began to prevail; and thus the minds of men were somewhat prepared for the Reformation, even before Luther began his career in Germany.

5. Henry the Eighth writes against the doctrines of the Reformation.

6. "Defender of the Faith."

7. Progress of the controversy.

60. [5]But Henry the Eighth having been educated in a strict attachment to the church of Rome, and being informed that Luther spoke with contempt of the writings of Thomas Aquinas,* a teacher of theology, and the king's favorite author, he conceived so violent a prejudice against the reformer, that he wrote a book in Latin against the doctrines which he inculcated. [6]A copy of this work he sent to the pope, who, pleased with this token of Henry's religious zeal, conferred upon him the title of *defender of the faith;* an appellation still retained by the kings of England. [7]To Henry's book Luther replied with asperity, and the public were inclined to attribute to the latter the victory; while the controversy was only rendered more important by the distinction given it by the royal disputant.

8. Causes that operated to extend the principles of the Reformation.

61. [8]But still, causes were operating in England to extend the principles of the Reformation, and Henry himself was soon induced to lend his aid to their influence. Complaints of long standing against the usurpations of the ecclesiastics had been greatly increased by the spirit of inquiry induced by the Lutheran tenets, and the house of commons, finding the occasion favorable, passed

---

* *Thomas Aquinas*, styled the "Angelical doctor" a teacher of scholastic divinity in most of the universities of Italy, was born about the year 1225. He left an amazing number of writings, and his authority has always been of great importance in the schools of the Roman Catholics He was canonized as a saint by Pope John XXII. in the year 1323.

several bills for restraining the impositions of the clergy, and reducing their power and privileges; while the king, although abhorring all connection with the Lutherans, was gratified with an opportunity of humbling the papal power in his dominions, and showing its dependence on his authority.

ANALYSIS.

62. [1]Laws more and more stringent continued to be enacted and enforced against the ecclesiastics; long standing abuses, and oppressions of the ecclesiastical courts, were remedied; the revenues which the pope had received from England were greatly diminished; and a severe blow was struck against the papal power, by a confession,[a] extorted by Henry from the clergy of the realm, that "the king was the protector and the supreme head of the church and clergy of England."

1. Encroachments upon the ecclesiastical power.

a. 1531.

63. [2]Henry had married his brother's widow, and, either really entertaining, as he pretended, conscientious scruples about the validity of his marriage, or estranged from his consort by the charms of a new favorite, had appealed to the pope for a divorce; which the latter not granting, Henry, in defiance of his holiness, put away his first wife Catharine, and married[b] another, the afterwards unfortunate Anne Boleyn. The result of this affair was a final breach with the court of Rome, and a sentence of excommunication was passed[c] against the king.

2. Henry's marriages occasion a breach with the court of Rome.

b. Nov. 1532.

c. March, 1534.

64. [3]Soon after, Henry was declared[d] by parliament the only supreme head on earth of the church of England; the authority of the pope was formally abolished; and all tributes paid to him were declared illegal. [4]But although the king thus separated from the church of Rome, he professed to maintain the Catholic doctrine in its purity, and persecuted the reformers most violently; so that, while many were burned as heretics for denying the doctrines of Catholicism, others were executed for maintaining the supremacy of the pope. [5]As therefore the earnest adherents of both religions were equally persecuted and equally encouraged, both parties were induced to court the favor of the king, who was thus enabled to assume an absolute authority over the nation, and to impose upon it his own doctrines, as those of the only true church.

3. The king's supremacy in matters of religion.

d. Nov. 1534.

4. His religious principles and conduct.

5. Effects produced by the same.

65. [6]Still the ambiguity of the king's conduct served to promote a spirit of inquiry and innovation favorable to the progress of the Reformation. Jealous of the influence of the monks, Henry abolished the monasteries, and confiscated their immense revenues to his own uses; and the better to reconcile the people to the destruction of what had long been to them objects of the most profound veneration, the secret enormities of many of these institutions were made public.* [7]The most that could be urged in favor of these establishments was that they were a support to the poor; but, at the same time, they tended to encourage idleness and beggary.

6. The monasteries abolished.

7. View of these establishments.

66. [8]When news of these proceedings reached Rome, the most terrible fulminations were hurled by the pope against the king of England, whose soul was delivered over to the devil, and his dominions to the first invader; all leagues with Catholic princes were declared to be dissolved—his subjects were freed from their oaths of allegiance, and the nobility were commanded to take up arms against him. [9]But these missives, which, half a century before, would have hurled the monarch from his throne and made him a despised outcast among his people, were now utterly harmless. The papal supremacy was forever lost in England.

8. The proceedings of the pope against the king.

9. Effect of these missives.

* The measures of Henry in abolishing the monasteries were exceedingly arbitrary and oppressive. For a just view of these transactions the reader should compare the account given by Lingard, the able Catholic historian, with that by Hume.

ANALYSIS.

1. *General course pursued by the king.*

2. *The people ignorant of the Bible; controversy respecting its dissemination.*

67. [1]Few other events of importance connected with the Reformation, occurred during the reign of Henry, who, disregarding the opinions both of Catholics and Protestants, labored to make his own ever-changing doctrines the religion of the nation. [2]The Bible was then scarcely known to the great mass of the people, and although its general dissemination was strongly urged by the reformers, it was as zealously opposed by the adherents of popery The latter openly and strenuously maintained that the clergy should have the exclusive spiritual direction of the people, who, they said, were totally unqualified to choose their own principles, and that the Scriptures involved so much obscurity, and gave rise to so many difficulties, that it was a mockery to place them before the ignorant, who could not possibly make any proper use of them.

3. *Decree of 1540 respecting the Bible; repealed in 1542.*

4. *Reason of the repeal.*

68. [3]In 1540, however, a copy of the Bible in English was ordered to be suspended in every parish church for the use of the people, but two years later the king and parliament retracted even this concession, and prohibited all but gentlemen and merchants from perusing the Scriptures, and these persons were allowed to read them, only "so it be done quietly, and with good order." [4]The preamble to the act sets forth "that many seditious and ignorant persons had abused the liberty granted them of reading the Bible; and that great diversity of opinion, animosities, tumults, and schisms, had been occasioned by perverting the sense of the scriptures."

5. *The clergy generally ignorant of the Bible.*

[5]Even the clergy themselves were at this time wofully ignorant of that against which they declaimed so violently, as many of them, particularly those of Scotland, imagined the New Testament to have been composed by Luther, and asserted that the Old Testament alone was the word of God.

1547.

6. *The reformation carried forward and completed under Edward the Sixth.*

7. *A liturgy, and religious uniformity.*

69. [6]After the death of Henry the Eighth, which occurred in 1547, the restraints which he had laid upon the Protestants were removed, and they soon became the prevailing party. Edward the Sixth, the successor of Henry, being in his minority, the earl of Hertford, afterwards duke of Somerset, long a secret partisan of the reformers, was made protector of the realm; and under his direction, and that of archbishop Cranmer, the Reformation was carried forward and completed. [7]A liturgy was composed by a counsel of bishops and divines, and the parliament ordained a uniformity to be observed in all the rites and ceremonies of the church.

8. *Intolerance of the reformers.*

70. [8]The reformers, however, now that they were in the ascendant, disgraced their principles by the severity which they exercised towards those who differed from them. They thought themselves so certainly in the right, and the establishment of their religious views of such importance, that they would suffer no contradiction in regard to them; and they procured a commission to search after and examine all anabaptists,* heretics, and contemners of the book of common prayer, with authority to reclaim them if possible, but, if they should prove obstinate, to excommunicate and imprison them, and deliver them over to the civil authorities for punishment.

9. *The fate of Joan of Kent.*

71. [9]Among those found guilty under this commission was one Joan Boucher, commonly called Joan of Kent, who was condemned to be burned as a heretic for maintaining some metaphysical notions concerning the real nature of Christ. But the young king, who was of a mild and humane disposition, at first refused to sign the

* The term *Anabaptist* has been indiscriminately applied to Christians of very different principles and practices, including, however, all who maintain that baptism ought to be performed by immersion, and not administered before the age of discretion.

ANALYSIS.

death-warrant: but at last being overcome by the importunities of Cranmer, he reluctantly complied, though with tears in his eyes, declaring that if any wrong were done, the guilt should be on the head of those who persuaded him to it. [1]Some time after one Van Paris was condemned to death for Arianism.* He suffered with so much satisfaction that he hugged and caressed the fagots that were consuming him.

1. *Of Van Paris.*

1553.

72. [2]Edward VI., a prince of many excellent qualities, dying in the sixteenth year of his age, and in the seventh of his reign, Mary, often called the bloody Mary, daughter of Henry the Eighth by his first wife Catherine, ascended the throne. [3]Mary was a professed Catholic, yet before her accession she had agreed to maintain the reformed religion, and, even after, promised to tolerate those who differed from her, but she no sooner saw herself firmly established on the throne, than she resolved to restore the Catholic worship. The Catholic bishops and clergy who had been deprived of their sees during the former reign, were reinstated, and now triumphed in their turn.

2. *Death of Edward, and accession of Mary.*

3. *Religious principles, promises, and conduct of Mary.*

73. [4]On pretence of discouraging controversy, the queen, by her own arbitrary authority, forbade any to preach in public except those who should obtain her license, and to none but Catholics was that license given. [5]Many foreign Protestants, who had fled to England for protection during the former reign, and had even been invited by the government, being now threatened with persecution, took the first opportunity of leaving the kingdom, and many of the arts and manufactures, which they had successfully introduced, were thereby lost to the nation. [6]Parliament showed itself obsequious to the designs of the queen: all the statutes of the former reign were repealed by one vote; and the national religion was thus placed on the same footing in which it had been left at the death of Henry the Eighth.

4. *Exercise of arbitrary authority.*

5. *Many Protestants leave the kingdom.*

6. *Obsequiousness of parliament.*

74. [7]Soon after, the mass was restored, the pope's authority established, the former sanguinary laws against heretics were revived, and a bloody persecution followed, filling the land with scenes of horror, which long rendered the Catholic religion the object of general detestation. [8]The persecution began by the burning of John Rogers at Smithfield, a man eminent for virtue as well as for learning. This was quickly followed by the execution of Hooper, bishop of Gloucester; archbishop Cranmer; Ridley, bishop of London; Latimer, bishop of Worcester; and large numbers of the laity. [9]It was computed that during this persecution, two hundred and seventy-seven persons were burned at the stake, of whom fifty-five were women, and four were children; and large numbers, in addition, were punished by confiscations, fines, and imprisonments.†

7. *Complete reestablishment of popery, followed by a bloody persecution.*

8. *Rogers, Hooper, Cranmer, Ridley, and Latimer.*

9. *Number of victims.*

---

* The *Arians* were followers of Arius, a presbyter or elder of the church of Alexandria about the year 315. He maintained that Jesus Christ was the noblest of those beings whom God had created, but inferior to the Father, both in nature and dignity; and that the Holy Ghost was not God, but created by the power of the Son. In modern times the appellation *Arian* has been indiscriminately applied to all who reject the doctrine of the *Trinity*, and consider Jesus Christ as inferior and subordinate to the Father. The modern *Unitarians* are Arians.

† Yet this cruelty is much inferior to what was practised in other countries. "A great author computes that, in the Netherlands alone, from the time that the edict of Charles V. was promulgated against the Reformers, there had been fifty thousand persons hanged, beheaded, buried alive, or burned, on account of religion; and that in France the number had also been considerable. Yet in both countries, as the same author subjoins, the progress of the new opinions, instead of being checked, was rather forwarded by these persecutions."—Hume.

During the horrid massacre of St. Bartholomew, which occurred in France at a later period, in August, 1572, the victims were probably far more numerous. Hume computes, that in Paris alone ten thousand Protestants were slain in one day. Dr. Lingard thus speaks of the number of victims who fell in this barbarous transaction. "Of the number of the victims in all the

ANALYSIS.

1. *Conduct of the sufferers.*

[1]The sufferers generally bore their tortures with the most inflexible constancy, singing hymns in the midst of the flames, and glorying that they were found worthy of suffering martyrdom in the cause of Christ.

2. *Marriage of Mary, and establishment of a "court of inquisition."*

75. [2]Mary, having formed a marriage with Philip, a Catholic prince, son of the emperor of Spain, and heir to the Spanish throne, was next urged on by him and her own zeal to establish a court similar to the Spanish Inquisition. [3]Among the arbitrary powers exercised by this court, it issued a proclamation against books of heresy, treason, and sedition; declaring "that whosoever had any of these books, and did not presently burn them, without reading them, or showing them to any other person, should be esteemed rebels, and without any farther delay, be executed by martial law." [4]All ideas of civil and religious liberty, expressed either in word or action, seemed, at this period, to be extinguished in England; parliament made little or no opposition to the will of the queen, former statutes were disregarded by the royal prerogative, and the common law, deemed secondary to ecclesiastical enactments, was scarcely known to exist.

2. *Powers of this court.*

4. *Supremacy of the royal prerogative at this period.*

1558.

5. *Death of Mary, and accession of Elizabeth.*

6. *Change of religion, and wise policy of Elizabeth.*

76. [5]Mary died in 1558, unregretted by the nation, after a reign of little more than five years, and the princess Elizabeth, daughter of Henry the Eighth and the unfortunate Anne Boleyn, succeeded to the throne. [6]She had been brought up in the principles of the Reformation, and a general change of religion, from popery to Protestantism, almost immediately followed her accession. This was effected without any violence, tumult, or clamor; for the persecutions in the preceding reign had served only to give the whole nation an aversion to popery, and Elizabeth had the wisdom to adopt a course of moderation, and to restrain the zeal and acrimony of the most violent of her party.

7. *Reformation established, but still progressive.*

8. *Germs of new parties and principles seen in the new religion.*

77. [7]Thus the Reformation was firmly and finally established in England: but as the spirit of change is ever progressive, it did not stop with merely the overthrow of one religion and the substitution of another. [8]Other important principles, arising out of the new religion itself, had already begun to be seriously agitated among its supporters; and it is to this period, the age of Elizabeth, that we can trace the germs of those parties and principles which afterwards exerted an important influence on our own history.

9. *Antipathy against those relics of Catholicism retained by Episcopacy.*

10. *Hooper's opposition to the Episcopal habit.*

11. *Objections of others.*

12. *Remonstrance of the Scottish clergy.*

78. [9]Some among the early reformers, even during the reign of Edward VI., had conceived a violent antipathy to all the former practices of the Catholic church, many of which the early Reformation had retained. [10]Even Hooper, who afterwards suffered for his religion, when promoted to the office of bishop at first refused to be consecrated in the Episcopal habit, which had formerly, he said, been abused by superstition, and which was thereby rendered unbecoming a true Christian. [11]Objections of this nature were made by the most zealous to every form and ceremonial of Catholic worship that had been retained by the Church of England. [12]The same spirit dictated the national remonstrance, made afterwards by the Scottish clergy, in which are found the following words. "What has Christ Jesus to do with Belial? What has darkness to do with light? If surplices, corner caps, and tippets, have been badges of idolaters, in the very act of idolatry, why should the

towns it is impossible to speak with certainty. Among the Huguenot writers Perifix reckons 100,000, Sully 70,000, Thuanus 30,000, La Popelinière 20,000, the reformed martyrologist 15,000, and Mason 10,000." The estimate of Lingard himself, however, notwithstanding these statements, is less than 2,000.

preacher of Christian liberty, and the open rebuker of all superstition, partake of the dregs of the Romish beast?"

ANALYSIS.

79. [1]After the accession of Elizabeth, this spirit rapidly increased and the friends of the Reformation became radically divided among themselves, forming the two active parties of the country—the one party, the advocates of the church system as already established; and the other, then first called the *Puritan* party, desiring to reform the established religion still more.

1. The two parties among the reformers after the accession of Elizabeth.

80. [2]The great points of agreement among the members of the established church system, consisted in rejecting the doctrine of papal supremacy, and in asserting the paramount national authority in matters both spiritual and temporal, and in recognizing the king or queen as the head of the church. [3]This was, at its origin, the liberal, or democratic system, and at first united, in its support, all lovers of liberty in thought and action—all those to whom the rigid discipline of Catholic ceremonials and Catholic supervision was irksome. [4]The members of this party, although differing greatly on minor subjects, were generally disposed to rest satisfied with the changes already made in faith and worship, thinking it a matter of justice and policy, not to separate more widely than was necessary from the ancient sytem; while the bishops and clergy foresaw, in any farther attempts at innovation, a tendency to strip them of all their professional authority and dignity.

2. Points of agreement among members of the established church.

3. This system at its origin.

4. Why the established church party was disposed to rest satisfied with the changes already made.

81. [5]The establishment of these medium principles between popery on the one hand, and puritanism on the other, is probably attributable to Elizabeth herself, for it is asserted by Hallam, that at the accession of that princess to the throne, all the most eminent reformers, or Protestants, in the kingdom, were in favor of abolishing the use of the surplice, and what were called popish ceremonies, and that the queen alone was the cause of retaining those observances, which finally led to a separation from the Church of England.

5. To whom these medium principles are attributed.

82. [6]The *Puritan* party, professing to derive their doctrines directly from the Scriptures, were wholly dissatisfied with the old church system, which they denounced as rotten, depraved, and defiled by human inventions, and they wished it to undergo a thorough reform, to abandon everything of man's device, and to adopt nothing, either in doctrine or discipline, which was not directly authorized by the word of God. [7]Exceedingly ardent in their feelings, zealous in their principles, abhorring all formalism, as destructive of the very elements of piety, and rejecting the regal as well as papal supremacy, they demanded, in place of the liturgical service, an effective preaching of the gospel, more of the substance of religion, instead of what they denominated its shadow; and so convinced were they of the justness of their views and the reasonableness of their demands, that they would listen to no considerations which pleaded for compromise or for delay.

6. Professions and wishes of the Puritan party.

7. Character of this party.

1565.

83. [8]The unsettled state of exterior religious observances continued until 1565, when Elizabeth, or perhaps the archbishop by her sanction, took violent measures for putting a stop to all irregularities in the church service. Those of the puritan clergy who would not conform to the use of the clerical vestments, and other matters of discipline, were suspended from the ministry, and their livings, or salaries, taken from them. [9]The puritans then began to form separate conventicles in secret, for they were unable to obtain, apart from the regular church, a peaceable toleration of their particular worship. Yet their separate assemblages were spied out and invaded[a] by the hirelings of government, and those who frequented them sent to prison.

8. Attempts to produce conformity in religious worship.

9. Treatment of the Puritans.

a. 1567.

ANALYSIS.

1. The Puritans take higher grounds.

84. [1]Hitherto the retention of popish ceremonies in the church had been the only avowed cause of complaint with the puritans, but when they found themselves persecuted with the most unsparing rigor, instead of relaxing in their opposition, they began to take higher grounds—to claim an ecclesiastical independence of the English church—to question the authority that oppressed them—and, with Cartwright, one of their most able leaders, to inculcate the *unlawfulness* of any form of church government, except what the apostles had instituted, namely, the presbyterian.

2. Political aspect of the controversy.

85. [2]Thus a new feature in the controversy was developed, in the introduction of political principles; and, in the language of Hallam, "the battle was no longer to be fought for a tippet and a surplice, but for the whole ecclesiastical hierarchy, interwoven, as it was, with the temporal constitution of England." The principles of civil liberty that thus began to be promulgated, so totally incompatible with the exorbitant prerogatives hitherto exercised by the English sovereigns, rendered the puritans, in a peculiar manner, the objects of the queen's aversion.

3. Puritanism in parliament.

86. [3]Some of the puritan leaders in Parliament having taken occasion to allude, although in terms of great mildness, to the restraints which the queen had imposed upon freedom of speech in the house, especially in ecclesiastical matters, they were imprisoned for their boldness, and told that it did not become them to speak upon subjects which the queen had prohibited from their consideration. And when a bill for the amendment of the liturgy was introduced into Parliament by a puritan member, it was declared to be an encroachment on the royal prerogative, and a temerity which was not to be tolerated. [4]As head of the church, Elizabeth declared that she was fully empowered, by her prerogative alone, to decide all questions that might arise with regard to doctrine, discipline, or worship. And, in fact, the power of Parliament, at this time, extended little farther than to the regulation of the internal police of the kingdom: it did not presume to meddle with any of the great questions of government, peace and war, or foreign negotiations.

4. Pretensions of the queen and powers of parliament.

5. The "Brownists," "Separatists," or "Independents."

87. [5]The most rigid of the early puritans were a sect called *Brownists*, from Robert Brown, a young clergyman of an impetuous and illiberal spirit, who, in 1586, was at the head of a party of zealots or "Separatists," who were vehement for a total separation from the established church. The Brownists were also known as "Independents," because they renounced communion, not only with the church of England, but with every other Protestant church that was not constructed on the same model as their own. [6]Against this sect the whole fury of the ecclesiastical law was directed. Brown himself exulted in the boast that he had been committed to thirty-two prisons, in some of which he could not see his hand at noon-day. Several of his followers perished by the hand of the executioner, great numbers were imprisoned, and numerous families were reduced to poverty by heavy fines.

6. Their treatment.

7. Severe laws against the Puritans, and their effects.

88. [7]Yet these severities tended only to increase the numbers and the zeal of these sectaries, and although Elizabeth, even with tears, bewailed their misfortunes, yet she caused laws still more severe to be enacted against them, in the hope of finally overcoming their obstinacy. In 1593 a law was passed, declaring that any person, over sixteen years of age, who obstinately refused during the space of a month, to attend public worship in the established church, should be committed to prison; that if he persisted three months in his refusal he should abjure the realm; and if he either refused

this condition, or returned after banishment, he should suffer death. This act contributed as little as former laws to check the growth of Puritan principles, although it induced greater secrecy in their promulgation.

ANALYSIS.

89. [1]On the accession of James the First to the throne, in 1603, the ecclesiastical policy of Elizabeth was adopted, and even increased in rigor; so that, during the second year of the reign of James, three hundred Puritan ministers were deprived of their livings, and imprisoned or banished. [2]Thus harassed and oppressed in England, an emigration to some foreign country seemed the only means of safety to the Puritans, and they began to retire in considerable numbers to the Protestant states of Europe.

1. Treatment of the Puritans under James the First.

2. They resolve on emigration.

90. [3]Among those who afterwards became prominent in our history, as the founders of New England, were several members of a Puritan congregation in the north of England, which chose for its pastor John Robinson. The members of this congregation, extremely harassed by a rigid enforcement of the laws against dissenters, directed their views first to Holland, the only European state in which a free toleration of religious opinions was then admitted. But after leaving their homes at a sacrifice of much of their property, they found the ports of their country closed against them, and they were absolutely forbidden to depart.

3. Robinson's congregation.

Forbidden to emigrate.

91. [4]After numerous disappointments, being betrayed by those in whom they had trusted for concealment and protection, harassed and plundered by the officers of the law, and often exposed as a laughing spectacle to their enemies; in small parties they finally succeeded in reaching[a] Amsterdam, where they found a Puritan congregation of their countrymen already established. [5]After one year spent at Amsterdam, the members of the church of Robinson removed to Leyden, where they continued eleven years, during which time their numbers had increased, by additions from England, to three hundred communicants.

4. After numerous trials reaches Amsterdam.

a. 1608.

5. Removes to Leyden.

92. [6]When Robinson first went to Holland he was one of the most rigid separatists from the church of England; but after a few years farther experience he became more moderate and charitable in his sentiments, allowing pious members of the Episcopal church, and of other churches, to communicate with him; declaring that he separated from no denomination of Christians, but from the corruptions of all others. [7]His liberal views gave offence to the rigid Brownists of Amsterdam, so that the latter would scarcely hold communion with the church at Leyden. The church at Amsterdam here became known as the *Independent* church, and that at Leyden, under the charge of Robinson, as the *Congregational* church. [8]Most of the latter emigrated to America in 1620, where they laid the foundation of the Plymouth colony. The church which they there planted has been the prevailing church in New England to the present day.

6. Character of Robinson.

7. The Independent, and the Congregational Church.

8. Members of the latter remove to America.

93. [9]But the Puritans brought with them, and established in the New World, important principles of civil liberty, which it would be unjust here to pass unnoticed. [10]Before they effected a landing at Plymouth, they embodied these principles in a brief, simple, but comprehensive *compact*, which was to form the basis of their future government. In this instrument we have exhibited a perfect equality of rights and privileges. In the cabin of the Mayflower, the pilgrims met together as equals and as freemen, and, in the name of the God whom they worshipped, subscribed the first charter of liberty established in the New World—declaring themselves the source of all the laws that were to be exercised over them—and

9. Political principles of the Puritans.

10. The "solemn contract" entered into by the pilgrims at Plymouth.

ANALYSIS.

promising to the same due subjection and obedience. Here was laid the foundation of American liberty.

1. Indebtedness of England to the Puritans.

94. [1]That England herself is greatly indebted to the Puritans for the present free government which she enjoys, we have the voluntary admission of her most able historians. It is remarked by Hume, that "so absolute indeed was the authority of the crown during the reign of Elizabeth, that the precious spark of liberty had been kindled, and was preserved by the puritans alone;" and that "it was to this sect that the English owe the whole freedom of their constitution." Again Hume remarks, "It was only during the next generation that the noble principles of liberty took root, and spreading themselves under the shelter of puritanical absurdities, became fashionable among the people."

2. Other Puritan colonies of New England. Intolerance of the Puritans.

95. [2]The other New England colonies, planted by puritans also, adopted principles of free government similar to those of the Plymouth colony; and if they sometimes fell into the prevailing error of the times, of persecuting those who differed from them in religious sentiments, it was because their entire government was but a system of ecclesiastical polity, and they had not yet learned the necessity of any government separate from that of the church. [3]They came to plant, on principles of equality to all of similar religious views with themselves, a *free* church in the wilderness; and the toleration, in their midst, of those entertaining different religious sentiments, was deemed by them but as the toleration of heresies in the church. [4]It was reserved for the wisdom of a later day to complete the good work which the Puritans began, and by separating "the church" from "the state," to extend toleration and protection to all, without the imputation of inculcating, by the authority of law, what might be deemed heresies by any.

3. Their object in emigrating to America.

4. The errors into which they fell, how corrected.

5. Our duty in relation to the history of the Puritans.

96. [5]While therefore we concede to the Puritans of New England the adoption of principles of government greatly in advance of the age in which they lived, it is our duty to point out, also, the errors into which they fell, and the sad consequences that resulted from them. [6]A few years later, the Quakers of Pennsylvania, *also a puritan sect*, but persecuted even among their brethren, made a great advance in those republican principles which succeeding time has perfected, to the glory and happiness of our nation, and the admiration of the world. [7]Other American colonies, and individuals, at different periods, by resisting arbitrary encroachments of power, lent their aid to the cause of freedom.

6. The Quakers of Pennsylvania.

7. Other American colonies.

8. What forms the most instructive portion of our history.

97. [8]To follow the advance of this cause through all the stages of its progress,—from its feeble beginnings, when the foot of the oppressor would have crushed it, had he not despised its weakness,—through long periods of darkness, enlivened by only an occasional glimmering of hope, until it shone forth triumphant in that redemption from foreign bondage, which our fathers of the Revolution purchased for us, forms the most interesting and the most instructive portion of our history. [9]And while we are perusing our early annals, let us constantly bear in mind, that it is not merely with the details of casual events, of wars and sufferings, wrongs and retaliations, ineffective in their influences, that we are engaged; but that we are studying a nation's progress from infancy to manhood—and that we are tracing the growth of those principles of civil and religious liberty, which have rendered us one of the happiest, most enlightened, and most powerful of the nations of the earth.

9. What we should keep constantly in view in studying our early history.

POCAHONTAS SAVING THE LIFE OF CAPTAIN SMITH. (See p. 164.)

PART II.

1606.

[1]EARLY SETTLEMENTS AND COLONIAL HISTORY;

1. *Subject of Part II.*

EXTENDING FROM THE SETTLEMENT OF JAMESTOWN, IN 1607, TO THE COMMENCEMENT OF THE WAR OF THE REVOLUTION, IN 1775; EMBRACING A PERIOD OF 168 YEARS.

168

CHAPTER I.

[2]HISTORY OF VIRGINIA.*

2. *Chap. I.*

DIVISIONS.

I. [3]*Virginia under the first charter.—II. Virginia under the second charter.—III. Virginia under the third charter.—IV. Virginia from the dissolution of the London Company to the commencement of the French and Indian War.*

3. *Divisions of Chap. I.*

I. VIRGINIA UNDER THE FIRST CHARTER.—1. [4]The administration of the government of the Virginia colony had

4. *Government of the Virginia colony.*

---

* VIRGINIA, the most northern of the southern United States, and the largest in the Union, often called the *Ancient Dominion*, from its early settlement, contains an area of nearly 70,000 square miles. The state has a great variety of surface and soil. From the coast to the head of tide water on the rivers, including a tract of generally more than 100 miles in width, the country is low, sandy, covered with pitch pine, and is unhealthy from August to October. Between the head of tide water and the Blue Ridge, the soil is better, and the surface of the country becomes uneven and hilly. The interior of the State, traversed by successive ridges of the Alleghany, running N. E. and S. W. is a healthy region, and in the valleys are some of the best and most pleasant lands in the State. The country west of the mountains, towards the Ohio, is rough and wild, with occasional fertile tracts, but rich as a mineral region

ANALYSIS.

been intrusted to a council of seven persons, whom the superior council in England had been permitted to name, with a president to be elected by the council from their number. [1]But the names and instructions of the council having been placed, by the folly of the king, in a sealed box, with directions that it should not be opened until the emigrants had arrived in America, dissensions arose during the voyage; and John Smith, their best and ablest man, was put in confinement, upon the absurd accusation of an intention to murder the council, usurp the government, and make himself king of Virginia.

1. *Early dissensions, and imprisonment of Smith.*

1607.

2. [2]Soon after their arrival, the council chose Edward Wingfield president,—an ambitious and unprincipled man,—and finding that Smith had been appointed one of their number, they excluded him from their body, as, by their instructions, they had power to do, but released him from confinement. As Smith demanded a trial upon the charges brought against him, which were known to be absurdly false, his accusers thought best, after a partial hearing of the case, to withdraw the accusation; and he was soon restored to his station as a member of the council.

2. *Wingfield—treatment of Smith on the arrival of the Company.*

3. [3]Of the one hundred and five persons on the list of emigrants, destined to remain, there were no men with families,—there were but twelve laborers, and very few mechanics. The rest were composed of gentlemen of fortune, and of persons of no occupation,—mostly of idle and dissolute habits—who had been tempted to join the expedition through curiosity or the hope of gain;—a company but poorly calculated to plant an agricultural state in a wilderness. [4]The English were kindly received by the natives in the immediate vicinity of Jamestown, who, when informed of the wish of the strangers to settle in the country, offered them as much land as they wanted.

3. *Character of the emigrants.*

4. *Their reception by the natives.*

4. [5]Soon after their arrival, Newport, and Smith, and twenty others, ascended the James[a] river, and visited the native chieftain, or king, Powhatan, at his principal residence near the present site of Richmond.* His subjects murmured at the intrusion of the strangers into the country; but Powhatan, disguising his jealousy and his fear, manifested a friendly disposition.

a. Note, p. 137.

5. *Powhatan and his subjects.*

5. [6]About the middle of June, Newport sailed for England; and the colonists, whose hopes had been highly excited by the beauty and fertility of the country, beginning to feel the want of suitable provisions, and being now left

6. *Events that occurred after the departure of Newport.*

* *Richmond*, the capital of Virginia, is on the north side of James River, 75 miles from its mouth. Immediately above the river are the falls, and directly opposite is the village of Manchester.

to their own resources, soon awoke to the reality of their situation. [1]They were few in number, and without habits of industry;—the Indians began to manifest hostile intentions,—and before autumn, the diseases of a damp and sultry climate had swept away fifty of their number, and among them, Bartholomew Gosnold, the projector of the settlement, and one of the ablest men in the council. **1607.**

1. Sufferings of the colony.

6. [2]To increase their misery, their avaricious president, Wingfield, was detected in a conspiracy to seize the public stores, abandon the colony, and escape in the company's bark to the West Indies. [3]He was therefore deposed, and was succeeded by Ratcliffe; but the latter possessing little capacity for government, and being subsequently detected in an attempt to abandon the colony, the management of affairs, by common consent, fell into the hands of Smith, who alone seemed capable of diffusing light amidst the general gloom.

2. Conspiracy.

3. Government falls into the hands of Smith.

7. [4]Under the management of Smith, the condition of the colony rapidly improved. He quelled the spirit of anarchy and rebellion, restored order, inspired the natives with awe, and collected supplies of provisions, by expeditions into the interior. As autumn approached, wild fowl and game became abundant; the Indians, more friendly, from their abundant harvests made voluntary offerings; and peace and plenty again revived the drooping spirits of the colony.

4. His management.

Nov.

8. [5]The active spirit of Smith next prompted him to explore the surrounding country. After ascending the Chickahominy* as far as he could advance in boats, with two Englishmen and two Indian guides he struck into the interior. The remainder of the party, disobeying his instructions, and wandering from the boat, were surprised by the Indians and put to death. Smith was pursued, the two Englishmen were killed, and he himself, after dispatching with his musket several of the most forward of his assailants, unfortunately sinking in a miry place, was forced to surrender.

5. Smith taken prisoner by the Indians.

9. [6]His calmness and self-possession here saved his life. Showing a pocket compass, he explained its wonderful properties, and, as he himself relates, "by the globe-like figure of that jewel he instructed them concerning the roundness of the earth, and how the sun did chase the night round about the earth continually." In admiration of his superior genius the Indians retained him as their prisoner.

6. In what manner he saved his life.

* The *Chickahominy* River rises northwest from Richmond, and, during most of its course runs nearly parallel to James River, which it enters five or six miles above Jamestown (See Map, p. 136.)

1608.

1. *How the Indians regarded him, and what they did with him.*

10. [1]Regarding him as a being of superior order, but uncertain whether he should be cherished as a friend, or dreaded as an enemy, they observed towards him the utmost respect as they conducted him in triumph from one village to another, and, at length, brought him to the residence of Opechancanough, where, for the space of three days, their priests or sorcerers practiced incantations and ceremonies, in order to learn from the invisible world the character and designs of their prisoner.

2. *Decision of his fate.*

11. [2]The decision of his fate was referred to Powhatan and his council, and to the village of that chieftain Smith was conducted, where he was received with great pomp and ceremony. Here it was decided that he should die.

1608.

3. *His life saved by Pocahontas.*

[3]He was led forth to execution, and his head was laid upon a stone to receive the fatal blow, when Pocahontas, the young and favorite daughter of the king, rushed in between the victim and the uplifted arm of the executioner, and with tears and entreaties besought her father to save his life.

4. *Sent to Jamestown.*

[4]The savage chieftain relented; Smith was set at liberty; and, soon after, with a guard of twelve men, was conducted in safety to Jamestown, after a captivity of seven weeks.

5. *Benefits derived from his captivity.*

12. [5]The captivity of Smith was, on the whole, beneficial to the colony; for he thereby learned much of the Indians,—their character, customs, and language; and was enabled to establish a peaceful intercourse between the English and the Powhatan tribes.

6. *Condition of the colony on his return.*

[6]But on his return to Jamestown he found disorder and misrule again prevailing; the number of the English was reduced to forty men; and most of these, anxious to leave a country where they had suffered so much, had determined to abandon the colony and escape with the pinnace. This was the third attempt at desertion. By persuasion and threats a majority were induced to relinquish the design; but the remainder, more resolute, embarked in spite of the threats of Smith, who instantly directed the guns of the fort upon them and compelled them to return.

7. *Arrival of new emigrants.*

13. [7]Soon after, Newport arrived from England with supplies, and one hundred and twenty emigrants. The hopes of the colonists revived; but as the new emigrants were composed of gentlemen, refiners of gold, goldsmiths, jewellers, &c., and but few laborers, a wrong direction was given to the industry of the colony.

8. *Search for gold.*

[8]Believing that they had discovered grains of gold in a stream of water near Jamestown, the entire industry of the colony was directed to digging, washing, refining and loading gold; and notwithstanding the remonstrances of Smith, a ship

was actually freighted with the glittering earth and sent to England. **1608.**

14. [1]During the prevalence of this passion for gold, Smith, finding that he could not be useful in Jamestown, employed himself in exploring the Chesapeake Bay[a] and its tributary rivers. In two voyages, occupying about three months of the summer, with a few companions, in an open boat, he performed a navigation of nearly three thousand miles, passing far up the Susquehanna* and the Potomac;† nor did he merely explore the numerous rivers and inlets, but penetrated the territories, and established friendly relations with the Indian tribes. The map which he prepared and sent to England is still extant, and delineates, with much accuracy, the general outlines of the country which he explored.

1. Exploration of the country by Smith.

a. Note, p. 136.

15. [2]Soon after his return from this expedition, Smith was formally made president[b] of the council. By his energetic administration, order and industry again prevailed, and Jamestown assumed the appearance of a thriving village. Yet at the expiration of two years from the time of the first settlement, not more than forty acres of land had been cultivated; and the colonists, to prevent themselves from starving, were still obliged to obtain most of their food from the indolent Indians. Although about seventy new emigrants arrived, yet they were not suitable to the wants of the colony, and Smith was obliged to write earnestly to the council in England, that they should send more laborers, that the search for gold should be abandoned, and that "nothing should be expected except by labor."

b. Sept. 20.

2. Smith's administration of the government, and condition of the colony after an existence of two years

II. VIRGINIA UNDER THE SECOND CHARTER.—1. [3]In 1609, a new charter was given[c] to the London Company, by which the limits of the company were enlarged, and the constitution of Virginia radically changed. The territory of the colony was now extended by a grant of all the lands along the sea-coast, within the limits of two hundred miles north, and two hundred south of Old Point Comfort;‡ that is, from the northern boundary of Maryland, to the southern limits of North Carolina, and extending westward from sea to sea. **1609.**

c. June 2.

3. The second charter.

* The *Susquehanna* is one of the largest rivers east of the Alleghanies. Its eastern branch rises in Otsego Lake, New York, and running S. W. receives the Tioga near the Pennsylvania boundary. It passes through Pennsylvania, receiving the West Branch in the interior of the State, and enters the head of Chesapeake Bay, near the N. E. corner of Maryland. The navigation of the last 50 miles of its course is obstructed by numerous rapids.

† The *Potomac* river rises in the Alleghany Mountains, makes a grand and magnificent passage through the Blue Ridge, at Harper's Ferry, and throughout its whole course is the boundary line between Virginia and Maryland. At its entrance into Chesapeake Bay it is seven and a half miles wide. It is navigable for the largest vessels to Washington City, 110 miles by the river—70 in a direct line. Above Washington the navigation is obstructed by numerous falls.

‡ *Point Comfort* is the northern point of the entrance of James River into Chesapeake Bay. (See *James River*, Note, p. 137.)

ANALYSIS.

1. *Changes made in the government of the colony.*

2. [1]The council in England, formerly appointed by the king, was now to have its vacancies filled by the votes of a majority of the corporation. This council was authorized to appoint a governor, who was to reside in Virginia, and whose powers enabled him to rule the colonists with almost despotic sway. The council in England, it is true, could make laws for the colony, and give instructions to the governor; but the discretionary powers conferred upon the latter were so extensive, that the lives, liberty, and property of the colonists, were placed almost at his arbitrary disposal.

2. *New arrangements made.*

a. June 12.

3. [2]Under the new charter, the excellent Lord Delaware was appointed governor for life. Nine ships, under the command of Newport, were soon despatched[a] for Virginia, with more than five hundred emigrants. Sir Thomas Gates, the deputy of the governor, assisted by Newport and Sir George Somers, was appointed to administer the government until the arrival of Lord Delaware. [2]When the fleet had arrived near the West Indies, a terrible storm[b] dispersed it, and the vessel in which were Newport, Gates, and Somers, was stranded on the rocks of the Bermudas.* A small ketch perished, and only seven vessels arrived[c] in Virginia.

3. *Disasters to the fleet.*

b. Aug. 3.

c. Aug.

4. *Embarrassing situation of Smith.*

4. [4]On the arrival of the new emigrants, most of whom were profligate and disorderly persons, who had been sent off to escape a worse destiny at home, Smith found himself placed in an embarrassing situation. As the first charter had been abrogated, many thought the original form of government was abolished; and, as no legal authority existed for establishing any other, every thing tended to the wildest anarchy.

5. *His management.*

5. [5]In this confusion, Smith soon determined what course to pursue. Declaring that his powers, as president, were not suspended until the arrival of the persons appointed to supersede him, he resumed the reins of government, and resolutely maintained his authority. [6]At length, being disabled by an accidental explosion of gunpowder, and requiring surgical aid, which the new settlement could not afford, he delegated his authority to George Percy, brother of the Earl of Northumberland, and embarked for England.

6. *His return to England.*

* The *Bermudas* are a group of about 400 small islands, nearly all but five mere rocks, containing a surface of about 20 square miles, and situated in the Atlantic Ocean, 580 miles E. from Cape Hatteras, which is the nearest land to them. They were discovered in 1515, by a Spanish vessel commanded by Juan Bermudez, from whom they have derived their name. Soon after the shipwreck above mentioned, Somers formed a settlement there, and from him they were long known as the "Summer Islands," but the original name, Bermudas, has since prevailed. They are well fortified, belong to the English, and are valuable, principally, as a naval station.

6. [1]On the departure of Smith subordination and industry ceased; the provisions of the colony were soon consumed; the Indians became hostile, and withheld their customary supplies; the horrors of famine ensued; and, in six months, anarchy and vice had reduced the number of the colony from four hundred and ninety to sixty; and these were so feeble and dejected, that if relief had been delayed a few days longer, all must have perished. This period of suffering and gloom was long remembered with horror, and was distinguished by the name of the *starving time*. **1610.**

1. *Situation of the colony during the "starving time."*

7. [2]In the mean time Sir Thomas Gates and his companions, who had been wrecked on the Bermudas, had reached the shore without loss of life,—had remained nine months on an uninhabited but fertile island,—and had found means to construct two vessels, in which they embarked[a] for Virginia, where they anticipated a happy welcome, and expected to find a prosperous colony.

2. *Fate of Sir Thomas Gates and his companions.*

a. May 20.

3. [3]On their arrival[b] at Jamestown, a far different scene presented itself; and the gloom was increased by the prospect of continued scarcity. Death by famine awaited them if they remained where they were; and, as the only means of safety, Gates resolved to sail for Newfoundland, and disperse the company among the ships of English fishermen. With this intention they embarked,[c] but just as they drew near the mouth of the river, Lord Delaware fortunately appeared with emigrants and supplies, and they were persuaded to return.[d]

b. June 2.

3. *The settlement abandoned;—return of the colony.*

c. June 17.

d. June 18.

9. [4]The return of the colony was celebrated by religious exercises, immediately after which the commission of Lord Delaware was read, and the government organized. Under the wise administration of this able and virtuous man, order and contentment were again restored; but the health of the governor soon failing, he was obliged to return to England, having previously appointed Percy to administer the government until a successor should arrive. [5]Before the return of Lord Delaware was known, the company had despatched Sir Thomas Dale with supplies. Arriving[e] in May, he assumed the government of the colony, which he administered with moderation, although upon the basis of martial law.

4. *Account of Lord Delawarr.*

1611.

5. *Of Sir Thomas Dale.*

e. May 20.

10. [6]In May, Dale had written to the company, stating the small number and weakness of the colonists, and requesting new recruits; and early in September Sir Thomas Gates arrived with six ships and three hundred emigrants, and assumed the government of the colony, which then numbered seven hundred men. [7]New settlements were now formed, and several wise regulations

6. *Of the arrival of Gates.*

7. *New regulations adopted.*

ANALYSIS.

adopted; among which was that of assigning to each man a few acres of ground for his orchard and garden.

1. *Their effect, &c.*

11. [1]Hitherto all the land had been worked in common, and the produce deposited in the public stores. The good effects of the new regulation were apparent in the increased industry of the colonists, and soon after, during the administration of Sir Thomas Dale, larger assignments of land were made, and finally, the plan of working in a common field, to fill the public stores, was entirely abandoned.

1612.

2. *The third charter.*

a. March 22.

III. Virginia under the Third Charter.—1. [2]In 1612, the London Company obtained[a] from the king a new charter, making important changes in the powers of the corporation, but not essentially affecting the political rights of the colonists themselves.

3. *Changes in the government effected by it.*

2. [3]Hitherto the principal powers possessed by the company had been vested in the superior council, which, under the first charter, was appointed by the king; and although, under the second, it had its vacancies filled by the majority of the corporation, yet the corporation itself could act only through this medium. The superior council was now abolished, and its powers were transferred to the whole company, which, meeting as a democratic assembly, had the sole power of electing the officers and establishing the laws of the colony.

1613.

4. *Account of Pocahontas.*

3. [4]In 1613 occurred the marriage of John Rolfe, a young Englishman, with Pocahontas, the daughter of Powhatan;—an event which exerted a happy influence upon the relations of the colonists and Indians. The marriage received the approval of the father and friends of the maiden, and was hailed with great joy by the English. In 1616, the Indian wife accompanied her husband to England, and was received with much kindness and attention by the king and queen; but as she was preparing to return, at the age of twenty-two she fell a victim to the English climate. She left one son, from whom are descended some of the most respectable families in Virginia.

b. In 1613.

5. *Argall's expeditions.*

4. [5]During the same year,[b] Samuel Argall, a sea captain, sailing from Virginia in an armed vessel for the purpose of protecting the English fishermen off the coast of Maine, discovered that the French had just planted a colony near the Penobscot,* on Mount Desert Isle.† Considering this an encroachment upon the limits of North

* The *Penobscot* is a river of Maine, which falls into Penobscot Bay, about 50 miles N. E. from the mouth of the Kennebec.

† *Mount Desert Island* is about 20 miles S. E. from the mouth of the Penobscot,—a peninsula intervening. It is 15 miles long, and 10 or 12 broad.

Virginia, he broke up the settlement, sending some of the colonists to France, and transporting others to Virginia. **1613.**

5. Sailing again soon after, he easily reduced the feeble settlement at Port Royal,[a] and thus completed the conquest of Acadia. On his return to Virginia he entered the harbor of New York,[b] and compelled the Dutch trading establishment, lately planted there, to acknowledge the sovereignty of England.

a. Note, p. 135

b. Note and Map, p. 220.

6. [1]Early in 1614, Sir Thomas Gates embarked for England, leaving the administration of the government in the hands of Sir Thomas Dale, who ruled with vigor and wisdom, and made several valuable changes in the land laws of the colony. After having remained five years in the country, he appointed George Yeardley deputy-governor, and returned to England. [2]During the administration of Yeardley the culture of tobacco, a native plant of the country, was introduced, which soon became, not only the principal export, but even the currency of the colony.

1614.

1. *Sir Thomas Dale's administration.*

1616.

2. *The culture of tobacco*

7. [3]In 1617, the office of deputy-governor was intrusted to Argall, who ruled with such tyranny as to excite universal discontent. He not only oppressed the colonists, but defrauded the company. After numerous complaints, and a strenuous contest among rival factions in the company, for the control of the colony, Argall was displaced, and Yeardley appointed governor. [4]Under the administration of Yeardley, the planters were fully released from farther service to the colony, martial law was abolished, and the first colonial assembly ever held in Virginia was convened[c] at Jamestown.

1617.

3. *Argall's administration.*

1619.

4. *Yeardley's administration.*

c. June 29.

8. [5]The colony was divided into eleven boroughs; and two representatives, called burgesses, were chosen from each. These, constituting the house of burgesses, debated all matters which were thought expedient for the good of the colony; but their enactments, although sanctioned by the governor and council, were of no force until they were ratified by the company in England. [6]In the month of August, 1620, a Dutch man-of-war entered James river, and landed twenty negroes for sale. This was the commencement of negro slavery in the English colonies.

5. *Origin and powers of the House of Burgesses*

1620.

6. *Under what circumstances slavery was introduced.*

9. [7]It was now twelve years since the settlement of Jamestown, and after an expenditure of nearly four hundred thousand dollars by the company, there were in the colony only six hundred persons; yet, during the year 1620, through the influence of Sir Edwyn Sandys, the treasurer of the company, twelve hundred and sixty-one additional settlers were induced to emigrate. But as yet

7. *State of the colony in 1620; and additional emigrations.*

ANALYSIS.

there were few women in the colony; and most of the planters had hitherto cherished the design of ultimately returning to England.

1. *Measures that were taken to attach the emigrants to the country.*

10. [1]In order to attach them still more to the country, and to render the colony more permanent, ninety young women, of reputable character, were first sent over, and, in the following year, sixty more, to become wives to the planters. The expense of their transportation, and even more, was paid by the planters; the price of a wife rising from one hundred and twenty, to one hundred and fifty pounds of tobacco.

1621.

a. Aug. 3.

2. *Account of the written constitution granted by the company.*

Assembly, how constituted.

Powers of governor.

11. [2]In August, 1621, the London Company granted[a] to their colony a *written constitution*, ratifying, in the main, the form of government established by Yeardley. It decreed that a governor and council should be appointed by the company, and that a general assembly, consisting of the council, and two burgesses chosen by the people from each plantation, or borough, should be convened yearly. The governor had a negative voice upon the proceedings of the assembly, but no law was valid unless ratified by the company in England.

Laws.

Orders of the company.

Trial by jury.

Basis of constitution.

12. With singular liberality it was farther ordained that no orders of the company in England should bind the colony until ratified by the assembly. The trial by jury was established, and courts of justice were required to conform to the English laws. This constitution, granting privileges which were ever after claimed as rights, was the basis of civil freedom in Virginia.

b. Oct.

3. *Arrival of Sir Francis Wyatt; and the condition of the colony.*

13. [3]The new constitution was brought[b] over by Sir Francis Wyatt, who had been appointed to succeed Governor Yeardley. He found the numbers of the colony greatly increased, their settlements widely extended, and every thing in the full tide of prosperity But this pleasant prospect was doomed soon to experience a terrible reverse.

4. *Account of the Indian conspiracy.*

1622.

14. [4]Since the marriage of Pocahontas, Powhatan had remained the firm friend of the English. But he being now dead, and his successor viewing with jealousy and alarm the rapidly increasing settlements of the English, the Indians concerted a plan of surprising and destroying the whole colony. Still preserving the language of friendship, they visited the settlements, bought the arms, and borrowed the boats of the English, and, even on the morning of the fatal day, came among them as freely as usual.

5. *Massacre and Indian war which followed.*

15. [5]On the first of April, 1622, at mid-day, the attack commenced; and so sudden and unexpected was the onset, that, in one hour, three hundred and forty-seven men,

women, and children, fell victims to savage treachery and cruelty. The massacre would have been far more extensive had not a friendly Indian, on the previous evening, revealed the plot to an Englishman whom he wished to save; by which means Jamestown and a few of the neighboring settlements were well prepared against the attack. **1622.**

16. [1]Although the larger part of the colony was saved, yet great distress followed; the more distant settlements were abandoned; and the number of the plantations was reduced from eighty to eight. [2]But the English soon aroused to vengeance. An exterminating war against the Indians followed; many of them were destroyed; and the remainder were obliged to retire far into the wilderness.

1. Distress of the colony.

2. The result.

17. [3]The settlement of Virginia by the London Company had been an unprofitable enterprise, and as the shares in the unproductive stock were now of little value, and the holders very numerous, the meetings of the company, in England, became the scenes of political debate, in which the advocates of liberty were arrayed against the upholders of royal prerogative. [4]The king disliked the freedom of debate here exhibited, and, jealous of the prevalence of liberal sentiments, at first sought to control the elections of officers, by overawing the assemblies.

3. The causes which led to the dissolution of the London Company.

4. What displeased the king.

18. [5]Failing in this, he determined to recover, by a dissolution of the company, the influence of which he had deprived himself by a charter of his own concession. [6]Commissioners in the interest of the king were therefore appointed to examine the concerns of the corporation. As was expected, they reported in favor of a change; the judicial decision was soon after given; the London Company was dissolved; the king took into his own hands the government of the colony; and Virginia thus became a *royal government.* **1624.**

5. What he determined.

6. How the measure was accomplished.

19. [7]During the existence of the London Company, the government of Virginia had gradually changed from a royal government, under the first charter, in which the king had all power, to a proprietary government under the second and third charters, in which all executive and legislative powers were in the hands of the company.

7. Gradual changes that had occurred in the government of Virginia.

20. [8]Although these changes had been made without consulting the wishes of the colonists, and notwithstanding the powers of the company were exceedingly arbitrary, yet as the majority of its active members belonged to the patriot party in England, so they acted as the successful friends of liberty in America. They had conceded the right of trial by jury, and had given to Virginia a representative government. These privileges, thus early

8. Effect of these changes, both on Virginia and on the other colonies.

ANALYSIS.

conceded, could never be wrested from the Virginians, and they exerted an influence favorable to liberty, throughout all the colonies subsequently planted. All claimed as extensive privileges as had been conceded to their elder sister colony, and future proprietaries could hope to win emigrants, only by bestowing franchises as large as those enjoyed by Virginia.

IV. Virginia from the Dissolution of the London Company in 1624, to the commencement of the French and Indian War in 1754.—1. [1]The dissolution of the London Company produced no immediate change in the domestic government and franchises of the colony. A governor and twelve counsellors, to be guided by the instructions of the king, were appointed to administer the government; but no attempts were made to suppress the colonial assemblies. [2]On the death[a] of James the First, in 1625, his son, Charles the First, succeeded him. The latter paid very little attention to the political condition of Virginia, but aimed to promote the prosperity of the colonists, only with the selfish view of deriving profit from their industry. He imposed some restrictions on the commerce of the colony, but vainly endeavored to obtain for himself the monopoly of the trade in tobacco.

1. The nature of the new government.

1625.

a. April 6.

2. Policy of Charles I. towards Virginia.

1628.

3. John Harvey.

1629.

2. [3]In 1628, John Harvey, who had for several years been a member of the council, and was exceedingly unpopular, was appointed governor; but he did not arrive in the colony until late in the following year. He has been charged, by most of the old historians, with arbitrary and tyrannical conduct; but although he favored the court party, it does not appear that he deprived the colonists of any of their civil rights.

4. His administration.

1635.

1636.

b. Jan.

3. [4]His administration, however, was disturbed by disputes about land titles under the royal grants; and the colonists, being indignant that he should betray their interests by opposing their claims, deprived him of the government, and summoned an assembly to receive complaints against him. Harvey, in the mean time, had consented to go to England with commissioners appointed to manage his impeachment; but the king would not even admit his accusers to a hearing, and Harvey immediately returned[b] to occupy his former station.

1642.

5. Account of Berkeley's administration.

4. [5]During the first administration of Sir William Berkeley, from 1642 to '52, the civil condition of the Virginians was much improved; the laws and customs of England were still farther introduced; cruel punishments were abolished; old controversies were adjusted; a more equitable system of taxation was introduced; the rights of property and the freedom of industry were secured;

and Virginia enjoyed nearly all the civil liberties which the most free system of government could have conferred. **1642.**

5. [1]A spirit of intolerance, however, in religious matters, in accordance with the spirit of the age, was manifested by the legislative assembly; which ordered[a] that no minister should preach or teach except in conformity to the Church of England. [2]While puritanism and republicanism were prevailing in England, leading the way to the downfall of monarchy, the Virginians showed the strongest attachment to the Episcopal Church and the cause of royalty.

1. Religious intolerance.

[a]1643.

2. Singular contrast of principles.

6. [3]In 1644 occurred another Indian massacre, followed by a border warfare until October, 1646, when peace was again established. During several years the Powhatan tribes had shown evidences of hostility; but, in 1644, hearing of the dissensions in England, and thinking the opportunity favorable to their designs, they resolved on a general massacre, hoping to be able eventually to exterminate the colony.

1644.

3. The second Indian massacre and war in which the Virginians were involved.

7. On the 28th of April, the attack was commenced on the frontier settlements, and about three hundred persons were killed before the Indians were repulsed. [4]A vigorous war against the savages was immediately commenced, and their king, the aged Opechancanough, the successor of Powhatan, was easily made prisoner, and died in captivity. Submission to the English, and a cession of lands, were the terms on which peace was purchased by the original possessors of the soil.

4. The result of the war

1646.

8. [5]During the civil war* between Charles the First and his Parliament, the Virginians continued faithful to the royal cause, and even after the execution[b] of the king, his son, Charles the Second, although a fugitive from England, was still recognized as the sovereign of Virginia. [6]The Parliament, irritated by this conduct, in 1652 sent a naval force to reduce the Virginians to submission. Previous to this (in 1650) foreign ships had been forbidden to trade with the rebellious colony, and in 1651 the celebrated navigation act, securing to English ships the entire

5. State of Virginia during the civil war in England.

b. Feb. 9.

6. How Virginia was treated by the Parliament.

* NOTE.—The tyrannical disposition, and arbitrary measures of Charles the First, of England, opposed as they were to the increasing spirit of liberty among the people, involved that kingdom in a civil war; arraying, on the one side, Parliament and the Republicans; and on the other, the Royalists and the King. Between 1642 and 1649, several important battles were fought, when the king was finally taken prisoner, tried, condemned, and executed, Jan 30, (Old Style) 1649. The Parliament then ruled; but Oliver Cromwell, who had been the principal general of the Republicans, finally dissolved it by force (April, 1653,) and took into his own hands the reins of government, with the title of "*Protector* of the Commonwealth." He administered the government with energy and ability until his death, in 1658. Richard Cromwell succeeded his father, as Protector, but after two years he abdicated the government, and quietly retired to private life. Charles the Second, a highly accomplished prince, but arbitrary base, and unprincipled, was then restored (in 1660) to the throne of his ancestors, by the general wish of the people. (See also the Appendix to the Colonial History.)

ANALYSIS.

carrying trade with England, and seriously abridging the freedom of colonial commerce, was passed.

1652.

a. March.

1. *In what manner her submission to Parliament was effected.*

b. March 22.

2. *Nature of the compact, and how observed.*

9. [1]On the arrival[a] of the naval force of Parliament in 1652, all thoughts of resistance were laid aside, and although the Virginians refused to surrender to force, yet they voluntarily entered into a compact[b] with their invaders, by which they acknowledged the supremacy of Parliament. [2]By this compact, which was faithfully observed till the restoration of monarchy, the liberties of Virginia were preserved, the navigation act itself was not enforced within her borders, and regulated by her own laws, Virginia enjoyed freedom of commerce with all the world.

3. *State of Virginia during the Commonwealth.*

10. [3]During the existence of the Commonwealth, Virginia enjoyed liberties as extensive as those of any English colony, and from 1652 till 1660, she was left almost entirely to her own independent government. Cromwell never made any appointments for Virginia; but her governors,[c] during the Commonwealth, were chosen by the burgesses, who were the representatives of the people.

c. Bennet, Diggs, and Matthews.

1658.

d. Sept. 13.

4. *Events that occurred when news of the death of Cromwell arrived.*

[4]When the news of the death[d] of Cromwell arrived, the assembly reasserted their right of electing the officers of government, and required the governor, Matthews, to confirm it; in order, as they said, "that what was their privilege then, might be the privilege of their posterity."

1660.

5. *At the time of the resignation of Richard.*

11. [5]On the death of governor Matthews, which happened just at the time of the resignation of Richard, the successor of Cromwell, the house of burgesses, after enacting that "the government of the country should be resident in the assembly until there should arrive from England a commission which the assembly itself should adjudge to be lawful," elected Sir William Berkeley governor, who, by accepting the office, acknowledged the authority to which he owed his elevation.

6. *The wishes of the Virginians with regard to monarchy.*

[6]The Virginians hoped for the restoration of monarchy in England, but they did not immediately proclaim Charles the Second king, although the statement of their hasty return to royal allegiance has been often made.

7. *Events that happened at the time of the restoration of Charles II.*

12. [7]When the news of the restoration of Charles the Second reached Virginia, Berkeley, who was then acting as governor elected by the people, immediately disclaimed the popular sovereignty, and issued writs for an assembly in the name of the king. The friends of royalty now came into power, and high hopes of royal favor were entertained.

8. *Commercial restrictions imposed on the colonies.*

13. [8]But prospects soon darkened. The commercial policy of the Commonwealth was adopted, and restrictions upon colonial commerce were greatly multiplied. The

new provisions of the navigation act enjoined that no commodities should be imported to any British settlements, nor exported from them, except in English vessels, and that the principal product of the colonies should be shipped to no country except England. The trade between the colonies was likewise taxed for the benefit of England, and the entire aim of the colonial system was to make the colonies dependent upon the mother country. 1661.

14. [1]Remonstrances against this oppression were of no avail, and the provisions of the navigation act were rigorously enforced. The discontents of the people were farther increased by royal grants of large tracts of land which belonged to the colony, and which included plantations that had long been cultivated; and, in 1673, the lavish sovereign of England, with his usual profligacy, gave away to Lord Culpepper and the earl of Arlington, two royal favorites, "all the dominion of land and water called Virginia," for the space of thirty-one years. 1673.

1. Discontents of the people; and grant to Culpepper and Arlington.

15. [2]In the mean time, under the influence of the royalist and the aristocratic party in Virginia, the legislature had seriously abridged the liberties of the people. The Episcopal Church had become the religion of the state, —heavy fines were imposed upon Quakers and Baptists, —the royal officers, obtaining their salaries by a permanent duty on exported tobacco, were removed from all dependence upon the people,—the taxes were unequal and oppressive,—and the members of the assembly, who had been chosen for a term of only two years, had assumed to themselves an indefinite continuance of power, so that, in reality, the representative system was abolished.

2. In what manner the liberties of the people were abridged.
In matters of religion.
By fines.
Salaries.
Taxes.
Representatives.

16. [3]The pressure of increasing grievances at length produced open discontent; and the common people, highly exasperated against the aristocratic and royal party, began to manifest a mutinous disposition. [4]An excuse for appearing in arms was presented in the sudden outbreak of Indian hostilities. The Susquehanna Indians, driven from their hunting grounds at the head of the Chesapeake, by the hostile Senecas, had come down upon the Potomac, and with their confederates, were then engaged in a war with Maryland. Murders had been committed on the soil of Virginia, and when six of the hostile chieftains presented themselves to treat for peace, they were cruelly put to death. The Indians aroused to vengeance, and a desolating warfare ravaged the frontier settlements. 1675.

3. Effect of these grievances.
4. Indian war which occurred at this time.

17. [5]Dissatisfied with the measures of defence which Berkeley had adopted, the people, with Nathaniel Bacon for their leader, demanded of the governor permission to rise and protect themselves. [6]Berkeley, jealous of the increasing 1676.

5. Demands of the people.
6. Conduct of Berkeley.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Commencement of Bacon's rebellion.*

popularity of Bacon, refused permission. [1]At length, the Indian aggressions increasing, and a party of Bacon's own men having been slain on his plantation, he yielded to the common voice, placed himself at the head of five hundred men, and commenced his march against the Indians. He was immediately proclaimed[a] traitor by Berkeley, and troops were levied to pursue him. Bacon continued his expedition, which was successful, while Berkeley was obliged to recall his troops, to suppress an insurrection in the lower counties.

a. May.

2. *Success of the popular cause.*

18. [2]The great mass of the people having arisen, Berkeley was compelled to yield; the odious assembly, of long duration, was dissolved; and an assembly, composed mostly of the popular party, was elected in their places. Numerous abuses were now corrected, and Bacon was appointed commander-in-chief. [3]Berkeley, however, at first refused to sign his commission, but Bacon having made his appearance in Jamestown, at the head of several hundred armed men, the commission was issued, and the governor united with the assembly in commending to the king the zeal, loyalty, and patriotism of the popular leader. But as the army was preparing to march against the enemy, Berkeley suddenly withdrew across the York* river to Gloucester,† summoned a convention of loyalists, and, even against their advice, once more proclaimed Bacon a traitor.

3. *Vacillating conduct of Berkeley.*

4. *Events of the civil war which followed.*

19. [4]Bacon, however, proceeded against the Indians, and Berkeley having crossed the Chesapeake to Accomac‡ county, his retreat was declared an abdication. Berkeley, in the mean time, with a few adherents, and the crews of some English ships, had returned to Jamestown, but, on the approach of Bacon and his forces, after some slight resistance the royalists were obliged to retreat, and Bacon took possession of the capital of Virginia.

20. The rumor prevailing that a party of royalists was approaching, Jamestown was burned, and some of the patriots fired their own houses, lest they might afford shelter to the enemy. Several troops of the royalists soon after joined the insurgents, but, in the midst of his successes, Bacon suddenly died.[b] His party, now left without a leader, after a few petty insurrections, dispersed, and the authority of the governor was restored.

b. Oct. 11.

---

* *York* River enters the Chesapeake about 18 miles N. from James River. It is navigable for the largest vessels, 25 miles. It is formed of the Mattapony and the Pamunky. The former which is on the north, is formed of the *Mat*, *Ta*, *Po*, and *Ny* rivers.

† *Gloucester* county is on the N.E. side of York River, and borders on the Chesapeake. The town is on a branch or bay of the Chesapeake.

‡ *Accomac* county is on the eastern shore of Chesapeake Bay. This county and Northampton county, on the south constitute what is called the Eastern shore of Virginia.

21. [1]The vengeful passions of Berkeley, however, were not allayed by the submission of his enemies. Fines and confiscations gratified his avarice, and executions were continued till twenty-two had been hanged, when the assembly interfered, and prayed him to stop the work of death. The conduct of Berkeley was severely censured in England, and publicly by the king himself, who declared "the old fool has taken away more lives in that country than I for the murder of my father." **1677.**

1. *Cruelty of Berkeley.*

22. [2]Historians have not done justice to the principles and character of Bacon. He has been styled a *rebel;* and has been described as ambitious and revengeful; but if his principles are to be gathered from the acts of the assembly of which he was the head, they were those of justice, freedom, and humanity. At the time of the rebellion, "no printing press was allowed in Virginia; to speak ill of Berkeley or his friends was punished by fine or whipping; to speak, or write, or publish any thing in favor of the rebels, or the rebellion, was made a high misdemeanor, and, if thrice repeated, was evidence of treason. It is not strange then that posterity was for more than a hundred years defrauded of the truth."

2. *Character of Bacon, and tyranny of the government.*

23. [3]The grant of Virginia to Arlington and Culpepper has already been mentioned. In 1677 the latter obtained the appointment of governor for life, and thus Virginia became a proprietary government, with the administration vested in one of the proprietors. In 1680 Culpepper arrived in the province, and assumed the duties of his office. [4]The avaricious proprietor was more careful of his own interests than of those of the colony, and under his administration Virginia was impoverished. [5]In 1684 the grant was recalled,—Culpepper was deprived of his office, although he had been appointed for life, and Virginia again became a royal province. Arlington had previously surrendered his rights to Culpepper. [6]The remaining portion of the history of Virginia, down to the period of the French and Indian war, is marked with few incidents of importance.

3. *A proprietary government established.*

1680.

4. *Culpepper's administration.*

5. *Royal government restored.*

6. *Remaining history of Virginia.*

ANALYSIS.

CHAPTER II.

Subject of Chap. II.

MASSACHUSETTS.*

SECTION I.

Of Section I. MASSACHUSETTS, FROM ITS EARLIEST HISTORY, TO THE UNION OF THE NEW ENGLAND COLONIES IN 1643.

Divisions of Section I. DIVISIONS.—*I. Early History.—II. Plymouth Colony.—III. Massachusetts Bay Colony.—IV. Union of the New England Colonies.—V. Early Laws and Customs.*

1607. I. EARLY HISTORY.—1. [1]An account of the first attempt of the Plymouth Company to form a settlement in North Virginia has already been given.[a] Although vessels annually visited the coast for the purpose of trade with the Indians, yet little was known of the interior until 1614, when Captain John Smith, who had already obtained distinction in Virginia, sailed with two vessels to the territories of the Plymouth Company, for the purposes of trade and discovery.

a. See p. 136.

1. *First attempted settlement in North Virginia, and exploration of the country.*

1614.

2. *Expedition of Captain Smith.*

2. [2]The expedition was a private adventure of Smith and four merchants of London, and was highly successful. After Smith had concluded his traffic with the natives, he travelled into the interior of the country, accompanied by only eight men, and, with great care, explored the coast from the Penobscot[b] to Cape Cod.[c] [3]He prepared a map of the coast, and called the country NEW ENGLAND,—a name which Prince Charles confirmed, and which has ever since been retained.

b. Note, p. 168 and 136,

c. Note, p. 134.

3. *The map which he prepared.*

4. *Thomas Hunt.*

3. [4]After Smith's departure, Thomas Hunt, the master of the second ship, enticed a number of natives on board his vessel and carried them to Spain, where they were sold into slavery. [5]In the following[d] year, Smith, in the employ of some members of the Plymouth Company, sailed with the design of establishing a colony in New England. In his first effort a violent tempest forced him to return. [6]Again renewing[e] the enterprise, his crew became mutinous, and he was at last intercepted by French pirates, who

d 1615.

5. *Smith's first attempt to establish a colony.*

e. July 4.

6. *His second attempt.*

* MASSACHUSETTS, one of the New England States, is about 120 miles long from east to west, 90 miles broad in the eastern part, and 50 in the western, and contains an area of about 7,500 square miles. Several ranges of mountains, extending from Vermont and New Hampshire, pass through the western part of this state into Connecticut. East of these mountains the country is hilly, except in the southern and south-eastern portions, where it is low, and generally sandy. The northern and western portions of the state have generally a strong soil, well adapted to grazing The valleys of the Connecticut and Housatonic are highly fertile. The marble quarries of West Stockbridge, in the western part of the state, and the granite quarries of Quincy, nine miles S. E. from Boston, are celebrated.

seized his ship and conveyed him to France. He afterwards escaped alone, in an open boat, from the harbor of Rochelle,* and returned to England. **1615.**

4. [1]By the representations of Smith, the attention of the Plymouth Company was again excited; they began to form vast plans of colonization, appointed Smith admiral of the country for life, and, at length, after several years of entreaty, obtained[a] a new charter for settling the country. [2]The original Plymouth Company was superseded by the Council of Plymouth, to which was conveyed, in absolute property, all the territory lying between the 40th and 48th degrees[b] of north latitude, extending from the Atlantic to the Pacific, and comprising more than a million of square miles.

1. Plans of the Plymouth Company.

1620.

a. Nov. 13.

2. Council of Plymouth and their charter.

b. See maps.

5. [3]This charter was the basis of all the grants that were subsequently made of the country of New England. [4]The exclusive privileges granted by it occasioned disputes among the proprietors, and prevented emigration under their auspices, while, in the mean time, a permanent colony was established without the aid or knowledge of the company or the king.

3. This charter the basis of what.

4. Its exclusive privileges

II. PLYMOUTH COLONY.—1. [5]A band of Puritans, dissenters from the established Church of England, persecuted for their religious opinions, and seeking in a foreign land that liberty of conscience which their own country denied them, became the first colonists of New England. [6]As early as 1608 they emigrated to Holland, and settled, first, at Amsterdam,† and afterwards at Leyden,‡ where, during eleven years, they continued to live in great harmony, under the charge of their excellent pastor, John Robinson.

5. The Puritans

6. Their residence at Amsterdam and Leyden.

2. [7]At the end of that period, the same religious zeal that had made them exiles, combined with the desire of improving their temporal welfare, induced them to undertake a more distant migration. [8]But, notwithstanding they had been driven from their early homes by the rod of persecution, they loved England still, and desired to retain their mother tongue, and to live under the government of their native land.

7. Causes which induced them to remove from Holland.

8. Their attachment to England.

3. [9]These, with other reasons, induced them to seek an asylum in the wilds of America. They obtained a grant of land from the London or Virginia Company, but in

9. Design of removal, and grant obtained.

* *Rochelle* is a strongly fortified town at the bottom of a small gulf on the coast of the Atlantic (or Bay of Biscay) in the west of France.

† *Amsterdam* is on a branch of the Zuyder Zee, a gulf or bay in the west of Holland. In the 17th century it was one of the first commercial cities of Europe. The soil being marshy, the city is built mostly on oaken piles driven into the ground. Numerous canals run through the city in every direction

‡ *Leyden*, long famous for its University, is on one of the branches or mouths of the Rhine, 7 miles from the sea, and 25 miles S. W. from Amsterdam.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Partnership formed.*

vain sought the favor of the king. [1]Destitute of sufficient capital, they succeeded in forming a partnership with some men of business in London, and, although the terms were exceedingly severe to the poor emigrants, yet, as they did not interfere with civil or religious rights, the Pilgrims were contented.

2. *Preparations for leaving.*

[2]Two vessels having been obtained, the Mayflower and the Speedwell, the one hired, the other purchased, as many as could be accommodated prepared to take their final departure. Mr. Robinson and the main body were to remain at Leyden until a settlement should be formed.

a. Aug. 1.

3. *Scene at Delft Haven.*

4. [3]Assembled[a] at Delft Haven,* and kneeling in prayer on the sea-shore, their pious pastor commended them to the protection of Heaven, and gave them his parting blessing.

4. *Events that occurred from this time until the final departure of the Pilgrims from England.*

[4]A prosperous wind soon bore the Speedwell to Southampton,† where it was joined by the Mayflower, with the rest of the company from London. After several delays, and finally being obliged to abandon the Speedwell as unseaworthy, part of the emigrants were dismissed, and the remainder were taken on board the Mayflower, which, with one hundred and one passengers, sailed from Plymouth‡ on the 16th of September.

5. *Their voyage, and their destination.*

5. [5]After a long and dangerous voyage, on the 19th of November they descried the bleak and dreary shores of Cape Cod, still far from the Hudson,§ which they had selected as the place of their habitation. But the wintry storms had already commenced, and the dangers of navigation on that unknown coast, at that inclement season, induced them to seek a nearer resting-place.

6. *Proceedings before landing.*

6. [6]On the 21st they anchored in Cape Cod harbor, but, before landing, they formed themselves into a body politic, by a solemn contract, and chose John Carver their governor for the first year.

7. *Their leading men.*

[7]Their other leading men, distinguished in the subsequent history of the colony, were Bradford, Brewster, Standish, and Winslow.

8. *Parties sent on shore.*

[8]Exploring parties were sent on shore to make discoveries, and select a place for settlement.

9. *Hardships endured.*

[9]Great hardships were endured from the cold and storm, and from wandering through the deep snow which covered the country.

---

* *Delft Haven*, the port or haven of Delft, is on the north side of the river Maese, in Holland, 18 miles south from Leyden, and about fifteen miles from the sea.

† *Southampton*, a town of England, is situated on an arm of the sea, or of the English Channel. It is 75 miles S. W. from London.

‡ *Plymouth*, a large town of Devonshire, in England, about 200 miles S. W. from London, and 130 from Southampton, stands between the rivers Plym and Tamar, near their entrance into the English Channel. Plymouth is an important naval station, and has one of the best harbors in England.

§ The *Hudson* River, in New York, one of the best for navigation in America, rises in the mountainous regions west of Lake Champlain, and after an irregular course to Sandy Hill its direction is nearly south, 200 miles by the river, to New York Bay, which lies between Long Island and New Jersey. The tide flows to Troy, 151 miles (by the river) from New York.

7. [1]A few Indians were seen, who fled upon the discharge of the muskets of the English; a few graves were discovered, and, from heaps of sand, a number of baskets of corn were obtained, which furnished seed for a future harvest, and probably saved the infant colony from famine. [2]On the 21st of December the harbor of Plymouth* was sounded, and being found fit for shipping, a party landed, examined the soil, and finding good water, selected this as the place for a settlement. [3]The 21st of December, corresponding with the 11th of December Old Style, is the day which should be celebrated in commemoration of this important event, as the anniversary of the landing of the *Pilgrim Fathers*.

1620.

1. *Discoveries made.*

2. *Landing of the Pilgrims at Plymouth.*

3. *Anniversary of this event.*

8. [4]In a few days the Mayflower was safely moored in the harbor. The buildings of the settlers progressed slowly, through many difficulties and discouragements, for many of the men were sick with colds and consumptions, and want and exposure rapidly reduced the numbers of the colony. The governor lost a son at the first landing; early in the spring his own health sunk under a sudden attack, and his wife soon followed him in death. The sick were often destitute of proper care and attention; the living were scarcely able to bury the dead; and, at one time, there were only seven men capable of rendering any assistance. Before April forty-six had died. [5]Yet, with the scanty remnant, hope and virtue survived;—they repined not in all their sufferings, and their cheerful confidence in the mercies of Providence remained unshaken.

4. *Commencement of the settlement, and sufferings during the first winter*

1621.

5. *How they afflictions were borne.*

9. [6]Although a few Indians had been seen at a distance novering around the settlement, yet during several months none approached sufficiently near to hold any intercourse with the English. At length the latter were surprised by the appearance, among them, of an Indian named Samoset, who boldly entered[a] their settlement, exclaiming in broken English, Welcome Englishmen! Welcome Englishmen! He had learned a little English among the fishermen who had visited the coast of Maine, and gave the colony much useful information.

6. *Account of the first Indian visit that the colony received*

a. March 22.

10. [7]He cordially bade the strangers welcome to the soil, which, he informed them, had a few years before been deprived of its occupants by a dreadful pestilence that had desolated the whole eastern sea-

7. *Information given by Samoset.*

PLYMOUTH AND VIC.

* *Plymouth*, thus named from Plymouth in England, is now a village of about 5000 inhabitants. It is pleasantly situated on Plymouth harbor, 38 miles S. E. from Boston. The harbor is large, but shallow, and is formed by a sand beach extending three miles N. W. from the mouth of Eel River. In 1774 a part of the Rock on which the Pilgrims landed was conveyed from the shore to a square in the centre of the village.

ANALYSIS.

board of New England. [1]Samoset soon after visited the colony, accompanied by Squanto, a native who had been carried away by Hunt, in 1614, and sold into slavery, but who had subsequently been liberated and restored to his country.

1. *Squanto.*

2. *Massasoit.*

11. [2]By the influence of these friendly Indians, Massasoit, the great Sachem of the Wampanoags, the principal of the neighboring tribes, was induced to visit the colony, where he was received[a] with much formality and parade. [3]A treaty of friendship was soon concluded,[a] the parties promising to deliver up offenders, and to abstain from mutual injuries; the colony to receive assistance if attacked, and Massasoit, if attacked unjustly. This treaty was kept inviolate during a period of fifty years, until the breaking out of King Philip's War.

a. April 1.

3. *Treaty with Massasoit.*

4. *Other treaties.*

12. [4]Other treaties, of a similar character, soon after followed. A powerful chieftain within the dominions of Massasoit, who at first regarded the English as intruders, and threatened them with hostilities, was finally compelled to sue for peace. [5]Canonicus, the chief of the Narragansetts, sent to Plymouth a bundle of arrows wrapped in a rattlesnake's skin, as a token of his hostility. The governor, Bradford, filled the skin with powder and shot and returned it; but the chieftain's courage failed at the sight of this unequivocal symbol, which was rejected by every community to which it was carried, until at last it was returned to Plymouth, with all its contents. The Narragansetts were awed into submission.

1622.

5. *Canonicus.*

6. *Weston's colony.*

13. [6]In 1622, Thomas Weston, a merchant of London, sent out a colony of sixty adventurers, who spent most of the summer at Plymouth, enjoying the hospitality of the inhabitants, but afterwards removed to Weymouth,* where they began a plantation. [7]Being soon reduced to necessity by indolence and disorder, and having provoked the Indians to hostilities by their injustice, the latter formed a plan for the destruction of the settlement.

7. *Character and conduct of the settlers.*

1623.

8. *Saved from destruction.*

14. [8]But the grateful Massasoit having revealed the design to the Plymouth colony, the governor sent Captain Standish with eight men to aid the inhabitants of Weymouth. With his small party Standish intercepted and killed the hostile chief, and several of his men, and the conspiracy was defeated. [9]The Weymouth Plantation was soon after nearly deserted, most of the settlers returning to England.

9. *Fate of the plantation.*

10. *Conduct of the London adventurers.*

15. [10]The London adventurers, who had furnished the Plymouth settlers with capital, soon becoming discouraged

* *Weymouth*, called by the Indians *Wessagussett*, is a small village between two branches of the outer harbor of Boston, 12 miles S. E. from the city. (See Map, p. 184.)

by the small returns from their investments, not only deserted the interests of the colony, but did much to injure its prosperity. They refused to furnish Robinson and his friends a passage to America, attempted to enforce on the colonists a clergyman more friendly to the established church, and even despatched a ship to injure their commerce by rivalry. [1]At last, the emigrants succeeded in purchasing[a] the rights of the London merchants; they made an equitable division of their property, which was before in common stock; and although the progress of population was slow, yet, after the first winter, no fears were entertained of the permanence of the colony.

1624.

1626.

a. Nov.

1. *Arrangements made with them.*

III. MASSACHUSETTS BAY COLONY.—1. [2]In 1624, Mr. White, a Puritan minister of Dorchester,* in England, having induced a number of persons to unite with him in the design of planting another colony in New England, a small company was sent over, who began a settlement at Cape Ann.† This settlement, however, was abandoned after an existence of less than two years.

2. *Attempted settlement of Cape Ann.*

2. [3]In 1628, a patent was obtained[b] from the council of Plymouth, and a second company was sent over, under the charge of John Endicott, which settled[c] at Salem,‡ to which place a few of the settlers of Cape Ann had previously removed. [4]In the following year the proprietors received[d] a charter from the king, and were incorporated by the name of the "Governor and Company of the Massachusetts Bay in New England." About 200 additional settlers came[e] over, a part of whom removed to and founded Charlestown.§

1628.

b. March 23.

3. *Settlement of Salem.*

c. Sept.

1629.

d. March 14.

4. *Events that occurred in the following year.*

e. July.

3. [5]During the year 1630, the Massachusetts Bay colony received a large accession to its numbers, by the arrival[f] of about three hundred families, mostly pious and intelligent Puritans, under the charge of the excellent John Winthrop. [6]At the same time the whole government of the colony was removed to New England, and Winthrop was chosen governor.

1630.

5. *Accessions made to the colony in 1630.*

f. July.

6. *Other events that occurred at the same time.*

4. [7]The new emigrants located themselves beyond the limits of Salem, and settled at Dorchester,‖ Roxbury,¶

7. *Location of the new emigrants.*

* *Dorchester*, in England, is situated on the small river Froom, 20 miles from its entrance into the English Channel, six miles N. from Weymouth, and 120 S.W. from London.

† *Cape Ann*, the northern cape of Massachusetts Bay, is 30 miles N.E. from Boston. The cape and peninsula are now included in the town of Gloucester. Gloucester, the principal village, called also the *Harbor*, is finely located on the south side of the peninsula.

‡ *Salem*, called by the Indians *Na-um-keag*, is 14 miles N.E. from Boston. It is built on a sandy peninsula, formed by two inlets of the sea, called North and South Rivers. The harbor, which is in South River, is good for vessels drawing not more than 12 or 14 feet of water. (See Map, next page.)

§ See Note on page 187. Map, next page, and also on p. 349.

‖ That part of *Dorchester* which was first settled, is Dorchester Neck, about four miles S.E. from Boston. (See Map, p. 349.)

¶ *Roxbury* village is two miles south from Boston. Its principal street may be considered as the continuation of Washington Street, Boston, extending over Boston Neck. A great part of the town is rocky land: hence the name, *Rock's-bury*. (See Map, next page.)

ANALYSIS.

1 *Settlement of Boston.*

Cambridge,* and Watertown.† [1]The accidental advantage of a spring of good water induced a few families, and with them the governor, to settle on the peninsula of *Shawmut;* and Boston‡ thenceforth became the metropolis of New England.

2. *Sufferings of the settlers, and return of some to England.*

5. [2]Many of the settlers were from illustrious and noble families, and having been accustomed to a life of ease and enjoyment, their sufferings from exposure and the failure of provisions were great, and, before December, two hundred had died. A few only, disheartened by the scenes of woe, returned to England.

3. *Character of those who remained.*

[3]Those who remained were sustained in their afflictions by religious faith and Christion fortitude;—not a trace of repining appears in their records, and sickness never prevented their assembling at stated times for religious worship.

1631.

4. *Regulation adopted in 1631.*

a. May 28.

6. [4]In 1631 the general court, or council of the people, ordained[a] that the governor, deputy-governor, and assistants, should be chosen by the freemen alone; but at the same time it was declared that those only should be admitted to the full rights of citizenship, who were members of some church within the limits of the colony.§

5. *Intolerance of this law.*

[5]This law has been severely censured for its intolerance, by those who have lived in more enlightened times, but it was in strict accordance with the policy and the spirit of the age, and with the professions of the Puritans themselves, and originated in the purest motives.

1634.

6. *Change made in the government in 1634.*

b. May.

7. *Roger Williams.*

7. [6]In 1634 the pure democratic form of government, which had hitherto prevailed, was changed[b] to a representative democracy, by which the powers of legislation were intrusted to deputies chosen by the people. [7]In the same

* *Cambridge*, formerly called Newtown, is situated on the north side of Charles River, three miles N.W. from Boston. The courthouse and jail are at East Cambridge, formerly called *Lechmere's Point*, within a mile of Boston, and connected with it and Charlestown by bridges. Harvard College, the first established in the United States, is at Cambridge. (Map.) (See also Map, p. 349.)

† *Watertown* village is on the north side of Charles River, west of Cambridge, and seven miles from Boston. (Map.)

‡ *Boston*, the largest town in New England, and the capital of Massachusetts, is situated on a peninsula of an uneven surface, two miles long and about one mile wide, connected with the mainland on the south, by a narrow neck about forty rods across. Several bridges also now connect it with the mainland on the north, west, and south. The harbor, on the east of the city, is very extensive, and is one of the best in the United States. *South Boston*, formerly a part of Dorchester, and *East Boston*, formerly Noddles Island, are now included within the limits of the city. (Also see Map on p. 349.)

§ NOTE.—But when New Hampshire united with Massachusetts in 1641, not as a province, but on equal terms, neither the freemen nor the deputies of New Hampshire were required to be church members.

year the peculiar tenets of Roger Williams, minister of Salem, began to occasion much excitement in the colony. A puritan, and a fugitive from English persecution, Roger Williams had sought, in New England, an asylum among those of his own creed; but finding there, in matters of religion, the same kind of intolerance that prevailed in England, he earnestly raised his voice against it. 1634.

8. [1]He maintained that it is the duty of the civil magistrate to give equal protection to all religious sects, and that he has no right to restrain or direct the consciences of men, or, in any way, interfere with their modes of worship, or the principles of their religious faith. [2]But with these doctrines of religious tolerance he united others that were deemed subversive of good government, and opposed to the fundamental principles of civil society. Such were those which declared it wrong to enforce an oath of allegiance to the sovereign, or of obedience to the magistrate, and which asserted that the king had no right to usurp the power of disposing of the territory of the Indians, and hence that the colonial charter itself was invalid.

1. *His principles.*

2. *Other opinions advanced by him.*

9. [3]Such doctrines, and particularly those which related to religious toleration, were received with alarm, and Roger Williams, after having been in vain remonstrated with by the ruling elders of the churches, was summoned before the general court, and, finally, banished[a] from the colony. He soon after became the founder of Rhode Island.[b]

3. *Banishment of Williams.*

a. Autumn of 1635.

b. See p. 215.

10. [4]During the same year, 1635, three thousand new settlers came over, among whom were Hugh Peters and Sir Henry Vane, two individuals who afterwards acted conspicuous parts in the history of England. Sir Henry Vane, then at the age of twenty-five, gained the affections of the people by his integrity, humility, and zeal in religion; and, in the following year, was chosen governor.

4. *Additional settlers in 1635; Peters and Vane.*

11. [5]Already the increasing numbers of the colonists began to suggest the formation of new settlements still farther westward. The clustering villages around the Bay of Massachusetts had become too numerous and too populous for men who had few attachments to place, and who could choose their abodes from the vast world of wilderness that lay unoccupied before them; and, only seven years from the planting of Salem, we find a little colony branching[c] off from the parent stock, and wending its way through the forests, nearly a hundred miles, to the banks of the Connecticut.*

5. *Emigration to the Connecticut.*

c. Oct. 25 See p. 209.

* *Connecticut* River, the largest river in New England, has its source in the highlands on the northern border of New Hampshire. Its general course is S. by W., and after forming the boundary between Vermont and New Hampshire, and passing through Massachusetts and Connecticut, it enters Long Island Sound, 100 miles N.E. from New York. It is not navigable for the largest vessels. Hartford, fifty miles from its mouth, is at the head of sloop navigatio

ANALYSIS.

1636.

Sufferings of the emigrants.

Remarks upon this enterprise.

12. [1]Severe were the sufferings of the emigrants during the first winter. Some of them returned, through the snow, in a famishing state; and those who remained subsisted on acorns, malt, and grains; but, during the summer following, new emigrants came in larger companies, and several settlements were firmly established. [2]The display of Puritan fortitude, enterprise, and resolution, exhibited in the planting of the Connecticut colony, are distinguishing traits of New England character. From that day to the present the hardy sons of New England have been foremost among the bold pioneers of western emigration.

Other religious dissensions which arose soon after the banishment of Williams.

13. [3]Soon after the banishment of Roger Williams, other religious dissensions arose, which again disturbed the quiet of the colony. It was customary for the members of each congregation to assemble in weekly meetings, and there debate the doctrines they had heard the previous Sunday, for the purpose of extending their sacred influence through the week. As women were debarred the privilege of taking part in these debates, a Mrs. Hutchinson, a woman of eloquence and ability, established meetings for those of her own sex, in which her zeal and talent soon procured her a numerous and admiring audience.

Course taken by Mrs. Hutchinson.

By whom she was supported.

14. [4]This woman, from being an expounder of the doctrines of others, soon began to teach new ones; she assumed the right of deciding upon the religious faith of the clergy and the people, and, finally, of censuring and condemning those who rejected, or professed themselves unable to understand her peculiar tenets. [5]She was supported by Sir Henry Vane the governor, by several of the magistrates, and men of learning, and by a majority of the people of Boston. [4]She was opposed by most of the clergy, and by the sedate and more judicious men of the colony. [7]At length, in a general synod[a] of the churches, the new opinions were condemned as erroneous and heretical, and the general court soon after issued a decree of banishment against Mrs. Hutchinson and several of her followers.

1637.

By whom opposed.

Her banishment.

a. Aug.

Pequod war.

b. See p. 209.

The Narragansetts.

15. [8]During the same year occurred an Indian war[d] in Connecticut, with the Pequods, the most warlike of the New England tribes. [9]The Narragansetts of Rhode Island, hereditary enemies of the Pequods, were invited to unite with them in exterminating the invaders of their country; but, through the influence of Roger Williams, they rejected the proposals, and, lured by the hope of gratifying their revenge for former injuries, they determined to assist the English in the prosecution of the war. [10]The result[e] of the brief contest was the total destruction of the Pequod nation. The impression made upon the

Result of the contest.

c. See p. 211.

other tribes secured a long tranquillity to the English settlements. **1637.**

16. [1]The persecutions which the Puritans in England suffered, during this period, induced large numbers of them to remove to New England. But the jealousy of the English monarch, and of the English bishop, was at length aroused by the rapid growth of a Puritan colony, in which sentiments adverse to the claims of the established church and the prerogatives of royalty were ardently cherished; and repeated attempts were made to put a stop to farther emigration. As early as 1633, a proclamation to that effect was issued, but the vacillating policy of the king neglected to enforce it.

1. Attempts in England to prevent emigration.

17. [2]In 1638 a fleet of eight ships, on board of which were some of the most eminent Puritan leaders and patriots, was forbidden to sail, by order of the king's council; but the restraint was finally removed, and the ships proceeded on their intended voyage. [3]It has been asserted, and generally believed, that the distinguished patriots John Hampden and Oliver Cromwell were on board of this fleet, but were detained by special order or the king. [4]If the assertion be correct, this assumption of arbitrary power by the king was a fatal error; for the exertions of Hampden and Cromwell, in opposing the encroachments of kingly authority, afterwards contributed greatly to the furtherance of those measures which deprived Charles I. of his crown, and finally brought him to the scaffold.

1638.

2. Events that occurred in 1638.

3. Assertions made in relation to Hampden and Cromwell.

4. What is said of this assertion.

18. [5]The settlers of Massachusetts had early turned their attention to the subject of education, wisely judging that learning and religion would be the best safeguards of the commonwealth. In 1636 the general court appropriated about a thousand dollars for the purpose of founding a public school or college, and, in the following year, directed that it should be established at Newtown. In 1638, John Harvard, a worthy minister, dying at Charlestown,* left to the institution upwards of three thousand dollars. In honor of this pious benefactor the general court gave to the school the name of Harvard College; and, in memory of the place where many of the settlers of New England had received their education, that part of Newtown in which the college was located, received the name of Cambridge.[a]

5. Education in New England; founding of Harvard College, &c.

a. Note and Map, p. 184.

1643.

IV. UNION OF THE NEW ENGLAND COLONIES.—1. [6]In

6. Union of the New England colonies.

* *Charlestown* is situated on a peninsula, north of and about half as large as that of Boston, formed by Mystic River on the N., and an inlet from Charles River on the S. The channel between Charlestown and Boston is less than half a mile across, over which bridges have been thrown. The United States Navy Yard, located at Charlestown, covers about 60 acres of land. It is one of the best naval depôts in the Union. (See Map, p. 184, and also Map, p. 349.)

ANALYSIS.

1643 the colonies of Massachusetts, Connecticut, Plymouth, and New Haven, formed[a] themselves into one confederacy, by the name of THE UNITED COLONIES OF NEW ENGLAND. [1]The reasons assigned for this union were, the dispersed state of the colonies; the dangers apprehended from the Dutch, the French, and the Indians; the commencement of civil contests in the parent country; and the difficulty of obtaining aid from that quarter, in any emergency. [2]A few years later Rhode Island petitioned[b] to be admitted into the confederacy, but was refused, because she was unwilling to consent to what was required of her, an incorporation with the Plymouth colony.

a. May 29.*

1. *The reasons for this union.*

2. *Why Rhode Island was not admitted.*

b. 1648.

2. [3]By the terms of the confederacy, which existed more than forty years, each colony was to retain its separate existence, but was to contribute its proportion of men and money for the common defence; which, with all matters relating to the common interest, was to be decided in an annual assembly composed of two commissioners from each colony. [4]This transaction of the colonies was an assumption of the powers of sovereignty, and doubtless contributed to the formation of that public sentiment which prepared the way for American Independence.

3. *Terms of the confederacy.*

4. *Nature of this transaction.*

V. EARLY LAWS AND CUSTOMS.—1. [5]As the laws and customs of a people denote the prevailing sentiments and opinions, the peculiarities of early New England legislation should not be wholly overlooked. [6]By a fundamental law of Massachusetts it was enacted that all strangers professing the Christian religion, and fleeing to the country, from the tyranny of their persecutors, should be supported at the public charge till other provisions could be made for them. [7]Yet this toleration did not extend to Jesuits and popish priests, who were subjected to banishment; and, in case of their return, to death.

5. *Early laws and customs.*

6. *A fundamental law of Massachusetts.*

7. *How limited.*

2. [8]Defensive war only was considered justifiable; blasphemy, idolatry, and witchcraft were punishable with death; all gaming was prohibited; intemperance, and all immoralities, were severely punished; persons were forbidden to receive interest for money lent, and to wear expensive apparel unsuitable to their estates; parents were commanded to instruct and catechise their children and servants; and, in all cases in which the laws were found defective, the Bible was made the ultimate tribunal of appeal.

8. "*War,*" "*blasphemy,*" *&c.* "*Immoralities.*" "*Money loaned.*" "*Instruction of children.*" "*The Bible.*"

3. [9]Like the tribes of Israel, the colonists of New England had forsaken their native land after a long and severe

9. *Comparison observed here.*

* NOTE.—The Plymouth commissioners, for want of authority from their general court, did not sign the articles until Sept. 17th

bondage, and journeyed into the wilderness for the sake of religion. [1]They endeavored to cherish a resemblance of condition so honorable, and so fraught with incitements to piety, by cultivating a conformity between their laws and customs, and those which had distinguished the people of God. [2]Hence arose some of the peculiarities which have been observed in their legislative code; and hence arose also the practice of commencing their sabbatical observances on Saturday evening, and of counting every evening the commencement of the ensuing day.

1643.

1. What the colonists endeavored to cherish, and how.

2. What peculiarities hence arose.

4. [3]'The same predilection for Jewish customs begat, or at least promoted, among them, the habit of bestowing significant names on children; of whom, the first three that were baptized in Boston church, received the names of Joy, Recompense, and Pity.' This custom prevailed to a great extent, and such names as Faith, Hope, Charity, Patience, &c., and others of a similar character, were long prevalent throughout New England.

3. Names of children.

SECTION II.

MASSACHUSETTS, FROM THE UNION OF THE NEW ENGLAND COLONIES IN 1643, TO THE CLOSE OF KING WILLIAM'S WAR IN 1697.

Subject of Section II.

DIVISIONS.—*I. Events from the "Union" to King Philip's War.—II. King Philip's War.—III. Controversies and Royal Tyranny.—IV. Massachusetts during King William's War.*

Divisions of Section II.

I. EVENTS FROM THE "UNION" TO KING PHILIP'S WAR.—1. [4]In 1644 an important change took place in the government of Massachusetts. When representatives were first chosen, they sat and voted in the same room with the governor's council; but it was now ordained that the governor and his council should sit apart; and thence commenced the separate existence of the democratic branch of the legislature, or house of representatives. [5]During the same year the disputes which had long existed between the inhabitants of New England and the French settlers in Acadia were adjusted by treaty.[a]

4. Change in government in 1644.

5. Disputes adjusted.

a. Oct. 18.

2. [6]During the civil war[b] which occurred in England, the New England colonies were ardently attached to the cause of the Parliament, but yet they had so far forgotten their own wrongs, as sincerely to lament the tragical fate of the king. [7]After the abolition of royalty, a requisition[d] was made upon Massachusetts for the return of her charter, that a new one might be taken out under the authorities which then held the reins of government. Probably through the influence of Cromwell the requisi-

b. Note, p. 173.

6. Massachusetts during the civil war in England.

c. 1651.

7. After the abolition of royalty.

ANALYSIS.

1. *During the Commonwealth.*

tion was not enforced. [1]When the supreme authority devolved upon Cromwell, as Protector of the Commonwealth of England, the New England colonies found in him an ardent friend, and a protector of their liberties.

1652.

2. *Early history of Maine.*

3. [2]In 1652 the province of Maine* was taken under the jurisdiction of Massachusetts. As early as 1626 a few feeble settlements were commenced along the coast of Maine, but hardly had they gained a permanent existence, before the whole territory, from the Piscataqua† to the Penobscot, was granted away by the Plymouth Company, by a succession of conflicting patents, which were afterwards the occasion of long-continued and bitter controversies.

a. April 13.

3. *Gorges, and his scheme of government.*

4. [3]In 1639 Ferdinand Gorges, a member of the Plymouth Company, obtained[a] a royal charter, constituting him Lord Proprietor of the country. The stately scheme of government which he attempted to establish was poorly suited to the circumstances of the people; and they finally sought a refuge from anarchy, and the contentions of opposing claimants to their territory, by taking into their own hands the powers of government, and placing[b] themselves under the protection of a sister colony.

b. 1652.

1656.

4. *First arrival of Quakers in Massachusetts.*

5. *Laws against them.*

c. 1657.

5. [4]In 1656 occurred the first arrival of Quakers in Massachusetts, a sect which had recently arisen in England. The report of their peculiar sentiments and actions had preceded them, and they were sent back by the vessels in which they came. [5]The four united colonies then concurred in a law[c] prohibiting the introduction of Quakers, but still they continued to arrive in increasing numbers, although the rigor of the law was increased against them. At length, in 1658, by the advice of the commissioners of the four colonies, the legislature of Massachusetts, after a long discussion, and by a majority of a single vote, denounced the punishment of death upon all Quakers returning from banishment.

1658.

6. *Avowed object of the law of 1658.*

7. *Its effect.*

6. [6]The avowed object of the law was not to persecute the Quakers, but to exclude them; and it was thought that its severity would be effectual. [7]But the fear of death had no influence over men who believed they were

* MAINE, the northeastern of the United States, is supposed to contain an area of nearly 35,000 square miles. In the north and northwest the country is mountainous, and has a poor soil. Throughout the interior it is generally hilly, and the land rises so rapidly from the seacoast, that the tide in the numerous rivers flows but a short distance inland. The best land in the state is between the Penobscot and Kennebec rivers, where it is excellent. The coast is lined with islands, and indented with numerous bays and inlets, which furnish more good harbors than are found in any other state in the Union.

† The *Piscataqua* rises between Maine and New Hampshire, and throughout its whole course, of forty miles, constitutes the boundary between the two states. That part of the stream above Berwick Falls is called *Salmon Falls* River. Great Bay, with its tributaries, Lamprey, Exeter, Oyster River, and other streams, unites with it on the south, five miles above Portsmouth. (See Map, p. 206.)

divinely commissioned to proclaim the sinfulness of a dying people; and four of those who had been banished, were executed according to the law,—rejoicing in their death, and refusing to accept a pardon, which was vainly urged upon them, on condition of their abandoning the colony forever. **1659.**

7. [1]During the trial of the last who suffered, another, who had been banished, entered the court, and reproached the magistrates for shedding innocent blood. [2]The prisons were soon filled with new victims, who eagerly crowded forward to the ranks of martyrdom; but, as a natural result of the severity of the law, public sympathy was turned in favor of the accused, and the law was repealed.[a] The other laws were relaxed, as the Quakers gradually became less ardent in the promulgation of their sentiments, and more moderate in their opposition to the usages of the people. **1660.** *1 Trial of the last who suffered.* *2. Final result of these proceedings.* [a]1661.

8. [3]Tidings of the restoration of monarchy in England were brought by the arrival,[b] at Boston, of two of the judges who had condemned Charles I. to death, and who now fled from the vengeance of his son. These judges, whose names were Edward Whalley and William Goffe, were kindly received by the people; and when orders were sent, and messengers arrived[c] for their arrest, they were concealed from the officers of the law, and were enabled to end their days in New England. *3. Judges of Charles I.* b. Aug. 6 1660. [c]1661.

9. [4]The commercial restrictions from which the New England colonies were exempt during the time of the Commonwealth, were renewed after the restoration. The harbors of the colonies were closed against all but English vessels; such articles of American produce as were in demand in England were forbidden to be shipped to foreign markets; even the liberty of free trade among the colonies themselves was taken away, and they were finally forbidden to manufacture, for their own use, or for foreign markets, those articles which would come in competition with English manufactures. [5]These restrictions were the subject of frequent complaints, and could seldom be strictly enforced; but England would never repeal them, and they became a prominent link in the chain of causes which led to the revolution. *4. Restrictions upon New England commerce.* *5. Not strictly enforced.*

10. [6]In 1664 a royal fleet, destined for the reduction of the Dutch colonies on the Hudson, arrived[d] at Boston, bringing commissioners who were instructed to hear and determine all complaints that might exist in New England, and take such measures as they might deem expedient for settling the peace and security of the country on a solid foundation. [7]Most of the New England colonies **1664.** d. Aug. 2. *6. Arrival of royal commissioners in New England.* *7. How this measure was received.*

ever jealous of their liberties, viewed this measure with alarm, and considered it a violation of their charters.

1. In Maine and N. H. In Conn., Plymouth, and R. I.

11. [1]In Maine and New Hampshire the commissioners occasioned much disturbance; in Connecticut they were received with coldness; in Plymouth with secret opposition; but, in Rhode Island, with every mark of deference and attention.

2. Conduct of Massachusetts.

[2]Massachusetts alone, although professing the most sincere loyalty to the king, asserted with boldness her chartered rights, and declining to acknowledge the authority of the commissioners, protested against its exercise within her limits.

3. The result.

[3]In general, but little attention was paid to the acts of the commissioners, and they were at length recalled. After their departure, New England enjoyed a season of prosperity and tranquillity, until the breaking out of King Philip's war, in 1675.

4. Treaty with Massasoit.

II. King Philip's War.—1. [4]The treaty of friendship which the Plymouth colony made[a] with Massasoit, the great sachem of the Wampanoags, was kept unbroken during his lifetime.

a. See p. 182.

b. 1662.

5. The two sons of Massasoit.

[5]After his death,[b] his two sons, Alexander and Philip, were regarded with much jealousy by the English, and were suspected of plotting against them.

c. 1662.

The elder brother, Alexander, soon dying,[c] Philip succeeded him.

6. What has been said of Philip by the early New England historians.

2. [6]It is said by the early New England historians, that this chief, jealous of the growing power of the whites, and perceiving, in it, the eventual destruction of his own race, during several years secretly carried on his designs of uniting all the neighboring tribes in a warlike confederacy against the English.

7. By later writers.

[7]By later, and more impartial writers, it is asserted that Philip received the news of the death of the first Englishmen who were killed, with so much sorrow as to cause him to weep; and that he was forced into the war by the ardor of his young men, against his own judgment and that of his chief counsellors.

8. Commencement of King Philip's war.

3. [8]A friendly Indian missionary, who had detected the supposed plot, and revealed it to the Plymouth people, was, soon after, found murdered.[d]

d. 1674.

Three Indians were arrested, tried, and convicted of the murder,—one of whom, at the execution, confessed they had been instigated by Philip to commit the deed. Philip, now encouraged by the general voice of his tribe, and seeing no possibility of avoiding the war, sent his women and children to the Narragansetts for protection, and, early in July, 1675, made an attack[e] upon Swanzey,* and killed several people.

1675.

e. July 4.

* *Swanzey* is a small village of Massachusetts, on a northern branch of Mount Hope Bay, (part of Narragansett Bay.) It is twelve miles S.E. from Providence, and about thirty five S.W. from Plymouth. (See Map, p. 215.)

1675.

4. [1]The country was immediately alarmed, and the troops of Plymouth, with several companies from Boston, marched in pursuit of the enemy. A few Indians were killed, the troops penetrated to Mount Hope,* the residence of Philip, but he and his warriors fled at their approach. [2]It being known that the Narragansetts favored the cause of Philip, and it being feared that they would join him in the war, the forces proceeded into the Narragansett country, where they concluded a treaty[a] of peace with that tribe.

1. *Pursuit of the enemy.* July.

2. *The Narragansetts.*

a. July 25.

5. [3]During the same month the forces of Philip were attacked[b] in a swamp at Pocasset, now Tiverton,† but the whites, after losing sixteen of their number, were obliged to withdraw. They then attempted to guard the avenues leading from the swamp, in the hope of reducing the Indians by starvation; but, after a siege of thirteen days, the enemy contrived to escape in the night across an arm of the bay, and most of them, with Philip, fled westward to the Connecticut River, where they had previously induced the Nipmucks,‡ a tribe in the interior of Massachusetts, to join them.

b. July 28.

3. *Events at Tiverton, and flight of Philip.*

6. [4]The English, in the hope of reclaiming the Nipmucks, had sent Captains Wheeler and Hutchinson, with a party of twenty men, into their country, to treat with them. The Indians had agreed to meet them near Brookfield;§ but, lurking in ambush, they fell upon them as they approached, and killed most of the party.[c]

4. *Events that happened at Brookfield.*

c. Aug. 12.

7. [5]The remainder fled to Brookfield, and alarmed the inhabitants, who hastily fortified a house for their protection. Here they were besieged during two days, and every expedient which savage ingenuity could devise was adopted for their destruction. At one time the savages had succeeded in setting the building on fire, when the rain suddenly descended and extinguished the kindling flames. On the arrival of a party to the relief of the garrison the Indians abandoned the place.

5. *Siege at that place.*

d. Sept. 5.

7. [6]A few days later, 180 men attacked[d] the Indians

6. *Events that occurred at Deerfield.*

---

* *Mount Hope*, or *Pokanoket*, is a hill of a conical form, nearly 300 feet high, in the present town of Bristol, Rhode Island, and on the west shore of Mount Hope Bay. The hill is two miles N.E. from Bristol Court-house. The view from its summit is highly beautiful. (See Map, p. 215.)

† *Tiverton* is in the State of Rhode Island, south from Mount Hope Bay, and having on the west the *East Passage* of Narragansett Bay. A stone bridge 1000 feet long connects the village, on the south, with the island of Rhode Island. The village is thirteen miles N.E. from New port, and sixteen in a direct line S.E. from Providence. The *Swamp* on *Pocasset Neck* is seven miles long. (See Map, p. 215.)

‡ The *Nipmucks* occupied the country in the central and southern parts of Worcester county.

§ *Brookfield* is in Worcester county, Massachusetts, sixty miles W. from Boston, and twenty-five E. from Connecticut River. This town was long a solitary settlement, being about half way between the old towns on Connecticut River, and those on the east towards the Atlantic coast. The place of *ambuscade* was two or three miles west from the village, at a narrow passage between a steep hill and a thick swamp, at the head of Wickabog Pond.

ANALYSIS.

in the southern part of the town of Deerfield,* killing twenty-six of the enemy, and losing ten of their own number. On the eleventh of September Deerfield was burned by the Indians. [1]On the same day Hadley† was alarmed in time of public worship, and the people thrown into the utmost confusion. Suddenly there appeared a man of venerable aspect in the midst of the affrighted inhabitants, who put himself at their head, led them to the onset, and, after the dispersion of the enemy, instantly disappeared. The deliverer of Hadley, then imagined to be an angel, was General Goffe,[a] one of the judges of Charles I., who was at that time concealed in the town.

1. *At Hadley.*

a. See p. 191.

2. *At Bloody Brook.*

9. [2]On the 28th of the same month, as Captain Lathrop and eighty young men, with several teams, were transporting a quantity of grain from Deerfield to Hadley, nearly a thousand Indians suddenly surrounded them at a place since called Bloody Brook,‡ and killed nearly their whole number. The noise of the firing being heard at Deerfield, Captain Mosely, with seventy men, hastened to the scene of action. After a contest of several hours he found himself obliged to retreat, when a reinforcement of one hundred English and sixty friendly Mohegan Indians, came to his assistance, and the enemy were at length repulsed with a heavy loss.

3. *At Springfield.*

10. [3]The Springfield§ Indians, who had, until this period, remained friendly, now united with the enemy, with whom they formed a plot for the destruction of the town. The people, however, escaped to their garrisons, although nearly all their dwellings were burned.[b]

b. Oct. 15.

4. *At Hatfield.*

c. Oct. 29.

[4]With seven or eight hundred of his men, Philip next made an attack[c] upon Hatfield,‖ the head-quarters of the whites in that region, but he met with a brave resistance and was compelled to retreat.

* The town of *Deerfield* is in Franklin county, Massachusetts, on the west bank of Connecticut River. Deerfield River runs through the town, and at its N.E. extremity enters the Connecticut. The *village* is pleasantly situated on a plain, bordering on Deerfield River, separated from the Connecticut by a range of hills. (See Map.)

† *Hadley* is on the east side of Connecticut River, three miles N.E. from Northampton, with which it is connected by a bridge 1080 feet long. (See Map.)

‡ *Bloody Brook* is a small stream in the southern part of the town of Deerfield. The place where Lathrop was surprised is now the small village of *Muddy Brook*, four or five miles from the village of Deerfield. (See Map.)

§ *Springfield* is in the southern part of Massachusetts, on the east side of the Connecticut River, twenty-four miles N. from Hartford, and ninety S.W. from Boston. The main street extends along the river two miles. Here is the most extensive public armory in the U. States. The Chickapee River, passing through the town, enters the Connecticut at Cabotsville, four miles north from Springfield. (See Map.)

‖ *Hatfield* is on the west side of the Connecticut, four or five miles N. from Northampton. (See Map.)

1675.

11. [1]Having accomplished all that could be done on the western frontier of Massachusetts, Philip returned to the Narragansetts, most of whom he induced to unite with him, in violation of their recent treaty with the English. [2]An army of 1500 men from Massachusetts, Plymouth, and Connecticut, with a number of friendly Indians, was therefore sent into the Narragansett country, to crush the power of Philip in that quarter.

1. Next movement of Philip.

2. Efforts of the English.

12. [3]In the centre of an immense swamp,* in the southern part of Rhode Island, Philip had strongly fortified himself, by encompassing an island of several acres with high palisades, and a hedge of fallen trees; and here 3000 Indians, well supplied with provisions, had collected, with the intention of passing the winter. [4]Before this fortress the New England forces arrived[a] on a cold stormy day in the month of December. Between the fort and the mainland was a body of water, over which a tree had been felled, and upon this, as many of the English as could pass rushed with ardor; but they were quickly swept off by the fire of Philip's men. Others supplied the places of the slain, but again they were swept from the fatal avenue, and a partial, but momentary recoil took place.

3. Account of the Narragansett fortress.

4. Of the attack by the English.

a Dec. 29.

13. [5]Meanwhile a part of the army, wading through the swamp, found a place destitute of palisades, and although many were killed at the entrance, the rest forced their way through, and, after a desperate conflict, achieved a complete victory. Five hundred wigwams were now set on fire, although contrary to the advice of the officers; and hundreds of women and children,—the aged, the wounded, and the infirm, perished in the conflagration. A thousand Indian warriors were killed, or mortally

5. Destruction of the Narragansetts.

---

* EXPLANATION OF THE MAP.—The *Swamp*, mentioned above, is a short distance S. W. from the village of Kingston, in the town of South Kingston, Washington county, Rhode Island.

The *Fort* was on an island containing four or five acres, in the N.W. part of the swamp.

a. The place where the English formed, whence they marched upon the fort.

b. A place at which resided an English family, of the name of Babcock, at the time of the fight. Descendants of that family have resided on or near the spot ever since.

c. The present residence (1845) of J. G. Clarke, Esq., whose father purchased the island on which the fort stood, in the year 1775, one hundred years after the battle. On ploughing the land soon after, besides bullets, bones, and various Indian utensils, several bushels of burnt corn were found,—the reliques of the conflagration. It is said the Indians had 500 bushels of corn in the stack.

d. A piece of upland of about 200 acres.

e The depôt of the Stonington and Providence Rail Road. The Rail Road crosses the swamp in a S. W. direction.

NARRAGANSETT FORT AND SWAMP.

ANALYSIS.

1. *The English loss.*

2. *Remnant of the Narragansetts.*

wounded; and several hundred were taken prisoners. [1]Of the English, eighty were killed in the fight, and one hundred and fifty were wounded. [2]The power of the Narragansetts was broken, but the remnant of the nation repaired, with Philip, to the country of the Nipmucks, and still continued the war.

1676.

3. *Philip among the Mohawks.*

4. *His influence.*

5. *Continuance of the contest.*

14. [3]It is said that Philip soon after repaired to the country of the Mohawks, whom he solicited to aid him against the English, but without success. [4]His influence was felt, however, among the tribes of Maine and New Hampshire, and a general Indian war opened upon all the New England settlements. [5]The unequal contest continued, with the ordinary details of savage warfare, and with increasing losses to the Indians, until August of the following year, when the finishing stroke was given to it in the United Colonies by the death of Philip.

6. *Philip's death, and the close of the war.*

15. [6]After the absence of a year from the home of his tribe, during which time nearly all his warriors had fallen, and his wife and only son had been taken prisoners, the heart-broken chief, with a few followers, returned to Pokanoket. Tidings of his arrival were brought to Captain Church, who, with a small party, surrounded the place where Philip was concealed. The savage warrior attempted to escape, but was shot[a] by a faithless Indian, an ally of the English, one of his own tribe, whom he had previously offended. The southern and western Indians now came in, and sued for peace, but the tribes in Maine and New Hampshire continued hostile until 1678, when a treaty was concluded[b] with them.

a. Aug. 22.

b. April 22, 1678.

III. Controversies, and Royal Tyranny.—1. [7]In 1677, a controversy which had long subsisted between Massachusetts and the heirs of Gorges, relative to the province of Maine, was decided in England, in favor of the former; and Massachusetts then purchased[c] the claims of the heirs, both as to soil and jurisdiction. [8]In 1680, the claims of Massachusetts to New Hampshire were decided against the former, and the two provinces were separated, much against the wishes of the people of both. New Hampshire then became a royal province, over which was established the first royal government in New England.

1677.

7. *Claims of Massachusetts to Maine.*

c. May 16.

1680.

8. *To New Hampshire.*

9. *Opposition to commercial restrictions.*

d. Randolph, in 1681.

e. 1682.

10. *Favorite project of the king.*

[9]2. Massachusetts had ever resisted, as unjust and illegal, the commercial restrictions which had been imposed upon the colonies; and when a custom-house officer was sent[d] over for the collection of duties, he was defeated in his attempts, and finally returned[e] to England without accomplishing his object. [10]The king seized the occasion

for carrying out a project which he had long entertained, that of taking into his own hands the governments of all the New England colonies. [1]Massachusetts was accused of disobedience to the laws of England, and English judges, who held their offices at the pleasure of the crown, declared[a] that she had forfeited her charter. [2]The king died[b] before he had completed his scheme of subverting the charter governments of the colonies, but his plans were prosecuted with ardor by his brother and successor, James II.

1682.

1. *How his object was accomplished.*

a. June 28, 1684.

b. Feb. 26, 1685.

2. *Death of the king.*

3. [3]In 1686 the charter government of Massachusetts was taken away, and a President,[c] appointed by the king, was placed over the country from Narragansett to Nova Scotia. [4]In December of the same year Sir Edmund Andros arrived[d] at Boston, with a commission as royal governor of all New England. [5]Plymouth, Massachusetts, New Hampshire, and Rhode Island, immediately submitted; and, in a few months, Connecticut was added to his jurisdiction.

1686.

c. Joseph Dudley.

3. *Change of government in 1686.*

4. *Arrival of Andros.*

d. Dec. 30.

5. *His jurisdiction.*

4. [6]The hatred of the people was violently excited against Andros, who, on account of his arbitrary proceedings, was styled the tyrant of New England; and when, early in 1689, tidings reached[e] Boston that the tyranny of James II. had caused a revolution in England, and that the king had been driven from his throne, and succeeded by William of Orange, the people arose in arms, seized[f] and imprisoned Andros and his officers and sent them to England, and established their former mode of government.

6. *His tyranny, imprisonment, and return to England.*

e. April 14.

f. April 28.

IV. MASSACHUSETTS DURING KING WILLIAM'S WAR.—1. [7]When James II. fled from England, he repaired to France, where his cause was espoused by the French monarch. This occasioned a war between France and England, which extended to their colonial possessions in America, and continued from 1689 to the peace of Ryswick* in 1697.

7. *Cause of King William's war.*

2. [8]The opening of this war was signalized by several successful expeditions of the French and Indians against the northern colonies. In July,[g] 1689, a party of Indians surprised and killed Major Waldron and twenty of the garrison at Dover,† and carried twenty-nine of the inhabitants captives to Canada. In the following month an Indian war party, starting from the French settlement on

8. *Inroads of the French and Indians.*

g. July 7.

---

* *Ryswick* is a small town in the west of Holland, two miles S. E. from Hague, and thirty-five S. W. from Amsterdam.

† (See page 206.)

ANALYSIS.

the Penobscot, fell upon the English fort at Pemaquid,* which they compelled to surrender.[a]

a. Aug. 12.

1690.

3. Early in the following year, 1690, Schenectady† was burned;[b] the settlement at Salmon Falls,‡ on the Piscataqua, was destroyed;[c] and a successful attack was made[d] on the fort and settlement at Casco Bay.§ [1]In anticipation of the inroads of the French, Massachusetts had hastily fitted out an expedition, under Sir William Phipps, against Nova Scotia, which resulted in the easy conquest[e] of Port Royal.

b. Feb 18. see p. 230.
c. March 28.
d. May 27.
1. *Successful expedition against the French.*
e. May.

2. *Expedition against Canada.*

4. [2]Late in the same year a more important enterprise, the conquest of Canada, was undertaken by the people of New England and New York acting in concert. An armament, designed for the reduction of Quebec, was equipped by Massachusetts, and the command of it given to Sir William Phipps; while a land expedition was to proceed from New York against Montreal. The fleet proceeded up the St. Lawrence, and appeared before Quebec about the middle of October; but the land troops of New York having returned,[f] Quebec had been strengthened by all the French forces, and now bade defiance to the fleet, which soon returned to Boston. [3]This expedition imposed a heavy debt upon Massachusetts, and, for the payment of troops, bills of credit were issued;—the first emission of the kind in the American colonies.

f. See p. 230.

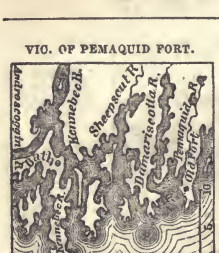
3. *Debts incurred by this expedition.*

4. *Phipps sent to England.*

5. [4]Soon after the return of Sir William Phipps from this expedition, he was sent to England to request assistance in the farther prosecution of the war, and likewise

---

VIC. OF PEMAQUID FORT.



VICINITY OF PORTLAND.

* The fort at *Pemaquid*, the most noted place in the early history of Maine, was in the present town of Bremen, on the east side of, and near the mouth of Pemaquid River, which separates the towns of Bremen and Bristol. It is about eighteen miles N. E. from the mouth of Kennebec River, and forty N.E. from Portland. The fort was at first called *Fort George*. In 1692 it was rebuilt of stone, by Sir William Phipps, and named *Fort William Henry*. In 1730 it was repaired, and called *Fort Frederic*. Three miles and a quarter south from the old fort is *Pemaquid Point*. (See Map.)

† *Schenectady*, an early Dutch settlement, is on the S. bank of Mohawk River, sixteen miles N. W. from Albany. The buildings of Union College are pleasantly situated on an eminence half a mile east from the city. (See Map, p. 221.)

‡ The *settlement* formerly called *Salmon Falls*, is in the town of South Berwick, Maine, on the east side of the Piscataqua or Salmon Falls River, seventeen miles N. W. from Portsmouth. The Indian name by which it is often mentioned in history, is *Newichawannoc*. (See Map, p. 206.)

§ *Casco Bay* is on the coast of Maine, S. W. from the mouth of the Kennebec River. It sets up between Cape Elizabeth on the S. W. and Cape Small point on the N. E., twenty miles apart, and contains 300 islands, mostly small, but generally very productive. In 1690 the settlements extended around the western shore of the bay, and were embraced in what was then called the town of *Falmouth*. The fort and settlement mentioned above, were on a peninsula called *Casco Neck*, the site of the present city of Portland. The fort, called *Fort Loyal*, was on the southwesterly shore of the Peninsula, at the end of the present King Street. (See Map.)

to aid other deputies of Massachusetts in applying for the restoration of the colonial charter. [1]But in neither of these objects was he successful. England was too much engaged at home to expend her treasures in the defence of her colonies; and the king and his counsellors were secretly averse to the liberality of the former charter.

1691.

1. Why unsuccessful.

6. [2]Early in 1692 Sir William Phipps returned[a] with a new charter, which vested the appointment of governor in the king, and united Plymouth, Massachusetts, Maine, and Nova Scotia, in one royal government. Plymouth lost her separate government contrary to her wishes; while New Hampshire, which had recently[b] placed herself under the protection of Massachusetts, was now forcibly severed from her.

1692.

a. May 24.

2. Establishment of royal government over most of New England.

b. See p. 207.

7. [3]While Massachusetts was called to mourn the desolation of her frontiers by savage warfare, and to grieve the abridgment of her charter privileges, a new and still more formidable calamity fell upon her. The belief in witchcraft was then almost universal in Christian countries, nor did the Puritans of New England escape the delusion. The laws of England, which admitted the existence of witchcraft, and punished it with death, had been adopted in Massachusetts, and in less than twenty years from the founding of the colony, one individual was tried and executed[c] for the supposed crime.

3. General belief in witchcraft.

c. In 1648, at Charlestown.

8. [4]In 1692 the delusion broke out[d] with new violence and frenzy in Danvers,* then a part of Salem. The daughter and niece of the minister, Mr. Parris, were at first moved by strange caprices, and their singular conduct was readily ascribed to the influence of witchcraft. The ministers of the neighborhood held a day of fasting and prayer, and the notoriety which the children soon acquired, with perhaps their own belief in some mysterious influence, led them to accuse individuals as the authors of their sufferings. An old Indian servant in the family was whipped until she confessed herself a witch; and the truth of the confession, although obtained in such a manner, was not doubted.

d. Feb.

4. First appearance of the Salem witchcraft.

March.

9. [5]Alarm and terror spread rapidly; evil spirits were thought to overshadow the land; and every case of nervous derangement, aggravated by fear; and every unusual symptom of disease, was ascribed to the influence of wicked demons, who were supposed to have entered the bodies of those who had sold themselves into the power of Satan.

5. Spread of the delusion, and its nature.

---

* Danvers is two miles N. W. from Salem. The principal village is a continuation of the streets of Salem, of which it is, virtually, a suburb.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Who were first supposed to be bewitched, and who the accused.*
2. *Who were finally accused.*
a. Burroughs.
b. Aug. 29.
3. *Extent of the delusion.*
4. *Its ending.*

10. [1]Those supposed to be bewitched were mostly children, and persons in the lowest ranks of life; and the accused were at first old women, whose ill-favored looks seemed to mark them the fit instruments of unearthly wickedness. [2]But, finally, neither age, nor sex, nor station, afforded any safeguard against a charge of witchcraft. Magistrates were condemned, and a clergyman[a] of the highest respectability was executed.[b]

11. [3]The alarming extent of the delusion at length opened the eyes of the people. Already twenty persons had suffered death; fifty-five had been tortured or terrified into confessions of witchcraft; a hundred and fifty were in prison; and two hundred more had been accused. [4]When the legislature assembled, in October, remonstrances were urged against the recent proceedings; the spell which had pervaded the land was suddenly dissolved; and although many were subsequently tried, and a few convicted, yet no more were executed. The prominent actors in the late tragedy lamented and condemned the delusion to which they had yielded, and one of the judges, who had presided at the trials, made a frank and full confession of his error.

1693.

1694.
c. July 28.
5. *Events in the war with the French and Indians.*

12. [5]The war with the French and Indians still continued. In 1694, Oyster River,* in New Hampshire, was attacked,[c] and ninety-four persons were killed, or carried away captive. Two years later, the English fort at Pemaquid[d] was surrendered[e] to a large force of French and Indians commanded by the Baron Castine, but the garrison were sent to Boston, where they were exchanged for prisoners in the hands of the English.

1696.
d. Note, p. 198.
e. July 25.

1697.
f. March 25.
6. *At Haverhill.*
7. *Account of Mrs. Duston.*
8. *The war terminated.*
g. Sept. 20.
h. See p. 197.

13. [6]In March, 1697, Haverhill,† in Massachusetts, was attacked,[f] and forty persons were killed, or carried away captive. [7]Among the captives were Mrs. Duston and her nurse, who, with a boy previously taken, fell to the lot of an Indian family, twelve in number. The three prisoners planned an escape from captivity, and in one night, killed ten of the twelve Indians, while they were asleep, and returned in safety to their friends—filling the land with wonder at their successful daring. [8]During the same year King William's war was terminated by the treaty[g] of Ryswick.[h]

---

* *Oyster River* is a small stream, of only twelve or fifteen miles in length, which flows from the west into *Great Bay*, a southern arm, or branch, of the Piscataqua. The settlement mentioned in history as Oyster River, was in the present town of Durham, ten miles N. W. from Portsmouth. (See Map, p. 206.)

† *Haverhill*, in Massachusetts, is on the N. side of the Merrimac, at the head of navigation,—thirty miles north from Boston. The village of Bradford is on the opposite side of the river

1697.

SECTION III.

MASSACHUSETTS, FROM THE CLOSE OF KING WILLIAM'S WAR, IN 1697, TO THE COMMENCEMENT OF THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR, IN 1754. (57 YEARS.)

Subject of Section III.

DIVISIONS.—*I. Massachusetts during Queen Anne's War.—II. King George's War.*

Its Divisions.

I. MASSACHUSETTS DURING QUEEN ANNE'S WAR.—1. [1]After the death of James II., who died[a] in France, in 1701, the French government acknowledged his son, then an exile, as king of England; which was deemed an unpardonable insult to the latter kingdom, which had settled the crown on Anne, the second daughter of James. In addition to this, the French monarch was charged with attempting to destroy the proper balance of power in Europe, by placing his grandson, Philip of Anjou,* on the throne of Spain. These causes led to a war between England, on the one side, and France and Spain on the other, which is commonly known in America as "Queen Anne's War," but, in Europe, as the "War of the Spanish Succession."

1701.

a. Sept.

1. *Causes which led to Queen Anne's war.*

2. [2]The Five Nations had recently concluded a treaty[b] of neutrality with the French of Canada, by which New York was screened from danger; so that the whole weight of Queen Anne's war, in the north, fell upon the New England colonies. [3]The tribes from the Merrimac† to the Penobscot had assented to a treaty[c] of peace with New England; but, through the influence of the French, seven weeks after, it was treacherously broken;[d] and, on one and the same day, the whole frontier, from Casco‡ to Wells,§ was devoted to the tomahawk and the scalping-knife.

b. Aug. 4, 1701.

2. *Where the weight of this war fell, and why.*

3. *Indian tribes from the Merrimac to the Penobscot.*

c. July 1, 1703.

d. Aug. 20.

3. [4]In the following year, 1704, four hundred and fifty French and Indians attacked Deerfield, burned[d] the village, killed more than forty of the inhabitants, and took one hundred and twelve captives, among whom were the minister, Mr. Williams, and his wife; all of whom were immediately ordered to prepare for a long march through the snow to Canada. [5]Those who were unable to keep

1704.

e. March 11.

4. *Attack on Deerfield.*

5. *Fate of the prisoners.*

* *Anjou* was an ancient province in the west of France, on the river Loire.

† The *Merrimac* River, in New Hampshire, is formed by the union of the Pemigewasset and the Winnipiseogee. The former rises near the Notch, in the White Mountains, and at Sanbornton, seventy miles below its source, receives the Winnipiseogee from Winnipiseogee Lake. The course of the Merrimac is then S. E. to the vicinity of Lowell, Massachusetts, when, turning to the N. E., after a winding course of fifty miles, it falls into the Atlantic, at Newburyport.

‡ *Casco.* See *Casco Bay*, p. 198.

§ *Wells* is a town in Maine, thirty miles S.W. from Portland, and twenty N. E. from Portsmouth.

ANALYSIS.

up with the party were slain by the wayside, but most of the survivors were afterwards redeemed, and allowed to return to their homes. A little girl, a daughter of the minister, after a long residence with the Indians, became attached to them, adopted their dress and customs, and afterwards married a Mohawk chief.

1. *General character of the war on the frontiers.*

4. [1]During the remainder of the war, similar scenes were enacted throughout Maine and New Hampshire, and prowling bands of savages penetrated even to the interior settlements of Massachusetts. The frontier settlers abandoned the cultivation of their fields, and collected in buildings which they fortified; and if a garrison, or a family, ceased its vigilance, it was ever liable to be cut off by an enemy who disappeared the moment a blow was struck. The French often accompanied the savages in their expeditions, and made no effort to restrain their cruelties.

1707. June.

2. *Expedition against Port Royal, and final conquest of Acadia.*

5. [2]In 1707 Massachusetts attempted the reduction of Port Royal; and a fleet conveying one thousand soldiers was sent against the place; but the assailants were twice obliged to raise the siege with considerable loss. Not disheartened by the repulse, Massachusetts spent two years more in preparation, and aided by a fleet from England, in 1710 again demanded[a] the surrender of Port Royal. The garrison, weak and dispirited, capitulated[b] after a brief resistance; the name of the place was changed to Annapolis, in honor of Queen Anne; and Acadia, or Nova Scotia, was permanently annexed to the British crown.

1710. a. Oct. 12. b. Oct. 13.

1711. c. July 6. d. Aug. 10.

3. *Attempted conquest of Canada.*

e. Aug. 25.

f. Sept. 2, 3.

6. [3]In July of the next year, a large armament under Sir Hovenden Walker arrived[c] at Boston, and taking in additional forces, sailed,[d] near the middle of August, for the conquest of Canada. The fleet reached[e] the mouth of the St. Lawrence in safety, but here the obstinacy of Walker, who disregarded the advice of his pilots, caused the loss of eight of his ships, and nearly nine hundred men. In the night[f] the ships were driven upon the rocks on the northern shore and dashed to pieces. Weakened by this disaster, the fleet returned to England, and the New England troops to Boston.

g. See p. 233.

4. *Expedition against Montreal.*

h. April 11, 1713.

5. *Close of the war.*

7. [4]A land expedition,[g] under General Nicholson, which had marched against Montreal, returned after learning the failure of the fleet. [5]Two years later the treaty[h] of Utrecht* terminated the war between France

---

* *Utrecht* is a rich and handsome city of Holland, situated on one of the mouths of the Rhine, twenty miles S. E. from Amsterdam. From the top of its lofty cathedral, three hundred and eighty feet high, fifteen or sixteen cities may be seen in a clear day. The place is celebrated for the "Union of Utrecht," formed there in 1579, by which the *United Provinces* declared their independence of Spain;—and likewise for the treaty of 1713.

and England; and, soon after, peace was concluded[a] between the northern colonies and the Indians. **1713.**

a. At Portsmouth. July 24, 1713.

8. [1]During the next thirty years after the close of Queen Anne's war, but few events of general interest occurred in Massachusetts. Throughout most of this period a violent controversy was carried on between the representatives of the people and three successive royal governors,[b] the latter insisting upon receiving a permanent salary, and the former refusing to comply with the demand; preferring to graduate the salary of the governor according to their views of the justice and utility of his administration. [2]A compromise was at length effected, and, instead of a permanent salary, a particular sum was annually voted.

1. Only events of interest that occurred in Massachusetts during the next thirty years.

b. Shute, Burnett, and Belcher.

2. How the controversy was settled.

II. KING GEORGE'S WAR.—1. [3]In 1744, during the reign of George II., war again broke out[c] between France and England, originating in European disputes, relating principally to the kingdom of Austria, and again involving the French and English possessions in America. This war is generally known in America as "King George's War," but, in Europe, as the "*War of the Austrian Succession.*" **1744.**

3. Origin of King George's war.

c. War declared by France 15th March, by G. Britain April 9th.

2. [4]The most important event of the war in America, was the siege and capture of Louisburg.* This place, situated on the island of Cape Breton,† had been fortified by France at great expense, and was regarded by her as the key to her American possessions. [5]William Shirley,

4. Louisburg.

5. Proposal to capture it.

* *Louisburg* is on the S. E. side of the Island of Cape Breton. It has an excellent harbor, of very deep water, nearly six miles in length, but frozen during the winter. After the capture of Louisburg in 1758, (see p. 278,) its walls were demolished, and the materials of its buildings were carried away for the construction of Halifax, and other towns on the coast. Only a few fishermen's huts are now found within the environs of the city, and so complete is the ruin that it is with difficulty that the outlines of the fortifications, and of the principal buildings, can be traced. (See Map.)

† *Cape Breton*, called by the French *Isle Royale*, is a very irregularly shaped island, on the S. E. border of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and separated from Nova Scotia by the narrow channel of Canseau. It is settled mostly by Scotch Highlanders, together with a few of the ancient French Acadians. (See Map.)

ANALYSIS.

1745.

a. Jan.

the governor of Massachusetts, perceiving the importance of the place, and the danger to which its possession by the French subjected the British province of Nova Scotia, laid[a] before the legislature of the colony a plan for its capture.

1. *Preparations for the expedition.*

3. [1]Although strong objections were urged, the governor's proposals were assented to; Connecticut, Rhode Island, and New Hampshire, furnished their quotas of men; New York sent a supply of artillery, and Pennsylvania of provisions. [2]Commodore Warren, then in the West Indies with an English fleet, was invited to cooperate in the enterprise, but he declined doing so without orders from England. [3]This unexpected intelligence was kept a secret, and in April, 1745, the New England forces alone, under William Pepperell, commander-in-chief, and Roger Wolcott, second in command, sailed[b] for Louisburg.

2. *Commodore Warren.*

3. *Sailing of the fleet.*

b. April 4.

4. *Events at Canseau.*

c. Pronounced Can-so.

4. [4]At Canseau[c]* they were unexpectedly met by the fleet of Commodore Warren, who had recently received orders to repair to Boston, and concert measures with Governor Shirley for his majesty's service in North America. [5]On the 11th of May the combined forces, numbering more than 4000 land troops, came in sight of Louisburg, and effected a landing at Gabarus Bay,† which was the first intimation the French had of their danger.

5. *Landing of the troops.*

6. *Account of the siege and conquest of Louisburg.*

d. See Map page 203.

5. [6]On the day after the landing a detachment of four hundred men marched by the city and approached the royal battery,[d] setting fire to the houses and stores on the way. The French, imagining that the whole army was coming upon them, spiked the guns and abandoned the battery, which was immediately seized by the New England troops. Its guns were then turned upon the town, and against the island battery at the entrance of the harbor.

6. As it was necessary to transport the guns over a morass, where oxen and horses could not be used, they were placed on sledges constructed for the purpose, and the men with ropes, sinking to their knees in the mud, drew them safely over. Trenches were then thrown up within two hundred yards of the city,—a battery was erected on the opposite side of the harbor, at the Light House Point, —and the fleet of Warren captured[e] a French 74 gunship, with five hundred and sixty men, and a great quantity of military stores designed for the supply of the garrison.

e. May 29.

---

* *Canseau* is a small island and cape, on which is a small village, at the eastern extremity of Nova Scotia, seventy-five miles S. W. from Louisburg. (See Map preceding page.)

† *Gabarus Bay* is a deep bay on the eastern coast of Cape Breton, a short distance S.W. from Louisburg. (See Map preceding page.)

7. A combined attack by sea and land was planned for the 29th of June, but, on the day previous, the city, fort, and batteries, and the whole island, were surrendered. [1]This was the most important acquisition which England made during the war, and, for its recovery, and the desolation of the English colonies, a powerful naval armament under the Duke d'Anville was sent out by France in the following year. But storms, shipwrecks, and disease, dispersed and enfeebled the fleet, and blasted the hopes of the enemy.

1745.

1. *Importance of this acquisition, and attempts of the French to recover the place.*

1746.

8. [2]In 1748 the war was terminated by the treaty[a] of Aix la Chapelle.* The result proved that neither party had gained any thing by the contest; for all acquisitions made by either were mutually restored. [3]But the causes of a future and more important war still remained in the disputes about boundaries, which were left unsettled; and the "FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR" soon followed,[b] which was the last struggle of the French for dominion in America.

1748.

2. *Close of the war, and terms of the treaty.*

a. Oct. 18.

3. *Causes of a future war.*

b. See p. 267.

CHAPTER III.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.†

Subject of Chapter III.

1. [4]During the greater portion of its colonial existence New Hampshire was united with Massachusetts, and its history is therefore necessarily blended with that of the parent of the New England colonies. [5]But in order to preserve the subject entire, a brief sketch of its separate history will here be given.

4. *With what the history of New Hampshire is blended.*

5. *Why it is here treated separately.*

2. [6]Two of the most active members of the council of Plymouth were Sir Ferdinand Gorges and Captain John Mason. In 1622 they obtained of their associates a grant[c] of land lying partly in Maine and partly in New Hamp-

1622.

6. *Gorges and Mason.*

c. Aug. 20.

---

* *Aix la Chapelle*, (pronounced *Ā lah sha-pell*,) is in the western part of Germany, near the line of Belgium, in the province of the Rhine, which belongs to Prussia. It is a very ancient city, and was long in possession of the Romans, who called it Aquægranii. Its present name was given it by the French, on account of a *chapel* built there by Charlemagne, who for some time made it the capital of his empire. It is celebrated for its hot springs, its baths, and for several important treaties concluded there. It is seventy-five miles E. from Brussels, and 125 S.E. from Amsterdam.

† NEW HAMPSHIRE, one of the Eastern or New England States, lying north of Massachusetts, and west of Maine, is 180 miles long from north to south, and ninety broad in the southern part, and contains an area of about 9500 square miles. It has only eighteen miles of seacoast, and Portsmouth is its only harbor. The country twenty or thirty miles from the sea becomes uneven and hilly, and, toward the northern part, is mountainous. Mount Washington, a peak of the White Mountains, and, next to Black Mountain in N. Carolina, the highest point east of the Rocky Mountains, is 6428 feet above the level of the sea. The elevated parts of the state are a fine grazing country, and the valleys on the margins of the rivers are highly productive.

ANALYSIS.

1623.

1. *First settlements in New Hampshire.*

shire, which they called *Laconia*. [1]In the spring of the following year they sent over two small parties of emigrants, one of which landed at the mouth of the Piscataqua, and settled at Little Harbor,* a short distance below Portsmouth;† the other, proceeding farther up, formed a settlement at Dover.‡

1629.

a. May.

2. *Purchase made by Mr. Wheelright.*

b. Nov. 17.

3. *Separate grant made to Mason.*

4. *How the country was governed.*

3. [2]In 1629 the Rev. John Wheelright and others purchased[a] of the Indians all the country between the Merrimac and the Piscataqua. [3]A few months later, this tract of country, which was a part of the grant to Gorges and Mason, was given[b] to Mason alone, and it then first received the name of New Hampshire. [4]The country was divided among numerous proprietors, and the various settlements during several years were governed separately, by agents of the different proprietors, or by magistrates elected by the people.

1641.

5. *Union with Massachusetts. Separation.*

1680.

c. Royal commission, Sept. 28, 1679. Actual separation, Jan. 1680.

6. *Nature of the new government.*

7. *The change.*

4. [5]In 1641 the people of New Hampshire placed themselves under the protection of Massachusetts, in which situation they remained until 1680, when, after a long controversy with the heirs of Mason, relative to the ownership of the soil, New Hampshire was separated[c] from Massachusetts by a royal commission, and made a royal province. [6]The new government was to consist of a president and council, to be appointed by the king, and a house of representatives to be chosen by the people. [7]No dissatisfaction with the government of Massachusetts had been expressed, and the change to a separate province was received with reluctance by all.

d. March 26.

8. *Assembling of the first Legislature and its proceedings.*

9. *The king's displeasure, and spirit of the people.*

5. [8]The first legislature, which assembled[d] at Portsmouth in 1680, adopted a code of laws, the first of which declared "That no act, imposition, law, or ordinance, should be made, or imposed upon them, but such as should be made by the assembly and approved by the president and council." [9]This declaration, so worthy of freemen, was received with marked displeasure by the king; but New Hampshire, ever after, was as forward as any of her sister colonies in resisting every encroachment upon her just rights.

VICINITY OF PORTSMOUTH.

* *Little Harbor*, the place first settled, is at the southern entrance to the harbor of Portsmouth, two miles below the city, and opposite the town and island of Newcastle. (See L.H. in Map.)

† *Portsmouth*, in New Hampshire, is situated on a peninsula, on the south side of the Piscataqua, three miles from the ocean. It has an excellent harbor, which, owing to the rapidity of the current, is never frozen. It is fifty-four miles N. from Boston, and the same distance S. W. from Portland. (See Map.)

‡ *Dover* village, in N. H., formerly called *Cocheco*, is situated on Cocheco River, four miles above its junction with the Piscataqua, and twelve N.W. from Portsmouth. The first settlement in the town was on a beautiful peninsula between Black and Piscataqua Rivers. (See Map.)

6. [1]Early in the following year Robert Mason arrived, —asserted his right to the province, on the ground of the early grants made to his ancestor, and assumed the title of lord proprietor. But his claims to the soil, and his demands for rent, were resisted by the people. A long controversy ensued; lawsuits were numerous; and judgments for rent were obtained against many of the leading men in the province; but, so general was the hostility to the proprietor, that he could not enforce them.

1681.

1. Controversy with the proprietor about lands.

7. [2]In 1686 the government of Dudley, and afterwards that of Andros, was extended over New Hampshire. When the latter was seized[a] and imprisoned, on the arrival of the news of the revolution in England, the people of New Hampshire took the government into their own hands, and, in 1690, placed[b] themselves under the protection of Massachusetts. [3]Two years later, they were separated from Massachusetts, contrary to their wishes, and a separate royal government was established[c] over them; but in 1699 the two provinces were again united, and the Earl of Bellamont was appointed governor over both.

1686.

2. Dudley and Andros; and the second union with Massachusetts.

a. See p. 199.

1690.

b. March.

3. Separated, and again united.

c. Aug. 1692.

8. [4]In 1691 the heirs of Mason sold their title to the lands in New Hampshire to Samuel Allen, between whom and the people contentions and lawsuits continued until 1715, when the heirs of Allen relinquished their claims in despair. A descendant of Mason, however, subsequently renewed the original claim, on the ground of a defect in the conveyance to Allen. The Masonian controversy was finally terminated by a relinquishment, on the part of the claimants, of all except the unoccupied portions of the territory.

4. Continuance, and final settlement of the Masonian controversy.

9. [5]In 1741, on the removal of Governor Belcher, the provinces of Massachusetts and New Hampshire were separated, never to be united again, and a separate governor was appointed over each. [6]During the forty-two years previous to the separation, New Hampshire had a separate legislative assembly, and the two provinces were, in reality, distinct, with the exception of their being under the administration of the same royal governor.

1741.

5. The final separation from Massachusetts.

6. The nature of the union with Massachusetts.

10. [7]New Hampshire suffered greatly, and perhaps more than any other New England colony, by the several French and Indian wars, whose general history has been already given. A particular recital of the plundering and burning of her towns, of her frontiers laid waste, and her children inhumanly murdered, or led into a wretched captivity, would only exhibit scenes similar to those which have been already described, and we willingly pass by this portion of her local history.

7. The sufferings of New Hampshire during the Indian wars

ANALYSIS.

CHAPTER IV.

CONNECTICUT.*

Subject of Chapter IV.

Its Divisions. Divisions.—*I. Early Settlements.—II. Pequod War.—III. New Haven Colony.—IV. Connecticut under her own Constitution.—V. Connecticut under the Royal Charter.*

1630. I. Early Settlements.—1. [1]In 1630 the soil of Connecticut was granted by the council of Plymouth to the Earl of Warwick; and, in the following year, the Earl of Warwick transferred[a] the same to Lord Say-and-Seal, Lord Brooke and others. Like all the early colonial grants, that of Connecticut was to extend westward from the Atlantic Ocean to the *South Sea*, or the Pacific. [2]During the same year some of the people of Plymouth, with their governor, Mr. Winslow, visited the valley of the Connecticut, by invitation of an Indian chief, who wished the English to make a settlement in that quarter.

1. *Accounts of the early grants of Connecticut.*

1631.

a. March 29.

2. *Visit to the country by the Plymouth people.*

2. [3]The Dutch at New York, apprized of the object of the Plymouth people, determined to anticipate them, and, early in 1633, despatched a party who erected a fort at Hartford.† [4]In October of the same year, a company from Plymouth sailed up the Connecticut River, and passing the Dutch fort, erected a trading-house at Windsor.‡ The Dutch ordered Captain Holmes, the commander of the Plymouth sloop, to strike his colors, and, in case of refusal, threatened to fire upon him; but he declared that he would execute the orders of the governor of Plymouth, and, in spite of their threats, proceeded resolutely onward. [5]In the following year the Dutch sent a company to expel the English from the country, but finding them well fortified, they came to a parley, and finally returned in peace.

3. *Dutch fort at Hartford.*

4. *English trading-house at Windsor.*

1634.

5. *Events that occurred in the following year.*

3. [6]In the summer of 1635, exploring parties from

6. *Emigration from Massachusetts.*

VIC. OF HARTFORD.

* CONNECTICUT, the southernmost of the New England States, is from ninety to 100 miles long from E. to W., and from fifty to seventy broad, and contains an area of about 4700 square miles. The country is, generally, uneven and hilly, and somewhat mountainous in the northwest. The valley of the Connecticut is very fertile, but in most parts of the state the soil is better adapted to grazing than to tillage. An excellent freestone, much used in building, is found in Chatham and Haddam; iron ore of a superior quality in Salisbury and Kent; and fine marble in Milford.

† *Hartford*, one of the capitals of Connecticut, is on the W. side of the Connecticut River, fifty miles from its mouth, by the river's course. Mill, or Little River, passes through the southern part of the city. The old Dutch fort was on the S. side of Mill River, at its entrance into the Connecticut. The Dutch maintained their position until 1654. (See Map.)

‡ *Windsor* is on the W. side of the Connecticut, seven miles N. from Hartford. The village is on the N. side of Farmington River. The trading house erected by the Plymouth people, was below the mouth of Farmington River. The meadow in the vicinity is still called *Plymouth Meadow*. (See Map.)

Massachusetts Bay colony visited the valley of the Connecticut, and, in the autumn of the same year, a company of about sixty men, women, and children, made a toilsome journey through the wilderness, and settled[a] at Windsor, Hartford, and Wethersfield.* [1]In October, the younger Winthrop, son of the governor of Massachusetts, arrived at Boston, with a commission from the proprietors of Connecticut, authorizing him to erect a fort at the mouth of the river of that name, and make the requisite preparations for planting a colony. Scarcely was the fort erected when a Dutch vessel appeared at the mouth of the river, but was not permitted to enter. In honor of Lord Say-and-Seal, and Lord Brooke, the new settlement was named Saybrook,† which continued a separate colony until 1644.

1635.

a. See p. 185.

1. *Settlement of Saybrook.*

II. PEQUOD WAR.—1. [2]During the year 1636 the Pequods, a powerful tribe of Indians residing mostly within the limits of Connecticut, began to annoy the infant colony. [3]In July, the Indians of Block Island,‡ who were supposed to be in alliance with the Pequods, surprised and plundered a trading vessel and killed the captain. An expedition[b] from Massachusetts was sent against them, which invaded the territory of the Pequods, but as nothing important was accomplished, it served only to excite the Indians to greater outrages. During the winter, a number of whites were killed in the vicinity of Saybrook fort. In April following, nine persons were killed at Wethersfield, and the alarm became general throughout the plantations on the Connecticut.

1636.

2. *The Pequods.*

3. *Their depredations upon the English.*

b. Sept. and Oct.

1637.

2. [4]The Pequods, who had long been at enmity with the Narragansetts, now sought their alliance in a general war upon the English; but the exertions[c] of Roger Williams not only defeated their designs, but induced the Narragansetts again to renew the war against their ancient enemy. [5]Early in May, the magistrates of the three infant towns of Connecticut formally declared war against the Pequod nation, and, in ten days, a little army of eighty English, and seventy friendly Mohegan Indians, was on its way against the enemy, whose warriors were said to number more than two thousand men.

4. *Their attempted alliance with the Narragansetts.*

c. See p. 196.

5. *Expedition against them.*

3. [6]The principal seat of the Pequods was near the

6. *Principal seat of the Pequods.*

---

* *Wethersfield* is on the W. side of the Connecticut, four miles S. from Hartford. The river here is continually changing its course, by the wearing away of the land on one side, and its gradual deposit on the other. (See Map.)

† *Saybrook* is on the west side of Connecticut River, at its entrance into Long Island Sound.

‡ *Block Island*, discovered in 1614 by Adrian Blok, a Dutch captain, is twenty-four miles S.W. from Newport. It is attached to Newport Co., R. I., and constitutes the township of Newshoreham. It has no harbor. It is eight miles long from N. to S., and from two to four broad.

ANALYSIS.

1. *The route, &c., of Mason.*

mouth of Pequod River, now called the Thames,* in the eastern part of Connecticut. [1]Captain Mason sailed down the Connecticut with his forces, whence he proceeded to Narragansett Bay,[a] where several hundred of the Narragansetts joined him. He then commenced his march across the country, towards the principal Pequod fort, which stood on an eminence on the west side of Mystic† River, in the present town of Groton.‡ [2]The Pequods were ignorant of his approach, for they had seen the boats of the English pass the mouth of their river a few days before, and they believed that their enemies had fled through fear.

a. Note, p. 215.

2. *What the Pequods thought of the English.*

3. *Attack on the Pequod fort.*

4. [3]Early in the morning of the 5th of June, the soldiers of Connecticut advanced against the fort, while their Indian allies stood aloof, astonished at the boldness of the enterprise. The barking of a dog betrayed their approach, and an Indian, rushing into the fort, gave the alarm; but scarcely were the enemy aroused from their slumbers, when Mason and his little band, having forced an entrance, commenced the work of destruction. The Indians fought bravely, but bows and arrows availed little against weapons of steel. Yet the vast superiority of numbers on the side of the enemy, for a time rendered the victory doubtful. "We must burn them!" shouted Mason, and applying a firebrand, the frail Indian cabins were soon enveloped in flame.

4. *Destruction of the Pequods.*

5. [4]The English now hastily withdrew and surrounded the place, while the savages, driven from their inclosure, became, by the light of the burning pile, a sure prey to the English muskets; or, if they attempted a sally, they were cut down by the broadsword, or they fell under the weapons of the Narragansetts, who now rushed forward to the slaughter. As the sun rose upon the scene of destruction it showed that the victory was complete. About six hundred Indians,—men, women, and children, had perished; most of them in the hideous conflagration. Of the whole number within the fort, only seven escaped, and seven were made prisoners. [5]Two of the whites were killed, and nearly twenty were wounded.

5. *Loss of the English.*

6. *Farther history of the Pequods.*

6. [6]The loss of their principal fort, and the destruction of the main body of their warriors, so disheartened the

* The *Pequod*, or *Thames* River, rises in Massachusetts, and, passing south through the eastern part of Connecticut, enters Long Island Sound, below New London. It is generally called *Quinebaug* from its source to Norwich. On the west it receives Shetucket, Yantic, and other small streams. It is navigable fourteen miles, to Norwich.

† *Mystic* River is a small river which enters L. I. Sound, six miles E. from the Thames.

‡ The town of *Groton* lies between the Thames and the Mystic, bordering on the Sound. The Pequod fort, above mentioned, was on Pequod Hill, in the N.E. part of the town, about half a mile west from Mystic River, and eight miles N.E. from New London. A public road now crosses the hill, and a dwelling-house occupies its summit.

Pequods, that they no longer made a stand against the English. They scattered in every direction; straggling parties were hunted and shot down like deer in the woods; their Sachem, Sassacus, was murdered by the Mohawks, to whom he fled for protection; their territory was laid waste; their settlements were burned, and about two hundred survivors, the sole remnant of the Pequod nation, surrendering in despair, were enslaved by the English, or incorporated among their Indian allies. [1]The vigor with which the war had been prosecuted, struck terror into the other tribes of New England, and secured to the settlements a succession of many years of peace. **1637.**

1. Effect of the war on other tribes.

III. NEW HAVEN COLONY.—1. [2]The pursuit of the Pequods westward of the Connecticut, made the English acquainted with the coast from Saybrook[a] to Fairfield;* and late in the year, a few men from Boston explored the country, and, erecting a hut at New Haven,† there passed the winter.

2. Discovery and settlement of New Haven.
a. Note, page 209.

2. In the spring of the following year, a Puritan colony, under the guidance of Theophilus Eaton, and the Rev. John Davenport, who had recently arrived from Europe, left[b] Boston for the new settlement at New Haven. [3]They passed their first Sabbath[c] under a spreading oak,‡ and Mr. Davenport explained to the people, with much counsel adapted to their situation, how the Son of Man was led into the wilderness to be tempted. **1638.**

b. April 9.
3. First Sabbath at New Haven.
c. April 28.

3. [4]The settlers of New Haven established a government upon strictly religious principles, making the Bible their law-book, and church-members the only freemen. Mr. Eaton, who was a merchant of great wealth, and who had been deputy-governor of the British East India Company, was annually chosen governor of New Haven colony during twenty years, until his death. [5]The colony quickly assumed a flourishing condition. The settlements extended rapidly along the Sound, and, in all cases, the lands were honorably purchased of the natives.

4. The government of the colony

5. Its prosperity.

IV. CONNECTICUT UNDER HER OWN CONSTITUTION.—1. [6]In 1639 the inhabitants of the three towns on the Con- **1639.**

6. Important events in 1639.

---

* *Fairfield* borders on the Sound, fifty miles S. W. from the mouth of the Connecticut. Some of the Pequods were pursued to a great swamp in this town. Some were slain, and about 200 surrendered. The town was first settled by a Mr. Ludlow and others in 1639.

† *New Haven*, now one of the capitals of Connecticut, called by the Indians *Quinipiac*, lies at the head of a harbor which sets up four miles from Long Island Sound. It is about seventy-five miles N.E. from New York, and thirty-four S. W. from Hartford. The city is on a beautiful plain, bounded on the west by West River, and on the east by Wallingford, or Quinipiac River. Yale College is located at New Haven. (See Map.)

‡ This tree stood near the corner of George and College streets.

NEW HAVEN.

ANALYSIS.

necticut, who had hitherto acknowledged the authority of Massachusetts, assembled[a] at Hartford, and formed a separate government for themselves. [1]The constitution was one of unexampled liberality, guarding with jealous care against every encroachment on the rights of the people. The governor and legislature were to be chosen annually by the freemen, who were required to take an oath of allegiance to the commonwealth, instead of the English monarch; and in the general court alone was vested the power of making and repealing laws. [2]At this time three separate colonies existed within the limits of the present state of Connecticut.

a. Jan. 24.

1. *First constitution of Connecticut.*

2. *Separate colonies in Connecticut.*

3. *Disputes with the Dutch.*

2. [3]The Connecticut colonies were early involved in disputes with the Dutch of New Netherlands, who claimed the soil as far eastward as the Connecticut River. The fear of an attack from that quarter, was one of the causes which, in 1643, led to the confederation of the New England colonies for mutual defence. [4]In 1644 Saybrook was purchased of George Fenwick, one of the proprietors, and permanently annexed to the Connecticut colony. [5]In 1650 Governor Stuyvesant visited Hartford, where a treaty was concluded, determining the line of partition between New Netherlands and Connecticut.

1644.

4. *Purchase of Saybrook.*

5. *Treaty with the Dutch.*

1651.

3. [6]In 1651 war broke out between England and Holland, and although their colonies in America had agreed to remain at peace, the governor of New Netherlands was accused of uniting with the Indians, in plotting the destruction of the English. [7]The commissioners of the United Colonies decided[b] in favor of commencing hostilities against the Dutch and Indians, but Massachusetts refused to furnish her quota of men, and thus prevented the war. [8]Connecticut and New Haven then applied to Cromwell for assistance, who promptly despatched[c] a fleet for the reduction of New Netherlands; but while the colonies were making preparations to co-operate with the naval force, the news of peace in Europe arrested the expedition.

6. *War between England and Holland.*

7. *What prevented a war in America.*

[b]1653.

8. *What colonies applied to Cromwell, and the result.*

[c]1654.

1660.

V. Connecticut under the Royal Charter.—1. [9]When Charles II. was restored[c] to the throne of his ancestors, Connecticut declared her loyalty, and submission to the king, and applied for a royal charter. [10]The aged Lord Say-and-Seal, the early friend of the emigrants, now exerted his influence in their favor; while the younger Winthrop, then governor of the colony, went to England as its agent. When he appeared before the king with his petition, he presented him a favorite ring which Charles I. had given to Winthrop's grandfather. This trifling token, recalling to the king the memory of

9. *Loyalty of Connecticut.*

d. May.

10. *The royal charter—its character.*

1662.

his own unfortunate father, readily won his favor, and Connecticut thereby obtained a charter,[a] the most liberal that had yet been granted, and confirming, in every particular, the constitution which the people themselves had adopted. **1662.**

a. May 30.

2. [1]The royal charter, embracing the territory from the Narragansett Bay and River westward to the Pacific Ocean, included, within its limits, the New Haven colony, and most of the present state of Rhode Island. [2]New Haven reluctantly united with Connecticut in 1665. [3]The year after the grant of the Connecticut charter, Rhode Island received[b] one which extended her western limits to the Pawcatuck* River, thus including a portion of the territory granted to Connecticut, and causing a controversy between the two colonies, which continued more than sixty years.

1. Territory embraced by the charter.

2. New Haven.

1665.

3. The Rhode Island charter.

b. July 18, 1663.

3. [4]During King Philip's war, which began in 1675, Connecticut suffered less, in her own territory, than any of her sister colonies, but she furnished her proportion of troops for the common defence. [5]At the same time, however, she was threatened with a greater calamity, in the loss of her liberties, by the usurpations of Andros, then governor of New York, who attempted to extend his arbitrary authority over the country as far east as the Connecticut River.

1675.

4. Connecticut during King Philip's war.

5. Usurpations of Andros

4. [6]In July, Andros, with a small naval force, proceeded to the mouth of the Connecticut, and hoisting the king's flag, demanded[c] the surrender of the fort; but Captain Bull, the commander, likewise showing his majesty's colors, expressed his determination to defend it. Being permitted to land, Andros attempted to read his commission to the people, but, in the king's name, he was sternly commanded to desist. He finally returned to New York without accomplishing his object.

6. Expedition to Connecticut, and its result.

c. July 21.

5. [7]Twelve years later, Andros again appeared in Connecticut, with a commission from King James, appointing him royal governor of all New England. Proceeding to Hartford, he found the assembly in session, and demanded[d] the surrender of the charter. A discussion arose, which was prolonged until evening. The charter was then brought in and laid on the table. While the discussion was proceeding, and the house was thronged with citizens, suddenly the lights were extinguished. The utmost decorum prevailed, but when the candles

1687.

7. Second visit of Andros to Connecticut.

d. Nov. 1[illegible].

* The *Pawcatuck*, formed by the junction of Wood and Charles Rivers in Washington County, Rhode Island, is still, in the lower part of its course, the dividing line between Connecticut and Rhode Island.

ANALYSIS.

were re-lighted, the charter was missing, and could no where be found.

1. *The charter preserved.*

6. [1]A Captain Wadsworth had secreted it in a hollow tree, which is still standing, and which retains the venerated name of the Charter Oak. [2]Andros, however, assumed the government, which was administered in his name until the revolution[a] in England deprived James of his throne, and restored the liberties of the people.

2. *What then was done by Andros.*

1689.

a. See p. 197.

3. *Events during King William's war.*

b. 1689—1697

7. [3]During King William's war,[b] which immediately followed the English revolution, the people of Connecticut were again called to resist an encroachment on their rights. [4]Colonel Fletcher, governor of New York, had received a commission vesting in him the command of the militia of Connecticut. [5]This was a power which the charter of Connecticut had reserved to the colony itself, and the legislature refused to comply with the requisition. Fletcher then repaired to Hartford, and ordered the militia under arms.

4. *Fletcher's commission.*

5. *What course was taken by the legislature, and what by Fletcher.*

1693.

Nov. 6.

6. *Fletcher's visit to Hartford.*

8. [6]The Hartford companies, under Captain Wadsworth, appeared, and Fletcher ordered his commission and instructions to be read to them. Upon this, Captain Wadsworth commanded the drums to be beaten. Colonel Fletcher commanded silence, but no sooner was the reading commenced a second time, than the drums, at the command of Wadsworth, were again beaten with more spirit than ever. But silence was again commanded, when Wadsworth, with great earnestnes, ordered the drums to be beaten, and turning to Fletcher said, with spirit and meaning in his looks, "If I am interrupted again I will make the sun shine through you in a moment." Governor Fletcher made no farther attempts to read his commission, and soon judged it expedient to return to New York.

1700.

7. *Establishment of Yale College.*

9. [7]In the year 1700, several clergymen assembled at Branford,* and each, producing a few books, laid them on the table, with these words: "I give these books for the founding of a college in this colony." Such was the beginning of Yale College, now one of the most honored institutions of learning in the land. It was first established[c] at Saybrook, and was afterwards removed[d] to New Haven. It derived its name from Elihu Yale, one of its most liberal patrons.

c 1702.
d 1717.

8. *Remaining history of Connecticut.*

10. [8]The remaining portion of the colonial history of Connecticut is not marked by events of sufficient interest to require any farther notice than they may gain in the

* *Branford* is a town in Connecticut, bordering on the Sound, seven miles E. from New Haven.

more general history of the colonies. [1]The laws, customs, manners, and religious notions of the people, were similar to those which prevailed in the neighboring colony of Massachusetts, and, generally, throughout New England.

1717.

1 *Laws, customs, manners, &c.*

CHAPTER V.

RHODE ISLAND.*

Subject of Chapter V.

1. [2]After Roger Williams had been banished from Massachusetts, he repaired[a] to the country of the Narragansetts, who inhabited nearly all the territory which now forms the state of Rhode Island. [3]By the sachems of that tribe he was kindly received, and during fourteen weeks he found a shelter in their wigwams from the severity of winter. [4]On the opening of spring he proceeded to Seekonk,† on the north of Narragansett Bay,‡ and having been joined by a few faithful friends from Massachusetts, he obtained a grant of land from an Indian chief, and made preparations for a settlement.

2 *Roger Williams after his banishment from Massachusetts.*

a. Jan. 1636.

3 *How received by the Narragansetts.*

4. *What he did in the spring.*

2. [5]Soon after, finding that he was within the limits of the Plymouth colony, and being advised by Mr. Winslow, the governor, to remove to the other side of the water, where he might live unmolested, he resolved to comply with the friendly advice. [6]Embarking[b] with five companions in a frail Indian canoe, he passed down the Narragansett River§ to Moshassuck, which he selected as the place of settlement, purchased the land of the chiefs of the Narragansetts, and, with unshaken confidence in the mercies of Heaven, named the place Providence.‖ [7]The settlement was called Providence Plantation.

5. *Whither he was advised to remove, and why.*

6. *Settlement of Providence.*

b. June.

7. *Name of the settlement.*

---

* RHODE ISLAND, the smallest state in the Union, contains an area, separate from the waters of Narragansett Bay, of about 1225 square miles. In the northwestern part of the state the surface of the country is hilly, and the soil poor. In the south and west the country is generally level, and in the vicinity of Narragansett Bay, and on the islands which it contains, the soil is very fertile.

† The town of *Seekonk*, the western part of the early *Rehoboth*, lies east of, and adjoining the northern part of Narragansett Bay. The village is on Ten Mile River, three or four miles east from Providence. (See Map)

‡ *Narragansett Bay* is in the eastern part of the state of Rhode Island, and is twenty-eight miles long from N. to S., and from eight to twelve broad. The N.E. arm of the bay is called *Mount Hope Bay;* the northern, *Providence Bay;* and the N. Western, *Greenwich Bay.* It contains a number of beautiful and fertile islands, the principal of which are Rhode Island, Conanicut, and Prudence. (See Map.)

§ The northern part of Narragansett Bay was often called *Narragansett River.*

‖ *Providence*, one of the capitals of Rhode Island, is in the northern part of the state, at the head of Narragansett Bay, and on both sides of Providence River, which is, properly, a small

ANALYSIS.

1. *Effects produced by religious toleration.*

3. [1]As Roger Williams brought with him the same principles of religious toleration, for avowing and maintaining which he had suffered banishment, Providence became the asylum for the persecuted of the neighboring colonies; but the peace of the settlement was never seriously disturbed by the various and discordant opinions which gained admission. [2]It was found that the numerous and conflicting sects of the day could dwell together in harmony, and the world beheld, with surprise, the novel experiment of a government in which the magistrates were allowed to rule "only in civil matters," and in which "God alone was respected as the ruler of conscience."

2. *Novel experiment.*

3. *The government of the colony.*

4. [3]The political principles of Roger Williams were as liberal as his religious opinions. For the purpose of preserving peace, all the settlers were required to subscribe to an agreement that they would submit to such rules, "not affecting the conscience," as should be made for the public good, by a majority of the inhabitants; and under this simple form of pure democracy, with all the powers of government in the hands of the people, the free institutions of Rhode Island had their origin. [4]The modest and liberal founder of the state reserved no political power to himself, and the territory which he had purchased of the natives he freely granted to all the inhabitants in common, reserving to himself only two small fields, which, on his first arrival, he had planted with his own hands.

4. *Liberality of Mr. Williams.*

5. *Plot of the Pequods.*

5. [5]Soon after the removal of Mr. Williams to Providence, he gave to the people of Massachusetts, who had recently expelled him from their colony, the first intimation of the plot which the Pequods were forming for their destruction. [6]When the Pequods attempted to form an alliance with the Narragansetts, the magistrates of Massachusetts solicited the mediation of Mr. Williams, whose influence was great with the chiefs of the latter tribe. [7]Forgetting the injuries which he had received from those who now needed his favor, on a stormy day, alone, and in a poor canoe, he set out upon the Narragansett, and through many dangers repaired to the cabin of Canonicus.

6. *Mr. Williams' mediation solicited.*

7. *His conduct.*

8. *His embassy to the Narragansetts.*

6. [8]There the Pequod ambassadors and Narragansett chiefs had already assembled in council, and three days and nights Roger Williams remained with them, in constant danger from the Pequods, whose hands, he says, seemed to be still reeking with the blood of his countrymen, and whose knives he expected nightly at his throat. But, as Mr. Williams himself writes, "God wonderfully

---

bay, setting up N.W. from the Narragansett. The Pawtucket or Blackstone River falls into the head of Narragansett Bay, from the N.E., a little below Providence. Brown University is located at Providence, on the east side of the River. (See Map.)

preserved him, and helped him to break in pieces the negotiation and designs of the enemy, and to finish, by many travels and charges, the English league with the Narragansetts and Mohegans against the Pequods." 1636.

7. [1]The settlers at Providence remained unmolested during the Pequod war, as the powerful tribe of the Narragansetts completely sheltered them from the enemy. [2]Such, however, was the aid which Mr. Williams afforded, in bringing that war to a favorable termination, that some of the leading men in Massachusetts felt that he deserved to be honored with some mark of favor for his services. [3]The subject of recalling him from banishment was debated, but his principles were still viewed with distrust, and the fear of their influence overcame the sentiment of gratitude.

1. Situation of Providence during the Pequod war.

2. Aid rendered by Mr. Williams.

3. Why he was not recalled from banishment.

8. [4]In 1638 a settlement was made[a] at Portsmouth,* in the northern part of the island of Aquetneck, or Rhode Island,† by William Coddington and eighteen others, who had been driven from Massachusetts by persecution for their religious opinions. [5]In imitation of the form of government which once prevailed among the Jews, Mr. Coddington was chosen[b] judge, and three elders were elected to assist him, but in the following year the chief magistrate received the title of governor. [6]Portsmouth received considerable accessions during the first year, and in the spring of 1639 a number of the inhabitants removed to the southwestern part of the island, where they laid the foundation of Newport.‡ [7]The settlements on the island rapidly extended, and the whole received the name of the Rhode Island Plantation.

1638.

4. Settlement of Portsmouth.

a. April.

5. Form of government.

b. Nov

1639.

6. Settlement of Newport.

7. Name given to the new settlements.

9. [8]Under the pretence that the Providence and Rhode Island Plantations had no charter, and that their territory was claimed by Plymouth and Massachusetts, they were excluded from the confederacy which was formed between the other New England colonies in 1643. [9]Roger Williams therefore proceeded to England, and, in the following year, obtained[c] from Parliament, which was then waging a civil war with the king, a free charter of incorporation, by which the two plantations were united under the same government.

1643.

8. The Plantations excluded from the union of 1643.

9. The charter from Parliament.

1644.

c. March 24

* The town of *Portsmouth* is in the northern part of the island of Rhode Island, and embraces about half of the island. The island of Prudence, on the west, is attached to this town. (See Map, p. 215.)

† *Rhode Island*, so called from a fancied resemblance to the island of Rhodes in the Mediterranean, is in the southeastern part of Narragansett Bay. It is fifteen miles long, and has an average width of two and a half miles. The town of Portsmouth occupies the northern part of the Island, Middletown the central portion, and Newport the southern. (See Map, p. 215.)

‡ *Newport* is on the S.W. side of Rhode Island, five miles from the sea, and twenty-five miles S. from Providence. The town is on a beautiful declivity, and has an excellent harbor (See Map, p. 215.)

ANALYSIS.

a May 29.

1. *Organization of the government, and early laws of Rhode Island.*

10. [1]In 1647 the General Assembly of the several towns met[a] at Portsmouth, and organized the government, by the choice of a president and other officers. A code of laws was also adopted, which declared the government to be a democracy, and which closed with the declaration, that "all men might walk as their consciences persuaded them, without molestation, every one in the name of his God."

b. 1660.

2. *Charter from the king, and its principles.*

c. July 18, 1663.

11. [2]After the restoration[b] of monarchy, and the accession of Charles II. to the throne of England, Rhode Island applied for and obtained[c] a charter from the king, in which the principles of the former parliamentary charter, and those on which the colony was founded, were embodied. The greatest toleration in matters of religion was enjoined by the charter, and the legislature again reasserted the principle. [3]It has been said that Roman Catholics were excluded from the right of voting, but no such regulation has ever been found in the laws of the colony; and the assertion that Quakers were persecuted and outlawed, is wholly erroneous.

3. *Catholics and Quakers.*

4. *Rhode Island during and after the usurpation of Andros.*

d. Jan. 1687.

e. See p. 197.

f. May 11, 1689.

g. See the seal, p. 99.

12. [4]When Andros assumed the government of the New England colonies, Rhode Island quietly submitted[d] to his authority; but when he was imprisoned[e] at Boston, and sent to England, the people assembled[f] at Newport, and resuming their former charter privileges, re-elected the officers whom Andros had displaced. Once more the free government of the colony was organized, and its seal was restored, with its symbol an anchor, and its motto Hope,[g] —fit emblems of the steadfast zeal with which Rhode Island has ever cherished all her early religious freedom, and her civil rights.

CHAPTER VI.

Subject of Chapter VI.

NEW YORK.*

SECTION I.

Of Section I.

NEW NETHERLANDS PREVIOUS TO ITS CONQUEST BY THE ENGLISH IN 1664.

1. *First two voyages of Henry Hudson.*

1. [5]During the years 1607 and 1608, Henry Hudson, an English mariner of some celebrity, and then in the

* NEW YORK, the most northern of the Middle States, and now the most populous in the Union, has an area of nearly 47,000 square miles. This state has a great variety of surface.

employ of a company of London merchants, made two voyages to the northern coasts of America, with the hope of finding a passage through those icy seas, to the genial climes of southern Asia. [1]His employers being disheartened by his failure, he next entered the service of the Dutch East India Company, and, in April, 1609, sailed[a] on his third voyage.

1607.

1. *Third voyage.*

1609.

a. April 14.

2. [2]Failing to discover a northern passage to India, he turned to the south, and explored the eastern coast, in the hope of finding an opening to the Pacific, through the continent. After proceeding south as far as the capes* of Virginia, he again turned north, examined the waters of Delaware Bay,† and, following the eastern coast of New Jersey, on the 13th of September he anchored his vessel within Sandy Hook.‡

2. *Account of the voyage.*

3. [3]After a week's delay, Hudson passed[b] through the Narrows,§ and, during ten days, continued to ascend the noble river which bears his name; nor was it until his vessel had passed beyond the city of Hudson,‖ and a boat had advanced probably beyond Albany, that he appears to have relinquished all hopes of being able to reach the Pacific by this inland passage. [4]Having completed his discovery, he slowly descended the stream, and sailing[c] for Europe, reached England in the November[d] following. The king, James the First, jealous of the advantages which the Dutch might seek to derive from the discovery, forbade his return to Holland.

3. *Discovery of Hudson River.*

b. Sept. 23

4. *Hudson's return. and his treatment by the king.*

c. Oct. 14.

d. Nov. 17.

1610.

4. [5]In the following year, 1610, the Dutch East India Company fitted out a ship with merchandize, to traffick with the natives of the country which Hudson had ex-

5 *What was done by the Dutch East India Company.*

Two chains of the Alleghanies pass through the eastern part of the state. The Highlands, coming from New Jersey, cross the Hudson near West Point, and soon after pass into Connecticut. The Catskill mountains, farther west, and more irregular in their outlines, cross the Mohawk, and continue under different names, along the western border of Lake Champlain. The western part of the state has generally a level surface, except in the southern tier of counties, where the western ranges of the Alleghanies terminate. The soil throughout the state is, generally, good; and along the valley of the Mohawk, and in the western part of the state, it is highly fertile.

* Capes Charles and Henry, at the entrance of Chesapeake Bay.

† *Delaware Bay* is a large arm of the sea, setting up into the land between New Jersey and Delaware; and having, at its entrance, Cape May on the north, and Cape Henlopen on the south, eighteen miles apart. Some distance within the capes the bay is thirty miles across. This bay has no safe natural harbor, but a good artificial harbor has been constructed by the general government within Cape Henlopen. It is formed by two massive stone piers, called the *Delaware Breakwater.*

‡ *Sandy Hook* is a low sandy island, on the eastern coast of New Jersey, extending north from the N. Eastern extremity of Monmouth County, and separated from it by Shrewsbury Inlet. It is five miles in length, and seventeen miles S. from New York. At the northern extremity of the island is a light-house, but the accumulating sand is gradually extending the point farther north. Sandy Hook was a peninsula until 1778, when the waters of the ocean forced a passage, and cut it off from the mainland. In 1800 the inlet was closed, but it was opened again in 1830, and now admits vessels through its channel

§ The entrance to New York harbor, between Long Island on the east and Staten Island on the west, is called the *Narrows.* It is about one mile wide, and is nine miles below the city. (See Map next page.)

‖ The city of *Hudson* is on the east side of Hudson River, 116 miles N. from New York and twenty-nine miles S. from Albany.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Condition of the Dutch settlement at the time of Argall's visit.*

a. See p. 168.

plored. [1]The voyage being prosperous, the traffic was continued; and when Argall, in 1613, was returning from his excursion[a] against the French settlement of Port Royal, he found on the island of Manhattan* a few rude hovels, which the Dutch had erected there as a summer station for those engaged in the trade with the natives.

2. *Result of Argall's visit.*

5. [2]The Dutch, unable to make any resistance against the force of Argall, quietly submitted to the English claim of sovereignty over the country; but, on his departure, they continued their traffic,—passed the winter there, and, in the following year, erected a rude fort on the southern part of the island. [3]In 1615 they began a settlement at Albany,† which had been previously visited, and erected a fort which was called Fort Orange. The country in their possession was called New Netherlands.‡

1614.

3. *New settlement soon after made.*

4. *Government of the country, when actually colonized,—and when the first governor was appointed.*

6. [4]During several years, Directors, sent out by the East India Company, exercised authority over the little settlement of New Amsterdam on the island of Manhattan, but it was not until 1623 that the actual colonizing of the country took place, nor until 1625 that an actual governor was formally appointed. [5]In 1621 the Dutch West India Company was formed, and, in the same year, the States-General of Holland granted to it the exclusive privilege to traffick and plant colonies on the American coast, from the Straits of Magellan to the remotest north.

1621.

5. *Dutch West India Company.*

1623.

6. *Attempted settlement in the southern part of New Jersey.*

7. [6]In 1623 a number of settlers, duly provided with the means of subsistence, trade, and defence, were sent out under the command of Cornelius Mey, who not only visited Manhattan, but, entering Delaware Bay, and

NEW YORK AND VICINITY.

* *Manhattan*, or New York island, lies on the east side of Hudson River, at the head of New York harbor. It is about fourteen miles in length, and has an average width of one mile and three-fifths. It is separated from Long Island on the east, by a strait called the East River, which connects the harbor and Long Island Sound; and from the mainland on the east by Harlem River, a strait which connects the East River and the Hudson. The Dutch settlement on the southern part of the island, was called *New Amsterdam*. Here now stands the city of *New York*, the largest in America, and second only to London in the amount of its commerce. The city is rapidly increasing in size, although its compact parts already have a circumference of about nine miles. (See Map.)

† *Albany*, now the capital of the state of New York, is situated on the west bank of the Hudson River, 145 miles N. from New York by the river's course. It was first called by the Dutch Beaverwyck, and afterwards Williamstadt. (See Map, next page.)

‡ The country from Cape Cod to the banks of the Delaware was claimed by the Dutch

ascending the river,* took possession of the country, and, a few miles below Camden,† in the present New Jersey, built Fort Nassau.‡ The fort, however, was soon after abandoned, and the worthy Captain Mey carried away with him the affectionate regrets of the natives, who long cherished his memory. [1]Probably a few years before this, the Dutch settled at Bergen,§ and other places west of the Hudson, in New Jersey. **1623.**

1. *Settlement in the north of New Jersey.*

8. [2]In 1625 Peter Minuits arrived at Manhattan, as governor of New Netherlands, and in the same year the settlement of Brooklyn,‖ on Long Island,¶ was commenced. [3]The Dutch colony at this time showed a disposition to cultivate friendly relations with the English settlements in New England, and mutual courtesies were exchanged,—the Dutch cordially inviting[a] the Plymouth settlers to remove to the more fertile soil of the Connecticut, and the English advising the Dutch to secure their claim to the banks of the Hudson by a treaty with England. 1625.

2. *Events in 1625.*

3. *Feelings entertained by the Dutch and the English colonists towards each other.*

a. Oct.

9. [4]Although Holland claimed the country, on the ground of its discovery by Hudson, yet it was likewise claimed by England, on the ground of the first discovery of the continent by Cabot. [5]The pilgrims expressed the kindest wishes for the prosperity of the Dutch, but, at the same time, requested them not to send their skiffs into Narragansett Bay for beaver skins. [6]The Dutch at Manhattan were at that time little more than a company of hunters and traders, employed in the traffic of the furs of the otter and the beaver.

4. *Opposing claims to the country.*

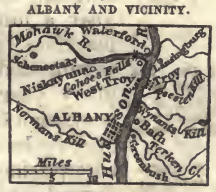
5. *What the Pilgrims requested of the Dutch.*

6. *Condition of the Dutch at Manhattan.*

10. [7]In 1629 the West India Company, in the hope of exciting individual enterprise to colonize the country, promised, by "a charter of liberties," the grant of an extensive tract of land to each individual who should, within four years, form a settlement of fifty persons. Those who 1629.

7. *Account of the "charter of liberties."*

ALBANY AND VICINITY.



* The *Delaware* River rises in the S. Eastern part of the state of New York, west of the Catskill mountains. It forms sixty miles of the boundary line between New York and Pennsylvania, and during the remainder of its course is the boundary between New Jersey, on the one side, and Pennsylvania and Delaware on the other. It is navigable for vessels of the largest class to Philadelphia.

† *Camden*, now a city, is situated on the east side of Delaware River, opposite Philadelphia. (See Map, p. 248.)

‡ This fort was on Big Timber Creek, in the present Gloucester County, about five miles S. from Camden.

§ The village of *Bergen* is on the summit of Bergen Ridge, three miles W. from Jersey City, and four from New York. (See Map, p. 220.)

‖ *Brooklyn*, now a city, is situated on elevated land at the west end of Long Island, opposite the lower part of the city of New York, from which it is separated by East River, three-fourths of a mile wide. (See Map, p. 220.)

¶ *Long Island*, forming a part of the state of New York, lies south of Connecticut, from which it is separated by Long Island Sound. It is 120 miles in length, and has an average width of about twelve miles. It contains an area of about 1450 square miles, and is, therefore, larger than the entire state of Rhode Island. The north side of the island is rough and hilly—the south low and sandy. (See Map, p. 220.)

ANALYSIS.

should plant colonies were to purchase the land of the Indians, and it was likewise enjoined upon them that they should, at an early period, provide for the support of a minister and a schoolmaster, that the service of God, and zeal for religion, might not be neglected.

1. *Appropriations of land.*

11. [1]Under this charter, four directors of the company, distinguished by the title of patrons or patroons, appropriated to themselves some of the most valuable portions of the territory. [2]One[a] of the patroons having purchased[b] from the natives the southern half of the present state of Delaware, a colony under De Vriez was sent out, and early in 1631 a small settlement was formed near the present Lewistown.* [3]The Dutch now occupied Delaware, and the claims of New Netherlands extended over the whole country from Cape Henlopen† to Cape Cod.[c]

a. Godyn.
b. June.
2. *Attempt to form a settlement in Delaware.*
3. *Extent of the Dutch claims.*
c. Note, p. 134.

1632.

12. [4]After more than a year's residence in America, De Vriez returned to Holland, leaving his infant colony to the care of one Osset. The folly of the new commandant, in his treatment of the natives, soon provoked their jealousy, and on the return[d] of De Vriez, at the end of the year, he found the fort deserted. Indian vengeance had prepared an ambush, and every white man had been murdered. [5]De Vriez himself narrowly escaped the perfidy of the natives, being saved by the kind interposition of an Indian woman, who warned him of the designs of her countrymen. [6]After proceeding to Virginia for the purpose of obtaining provisions, De Vriez sailed to New Amsterdam, where he found[e] Wouter Van Twiller, the second governor, who had just been sent out to supersede the discontented Minuits.

4. *Fate of the Delaware colony*
d. Dec.
5. *Escape of De Vriez.*

1633.

6. *Places visited.*
e. April.

13. [7]A few months before the arrival of Van Twiller as governor, the Dutch had purchased of the natives the soil around Hartford,[f] and had erected[g] and fortified a trading-house on land within the limits of the present city. The English, however, claimed the country; and in the same year a number of the Plymouth colonists proceeded up the river, and in defiance of the threats of the Dutch commenced[h] a settlement at Windsor. [8]Although for many years the Dutch West India Company retained possession of their feeble trading station, yet it was finally overwhelmed by the numerous settlements of the more enterprising New Englanders. [9]The English likewise formed settlements on the eastern end of Long Island, although they were for a season resisted by the Dutch, who claimed the whole island as a part of New Netherlands.

7. *First settlement of the Dutch, and of the English, in Connecticut.*
f. N. p 208.
g. Jan.
h. Oct. See page 208
8. *Fate of the Dutch trading station.*
9. *Settlements on Long Island.*

---

* *Lewistown* is on Lewis Creek, in Sussex County, Delaware, five or six miles from Cape Henlopen. In front of the village is the Delaware Breakwater.

† *Cape Henlopen* is the southern cape of the entrance into Delaware Bay.

1633.

14. [1]While the English were thus encroaching upon the Dutch on the east, the southern portion of the territory claimed by the latter was seized by a new competitor. Gustavus Adolphus, king of Sweden, the hero of his age, and the renowned champion of the Protestant religion in Europe, had early conceived the design of planting colonies in America. Under the auspices of the Swedish monarch a commercial company was formed for this purpose as early as 1626, but the German war, in which Gustavus was soon after engaged, delayed for a time the execution of the project. [2]After the death[a] of Gustavus, which happened at the battle of Lutzen,* in 1633, his worthy minister renewed the plan of an American settlement, the execution of which he intrusted to Peter Minuits, the first governor of New Netherlands.

1. Design of Gustavus Adolphus for planting colonies in America.

2. Minister of Gustavus.

a. Nov. 26, 1633.

1638.

15. [3]Early in the year 1638, about the same time that Sir William Kieft succeeded Van Twiller, in the government of New Netherlands, the Swedish colony under Minuits arrived, erected a fort, and formed a settlement on Christiana Creek,† near Wilmington,‡ within the present state of Delaware. [4]Kieft, considering this an intrusion upon his territories, sent[b] an unavailing remonstrance to the Swedes, and, as a check to their aggressions, rebuilt Fort Nassau on the eastern bank of the Delaware. [5]The Swedes gradually extended their settlements, and, to preserve their ascendency over the Dutch, their governor established[c] his residence and built a fort on the island of Tinicum,§ a few miles below Philadelphia. [6]The territory occupied by the Swedes, extending from Cape Henlopen to the falls in the Delaware, opposite Trenton,‖ was called NEW SWEDEN.

3. Settlement of Delaware.

4. Opposition made by the Dutch.

b. May.

5. Progress of the Swedish settlements.

c 1643.

6. Extent and name of the Swedish territory.

16. [7]In 1640 the Long Island and New Jersey Indians began to show symptoms of hostility towards the Dutch. Provoked by dishonest traders, and maddened by rum, they attacked the settlements on Staten Island,¶ and threat-

7. Indian hostilities in which the Dutch were engaged.

---

* *Lutzen* is a town in Prussian Saxony, on one of the branches of the Elbe. Here the French, under Bonaparte, defeated the combined forces of Prussia and Russia, in 1813.

† *Christiana Creek* is in the northern part of the state of Delaware, and has its head branches in Pennsylvania and Maryland. It enters the Brandywine River at Wilmingon. (See Map.)

‡ *Wilming'on*, in the northern part of the state of Delaware, is situated between Brandywine and Christiana Creeks, one mile above their junction, and two miles west from Delaware River. (See Map.)

§ *Tinicum* is a long narrow island in Delaware River, belonging to Pennsylvania, twelve miles, by the river's course, S.W. from Philadelphia. (See Map, p. 248.)

‖ *Trenton*, now the capital of New Jersey, is situated on the E. side of Delaware River, thirty miles N.E. from Philadelphia, and fifty-five S.W. from New York. (See Map, p. 363, and also p. 364.)

¶ *Staten Island*, belonging to the state of New York, is about six miles S. W. from New

NORTHERN PART OF DELAWARE

ANALYSIS.

ened New Amsterdam. A fruitless expedition[a] against the Delawares of New Jersey was the consequence. [1]The war continued, with various success, until 1643, when the Dutch solicited peace; and by the mediation of the wise and good Roger Williams, a brief truce was obtained.[b] But confidence could not easily be restored, for revenge still rankled in the hearts of the Indians, and in a few months they again began[c] the work of blood and desolation.

a. 1641.

1643.

1. *A truce obtained, soon followed by war.*

b. April.

c. Sept.

2. *Exploits of Captain Underhill.*

17. [2]The Dutch now engaged in their service Captain John Underhill, an Englishman who had settled on Long Island, and who had previously distinguished himself in the Indian wars of New England. Having raised a considerable number of men under Kieft's authority, he defeated[d] the Indians on Long Island, and also at Strickland's Plain,* or Horseneck, on the mainland.

d. Probably in 1645.

3. *The war terminated.*

18. [3]The war was finally terminated by the mediation of the Iroquois, who, claiming a sovereignty over the Algonquin tribes around Manhattan, proposed terms of peace, which were gladly accepted[e] by both parties.

e. 1645.

4. *Cruelty and death of Kieft.*

[4]The fame of Kieft is tarnished by the exceeding cruelty which he practiced towards the Indians. The colonists requesting his recall, and the West India Company disclaiming his barbarous policy, in 1647 he embarked for Europe in a richly laden vessel, but the ship was wrecked on the coast of Wales, and the unhappy governor perished.

1647.

5. *Stuyvesant's treatment of the Indians.*

f. June.

19. [5]William Kieft was succeeded[f] by Peter Stuyvesant, the most noted of the governors of New Netherlands. By his judicious treatment of the Indians he conciliated their favor, and such a change did he produce in their feelings towards the Dutch, that he was accused of endeavoring to enlist them in a general war against the English.

6. *His treaty with the English.*

20. [6]After long continued boundary disputes with the colonies of New England, Stuyvesant relinquished a portion of his claims, and concluded a provisional treaty,[g] which allowed New Netherlands to extend on Long Island as far as Oyster Bay,† and on the mainland as far as Greenwich,‡ near the present boundary between New York and Connecticut. [7]For the purpose of placing a

1650.

g. Sept.

7. *Erection and loss of Fort Casimir.*

York city. It is about thirty-five miles in circumference. It has Newark Bay on the north, Raritan Bay on the south, and a narrow channel, called Staten Island Sound, on the west. (See Map, p. 220 and p. 368.)

* *Strickland's Plain* is at the western extremity of the state of Connecticut, in the present town of Greenwich. The peninsula on which the plain is situated was called *Horseneck*, because it was early used as a pasture for horses.

† *Oyster Bay* is on the north side of Long Island, at the N.E. extremity of Queens County, thirty miles N.E. from New York city.

‡ *Greenwich* is the S. Western town of Connecticut. Byram River enters the Sound on the boundary between Connecticut and New York.

barrier to the encroachments of the Swedes on the south, in 1651 Stuyvesant built Fort Casimir on the site of the present town of Newcastle,* within five miles of the Swedish fort at Christiana. The Swedes, however, soon after obtained possession[a] of the fort by stratagem, and overpowered the garrison.

1651.

a. 1651.

21. [1]The home government, indignant at the outrage of the Swedes, ordered Stuyvesant to reduce them to submission. With six hundred men the governor sailed for this purpose in 1655, and soon compelled the surrender[b] of all the Swedish fortresses. Honorable terms were granted to the inhabitants. Those who quietly submitted to the authority of the Dutch retained the possession of their estates; the governor, Rising, was conveyed to Europe; a few of the colonists removed to Maryland and Virginia, and the country was placed under the government of deputies of New Netherlands.

1. *Conquest of New Sweden.*

1655.

b. Sept. and Oct.

22. [2]Such was the end of the little Protestant colony of New Sweden. It was a religious and intelligent community,—preserving peace with the natives, ever cherishing a fond attachment to the mother country, and loyalty towards its sovereign; and long after their conquest by the Dutch, and the subsequent transfer to England, the Swedes of the Delaware remained the objects of generous and disinterested regard at the court of Stockholm.

2. *Character of the Swedish colony.*

23. [3]While the forces of the Dutch were withdrawn from New Amsterdam, in the expedition against the Swedes, the neighboring Indians appeared in force before the city, and ravaged the surrounding country. The return of the expedition restored confidence;—peace was concluded, and the captives were ransomed.

3. *Indian hostilities.*

24. [4]In 1663 the village of Esopus, now Kingston,† was suddenly attacked[c] by the Indians, and sixty-five of the inhabitants were either killed or carried away captive. A force from New Amsterdam being sent to their assistance, the Indians were pursued to their villages; their fields were laid waste; many of their warriors were killed, and a number of the captives were released. These vigorous measures were followed by a truce in December, and a treaty of peace in the May following.[d]

1663.

4. *Other aggressions, and result of the war.*

c. June.

d. 1664.

25. [5]Although the Dutch retained possession of the country as far south as Cape Henlopen, yet their claims were resisted, both by Lord Baltimore, the proprietor of

5. *Boundaries of New Netherlands—and opposition to the Dutch claims.*

* *Newcastle* is on the west side of Delaware River, in the state of Delaware, thirty-two miles S.W. from Philadelphia. The northern boundary of the state is part of the circumference of a circle drawn twelve miles distant from Newcastle. (See Map, p. 223.)

† *Kingston*, formerly called Esopus, is on the W. side of Hudson River, in Ulster County about ninety miles N. from New York city.

ANALYSIS.

Maryland, and by the governor of Virginia. The southern boundary of New Netherlands was never definitely settled. At the north, the subject of boundary was still more troublesome; Massachusetts claimed an indefinite extent of territory westward, Connecticut had increased her pretensions on Long Island, and her settlements were steadily advancing towards the Hudson.

1. Discontents among the Dutch.

26. [1]Added to these difficulties from without, discontents had arisen among the Dutch themselves. The New England notions of popular rights began to prevail;—the people, hitherto accustomed to implicit deference to the will of their rulers, began to demand greater privileges as citizens, and a share in the government. [2]Stuyvesant resisted the demands of the people, and was sustained by the home government. [3]The prevalence of liberal principles, and the unjust exactions of an arbitrary government, had alienated the affections of the people, and when rumors of an English invasion reached them, they were already prepared to submit to English authority, in the hope of obtaining English rights.

2. Their demands resisted.

3. To what extent the affections of the people had become alienated.

1664.

27. [4]Early in 1664, during a period of peace between England and Holland, the king of England, indifferent to the claims of the Dutch, granted[a] to his brother James, the Duke of York, the whole territory from the Connecticut River to the shores of the Delaware. [5]The duke soon fitted out a squadron under Colonel Nichols, with orders to take possession of the Dutch province. The arrival of the fleet found New Amsterdam in a defenceless state. The governor, Stuyvesant, faithful to his employers, assembled his council and proposed a defence of the place; but it was in vain that he endeavored to infuse his own spirit into his people, and it was not until after the capitulation had been agreed[b] to by the magistrates, that he reluctantly signed[c] it.

4. Grant to the Duke of York.

a. March 22.

5. Expedition of Nichols, and the surrender of New Netherlands.

b. Sept. 6.

c. Sept. 8.

28. [6]The fall of the capital, which now received the name of New York, was followed by the surrender[d] of the settlement at Fort Orange, which received the name of Albany, and by the general submission of the province, with its subordinate settlements on the Delaware.[e] [7]The government of England was acknowledged over the whole, early in October, 1664.

6. Places included in the surrender.

d. Oct. 4.

e. Oct. 11.

7. Government of England acknowledged.

29. [8]Thus, while England and Holland were at peace, by an act of the most flagrant injustice, the Dutch dominion in America was overthrown after an existence of little more than half a century. [9]Previous to the surrender, the Duke of York had conveyed[f] to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret all that portion of New Netherlands which now forms the state of New Jersey, over

8. Injustice of this conquest.

9. Grant made to Berkeley and Carteret.

f July 3, 4.

which a separate government was established under its proprietors. [1]The settlements on the Delaware, subsequently called "The Territories," were connected with the province of New York until their purchase[a] by William Penn in 1682, when they were joined to the government of Pennsylvania.

1664.

1. "The Territories."

a. See p. 247.

SECTION II.

NEW YORK, FROM THE CONQUEST OF NEW NETHERLANDS IN 1664, UNTIL THE COMMENCEMENT OF THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR IN 1754. (DELAWARE* INCLUDED UNTIL 1682.)

Subject of Section II.

1. [2]On the surrender of New Netherlands, the new name of its capital was extended to the whole territory embraced under the government of the Duke of York. Long Island, which had been previously granted[b] to the Earl of Sterling, was now, in total disregard of the claims of Connecticut, purchased by the duke, and has since remained a part of New York. "The Territories," comprising the present Delaware, remained under the jurisdiction of New York, and were ruled by deputies appointed by the governors of the latter.

2. *Changes that took place after the surrender of New Netherlands.*

b. 1623.

2. [3]Colonel Nichols, the first English governor of the province, exercised both executive and legislative powers, but no rights of representation were conceded to the people. The Dutch titles to land were held to be invalid, and the fees exacted for their renewal were a source of much profit to the new governor. The people were disappointed in not obtaining a representative government, yet it must be admitted that the governor, considering his arbitrary powers, ruled with much moderation.

3. *Administration of Governor Nichols.*

3. [4]Under Lovelace, the successor of Nichols, the arbitrary system of the new government was more fully developed. The people protested against being taxed for the support of a government in which they had no voice, and when their proceedings were transmitted to the governor, they were declared "scandalous, illegal, and seditious," and were ordered to be burned by the common hangman. Lovelace declared that, to keep the people in order, such taxes must be laid upon them as should give them time to think of nothing but how to discharge them.

1667.

1670.

4. *Administration of Lovelace.*

4. [5]A war having broken out between England and

5. *Reconquest of the country by the Dutch, and its restoration to England.*

* DELAWARE, one of the Middle States, and, next to Rhode Island, the smallest state in the Union, contains an area of but little more than 2000 square miles. The southern part of the state is level and sandy; the northern moderately hilly and rough; while the western border contains an elevated table land, dividing the waters which fall into the Chesapeake from those which flow into Delaware Bay.

ANALYSIS.

1673.

a. Aug. 9.

Holland in 1672, in the following year the latter despatched a small squadron to destroy the commerce of the English colonies. Arriving at New York during the absence of the governor, the city was surrendered[a] by the traitorous and cowardly Manning, without any attempt at defence. New Jersey made no resistance, and the settlements on the Delaware followed the example. The name New Netherlands was again revived, but it was of short continuance. In February of the following year peace was concluded[b] between the contending powers, and early in November New Netherlands was again surrendered to the English.

1674.

b. Feb. 19.

New patent obtained by the Duke of York.

c. July 9.

2. *Andros appointed governor.*

d. July 11.

5. [1]Doubts being raised as to the validity of the Duke of York's title, because it had been granted while the Dutch were in full and peaceful possession of the country, and because the country had since been reconquered by them, the duke thought it prudent to obtain[c] from his brother, the king, a new patent confirming the former grant. [2]The office of governor was conferred[d] on Edmund Andros, who afterwards became distinguished as the tyrant of New England.

3. *Character of the government of Andros.*

1675.

4. *His attempt to enforce the duke's claim to Connecticut.*

e. July. See p. 213.

5. *To New Jersey.*

f. 1673—1680.

1682.

g. See p. 226. and p. 236.

6. *Farther history of Delaware.*

h. See p. 247.

7. *Successor of Andros.*

1683.

8. *'Charter of Liberties' established.*

i. Nov. 9.

9. *Provisions of the Charter.*

6. [3]His government was arbitrary; no representation was allowed the people, and taxes were levied without their consent. [4]As the Duke of York claimed the country as far east as the Connecticut River, in the following summer Andros proceeded to Saybrook, and attempted[e] to enforce the claim; but the spirited resistance of the people compelled him to return without accomplishing his object.

7. [5]Andros likewise attempted[f] to extend his jurisdiction over New Jersey, claiming it as a dependency of New York, although it had previously been regranted[g] by the Duke to Berkeley and Carteret. [6]In 1682 the "Territories," now forming the state of Delaware, were granted[h] by the Duke of York to William Penn, from which time until the Revolution they were united with Pennsylvania, or remained under the jurisdiction of her governors.

8. [7]Andros having returned to England, Colonel Thomas Dongan, a Catholic, was appointed governor, and arrived in the province in 1683. [8]Through the advice of William Penn the duke had instructed Dongan to call an assembly of representatives. The assembly, with the approval of the governor, established[i] a "CHARTER OF LIBERTIES," which conceded to the people many important rights which they had not previously enjoyed.

9. [9]The charter declared that 'supreme legislative power should forever reside in the governor, council, and people, met in general assembly;—that every freeholder and freeman might vote for representatives without re-

straint,—that no freeman should suffer, but by judgment of his peers, and that all trials should be by a jury of twelve men,—that no tax should be assessed, on any pretence whatever, but by the consent of the assembly,—that no seaman or soldier should be quartered on the inhabitants against their will,—that no martial law should exist,—and that no person professing faith in God, by Jesus Christ, should at any time, be in any way disquieted or questioned for any difference of opinion in matters of religion.' [1]In 1684 the governors of New York and Virginia met the deputies of the Five Nations at Albany, and renewed[a] with them a treaty of peace.

1683.

1. *Treaty made in 1684.*

a. Aug. 12.

10. [2]On the accession[b] of the Duke of York to the throne of England, with the title of James II., the hopes which the people entertained, of a permanent representative government, were in a measure defeated. A direct tax was decreed, printing presses, the dread of tyrants, were forbidden in the province; and many arbitrary exactions were imposed on the people.

1685.

b. Feb.

2. *Arbitrary measures which followed the accession of James II.*

11. [3]It was the evident intention of the king to introduce the Catholic religion into the province, and most of the officers appointed by him were of that faith. [4]Among other modes of introducing popery, James instructed Governor Dongan to favor the introduction of Catholic priests, by the French, among the Iroquois; but Dongan, although a Catholic, clearly seeing the ambitious designs of the French for extending their influence over the Indian tribes, resisted the measure. [5]The Iroquois remained attached to the English, and long carried on a violent warfare against the French. During the administration of Dongan the French made two invasions[c] of the territory of the Iroquois, neither of which was successful.

3. *Introduction of the Catholic religion.*

4. *Instructions received by Dongan; his resistance to the measure.*

5. *The Iroquois and the French.*

c. In 1684 and 1687. See p. 512.

12. [6]Dongan was succeeded by Francis Nicholson, the lieutenant-general of Andros. Andros had been previously[d] appointed governor of New England, and his authority was now extended over the province of New York. [7]The discontents of the people had been gradually increasing since the conquest from the Dutch, and when, in 1689, news arrived of the accession of William and Mary to the throne of England, the people joyfully received the intelligence, and rose in open rebellion to the existing government.

1688.

6. *The authority of Andros in New York.*

d. See p. 197.

7. *News of the accession of William and Mary.*

1689.

13. [8]One Jacob Leisler, a captain of the militia, aided by several hundred men in arms, with the general approbation of the citizens took possession[e] of the fort at New York, in the name of William and Mary; while Nicholson, after having vainly endeavored to counteract the movements of the people, secretly went on board a ship

8. *Proceedings of Leisler and of Nicholson.*

e. June.

ANALYSIS.

and sailed for England. [1]The magistrates of the city however, being opposed to the assumption of Leisler, repaired to Albany, where the authority of Leisler was denied, although, in both places, the government was administered in the name of William and Mary.

1. *The magistrates of the city.*

14. [2]Milborne, the son-in-law of Leisler, was sent to Albany to demand the surrender of the fort; but, meeting with opposition, he returned without accomplishing his object. [3]In December, letters arrived from the king, empowering Nicholson, or whoever administered the government in his absence, to take the chief command of the province. Leisler regarded the letter as addressed to himself, and assumed the title and authority of lieutenant-governor.

2. *Milborne's embassy to Albany.*

3. *Instructions received from England; how regarded by Leisler.*

1690. 15. [4]King William's war having at this period broken out, in February,[a] 1690, a party of about three hundred French and Indians fell upon Schenectady, a village on the Mohawk, killed sixty persons, took thirty prisoners, and burned the place. [5]Soon after this event, the northern portion of the province, terrified by the recent calamity, and troubled by domestic factions, yielded to the authority of Leisler.

4. *Destruction of Schenectady.*

a. Feb. 18.

5. *Submission to Leisler.*

16. [6]The northern colonies, roused by the atrocities of the French and their savage allies at the commencement of King William's war, resolved to attack the enemy in turn. After the successful expedition[b] of Sir William Phipps against Port Royal; New York, Massachusetts, and Connecticut, united for the reduction of Montreal and Quebec. The naval armament sent against Quebec was wholly unsuccessful.[c] The land expedition, planned by Leisler, and placed under the command of General Winthrop of Connecticut, proceeded as far as Wood Creek,* near the head of Lake Champlain,† when sickness, the want of provisions, and dissensions among the officers, compelled a return.

6. *Enterprise against Montreal and Quebec.*

b. May. See page 198.

c. See p. 198.

1691. 17. [7]Early in 1691 Richard Ingoldsby arrived at New York, and announced the appointment of Colonel Sloughter, as governor of the province. He bore a commission as captain, and without producing any order from the king, or from Sloughter, haughtily demanded[d] of Leisler

7. *Leisler and Ingoldsby.*

d. Feb. 9.

---

* *Wood Creek*, in Washington County, New York, flows north, and falls into the south end of Lake Champlain, at the village of Whitehall. The narrow body of water, however, between Whitehall and Ticonderoga, is often called *South River*. Through a considerable portion of its course Wood Creek is now used as a part of the Champlain Canal. There is another Wood Creek in Oneida County, New York. (See Map, p. 273 and Map, p. 376.)

† *Lake Champlain* lies between the states of New York and Vermont, and extends four or five miles into Canada. It is about 120 miles in length, and varies from half a mile to fifteen miles in width, its southern portion being the narrowest. Its outlet is the Sorel or Richelieu, through which it discharges its waters into the St. Lawrence. This lake was discovered in 1609 by Samuel Champlain, the founder of Quebec. (See Canadian History, p. 505.)

the surrender of the fort. With this demand Leisler refused to comply. He protested against the lawless proceedings of Ingoldsby, but declared his readiness to yield the government to Sloughter on his arrival. **1691.**

18. [1]At length, in March, Sloughter himself arrived,[a] and Leisler immediately sent messengers to receive his orders. The messengers were detained, and Ingoldsby was twice sent to the fort with a verbal commission to demand its surrender. [2]Leisler at first hesitated to yield to his inveterate enemy, preferring to deliver the fort into the hands of Sloughter himself; but, as his messengers and his letters to Sloughter were unheeded, the next day he personally surrendered the fort, and with Milborne and others, was immediately thrown into prison.

a. March 29.
1. *Arrival of Sloughter, and events that followed.*
2. *Hesitation of Leisler, and the result.*

19. [3]Leisler and Milborne were soon after tried on the charge of being rebels and traitors, and were condemned to death, but Sloughter hesitated to put the sentence in execution. At length the enemies of the condemned, when no other measures could prevail with the governor, invited him to a feast, and, when his reason was drowned in wine, persuaded him to sign the death warrant. Before he recovered from his intoxication the prisoners were executed.[b] [4]Their estates were confiscated, but were afterwards, on application to the king, restored to their heirs.

3. *Trial and execution of Leisler and Milborne.*
b. May. 26.
4. *Their estates.*

20. [5]In June, Sloughter met a council of the Iroquois, or Five Nations, at Albany, and renewed the treaties which had formerly been in force. Soon after, having returned to New York, he ended, by a sudden death,[c] a short, weak, and turbulent administration. [6]In the mean time the English, with their Indian allies, the Iroquois, carried on the war against the French, and, under Major Schuyler, made a successful attack on the French settlements beyond Lake Champlain.

5. *Other events in Sloughter's administration.*
c. Aug. 2.
6. *War carried on in the mean time.*
1692.

21. [7]Benjamin Fletcher, the next governor of the province, was a man of strong passions, and of moderate abilities; but he had the prudence to follow the counsels of Schuyler, in his intercourse with the Indians. [8]The Iroquois remained the active allies of the English, and their situation in a great measure screened the province of New York from the attacks of the French.

7. *Character of Governor Fletcher.*
8. *New York screened from the attacks of the French.*
1693.

22. [9]Fletcher having been authorized by the crown to take the command of the militia of Connecticut, he proceeded to Hartford to execute his commission; but the people resisted,[d] and he was forced to return without accomplishing his object. [10]He labored with great zeal, in endeavoring to establish the English Church; but the people demanded toleration, and the assembly resolutely opposed the pretensions of the governor. [11]In 1696 the

9. *Fletcher's errand to Connecticut.*
d. Nov. 6. See p. 214.
10. *His attempts to establish the English Church.*
11. *Events in 1696.*

ANALYSIS.

French, under Frontenac, with a large force, made an unsuccessful invasion[a] of the territory of the Iroquois.—[1]In the following year King William's war was terminated by the peace of Ryswick.[b]

a. July, Aug.
1. *Close of the war.*
b. Sept. 20.

23. [2]In 1698, the Earl of Bellamont, an Irish peer, a man of energy and integrity, succeeded[c] Fletcher in the administration of the government of New York, and, in the following year, New Hampshire and Massachusetts were added to his jurisdiction. [3]Piracy had at this time increased to an alarming extent, infesting every sea from America to China; and Bellamont had been particularly instructed to put an end to this evil on the American coast.

2. *Bellamont; and extent of his jurisdiction.*
c. April 12.
3. *Of piracy.*

24. [4]For this purpose, before his departure for America, in connection with several persons of distinction he had equipped a vessel, the command of which was given to William Kidd. [5]Kidd, himself, however, soon after turned pirate, and became the terror of the seas; but, at length, appearing publicly at Boston, he was arrested,[d] and sent to England, where he was tried and executed.[e] [6]Bellamont and his partners were charged with abetting Kidd in his Piracies, and sharing the plunder, but after an examination in the House of Commons, nothing could be found to criminate them.

4. *Bellamont's efforts to suppress it.*
5. *William Kidd.*
d. July, 1699.
e. May 23, 1701.
6. *Charge against Bellamont.*

1701.

25. [7]On the death[f] of Bellamont, the vicious, haughty, and intolerant Lord Cornbury was appointed governor of New York, and New Jersey was soon afterwards added to his jurisdiction,—the proprietors of the latter province having surrendered their rights to the crown in 1702.[g]—[8]On the arrival[h] of Cornbury, the province was divided between two violent factions, the friends and the enemies of the late unfortunate Leisler; and the new governor, by espousing the cause of the latter, and by persecuting with unrelenting hate all denominations except that of the Church of England, soon rendered himself odious to the great mass of the people.

7. *Next governor, and extent of his jurisdiction.*
f. March 16.

1702.

g. See p. 239.
8. *State of the province on his arrival.*
h. May.

26. [9]He likewise embezzled the public money,—contracted debts which he was unable to pay,—repeatedly dissolved the assembly for opposition to his wishes,—and, by his petty tyranny, and dissolute habits, soon weakened his influence with all parties, who repeatedly requested his recall. [10]Being deprived[i] of his office, his creditors threw him into the same prison where he had unjustly confined many worthier men, and where he remained a prisoner, for debt, until the death of his father, by elevating him to the peerage, entitled him to his liberation.

9. *His recall requested.*
10. *Events that followed his removal from office.*
i 1708.

27. [11]As the history of the successive administrations of the governors of New York, from this period until the time of the French and Indian war, would possess little

11. *Subsequent administrations.*

interest for the general reader, a few of the more important events only will be mentioned. **1708.**

28. [1]Queen Anne's war having broken out in 1702, the northern colonies, in 1709, made extensive preparations for an attack on Canada. While the New England colonies were preparing a naval armament to co-operate with one expected from England, New York and New Jersey raised a force of eighteen hundred men to march against Montreal by way of Lake Champlain. This force proceeded as far as Wood Creek,[a] when, learning that the armament promised from England had been sent to Portugal, the expedition was abandoned.

1. Preparations for invading Canada; enterprise abandoned.

a. Note, p. 230.

29. [2]Soon after, the project was renewed, and a large fleet under the command of Sir Hovenden Walker being sent from England to co-operate with the colonial forces, an expedition of four thousand men from New York, New Jersey and Connecticut, commenced its march towards Canada. The fleet being shattered[b] by a storm, and returning to England, the land expedition, after proceeding as far as Lake George,* was likewise compelled to return. **1711.**

2. The second attempt.

b. Sept. 2, 3. See p. 202

30. [3]The debt incurred by New York in these expeditions, remained a heavy burden upon her resources for many years. [4]In 1713 the Tuscaroras, having been defeated in a war with the Carolinians, migrated to the north, and joined the confederacy of the Five Nations, —afterwards known as the "Six Nations." **1713.**

3. The debt incurred by it.

4. Migration of the Tuscaroras.

31. [5]The treaty of Utrecht in 1713[c] put an end to Queen Anne's war, and, if we except the brief interval of King George's war,[d] relieved the English colonies, during a period of forty years, from the depredations of the French and their Indian allies. [6]In 1722 the governors of New York, Virginia, and Pennsylvania, met the deputies of the Iroquois at Albany, for the purpose of confirming treaties, and transacting other business. [7]During the same year Governor Burnett established a trading-house at Oswego,† on the southeastern shore of Lake Ontario; and in 1727 a fort was completed at the same place. [8]The primary object of this frontier establishment was to secure the favor of the Indians, by a direct trade with them, which had before been engrossed by the French. **1722.**

5. Treaty of Utrecht.

c. April 11.

d. 1744—1748.

6. Meeting held at Albany in 1722.

7. An establishment made at Oswego.

8. For what object.

---

* *Lake George*, called by the French *Lac Sacrament*, on account of the purity of its waters and now frequently called the *Horicon*, lies mostly between Washington and Warren Counties, near the southern extremity of Lake Champlain, with which its outlet communicates. It is a beautiful sheet of water, 230 feet above the Hudson, and surrounded by high hills; it is thirty-three miles in length, and from two to three in width, and is interspersed with numerous islands. Lake George was long conspicuous in the early wars of the country, and several memorable battles were fought on its borders. (See Map, p. 273.)

† (See page 275.)

ANALYSIS.

1. *Scheme formed by the French.*

2. *The means employed.*

32. [1]The French, at this time, had evidently formed the scheme of confining the English to the territory east of the Alleghanies, by erecting a line of forts and trading-houses on the western waters, and by securing the influence of the western tribes. [2]With this view, in 1726 they renewed the fortress at Niagara,* which gave them control over the commerce of the remote interior. Five years later they established a garrison on the eastern shore of Lake Champlain, but soon after removed it to Crown Point,† on the western shore. The latter defended the usual route to Canada, and gave security to Montreal. [3]With the exception of the English fortress at Oswego, the French had possession of the entire country watered by the St. Lawrence and its tributaries, while their claims to Louisiana, on the west, embraced the whole valley of the Mississippi.

1731.

3. *Possessions and claims of the French at this time.*

4. *Condition of the province under Gov. Cosby.*

5. *Prosecution for libel.*

33. [4]During the administration of Governor Cosby, who came out in 1732, the province was divided between two violent parties, the liberal or democratic, and the aristocratic party. [5]A journal of the popular party having attacked the measures of the governor and council with some virulence, the editor[a] was thrown into prison,[b] and prosecuted for a libel against the government. Great excitement prevailed; the editor was zealously defended by able counsel; and an independent jury gave a verdict of acquittal.[c]

a. J. P. Zenger.

b. Nov. 1734.

1735.

c. July.

6. *How the people and magistrates regarded the conduct of the jury.*

7. *How this trial may be regarded.*

34. [6]The people applauded their conduct, and, to Andrew Hamilton of Philadelphia, one of the defenders of the accused, the magistrates of the city of New York presented an elegant gold box, for his learned and generous defence of the rights of mankind and the liberty of the press. [7]This important trial shows the prevailing liberal sentiments of the people at that period, and may be regarded as one of the early germs of American freedom.

1741.

8. *The negro plot of 1741.*

35. [8]In 1741 a supposed negro plot occasioned great excitement in the city of New York. There were then many slaves in the province, against whom suspicion was first directed by the robbery of a dwelling house, and by the frequent occurrence of fires evidently caused by design. The magistrates of the city having offered rewards,

---

* This place was in the state of New York, on a point of land at the mouth of Niagara River. As early as 1679 a French officer, M. de Salle, inclosed a small spot here with palisades. The fortifications once inclosed a space of eight acres, and it was long the greatest place south of Montreal and west of Albany. The American fort Niagara now occupies the site of the old French fort. (See Map, p. 451.)

† *Crown Point* is a town in Essex County, New York, on the western shore of Lake Champlain. The fort, called by the French *Fort Frederic*, and afterwards repaired and called *Crown Point*, was situated on a point of land projecting into the lake at the N.E. extremity of the town, ninety-five miles, in a direct line, N.E. from Albany. Its site is now marked by a heap of ruins.

pardon, and freedom, to any slave that would testify against incendiaries and conspirators, some abandoned females were induced to declare that the negroes had combined to burn the city and make one of their number governor. **1741.**

36. [1]There was soon no want of witnesses; the number of the accused increased rapidly; and even white men were designated as concerned in the plot. Before the excitement was over more than thirty persons were executed;—several of these were burned at the stake; and many were transported to foreign parts. *1. Result of the excitement.*

37. [2]When all apprehensions of danger had subsided, and men began to reflect upon the madness of the project itself, and the base character of most of the witnesses, the reality of the plot began to be doubted; and the people looked back with horror upon the numerous and cruel punishments that had been inflicted. *2. How the affair was regarded when apprehensions of danger had subsided.*

38. [3]Boston and Salem have had their delusions of witchcraft, and New York its Negro Plot, in each of which many innocent persons suffered death. These mournful results show the necessity of exceeding caution and calm investigation in times of great public excitement, lest terror or deluded enthusiasm get the predominance of reason, and "make madmen of us all." *3. What we should learn from such instances of public excitement.*

39. [4]The subsequent history of New York, previous to the commencement of the French and Indian war, contains few events of importance. In 1745, during King George's war, the savages in alliance with France made some incursions into the territory north of Albany, and a few villages were deserted[a] on their approach. The province made some preparations to join the eastern colonies in an expedition against Canada, but in 1748 a treaty of peace was concluded[b] between the contending powers, and New York again enjoyed a short interval of repose, soon to be disturbed by a conflict more sanguinary than any which had preceded. A connected history of that contest, in which all the colonies acted in concert, is given in the "French and Indian War."[c] *4. The subsequent history of New York.* **1745.** a. Nov. **1748.** b. Oct. 18. c. See p. 267.

ANALYSIS.

CHAPTER VII.

NEW JERSEY.*

Subject of Chapter VII.

1. In what New Jersey was at first included.

1. [1]The territory embraced in the present state of New Jersey was included in the Dutch province of New Netherlands; and the few events connected with its history, previous to the conquest by the English in 1664, belong to that province.

2. Early settlements.

[2]In 1623 Fort Nassau was built on the eastern bank of the Delaware, but was soon after deserted. Probably a few years before this the Dutch began to form settlements at Bergen, and other places west of the Hudson, in the vicinity of New York; but the first colonizing of the province dates, more properly, from the settlement of Elizabethtown† in 1664.

1664.

3. Portion of the territory conveyed away by the Duke of York.

a. July 3, 4.

2. [3]Soon after the grant of New Netherlands to the Duke of York, and previous to the surrender, the duke conveyed[a] that portion of the territory which is bounded on the east, south, and west, respectively, by the Hudson, the sea, and the Delaware, and north by the 41st degree and 40th minute of latitude, to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret, who were already proprietors of Carolina.

4. Name given to this tract.

b. Note, p. 173.

[4]This tract was called New Jersey, in compliment to Carteret, who had been governor of the island of Jersey,‡ and had defended it for the king during the civil war.[b]

1665.

5. The constitution formed by the proprietors.

c. Feb. 20.

6. The first governor and the capital of the province.

d. Aug.

3. [5]To invite settlers to the country, the proprietors soon published[c] a liberal constitution for the colony, promising freedom from taxation, except by the act of the colonial assembly, and securing equal privileges, and liberty of conscience to all. [6]In 1665 Philip Carteret, the first governor, arrived,[d] and established himself at Elizabethtown, recently settled by emigrants from Long Island, and which became the first capital of the infant colony.

7. The early settlers.

8. Causes of the security which they enjoyed.

4. [7]New York and New England furnished most of the early settlers, who were attracted by the salubrity of the climate, and the liberal institutions which the inhabitants were to enjoy. [8]Fearing little from the neighboring Indians, whose strength had been broken by long hostili-

---

* NEW JERSEY, one of the Middle States, bordering on the Atlantic, and lying south of New York, and east of Pennsylvania and Delaware, contains an area of about 8000 square miles. The northern part of the state is mountainous, the middle is diversified by hills and valleys, and is well adapted to grazing and to most kinds of grain, while the southern part is level and sandy, and, to a great extent, barren; the natural growth of the soil being chiefly shrub oaks and yellow pines.

† *Elizabethtown* is situated on Elizabethtown Creek, two and a half miles from its entrance into Staten Island Sound, and twelve miles S.W. from New York city. It was named from Lady Elizabeth Carteret, wife of Sir George Carteret. (See Map, p. 220, and p. 363.)

* The island of *Jersey* is a strongly fortified island in the English Channel, seventeen miles from the French coast. It is twelve miles long, and has an average width of about five miles.

ties with the Dutch, and guarded by the Five Nations and New York against the approaches of the French and their savage allies, the colonists of New Jersey, enjoying a happy security, escaped the dangers and privations which had afflicted the inhabitants of most of the other provinces. **1665.**

5. [1]After a few years of quiet, domestic disputes began to disturb the repose of the colony. The proprietors, by their constitution, had required the payment, after 1670, of a penny or half penny an acre for the use of land; but when the day of payment arrived, the demand of the tribute met with general opposition. Those who had purchased land of the Indians refused to acknowledge the claims of the proprietors, asserting that a deed from the former was paramount to any other title. [2]A weak and dissolute son of Sir George Carteret was induced to assume[a] the government, and after two years of disputes and confusion, the established authority was set at defiance by open insurrection, and the governor was compelled to return[b] to England.

1. Repose of the colony disturbed. **1670.**

2. Troubles that followed.

a. 1670.

b. 1672.

6. [3]In the following year, during a war with Holland, the Dutch regained[c] all their former possessions, including New Jersey, but restored them to the English in 1674. [4]After this event, the Duke of York obtained[d] a second charter, confirming the former grant; and, in disregard of the rights of Berkeley and Carteret, appointed[e] Andros governor over the whole re-united province. On the application of Carteret, however, the duke consented to restore New Jersey; but he afterwards endeavored[f] to avoid the full performance of his engagement, by pretending that he had reserved certain rights of sovereignty over the country, which Andros seized every opportunity of asserting.

1673.

3. Events that occurred in the following year.

c. See p 228.

4. Farther proceedings of the Duke of York.

d. July 8.

e. July 11.

f. Oct.

7. [5]In 1674 Lord Berkeley sold[g] his share of New Jersey to John Fenwick, in trust for Edward Byllinge and his assignees. [6]In the following year Philip Carteret returned to New Jersey, and resumed the government; but the arbitrary proceedings of Andros long continued to disquiet the colony. Carteret, attempting to establish a direct trade between England and New Jersey, was warmly opposed by Andros, who claimed, for the duke his master, the right of rendering New Jersey tributary to New York, and even went so far as to arrest Governor Carteret and convey him prisoner to New York.

1674.

5. Berkeley disposes of his territory.

g. March 28.

1675.

6. Difficulties between Carteret and Andros.

8. [7]Byllinge, having become embarrassed in his fortunes, made an assignment of his share in the province to William Penn and two others, all Quakers, whose first care was to effect a division of the territory between themselves and Sir George Carteret, that they might es

7. Assignment by Byllinge, &c.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Division of the province.*

a. July 11.

tablish a separate government in accordance with their peculiar religious principles. [1]The division* was accomplished[a] without difficulty; Carteret receiving the eastern portion of the province, which was called East Jersey; and the assignees of Byllinge the western portion, which they named West Jersey. [2]The western proprietors then gave[b] the settlers a free constitution, under the title of "Concessions," similar to that given by Berkeley and Carteret, granting all the important privileges of civil and religious liberty.

1677.

2. *The western proprietors.*

b. March 13.

3. *Settlers invited to the colony; with what result.*

9. [3]The authors of the "Constitution" accompanied its publication with a special recommendation of the province to the members of their own religious fraternity, and in 1677 upwards of four hundred Quakers came over and settled in West New Jersey. [4]The settlers being unexpectedly called upon by Andros to acknowledge the sovereignty of the Duke of York, and submit to taxation, they remonstrated earnestly with the duke, and the question was finally referred to the eminent jurist, Sir William Jones, for his decision.

4. *Subject of taxation and sovereignty.*

1680.

5. *Decision of Sir William Jones, and conduct of the duke.*

10. [5]The result was a decision against the pretensions of the duke, who immediately relinquished all claims to the territory and the government. Soon after, he made a similar release in favor of the representatives of Carteret, in East Jersey, and the whole province thus became independent of foreign jurisdiction.

1681.

6. *Proceedings of the first assembly in West Jersey.*

c. Dec. 5.

7. *Remarkable feature in the new laws.*

11. [6]In 1681 the governor of West Jersey convoked the first representative assembly, which enacted[c] several important laws for protecting property, punishing crimes, establishing the rights of the people, and defining the powers of rulers. [7]The most remarkable feature in the new laws was a provision, that in all criminal cases except treason, murder, and theft, the person aggrieved should have power to pardon the offender.

8. *Sale of East Jersey, and Barclay's administration.*

d. Dec. 1679.

e. Feb. 11, 12.

f. July 27, 1683.

g. He died in 1690.

12. [8]After the death[d] of Sir George Carteret, the trustees of his estates offered his portion of the province for sale; and in 1682 William Penn and eleven others, members of the Society of Friends, purchased[e] East Jersey, over which Robert Barclay, a Scotch gentleman, the author of the "Apology for Quakers," was appointed[f] governor for life. During his brief administration[g] the colony received a large accession of emigrants, chiefly from Barclay's native county of Aberdeen, in Scotland.

* According to the terms of the deed, the dividing line was to run from the most southerly point of the east side of Little Egg Harbor, to the N. Western extremity of New Jersey; which was declared to be a point on the Delaware River in latitude 41° 40′, which is 18′ 23″ farther north than the present N. Western extremity of the state. Several partial attempts were made, at different times, to run the line, and much controversy arose from the disputes which these attempts occasioned.

13. [1]On the accession of the Duke of York to the throne, with the title of James II.,—disregarding his previous engagements, and having formed the design of annulling all the charters of the American colonies, he caused writs to be issued against both the Jerseys, and in 1688 the whole province was placed under the jurisdiction of Andros, who had already[a] become the king's governor of New York and New England.

1685.

1. *Arbitrary measures of the Duke of York when he became king.*

1688.

a. See p. 187 and p. 228.

14. [2]The revolution in England terminated the authority of Andros, and from June, 1689, to August, 1692, no regular government existed in New Jersey, and during the following ten years the whole province remained in an unsettled condition. [3]For a time New York attempted to exert her authority over New Jersey, and at length the disagreements between the various proprietors and their respective adherents occasioned so much confusion, that the people found it difficult to ascertain in whom the government was legally vested. [4]At length the proprietors, finding that their conflicting claims tended only to disturb the peace of their territories, and lessen their profits as owners of the soil, made a surrender[b] of their powers of government to the crown; and in 1702 New Jersey became a royal province, and was united[c] to New York, under the government of Lord Cornbury.

1688–9.

2. *Events that followed the revolution in England.*

3. *Evils that arose from the disputes of the proprietors.*

4. *Disposal of the claims of the proprietors.*

1702.

b. April 25.

c. See p. 232.

15. [5]From this period until 1738 the province remained under the governors of New York, but with a distinct legislative assembly. [6]The administration[d] of Lord Cornbury, consisting of little more than a history of his contentions with the assemblies of the province, fully developed the partiality, frauds and tyranny of the governor, and served to awaken in the people a vigorous and vigilant siprit of liberty. [7]The commission and instructions of Cornbury formed the constitution of New Jersey until the period when it ceased to be a British province.

5. *Government of New Jersey.*

6. *Lord Cornbury's administration.*

d. 1702—1708, see p. 232.

7. *Constitution of New Jersey.*

16. [8]In 1728 the assembly petitioned the king to separate the province from New York; but the petition was disregarded until 1738, when through the influence of Lewis Morris, the application was granted, and Mr. Morris himself received the first commission as royal governor over the separate province of New Jersey. [9]After this period we meet with no events of importance in the history of New Jersey until the Revolution.

8. *Separation of New Jersey from New York.*

1738.

9. *Subsequent history of*

ANALYSIS.

Subject of Chapter VIII

CHAPTER VIII.

MARYLAND.*

1609. *1. Maryland.* a. June 2. See p. 165. *2. By whom the country was explored.* b. 1627, 8, 9. *3 License to Clayborne.* c. May 26.

1. [1]The second charter given[a] to the London Company embraced within the limits of Virginia all the territory which now forms the state of Maryland. [2]The country near the head of the Chesapeake was early explored[b] by the Virginians, and a profitable trade in furs was established with the Indians. [3]In 1631 William Clayborne, a man of resolute and enterprising spirit, who had first been sent out as a surveyor, by the London Company, and who subsequently was appointed a member of the council, and secretary of the colony, obtained[c] a royal license to traffick with the Indians.

1632. *4. Settlements formed by him.* d. March 18. *5. Claims of Virginia.* *6. Her claims defeated.*

2. [4]Under this license, which was confirmed[d] by a commission from the governor of Virginia, Clayborne perfected several trading establishments which he had previously formed; one on the island of Kent,† nearly opposite Annapolis,‡ in the very heart of Maryland; and one near the mouth of the Susquehanna. [5]Clayborne had obtained a monopoly of the fur trade, and Virginia aimed at extending her jurisdiction over the large tract of unoccupied territory lying between her borders and those of the Dutch in New Netherlands. [6]But before the settlements of Clayborne could be completed, and the claim of Virginia confirmed, a new province was formed within her limits, and a government established on a plan as extraordinary as its results were benevolent.

7. Lord Baltimore's colony in Newfoundland.

3. [7]As early as 1621, Sir George Calvert, whose title was Lord Baltimore, a Roman Catholic nobleman, influenced by a desire of opening in America a refuge for

---

* MARYLAND, the most southern of the Middle States, is very irregular in its outline, and contains an area of about 11,000 square miles. The Chesapeake Bay runs nearly through the state from N. to S., dividing it into two parts, called the *Eastern Shore* and the *Western Shore* The land on the eastern shore is generally level and low, and, in many places, is covered with stagnant waters; yet the soil possesses considerable fertility. The country on the western shore, below the falls of the rivers, is similar to that on the eastern, but above the falls the country becomes gradually uneven and hilly, and in the western part of the state is mountainous. Iron ore is found in various parts of the state, and extensive beds of coal between the mountains in the western part.

VICINITY OF ANNAPOLIS.

† *Kent*, the largest island in Chesapeake Bay, lies opposite Annapolis, near the eastern shore, and belongs to Queen Anne's County. It is nearly in the form of a triangle, and contains an area of about forty-five square miles. (See Map.)

‡ *Annapolis*, (formerly called Providence,) now the capital of Maryland, is situated on the S.W. side of the River Severn, two miles from its entrance into Chesapeake Bay. It is twenty-five miles S. from Baltimore, and thirty-three N.E. from Washington. The original plan of the city was designed in the form of a circle, with the State-house on an eminence in the centre, and the streets, like radii, diverging from it. (See Map.)

Catholics, who were then persecuted in England, had established[a] a Catholic colony in Newfoundland, and had freely expended his estate in advancing its interests. [1]But the rugged soil, the unfavorable climate, and the frequent annoyances from the hostile French, soon destroyed all hopes of a flourishing colony, [2]He next visited[b] Virginia, in whose mild and fertile regions he hoped to find for his followers a peaceful and quiet asylum. The Virginians, however, received him with marked intolerance, and he soon found that, even here, he could not enjoy his religious opinions in peace.

1621.

a. See p. 556.

1. *His hopes of a colony there defeated.*

2. *His visit to Virginia.*

b. 1623.

4. [3]He next turned his attention to the unoccupied country beyond the Potomac; and as the dissolution of the London Company had restored to the monarch his prerogative over the soil, Calvert, a favorite with the royal family, found no difficulty in obtaining a charter for domains in that happy clime. [4]The charter was probably drawn by the hand of Lord Baltimore himself, but as he died[c] before it received the royal seal, the same was made out to his son Cecil. [5]The territory thus granted,[d] extending north to the 40th degree, the latitude of Philadelphia, was now erected into a separate province, and in honor of Henrietta Maria, daughter of Henry IV. king of France, and wife of the English monarch, was named MARYLAND.

3. *To the country beyond the Potomac.*

1632.

4. *The charter.*

c. April 25.

5. *Extent and name of the territory granted.*

d. June 30.

5. [6]The charter granted to Lord Baltimore, unlike any which had hitherto passed the royal seal, secured to the emigrants equality in religious rights and civil freedom, and an independent share in the legislation of the province. [7]The laws of the colony were to be established with the advice and approbation of a majority of the freemen, or their deputies; and although Christianity was made the law of the land, yet no preferences were given to any sect or party.

6. *Provisions of the charter.*

7. *How the laws were to be established.*

6. [8]Maryland was also most carefully removed from all dependence upon the crown; the proprietor was left free and uncontrolled in his appointments to office; and it was farther expressly stipulated, that no tax whatsoever should ever be imposed by the crown upon the inhabitants of the province.

8. *Farther liberties granted to the people and the proprietor.*

7. [9]Under this liberal charter, Cecil Calvert, the son, who had succeeded to the honors and fortunes of his father, found no difficulty in enlisting a sufficient number of emigrants to form a respectable colony; nor was it long before gentlemen of birth and fortune were found ready to join in the enterprise. [10]Lord Baltimore himself, having abandoned his original purpose of conducting the emigrants in person, appointed his brother, Leonard Calvert, to act as his lieutenant.

9. *Favorable beginning of the enterprise.*

1633.

10. *Leonard Calvert.*

ANALYSIS.

1. *Departure of the colonists, and their reception at Virginia.*

a. Dec. 2.

1634.

b. March 6.

8. [1]In December, 1633, the latter, with about two hundred emigrants, mostly Roman Catholics, sailed[a] for the Potomac, where they arrived[b] in March of the following year. In obedience to the express command of the king, the emigrants were welcomed with courtesy by Harvey, the governor of Virginia, although Virginia had remonstrated against the grant to Lord Baltimore, as an invasion of her rights of trade with the Indians, and an encroachment on her territorial limits.

2. *Calvert's interview with the Indians.*

3. *The first settlement.*

c. April 6.

9. [2]Calvert, having proceeded about one hundred and fifty miles up the Potomac, found on its eastern bank the Indian village of Piscataway,* the chieftain of which would not bid him either go or stay, but told him "He might use his own discretion." [3]Deeming it unsafe, however, to settle so high up the river, he descended the stream, entered the river now called St. Mary's,† and, about ten miles from its junction with the Potomac, purchased of the Indians a village, where he commenced[c] a settlement, to which was given the name St. Mary's.

4. *The friendship of the Indians secured.*

5. *Happy situation of the colony.*

10. [4]The wise policy of Calvert, in paying the Indians for their lands, and in treating them with liberality and kindness, secured their confidence and friendship. [5]The English obtained from the forests abundance of game, and as they had come into possession of lands already cultivated, they looked forward with confidence to abundant harvests. No sufferings were endured,—no fears of want were excited,—and under the fostering care of its liberal proprietor the colony rapidly advanced in wealth and population.

1635.

6. *First legislative assembly.*

d. March 8.

e. In the rebellion of 1645 See next page.

7. *Troubles caused by Clayborne.*

11. [6]Early in 1635 the first legislative assembly of the province was convened[d] at St. Mary's, but as the records have been lost,[e] little is known of its proceedings. [7]Notwithstanding the pleasant auspices under which the colony commenced, it did not long remain wholly exempt from intestine troubles. Clayborne had, from the first, refused to submit to the authority of Lord Baltimore, and, acquiring confidence in his increasing strength, he resolved to maintain his possessions by force of arms. A bloody skirmish occurred[f] on one of the rivers‡ of Maryland, and several lives were lost, but Clayborne's men were defeated and taken prisoners.

f. May.

---

* This Indian village was fifteen miles S. from Washington, on the east side of the Potomac, at the mouth of Piscataway Creek, opposite Mount Vernon, and near the site of the present Fort Washington.

† The *St. Mary's* River, called by Calvert *St. George's* River, enters the Potomac from the north, about fifteen miles from the entrance of the latter into the Chesapeake. It is properly a small arm or estuary of the Chesapeake.

‡ Note.—This skirmish occurred either on the River *Wicomico*, or the *Pocomoke*, on the eastern shore of Maryland; the former fifty-five miles, and the latter eighty miles S.E. from the Isle of Kent.

12. [1]Clayborne himself had previously fled to Virginia, and, when reclaimed by Maryland, he was sent by the governor of Virginia to England for trial. The Maryland assembly declared[a] him guilty of treason, seized his estates, and declared them forfeited. In England, Clayborne applied to the king to gain redress for his alleged wrongs; but after a full hearing it was decided that the charter of Lord Baltimore was valid against the earlier license of Clayborne, and thus the claims of the proprietor were fully confirmed.

1635.

1. *Proceedings and verdict in relation to him.*

a. March, 1638.

13. [2]At first the people of Maryland convened in general assembly for passing laws,—each freeman being entitled to a vote; but in 1639 the more convenient form of a representative government was established,—the people being allowed to send as many delegates to the general assembly as they should think proper. [3]At the same time a declaration of rights was adopted; the powers of the proprietor were defined; and all the liberties enjoyed by English subjects at home, were confirmed to the people of Maryland.

1639.

2. *How the laws were at first enacted, and what change was afterwards made.*

3. *Other regulations*

14. [4]About the same time some petty hostilities were carried on against the Indians, which, in 1642, broke out into a general Indian war, that was not terminated until 1644.

4. *Indian war*

1644.

15. [5]Early in 1645 Clayborne returned to Maryland, and, having succeeded in creating a rebellion, compelled the governor to withdraw into Virginia for protection. [6]The vacant government was immediately seized by the insurgents, who distinguished the period of their dominion by disorder and misrule; and notwithstanding the most vigorous exertions of the governor, the revolt was not suppressed until August of the following year.

1645.

5. *New troubles caused by Clayborne.*

6. *The government of the insurgents.*

16. [7]Although religious toleration had been declared, by the proprietor, one of the fundamental principles of the social union over which he presided, yet the assembly, in order to give the principle the sanction of their authority, proceeded to incorporate it in the laws of the province. It was enacted[b] that no person, professing to believe in Jesus Christ, should be molested in respect of his religion, or the free exercise thereof; and that any one, who should reproach his neighbor with opprobrious names of religious distinction, should pay a fine to the person insulted.

1646.

7. *Religious toleration.*

1649.

1. May 1.

17. [8]Thus Maryland quickly followed Rhode Island in establishing religious toleration by law. [9]While at this very period the Puritans were persecuting their Protestant brethren in Massachusetts, and the Episcopalians were retorting the same severity on the Puritans in Vir-

8. *Honor ascribed to Maryland.*

9. *Comparison between Maryland and other colonies.*

ANALYSIS.

ginia, there was forming, in Maryland, a sanctuary where all might worship, and none might oppress; and where even Protestants sought refuge from Protestant intolerance.*

1650.

1. Important law passed in 1650.

a. April 16.

18. [1]In 1650 an important law was passed,[a] confirming the division of the legislative body into two branches, an upper and a lower house; the former consisting of the governor and council, appointed by the proprietor, and the latter of the burgesses or representatives, chosen by the people. [2]At the same session, the rights of Lord Baltimore, as proprietor, were admitted, but all taxes were prohibited unless they were levied with the consent of the freemen.

2. Rights of Lord Baltimore,—taxation.

1651.

3. Interference of Parliament with the government.

b. Oct 6.

4. Events between this time and the second removal of Gov. Stone.

c. April 8.

d. July 8.

1654.

e. Aug. 1.

19. [3]In the mean time the parliament had established its supremacy in England, and had appointed[b] certain commissioners, of whom Clayborne was one, to reduce and govern the colonies bordering on the bay of the Chesapeake. [4]The commissioners appearing in Maryland, Stone, the lieutenant of Lord Baltimore, was at first removed[c] from his office, but was soon after restored.[d] In 1654, upon the dissolution of the Long Parliament, from which the commissioners had received their authority, Stone restored the full powers of the proprietor; but the commissioners, then in Virginia, again entered the province, and compelled Stone to surrender his commission and the government into their hands.[e]

5. Protestant ascendency.

Oct.—Nov.

20. [5]Parties had now become identified with religious sects. The Protestants, who had now the power in their own hands, acknowledging the authority of Cromwell, were hostile to monarchy and to an hereditary proprietor; and while they contended earnestly for every civil liberty, they proceeded to disfranchise those who differed from them in matters of religion. Catholics were excluded from the assembly which was then called; and an act of the assembly declared that Catholics were not entitled to the protection of the laws of Maryland.

1655.

6. Measures taken by the lieutenant of Lord Baltimore.

7. Events that followed.

f. April 4.

21. [6]In January of the following year, Stone, the lieutenant of Lord Baltimore, reassumed his office of governor,—organized an armed force,—and seized the provincial records. [7]Civil war followed. Several skirmishes occurred between the contending parties, and at length a decisive battle† was fought,[f] which resulted in the defeat of the Catholics, with the loss of about fifty men in killed

* Note.—*Bozman*, in his History of Maryland, ii. 350—356, dwells at considerable length upon these laws; but he maintains that a majority of the members of the Assembly of 1649 were *Protestants*.

† Note.—The place where this battle was fought was on the south side of the small creek which forms the southern boundary of the peninsula on which Annapolis, the capital of Maryland, now stands. (See Map, p. 240.)

and wounded. Stone himself was taken prisoner, and four of the principal men of the province were executed. **1655.**

22. [1]In 1656 Josiah Fendall was commissioned[a] governor by the proprietor, but he was soon after arrested[b] by the Protestant party. After a divided rule of nearly two years, between the contending parties, Fendall was at length acknowledged[c] governor, and the proprietor was restored to the full enjoyment of his rights. [2]Soon after the death[d] of Cromwell, the Protector of England, the Assembly of Maryland, fearing a renewal of the dissensions which had long distracted the province, and seeing no security but in asserting the power of the people, dissolved the upper house, consisting of the governor and his council, and assumed[e] to itself the whole legislative power of the state.

1. Farther disturbances, how composed.
a. July 20.
b. Aug.
1658.
c. April 3.
2. Dissolution of the upper house.
d. Sept. 1658.
1660.
e. March 24.

23. [3]Fendall, having surrendered the trust which Lord Baltimore had confided to him, accepted from the assembly a new commission as governor. [4]But on the restoration[f] of monarchy in England, the proprietor was re-established in his rights,—Philip Calvert was appointed governor,—and the ancient order of things was restored. [5]Fendall was tried for treason and found guilty; but the proprietor wisely proclaimed a general pardon to political offenders, and Maryland once more experienced the blessings of a mild government, and internal tranquillity.

3. Course taken by Fendall.
4. Events that occurred on the restoration of monarchy.
f. June, 1660.
5. Political offenders.

24. [6]On the death[g] of Lord Baltimore, in 1675, his son Charles, who inherited his father's reputation for virtue and ability, succeeded him as proprietor. He confirmed the law which established an absolute political equality among all denominations of Christians,—caused a diligent revision of the laws of the province to be made, and, in general, administered the government with great satisfaction to the people.

1675.
6. Successor of Lord Baltimore.
g. Dec. 10.

25. [7]At the time of the revolution in England, the repose of Maryland was again disturbed. The deputies of the proprietor having hesitated to proclaim the new sovereigns, and a rumor having gained prevalence that the magistrates and the Catholics had formed a league with the Indians for the massacre of all the Protestants in the province, an armed association was formed for asserting the right of King William, and for the defence of the Protestant faith.

1689.
7. Events that followed the revolution in England.
Sept.

26. [8]The Catholics at first endeavored to oppose, by force, the designs of the association; but they at length surrendered the powers of government by capitulation. A convention of the associates then assumed the government, which they administered until 1691, when the king, by an arbitrary enactment,[h] deprived Lord Balti-

8. The Catholics.
9. Changes of government.
h. July 11.

ANALYSIS.

more of his political rights as proprietor, and constituted Maryland a *royal government*.

1692.

1. *Administration of Sir Lionel Copley.*

27. [1]In the following year Sir Lionel Copley arrived as royal governor,—the principles of the proprietary administration were subverted,—religious toleration was abolished,—and the Church of England was established as the religion of the state, and was supported by taxation.

2. *Remaining history of Maryland previous to the revolution.*

a. 1715, 1716.

28. [2]After an interval of more than twenty years, the legal proprietor, in the person of the infant heir of Lord Baltimore, was restored[a] to his rights, and Maryland again became a proprietary government, under which it remained until the Revolution. Few events of interest mark its subsequent history, until, as an independent state, it adopted a constitution, when the claims of the proprietor to jurisdiction and property were finally rejected.

CHAPTER IX.

Subject of Chapter IX.

PENNSYLVANIA.*

3. *Early Swedish settlements in Pennsylvania.*

b. See p. 223.

1.[3] As early as 1643 the Swedes, who had previously settled[b] near Wilmington, in Delaware, erected a fort on the island of Tinicum, a few miles below Philadelphia; and here the Swedish governor, John Printz, established his residence. Settlements clustered along the western bank of the Delaware, and Pennsylvania was thus colonized by Swedes, nearly forty years before the grant of the territory to William Penn.

1681.

4. *Grant to William Penn.*

c. March 14.

5. *Consideration of this grant.*

2. [4]In 1681, William Penn, son of Admiral Penn, a member of the society of Friends, obtained[c] of Charles II. a grant of all the lands embraced in the present state of Pennsylvania. [5]This grant was given, as expressed in the charter, in consideration of the desire of Penn to enlarge the boundaries of the British empire, and reduce the natives, by just and gentle treatment, to the love of civil society and the Christian religion; and, in addition, as a recompense for unrequited services rendered by his father to the British nation.

---

* PENNSYLVANIA contains an area of about 46,000 square miles. The central part of the state is covered by the numerous ridges of the Alleghanies, running N.E. and S.W., but on both sides of the mountains the country is either level or moderately hilly, and the soil is generally excellent. Iron ore is widely disseminated in Pennsylvania, and the coal regions are very extensive. The bituminous, or soft coal, is found in inexhaustible quantities west of the Alleghanies, and anthracite, or hard coal, on the east, particularly between the Blue Ridge and the N. branch of the Susquehanna. The principal coal-field is sixty-five miles in length with an average breadth of about five miles.

3. [1]The enlarged and liberal views of Penn, however, embraced objects of even more extended benevolence than those expressed in the royal charter. His noble aim was to open, in the New World, an asylum where civil and religious liberty should be enjoyed; and where, under the benign influence of the principles of PEACE, those of every sect, color, and clime, might dwell together in unity and love. [2]As Pennsylvania included the principal settlements of the Swedes, Penn issued[a] a proclamation to the inhabitants, in which he assured them of his ardent desire for their welfare, and promised that they should live a free people, and be governed by laws of their own making.

1681.

1. *Views of Penn, and his noble aim.*

2. *Proclamation made by Penn.*

a. April.

4. [3]Penn now published a flattering account of the province, and an invitation to purchasers, and during the same year three ships, with emigrants, mostly Quakers, sailed[b] for Pennsylvania. [4]In the first came William Markham, agent of the proprietor, and deputy-governor, who was instructed to govern in harmony with law,—to confer with the Indians respecting their lands, and to conclude with them a league of peace. [5]In the same year Penn addressed[c] a letter to the natives, declaring himself and them responsible to the same God, who had written his law in the hearts of all, and assuring them of his "great love and regard for them," and his "resolution to live justly, peaceably, and friendly" with them.

3. *Invitation to settlers, and first emigration.*

b. May and Oct.

4. *Instructions given to Markham.*

5. *Penn's letter to the natives.*

c. Oct. 28.

5. [6]Early in the following year Penn published[d] a "frame of government," and a code of laws, which were to be submitted to the people of his province for their approval. [7]He soon after obtained[e] from the duke of York a release of all his claims to the territory of Pennsylvania, and likewise a grant[f] of the present state of Delaware, then called THE TERRITORIES, or, "The Three Lower Counties on the Delaware." [8]In September Penn himself, with a large number of emigrants of his own religious persuasion, sailed for America, and on the sixth of November following landed at Newcastle.

1682.

6. *Frame of government, &c.*

d. May 15.

7. *Release and grant from the Duke of York.*

e. Aug. 31.

f. Sept. 3.

8. *Penn's visit to America.*

6. [9]On the day after his arrival he received in public, from the agent of the Duke of York, a surrender[5] of "The Territories;"—made a kind address to the people, and renewed the commissions of the former magistrates. [10]In accordance with his directions a friendly correspondence had been opened with the neighboring tribes of Indians, by the deputy-governor Markham; they had assented to the form of a treaty, and they were now invited to a conference for the purpose of giving it their ratification. [11]At a spot which is now the site of Kensington,*

9. *Events that occurred immediately after his arrival.*

g. Nov. 7.

10. *Relations already established with the Indians.*

11. *Indian conference at Kensington.*

* *Kensington* constitutes a suburb of Philadelphia, in the N.E. part of the city, bordering

ANALYSIS.

one of the suburbs of Philadelphia, the Indian chiefs assembled at the head of their armed warriors; and here they were met by William Penn, at the head of an unarmed train of his religious associates, all clad in the simple Quaker garb, which the Indians long after venerated as the habiliments of peace.

1. *Penn's address to the Indians.*

7. [1]Taking his station beneath a spreading elm, Penn addressed the Indians through the medium of an interpreter. He told them that the Great Spirit knew with what sincerity he and his people desired to live in friendship with them. "We meet," such were his words, "on the broad pathway of good faith and good will; no advantage shall be taken on either side; disputes shall be settled by arbitrators mutually chosen; and all shall be openness and love." [2]Having paid the chiefs the stipulated price for their lands, he delivered to them a parchment record of the treaty, which he desired that they would carefully preserve, for the information of their posterity, for three generations.

2. *Record of the treaty.*

3. *Promises of the Indians.*

8. [3]The children of the forest cordially acceded to the terms of friendship offered them, and pledged themselves to live in love with William Penn and his children, as long as the sun and moon should endure. [4]The friendship thus created between the province and the Indians continued more than seventy years, and was never interrupted while the Quakers retained the control of the government. Of all the American colonies, the early history of Pennsylvania alone is wholly exempt from scenes of savage warfare. The Quakers came without arms, and with no message but peace, and not a drop of their blood was ever shed by an Indian.

4. *Happy effects of Penn's policy.*

1683. 9. [5]A few months after Penn's arrival, he selected a place between the rivers Schuylkill* and Delaware, for the capital of his province,—purchased the land of the Swedes, who had already erected a church there, and having regulated the model of the future city by a map, named it Philadelphia,† or the city of

5. *Founding of Philadelphia.*

PHILADELPHIA AND VICINITY.

on the Delaware; and, though it has a separate government of its own, it should be regarded as a part of the city. (See Map.)

* The *Schuylkill* River, in the eastern part of Pennsylvania, rises by three principal branches in Schuylkill County, and pursuing a S.E course, enters Delaware River five miles below Philadelphia. Vessels of from 300 to 400 tons ascend it to the western wharves of Philadelphia. (See Map.)

† *Philadelphia* City, now the second in size and population in the United States, is situated between the Delaware and the Schuylkill Rivers, five miles above their junction, and 120 miles, by the Delaware River, from the ocean. It is about eighty miles, in

"Brotherly Love." [1]The groves of chestnut, walnut, and pine, which marked the site, were commemorated by the names given to the principal streets. [2]At the end of a year the city numbered eighty dwellings, and at the end of two years it contained a population of two thousand five hundred inhabitants. **1684.**

1. *Names of the streets.*
2. *Growth of the city.*

10. [3]The second assembly of the province was held in the infant city in March, 1683. The "frame of government," and the laws previously agreed upon, were amended at the suggestion of Penn; and, in their place, a charter of liberties, signed by him, was adopted,[a] which rendered Pennsylvania, nearly all but in name, a representative democracy. [4]While in the other colonies the proprietors reserved to themselves the appointment of the judicial and executive officers, William Penn freely surrendered these powers to the people. His highest ambition, so different from that of the founders of most colonies, was to do good to the people of his care; and to his dying day he declared that if they needed any thing more to make them happier, he would readily grant it.

3. *The second assembly.*
a. April 12.
4. *Penn's liberality to the people.*

11. [5]In August, 1684, Penn sailed for England, having first appointed five commissioners of the provincial council, with Thomas Lloyd as president, to administer the government during his absence. [6]Little occurred to disturb the quiet of the province until 1691, when the "three lower counties on the Delaware," dissatisfied with some proceedings of a majority of the council, withdrew[b] from the Union, and, with the reluctant consent of the proprietor, a separate deputy-governor was then appointed over them. 1684. 1691.

5. *The government after Penn's return to England.*
6. *Withdrawal of Delaware from the Union.*
b. April 11.

12. [7]In the mean time James II. had been driven from his throne, and William Penn was several times imprisoned in England, in consequence of his supposed adherence to the cause of the fallen monarch. [8]In 1692 Penn's provincial government was taken from him, by a royal commission[c] to Governor Fletcher, of New York; who, the following year, reunited[d] Delaware to Pennsylvania, and extended the royal authority over both. Soon after, the suspicions against Penn were removed, and in August, 1694, he was restored[e] to his proprietary rights. 1692.

7. *Penn's imprisonment in England.*
8. *The government of the province from 1692 to 1694.*
c. Oct. 31.
d. May.
e. Aug. 30.

13. [9]In the latter part of the year 1699 Penn again visited[f] his colony, but instead of the quiet and repose which he expected, he found the people dissatisfied, and demanding still farther concessions and privileges. [10]He therefore presented[g] them another charter, or frame of

9. *Condition of the province in 1699.*
f. Dec. 30.
10. *Penn's labors to satisfy the people.*
g. Nov. 7, 1701.

---

a direct line, S.W. from New York, and 125 N.E. from Washington. The compact part of the city is now more than eight miles in circumference. (See Map, p. 243.)

ANALYSIS.

government, more liberal than the former, and conferring greater powers on the people; but all his efforts could not remove the objections of the delegates of the lower counties, who had already withdrawn[a] from the assembly, and who now refused to receive the charter continuing their union with Pennsylvania. [1]In the following year the legislature of Pennsylvania was convened apart, and in 1703 the two colonies agreed to the separation. They were never again united in legislation, although the same governor still continued to preside over both.

a. Oct. 20.

1702.

1. *Final separation of Delaware from Pennsylvania.*

14. [2]Immediately after the grant of the last charter, Penn returned[b] to England, where his presence was necessary to resist a project which the English ministers had formed, of abolishing all the proprietary governments in America. [3]He died in England in 1718, leaving his interest in Pennsylvania and Delaware to his sons John, Thomas, and Richard Penn, who continued to administer the government, most of the time by deputies, until the American revolution, when the commonwealth purchased all their claims in the province for about 580,000 dollars.

2. *Penn's presence required in England.*

b. Dec. 1701.

1718.

3. *Death of Penn, and subsequent history of the colony.*

(For a more full account of the Quakers or Friends, see Appendix, p. 311 to p. 319.)

CHAPTER X.

Subject of Chapter X.

NORTH CAROLINA.*

1. [4]The early attempts[c] of the English, under Sir Walter Raleigh, to form a settlement on the coast of North Carolina, have already been mentioned.[c] [5]About forty years later, the king of England granted[d] to Sir Robert Heath a large tract of country lying between the 30th and 36th degrees of north latitude, which was erected into a province by the name of Carolina. [6]No settlements, however, were made under the grant, which, on that account, was afterwards declared void.

4. *Early attempts to settle North Carolina.*

c. 1585, 6, 7. See p 131.

5. *Grant to Sir Robert Heath.*

d. 1630.

6. *Why declared void.*

7. *When and by whom Carolina was first explored and settled.*

2. [7]Between 1640 and 1650 exploring parties from Virginia penetrated into Carolina, and from the same

---

* NORTH CAROLINA, one of the Southern States, lying next south of Virginia, contains an area of nearly 50,000 square miles. Along the whole coast is a narrow ridge of sand, separated from the mainland in some places by narrow, and in other places by broad sounds and bays. The country for more than sixty miles from the coast is a low sandy plain, with many swamps and marshes, and inlets from the sea. The natural growth of this region is almost universally pitch pine. Above the falls of the rivers the country becomes uneven, and the soil more fertile. In the western part of the state is an elevated table land, and some high ranges of the Alleghanies. *Black Mountain*, the highest point in the United States east of the Rocky Mountains, is 6476 feet high. The gold region of North Carolina lies on both sides of the Blue Ridge, in the S. Western part of the state.

source came the first emigrants, who soon after settled[a] near the mouth of the Chowan,* on the northern shore of Albemarle Sound. [1]In 1663 the province of Carolina was granted[b] to Lord Clarendon and seven others, and in the same year a government under William Drummond was established over the little settlement on the Chowan, which, in honor of the Duke of Albemarle, one of the proprietors, was called the *Albemarle County Colony*.

1650.

a. The particular year is not known.

1. *When and to whom the second grant was made, and what government was established.*

b. April 3.

3. [2]Two years later, the proprietors having learned that the settlement was not within the limits of their charter, the grant was extended,[c] so as to embrace the half of Florida on the south, and, on the north, all within the present limits of North Carolina, and westward to the Pacific Ocean. [3]The charter secured religious freedom to the people, and a voice in the legislation of the colony; but granted to the corporation of eight, an extent of powers and privileges, that made it evident that the formation of an empire was contemplated.

1665.

2. *Extension given to the grant.*

c. July 10.

3. *Rights and powers secured by the charter.*

4. [4]During the same year that the grant to Clarendon was extended, another colony was firmly established within the present limits of North Carolina. In 1660 or 1661, a band of adventurers from New England entered Cape Fear River,† purchased a tract of land from the Indians, and, a few miles below Wilmington,‡ on Old Town Creek,§ formed a settlement. The colony did not prosper. The Indians became hostile, and before the autumn of 1665, the settlement was abandoned. Two years later a number of planters from Barbadoes‖ formed a permanent settlement near the neglected site of the New England colony, and a county named *Clarendon* was established, with the same constitution and powers that had been granted to Albemarle. [5]Sir John Yeamans, the choice of the people, ruled the colony with prudence and affection.

1665

4. *Establishment of the Clarendon colony.*

5. *Governor.*

---

* The *Chowan* River, formed by the union of Nottaway, Meherrin, and Blackwater Rivers, which rise and run chiefly in Virginia, flows into Albermarle Sound, a little north of the mouth of the Roanoke. The first settlements were on the N.E. side of the Chowan, near the present village of Edenton.

† *Cape Fear* River, in North Carolina, is formed by the union of Haw and Deep Rivers, about 125 miles N.W. from Wilmington. It enters the Atlantic by two channels, one on each side of Smith's Island, twenty and twenty-five miles below Wilmington. (See the Map.)

‡ *Wilmington*, the principal seaport in North Carolina, is situated on the east side of Cape Fear River, twenty-five miles from the ocean, by way of Cape Fear, and 150 miles N.E. from Charleston. (See Map.)

§ *Old Town Creek* is a small stream that enters Cape Fear River from the W. eight miles below Wilmington. (Map.)

‖ *Barbadoes* is one of the Caribbee or Windward Islands, and the most eastern of the West Indies. It is twenty miles long, and contains an area of about 150 square miles. The island was granted by James I. to the Earl of Marlborough in 1624.

VIC. OF WILMINGTON, N. C.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Anticipations and designs of the proprietors.*

2. *Framers of the constitution.*

3. *Object of the proprietors.*

a. Constitutions signed March 11.

4. *Nature of the constitution adopted.*

5. *Attempt to establish the constitution—and the result.*

b. 1693.

6. *Circumstances that retarded and finally defeated the settlement of Clarendon.*

c. Dec.

d. See p. 255.

7. *Dissensions in the Albemarle colony.*

5. [1]As the proprietors of Carolina anticipated the rapid growth of a great and powerful people within the limits of their extensive and fertile territory, they thought proper to establish a permanent form of government, commensurate, in dignity, with the vastness of their expectations. [2]The task of framing the constitution was assigned to the Earl of Shaftesbury, one of the number, who chose the celebrated philosopher, John Locke, as his friend and adviser in the work of legislation.

6. [3]The object of the proprietors, as expressed[a] by themselves, was "to make the government of Carolina agree, as nearly as possible, to the monarchy of which it was a part; and to avoid erecting a numerous democracy." [4]A constitution of one hundred and twenty articles, called the "Fundamental Constitutions," was adopted, establishing a government to be administered by lords and noblemen; connecting political power with hereditary wealth; and placing nearly every office in the government beyond the reach of the people.

1670. 7. [5]The attempt to establish the new form of government proved ineffectual. The former plain and simple laws were suited to the circumstances of the people, and the magnificent model of government, with its appendages of royalty, contrasted too ludicrously with the sparse population, and rude cabins of Carolina. After a contest of little more than twenty years, the constitution, which was never in effectual operation, and which had proved to be a source of perpetual discord, was abrogated[b] by the proprietors themselves.

1671. 8. [6]The Clarendon county colony had never been very numerous, and the barrenness of the soil in its vicinity offered little promise of reward to new adventurers. In 1671 Sir John Yeamans, the governor, was transferred[c] from the colony to the charge of another which had recently been established[d] in South Carolina. Numerous removals to the southward greatly reduced the numbers of the inhabitants, and nearly the whole country embraced within the limits of the Clarendon colony was a second time surrendered to the aborigines before the year 1690.

9. [7]Domestic dissensions long retarded the prosperity of the Albemarle, or northern colony. Disorder arose from the attempts of the governors to administer the government according to the constitution of the proprietors;

1676. excessive taxation, and restrictions upon the commerce of the colony, occasioned much discontent; while numerous refugees from Virginia, the actors in Bacon's rebellion, friends of popular liberty, being kindly sheltered in

Carolina, gave encouragement to the people to resist oppression. 1677.

10. [1]The very year[a] after the suppression of Bacon's rebellion in Virginia, a revolt occurred in Carolina, occasioned by an attempt to enforce the revenue laws against a vessel from New England. The people took arms in support of a smuggler, and imprisoned the president of the colony and six members of his council. John Culpepper, who had recently fled from South Carolina, was the leader in the insurrection. [2]During several years, officers chosen by the people administered the government, and tranquillity was for a time restored. The inhabitants were restless and turbulent under a government imposed on them from abroad, but firm and tranquil when left to take care of themselves.

1. Revolt in Carolina.
a. 1677. Dec.
2. Tranquillity restored.

11. [3]In 1683 Seth Sothel, one of the proprietors, arrived as governor of the province. Being exceedingly avaricious, he not only plundered the colonists, but cheated his proprietary associates. He valued his office only as the means of gaining wealth, and in the pursuit of his favorite object, whether as judge, or executive, he was ever open to bribery and corruption. [4]An historian of North Carolina remarks, that "the dark shades of his character were not relieved by a single ray of virtue." The patience of the inhabitants being exhausted after nearly six years of oppression, they seized their governor with the design of sending him to England; but, at his own request, he was tried by the assembly, which banished him from the colony.

1683.
3. Sothel governor, his character
4. What is remarked of him.
5. His arrest and trial.
1688

12. [6]Ludwell, the next governor, redressed the frauds, public and private, which Sothel had committed, and restored order to the colony. [7]In 1695 Sir John Archdale, another of the proprietors, a man of much sagacity and exemplary conduct, arrived as governor of both the Carolinas. [8]In 1698 the first settlements were made on Pamlico or Tar* River. The Pamlico Indians in that vicinity had been nearly destroyed, two years previous by a pestilential fever; while another numerous tribe had been greatly reduced by the arms of a more powerful nation.

1689.
6. Administration of Ludwell.
Aug.
7. Arrival, and character of Archdale.
8. First settlements on Pamlico River

13. [9]The want of harmony, which generally prevailed between the proprietors and the people, did not check the increase of population. [10]In 1707 a company of French Protestants, who had previously settled in Virginia, removed to Carolina. Two years later, they were followed

9. Increase of population.
10. Arrival of emigrants.
1709.

* *Tar* River, in the eastern part of North Carolina, flows S.E., and enters Pamlico Sound. It is the principal river next south of the Roanoke. It expands into a wide estuary a short distance below the village of Washington, from which place to Pamlico Sound, a distance of forty miles, it is called *Pamlico* River

ANALYSIS.

1. *Provisions made for the emigrants.*

by a hundred German families from the Rhine,* who had been driven in poverty from their homes, by the devastations of war, and religious persecution. [1]The proprietors assigned to each family two hundred and fifty acres of land; and generous contributions in England furnished them with provisions and implements of husbandry, sufficient for their immediate wants.

2. *Changes that had fallen upon the Indian tribes since the time of Sir Walter Raleigh.*

14. [2]A great change had fallen upon the numerous Indian tribes on the sea-coast, since the time of Sir Walter Raleigh's attempted settlements. One tribe, which could then bring three thousand bowmen into the field, was now reduced to fifteen men; another had entirely disappeared; and, of the whole, but a remnant remained. After having sold most of their lands, their reservations had been encroached upon;—strong drink had degraded the Indians, and crafty traders had impoverished them; and they had passed away before the march of civilization, like snow beneath a vertical sun.

3. *Tuscaroras and the Corees.*

15. [3]The Tuscaroras and the Corees, being farther inland, had held little intercourse with the whites; but they had observed, with jealousy and fear, their growing power, and the rapid advance of their settlements, and with Indian secrecy they now plotted the extermination of the strangers. [4]A surveyor, who was found upon their lands with his chain and compass, was the first victim.[a] Leaving their fire-arms, to avoid suspicion, in small parties, acting in concert, they approached the scattered settlements along Roanoke† River and Pamlico Sound; and in one night,[b] one hundred and thirty persons fell by the hatchet.

1711.

4. *Commencement of hostilities.*

a. Sept.

b. Oct. 2.

5. *Services of Col. Barnwell against the Indians.*

16. [5]Colonel Barnwell, with a considerable body of friendly Cherokees, Creeks, and Catawbas, was sent from South Carolina to the relief of the settlers, and having defeated the enemy in different actions, he pursued them to their fortified town,‡ which capitulated, and the Indians were allowed to escape. [6]But in a few days the treaty was broken on both sides, and the Indians renewed hostilities. At length Colonel Moore, of South Carolina, arrived,[c] with forty white men and eight hundred friendly Indians; and in 1713 the Tuscaroras were besieged in their fort,§ and eight hundred taken prisoners.[d] At last

6. *Farther progress, and the end of the war.*

c. Dec.

1713.

d April 5.

* The *Rhine*, one of the most important rivers in Europe, rises in Switzerland, passes through Lake Constance, and after flowing N. and N.W. through Germany, it turns to the west, and, through several channels, enters the North Sea or German Ocean, between Holland and Belgium.

† *Roanoke* River, formed by the junction of Staunton and Dan Rivers, near the south boundary of Virginia, flows S.E. through the northeastern part of North Carolina, and enters the head of Albemarle Sound.

‡ This place was near the River Neuse, a short distance above Edenton, in Craven County.

§ This place was in Greene County, on *Cotentnea* (or Cotechney) Creek, a short distance above its entrance into the River Neuse.

the hostile part of the tribe migrated north, and, joining their kindred in New York, became the sixth nation of the Iroquois confederacy. In 1715 peace was concluded[a] with the Corees.

1713.

1715.
a. Feb.

17. [1]In 1729, the two Carolinas, which had hitherto been under the superintendence of the same board of proprietors, were finally separated;[b] and royal governments, entirely unconnected, were established[c] over them. [2]From this time, until the period immediately preceding the Revolution, few events occurred to disturb the peace and increasing prosperity of North Carolina. In 1744 public attention was turned to the defence of the sea-coast, on account of the commencement of hostilities between England and Spain. About the time of the commencement of the French and Indian war, the colony received large accessions to its numbers, by emigrants from Ireland and Scotland, and thus the settlements were extended into the interior, where the soil was far more fertile than the lands previously occupied.

1729.
1. *Events that occurred in 1729.*
b. July.
c. Sept.
2. *Condition and progress of North Carolina from this time till the revolution.*

1754.

CHAPTER XI.

SOUTH CAROLINA.*

Subject of Chapter XI.

1. [3]The charter granted to Lord Clarendon and others, in 1663, embraced, as has been stated,[d] a large extent of territory, reaching from Virginia to Florida. [4]After the establishment of a colony in the northern part of their province, the proprietors, early in 1670, fitted out several ships, with emigrants, for planting a southern colony, under the direction of William Sayle, who had previously explored the coast. The ships which bore the emigrants entered the harbor of Port Royal, near Beaufort,† whence, after a short delay, they sailed into Ashley‡ River, on the

3. *Charter to Clarendon.*
d. See p. 251.

1670.
4. *The planting of the first colony in South Carolina.*

---

* SOUTH CAROLINA, one of the Southern States, contains an area of nearly 33,000 square miles. The sea-coast is bordered with a chain of fertile islands. *The Low Country*, extending from eighty to 100 miles from the coast, is covered with forests of pitch pine, called pine barrens, interspersed with marshes and swamps, which form excellent rice plantations. Beyond this, extending fifty or sixty miles in width, is the *Middle Country*, composed of numerous ridges of sand hills, presenting an appearance which has been compared to the waves of the sea suddenly arrested in their course. Beyond these sand hills commences the *Upper Country*, which is a beautiful and healthy, and generally fertile region, about 800 feet above the level of the sea. The Blue Ridge, a branch of the Alleghanies, passes along the N. Western boundary of the state.

† *Beaufort*, in South Carolina, is situated on Port Royal Island, on the W. bank of Port Royal River, a narrow branch of the ocean. It is sixteen miles from the sea, and about thirty-six miles, in a direct line, N.E. from Savannah. (See Map, p. 129.)

‡ *Ashley* River rises about thirty miles N.W. from Charleston, and, passing along the west side of the city enters Charleston Harbor seven miles from the ocean. (See Map, next page.)

ANALYSIS.

south side of which the settlement of Old Charleston was commenced. The colony, in honor of Sir George Carteret, one of the proprietors, was called the CARTERET COUNTY COLONY.

1671.

1. *Events that occurred in 1671.*

2. [1]Early in 1671 Governor Sayle sunk under the diseases of a sickly climate, and the council appointed Joseph West to succeed him, until they should learn the will of the proprietors. In a few months, Sir John Yeamans, then governor of Clarendon, was appointed[a] governor of the southern colony. [2]From Barbadoes he brought a number of African slaves, and South Carolina was, from the first, essentially, a planting state, with slave labor. [3]Representative government was early established[b] by the people, but the attempt to carry out the plan of government formed by the proprietors proved ineffectual.

a. Dec.

2. *The colony supplied with laborers.*

3. *The government of the colony.*

b. 1761—2.

4. *Circumstances that favored the settlement and growth of South Carolina.*

3. [4]Several circumstances contributed to promote the early settlement of South Carolina. A long and bloody war between two neighboring Indian tribes, and a fatal epidemic which had recently prevailed, had opened the way for the more peaceful occupation of the country by the English. The recent conquest of New Netherlands induced many of the Dutch to emigrate, and several ship loads of them were conveyed[c] to Carolina, by the proprietors, free of expense. Lands were assigned them west of the Ashley River, where they formed a settlement, which was called Jamestown. The inhabitants soon spread themselves through the country, and in process of time the town was deserted. Their prosperity induced many of their countrymen from Holland to follow them. A few years later a company of French Protestants, refugees from their own country, were sent[d] over by the king of England.

c. 1671.

d. 1679.

5. *Settlement and progress of Charleston.*

4. [5]The pleasant location of "Oyster Point," between the rivers Ashley and Cooper,* had early attracted the attention of the settlers, and had gained a few inhabitants; and in 1680 the foundation of a new town was laid there, which was called Charleston.† It was immediately de-

1680.

VICINITY OF CHARLESTON.

* *Cooper* River rises about thirty-five miles N.E. from Charleston, and passing along the east side of the city, unites with Ashley River, to form Charleston Harbor. Wando River, a short but broad stream, enters the Cooper from the east, four miles above the city. (See Map.)

† *Charleston*, a city and seaport of S. Carolina, is situated on a peninsula formed by the union of Ashley and Cooper Rivers, seven miles from the ocean. It is only about seven feet above high tide; and parts of the city have been overflowed when the wind and tide have combined to raise the waters. The harbor, below the city, is about two miles in width, and seven in length, across the mouth of which is a sand bar, having four passages, the deepest of which, near Sullivan's Island, has seventeen feet of water, at high tide. During the summer months the city is more healthy than the surrounding country.

clared the capital of the province, and during the first year thirty dwellings were erected. [1]In the same year the colony was involved in difficulties with the Indians. Straggling parties of the Westoes began to plunder the plantations, and several Indians were shot by the planters. War immediately broke out; a price was fixed on Indian prisoners; and many of them were sent to the West Indies, and sold for slaves. The following year[a] peace was concluded, and commissioners were appointed to decide all complaints between the contending parties.

1680.

1. *First war with the Indians, and its termination.*

a. 1681.

5. [2]In 1684 a few families of Scotch emigrants settled at Port Royal; but two years later, the Spaniards of St. Augustine, claiming the territory, invaded the settlement, and laid it waste. [3]About this time the revocation[b] of the edict of Nantes* induced a large number of French Protestants, generally called Huguenots, to leave their country and seek an asylum in America. A few settled in New England; others in New York; but South Carolina became their chief resort. [4]Although they had been induced, by the proprietors, to believe that the full rights of citizenship would be extended to them here, yet they were long viewed with jealousy and distrust by the English settlers, who were desirous of driving them from the country, by enforcing against them the laws of England respecting aliens.

1684.

2. *Events at Port Royal.*

1686.

3. *Removal of Huguenots to America.*

b. 1685.

4. *How they were at first regarded, and how treated by the English*

6. [5]The administration[c] of Governor Colleton was signalized by a continued series of disputes with the people, who, like the settlers in North Carolina, refused to submit to the form of government established by the proprietors. An attempt of the governor to collect the rents claimed by the proprietors, finally drove the people to open rebellion. They forcibly took possession of the public records, held assemblies in opposition to the governor, and the authority of the proprietors, and imprisoned the secretary of the province. At length Colleton, pretending danger from Indians or Spaniards, called out the militia, and proclaimed the province under martial law. This only exasperated the people the more, and Colleton was finally impeached by the assembly, and banished from the province.

5. *Events that occurred during Gov. Colleton's administration.*

c. 1686—1690.

7. [6]During these commotions, Seth Sothel, who had previously been banished[d] from North Carolina, arrived in the province, and assumed the government, with the

1690.

6. *Sothel's administration.*

d. See p. 253.

* *Nantes* is a large commercial city in the west of France, on the N. side of the River Loire, thirty miles from its mouth. It was in this place that Henry IV. promulgated the famous edict in 1598, in favor of the Protestants, granting them the free exercise of their religion. In 1685 this edict *was revoked* by Louis XIV.;—a violent persecution of the Protestants followed, and thousands of them fled from the kingdom.

ANALYSIS.

consent of the people. But his avarice led him to trample upon every restraint of justice and equity; and after two years of tyranny and misrule, he likewise was deposed and banished by the people. [1]Philip Ludwell, for some time governor of North Carolina, was then sent to the southern province, to re-establish the authority of the proprietors. But the old disputes revived, and after a brief, but turbulent administration, he gladly withdrew into Virginia.

. Ludwell's administration.

1692.

1693.

8. [2]In 1693, one cause of discontent with the people was removed by the proprietors; who abolished the "Fundamental Constitution," and returned to a more simple and more republican form of government. [3]But contentions and disputes still continuing, John Archdale, who was a Quaker, and proprietor, came over in 1695; and by a wise and equitable administration, did much to allay private animosities, and remove the causes of civil discord. [4]Matters of general moment were settled to the satisfaction of all, excepting the French refugees; and such was the antipathy of the English settlers against these peaceable, but unfortunate people, that Governor Archdale found it necessary to exclude the latter from all concern in the legislature.

2. Events in 1693.

3. Archdale:—his administration.

4. French refugees.

1696.

9. [5]Fortunately for the peace of the colony, soon after the return of Archdale, all difficulties with the Huguenots were amicably settled. Their quiet and inoffensive behavior, and their zeal for the success of the colony, had gradually removed the national antipathies; and the general assembly at length admitted[a] them to all the rights of citizens and freemen. The French and English Protestants of Carolina have ever since lived together in harmony and peace. [6]In 1702, immediately after the declaration[b] of war, by England, against France and Spain, Governor Moore proposed to the assembly of Carolina an expedition against the Spanish settlement of St. Augustine, in Florida. [7]The more considerate opposed the project, but a majority being in favor of it, a sum of about nine thousand dollars was voted for the war, and 1200 men were raised, of whom half were Indians.

5 Termination of the difficulties with them.

1697.

a. March.

1702.

6. Warlike measure proposed by the governor in 1702.

b. May.

7. How received.

10. [8]While Colonel Daniel marched against St. Augustine by land, the governor proceeded with the main body by sea, and blocked up the harbor. The Spaniards, taking with them all their most valuable effects, and a large supply of provisions, retired to their castle. As nothing could be effected against it, for the want of heavy artillery, Daniel was despatched to Jamaica,* for cannon, mor-

8. Expedition against St. Augustine.

* *Jamaica*, one of the West India Islands, is 100 miles S. from Cuba, and 800 S.E. from St. Augustine. It is of an oval form, and is about 150 miles long.

tars, &c. During his absence, two Spanish ships appeared off the harbor; when Governor Moore, abandoning his ships, made a hasty retreat into Carolina. Colonel Daniel, on his return, standing in for the harbor, made a narrow escape from the enemy. **1703.**

11. [1]The hasty retreat of the governor was severely censured by the people of Carolina. This enterprise loaded the colony with a debt of more than 26,000 dollars, for the payment of which bills of credit were issued; the first paper money used in Carolina. [2]An expedition which was soon after undertaken[a] against the Apalachian Indians, who were in alliance with the Spaniards, proved more successful. The Indian towns between the rivers Altamaha* and Savannah† were laid in ashes; several hundred Indians were taken prisoners; and the whole province of Apalachia was obliged to submit to the English government.

1. Debt incurred, and how defrayed. **1703.** *2. War with the Apalachians.* a. Dec. **1704.**

12. [3]The establishment of the Church of England, in Carolina, had long been a favorite object with several of the proprietors, and during the administration of Sir Nathaniel Johnson, who succeeded[b] Governor Moore, their designs were fully carried out; and not only was the Episcopal form of worship established, as the religion of he province, but all dissenters were excluded from the colonial legislature. [4]The dissenters then carried their cause before the English parliament, which declared that the acts complained of were repugnant to the laws of England, and contrary to the charter of the proprietors. [5]Soon after, the colonial assembly of Carolina repealed[c] the laws which disfranchised a portion of the people; but the Church of England remained the established religion of the province until the Revolution.

3. Establishment of the Church of England. b. 1704. *4. Decision of Parliament in this matter.* **1706.** *5. Laws of disfranchisement repealed.* c. Nov.

13. [6]From these domestic troubles, a threatened invasion of the province turned the attention of the people towards their common defence against foreign enemies. [7]Queen Anne's war still continued; and Spain, considering Carolina as a part of Florida, determined to assert her right by force of arms. [8]In 1706, a French and Spanish squadron from Havanna appeared before Charleston; but the inhabitants, headed by the governor and Colonel Rhett, assembled in great numbers for the defence of the city.

6. Threatened invasion. 7. Hostility of the Spaniards. 8. Events that occurred in 1706.

* The *Altamaha*, a large and navigable river of Georgia, is formed by the union of the Oconee and the Ocmulgee, after which it flows S.E., upwards of 100 miles, and enters the Atlantic by several outlets, sixty miles S.W. from Savannah. Milledgeville, the capital of the state, is on the Oconee, the northern branch. (See Map, 261.)

† The *Savannah* River has its head branches in N. Carolina, and, running a S. Eastern course, forms the boundary between S. Carolina and Georgia. The largest vessels pass up the river fourteen miles, and steamboats to Augusta, 120 miles, in a direct line, from the mouth of the river, and more than 300 by the river's course.

ANALYSIS.

The enemy landed in several places, but were repulsed with loss. One of the French ships was taken, and the invasion, at first so alarming, was repelled with little loss, and little expense to the colony.

1715.

1. *Indian war of 1715.*

14. [1]In 1715 a general Indian war broke out, headed by the Yamassees, and involving all the Indian tribes from Cape Fear River to the Alabama. The Yamassees had previously shown great friendship to the English; and the war commenced[a] before the latter were aware of their danger. The frontier settlements were desolated; Port Royal was abandoned; Charleston itself was in danger; and the colony seemed near its ruin. [2]But Governor Craven, with nearly the entire force of the colony, advanced against the enemy, drove their straggling parties before him, and on the banks of the Salkehatchie* encountered[b] their main body in camp, and after a bloody battle gained a complete victory. At length the Yamassees, being driven from their territory, retired to Florida, where they were kindly received by the Spaniards.

a. April 26.

2. *Services of Gov. Craven, and close of the war.*

b May.

3. *Domestic revolution.*

4. *Causes of discontent.*

15. [3]The war with the Yamassees was followed, in 1719, by a domestic revolution in Carolina. [4]As the proprietors refused to pay any portion of the debt incurred by the war, and likewise enforced their land claims with severity, the colonists began to look towards the crown for assistance and protection. [5]After much controversy and difficulty with the proprietors, the assembly and the people openly rebelled against their authority, and in the name of the king proclaimed[c] James Moore governor of the province. The agent of Carolina obtained, in England, a hearing from the lords of the regency, who decided that the proprietors had forfeited their charter.

5. *Result of the controversy.*

c. Dec.

1720.

6. *Nicholson.*

16. [6]While measures were taken for its abrogation, Francis Nicholson, who had previously exercised the office of governor in New York, in Maryland, in Virginia, and in Nova Scotia, now received[d] a royal commission as governor of Carolina; and, early in the following year,[e] arrived in the province. [7]The controversy with the proprietors was finally adjusted in 1729, when seven, out of the eight, sold to the king, for less than 80,000 dollars, their claims to the soil and rents in both Carolinas; and all assigned to him the powers of government granted them by their charter. [8]Both Carolinas then became royal governments, under which they remained until the Revolution.

d. Sept.

e. 1721.

7. *Arrangement between the proprietors and the king.*

8. *Situation of the Carolinas.*

* *Salkehatchie* is the name given to the upper portion of the Cambahee River, (which see Map, p. 129.) Its course is S.E., and it is from twenty to thirty miles E. from the Savannah River.

CHAPTER XII.

GEORGIA.*

Subject of Chapter XII

1. [1]At the time of the surrender[a] of the Carolina charter to the crown, the country southwest of the Savannah was a wilderness, occupied by savage tribes, and claimed by Spain as a part of Florida, and by England as a part of Carolina. [2]Happily for the claims of the latter, and the security of Carolina, in 1732 a number of persons in England, influenced by motives of patriotism and humanity, formed the project of planting a colony in the disputed territory.

1. Situation of Georgia at the time of the surrender of the Carolina charter.

a. 1729.

2. Project formed in 1732.

2. [3]James Oglethorpe, a member of the British parliament, a soldier and a loyalist, but a friend of the unfortunate, first conceived the idea of opening, for the poor of his own country, and for persecuted Protestants of all nations, an asylum in America, where former poverty would be no reproach, and where all might worship without fear of persecution. [4]The benevolent enterprise met with favor from the king, who granted,[b] for twenty-one years, to a corporation, "in trust for the poor," the country between the Savannah and the Altamaha, and westward to the Pacific Ocean. The new province was named *Georgia*.

3. Oglethorpe and his benevolent designs.

4. First grant, or charter, of Georgia.

b. June 20

3. [5]In November of the same year, Oglethorpe, with nearly one hundred and twenty emigrants, embarked[c] for America, and after touching[d] at Charleston and Port Royal, on the twelfth of February landed at Savannah.† On Yamacraw bluff, a settlement was immediately commenced, and the town, after the Indian name of the river, was called Savannah. [6]After completing a slight fortifi-

5. Settlement of Savannah.

c. Nov. 28.

1733.

d. Jan. 24.

6. Indians invited to a conference.

---

* GEORGIA, one of the Southern States, contains an area of about 60,000 square miles. The entire coast, to the distance of seven or eight miles, is intersected by numerous inlets, communicating with each other, and navigable for small vessels. The islands thus formed consist mostly of salt marshes, which produce sea island cotton of a superior quality. The coast on the mainland, to the distance of several miles, is mostly a salt marsh; beyond which are the pine barrens, and the ridges of sand hills, similar to those of South Carolina. The *Upper Country* is an extensive table land, with a black and fertile soil. Near the boundary of Tennessee and Carolina, on the north, the country becomes mountainous.

VICINITY OF SAVANNAH.

† *Savannah*, now the largest city, and the principal seaport of Georgia, is situated on the S.W. bank of the Savannah River, on a sandy plain forty feet above the level of the tide, and seventeen miles from the sea. The city is regularly laid out in the form of a parallelogram, with streets crossing each other at right angles. Vessels requiring fourteen feet of water come up to the wharves of the city, and larger vessels to *Five Fathom Hole*, three miles below the city. (See Map.)

ANALYSIS.

cation for the defence of the settlers, Oglethorpe invited the neighboring Indian chiefs to meet him at Savannah, in order to treat with them for their lands, and establish relations of friendship.

1. *First meeting with the Indians.*

4. [1]In June the chiefs of the Creek nation assembled; —kind feelings prevailed; and the English were cordially welcomed to the country. An aged warrior presented several bundles of skins, saying that, although the Indians were poor, they gave, with a good heart, such things as they possessed. Another chief presented the skin of a buffalo, painted, on the inside, with the head and feathers of an eagle. He said the English were as swift as the eagle, and as strong as the buffalo; for they flew over vast seas; and were so powerful, that nothing could withstand them. He reminded them that the feathers of the eagle were soft, and signified love; that the skin of the buffalo was warm, and signified protection; and therefore he hoped the English would love and protect the little families of the Indians.

2. *Character of the early settlers.*

5. [2]The settlers rapidly increased in numbers, but as most of those who first came over, were not only poor, but unaccustomed to habits of industry, they were poorly qualified to encounter the toil and hardships to which their situation exposed them. [3]The liberality of the trustees then invited emigrants of more enterprising habits; and large numbers of Swiss, Germans, and Scotch, accepted their proposals. [4]The regulations of the trustees at first forbade the use of negroes,—prohibited the importation of rum,—and interdicted all trade with the Indians, without a special license. Slavery was declared to be not only immoral, but contrary to the laws of England.

3. *Arrival of other emigrants.*

4. *Regulations of the trustees.*

1736.

5. *Addition made to the colony in 1736.*

a. Feb. '16.

6. *Preparations for war.*

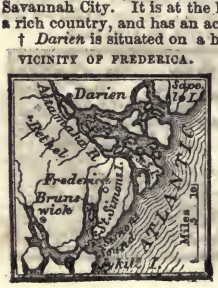
6. [5]Early in 1736, Oglethorpe, who had previously visited England, returned[a] to Georgia, with a new company of three hundred emigrants. [6]In anticipation of war between England and Spain, he fortified his colony, by erecting forts at Augusta,* Darien,† Frederica,‡ on Cumberland Island§ near the mouth of the St. Mary's,‖

---

* *Augusta* City is situated on the S.W. side of the Savannah River 120 miles N.W. from Savannah City. It is at the head of steamboat navigation on the Savannah, is surrounded by a rich country, and has an active trade.

† *Darien* is situated on a high sandy bluff, on the north and principal channel of the Altamaha, twelve miles from the bar near its mouth. (See Map.)

VICINITY OF FREDERICA.



‡ *Frederica* is situated on the west side of St. Simon's Island, below the principal mouth of the Altamaha, and on one of its navigable channels. The fort, mentioned above, was constructed of *tabby*, a mixture of water and lime, with shells or gravel, forming a hard rocky mass when dry. The ruins of the fort may still be seen. (See Map.)

§ *Cumberland* Island lies opposite the coast, at the southeastern extremity of Georgia. It is fifteen miles in length, and from one to four in width. The fort was on the southern point, and commanded the entrance to St. Mary's River.

‖ *St. Mary's River*, forming part of the boundary between Georgia and Florida, enters the Atlantic, between Cumberland Island on the north, and Amelia Island on the south.

and even as far as the St. John's, claiming for the English, all the territory north of that river. [1]But the Spanish authorities of St. Augustine complained of the near approach of the English; and their commissioners, sent to confer with Oglethorpe, demanded the evacuation of the country, as far north as St. Helena Sound;* and, in case of refusal, threatened hostilities. [2]The fortress at the mouth of the St. John's was abandoned; but that near the mouth of the St. Mary's was retained; and this river afterwards became the southern boundary of Georgia.

1736.

1. *Claims urged by the Spanish authorities.*

2. *How far their claims were admitted.*

7. [3]The celebrated John Wesley, founder of the Methodist church, had returned with Oglethorpe, with the charitable design of rendering Georgia a religious colony, and of converting the Indians. [4]Having become unpopular by his zeal and imprudence, he was indicted for exercising unwarranted ecclesiastical authority; and, after a residence of two years in the colony, he returned to England, where he was long distinguished for his piety and usefulness. [5]Soon after his return the Rev. George Whitefield, another and more distinguished Methodist, visited[a] Georgia, with the design of establishing an orphan asylum on lands obtained from the trustees for that purpose. The plan but partially succeeded during his lifetime, and was abandoned after his death.[b]

3. *Wesley's visit, and its object.*

4. *What rendered him unpopular, and caused his return.*

5. *Visit of Whitefield.*

a. May, 1738.

b. In 1770.

8. [6]To hasten the preparations for the impending contest with Spain, Oglethorpe again visited[c] England, where he received[d] a commission as brigadier-general, with a command extending over South Carolina, and, after an absence of more than a year and a half, returned[e] to Georgia, bringing with him a regiment of 600 men, for the defence of the southern frontiers. [7]In the latter part of 1739, England declared[f] war against Spain; and Oglethorpe immediately planned an expedition against St. Augustine. In May of the following year,[5] he entered Florida with a select force of four hundred men from his regiment, some Carolina troops, and a large body of friendly Indians.

6. *Preparations for war.*

c. Winter of 1736-37.

1737.

d. Sept. 7.

e. Oct.

7. *Declaration of war, and first measures of Oglethorpe.*

f. Nov. 5.

5 1740.

9. [8]A Spanish fort, twenty-five miles from St. Augustine, surrendered after a short resistance;—another, within two miles, was abandoned; but a summons for the surrender of the town was answered by a bold defiance. For a time the Spaniards were cut off from all supplies, by ships stationed at the entrance of the harbor; but at length several Spanish galleys eluded the vigilance of the blockading squadron, and brought a reenforcement and supplies

8. *Circumstances attending the expedition against St. Augustine.*

* *St. Helena Sound* is the entrance to the Cambahee River. It is north of St Helena Island and about fifty miles N.E. from Savannah. (See Map, p. 129.)

ANALYSIS.

to the garrison. All hopes of speedily reducing the place were now lost;—sickness began to prevail among the troops; and Oglethorpe, with sorrow and regret, returned[a] to Georgia.

a. July.

1742.

1. *Spanish invasion of Georgia.*

10. [1]Two years later, the Spaniards, in return, made preparations for an invasion of Georgia. In July, a fleet of thirty-six sail from Havanna and St. Augustine, bearing more than three thousand troops, entered the harbor of St. Simon's;* landed[b] on the west side of the island, a little above the town of the same name; and erected a battery of twenty guns. [2]General Oglethorpe, who was then on the island with a force of less than eight hundred men, exclusive of Indians, withdrew to Frederica; anxiously awaiting an expected reenforcement from Carolina. A party of the enemy, having advanced within two miles of the town, was driven back with loss; another party of three hundred, coming to their assistance, was ambuscaded,[c] and two-thirds of the number were slain or taken prisoners.

b. July 16.

2. *Movements of Oglethorpe, and his success against the enemy.*

c. July 18.

3. *Attack on the Spanish camp prevented.*

4. *Oglethorpe's plan for deceiving the enemy.*

11. [3]Oglethorpe next resolved to attack, by night, one of the Spanish camps; but a French soldier deserted, and gave the alarm, and the design was defeated. [4]Apprehensive that the enemy would now discover his weakness, he devised an expedient for destroying the credit of any information that might be given. He wrote a letter to the deserter, requesting that he would urge the Spaniards to an immediate attack, or, if he should not succeed in this, that he would induce them to remain on the island three days longer, for in that time several British ships, and a reenforcement, were expected from Carolina. He also dropped some hints of an expected attack on St. Augustine by a British fleet. This letter he bribed a Spanish prisoner to deliver to the deserter, but, as was expected, it was given to the Spanish commander.

5. *The result of this plan.*

6. *Circumstance that greatly favored its success.*

12. [5]The deserter was immediately arrested as a spy, but the letter sorely perplexed the Spanish officers, some of whom believed it was intended as a deception, while others, regarding the circumstances mentioned in it as highly probable, and fearing for the safety of St. Augustine, advised an immediate return of the expedition. [6]Fortunately, while they were consulting, there appeared, at some distance on the coast, three small vessels, which were regarded as a part of the British fleet mentioned in

* *St. Simon's* Island lies south of the principal channel of the Altamaha. It is twelve miles in length, and from two to five in width. The harbor of St. Simon's is at the southern point of the island, before the town of the same name, and eight miles below Frederica. At St Simon's there was also a small fort. The northern part of the island is separated from the mainland by a small creek, and is called *Little St. Simon's*. (See Map, p. 262.)

the letter. [1]It was now determined to attack Oglethorpe at Frederica, before the expected reenforcement should arrive. **1742.**

1. Determination to attack Oglethorpe.

13. [2]While advancing for this purpose, they fell into an ambuscade,[a] at a place since called "Bloody Marsh," where they were so warmly received that they retreated with precipitation—abandoned their works, and hastily retired to their shipping; leaving a quantity of guns and ammunition behind them. [3]On their way south they made an attack[b] on Fort William,* but were repulsed; and two galleys were disabled and abandoned. [4]The Spaniards were deeply mortified at the result of the expedition; and the commander of the troops, on his return to Havanna, was tried by a court-martial, and, in disgrace, dismissed from the service.

2. Result of the intended attack.

a. July 25.

3. Other defeats.

b. July 29.

4. Treatment of the Spanish commander.

14. [5]Soon after these events, Oglethorpe returned to England, never to revisit the colony which, after ten years of disinterested toil, he had planted, defended, and now left in tranquillity. [6]Hitherto, the people had been under a kind of military rule; but now a civil government was established, and committed to the charge of a president and council, who were required to govern according to the instructions of the trustees. **1743.**

5. Oglethorpe's return.

6. Change in the government.

15. [7]Yet the colony did not prosper, and most of the settlers still remained in poverty, with scarcely the hope of better days. Under the restrictions of the trustees, agriculture had not flourished; and commerce had scarcely been thought of. [8]The people complained that, as they were poor, the want of a free title to their lands almost wholly deprived them of credit; they wished that the unjust rule of descent, which gave their property to the eldest son, to the exclusion of the younger children, should be changed for one more equitable; but, more than all, they complained that they were prohibited the use of slave labor, and requested that the same encouragements should be given to them as were given to their more fortunate neighbors in Carolina.

7. Condition of the colony.

8. Complaints of the people.

16. [9]The regulations of the trustees began to be evaded, and the laws against slavery were not rigidly enforced. At first, slaves from Carolina were hired for short periods; then for a hundred years, or during life; and a sum equal to the value of the negro paid in advance; and, finally, slavers from Africa sailed directly to Savannah; and Georgia, like Carolina, became a planting state, with slave labor.

9. Laws against slavery evaded.

---

* *Fort William* was the name of the fort at the southern extremity of Cumberland Island There was also a fort, called *Fort Andrew*, at the northern extremity of the island.

ANALYSIS.

1752.

1. *Form of government changed, and why.*

a. July 1.

b. Oct.

2. *What gave prosperity to the colony.*

17. [1]In 1752, the trustees of Georgia, wearied with complaints against the system of government which they had established, and finding that the province languished under their care, resigned[a] their charter to the king; and the province was formed[b] into a royal government. [2]The people were then favored with the same liberties and privileges that were enjoyed by the provinces of Carolina; but it was not until the close of the French and Indian war, and the surrender of the Floridas to England, by which security was given to the frontiers, that the colony began to assume a flourishing condition.

DEATH OF GENERAL WOLFE. (See page 282.)

1756.

CHAPTER XIII.

THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR

EXTENDING FROM 1754 TO THE PEACE OF 1763.

Subject of Chapter XIII

DIVISIONS.

Divisions of the Chapter.

I. Causes of the War, and events of 1754.—*II.* 1755: *Expeditions of Monckton, Braddock, Shirley, and Johnson.—III.* 1756: *Delays; Loss of Oswego; Indian Incursions.—IV.* 1757: *Designs against Louisburg, and Loss of Fort Wm. Henry.—V.* 1758: *Reduction of Louisburg; Abercrombie's Defeat; The taking of Forts Frontenac and Du Quesne.—VI.* 1759 *to* 1763: *Ticonderoga and Crown Point Abandoned; Niagara Taken; Conquest of Quebec,—Of all Canada; War with the Cherokees; Peace of* 1763.

First Division.

1. CAUSES OF THE WAR, AND EVENTS OF 1754,—

1. Why separate accounts of the colonies have been thus far given.

[1]Thus far separate accounts of the early American colonies have been given, for the purpose of preserving that unity of narration which seemed best adapted to render prominent the distinctive features which marked the settlement and progress of each. [2]But as we have arrived at a period when the several colonies have become firmly established, and when their individual histories become less eventful, and less interesting, their general history will now be taken up, and continued in those more important events which subsequently affected all the colonies. [3]This period is distinguished by the final struggle for do-

2. Changes now made, and for what reason.

3. By what this period is distinguished.

ANALYSIS

minion in America, between the rival powers of France and England.

1. *Previous wars between France and England.*

2. [1]Those previous wars between the two countries, which had so often embroiled their transatlantic colonies, had chiefly arisen from disputes of European origin; and the events which occurred in America, were regarded as of secondary importance to those which, in a greater measure, affected the influence of the rival powers in the affairs of Europe. [2]But the growing importance of the American possessions of the two countries, occasioning disputes about territories tenfold more extensive than either possessed in Europe, at length became the sole cause of involving them in another contest, more important to America than any preceding one, and which is commonly known as the *French and Indian war*.

2. *What led to the French and Indian war.*

3. *What was the ground, and what the extent of the English claim.*

3. [3]The English, by virtue of the early discovery by the Cabots, claimed the whole seacoast from Newfoundland to Florida; and by numerous grants of territory, before the French had established any settlements in the Valley of the Mississippi, they had extended their claims westward to the Pacific Ocean. [4]The French, on the contrary, founded their claims upon the actual occupation and exploration of the country. [5]Besides their settlements in New France, or Canada, and Acadia, they had long occupied Detroit,* had explored the Valley of the Mississippi, and formed settlements at Kaskaskia† and Vincennes,‡, and along the northern border of the Gulf of Mexico.

4. *Upon what the French founded their claims.*

5. *How far their settlements extended.*

6. *Extent of the French claim.*

4. [6]According to the French claims, their northern possessions of New France and Acadia embraced, within their southern limits, the half of New York, and the greater portion of New England; while their western possessions, of Upper and Lower Louisiana, were held to embrace the entire valley of the Mississippi and its tributary streams.

7. *Preparations to defend it.*

[7]For the purpose of vindicating their claims to these extensive territories, and confining the English to the country east of the Alleghanies, the French were busily engaged in erecting a chain of forts, by way of the Great Lakes and the Mississippi, from Nova Scotia to the Gulf of Mexico.

8. *Immediate cause of controversy.*

a. 1749.

5. [8]A royal grant[a] of an extensive tract of land on the Ohio§ River, to a company of merchants, called the Ohio

---

* *Detroit.* (See Map, p. 449.)

† *Kaskaskia*, in the southwestern part of the state of Illinois, is situated on the W. side of Kaskaskia River, seven miles above its junction with the Mississippi.

‡ *Vincennes* is in the southwestern part of Indiana, and is situated on the E. bank of the Wabash River, 100 miles, by the river's course, above its entrance into the Ohio.

§ The *Ohio River* is formed by the confluence of the Alleghany from the N., and the Monongahela from the S., at Pittsburg, in the western part of Pennsylvania. From Pittsburg

company, gave the French the first apprehension that the English were designing to deprive them of their western trade with the Indians, and cut off their communication between Canada and Louisiana. [1]While the company were surveying these lands, with the view of settlement, three British traders were seized[a] by a party of French and Indians, and conveyed to a French fort at Presque Isle.* The Twightwees, a tribe of Indians friendly to the English, resenting the violence done to their allies, seized several French traders, and sent them to Pennsylvania.

1753.

1. Violent measures that followed.

a. 1753.

6. [2]The French soon after began the erection of forts south of Lake Erie, which called forth serious complaints from the Ohio Company. As the territory in dispute was within the original charter limits of Virginia, Robert Dinwiddie, lieutenant-governor of the colony, deemed it his duty to remonstrate with the French commandant of the western posts, against his proceedings, and demand a withdrawal of his troops. [3]The person employed to convey a letter to the French commandant was George Washington, an enterprising and public-spirited young man, then in his twenty-second year, who thus early engaged in the public service, and who afterwards became illustrious in the annals of his country.

2. Remonstrance of Governor Dinwiddie.

3. George Washington.

7. [4]The service to which Washington was thus called, was both difficult and dangerous; as half of his route, of four hundred miles, lay through a trackless wilderness, inhabited by Indian tribes, whose feelings were hostile to the English. [5]Departing, on the 31st of October, from Williamsburg,† then the seat of government of the province, on the 4th of December he reached a French fort at the mouth of French Creek;‡ from which he was conducted to another fort higher up the stream, where he found the French commandant, M. De St. Pierre,[b] who entertained him with great politeness, and gave him a written answer to Governor Dinwiddie's letter.

4. The service to which Washington was called.

5. His journey.

b Pronounced Pe-äre.

---

the general course of the river is S.W. to the Mississippi, a distance of 950 miles by the river, but only about 520 in a direct line. It separates the states of Virginia and Kentucky on the S., from Ohio, Indiana, and Illinois on the N., and drains a valley containing more than 200,000 square miles. The only considerable falls in the river are at Louisville, where the water descends twenty-two and a half feet in two miles, around which has been completed a canal that admits the passage of the largest steamboats.

* *Presque Isle* (almost an island as its name implies,) is a small peninsula on the southern shore of Lake Erie, at the northwestern extremity of Pennsylvania. The place referred to in history as Presque Isle is the present village of *Erie*, which is situated on the S.W. side of the bay formed between Presque Isle and the mainland.

† *Williamsburg* is situated on elevated ground between James and York Rivers, a few miles N.E. from Jamestown. It is the seat of William and Mary College, founded in 1693. (See Map, p. 136.)

‡ *French Creek*, called by the French *Aux Bœufs*, (O Buff,) enters Alleghany River from the west, in the present county of Venango, sixty-five miles N. from Pittsburg. The French fort, called *Venango*, was on the site of the present village of Franklin, the capital of Venango County.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Dangers encountered during his return.*

a. Dec. 16.

8. [1]Having secretly taken the dimensions of the fort, and made all possible observations, he set out[a] on his return. At one time he providentially escaped being murdered by a party of hostile Indians; one of whom, at a short distance, fired upon him, but fortunately missed him. At another time, while crossing a river on a raft, he was thrown from it by the floating ice; and, after a narrow escape from drowning, he suffered greatly from the intense severity of the cold. [2]On his arrival[b] at Williamsburg, the letter of St. Pierre was found to contain a refusal to withdraw his troops; with the assurance that he was acting in obedience to the commands of the governor-general of Canada, whose orders alone he should obey.

1754.

2. *Answer of the French commander.*

b. Jan. 16.

3. *Measures that were taken in consequence.*

9. [3]The hostile designs of the French being apparent from the reply of St. Pierre, the governor of Virginia made immediate preparations to resist their encroachments. The Ohio Company sent out a party of thirty men to erect a fort at the confluence of the Alleghany* and Monongahela;† and a body of provincial troops, placed under the command of Washington, marched into the disputed territory. [4]The men sent out by the Ohio Company had scarcely commenced their fort, when they were driven[c] from the ground by the French, who completed the works, and named the place Fort du Quesne.[d]

4. *The Ohio Company's men.*

c. April 18.

d. Pronounced du Kane.

5. *Fate of Jumonville's party.*

e. May 28.

6. *The next movements of Washington.*

10. [5]An advance party under Jumonville, which had been sent out to intercept the approach of Washington, was surprised[e] in the night; and all but one were either killed or taken prisoners. [6]After erecting a small fort, which he named Fort Necessity,‡ and being joined by some additional troops from New York and Carolina, Washington proceeded with four hundred men towards Fort du Quesne, when, hearing of the advance of a large body of French and Indians, under the command of M. de Villiers,[f] he returned to Fort Necessity, where he was soon after attacked[g] by nearly fifteen hundred of the enemy. After an obstinate resistance of ten hours, Washington agreed to a capitulation,[h] which allowed him the honorable terms of retiring unmolested to Virginia.

f. Vil-le-ăre.

g. July 3.

h. July 4.

7. *Plan of union advised.*

8. *Convention at Albany.*

11. [7]It having been seen by England, that war with France would be inevitable, the colonies had been advised to unite upon some plan of union for the general defence. [8]A convention had likewise been proposed to be held at

* The *Alleghany River* rises in the northern part of Pennsylvania, and runs, first N.W into New York, and then, turning to the S.W., again enters Pennsylvania, and at Pittsburg unites with the Monongahela to form the Ohio.

† The *Monongahela* rises by numerous branches in the northwestern part of Virginia, and running north enters Pennsylvania, and unites with the Alleghany at Pittsburg.

‡ The remains of *Fort Necessity* are still to be seen near the national road from Cumberland to Wheeling, in the southeastern part of Fayette County, Pennsylvania.

Albany, in June, for the purpose of conferring with the Six Nations, and securing their friendship. [1]After a treaty had been made with the Indians, the convention took up the subject of the proposed union; and, on the fourth of July, the very day of the surrender of Fort Necessity, adopted a plan which had been drawn up by Dr. Franklin, a delegate from Pennsylvania. **1754.** *1. What was done there.*

12. [2]This plan proposed the establishment of a general government in the colonies, to be administered by a governor-general appointed by the crown, and a council chosen by the several colonial legislatures; having the power to levy troops, declare war, raise money, make peace, regulate the Indian trade, and concert all other measures necessary for the general safety. The governor-general was to have a negative on the proceedings of the council, and all laws were to be submitted to the king for ratification. *2. The plan of union proposed.*

13. [3]This plan, although approved by all the delegates present, except those from Connecticut, who objected to the negative voice of the governor-general, shared the singular fate of being rejected, both by the colonial assemblies, and by the British government: by the former, because it was supposed to give too much power to the representative of the king; and by the latter, because it was supposed to give too much power to the representatives of the people. [4]As no plan of union could be devised, acceptable to both parties, it was determined to carry on the war with British troops, aided by such forces as the colonial assemblies might voluntarily furnish. *3. Why it was rejected.* *4. What was then determined.*

II. 1755: EXPEDITIONS OF MONCKTON, BRADDOCK, SHIRLEY, AND SIR WILLIAM JOHNSON.—1. [5]Early in 1755, General Braddock arrived[a] from Ireland, with two regiments of British troops, and with the authority of commander-in-chief of the British and colonial forces. [6]At a convention of the colonial governors, assembled at his request in Virginia, three expeditions were resolved upon; one against the French at Fort du Quesne, to be led by General Braddock himself; a second against Niagara, and a third against Crown Point, a French post on the western shore of Lake Champlain. **1755.** *Second division of the Chapter.* *5. General Braddock.* a. Feb. *6. Three expeditions resolved upon.*

2 [7]While preparations were making for these expeditions, an enterprise, that had been previously determined upon, was prosecuted with success in another quarter. About the last of May, Colonel Monckton sailed[b] from Boston, with three thousand troops, against the French settlements at the head of the Bay of Fundy, which were considered as encroachments upon the English province of Nova Scotia. *7. Expedition previously undertaken.* b. May 20.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Its progress and termination.*

a. June 4.

b. Pronounced, Bo-sa-zhoor.

c. June 16.

d. Pronounced Gas-pe-ro.

e. Pronounced Vairt.

3. [1]Landing at Fort Lawrence,* on the eastern shore of Chignecto,† a branch of the Bay of Fundy, a French block-house was carried[a] by assault, and Fort Beausejour[b] surrendered,[c] after an investment of four days. The name of the fort was then changed to Cumberland. Fort Gaspereau,[d] on Bay Verte,[e] or Green Bay,‡ was next taken; and the forts on the New Brunswick coast were abandoned. In accordance with the views of the governor of Nova Scotia, the plantations of the French settlers were laid waste; and several thousands of the hapless fugitives, ardently attached to their mother country, and refusing to take the oath of allegiance to Great Britain, were driven on board the British shipping, at the point of the bayonet, and dispersed, in poverty, through the English colonies.[f]

1. See p. 549.

2. *The expedition of Braddock.*

3. *His march hastened, and why.*

4. [2]The expedition against the French on the Ohio was considerably delayed by the difficulty of obtaining supplies of wagons and provisions; but, on the tenth of June, General Braddock set out from Fort Cumberland,§ with a force of little more than two thousand men, composed of British regulars and provincials. [3]Apprehending that Fort du Quesne might be reenforced, he hastened his march with a select corps of 1200 men; leaving Col. Dunbar to follow in the rear with the other troops and the heavy baggage.

4. *The cause of his being surprised.*

5. *Particulars of the surprise.*

g. July 9.

6. *Conduct of Braddock, and result of the battle.*

5. [4]Neglecting the proper measures necessary for guarding against a surprise, and too confident in his own views to receive the advice of Washington, who acted as his aid, and who requested to lead the provincials in advance, Braddock continued to press forward, heedless of danger, until he had arrived within nine or ten miles of Fort du Quesne. [5]While marching in apparent security, his advanced guard of regulars, commanded by Lieutenant-colonel Gage, was fired upon[g] by an unseen enemy; and, unused to Indian warfare, was thrown into disorder; and falling back on the main body, a general confusion ensued.

6. [6]General Braddock, vainly endeavoring to rally his troops on the spot where they were first attacked, after

* For localities see Map.

† *Chignecto Bay* is the northern, or northwestern arm of the Bay of Fundy. (Map.)

‡ Bay *Verte*, or *Green Bay*, is a western arm of Northumberland Strait; a strait which separates Prince Edward's Island from New Brunswick and Nova Scotia. (See Map.)

§ *Fort Cumberland* was on the site of the present village of Cumberland, which is situated on the N. side of the Potomac River, in Maryland, at the mouth of Will's Creek. The Cumberland, or National Road which proceeds W. to Ohio, &c., commences here.

1755.

having had three horses killed under him, and after seeing every mounted officer fall, except Washington, was himself mortally wounded, when his troops fled in dismay and confusion. [1]The cool bravery of the Virginia provincials, who formed under the command of Washington, covered the retreat of the regulars, and saved the army from total destruction. [2]In this disastrous defeat more than two-thirds of all the officers, and nearly half the privates, were either killed or wounded.

1. What saved the army from total destruction.

2. Number killed or wounded.

7. [3]No pursuit was made by the enemy, to whom the success was wholly unexpected; yet so great was the panic communicated to Colonel Dunbar's troops, that they likewise fled with precipitation, and made no pause until they found themselves sheltered by the walls of Fort Cumberland. [4]Soon after, Colonel Dunbar, leaving at Cumberland a few provincial troops, but insufficient to protect the frontiers, retired[a] with the rest of the army to Philadelphia.

3. The retreat.

4. Disposition that was made of the army.

a. Aug. 2.

8. [5]The expedition against Niagara was intrusted to Governor Shirley of Massachusetts; on whom the command in chief of the British forces had devolved, after the death of General Braddock. The forces designed for this enterprise were to assemble at Oswego,[b] whence they were to proceed by water to the mouth of the Niagara River.* The main body of the troops, however, did not arrive until the last of August; and then a succession of western winds and rain, the prevalence of sickness in the camp, and the desertion of the Indian allies, rendered it unadvisable to proceed; and most of the forces were withdrawn.[c] The erection of two new forts had been commenced on the east side of the river; and suitable garrisons were left to defend them.

5. Expedition against Niagara.

b. N. p. 276.

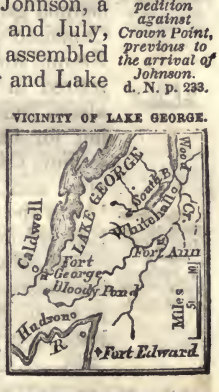
c. Oct. 24.

9. [6]The expedition against Crown Point was intrusted to General Johnson, afterwards Sir William Johnson, a member of the council of New York. In June and July, about 6000 troops, under General Lyman, were assembled at the carrying place between Hudson River and Lake George,[d] where they constructed a fort which they named Fort Lyman, but which was afterwards called Fort Edward.† [1]In the latter

6 Particulars of the expedition against Crown Point, previous to the arrival of Johnson.

d. N. p. 233.

VICINITY OF LAKE GEORGE.



* *Niagara River* is the channel which connects Lake Erie with Lake Ontario. It is about thirty-six miles long, and flows from S. to N. In this stream, twenty-two miles north from Lake Erie, are the celebrated *Falls of Niagara*, the greatest natural curiosity in the world. (See Map. p. 451 and 462.)

† *Fort Edward* was on the site of the present village of Fort Edward, in Washington County, on the E. side of Hudson River, and about forty-five miles N. from Albany. This spot was also called *the carrying place;* being the point where, in the expeditions against Canada, the troops, stores, &c., were landed, and thence carried to Wood Creek, a distance of twelve miles, where they were again embarked. (See Map.)

ANALYSIS

1. *Arrival and proceedings of Johnson.*
a. Sept. 7.
b. N. p. 234.

part of August General Johnson arrived; and, taking the command, moved forward with the main body of his forces to the head of Lake George; where he learned,[a] by his scouts, that nearly two thousand French and Indians were on their march from Crown Point,[b] with the intention of attacking Fort Edward.

2. *Movements of the enemy.*
c Pronounced, De-es-ko.
d. N. p. 230.

10. [2]The enemy, under the command of the Baron Dieskau,[c] approaching by the way of Wood Creek,[d] had arrived within two miles of Fort Edward; when the commander, at the request of his Indian allies, who stood in great dread of the English cannon, suddenly changed his route, with the design of attacking the camp of Johnson.

3. *Detachment sent against them, and why.*

[3]In the meantime, Johnson had sent out a party of a thousand provincials under the command of Colonel Williams; and two hundred Indians under the command of Hendricks, a Mohawk sachem; for the purpose of intercepting the return of the enemy, whether they succeeded, or failed, in their designs against Fort Edward.

4. *Fate of this detachment.*
e. Sept. 8.

11. [4]Unfortunately, the English, being drawn into an ambuscade,[e] were overpowered by superior numbers, and driven back with a severe loss. Among the killed were Colonel Williams and the chieftain Hendricks. The loss of the enemy was also considerable; and among the slain was St. Pierre, who commanded the Indians.

5. *Preparations for receiving the enemy.*

[5]The firing being heard in the camp of Johnson, and its near approach convincing him of the repulse of Williams, he rapidly constructed a breastwork of fallen trees, and mounted several cannon, which, two days before, he had fortunately received from Fort Edward.

6. *Attack on the camp.*

12. [6]The fugitives had scarcely arrived at the camp, when the enemy appeared and commenced a spirited attack; but the unexpected reception which the English cannon gave them, considerably cooled their ardor. The Canadian militia and the Indians soon fled; and the French troops, after continuing the contest several hours, retired in disorder.

7. *Fate of Dieskau.*

[7]Dieskau was found wounded and alone, leaning against the stump of a tree. While feeling for his watch, in order to surrender it, an English soldier, thinking he was searching for a pistol, fired upon him, and inflicted a wound which caused his death.

8. *What completed the defeat of the enemy.*

[8]After the repulse of the French, a detachment from Fort Edward fell upon their rear, and completed their defeat.

9. *Farther proceedings of Johnson.*

13. [9]For the purpose of securing the country from the incursions of the enemy, General Johnson erected a fort at his place of encampment, which he named Fort William Henry.* Learning that the French were strength-

* *Fort Wm. Henry* was situated at the head of Lake George, a little E. from the village of

ening their works at Crown Point, and likewise that a large party had taken possession of, and were fortifying Ticonderoga;* he deemed it advisable to make no farther advance; and, late in the season—after leaving sufficient garrisons at Forts William Henry and Edward, he retired[a] to Albany, whence he dispersed the remainder of his army to their respective provinces.

1755.

a. Dec.

III. 1756; DELAYS; LOSS OF OSWEGO: INDIAN INCURSIONS.—1. [1]The plan for the campaign of 1756, which had been agreed upon in a council of the colonial governors held at Albany, early in the season, was similar to that of the preceding year; having for its object the reduction of Crown Point, Niagara, and Fort du Quesne. [2]Lord Loudon was appointed by the king commander-in-chief of his forces in America, and also governor of Virginia; but, being unable to depart immediately, General Abercrombie was ordered to precede him, and take the command of the troops until his arrival. [3]Thus far, hostilities had been carried on without any formal declaration of war; but, in May of this year, war was declared[b] by Great Britain against France, and, soon after,[c] by the latter power against Great Britain.

Third Division.

1756.

1. *Plan of the Campaign of 1756.*

2. *Commanders appointed.*

3. *Declaration of war.*

b. May. 17.

c. June 9.

2. [4]In June, General Abercrombie arrived, with several regiments, and proceeded to Albany, where the provincial troops were assembled; but deeming the forces under his command inadequate to carry out the plan of the campaign, he thought it prudent to await the arrival of the Earl of Loudon. This occasioned a delay until the latter part of July; and even after the arrival of the earl, no measures of importance were taken. [5]The French, in the mean time, profiting by the delays of the English, seized the opportunity to make an attack upon Oswego.†

4. *Measures of Abercrombie and Lord Loudon.*

5. *How the French profited by these delays.*

3. [6]Early in August, the Marquis Montcalm, who had succeeded the Baron Dieskau in the chief command of the French forces in Canada, crossed Lake Ontario with more than five thousand men, French, Canadians, and Indians; and, with more than thirty pieces of cannon, commenced[d] the siege of Fort Ontario, on the east side of Oswego

6. *Montcalm's expedition against Oswego.*

d. Aug. 11.

Caldwell, in Warren County. After the fort was levelled by Montcalm, in 1757, (see page 277.) Fort George was built as a substitute for it, on a more commanding site; yet it was never the scene of any important battle. (See Map, page 273.)

* *Ticonderoga* is situated at the mouth of the outlet of Lake George, in Essex County, on the western shore of Lake Champlain, about eighty-five miles in a direct line N. from Albany. (See Map and Note, p 374.) The village of Ticonderoga is two miles above the ruins of the fort.

† The village of *Oswego*, in Oswego County, is situated on both sides of Oswego River, at its entrance into Lake Ontario. Old Fort Oswego, built in 1727, was on the west side of the river. In 1755 Fort Ontario was built on an eminence on the E. side of the river; a short distance N. of which stands the present Fort Oswego.

FORTS AT OSWEGO.

ANALYSIS

River.* After an obstinate, but short defence, this fort was abandoned,[a]—the garrison safely retiring to the old fort on the west side of the river.

a. Aug. 12.

1. *Surrender of this place, and loss suffered by the English.*

4. [1]On the fourteenth, the English, numbering only 1400 men, found themselves reduced to the necessity of a capitulation; by which they surrendered themselves prisoners of war. Several vessels in the harbor, together with a large amount of military stores, consisting of small arms, ammunition, provisions, and 134 pieces of cannon, fell into the hands of the enemy. Montcalm, after demolishing the forts, returned to Canada.

2. *Indian depredations on the western frontiers.*

5. [2]After the defeat of Braddock, the Indians on the western frontiers, incited by the French, renewed their depredations, and killed, or carried into captivity, more than a thousand of the inhabitants.

3. *Col. Armstrong's expedition.*

[3]In August of this year, Colonel Armstrong, with a party of nearly 300 men, marched against Kittaning,† their principal town, on the Alleghany River. The Indians, although surprised,[b] defended themselves with great bravery; refusing quarter when it was offered them. Their principal chiefs were killed, their town was destroyed, and eleven prisoners were recovered. The English suffered but little in this expedition. Among their wounded was Captain Mercer, afterwards distinguished in the war of the Revolution.

b. Sept. 8.

4. *Result of this year's campaign.*

[4]These were the principal events of this year; and not one of the important objects of the campaign was either accomplished or attempted.

1757.

The fourth division.

IV. 1757: Designs against Louisburg, and Loss of Fort William Henry.—1. [5]The plan of the campaign of 1757, was limited, by the commander-in-chief, to an attempt upon the important fortress of Louisburg. [6]With the reduction of this post in view, Lord Loudon sailed[c] from New York, in June, with 6000 regular troops, and on the thirteenth of the same month arrived at Halifax, where he was reenforced by a powerful naval armament commanded by Admiral Holbourn, and a land force of 5000 men from England. [7]Soon after, information was received,[d] that a French fleet, larger than that of the English, had already arrived in the harbor of Louisburg, and that the city was garrisoned by more than 6000 men. The expedition was, therefore, necessarily abandoned. The admiral proceeded to cruise off Louisburg, and Lord Loudon returned[e] to New York.

5. *Object of the campaign of 1757.*

6. *Preparations that were made.*

c. June 20.

7. *The object abandoned.*

d. Aug. 4.

e. Aug. 31.

---

* *Oswego River* is formed by the junction of Seneca and Oneida Rivers. The former is the outlet of Canandaiga, Crooked, Seneca, Cayuga, Owasco, and Skeneateles Lakes; and the latter of Oneida Lake.

† *Kittaning*, the county seat of Armstrong County, Pennsylvania, is built on the site of the old Indian Town. It is on the E. side of Alleghany River, about forty miles N.E. from Pittsburg.

1757.

2. [1]While these events were transpiring, the French commander, the Marquis Montcalm, having collected his forces at Ticonderoga, advanced with an army of 9000 men, 2000 of whom were savages, and laid siege[a] to Fort William Henry.[b] [2]The garrison of the fort consisted of between two and three thousand men, commanded by Colonel Monro; and, for the farther security of the place, Colonel Webb was stationed at Fort Edward, only fifteen miles distant, with an army of 4000 men. During six days, the garrison maintained an obstinate defence; anxiously awaiting a reenforcement from Fort Edward; until, receiving positive information that no relief would be attempted, and their ammunition beginning to fail them, they surrendered[c] the place by capitulation.

1. Proceedings of Montcalm in the mean time.

a. Aug. 3.

b. See Note, p. 274.

2. Siege and surrender of Fort William Henry.

c. Aug. 9.

3. [3]Honorable terms were granted the garrison "on account of their honorable defence," as the capitulation itself expressed; and they were to march out with their arms, and retire in safety under an escort to Fort Edward. [4]The capitulation, however, was shamefully broken by the Indians attached to Montcalm's party; who fell upon the English as they were leaving the fort; plundered them of their baggage, and butchered many of them in cold blood. [5]The otherwise fair fame of Montcalm has been tarnished by this unfortunate affair; but it is believed that he and his officers used their utmost endeavors, except firing upon the Indians, to stop the butchery.

3. Terms granted the garrison.

4. The capitulation broken.

5. Conduct of Montcalm on this occasion.

1758.

V. 1758: REDUCTION OF LOUISBURG; ABERCROMBIE'S DEFEAT; THE TAKING OF FORTS FRONTENAC AND DU QUESNE.—1. [6]The result of the two preceding campaigns was exceedingly humiliating to England, in view of the formidable preparations that had been made for carrying on the war; and so strong was the feeling against the ministry and their measures, that a change was found necessary. [7]A new administration was formed, at the head of which was placed Mr. Pitt, afterwards Lord Chatham; Lord Loudon was recalled; additional forces were raised in America; and a large naval armament, and twelve thousand additional troops, were promised from England. [8]Three expeditions were planned: one against Louisburg, another against the French on Lake Champlain, and a third against Fort du Quesne.

Fifth division.

6. Result of the two preceding campaigns.

7. Changes that followed.

8. Expeditions planned.

2. [9]Early in the season, Admiral Boscawen arrived at Halifax, whence he sailed, on the 28th of May, with a fleet of nearly forty armed vessels, together with twelve thousand men under the command of General Amherst, for the reduction of Louisburg.[d] On the second of June, the fleet anchored in Gabarus Bay; and on the 8th the troops effected a landing, with little loss; when the

9. Expedition against Louisburg.

d. See Note and Map, p. 203.

ANALYSIS.

French called in their outposts, and dismantled the royal battery.

1. *Progress of the siege, and surrender of the place.*

3. [1]Soon after, General Wolfe, passing[a] around the Northeast Harbor, erected a battery at the North Cape, near the light-house, from which the island battery was silenced:[b] three French ships were burned[c] in the harbor; and the fortifications of the town were greatly injured. At length, all the shipping being destroyed, and the batteries from the land side having made several breaches in the walls, near the last of July the city and island, together with St. John's,* were surrendered[d] by capitulation.

a. June 12.
b. June 25.
c. July 21.
d. July 26.

2. *Abercrombie's expedition.*

4. [2]During these events, General Abercrombie, on whom the command in chief had devolved on the recall of Lord Loudon, was advancing against Ticonderoga.[e] [3]On the 5th of July, he embarked on Lake George, with more than 15,000 men, and a formidable train of artillery. On the following morning, the troops landed near the northern extremity of the lake, and commenced their march through a thick wood towards the fort, then defended by about four thousand men under the command of the Marquis Montcalm. Ignorant of the nature of the ground, and without proper guides, the troops became bewildered; and the centre column, commanded by Lord Howe, falling in with an advanced guard of the French, Lord Howe himself was killed; but after a warm contest, the enemy were repulsed.[f]

e. See Note and Map, p. 374.

3. *Progress of the expedition, and result of the first attack.*

f. July. 6.

4. *The effect of Lord Howe's death.*

5. [4]After the death of Lord Howe, who was a highly valuable officer, and the soul of the expedition, the ardor of the troops greatly abated; and disorder and confusion prevailed. [5]Most of the army fell back to the landing-place, but early on the morning of the 8th, again advanced in full force to attack the fort; the general being assured, by his chief engineer, that the intrenchments were unfinished, and might be attempted with good prospects of success. Unexpectedly, the breastwork was found to be of great strength, and covered with felled trees, with their branches pointing outwards; and notwithstanding the intrepidity of the troops, after a contest of nearly four hours, they were repulsed[g] with great slaughter; leaving nearly two thousand of their number killed or wounded on the field of battle.

5. *Particulars of the second attack.*

g. July 8.

6. *Expedition against Fort Frontenac.*

6. [6]After this repulse, the army retired to the head of Lake George, whence at the solicitation of Colonel Bradstreet, an expedition of three thousand men, under the

* *St. John's*, or *Prince Edward's Island*, is an island of very irregular shape, about 130 miles long; lying west of Cape Breton, and north of Nova Scotia, from which it is separated by Northumberland Strait. The French called the island *St. John's*; but in 1799 the English changed its name to *Prince Edward*. (See Hist. of Prince Edward, p. 553.)

command of that officer, was sent against Fort Frontenac,* on the western shore of the outlet of Lake Ontario, a place which had long been the chief resort for the traders of the Indian nations who were in alliance with the French. Proceeding by the way of Oswego, Bradstreet crossed the lake, landed[a] within a mile of the fort without opposition, and, in two days, compelled that important fortress to surrender.[b] The Fort was destroyed, and nine armed vessels, sixty cannon, and a large quantity of military stores and goods, designed for the Indian trade, fell into the hands of the English.

1758.

a. Aug. 25.

b. Aug. 27.

7. [1]The expedition against Fort du Quesne was intrusted to General Forbes, who set out from Philadelphia early in July, at the head of 9000 men. An advanced party under Major Grant was attacked near the fort, and defeated with the loss of three hundred men; but, as the main body of the army advanced, the French, being deserted by their Indian allies, abandoned[c] the place, and escaped in boats down the Ohio. Quiet posession was then taken[d] of the fort, when it was repaired and garrisoned, and, in honor of Mr. Pitt, named *Pittsburg*.† [2]The western Indians soon after came in and concluded a treaty of neutrality with the English. [3]Notwithstanding the defeat of Abercrombie, the events of the year had weakened the French power in America; and the campaign closed with honor to England and her colonies.

1. *Expedition against Fort du Quesne.*

c. Nov. 24.

d. Nov. 25.

2. *Treaty formed.*

3. *Result of the campaign of 1758.*

VI. 1759 TO 1763: TICONDEROGA AND CROWN POINT ABANDONED; NIAGARA TAKEN; CONQUEST OF QUEBEC,—OF ALL CANADA; WAR WITH THE CHEROKEES; PEACE OF 1763.—1. [4]The high reputation which General Amherst had acquired in the siege of Louisburg, had gained him a vote of thanks from parliament, and had procured for him the appointment of commander-in-chief of the army in North America, with the responsibility of carrying out the vast and daring project of Mr. Pitt, which was no less than the entire conquest of Canada in a single campaign.

1759.

Subjects of the sixth division.

4. *Honors bestowed on General Amherst.*

2. [5]For the purpose of dividing and weakening the power of the French, General Wolfe, a young officer of uncommon merit, who had distinguished himself at the siege of Louisburg, was to ascend the St. Lawrence and lay siege to Quebec: General Amherst was to carry Ticonderoga and Crown Point; and then, by way of Lake Champlain and the St. Lawrence, was to unite with the forces of General Wolfe; while a third army, after the

5. *Plan of the campaign of 1759.*

* The village of Kingston, in Canada, now occupies the site of Old Fort Frontenac.

† *Pittsburg*, now a flourishing city, is situated on a beautiful plain, at the junction of the Alleghany and the Monongahela, in the western part of Pennsylvania. There are several thriving villages in the vicinity, which should be regarded as suburbs of Pittsburg, the principal of which is *Alleghany City*, on the N.W. side of the Alleghany River.

ANALYSIS.

reduction of Niagara, was to proceed down the lake and river against Montreal.

1. *Success of Gen. Amherst at Ticonderoga.*

3. [1]In the prosecution of the enterprise which had been intrusted to him, General Amherst arrived[a] before Ticonderoga[b] in the latter part of July, with an army of little more than 11,000 men. While preparing for a general attack, the French abandoned[c] their lines, and withdrew to the fort; but, in a few days, abandoned[d] this also, after having partially demolished it, and retired to Crown Point.[e]

a. July 22.
b. See Note and Map, p. 374.
c. July 23.
d. July 26.
e. N. p. 234.

2. *Farther pursuit of the enemy, and return of the army.*

4. [2]Pursuing his successes, General Amherst advanced towards this latter post; but on his approach, the garrison retired[f] to the Isle of Aux Noix* in the river Sorel.[g] After having constructed several small vessels, and acquired a naval superiority on the lake, the whole army embarked[h] in pursuit of the enemy; but a succession of storms, and the advanced season of the year, finally compelled a return[i] to Crown Point, where the troops went into winter quarters.

f. Aug. 1.
g. N. p. 230.
h. Oct. 11.
i. Oct. 2.

3. *Events of the expedition against Niagara.*

5. [3]General Prideaux,[j] to whom was given the command of the expedition against Niagara, proceeded by the way of Schenectady and Oswego; and on the sixth of July landed near the fort without opposition. Soon after the commencement of the siege, the general was killed through the carelessness of a gunner, by the bursting of a cohorn, when the command devolved on Sir William Johnson. As twelve hundred French and Indians, from the southern French forts, were advancing to the relief of the place, they were met and routed[k] with great loss; when the garrison, despairing of assistance, submitted[l] to terms of capitulation. The surrender of this important post effectually cut off the communication between Canada and Louisiana.

j. Pronounced, Pre-do.
k. July 24.
l. July 25.

6. [4]While these events were transpiring, General Wolfe was prosecuting the more important part of the campaign, the siege of Quebec.† Having embarked

* *Aux Noix* (O Noo-ah) is a small island in the River Sorel, or Richelieu, a short distance above the northern extremity of Lake Champlain.

† *Quebec*, a strongly fortified city of Canada is situated on the N.W. side of the River St. Lawrence, on a lofty promontory formed by that river and the St. Charles. The city consists of the Upper and the Lower Town; the latter on a narrow strip of land, wholly the work of art, near the water's edge; and the former on a plain, difficult of access, more than 200 feet higher. Cape Diamond, the most elevated part of the Upper Town, on which stands the citadel, is 345 feet above the level of the river, and commands a grand view of

about 8000 men at Louisburg, under convoy of a fleet of 22 ships of the line, and an equal number of frigates and small armed vessels, commanded by Admirals Saunders and Holmes; he safely landed[a] the army, near the end of June, on the Isle of Orleans a few miles below Quebec. [1]The French forces, to the number of thirteen thousand men, occupied the city, and a strong camp on the northern shore of the St. Lawrence, between the rivers St. Charles and Montmorenci.*

1759.

4. Proceedings of Gen. Wolfe in the mean time.

a. June 27.

1. Disposition of the French forces.

7. [2]General Wolfe took possession[b] of Point Levi,[c] where he erected batteries which destroyed the Lower Town, but did little injury to the defences of the city. He soon after crossed the north channel of the St. Lawrence, and encamped[d] his army near the enemy's left, the river Montmorenci lying between them. [3]Convinced, however, of the impossibility of reducing the place unless he could erect batteries nearer the city than Point Levi, he soon decided on more daring measures. He resolved to cross the St. Lawrence and the Montmorenci, with different divisions, at the same time, and storm the intrenchments of the French camp.

2. First measures which Wolfe adopted.

b. June 30.

c. See Map, p. 280.

d. July 10.

3 Daring measures next resolved upon.

8. [4]For this purpose, on the last day of July, the boats of the fleet, filled with grenadiers, and with troops from Point Levi, under the command of General Monckton, crossed the St. Lawrence, and, after considerable delay by grounding on the ledge of rocks, effected a landing a little above the Montmorenci; while Generals Townshend and Murray, fording that stream at low water, near its mouth, hastened to the assistance of the troops already landed. [5]But as the granadiers rushed impetuously forward without waiting for the troops that were to support them, they were driven back with loss, and obliged to seek shelter behind a redoubt which the enemy had abandoned. [6]Here they were detained a while by a thunder storm, still exposed to a galling fire; when night approaching, and the tide setting in, a retreat was ordered. This unfortunate attempt was attended with the loss of nearly 500 men.

4. Landing of the troops.

July 31.

5. Repulse of the grenadiers.

6. What compelled a retreat, and what loss was sustained.

9. [7]The bodily fatigues which General Wolfe had endured, together with his recent disappointment, acting upon a frame naturally delicate, threw him into a violent fever; and, for a time, rendered him incapable of taking

7. Sickness of Gen. Wolfe.

an extensive tract of country. The fortifications of the Upper Town, extending nearly across the peninsula, inclose a circuit of about two miles and three-quarters. The *Plains of Abraham*, immediately westward, and in front of the fortifications, rise to the height of more than 300 feet, and are exceedingly difficult of access from the river. (Map.)

* The River *Montmorenci* enters the St. Lawrence from the N., about seven miles below Quebec. The falls in this river, near its mouth, are justly celebrated for their beauty. The water descends 240 feet in one unbroken sheet of foam. (Map, p. 280.)

ANALYSIS.

1. *Plan next proposed.*

the field in person. [1]He therefore called a council of his officers, and, requesting their advice, proposed a second attack on the French lines. They were of opinion, however, that this was inexpedient, but proposed that the army should attempt a point above Quebec, where they might gain the heights which overlooked the city. The plan being approved, preparations were immediately made to carry it into execution.

2. *Account of the execution of the plan adopted.*

10. [2]The camp at Montmorenci being broken up, the troops and artillery were conveyed to Point Levi; and, soon after, to some distance above the city; while Montcalm's attention was still engaged with the apparent design of a second attack upon his camp. All things being in readiness, during the night of the 12th of September, the troops in boats silently fell down the stream; and, landing within a mile and a half of the city, ascended the precipice,—dispersed a few Canadians and Indians; and, when morning dawned, were drawn up in battle array on the plains of Abraham.

3. *Proceedings of Montcalm.*

11 [3]Montcalm, surprised at this unexpected event, and perceiving that, unless the English could be driven from their position, Quebec was lost, immediately crossed the St. Charles with his whole army, and advanced to the attack. [4]About nine in the morning fifteen hundred Indians and Canadians, advancing in front, and screened by surrounding thickets, began the battle;[a] but the English reserved their fire for the main body of the French, then rapidly advancing; and, when at the distance of forty yards, opened upon them with such effect as to compel them to recoil with confusion.

4. *The attack.*

a. Sept. 13.

5. *Circumstances of the deaths of the two commanders.*

12. [5]Early in the battle General Wolfe received two wounds in quick succession, which he concealed, but, while pressing forward at the head of his grenadiers, with fixed bayonets, a third ball pierced his breast. Colonel Monckton, the second officer in rank, was dangerously wounded by his side, when the command devolved on General Townshend. The French general, Montcalm, likewise fell; and his second in command was mortally wounded. General Wolfe died on the field of battle, but he lived long enough to be informed that he had gained the victory.

6. *The relation continued.*

13. [6]Conveyed to the rear, and supported by a few attendants, while the agonies of death were upon him he heard the distant cry, "They run, they run." Raising his drooping head, the dying hero anxiously asked, "Who run?" Being informed that it was the French, "Then,' said he, "I die contented," and immediately expired. Montcalm lived to be carried into the city. When in

formed that his wound was mortal, "So much the better,' he replied, "I shall not then live to witness the surrender of Quebec." **1759.**

14. [1]Five days after the battle the city surrendered,[a] and received an English garrison, thus leaving Montreal the only place of importance to the French, in Canada. Yet in the following spring the French attempted the recovery of Quebec; and, after a bloody battle fought[b] three miles above the city, drove the English to their fortifications, from which they were relieved only by the arrival[c] of an English squadron with reenforcements. **1760.**

1. Surrender of the city. a. Sept. 18. *2. Attempt to recover Quebec.* b. April 28. c. May 16.

15. [2]During the season, General Amherst, the commander-in-chief, made extensive preparations for reducing Montreal. Three powerful armies assembled[d] there by different routes, early in September; when the commander of the place, perceiving that resistance would be ineffectual, surrendered,[e] not only Montreal, but all the other French posts in Canada, to his Britannic majesty.

3. Capture of Montreal. d. Sept. 6, 7. e. Sept. 8.

16. [4]Early in the same year a war broke out with the powerful nation of the Cherokees, who had but recently, as allies of the French, concluded[f] a peace with the English. General Amherst sent Colonel Montgomery against them, who, assisted by the Carolinians, burned[g] many of their towns; but the Cherokees, in turn, besieged Fort Loudon,* and having compelled the garrison to capitulate,[h] afterward fell upon them, and either killed,[i] or carried away prisoners, the whole party. [5]In the following year Colonel Grant marched into their country,—overcame them in battle,[j]—destroyed their villages,—and drove the savages to the mountains; when peace was concluded with them.

4. Events of the war with the Cherokees, during the year 1760. f. Sept. 26, 1759. g. May, Aug. h. Aug. 7. i. Aug. 8. *5. During the year 1761.* j. June 10.

17. [6]The war between France and England continued on the ocean, and among the islands of the West Indies, with almost uniform success to the English, until 1763; when, on the 10th of February of that year, a definite treaty was signed at Paris. [7]France thereby surrendered to Great Britain all her possessions in North America, eastward of the Mississippi River, from its source to the river Iberville;† and thence, through Lakes Maurepas‡

6. Farther progress, and end of the war between France and England. **1763.** *7. What possessions were ceded by France, and what by Spain.*

---

* *Fort Loudon* was in the northeastern part of Tennessee, on the Watauga River, a stream which, rising in N. Carolina, flows westward into Tennessee, and unites with Holston River. Fort Loudon was built in 1757, and was the first settlement in Tennessee, which was then included in the territory claimed by N. Carolina.

† *Iberville*, an outlet of the Mississippi, leaves that river fourteen miles below Baton Rouge, and flowing E. enters Amite River, which falls into *Lake Maurepas*. It now receives water from the Mississippi only at high flood. In 1699 the French naval officer, Iberville, sailed up the Mississippi to this stream, which he entered, and thence passed through Lakes Maurepas and Pontchartrain to Mobile Bay. (See Hist. of Louisiana, p. 521.)

‡ *Maurepas* is a lake about twenty miles in circumference, communicating with Lake Pontchartrain on the E. by an outlet seven miles long.

ANALYSIS.

and Pontchartrain,* to the Gulf of Mexico. At the same time Spain, with whom England had been at war during the previous year, ceded to Great Britain her possessions of East and West Florida.†

1. Peace of 1763. How we may view the colonies at this period.

18. [1]The peace of 1763 was destined to close the series of wars in which the American colonies were involved by their connection with the British empire. We may now view them as grown up to manhood, about to renounce the authority of the mother country—to adopt councils of their own—and to assume a new name and station among the nations of the earth. [2]Some of the causes which led to this change might be gathered from the foregoing historical sketches, but they will be developed more fully in the following Appendix, and in the Chapter on the causes which led to the American Revolution.

2. Of the causes which led to this change.

---

* *Pontchartrain* is a lake more than a hundred miles in circumference, the southern shore of which is about five miles N. from New Orleans. The passage by which it communicates with Lake Borgne on the E. is called *The Rigolets.* (See Map, p. 438.)

† That part of the country ceded by Spain was divided, by the English monarch, into the governments of East and West Florida. *East Florida* included all embraced in the present Florida, as far W as the Apalachicola River. *West Florida* extended from the Apalachicola to the Mississippi, and was bounded on the N. by the 31st degree of latitude, and on the S. by the Gulf of Mexico, and a line drawn through Lakes Pontchartrain and Maurepas, and the Rivers Amite and Iberville, to the Mississippi. Thus those parts of the states of Alabama and Mississippi which extend from the 31st degree dowu to the Gulf of Mexico, were included in West Florida.

APPENDIX

TO THE COLONIAL HISTORY.

JAMES I. 1603—1625.

1. General character and design of this Appendix.

1. [1]Before we proceed to a relation of the immediate causes which led to the American Revolution, and the exciting incidents of that struggle, we request the reader's attention, in accordance with the design previously explained, to a farther consideration of such portions of European history as are intimately connected with our own during the period we have passed over in the preceding pages;—in connection with which we purpose to examine farther more of the internal relations, character, condition, and social progress of the American people during their colonial existence.

2. Previous account of the puritans

2. [2]At the close of the "Appendix to the period of Voyages and Discoveries" we gave an account of the origin, early history, and character of the puritan party in England, some of whose members became the first settlers of several of the North American colonies.

3. Continuation of their history.

[3]We now go back to England for the purpose of following out in their results the liberal principles of the puritan sects, as they afterwards affected the character and destiny both of the English and the American people.

JAMES I. 1603—1625.

4. Character of parties at the time of the accession of James I.

3. [4]On the accession of James the First to the throne of England, in the year 1603, the church party and the puritan party began to assume more of a political character than they had exhibited during the reign of Elizabeth. The reign of that princess had been favorable to intellectual advancement; the Reformation had infused new ideas of liberty into the minds of the people; and as they had escaped, in part, from the slavery of spiritual despotism, a general eagerness was manifested to carry their principles farther, as well in politics as in religion.

5. Political aspect of the religious controversies

4. [5]The operation of these principles had been in part restrained by the general respect for the government of Elizabeth, which, however, the people did not accord to that of her successor; and the spell being once broken, the spirit of party soon began to rage with threatening violence. That which, in the time of Elizabeth, was a controversy of divines about religious faith and worship, now became a political contest between the crown and the people.

6. Increase of the puritans in numbers and influence.

5. [6]The puritans rapidly increased in numbers, nor was it long before they became the ruling party in the House of Commons, where, although they did not always act in concert, and although their immediate objects were various, yet their influence constantly tended to abridge the prerogatives of the king, and to increase the power of the people.*

7. Their various objects, and the tendency of their efforts.

[7]Some, whose minds were absorbed with the desire of carrying out the Reformation to the farthest possible extent, exerted themselves for a reform in the church: others attacked arbitrary courts of justice, like that of the Star-chamber, and the power of arbitrary imprisonment exercised by officers of

* The appellation "puritan" now stood for three parties, which though commonly united, were yet actuated by very different views and motives. "There were the political puritans, who maintained the highest principles of civil liberty, the puritans in discipline, who were averse to the ceremonies and episcopal government of the church; and the doctrinal puritans, who rigidly defended the speculative system of the first reformers."—*Hume.*

ANALYSIS.

the crown,—but yet the efforts of all had a common tendency;—the principles of democracy were contending against the powers of despotism.

1. *The policy of James.*

6. [1]The arbitrary principles of government which James had adopted, rather than his natural disposition, disposed him to exert all the influence which his power and station gave him, in favor of the established church system, and in opposition to the puritan party.* Educated in Scotland, where presbyterianism prevailed, he had observed among the Scoth reformers a strong tendency towards republican principles, and a zealous attachment to civil liberty, and on his accession to the throne of England he was resolved to prevent, if possible, the growth of the sect of puritans in that country. [2]Yet his want of enterprise, his pacific disposition, and his love of personal ease, rendered him incapable of stemming the torrent of liberal principles that was so strongly setting against the arbitrary powers of royalty.

2. *How partially defeated.*

3. *The anomalies of his character.*

7. [3]The anomalies of the character of James present a curious compound of contradictions. Hume says: "His generosity bordered on profusion, his learning on pedantry, his pacific disposition on pusillanimity, his wisdom on cunning, his friendship on light fancy and boyish fondness." "All his qualities were sullied with weakness, and embellished by humanity." Lingard says of him: "His discourse teemed with maxims of political wisdom; his conduct frequently bore the impress of political folly. Posterity has agreed to consider him a weak and prodigal king, a vain and loquacious pedant." His English flatterers called him "the British Solomon;" the Duke of Sully says of him, "He was the wisest fool in Europe."

4. *The reign of James memorable for what.*

5. *Hume's remarks relative to the American colonies.*

8. [4]The reign of this prince is chiefly memorable as being the period in which the first English colonies were permanently planted in America. [5]Hume, speaking of the eastern American coast in reference to the colonies planted there during the reign of James, says: "Peopled gradually from England by the necessitous and indigent, who at home increased neither wealth nor populousness, the colonies which were planted along that tract have promoted the navigation, encouraged the industry, and even perhaps multiplied the inhabitants of their mother country. The spirit of independence, which was revived in England, here shone forth in its full lustre, and received new accessions from the aspiring

---

* An extract from Hallam showing the different tenets and practices of the opposing religious parties at this time, and the disposition of James needlessly to harass the puritans may be interesting to the reader The puritans, as is well known, practiced a very strict observance of the *Sabbath*, a term which, instead of *Sunday*, became a distinctive mark of the puritan party We quote, as a matter of historical interest, the following:—

"Those who opposed them (the puritans) on the high church side, not only derided the extravagance of the Sabbatarians, as the others were called, but pretended that the commandment having been confined to the Hebrews, the modern observance of the first day of the week as a season of rest and devotion was an ecclesiastical institution, and in no degree more venerable than that of the other festivals or the season of Lent, which the puritans stubbornly despised. Such a controversy might well have been left to the usual weapons. But James, or some of the bishops to whom he listened, bethought themselves that this might serve as a test of puritan ministers. He published accordingly a declaration to be read in the churches, permitting all lawful recreations on Sunday after divine service, such as dancing, archery, May-games, and morrice-dances, and other usual sports; but with a prohibition of bear-baiting, and other unlawful games. No recusant, or any one who had not attended the church service, was entitled to this privilege; which might consequently be regarded as a bounty on devotion. The severe puritan saw it in no such point of view. To his cynical temper, May-games and morrice-dances were hardly tolerable on six days of the week; they were now recommended for the seventh. And this impious license was to be promulgated in the church itself. It is indeed difficult to explain so unnecessary an insult on the *precise* clergy, but by supposing an intention to harass those who should refuse compliance." The declaration, however, was not enforced till the following reign. The puritan clergy, who then refused to read this declaration in their churches, were punished by suspension or deprivation.

character of those who, being discontented with the established church and monarchy, had sought for freedom amidst those savage deserts."

JAMES I. 1603—1625.

9. [1]An account of the planting of several of the American colonies during the reign of James has elsewhere been given. The king, being from the first favorable to the project of American colonization, readily acceded to the wishes of the projectors of the first plans of settlement; but in all the charters which he granted, his arbitrary maxims of government are discernible. [2]By the first charter of Virginia, the emigrants were subjected to a corporation in England, called the London Company, over whose deliberations they had no influence; and even this corporation possessed merely administrative, rather than legislative powers, as all supreme legislative authority was expressly reserved to the king. The most valuable political privilege of Englishmen was thus denied to the early colonists of Virginia.

1. The king favorable to American colonization.

2. His arbitrary policy as shown by the first Virginia charter.

10. [3]By the second charter, granted in 1609, the authority of the corporation was increased by the surrender of those powers which the king had previously reserved to himself, yet no additional privileges were conceded to the people. The same indifference to the political rights of the latter are observable in the third charter, granted in 1612, although by it the enlarged corporation assumed a more democratic form, and, numbering among its members many of the English patriots, was the cause of finally giving to the Virginia colonists those civil liberties which the king would still have denied them. [4]Here is the first connection that we observe between the spirit of English independence and the cause of freedom in the New World.

3. Character of the second and the third charter

4. Connection between English independence, and freedom in the New World.

11. [5]After the grant of the third charter of Virginia, the meetings of the London Company were frequent, and numerously attended. Some of the patriot leaders in parliament were among the members, and in proportion as their principles were opposed by the high church and monarchy party at home, they engaged with the more earnestness in schemes for advancing the liberties of Virginia. In 1621 the Company, after a violent struggle among its own members, and a successful resistance of royal interference, proceeded to establish a liberal written constitution for the colony, by which the system of representative government and trial by jury were established—the supreme powers of legislation were conceded to a colonial legislature, with the reserve of a negative voice to the governor appointed by the company—and the courts of justice were required to conform to the laws of England.

5. The London Company favors the cause of freedom.

12. [6]"Thus early," says Grahame, "was planted in America that representative system which forms the soundest political frame wherein the spirit of liberty was ever imbodied, and at once the safest and most efficient organ by which its energies are exercised and developed. So strongly imbued were the minds of Englishmen in this age with those generous principles which were rapidly advancing to a first manhood in their native country, that wherever they settled, the institutions of freedom took root and grew up along with them." [7]Although the government of the Virginia colony was soon after taken into the hands of the king, yet the representative system established there could never after be subverted, nor the colonial assemblies suppressed. Whenever the rights of the people were encroached upon by arbitrary enactments, their representatives were ready to reassert them; and thus a channel was ever kept open for the expression of the public grievances. The colonial legislature, in all the trials through which it

6. Remarks of Grahame.

7. Permanence of the representative system in Virginia.

ANALYSIS.

afterwards passed, ever proved itself a watchful guardian of the cause of liberty.

1. *Failure of the schemes of the Plymouth Company at colonization.*

13. [1]The charters granted by king James, in 1606, to the London and Plymouth companies, were embraced in one and the same instrument, and the forms of government designed for the projected colonies were the same. After various attempts at colonization, the Plymouth company, disheartened by so many disappointments, abandoned the enterprise, limiting their own efforts to an insignificant traffic with the natives, and exercising no farther dominion over the territory than the disposition of small portions of it to private adventurers, who, for many years, succeeded no better in attempts at settlement than the Company had done before them. In reference to the seemingly providential failure of all these schemes for planting colonies in New England, we subjoin the following appropriate remarks from Grahame.

2. *Remarks of Grahame on this subject.*

14. [2]"We have sufficient assurance that the course of this world is not governed by chance; and that the series of events which it exhibits is regulated by divine ordinance, and adapted to purposes which, from their transcendent wisdom and infinite range, often elude the grasp of created capacity. As it could not, then, be without design, so it seems to have been for no common object that discomfiture was thus entailed on the counsels of princes, the schemes of the wise, and the efforts of the brave. It was for no ordinary people that the land was reserved, and of no common qualities or vulgar superiority that it was ordained to be the prize. New England was the destined asylum of oppressed piety and virtue; and its colonization, denied to the pretensions of greatness and the efforts of might, was reserved for men whom the great and mighty despised for their insignificance, and persecuted for their integrity."

3. *Application of the puritans for the favor of king James.*

15. [3]After the puritans had determined to remove to America, they sent agents to king James, and endeavored to obtain his approval of their enterprise. With characteristic simplicity and honesty of purpose they represented to him "that they were well weaned from the delicate milk of their mother country, and inured to the difficulties of a strange land; that they were knit together in a strict and sacred bond, by virtue of which they held themselves bound to take care of the good of each other, and of the whole; that it was not with them as with other men, whom small things could discourage, or small discontent cause to wish themselves at home again." [4]All, however, that could be obtained from the king, who refused to grant them a charter for the full enjoyment of their religious privileges, was the vague promise that the English government should refrain from molesting them.

4. *Their partial success.*

5. *The progress thus far made.*

6. *Death of James the First.*

a. March 27, old style.

16. [5]We have thus passed rapidly in review the more prominent events in English history connected with the planting of the first American colonies during the reign of James the First. [6]He died in 1625,[a] "the first sovereign of an established empire in America." Just as he was on the point of composing a code of laws for the domestic administration of the Virginia colony.

CHARLES I. 1625—1649.

7. *Succession of Charles I. His character, policy, and fall.*

17. [7]James was succeeded by his only son, Charles the First, then in the 25th year of his age. Inheriting the arbitrary principles of his father; coming to the throne when a revolution in public opinion in relation to the royal prerogative, the powers of parliament, and the liberty of the subject was rapidly progressing; and destitute of the prudence and foresight which the critical emergencies of the times required in him, he persisted in arrogantly opposing the many needed reforms demanded by the voice of the nation.

until, finally, he was brought to expiate his folly, rather than his crimes, on the scaffold.

CHARLES I. 1625–1649.

18. [1]The accession of Charles to the throne was immediately followed by difficulties with his parliament, which refused to grant him the requisite supplies for carrying on a war* in which the former king and parliament had involved the nation. Irritated by the opposition which he encountered, he committed many indiscretions, and engaged in numerous controversies with the parliament, in which he was certain of being finally defeated. He caused a peer of the realm, who had become obnoxious to him, to be accused of high treason, because he insisted on his inalienable right to a seat in parliament: the commons, in return, proceeded to impeach the king's favorite minister, the duke of Buckingham.—The king retaliated by imprisoning two members of the house, whom, however, the exasperation of the commons soon compelled him to release.

1. His early controversies with the parliament.

19. [2]Seemingly unaware of the great influence which the commons exerted in the nation, he embraced every opportunity of expressing his contempt for them, and, at length, ventured to use towards them the irritating threat, that, if they did not furnish him with supplies to carry on the wars in which he was engaged, he should be obliged to try new councils; meaning, thereby, that he would rule without their assistance. [3]The commons, however, continued obstinate in their purposes, and the king proceeded to put his threat in execution. He dissolved[a] the parliament, and, in revenge for the unkind treatment which he had received from it, thought himself justified in making an invasion of the rights and liberties of the whole nation. A general loan or tax was levied on the people, and the king employed the whole power of his prerogative, in fines and imprisonments, to enforce the payment.

2. His contempt for, and threats against the commons.

3. Obstinacy of the commons, and arbitrary conduct of the king.

a. June, 1629.

20. [4]Unsuccessful in his foreign wars, in great want of supplies, and beginning to apprehend danger from the discontents which his arbitrary loans had occasioned, he found himself under the necessity of again summoning a parliament. An answer to his demand for supplies was delayed until some important concessions were obtained from him. [5]After the commons had unanimously declared, by vote, against the legality of arbitrary imprisonments and forced loans, they prepared a "Petition of Right,"[7] setting forth the rights of the English people, as guarantied to them by the Great Charter,[b] and by various laws and statutes of the realm; for the continuance of which they required of the king a ratification of their petition. After frequent evasions and delays, the king finally gave his assent to the petition, which thus became law, and the commons then granted the requisite supplies. [6]But in a few months the obligations imposed on the king by his sanction of the petition were recklessly violated by him.

4. King obliged to summon a new parliament.

1628.

5. Concessions obtained from the king.

b. See p. 139.

6. Violated by him.

21. [7]In 1629, some arbitrary measures of taxation occasioned a great ferment in parliament, and led to its abrupt dissolution. [8]The king then gave the nation to understand that, during his reign, he intended to summon no more parliaments. Monopolies were now revived to a ruinous extent: duties of tonnage and poundage were rigorously extorted; former oppressive statutes for obtaining money were enforced; and various illegal expedients were devised for levying taxes and giving them the color of law; and numbers of

7. Dissolution of parliament.

1629.

8. King's intentions—monopolies—arbitrary duties, oppressive laws—fines, &c.

* A war undertaken originally against Austria, in aid of a German prince, Frederick, the elector palatine, who had married a sister of Charles. This war afterwards involved Spain and France against England.

ANALYSIS.

the most distinguished patriots, who refused to pay, were subjected to fines and imprisonment.*

1. *The case of John Hampden.*

22. In the year 1637, the distinguished patriot, John Hampden, rendered his name illustrious by the bold stand which he made against the tyranny of the government. Denying the legality of the tax called ship-money, and refusing to pay his portion, he willingly submitted to a legal prosecution, and to the indignation of his monarch, in defence of the laws and liberty of his country. The case was argued before all the supreme judges of England, twelve in number, and although a majority of two decided against Hampden, yet the people were aroused from their lethargy, and became sensible of the danger to which their liberties were exposed.

2. *Ecclesiastical policy of Charles.*

23. [2]The ecclesiastical branch of Charles's government was no less arbitrary than the civil. Seemingly to annoy the puritans, he revised and enforced his father's edict for allowing sports and recreations on Sunday; and those divines who refused to read, in their pulpits, his proclamation for that purpose, were punished by suspension or deprivation. The penalties against Catholics were relaxed; many new ceremonies and observances, preludes, as they were termed, to popish idolatries, were introduced into the church, and that too, at a time when the sentiments of the nation were decidedly of a puritan character. The most strict conformity in religious worship was required, and such of the clergy as neglected to observe every ceremony, were excluded from the ministry. Severe punishments were inflicted upon those who inveighed against the established church; and the ecclesiastical courts were exalted above the civil, and above all law but that of their own creation.†

1637.

3 *Commotions occasioned in Scotland.*

24. [3]Charles next attempted to introduce the liturgy of the English church into Scotland; a measure which immediately produced a most violent commotion. This liturgy was regarded by the Scotch presbyterians as a species of mass—a preparative that was soon to introduce, as was thought, all the abominations of popery. The populace and the higher classes at once united in the common cause: the clergy loudly declaimed against popery and the liturgy,

* Immediately after the dissolution of parliament, Richard Chambers, an alderman of London, and an eminent merchant, refused to pay a tax illegally imposed upon him, and appealed to the public justice of his country. Being summoned before the king's council, and remarking there that "the merchants of England were as much screwed up as in Turkey," he was fined two thousand pounds, and doomed to imprisonment till he made a submission. Refusing to degrade himself in this way, and thus become an instrument for destroying the vital principles of the constitution, he was thrown into prison, where he remained upwards of twelve years.—*Brodie.*

† As an instance of "cruel and unusual punishments," sometimes inflicted during this reign, we notice the following. One Leighton, a fanatical puritan, having written an inflammatory book against prelacy, was condemned to be degraded from the ministry; to be publicly whipped in the palace yard; to be placed two hours in the pillory; to have an ear cut off, a nostril slit open, and a cheek branded with the letters SS., to denote a sower of sedition. At the expiration of a week he lost the remaining ear, had the other nostril slit, and the other cheek branded, after which he was condemned to be immured in prison for life. At the end of ten years he obtained his liberty, from parliament, then in arms against the king.—*Lingard.* Such cases, occurring in Old England, remind us of the tortures inflicted by American savages on their prisoners.

The following is mentioned by Hume. One Prynn, a zealot, who had written a book of invectives against all plays, games, &c., and those who countenanced them, was indicted as a libeller of the king and queen, who frequented plays, and condemned by the arbitrary court of the star-chamber to lose both his ears, pay five thousand pounds, and be imprisoned for life. For another similar libel he was condemned to pay an additional five thousand pounds. and lose the remainder of his ears. As he presented the mutilated stumps to the hangman's knife, he called out to the crowd, "Christians stand fast; be faithful to God and your country; or you bring on yourselves and your children perpetual slavery." "The dungeon, the pillory, and the scaffold," says Bancroft, "were but stages in the progress of civil liberty towards its triumph."

which they represented as the same; a bond, termed a National Covenant, containing an oath of resistance to all religious innovations, was subscribed by all classes; and a national assembly formally abolished Episcopacy, and declared the English canons and liturgy to be unlawful. [1]In support of these measures the Scotch covenanters took up arms, and, after a brief truce, marched into England.

CHARLES I. 1625—1649.

1638.

1. *War.*

1639.

25. [2]After an intermission of above eleven years, an English parliament was again summoned. [3]Charles made some concessions, but failing to obtain supplies as readily as he desired, the parliament was abruptly dissolved, to the general discontent of the nation.* [4]New elections were held, and another parliament was assembled,[a] but this proved even more obstinate than the former. [5]Strafford, the king's favorite general, and late lieutenant of Ireland, and Laud, archbishop of Canterbury, the two most powerful and most favored ministers of the king, were impeached by the commons for the crime of high treason. Strafford was brought to trial immediately, was declared guilty by the House of Peers, and by the unusual expedient of a bill of attainder† was sentenced to execution.[b] Laud was brought to trial and executed four years later. [6]The eloquence and ability with which Strafford defended himself, have given to his fall, in the eyes of many, the appearance of a triumph, and have rendered him somewhat illustrious as a supposed martyr to his country; and yet true history shows him to have been the adviser and willing instrument of much of that tyrannical usurpation which finally destroyed the monarch whom he designed to serve.‡

2. *Parliament again summoned.*

1640.

3. *Abrupt dissolution of parliament.*

4. *Another parliament*

a. Nov. 3, old style.

5. *Proceedings of this parliament.*

1641.

b. Executed May 12, old style.

6. *Fate and character of Strafford*

26. [7]From this period, parliament having once gained the ascendency, and conscious of the support of the people, continued to encroach on the prerogatives of the king, until scarcely the shadow of his former power was left him. Already the character of the British constitution had been changed from a despotic government to a limited monarchy, and it would probably have been well if here the spirit of reform had firmly established it. [8]Yet one concession was immediately followed by the demand of another, until parliament finally required the entire control of the military force of the nation, when Charles, conscious that if he yielded this point, there would be left him "only the picture—the mere sign of a king," ventured to put a stop to his concessions, and to remove from London with most of the nobility. [9]It was now evident that the sword alone must decide the contest: both parties made the most active preparations for the coming struggle, while each endeavored to throw upon the other the odium of commencing it.§

7. *Encroachments of parliament on the prerogatives of the king.*

8. *Continued demands of parliament, and final resistance of the king.*

9. *Preparations for war.*

* During the short recess that followed, the *Convocation*, an ecclesiastical assembly of archbishops, bishops, and inferior clergy, continued in session. Of their many imprudent measures during this period, when Puritanism was already in the ascendant in the parliament, we quote the following from Lingard. "It was ordered, (among other canons,) that every clergyman, once in each quarter of the year, should instruct his parishioners in the divine right of kings, and the damnable sin of resistance to authority."

† A *bill of attainder* was a special act of parliament, inflicting capital punishment, without any conviction in the ordinary course of judicial proceedings. By the third clause of Section IX. Article I. of the Constitution of the United States, it is declared that "No *bill of attainder*, or *ex post facto law*, (a law declaring a past act criminal that was not criminal when done,) shall be passed."

‡ Hume's account of the trial of Strafford, has been shown to be, in many particulars, erroneous, and prejudiced in his favor; and his opinion of the Earl's innocence has been dissented from by some very able subsequent writers. See *Brodie's* extended and circumstantial account of this important trial.

§ The following remarks of Lingard present an impartial view of the real objects for which this war was undertaken, and answer the question, 'Who were the authors of it?'

"The controversy between the king and his opponents no longer regarded the real liberties

ANALYSIS.

1. *Point at which we have now arrived.*
2. *Marshalling of parties.*

27. [1]Here then we have arrived at the *beginning* of that crisis in English history, to which all the civil, religious, and political controversies of the nation had been tending since the commencement of the Reformation. [2]The various conflicting sects and parties, for a while overlooking their minor differences, now arranged themselves in two grand divisions, having on the one side the Presbyterian dissenters, then a numerous party, and all ultra religious and political reformers, headed by the parliament; and on the other the high church and monarchy party, embracing the Catholics and most of the nobility, headed by the king. [3]This appeal to arms, we have said, was the *beginning* of the crisis; the conclusion was fifty years later, when, at the close of the revolution of 1688, the present principles of the British constitution were permanently established, by the declaration of rights which was annexed to the settlement of the crown on the prince and princess of Orange.

3. *The beginning of the crisis: when brought to a conclusion.*

4. *Civil war, and execution of the king.*

28. [4]From 1642 to 1647 civil war continued, and many important battles were fought; after which the nation continued to be distracted by contending factions until the close of 1648, when the king, having fallen into the hands of the parliamentary forces, was tried for the crime of "levying war against the parliament and kingdom of England," and being convicted on this novel charge of treason, was executed on the 30th[a] of January, 1649. [5]Parliament had, ere this, fallen entirely under the influence of the army, then commanded by Oliver Cromwell, the principal general of the republican, or puritanical party.

a. Old style.

5. *Condition of parliament.*

6. *Remarks on the death of the king.*
7. *Views of Lingard.*

29. [6]For the death of the king no justification can be made, for no consideration of public necessity required it. Nor can this act be attributed to the vengeance of the people. [7]Lingard says that 'the people, for the most part were even willing to replace Charles on the throne, under those limitations which they deemed necessary for the preservation of their rights. The men who hurried him to the scaffold were a small faction of bold and ambitious spirits, who had the address to guide the passions and fanaticism of their followers, and were enabled, through them, to control the real sentiments of the nation.' [8]Hallam asserts that the most powerful motive that influenced the regicides was a "fierce fanatical hatred of the king, the natural fruit of long civil dissensions, inflamed by preachers more dark and sanguinary than those they addressed, and by a perverted study of the Jewish scriptures."

8. *Of Hallam.*

9. *Hume's representation of the character of Charles.*

30. [9]Hume, whose political prejudices have induced him to speak

---

of the nation, which had already been established by successive acts of the legislature, but was confined to certain concessions which *they* demanded as essential to the preservation of those liberties, and which *he* refused, as subversive of the royal authority. That some securities were requisite no one denied; but while many contended that the control of the public money, the power of impeachment, and the right of meeting every third year, all which were now vested in the Parliament, formed a sufficient barrier against encroachments on the part of the sovereign, others insisted that the command of the army, and the appointment of the judges, ought also to be transferred to the two houses. Diversity of opinion produced a schism among the patriots; the more moderate silently withdrew to the royal standard,—the more violent, or more distrustful, resolved to defend their opinions with the sword. It has often been asked, Who were the authors of the civil war? The answer seems to depend on the solution of this other question, Were additional securities necessary for the preservation of the national rights? If they were, the blame will belong to Charles; if not, it must rest with his adversaries." Hallam has the following remarks on the character of the two parties after the war commenced.—"If it were difficult for an upright man to enlist with entire willingness under either the royalist or parliamentary banner, at the commencement of hostilities in 1642, it became far less easy for him to desire the complete success of one or the other cause, as advancing time displayed the faults of both in darker colors than they had previously worn.—Of the Parliament it may be said, with not greater severity than truth, that scarcely two or three public acts of justice, humanity or generosity, and very few of political wisdom or courage are recorded of them from their quarrel with the king to their expulsion by Cromwell."

more favorably, than other writers, of the princes of the Stuart family, attributes to Charles a much greater predominance of virtues than of vices, and palliates his errors by what he calls his frailties and weaknesses, and the malevolence of his fortunes. [1]Had Charles lived a hundred years earlier, when the claims of the royal prerogative were undisputed and unquestioned, his government, although arbitrary, might have been a happy one for his people; but he was illy adapted to the times in which he lived.

CHARLES I. 1625—1649.

1. *True state of the case.*

31. [2]During the reign of Charles, the English government, mostly absorbed with the internal affairs of the kingdom, paid little attention to the American colonies. During the war with France, in the early part of this reign, the French possessions in Nova Scotia and Canada were easily reduced by the English, yet by the treaty of St. Germains, in 1632, Charles, with little consideration of the value of these conquests, agreed to restore them. [3]Had not the earnest counsels of Champlain, the founder of Quebec, prevailed with his monarch, Louis XIII., France would then have abandoned these distant possessions, whose restoration was not thought worth insisting upon.*

2. *Relations of England with her American colonies during his reign.*

3. *Little value which France, at this time, attached to her American possessions.*

32. [4]In his colonial policy towards Virginia, Charles adopted the maxims that had regulated the conduct of his father. Declaring that the misfortunes of Virginia were owing, in a great measure, to the democratical frame of the civil constitution which the London Company had given it, he expressed his intention of taking the government of that colony into his own hands; but although he appointed the governors and their council of advisers, the colonial assembly was apparently overlooked as of little consequence, and allowed to remain. [5]The great aim of the king seemed to be, to monopolize the profits of the industry of the colonists; and while absorbed with this object, which he could never fully accomplish, and overwhelmed with a multiplicity of cares at home, the political rights of the Virginians became established by his neglect.

4. *Colonial policy of Charles towards Virginia.*

5. *Great aim of the king: results.*

33. [6]The relations of Charles with the Puritan colonies of New England, form one of the most interesting portions of our colonial history, both on account of the subsequent importance of those colonies, and the exceeding liberality of conduct manifested towards them by the king,—so utterly irreconcilable with all his well known maxims of arbitrary authority,—and directly opposed to the whole policy of his government in England, and to the disposition which he exhibited in his relations with the Virginia colonists. [7]The reader will, perhaps, be surprised to learn that Charles the First acted, indirectly at least, as the early friend of the liberties of New England, and the patron of the Puritan settlements.

6. *The relations of Charles with the Puritan colonies of New England.*

7. *Surprising fact.*

34. [8]In the last year of the reign of James, the project of another Puritan settlement on the shore of Massachusetts Bay had been formed by Mr. White, a non-conformist minister of Dorchester; and, although the first attempt was in part frustrated, it led, a few years later, to the founding of the Massachusetts Bay colony. By the zeal and activity of White, an association of Puritans was formed; a tract of territory was purchased of the Plymouth Company, and, in 1628, a small body of planters was despatched to Massachusetts, under the charge of John Endicott one of the lead-

8. *Circumstances attending the founding of the Massachusetts Bay Colony.*

* "It is remarkable that the French were doubtful whether they should reclaim Canada from the English, or leave it to them. Many were of opinion that it was better to keep the people in France, and employ them in all sorts of manufactures, which would oblige the other European powers who had colonies in America to bring their raw goods to French ports, and take French manufactures in return."—Kalm's Travels in North America

ANALYSIS.

ing projectors. Some opulent commercial men of London, who openly professed or secretly favored the tenets of the Puritans, were induced to join in the enterprise; and they persuaded their associates to unite with them in an application to the king for a charter of incorporation.

1. Surprising liberality of the king.

35. [1]The readiness with which the king yielded to their application, and the liberal tenor of the charter thus obtained, are perfectly unaccountable, except upon the supposition that the king was anxious, at this time, to relieve his kingdom of the religious and political agitators of the Puritan party, by opening for them an asylum in a foreign land. [2]While attempting to divest the Virginians of many of their rights, he made a free gift of the same to the "Governor and Company of Massachusetts Bay," although he had but recently declared, in the case of Virginia, that a chartered incorporation was totally unfit to manage the affairs of a remote colony, yet he did not hesitate to establish one for New England. [3]Although aware of the hostility of the Puritans to the established English Church, he abstained from imposing upon them a single ordinance respecting religious tenets, or the forms and ceremonies of worship. The charter made no mention of the ecclesiastical rights of the colonists, thus showing a silent acquiescence of the king in the well known designs of the former, of establishing a church government on puritanical principles.*

2. Inconsistencies in his conduct.

3. Ecclesiastical rights allowed the Puritan colonists.

4. Their political rights.

5. The incorporated company, and its relations with the colonists.

6 Charter and meetings of the company transferred to America.

36. [4]Yet the great body of the emigrants did not obtain, directly any farther political rights, than the incorporated "Company," in which was vested all legislative and executive authority, thought proper to give them. [5]But the Company itself was large, some of its members were among the first emigrants, and a large proportion of the patentees soon removed to America. Between the Company and the emigrants there was a uniformity of views, principles, and interests; and the political rights given to the former, by their charter, were soon shared by the latter. [6]In 1629, the Company, by its own vote, and by general consent, transferred its charter, its meetings, and the control of the government of the colony from England to America. Thus an English corporation, established in London, resolved itself, with all its powers and privileges, into an American corporation to be established in Massachusetts; and that too without any opposition from the English monarch, who, in all other cases, had shown himself exceedingly jealous of the preroga-

* Yet Robertson (History of America, b. x.) charges the Puritans with laying the foundations of their church government in fraud; because the charter required that 'none of their acts or ordinances should be inconsistent with the laws of England,' a provision understood by the Puritans to require of them nothing farther than a general conformity to the common law of England. It would be preposterous to suppose that it was designed to require of them an adherence to the changing forms and ceremonies of Episcopacy. Yet notwithstanding the well known sentiments of the Massachusetts Bay colonists, and their avowed objects in emigrating, Robertson accounts for the silence of the charter on ecclesiastical subjects, by the supposition that "the king seems not to have foreseen, nor to have suspected the secret intentions of those who projected the measure." But this supposed ignorance of the king appears quite incredible. Bancroft (i. 343.) appears to give a partial sanction to the opinion expressed by Robertson, in saying that "the patentees could not foresee, nor the English government anticipate, how wide a departure from English usages would grow out of the emigration of Puritans to America." And farther: "The charter, according to the strict rules of legal interpretation, was far from conceding to the patentees the freedom of religious worship." Bancroft says nothing of the probable design and understanding of the king and his councillors in this matter. Grahame (b. ii.) says, "By the Puritans, and the Puritan writers of that age, it was sincerely believed, and confidently maintained, that the intendment of the charter was to bestow on the colonists unrestricted liberty to regulate their ecclesiastical constitution by the dictates of their own judgments and consciences," and that the king was fully aware that it was the object of the colonists to establish an ecclesiastical constitution similar to that established at Plymouth.

tives of the crown. [1]Two years later, when a complaint was preferred against the colony by a Roman Catholic, who had been banished from it, the king took occasion to disprove the reports that he "had no good opinion of that plantation," and to assure the inhabitants that he would maintain their privileges, and supply whatever else might contribute to their comfort and prosperity.*

1. Friendly conduct of the king.

37. [2]The transfer, to which we have alluded, did not of itself confer any new franchises on the colonists, unless they were already members of the Company; yet it was, in reality, the establishment of an independent provincial government, to be administered, indeed, in accordance with the laws of England, but while so administered, not subject to any interference from the king. [3]In 1630, the corporation, in which still remained all the powers of government, enlarged its numbers by the admission into its body of more than one hundred persons, many of them members of no church; but in the following year it was agreed and ordained 'that, for the time to come, no man should be admitted to the freedom of this body politic, who was not a member of some church within the limits of the colony.' [4]Under this limitation, the full rights of citizenship were gradually extended beyond the limits of the original corporation, so as to embrace all church-members in good standing; but at a later period this law was amended so as to include among the freemen those inhabitants also who should procure a certificate from some minister of the established church that they were persons of orthodox principles, and of honest life and conversation.

2. Nature and effects of the transfer which has been alluded to.

3. Enlargement of the corporation, and regulations adopted by it.

4. Gradual extension of the rights of citizenship.

38. [5]Such is a brief history of the early relations that existed between Charles the First and the Massachusetts Bay colonists; showing how the civil and religious liberties of these people were tolerated and encouraged by the unaccountable liberality of a despotic monarch, who showed himself, in his own kingdom, most bitterly hostile to the religious views, political principles, and general character of the Puritans. We close our remarks on this subject by quoting the following from Grahame.

5. The result thus far.

39. [6]"The colonists themselves, notwithstanding all the facilities which the king presented to them, and the unwonted liberality and consideration with which he showed himself willing to grace their departure from Britain, were so fully aware of his rooted enmity to their principles, and so little able to reconcile his present demeanor with his favorite policy, that they openly declared they had been conducted by Providence to a land of rest, through ways which they were contented to admire without comprehending; and that they could ascribe the blessings they obtained to nothing else than the special interposition of that Being who orders all the steps of his people, and holds the hearts of kings, as of all men, in his hands. It is indeed a strange coincidence, that this arbitrary prince, at the very time when he was oppressing the royalists in Virginia, should have been cherishing the principles of liberty among the Puritans in New England."

6. Remarks o Grahame on this subject.

40. [7]But notwithstanding the favor with which the English government appears to have regarded the designs of the Puritans in removing to America, no sooner were they firmly established there than a jealousy of their success was observable in the counsels of archbishop Laud and the high-church party; and the king began to waver between his original wish to remove the seeds of discontent far from him, and his apprehensions of the dangerous and increas-

7. Jealousy against the Puritans and wavering purposes of the king.

* Grahame, Book II, chap. ii. Neal.

ANALYSIS.

1. *America, how regarded by different parties.*

ing influence which the Puritan colonies already began to exert in the affairs of England. [1]America began to be regarded by the English patriots as the asylum of liberty; the home of the oppressed; and as opening a ready escape from the civil and ecclesiastical rigors of English tyranny: while the clamors of the malignant represented it as a nursery of religious heresies, and of republican dogmas utterly subversive of the principles of royalty.

2. *Representations of the emissaries of Laud.*

41. [2]The emissaries of Laud, sent to spy out the practices of the Puritans, informed him how widely their proceedings were at variance with the laws of England; that marriages were celebrated by the civil magistrate instead of the parish priest; that a new system of church discipline had been established; and, moreover, that the colonists aimed at sovereignty; and "that it was accounted treason in their general court to speak of appeals to the king."

3. *Emigration to America.*

[3]"Owing to the persecutions in England, and the favorable reports of the prosperity of Massachusetts, emigration had increased so rapidly as to become a subject of serious consideration in the king's council."

4. *Attempts to prevent emigration, arbitrary commission granted to archbishop Laud, &c.*

42. [4]So early as 1633 the king issued a proclamation reprobating the designs that prompted the emigration of the Puritans. In 1634 several ships bound for New England were detained in the Thames by order of the council; and during the same year an arbitrary commission was granted to archbishop Laud and others, authorizing them to make laws for the American plantations, to regulate the church, and to examine all existing colonial patents and charters, 'and if they found that any had been unduly obtained, or that the liberties they conferred were hurtful to the royal prerogative, to cause them to be revoked.'

5. *Objects of the commission defeated: intentions of the colonists, &c.*

[5]Owing, however, to the fluctuating motives and policy of the king, and the critical state of affairs in England, the purposes of this commission were not fully carried out: the colonists expressed their intention 'to defend their lawful possessions, if they were able; if not, to avoid, and protract,'—and emigration continued to increase their numbers and influence.

6. *Accessions to the colony in 1635.*

43. [6]In 1635 a fleet of twenty vessels conveyed three thousand new settlers to the colony, among whom were Hugh Peters, afterwards the celebrated chaplain and counsellor of Oliver Cromwell, and Sir Henry Vane the younger, who was elected governor of the colony, and who afterwards became one of the prominent leaders of the Independent party in parliament, during the civil war between that body and the king.

7. *Ordinance of 1638.*

[7]In 1638 an ordinance of council was issued for the detention of another large fleet about to sail for Massachusetts, and it has been asserted and generally believed that among those thus prevented from emigrating were the distinguished Puritan leaders, Hazlerig, Hampden, Pym, and Oliver Cromwell.

8. *Demand for the return of the Massachusetts charter.*

44. [8]About the same time a requisition was made to the general court of Massachusetts for the return of the charter of the colony, that it might abide the result of the judicial proceedings already commenced in England for its subversion.

9. *Opposed by the colonists.*

[9]The colonists, however, in cautious but energetic language, urged their rights against such a proceeding, and, deprecating the king's displeasure, returned for answer an humble petition that they might be heard before they were condemned.

10. *The king obliged to suspend his arbitrary measures against the colonies.*

[10]Happily for their liberties, before their petition could find its way to the throne, the monarch was himself involved in difficulties in his own dominions, which rendered it prudent for him to suspend his arbitrary measures against the colonies. He was never allowed an opportunity to resume them

CHARLES I. 1625—1649.

45. Although settlements were commenced in Maine, New Hampshire, Connecticut, and Rhode Island during this reign, they were considered rather as branches of the more prominent colony of Massachusetts Bay, and had not yet acquired sufficient importance to attract the royal notice. [2]In 1644 Rhode Island and Providence obtained from the parliament, through the efforts of Roger Williams, a charter of incorporation "with full power and authority to govern themselves." [3]The Plymouth colony remained without a charter, and unmolested, in the quiet enjoyment of its civil and religious privileges. For more than eighteen years this little colony was a strict democracy. All the male inhabitants were convened to frame the laws, and often to decide both on executive and judicial questions. The governor was elected annually by general suffrage, and the powers that he exercised were derived directly from the people. The inconveniences arising from the purely democratic form led to the adoption of the representative system in 1639.

1. Other settlements in New England.

2. Rhode Island and Providence.

3. The Plymouth colony.

4. Its democratic character.

46. [5]We now turn to Maryland, the only additional English colony established during the reign of Charles the First, to whose history we have not alluded in this Appendix. [6]The charter granted to Lord Baltimore, the general tenor of which has already been described, contained a more distinct recognition of the rights of the colonists than any instrument which had hitherto passed the royal seal. The merit of its liberal provisions is attributable to the provident foresight and generosity of Lord Baltimore himself, who penned the instrument, and whose great favor and influence with the king obtained from him concessions, which would never have been yielded to the claims of justice alone. The charter of Maryland was sought for and obtained from nobler and holier purposes than the grantor could appreciate.

5. Maryland.

6. General character of the Maryland charter.

47. [7]Unlike the charters of New England and Virginia, that of Maryland acknowledged the emigrant settlers themselves as freemen, and conceded to them rights, which, in other instances, had been restricted to privileged companies, or left to their discretionary extension. [8]The laws of Maryland were to be established with the advice and approbation of a majority of the freemen; neither were their enactments, nor the appointments of the proprietary, subject to any required concurrence of the king: the colony received a perpetual exemption from royal taxation; and, while Christianity was declared to be the law of the land, no preference was given to any religious sect or party.

7. Rights of the settlers.

8. The laws of Maryland: Exemption from taxation: religious toleration, &c.

48. [9]Maryland was settled by Catholics, who, like the Puritans, sought a refuge in the wilds of America from the persecutions to which they were subjected in England; and they are entitled to the praise of having founded the first American colony in which religious toleration was established by law. [10]"Calvert deserves to be ranked," says Bancroft, "among the most wise and benevolent lawgivers of all ages. He was the first in the history of the Christian world to seek for religious security and peace by the practice of justice, and not by the exercise of power; to plan the establishment of popular institutions with the enjoyment of liberty of conscience; to advance the career of civilization by recognizing the rightful equality of all religious sects. The asylum of Papists was the spot, where, in a remote corner of the world, on the banks of rivers which, as yet, had hardly been explored, the mild forbearance of a proprietary adopted religious freedom as the basis of the state."

9. The praise that is due to the Catholics of Maryland.

10. Remarks of Bancroft.

ANALYSIS.

THE COMMONWEALTH. 1649—1660.

1. Proceedings of the house of commons after the death of the king.

2. Character of religious parties.

3. A majority of the people attached to Presbyterianism.

4. Principles which actuated the opposing divisions.

5. Presbyterians; and religious uniformity.

6. The Independents.

7. Their general principles.

8. They demand and concede toleation.

9. The character given them by Hume.

10. Political differences between the Independents and the Presbyterians.

11. The wishes of the Presbyterians.

49 [1]A few days after the death of Charles, the house of commons, declaring that the house of lords was useless and dangerous, abolished that branch of parliament. At the same time it was voted that the office of king was unnecessary, burdensome, and dangerous to the liberty and safety of the people; and an act was accordingly passed, declaring monarchy to be abolished. The commons then took into their hands all the powers of government, and the former title of the "English Monarchy," gave place to that of the "COMMONWEALTH OF ENGLAND."

50. [2]A proper understanding of the characters of those who now ruled the destinies of England, requires some account of the character of the religious parties in the nation. [3]At the time of the commencement of the civil war, a great majority of the people of England, dissatisfied with the Episcopacy, were attached to a system of greater plainness and simplicity, which was denominated Presbyterianism. [4]Yet the principles which actuated these opposing divisions, were not, at first, so different as might be expected. "The Episcopal church," says Godwin, "had a hatred of sects; the Presbyterians did not come behind her in that particular. The Episcopal church was intolerant; so were the Presbyterians. Both of them regarded with horror the idea of a free press, and that every one should be permitted to publish and support by his writings whatever positions his caprice or his convictions might dictate to him." [5]The Presbyterians held the necessity of a system of presbyteries, which they regarded as of divine institution, and they labored as earnestly as the Episcopalians to establish a uniformity in religious faith and worship.

51. [6]United with the Presbyterians at first in their opposition to the abuses of the royal prerogative, were the *Independents*, the most radical of the Puritan reformers. [7]"Like the Presbyterians they cordially disapproved of the pomp and hierarchy of the Church of England. But they went farther. They equally disapproved of the synods, provincial and general, the classes and incorporations of Presbytery, a system scarcely less complicated, though infinitely less dazzling than that of diocesan Episcopacy. They held that a church was a body of Christians assembled in one place appropriated for their worship, and that every such body was complete in itself; that they had a right to draw up the rules by which they thought proper to be regulated, and that no man not a member of their assembly, and no body of men, was entitled to interfere with their proceedings. [8]Demanding toleration on these grounds, they felt that they were equally bound to concede and assert it for others; and they preferred to see a number of churches, with different sentiments and institutes, within the same political community, to the idea of remedying the evil and exterminating error by means of exclusive regulations, and the menaces and severity of punishment."* [9]Hume says of the Independents, "Of all Christian sects this was the first which, during its prosperity as well as its adversity, always adopted the principles of toleration." The Independents demanded no other liberty than they were willing to yield to all others.

52. [10]As the civil war between the king and parliament progressed, important political differences arose between the Independents and the Presbyterians, extending throughout parliament, the army, and the people. [11]The Presbyterians would have been satisfied with

* Godwin.

COMMONWEALTH. 1649—1660.

royalty under proper restrictions against its abuses; not desiring a complete victory, they feared that the king might be reduced too low; and being tired of the war, they were anxious for a compromise. [1]But the Independents, considered as a political party, having gradually enlisted under their banners the radicals of all the liberal sects, demanded, first, the abolition of royalty itself, as a concession to their political principles, and afterwards, the establishment of universal toleration in matters of religion. [2]It was this latter party, or this union of many parties, that finally gained the ascendency,[a] caused the death of the king, and subverted the monarchy.

1. *The demands of the Independents.*

2. *The successful party.*

a. Dec. 1648.

53. [3]On the overthrow of monarchy, therefore, the Independent party held the reins of government, supported by an army of fifty thousand men, under the controlling influence of Oliver Cromwell, one of the most extraordinary characters that England ever produced. [4]Cromwell was first sent[b] to Ireland to reduce the rebellion there; and being completely successful, he next marched into Scotland, where Charles, the son of the late king, had taken refuge. [5]Here Cromwell defeated the royalist covenanters in the battle of Dunbar,[c] and in the following year, pursuing the Scotch army into England, at the head of thirty thousand men he fell upon it at Worcester, and completely annihilated it in one desperate battle.[d] [6]The young prince Charles barely escaped with his life, and flying in disguise through the middle of England, after passing through many adventures, often exposed to the greatest perils, he succeeded, eventually, in reaching[e] France in safety.

3. *Situation of the Independents, on the overthrow of Monarchy.*

4. *Cromwell's successes.*

b. Aug. 1649.

5. *Battles of Dunbar and Worcester.*

c. Sept. 13, 1650.

d. Sept. 13, 1651.

6. *Escape of Prince Charles.*

e. Oct. 27.

54. [7]Some difficulties having occurred with the states of Holland, the English parliament, in order to punish their arrogance and promote British commerce, passed the celebrated Navigation Act, by which all colonial produce, whether of Asia, Africa, or America, was prohibited from being imported into England in any but British built ships, of which, too, the master and three-fourths of the mariners should be Englishmen. Even European produce and manufactures were prevented from being imported but in British vessels, unless they were the growth or fabric of the particular state which carried them. [8]These unjust regulations struck severely at the Dutch, a commercial people, who, producing few commodities of their own, had become the general carriers and factors of Europe. [9]War therefore followed: the glory of both nations was proudly sustained on the ocean; Blake, the English naval commander, and Von Tromp and De Ruyter, the Dutch admirals, acquired imperishable renown; but the commerce of the Dutch was destroyed, and the states were obliged to sue for peace.[b]

7. *The celebrated Navigation Act.*

8. *Exceedingly injurious to Holland.*

9. *War with Holland.*

f. Concluded, April, 1654.

55. [10]While this war was progressing, a controversy had arisen between Cromwell and the army on the one hand, and parliament on the other. The parliament, having conquered all its enemies in England, Scotland, and Ireland, and having no longer any need of the services of the army, and being jealous of its power, began to make preparations for its reduction, with the ostensible object of diminishing the expenses of the government. But by this time the parliament had lost the confidence of the people. [11]Since its first assembling, in November, 1640, it had been greatly reduced in numbers by successive desertions and proscriptions, but, still grasping after all the powers of government, it appeared determined to perpetuate its existence, and claimed that, if another parliament were called, the present members should retain their places without a reëlection. The contest between this parliament and the army became, therefore, one, not for individual rule only, but for exist-

10. *Controversy between Parliament and the army.*

11. *The grasping designs of Parliament, and nature of the contest.*

ANALYSIS.

1. *Controversy terminated by the decision of Cromwell.*

ence also. [1]This state of affairs was terminated by the decision of Cromwell, who could count on a faithful and well disciplined army to second his purposes. Entering the parliament house at the head of a body of soldiers on the 30th of April, 1653, he proclaimed the dissolution of parliament,* removed the members, seized the records, and commanded the doors to be locked.

2. *History of Barebone's Parliament.*

56. [2]Soon after this event, Cromwell summoned a parliament composed wholly of members of his own selection, called, indeed, representatives, but representing only Cromwell and his council of officers. The members of this parliament, commonly called *Barebone's*† parliament, from the name of one of its leading members, after thirteen months' sitting, were to name their successors, and these again were to decide upon the next representation, and so on for all future time. Such was the *republican* system which Cromwell designed for the nation. But this body,‡ too much under the influence of Cromwell to gain the public confidence, and too independent to subserve Cromwell's ambition, after continuing its session little more than six months, was disbanded[a] by its own act.

a. Dec. 1653.

3. *New scheme of government.*

[3]Four days later a new scheme of government, proposed in a military council, and sanctioned by the chief officers of state, was adopted, by which the supreme powers of government were vested in a lord proprietor, a council, and a parliament; and Cromwell was solemnly installed for life in the office of "Lord Protector of the Commonwealth of England."

1654.

4. *Parliament summoned.*

5. *Independence of parliament, and its dissolution.*

57. [4]A parliament was summoned to meet on the thirteenth of September of the following year, the anniversary of Cromwell's two great victories of Dunbar and Worcester. [5]The parliament thus assembled was a very fair representation of the people, but the great liberty with which it arraigned the authority of the Protector, and even his personal character and conduct, showed him that he had not gained the confidence of the nation; and an angry dissolution[b] increased the general discontent.

b. Feb. 1655.

6. *Conspiracy of the royalists, and war with Spain.*

c. March.

[6]Soon after, a conspiracy of the royalists broke out,[c] but was easily suppressed. During the same year, a war was commenced with Spain: the island of Jamaica was conquered, and has since remained in the hands of the English; and some naval victories were obtained.

---

* This parliament had been in existence more than twelve years, and was called the *Long Parliament.*

† This man's name was Praise-God Barebone. Hume says, "It was usual for the pretended saints at that time to change their names from Henry, Edward, William, &c., which they regarded as heathenish, into others more sanctified and godly: even the New Testament names, James, Andrew, John, Peter, were not held in such regard as those which were borrowed from the Old Testament—Hezekiah, Habakkuk, Joshua, Zerobabel. Sometimes a whole sentence was adopted as a name." Of this Hume gives the following instance. He says, "The brother of this Praise-God Barebone had for name, *If Christ had not died for you, you would have been damned Barebone.* But the people, tired of this long name, retained only the last words, and commonly gave him the appellation of *Damned Barebone.*" Brodie, referring to Hume's statement above, says, the individuals did not change their own names, but these names were given them by the parents at the time of christening. Hume gives the names of a jury summoned in the county of Essex, of which the first six are as follows *Accepted* Trevor; *Redeemed* Compton; *Faint-not* Hewitt; *Make-Peace* Heaton; *God Reward* Smart; *Stand Fast on High* Stringer. Cleaveland says that the muster master in one of Cromwell's regiments had no other list than the first chapter of Matthew. Godwin gives the following as the names of the newspapers published at this time in London. Perfect Diurnal; Moderate Intelligencer; Several Proceedings in Parliament; Faithful Post; Perfect Account; Several Proceedings in State Affairs; &c.

‡ What Hume says of the character and *acts* of this parliament, is declared by later writers, Brodie, Scobell, and others, to be almost *wholly* erroneous. The compilers of the "Variorum Edition of the History of England" say, "We have been compelled to abandon Hume's account during the latter part of Charles's reign, and during the predominance of the republican party." "His want of diligence in research is as notorious as his partial advocacy of the Stuarts."

COMMONWEALTH. 1649—1660.

58 [1]In his civil and domestic administration, which was conducted with ability, but without any regular plan, Cromwell displayed a general regard for justice and clemency; and irregularities were never sanctioned, unless the necessity of thus sustaining his usurped authority seemed to require it. [2]Such indeed were the order and tranquillity which he preserved—such his skilful management of persons and parties, and such, moreover, the change in the feelings of many of the Independents themselves, since the death of the late monarch, that in the parliament of 1656 a motion was made, and carried by a considerable majority, for investing the Protector with the dignity of king. [3]Although exceedingly desirous of accepting the proffered honor, yet he saw that the army, composed mostly of stern and inflexible republicans, could never be reconciled to a measure which implied an open contradiction of all their past professions, and an abandonment of their principles, and he was at last obliged to refuse that crown which had been solemnly proffered to him by the representatives of the nation.

1. *Civil and domestic administration of Cromwell.*

2. *The crown offered to him.*

1656. April.

3. *Cromwell constrained by policy to refuse it.*

59. [4]After this event, the situation of the domestic affairs of the country kept Cromwell in perpetual uneasiness and inquietude. The royalists renewed their conspiracies against him; a majority in parliament now opposed all his favorite measures; a mutiny of the army was apprehended; and even the daughters of the Protector became estranged from him. Overwhelmed with difficulties, possessing the confidence of no party, having lost all composure of mind, and in constant dread of assassination, his health gradually declined, and he expired on the 13th of September, 1658, the anniversary of his great victories, and a day which he had always considered the most fortunate for him.

4. *Troubles, difficulties, and death of Cromwell.*

1658.

60. [5]On the death of Cromwell, his eldest son, Richard, succeeded him in the protectorate, in accordance, as was supposed, with the dying wish of his father, and with the approbation of the council. But Richard, being of a quiet, unambitious temper, and alarmed at the dangers by which he was surrounded, soon signed[a] his own abdication, and retired into private life. [6]A state of anarchy followed, and contending factions, in the army and the parliament, for a while filled the country with bloody dissensions, when General Monk, who commanded the army in Scotland, marched into England and declared in favor of the restoration of royalty. This declaration, freeing the nation from the state of suspense in which it had long been held, was received with almost universal joy: the house of lords hastened to reinstate itself in its ancient authority; and on the 18th of May, 1660, Charles the Second, son of the late king, was proclaimed sovereign of England, by the united acclamations of the army, the people, and the two houses of parliament.

5. *Succession, and speedy abdication of Richard.*

a. May 2, 1659.

6. *State of anarchy,—followed by the restoration of royalty.*

1660.

61. [7]The relations that existed between England and her American colonies, during the period of the Commonwealth, were of but little importance, and we shall therefore give only a brief notice of them. [8]During the civil war which resulted in the subversion of monarchy, the Puritan colonies of New England, as might have been expected from their well known republican principles, were attached to the cause of parliament, but they generally maintained a strict neutrality towards the contending factions: and Massachusetts, in particular, rejecting the claims of supremacy advanced both by king and parliament, boasted herself a perfect republic. [9]Virginia adhered to royalty; Maryland was divided; and the restless Clayborne, espousing the party of the republicans, was able to promote a rebellion, and the government of the proprietary was for a while overthrown.

7. *Relations between England and America during the Commonwealth.*

8. *Course pursued by the New England colonies during the civil war.*

9. *Virginia and Maryland.*

ANALYSIS.

1. *Assertion of the supremacy of parliament over the colonies.*

2. *Virginia adheres to prince Charles.*

3. *Submits to parliament.*

4. *The charter of Massachusetts demanded, but the demand not enforced.*

5. *The most important measure of the Commonwealth, by which the interests of the colonies were effected.*

6. *Germs of the commercial policy of England.*

7. *The navigation act not enforced against the colonies during the Commonwealth.*

8. *Commercial system of Spain.*

CHARLES II. 1660—1685.

9. *Charles restored in 1660.*

10. *His personal appearance and character.*

11. *Regicides executed; the dead derided, &c.*

a. Sept. 1660

12 *Surprising change in the sentiments and feelings of the nation.*

62. [1]After the execution of Charles the First, parliament asserted its power over the colonies, and in 1650 issued an ordinance, aimed particularly at Virginia, prohibiting all commercial intercourse with those colonies that adhered to the royal cause. [2]Charles the Second, son of the late king, and heir to the throne, was then a fugitive in France, and was acknowledged by the Virginians as their lawful sovereign. [3]In 1651 parliament sent out a squadron under Sir George Ayscue to reduce the rebellious colonies to obedience. The English West India Islands were easily subdued, and Virginia submitted without open resistance. [4]The charter of Massachusetts was required to be given up, with the promise of a new one, to be granted in the name of parliament. But the general court of the colony remonstrated against the obnoxious mandate, and the requisition was not enforced.

63. [5]But the most important measure of the English government during this period, by which the prospective interests of the American colonies were put in serious jeopardy, by ensuring their entire dependence on the mother country, was the celebrated Navigation Act of 1651, to which we have already alluded, and which, though unjust towards other nations, is supposed by many to have laid the foundation of the commercial greatness of England. [6]The germs of this system of policy are found in English legislation so early as 1381, during the reign of Richard II, when it was enacted "that, to increase the navy of England, no goods or merchandize should be either exported or imported, but in ships belonging to the king's subjects." But this enactment, and subsequent ones of a similar nature, had fallen into disuse long before the time of the Commonwealth. [7]Even the navigation act of 1651, owing to the favoring influence of Cromwell, was not strictly enforced against the American colonies until after the restoration of royalty, but it was the commencement of an unjust system of commercial oppression, which finally drove the colonies to resistance, and terminated in their independence. [8]A somewhat similar system, but one far more oppressive, was maintained by Spain towards her American colonies during the whole period of their colonial existence.

64. [9]On the 8th of June, 1660, Charles the Second entered London, and by the general wish of the people, without bloodshed and without opposition, and without any express terms which might secure the nation against his abuse of their confidence, was restored to the throne of his ancestors. [10]As he possessed a handsome person, and was open and affable in his manners, and engaging in his conversation, the first impressions produced by him were favorable; but he was soon found to be excessively indolent, profligate, and worthless, and to entertain notions as arbitrary as those which had distinguished the reign of his father. [11]One of the first acts of his reign was the trial and execution[a] of a number of the regicides or judges who had condemned the late king to death. Even the dead were not spared, and the bodies of Cromwell, Bradshaw, and Ireton, were taken from their graves, and exposed on the gallows to the derision of the populace.

65. [12]A sudden and surprising change in the sentiments and feelings of the nation was now witnessed. The same people, who, so recently, jealous of everything that might be construed into an encroachment on their liberties, had declared violently against monarchy itself, and the forms and ceremonials of Episcopacy, now sunk into the slavish doctrines of passive obedience to royalty, and permitted the high church principles to be established, by submit-

ting to an act of uniformity, by which two thousand Presbyterian ministers were deprived of their livings. Those clergymen who should officiate without being properly qualified, were liable to fine and imprisonment.

1662.

66. [1]In 1664, some difficulties, originating in commercial jealousies, having occurred between England and the republican states of Holland, the king, desirous of provoking a war, sent out a squadron under Admiral Holmes, which seized the Dutch settlements on the coast of Africa, and the Cape Verde Islands. Another fleet, proceeding to America, demanded and obtained the surrender of the Dutch colony of New Netherlands. [2]The Dutch retaliated by recovering their African possessions, and equipped a fleet able to cope with that of England. [3]Charles then declared war[a] against the States, and parliament liberally voted supplies to carry it on with vigor. [4]But Denmark and France, jealous of the growing power of England, formed an alliance with the States and prevented their ruin. [5]After hostilities had continued two years, they were terminated by the treaty[b] of Breda, by which the acquisition of New Netherlands was confirmed to England, the chief advantage which she reaped from the war; while, on the other hand, Acadia or Nova Scotia, which had been conquered by Cromwell in 1654, was restored to the French.

1. *The Dutch settlements invaded by England.*

Sept. 1664. See p. 226.

2. *The Dutch retaliate.*

a. March 1665.

3. *War declared.*

4. *Denmark and France join the Dutch.*

5. *Treaty of Breda.*

b. July 20, 1667.

1672.

67. [6]In 1672 the French monarch, Louis XIV, persuaded Charles to unite with him in a war against the Dutch. The latter in the following year regained possession of their American colony of New Netherlands; but the combined armies of the two kingdoms soon reduced the republic to the brink of destruction. [7]In this extremity, William, prince of Orange, after uniting the discordant factions of his countrymen, and being promoted to the chief command of the forces of the republic, gained some successes over the French, and Charles was compelled by the discontents of his people and the parliament, who were opposed to the war, to conclude a separate peace[c] with Holland. All possessions were to be restored to the same conditions as before the war, and New Netherlands was, consequently, surrendered to England. [8]France continued the war against Holland, which country was now aided by Spain and Sweden; but the marriage, in 1677, of the prince of Orange with the lady Mary, daughter of the duke of York, the brother of Charles, induced England to espouse the cause of the States, which led to the treaty[d] of Nimeguen in 1678.

6. *France and England engaged in a war with Holland.*

7. *William of Orange:—peace with England.*

c. Feb. 19, 1674.

8. *France continues the war: marriage of William, 1677; and treaty of Nimeguen.*

d. Aug. 11, 1678.

68. [9]The domestic administration of the government of England during this reign, was neither honorable to the king nor the parliament. [10]Destitute of any settled religious principles, Charles was easily made the tool of others, and, during many years, received from the king of France a pension of 200,000 pounds per annum, for the purpose of establishing popery and despotic power in England. [11]The court of Charles was a school of vice, in which the restraints of decency were laughed to scorn; and at no other period of English history were the immoralities of licentiousness practiced with more ostentation, or with less disgrace.

9. *Domestic administration of Charles.*

10. *His venality.*

11. *Profligacy of his court.*

69. [12]The principles of religious toleration which had prevailed with the Independents during their supremacy under the Commonwealth, had now given place in parliament to the demand for a rigid uniformity to the church of England, and a violent prejudice against and persecution of the Catholics, who were repeatedly accused of plotting the sanguinary overthrow of the Protestant religion. [13]In 1680, the distinguishing epithets, *Whig* and *Tory*, were introduced, the former from Scotland, where it was applied to the

12. *Change of principles—religious uniformity, and persecution of the Catholics.*

13. *The epithets "Whig" and "Tory."*

ANALYSIS.

fanatical Scotch Conventiclers, and, generally, to the opponents of royalty: the latter, said to be an Irish word signifying a robber, was introduced from Ireland, where it was applied to the popish banditti of that country. The court party of England reproached their antagonists with an affinity to the Scotch Conventiclers; and the republican or country party retaliated by comparing the former to the Irish banditti; and thus these terms of reproach came into general use, and have remained to the present time the characteristic appellations of the two prominent parties in England.

1. Attempts to exclude the Duke of York from the throne.

70. [1]The whigs, having gained the ascendency, and being generally attached to Episcopacy, now the religion of the state, brought forward in parliament a bill to exclude from the throne the Duke of York, the king's brother, who had long been secretly attached to the Catholic religion, and had recently made a public avowal of it. This bill passed[a] the House of Commons by a large majority, but was defeated in the House of Lords. [2]In the following year it was revived again, and urged with such vehemence, that the king, through one of his ministers, proposed as a substitute, that the duke should only have the title of king, and be banished from the kingdom, while the Princess of Orange should administer the government as regent. [3]But this "expedient," being indignantly rejected, led to an abrupt dissolution of the parliament, which was the last that the present king assembled.

a. Nov. 1680.

2. Substitute proposed by the king.

3. Rejected, and parliament dissolved.

4. Arbitrary government of Charles.

71. [4]Charles was now enabled to extend his authority without any open resistance, although several conspiracies were charged upon the whigs, and some of the best men* in the nation were brought to the scaffold. From this time until his death the king continued to rule with almost absolute power, guided by the counsels of his brother, the duke of York, who had formerly been removed by parliament from the office of high admiral, but was now restored by Charles, and tacitly acknowledged as the successor to the throne. [5]Charles died in 1685, in the 55th year of his age, and the 25th of his reign; and the duke of York immediately acceded to the throne, with the title of James II.

5. Charles dies, and is succeeded by the Duke of York.

6. Commercial principles of the Commonwealth, continued after the restoration.

7. Parliament begins to claim jurisdiction over the colonies.

8. Effects of this change.

9. The Navigation Act.

72. [6]The same general principles of government which had guided the commercial policy of England during the Commonwealth, were revived at the time of the restoration, and their influence was extended anew to the American colonies. [7]The latter, no longer deemed, as at first, the mere property of the king, began now to be regarded as portions of the British empire, and subject to parliamentary legislation.† [8]Viewed in one light, as abridging the pretensions of the crown, and limiting arbitrary abuses, this change was favorable to the colonies; but, on the other hand, it subjected them, by statutory enactments, to the most arbitrary commercial restrictions which the selfish policy of parliament might think proper to impose upon them.

73. [9]Scarcely was Charles the Second seated upon the throne, when the *Navigation Act* was remodelled and perfected, so as to be-

* Lord Russel and Algernon Sidney. Hallam says Sidney had proposed "one only object for his political conduct,—the establishment of a republic in England."

† It was at first the maxim of the court that the king alone, and not the king and parliament, possessed jurisdiction over the colonies. It was in accordance with this view that when, in the reign of James the First, a bill for regulating the American fisheries was introduced into the house of commons, Sir George Calvert, then Secretary of State, conveyed to the house the following intimation from the king: "America is not annexed to the realm, nor within the jurisdiction of parliament: you have therefore no right to interfere." The charter of Pennsylvania was the first American charter that recognized any legislative authority of parliament over the colonies.

come the most important branch of the commercial code of England. [1]By this statute, the natural rights of foreign nations and of the American colonies were sacrificed to British interests. [2]Besides many other important provisions, it was enacted that no merchandize should be imported into any of the British settlements, or exported from them, but in vessels built in England or her plantations, and navigated by Englishmen: and that none but native or naturalized subjects should exercise the occupation of merchant or factor in any English settlement, under the penalty of forfeiture of goods and chattels.

CHARLES II. 1660—1685.

1. *Its general effects.*

2. *Some of its important provisions.*

74. [3]The most important articles of American industry, such as sugar, tobacco, cotton, wool, indigo, ginger, &c.,—articles which would not compete in the English market with English productions,—were prohibited from being exported to any other country than England; and such commodities only as the English merchant might not find convenient to buy, were allowed to be shipped to other countries of Europe. [4]As some compensation for these restrictions, a seeming monopoly of the tobacco trade with England was conferred on the American colonies, by prohibiting the cultivation of that plant in England, Ireland, Guernsey, or Jersey,—countries, however, not naturally adapted to its growth, and which could be little injured by the deprivation.

3. *Its restrictions upon American commerce and industry.*

4. *Certain privileges granted to the colonies.*

75. [5]In 1663 the provisions of the Navigation Acts were extended so as to prohibit the importation of European commodities into the colonies, except in English ships laden in England, by which the colonies were compelled to buy in England all foreign articles which they needed, and which they might often have obtained more advantageously from other countries. [6]At the same time the design of this commercial policy was declared to be to retain the colonies in firm dependence upon the mother country, and oblige them to contribute to her advantage by the employment of English shipping, and the conversion of England into a mart or emporium for all such commodities as the colonies might require to be supplied with. [7]Nine years later[a] the liberty of free trade between the colonies themselves was taken away, by the imposition of a tax on commodities exported from one colony to another.

5. *Extension of the navigation acts in 1663.*

6. *Avowed design of this commercial policy.*

7. *Farther encroachments on colonial trade.*

a. In 1672.

76. [8]As the provisions of these celebrated Navigation Acts, which have been so vaunted by English writers as to be called the *palladium*, or *tutelar deity of the commerce of England*, continued to be more or less strictly enforced against the American colonies until the acquisition of their independence, their importance requires a farther examination of their principles, and of the effects naturally resulting from them.

8. *Importance of understanding the principles and effects of the navigation acts.*

77. [9]These acts were evidently based upon the principle that the colonies were established at the cost of the mother country, and for her benefit; and on this ground the system of restricted trade was defended by Montesquieu, who says:* [10]"It has been established that the mother country alone shall trade in the colonies, and that from very good reasons, because the design of the settlements was the extension of commerce, and not the foundation of a city, or of a new empire." But this principle was not, clearly, applicable to the American colonies, for none of them were founded by the English government; and the design which led to their establishment was either private adventure on the part of companies or individuals, or a desire to escape from the oppressions of the mother country.

9. *These acts based upon what principles.*

10. *Defended by Montesquieu, but upon principles not applicable to the American colonies.*

* Spirit of Laws, Book XXI, ch. xvii.

ANALYSIS.

1. In what way the navigation acts were directly injurious to the colonies.

78. [1]The Navigation Acts, by making England the mart of the principal products of the rising states, and by prohibiting the latter from purchasing European commodities from any other source, shackled their commercial liberties, and conferred upon British merchants a monopoly of the most odious character—except only as it extended to all Englishmen, instead of being restricted to a single individual or company. The system was positively injurious to the colonies,* the natural and obvious effects of any monopoly of their trade; while England alone, or English merchants, reaped the exclusive benefit of it. [2]Deprived of the advantages of an open market, the colonists were obliged to sell for a little less than they otherwise might have done, and to buy at a somewhat dearer rate, and thus were wronged, both in their purchases and sales.

2. The latter injured both in their purchases and their sales.

3. This system not so beneficial to England as might at first be expected.

4. Practical operation of the system, tending to make the rich, richer, and the poor, poorer.

79. [3]But the practical operation of the system was not, in its results, so beneficial to the people of England, as might, at first, be expected; as what little they gained, if any at all, by the additional cheapness of colonial products, was overbalanced by the effects of the prohibitory restrictions to which this system gave rise. [4]As merchants were secured by law against foreign competition, the landholders demanded a similar protection to secure the profits of their capital; and English corn-laws began to be enacted, securing to the home producer a monopoly against the wheat and rye of other countries; and the English poor—the great mass of consumers and laborers, were made to suffer by the increasing price of bread. While the navigation acts, and the prohibitory system of which they formed a part, increased the naval power of England, extended her carrying trade, and multiplied the wealth of her merchants, manufacturers, landholders, and capitalists generally, they irrevocably fastened the chains of slavery upon a numerous pauper population.

5. Tendency of the commercial policy of England to alienate the affections of her colonies.

6. The English colonial system supported both by whigs and tories. Denounced by Adam Smith.

7. Nations slow to change those systems favored by the great and wealthy.

8. The colonial policy of England contrasted with that of other nations of Europe.

80. [5]But the commercial policy of England tended, farther, to alienate from her the affections of the colonies, who naturally aspired after independence, as the only means of developing their industry and resources, by securing those commercial rights of which England had deprived them. [6]It should not be concealed that the commercial part of the colonial system of England, received at all times the ardent support of the two prominent parties of the kingdom, both Whigs and Tories; nor yet, on the other hand, that the greatest British economist, Adam Smith, clearly demonstrated its impolicy, and declared it to be "a manifest violation of the rights of mankind." [7]Yet nations are ever slow to abandon any system of policy which the great and wealthy, the "aristocratic few," are interested in upholding. [8]Moreover, the commercial system which England adopted towards her colonies, was much less oppressive than the colonial policy of any other nation of Europe; and this circumstance, together with the general ignorance that then prevailed of the fundamental principles of political economy, constitutes its best apology. While France, Spain, Portugal, and Denmark, usually conferred the monopoly of the trade of their colonies upon exclusive companies, or restricted it to a particular port, that of the British settlements was open to the competition of all British traders, and admitted to all the harbors of England.

9. Indignation of the

81. [9]In none of the American colonies did this oppressive system excite greater indignation than in Virginia, where the loyalty of

* Say, Book I, ch. xix. Note.

the people anticipated a more generous requital of royal favor. Remonstrances were urged against the navigation acts as a grievance, and petitions were presented for relief, but to no effect; and when it was found that the provincial authorities connived with the colonists in evading the exactions of a system so destructive of their interests, and repugnant to their principles, a royal mandate was issued, reprimanding them for their conduct; and forts were erected at the mouths of the principal rivers, and vessels sent to cruise on the coast to aid in enforcing a strict execution of the law. [1]Still the Virginians contrived to carry on a clandestine trade with the Dutch at Manhattan, and retaliating, in some degree, the injustice with which they were treated, they enacted a law, that, in the payment of debts, Virginia claimants should be preferred to English creditors. [2]It was thus that the commercial regulations between England and her colonies, instead of being a bond of peace and harmony, based on mutual interests, became a source of rankling jealousies, and vindictive retaliations.

CHARLES II. 1660—1685.

Virginians, and ineffectual remonstrances against the navigation acts.

1. Evasions of the navigation laws, and retaliations upon England.

2. Jealous and vindictive feelings occasioned.

82. [3]Virginia had promptly acknowledged Charles II. as her lawful sovereign, on the first news of the restoration of royalty; but Massachusetts was more slow and guarded in returning to her allegiance. [4]The loose character, and supposed arbitrary notions of Charles, had filled the Puritan and republican colonists of Massachusetts with alarm, both for their religion and their liberties, and their anxiety was increased by a knowledge of the complaints against the colony, which the enemies of its policy or institutions had presented to the English government. [5]The general court of the colony immediately convened and voted addresses to the king and parliament, in which the colonists justified their whole conduct, and solicited protection for their civil and ecclesiastical institutions. [6]A gracious answer was returned by the king, but the apprehensions of the colonists were excited anew by intelligence that parliament designed to enforce the navigation acts against them, to cut off their commercial intercourse with Virginia and the West Indies, and that it was in contemplation to send out a governor-general, whose jurisdiction should extend over all the North American plantations.

3. Comparative loyalty of Virginia and Massachusetts.

4. Alarm and anxiety of the Puritans, occasioned by the king's profligate and arbitrary character.

5 Proceedings of the general court of Massachusetts.

Feb. 1661.

6 New apprehensions of the colonists.

83. [7]Although fearing the worst, and dreading a collision with the crown, the colonists were not dismayed, but boldly meeting the crisis which they apprehended, they proceeded to set forth, in a series of resolutions, a declaration of their rights, and the limits of their obedience. [8]They declared that their liberties, under God and their charter, were, to choose their own officers and regulate their duties; to exercise, without appeal, except against laws repugnant to those of England, all legislative, executive, and judicial power for the government of all persons within the limits of their territory; to defend themselves, by force of arms, if necessary, against every aggression; and to reject, as an infringement of the fundamental rights of the people, any imposition or tax injurious to the provincial community, and contrary to its just laws.

7. Their bold conduct.

8. Noble declaration of their rights.

84. [9]They avowed their allegiance; their duty to defend the king's person and dominions; to maintain good government, and to preserve their colony as a dependency of the English crown; but by denying the right of appeal to the king, and by declaring the navigation acts an infringement of their chartered rights, they contravened the most important prerogatives which the king and parliament claimed the right of exercising over them. [10]It was not until after all these proceedings, prescribing, as it were, the terms of voluntary allegiance, when more than a year had elapsed since

9. Contravention of important prerogatives claimed by king and parliament.

10. Tardy acknowledgment of Charles II.

ANALYSIS.

a. Aug. 17, 1661.

1. *Rhode Island pursues a different policy.*

2. *Her subserviency to the ruling powers.*

b. Oct. 1660.

3. *She obtains a new charter.*

c. July 18.

4. *Character of the charters of Rhode Island and Connecticut*

5. *Singular oversight of the crown lawyers of England.*

6. *Unyielding opposition of Massachusetts to the arbitrary exactions of the English government.*

7. *The demands made upon Massachusetts by Charles II.*

1662.

8. *Nature of the objections to these demands, and partial compliance with them.*

9. *Demands of Commissioners in 1664 answered by a petition to the king.*

the restoration, that Charles II. was formally acknowledged in Massachusetts by public proclamation.[a]

85. [1]Rhode Island appears to have exhibited a more time-serving policy, and less jealousy of her rights, or, perhaps, greater political prudence. [2]In 1644 she had applied for and obtained a charter from parliament, as the then ruling power in England, and had acknowledged the supremacy of parliament during the commonwealth; and now, with eager haste, and with much real or apparent satisfaction, she proclaimed[b] the restoration of monarchical government, expressing her faith that "the gracious hand of Providence would preserve her people in their just rights and privileges." [3]An agent was sent to England to solicit the royal favor, and a new charter was obtained, although, owing to boundary disputes with Connecticut, it did not pass the royal seal until the summer of 1663.[c]

86. [4]This charter granted and enjoined universal religious toleration; gave to the inhabitants the rights of self-government, and so respected their scruples as to omit the requirement from them of the usual oath of allegiance to the crown, but which was required of the people of Connecticut by the charter given them about the same time. The Connecticut charter, equally democratic with that of Rhode Island, farther differed from it by the omission of any express allusion to matters of religion. [5]While in both a conformity to the laws of England was required, as the tenure by which the privileges of the people were to be enjoyed, yet no method was provided for ascertaining or enforcing this observance; and the English monarch was thereby excluded from every constitutional means of interposition or control; an oversight of which the crown lawyers of England were afterwards sensible, but which they were then unable to remedy.

87. [6]From none other of the American colonies did the arbitrary exactions of the English government receive such constant and unyielding opposition as from Massachusetts; and it was doubtless for this reason that, of all the colonies, Massachusetts was ever made the most prominent object of royal vengeance. [7]Although Charles the Second had consented that Massachusetts should retain her charter, yet at the same time he demanded the most unlimited acknowledgment of the royal supremacy. He required that all the laws and ordinances of the colony passed during the period of the commonwealth should be declared invalid, and that such as were repugnant to the royal authority should be repealed; that the oath of allegiance should be taken by every person; that justice should be administered in the king's name; that the Episcopal worship should be tolerated; and that the elective franchise should be extended to all freeholders of competent estates, without reference to peculiarities of religious faith.

88. [8]The nature of these requisitions was not so objectionable as the principle of the right of royal interference, which their concession would seem to establish. The question of liberty which they involved was alone sufficient to awaken the active jealousy and opposition of the colonists, and they eventually complied with only one of the royal demands—that which directed judicial proceedings to be conducted in the king's name.

89. [9]When, in 1664, commissioners were sent out to regulate the affairs of New England, the people of Massachusetts disregarded their authority, and answered their demands by a petition to the king, expressing their willingness to testify their allegiance in any righteous way, but deprecating the discretionary authority and arbitrary measures of the commissioners, as tending to the utter

subversion of the liberties of the colonists. [1]They declared that if they were to be deprived of the institutions to which they were so much attached, and for which they had encountered so great difficulties and dangers, they would seek to re-establish them in some more distant territory; and they concluded their petition with the following earnest entreaty. [2]"Let our government live, our charter live, our magistrates live, our laws and liberties live, our religious enjoyments live: so shall we all yet have farther cause to say from our hearts, let the king live forever."

CHARLES II. 1660—1685.

1 *Plain declaration contained in the petition.*

2. *Conclusion of the petition.*

90. [3]It is interesting to observe how ingeniously, throughout this controversy, the people evaded, rather than opposed the demands of the commissioners. When at length the latter, provoked by these evasions, demanded from the general court of the colony an explicit answer to the question, if they acknowledged the authority of his majesty's commission? the court desired to be excused from giving any other answer than that they acknowledged the authority of his majesty's charter, with which they declared themselves much better acquainted. But when at length the commissioners attempted a practical assertion of their pretensions by authorizing appeals to themselves in civil suits that had already been decided by the provincial tribunals, the general court promptly interfered, and in the name of the king, and by the authority of their charter, arrested the proceedings.

3. *Character, continuance, and conclusion of the controversy with the commissioners.*

91. [4]The forwardness of Massachusetts in resisting the royal commissioners was severely reproved by the king, who took occasion at the same time to express his satisfaction of the conduct of all the other colonies. [5]A royal mandate was next issued, commanding the general court of Massachusetts to send deputies to England to answer the charges preferred against it. [6]But even this command was disobeyed, the court declaring, in reply to the requisition, that 'they had already furnished their views in writing, so that the ablest persons among them could not declare their case more fully.' [7]At the same time, however, the colonists made earnest protestations of their loyalty, and as a demonstration of their professions, they gratuitously furnished supplies for the English fleet in the West Indies, and purchased a ship load of masts which they sent to the king; a present then particularly valuable to him, and to which he condescended to give a gracious acceptance. [8]The Dutch war in which the king was involved at this time—the rising discontents of his own subjects—the dreadful affliction of the plague* and the great fire of London, caused him to suspend for a while the execution of his designs against the institutions of New England. [9]The king's council often discussed[a] the affairs of Massachusetts, and various propositions were made for menacing or conciliating the "stubborn people of that colony" into a more dutiful allegiance; but even at that early day there were not wanting those who enter-

4. *Massachusetts reproved for her conduct.*

April, 1666.

5. *Required to answer the charges against her.*

6. *Declines to obey the command.*

7. *Protestations and demonstrations of her loyalty.*

8. *Causes that compelled the king to suspend his designs against New England.*

a. 1671.

9 *Discussions in council, and fears of open revolt.*

* The plague occurred in the summer and autumn of 1665, and was confined to London. Hume makes no mention of it: Lingard gives a thrilling account of its horrors. The disease generally manifested itself by the usual febrile symptoms of shivering, nausea, headache, and delirium—then a sudden faintness—the victim became spotted on the breast, and within an hour life was extinct But few recovered from the disease, and death followed within two or three days from the first symptoms. During one week, in September, more than ten thousand died. The whole number of victims was more than one hundred thousand.

In September of the following year, 1666, occurred the great fire of London, by which thirteen thousand two hundred dwellings were consumed, and two hundred thousand people left destitute. Two-thirds of the metropolis were reduced to ashes. London became much more healthy after the fire, and the plague, which formerly broke out twice or thrice every century, and indeed was always lurking in some corner of the city, has scarcely ever appeared since that calamity.

ANALYSIS.

tained serious fears that the colony was on the very brink of renouncing any dependence upon the crown.

1. *King's designs against New England revived.*

1679.

1680.

92. [1]About the close of King Philip's War, the king's designs of subverting the liberties of New England were revived anew, by the opportunity which the controversy between Massachusetts, and Mason and Gorges, presented for the royal interference, when New Hampshire, contrary to her wishes, was made a distinct province, and compelled to receive a royal governor. [2]Massachusetts had neglected the Acts of Navigation—the merchants of England complained against her—she responded by declaring these Acts an invasion of the rights and liberties of the colonists, "*they not being represented in parliament*," and when finally the colony refused to send agents to England with full powers to settle disputes by making the required submissions, a writ of *quo warranto* was issued, and English judges decided[a] that Massachusetts had forfeited her charter. [3]Rhode Island and Connecticut had also evaded the Acts of Navigation, yet their conduct was suffered to pass without reprehension. It was probably thought that the issue of the contest with the more obnoxious province of Massachusetts would involve the fate of all the other New England settlements.

2. *Continuance of the controversy: charter of Massachusetts declared to be forfeited.*

a. June 28, 1684.

3. *Rhode Island and Connecticut treated with more lenity.*

93. [4]Throughout this controversy, the general court of Massachusetts, and the people in their assemblies, repeatedly declared they would never show themselves unworthy of liberty by making a voluntary surrender of it; asserting, "that it was better to die by other hands than their own."—The resolute, unbending virtue, with which Massachusetts defended the system of liberty which her early Puritan settlers had established, and guarded with such jealous care, deserves our warmest commendation. [5]The navigation acts were an indirect mode of taxing the commerce of the colonies for the benefit of England; and the opposition to them was based, mainly, on the illegality and injustice of taxation without representation—a principle on which the colonies afterwards declared and maintained their independence.

4. *Noble conduct of Massachusetts throughout this controversy.*

5. *Grounds of the opposition to the navigation acts.*

94. [6]The reign of Charles II. witnessed the subversion of the power of the Dutch in America, by the unprovoked and unjust conquest of New Netherlands. [7]The early records of the Dutch colonists furnish few important materials for history, and their later annals are little else than a chronicle of their contentions and struggles with the English, the Swedes, and the Indians. [8]During the administration of Peter Stuyvesant, the last of its Dutch governors, the colony attained some degree of prosperity, and at the time of the conquest the population of the metropolis appears to have numbered about 3000 souls, nearly a third of whom abandoned their homes, rather than become subjects of the British empire. [9]The venerable and worthy Stuyvesant remained, and in the following century his descendants, inheriting his worth and popularity, were frequently elected to the magistracy of the city.

6. *Subversion of the Dutch power in America.*

7. *Early records of the Dutch colonists.*

8. *Administration of Peter Stuyvesant.*

9. *His descendants.*

95. [10]The grant of New Netherlands to the duke of York, and the conquest which soon followed, placed, for the first time, the whole sea-coast of the thirteen original States under the dominion of the English crown. The dismemberment of New Netherlands followed, the territory of New Jersey was granted away, that of Delaware was soon after given to Penn, and the province of New York alone remained under the government of the royal proprietary. [11]Under his arbitrary rule, the people, during many years, enjoyed few political privileges, but they did not escape the influence of free principles which had grown up in the surrounding colonies, nor did they cease to protest against arbitrary taxation,

10. *Conquest and dismemberment of New Netherlands.*

11. *New Netherlands under the government of the Duke of York.*

and to demand a share of the legislative authority, by the establishment of a representative assembly, until, after having been treated as a conquered people for nearly twenty years, their efforts were finally crowned with success.[a] [1]It is a singular coincidence that New York obtained a free constitution at nearly the same time that the chartered rights of the New England colonies were subverted, during the last days of the reign of Charles the Second.

a 1683 See p 228.

1. *Singular coincidence.*

96. [2]The settlement of Pennsylvania is another important event in our history, which occurred during the reign of Charles II., and which requires a more extended account of the character of the early colonists, and the plan and principles of their government, than we have given in the narrative part of this work.

2. *Settlement of Pennsylvania.*

97. [3]The Quakers, or, as they style themselves, "Friends," were a Puritan sect which originated in England about the commencement of the domestic troubles and civil war which led to the subversion of royalty, and the establishment of the commonwealth or republic. [4]These were times of extraordinary civil, political, and religious convulsion, when so many enthusiastic and often extravagant sects arose to disturb the ecclesiastical arrangements which had previously been established.

3. *Rise of the Quakers.*

4. *Other enthusiastic sects.*

98. [5]Among these sects, as William Penn states, in his Brief Account of the Rise and Progress of the People called Quakers, was a party "called Seekers by some, and the Family of Love by others, who were accustomed to meet together, not formally to preach and pray at appointed times and places, but who waited together in silence, till something arose in any one of their minds that savored of a divine spring. [6]Among these, however, some there were who ran out in their own imaginations and brought forth a monstrous birth. These, from the extravagances of their discourses and practices, acquired the name of Ranters. They interpreted Christ's fulfilling the law for us, as a discharge from any obligation or duty the law required from us; inferring that it was now no sin to do that, which, before, it was a sin to commit; the slavish fear of the law being taken off, and all things that man did being good, if he did them with the mind and persuasion that it was so."

5. *William Penn's account of the early Quakers.*

6. *His account of those who were called Ranters.*

99. [7]It appears from this that the early "Ranters," who have brought upon the Quakers much of the odium that has attached to the sect, were regarded by Penn as an unworthy branch of the society to which he belonged. [8]The founder of the acknowledged Quakers, or Friends, was George Fox, a man of humble birth, who assumed the office of a preacher or instructor of others in 1646, in the 22d year of his age. [9]We will quote here from Godwin, author of an able history of the commonwealth of England, what appears to be an impartial account of some of the early tenets and practices of the sect and its founder.

7. *The Ranters, an unworthy branch of the Quakers.*

8 *George Fox the founder of the Quaker sect.*

9. *Godwin's English History.*

100. [10]"The tenets of the Quakers were of a peculiar sort; innocent in themselves; but, especially in their first announcement, and before they were known as the characteristics of a body of men of pure and irreproachable dispositions, calculated to give general offence. They refused to put off their hats, or to practice any of the established forms of courtesy, holding that the Christian religion required of its votaries that they should be no respecters of persons. They opposed war as unlawful, denied the payment of tithes, and disclaimed the sanction of an oath. They married in a form of their own, not submitting, in this article, to the laws of their country, and pronounced of baptism and the Lord's Supper, that they were of temporary obligation, and were now become obsolete.

10. *Tenets of the Quakers, as given by Godwin*

ANALYSIS. They wore a garb of peculiar plainness, and were the determined enemies of the institution of priesthood.

1. Character, and early preaching of Fox.

101. [1]"Fox himself was a man of a fervent mind, and, though little indebted to the arts of education, had a copious flow of words, and great energy in enforcing what he taught. His first discourses were addressed to a small number of persons, who were probably prepared to receive his instructions with deference. But, having passed through this ordeal, he, in the year 1647, declaimed before numerous meetings of religious persons, and people came from far and near to hear him. [2]Penn says, that the most awful, living, reverent frame of mind he ever saw in a human being, was that of Fox in prayer; and Fox, speaking of a prayer he poured forth in the year 1648, informs us, that to all the persons present the house seemed to be shaken, even as it happened to the apostles in their meetings immediately after the ascension of Christ.

2. Penn's account of him, &c.

3. Farther account of Fox, by Godwin.

102. [3]"The course he pursued was such as came to him by impulse at the moment, without premeditation; and he felt impelled to resort to courts of justice, crying for an impartial administration, and exhorting the judges to a conscientious discharge of their duty; to inns, urging the keepers to discountenance intemperance; and to wakes and fairs, declaiming against profligacy. He came into markets, and exhorted those who sold to deal justly; he testified against mountebanks; and, when the bell rang for church, he felt it striking on his heart, believing that it called men to market for that precious gospel, which was ordained to be dispensed without money and without price."

4. Early excesses of Fox.

103. [4]During the early period of his ministry, Fox committed many excesses against good order, by interrupting religious meetings, and denouncing a hireling ministry, for which he was many times beaten and imprisoned, all which he bore with patient and humble fortitude. At one time, when the officiating clergyman had finished preaching from the words, "Ho, every one that thirsteth, come buy without money," Fox was moved to cry against him, "Come down thou deceiver! Dost thou bid people come to the waters of life freely, and yet thou takest three hundred pounds a year of them?" At another time, as he relates of himself, he was moved to pull his shoes from off his feet, and traverse the city of Litchfield in every direction, crying in ecstacy as he went along, "Woe, woe, to the bloody city of Litchfield!"

5. He abandons his excesses.

6. For what distinguished.

104. [5]In the progress of his apostleship, Fox abandoned these excesses, and practiced that moderation which he afterwards enjoined upon others. [6]He was ever distinguished for the apparent sincerity with which he inculcated his doctrines, and, "wherever he came," says Godwin, "he converted the gaoler and many of his fellow prisoners, and, by the fervor of his discourses, and the irreproachableness of his manners, commanded general respect."

7. His interview with Cromwell.

[7]When brought before Cromwell, the Protector of the Commonwealth, he expatiated upon true religion with that zeal and unction, and a holy and disinterested zeal for its cause, with which he was so remarkably endowed; and the Protector, who had been accustomed deeply to interest himself in such discourses, was caught by his eloquence. He pressed his hand and said, "Come again to my house: if thou and I were together but one hour in every day, we should be nearer to each other," adding that "he wished Fox no more ill than he did to his own soul." [8]Penn closes his account of this eminent man with these words: "Many sons have done virtuously, but thou excellest them all."

8. The closing remark of Penn's account of him.

9. Persecution of the Quakers in England.

105. [9]Much of the persecution of the Quakers in England was

brought upon them by the extravagance and fanaticism of a few of their members, and not wholly or originally by the profession of their peculiar doctrinal tenets. [1]Some who distinguished themselves in the early history of Quakerism were doubtless insane, and should have been treated as such. Of these persons, one of the most extraordinary was John Robins, who appeared in the year 1650 [2]He declared himself, at one time, to be God Almighty; and at other times that he was Adam. Many miracles were attributed to him, and yet he was followed by those who were afterwards deemed reputable Quakers. [3]Of a like character were Reeve and Muggleton, who began to preach in 1652, and who professsed to be the two witnesses clothed in sackloth, spoken of in the book of Revelation, of whom it is said, 'if any man would hurt them, fire proceedeth out of their mouth and devoureth their enemies.'

1. Insanity of some who were called Quakers.

2. Account of John Robins.

3. Of Reeve and Muggleton.

106. [4]But perhaps the most distinguished among the fanatics of that day, who were charged with being Quakers, was James Naylor, a convert of George Fox, and long his fellow laborer and fellow sufferer, who first rendered himself notorious in the year 1656. He was at that time in Exeter gaol, where he was addressed by several deluded persons with extravagant and divine titles, as, the 'Everlasting Son, the Prince of Peace, the Fairest among Ten Thousand.' One Dorcas Erberry testified in court that she had been raised from the dead by him. Being released from confinement at Exeter, he made a grand entry into Bristol, where his attendants sang as he passed along, 'Holy, holy, holy, Lord God of Israel, Hosanna in the highest.'

4. Account of James Naylor.

107. [5]At Bristol he was committed to prison, when parliament gave him additional notoriety by the appointment of a committee to consider the information concerning his misdemeanors and blasphemies. His case was brought before the commons, who decided by a vote of 96 to 82 that he should suffer death. [6]Fox, in his Journal, alludes sorrowfully to Naylor's errors, whom he still terms a Quaker, but when he found that he would not heed his rebukes, he says, "The Lord moved me to slight him, and to set the power of God over him." [7]Fox relates many wild and absurd exhibitions* of the Quakers, and yet it is not easy to determine the views he entertained of them.† [8]William Penn, however, in the Preface which he wrote for the Journal of Fox, speaks of these persons as *ranters*, "who, for want of staying their minds in a humble dependence upon Him that opened their understandings to see great things in his law, ran out in their own imaginations, and mixing them with these divine openings, brought forth a monstrous birth, to the scandal of those that feared God." He farther adds, "they grew very troublesome to the better sort of people, and furnished the looser with an occasion to blaspheme."

5. Condemned to death

6. Fox's allusion to Naylor.

7. Quaker extravagances as viewed by Fox.

8. By William Penn.

108. [9]It is not surprising that such men should have brought reproach upon Quakerism, then illy defined, and scarcely reduced

9. Early reproach upon Quakerism, and odium against the sect.

* "Some," he says, "have been moved to go naked in the streets, and have declared amongst them that God would strip them of their hypocritical professions, and make them as bare and naked as they were. But instead of considering it, they have frequently whipped, or otherwise abused them."—Journal. If Fox did not approve such conduct, he certainly reprobated those who thought it worthy of punishment.

† The reason of which is that given by Grahame, who says, "His writings are so voluminous, and there is such a mixture of good and evil in them, that every reader finds it easy to justify his preconceived opinion, and to fortify it by appropriate quotations. His works are read by few, and wholly read by still fewer. Many form their opinions of him from the passages which are cited from his writings by his adversaries: and of the Quakers there are many who derive their opinions of him from the passages of a very different complexion, which are cited in the works of the modern writers of their own sect."

ANALYSIS.

to a system even in the minds of its most reputable professors; nor, when the first Quakers reached Massachusetts, in 1656, the year that the frenzy of Quakerism was at its height in England, is it surprising that they were viewed by the staid and sober Puritans as the precursors of that insane extravagance, the fame of which had preceded them, and the imputation of which attached to the whole sect. [1]When banished, they returned again to the colony, and, by their excesses, excited public odium against them, and courted the utmost penalties that the laws could inflict. [2]Unfortunately for the reputation of New England, the first Quakers who appeared there were not only the most enthusiastic, but the most extravagant also of the sect to which they professed to belong; and their excesses were regarded as the legitimate fruits of Quaker principles. They would have been termed Ranters by Penn;—they called themselves Quakers.

1. Conduct of the Quakers in Massachusetts.

2. Character of the first Quakers who appeared there.

3. Bancroft's account of them.

109. [3]Bancroft says of them,* "They cried out from the windows at the magistrates and ministers that passed by, and mocked the civil and religious institutions of the country. They riotously interrupted public worship; and women, forgetting the decorum of their sex, and claiming a divine origin for their absurd caprices, smeared their faces, and even went naked through the streets."

4. Grahame's account.

[4]Grahame says,† "In public assemblies, and in crowded streets, it was the practice of some of the Quakers to denounce the most tremendous manifestations of divine wrath on the people, unless they forsook their carnal system."—"Others interrupted divine service in the churches by loudly protesting that these were not the sacrifices that God would accept; and one of them‡ illustrated this assurance by breaking two bottles in the face of the congregation, exclaiming, 'Thus will the Lord break you in pieces.'

5. Farther account of Quaker absurdities, extracted from Grahame.

110. [5]"One of the female preachers§ presented herself to a congregation with her face begrimed with coal dust, announcing it as a pictorial illustration of *the black pox*, which Heaven had commissioned her to predict as an approaching judgment on all carnal worshippers. Some of them in rueful attire perambulated the streets, proclaiming the immediate coming of an angel with a drawn sword to plead with the people. One woman,‖ in a state of nudity entered a church in the middle of divine service, and desired the people to take heed to her as a sign of the times, and an emblem of the unclothed state of their own souls; and her associates highly extolled her submission to the inward light that had revealed to her the duty of illustrating the spiritual nakedness of her neighbors, by the indecent exhibition of her own person. Another Quakeress¶ was arrested as she was making a similar display in the streets of Salem."

---

* Bancroft, i. 454. † Grahame, Book II, ch. 3.
‡ Thomas Newhouse, at Boston. § M. Brewster. ‖ Lydia Wardel, of Newbury.
¶ Deborah Wilson. See also Hutchinson's History of the Colony of Massachusetts Bay. Vol. i. p. 203, 204.

Besse, a Quaker writer, in his "Collection of the sufferings of the People called Quakers," relates that Lydia Wardel, in New England, a convert to Quakerism, found herself moved to appear in a public assembly "in a very unusual manner, and such as was exceding hard and self-denying to her natural disposition, she being a woman of exemplary modesty in all her behavior. The duty and concern she lay under was that of going into their church at Newbury naked, as a token of that miserable condition which she esteemed them in." "But they, instead of religiously reflecting on their own condition, which she came in that manner to represent to them, fell into a rage, and presently laid hands on her," &c.

George Bishop, another Quaker writer, thus relates the case of Deborah Wilson. "She was a modest woman, of a retired life and sober conversation; and bearing a great burden for the hardness and cruelty of the people, she went through the town of Salem naked, as a sign; which she having in part performed, was laid hold on, and bound over to appear at the next

111. [1]These facts are mentioned as matters of history—as an apology for the punishment which these violations of decency and good order deserved; not as a justification for that which the bare profession of Quakerism received. And although it was the *profession* of Quakerism that Massachusetts punished, first, with banishment, and on return, with death, yet we should do injustice to her past history did we not mention the circumstances by which *she* justified laws that are now regarded with universal reprobation. [2]Nor must we impute the excesses of the Quaker fanatics to Quakerism itself, as expounded by its most able teachers, Barclay* and Penn, and such as we are bound to receive it.—We now turn to a more pleasant theme, and shall proceed to give a farther sketch of the principles of Quakerism, in addition to what we have extracted from Godwin, and shall then briefly trace its history as connected with American colonization.

1. *Object of mentioning these facts.*

2. *Quakerism not responsible for the excesses of Quaker fanatics.*

112. [3]It is a distinctive principle of Quaker doctrine, that the Holy Spirit acts directly, at all times, and by known impulse, upon the spirit of man; that its influence is to be obtained, not by prayer, but by turning the intellectual eye inward upon the soul; and that its power consists, not merely in opening the minds of men to a clearer perception of right and duty, but that it communicates knowledge of itself, and is therefore, in its freedom, the highest revelation of divine truth. [4]The Quaker therefore believes that there is the secret voice of God within him, an "Inner Light of the Soul," which, when guided by reason, cherished without passion or prejudice, and obeyed without fear, is the best guide to divine knowledge and virtue. It is not man that speaks, but God in man.

3. *Distinctive principle of Quakerism.*

4. *The "Inner Light of the Soul."*

113. [5]Or, to give a farther, and perhaps more intelligible explanation, the fundamental principle of Quakerism appears to be an untrammelled *conscience*, the incorruptible seed of which is supposed to exist in every bosom. And yet it is not the same as individual judgment, for that may be perverted by error. Nor is it known by enlightened reason even, (which, however, it never contradicts), but by its own evidence and clearness; commending itself, by its own verity, to every one, who, without arrogance and pride, will humbly receive it. [6]The Quaker investigates moral truth by communing with his own soul. "Some," says Penn, "seek truth in books, some in learned men, but what we seek for is in ourselves." "Man is an epitome of the world, and to be learned in it, we have only to read ourselves well."

5. *Farther explanation of this principle*

6. *Quaker mode of investigating moral truths.*

114. [7]The Quaker believes the Bible to be a revelation of God's will, not because human learning and tradition declare it to be so,

7. *The Quaker view of the Bible.*

---

court of Salem, where the wicked rulers sentenced her to be whipt." Grahame says, "The writings of Besse, Bishop, and some others, who were foolish enough to defend the extravagance that they had too much sense to commit, were the expiring sighs of Quaker nonsense and frenzy." This same George Bishop thus remonstrated against the enforcement of the statute, in England, against the Quakers: "To the King and both Houses of Parliament—*Thus saith the Lord*, Meddle not with my people because of their conscience to me, and banish them not out of the nation because of their conscience; for if you do, I will send my plague among you, and you shall know that I am the Lord. Written in obedience to the Lord, by his servant, G. Bishop."—(Gough and Sewell.) Very different was the remonstrance which William Penn addressed, on the same subject, to the king of Poland, in whose dominions a severe persecution was instituted against the Quakers. "Give us poor Christians," says he, "leave to expostulate with thee. Suppose we are tares, as true wheat hath always been called, yet pluck us not up for Christ's sake, who saith, Let the tares and the wheat grow up together until the harvest, that is, until the end of the world. Let God have his due, as well as Cæsar. The judgment of conscience belongeth unto him, and mistakes about religion are known to him alone."—Clarkson's Life of Penn.

* Robert Barclay, author of the "Apology for the Quakers," and of a treatise on the "Anarchy of the Ranters."

ANALYSIS.

but because the spirit within him, the Inner Light, testifies its accordance with the immutable principles of all truth. "The Scriptures," says Barclay, "are a declaration of the fountain, and not the fountain itself." [1]The creed of the Quaker avoids hypothesis and speculation; rejecting the subtleties with which philosophers and divines have alternately established and overthrown the doctrines of liberty and necessity, foreknowledge and fate. Unity and Trinity, it rests for its exposition and authority on the Inner Light, which, as a fountain of immortal truths, is believed to well forth the waters of eternal light and life in all the purity, clearness, and simplicity of nature.

1. The creed of Quakerism.

115. [2]Quakerism insists that it maintains Christianity in its primitive simplicity, free from the intolerance of bigotry or the follies of skepticism; it claims emancipation from the terrors of superstition; it rejects witchcraft as a delusion, and denies the original existence of evil spirits, as inconsistent with the harmony of creation.

2. Some of the claims, and denials, of Quakerism.

116. [3]The Quaker rejects appeals to fear as an unworthy incitement to devotion, and as tending to obscure the divine ray by the clouds of human passion. The Inner Light should be allowed to burn freely. [4]The Quaker maintains that disinterested virtue is itself happiness, and that purity of life is demanded, not from any arbitrary, unmeaning requisition, but because it is essential to the welfare of society. Thus the system of Quakerism is decidedly utilitarian in its results; and utilitarianism, although not the motive to duty, is a proper criterion of right conduct where the promptings of the Inner Light are not clear. The tendency of the system is, therefore, the greatest good of the greatest number—a principle which, it is maintained, will ever be found in beautiful harmony with the requirements of revelation.

3. Appeals to fear.

4. Utilitarianism of Quakerism.

117. [5]Quakerism claims the highest intellectual freedom as man's birthright, and as the only means of individual and social progress it pleads for universal toleration in matters of religion, because of the sacredness of conscience, the medium through which God speaks to man: it resists tyranny by reason and by appeals to conscience, and not by violence; it protests against war, and, confident in the power of justice to defend itself, renounces the use of the sword without absolutely denying to others the right of defence; and adopting the language of the divine author of Christianity, it proclaims "Peace on earth, and good will to man."

5. Intellectual freedom: religious toleration: resistance to tyranny: aversion to war.

118. [6]The Quaker rejects forms and ceremonies, even baptism and the sacrament, and instead of common prayer, which he seldom engages in, holds secret communion with the spirit of Light within him; he keeps the Sabbath as a day of rest, for the ease of creation, and not as a holy day dedicated to religious worship; he wears no outward emblems of sorrow for the dead; he regards a judicial oath as a superstitious vanity; he cultivates plainness and simplicity of speech, disregarding the artifices of rhetoric; he enjoins modesty of apparel, without prescribing an unchanging fashion; he distrusts the fine arts—music and painting—without positively rejecting their culture, jealous of their liability to perversion by their interference with the nobler pursuits of science, and their tendency to lead the mind astray from the more worthy contemplation of Deity and his works.

6. Forms and ceremonies: prayer: the Sabbath, &c. General plainness and simplicity of Quaker habits.

119. [7]Viewed in a political light, Quakerism is a perfect democracy. Regarding all men as alike by creation, the Quaker wears his hat in the presence of kings, as a symbol of equality—a constant proclamation that he is the equal of the proudest peer in Christen-

7. Political view of Quakerism.

dom. He refuses homage to his fellow man, and bows to God alone. He scorns any nobility but that of mind and virtue.

CHARLES II. 1660—1685.

120. [1]From the foregoing it will be seen that there is much philosophy about Quakerism—much that is calculated to elicit deep thought and reflection, however much the extravagances of some of its early members might induce a contrary supposition. [2]But what religious sect can be named, *some* of whose members have not incurred a like reproach? Many who delight to dwell on the excesses of the early Quakers, wonld do well to remember the irregularities of some of the fanatical members of other Puritan sects.

1. Philosophy of Quakerism.

2. Other sects.

121. [3]We have thus given what we believe to be a faithful, though brief exposition of Quakerism, as gathered from the professions of its own teachers. As the opposers of the sect have ever ascribed to its members, as a body, an undoubted honesty of faith and purpose, we may therefore safely assert that, if we have not erred in our analysis, such *were* the true principles and character of the *founders of Pennsylvania.*

3. The result at which we have arrived.

122. [4]The first notice of Quaker colonization in America occurs in the history of New Jersey, when, in 1676, William Penn, Gawen Laurie, and Nicholas Lucas, members of the society of Friends, became the assignees of Edward Byllinge for the western half of New Jersey. [5]The form of government established by them, under the title of "Concessions"—the first essay of Quaker legislation, guarantied that perfect civil and religious freedom which might have been expected from the liberality of Quaker principles; imitating and rivaling, in the simplicity, wisdom, and justice of its provisions, the free institutions of Rhode Island.

4. First notice of Quaker colonization.

5. The "Concessions"

123. [6]The civil polity of Rhode Island was based upon the principle that 'all the powers of government were in the hands of the people,' and 'that God alone should be respected as the ruler of conscience.' "The Concessions of West New Jersey," said Penn and his colleagues, "lay a foundation for after ages to understand their liberty as men and Christians, that they may not be brought in bondage but by their own consent, *for we put the power in the people.*" The clause in the Concessions, securing religious freedom, was prefaced by a general declaration, "That no men nor number of men upon earth have power to rule over men's consciences in religious matters." Roger Williams and William Penn are entitled to no small share in the honor of planting political and religious liberty in America. [7]As peculiarities in the Quaker legislation of West Jersey, imprisonment for debt was disallowed; the helpless orphan was to be educated by the state; the rights of the Red men were to be protected; courts were to be managed without attorneys or counsellors; and all persons in the province were declared to be forever free from oppression and slavery.

6. The governments of Rhode Island and West New Jersey; Roger Williams and William Penn.

7. Peculiarities of Quaker legislation.

124. [8]A few years later William Penn became the proprietary of Pennsylvania, a charter for the settling and governing of which he obtained from Charles the Second in 1681. This instrument was originally sketched by Penn himself, from the liberal charter of Maryland, but was afterwards revised by chief-justice North, who inserted clauses more effectually guarding the sovereignty of the king, securing free worship for the English church, and reserving to the British parliament the power of taxing the inhabitants of the colony.

8. The Pennsylvania charter:—sketched by Penn—revised by chief justice North.

125. [9]These particular stipulations, by which this charter was distinguished from all preceding ones, were doubtless the offspring of the disputes in which the crown had long been involved with the colony of Massachusetts. Effectually to establish and guard British

9 Particular stipulations of the Pennsylvania charter.

ANALYSIS.

ascendency in the new colony, the Navigation Acts were to be enforced by the stipulated penalty of the forfeiture of the charter and that laws might not grow up inconsistent with royal and parliamentary prerogatives, all provincial enactments were to be submitted to the crown for approbation or dissent—a requisition, however, which was never complied with; and an agent of the colony was required to reside in London, who was to be held responsible for the acts of his colonial constituents. With these exceptions, if they may be deemed such, the charter of Pennsylvania was as liberal to the colonists as the most favorable that had yet been granted.

1. Clause respecting taxation.

126. [1]That important clause, reserving to the English parliament the right of taxation, has given rise to much discussion, and has been viewed in very different lights by English and American statesmen. [2]The Pennsylvanians appear ever to have regarded the exercise of this power on the part of parliament as based upon the condition of an admission of colonial representatives in the councils of the English nation. [3]Nearly a century later, these views were expressed by Dr. Franklin in his celebrated examination at the bar of the British House of Commons. Being asked how Pennsylvanians could reconcile a pretence to be exempted from parliamentary taxation, with that clause in their charter to which we have alluded, he replied, "They understand it thus:—By the same charter, and otherwise, they are entitled to all the privileges and liberties of Englishmen. They find in the great charters, and in the petition and declaration of rights, that one of the privileges of English subjects is, that they are not taxed but by their common consent; they have, therefore, relied upon it *from the first settlement of the province*, that the parliament never would, nor could, by color of that clause in the charter, tax them till it had qualified itself to exercise such right by admitting representatives from the people to be taxed."

2. How viewed by the Pennsylvanians.

3. Dr. Franklin's views on this subject, as expressed in his examination at the bar of the British house of Commons.

4. Pennsylvania mainly indebted to Penn for its liberties.

127. [4]The liberties enjoyed by Pennsylvania, however, were owing less to the stipulations of the royal charter, than to the benevolent concessions of William Penn, the proprietary. In undertaking the work of framing a political constitution for the people of his province he says, "For the matters of liberty and privilege, I *purpose that which is extraordinary*, and leave myself and successor no power of doing mischief, that the will of one man may not hinder the good of a whole country."

5. General character of the laws of Pennsylvania.

6. Laws for repressing pauperism, &c.

128. [5]The general character of the laws submitted by Penn to the colonists for their free adoption or rejection, has already been explained, and only one or two of their provisions require our farther notice. [6]For the purpose of repressing pauperism and dependence, and promoting habits of industry, it was enacted "that *all* children within the province, of the age of twelve years, should be taught some useful trade or skill, to the end that none might be idle, but that the poor might work to live, and the rich, if they became poor, might not want." [7]A law more enduring, and wider in the operation of its beneficial influences, was the adoption of a new principle in the penal code, by the conversion of prisons into workhouses, whereby prisoners might be reclaimed, by discipline and instruction, to habits of industry and morality.

7. New principle in the penal code.

8. Remarks on this subject.

129. [8]Thus was it reserved for Quaker legislation to institute one of the most noble reforms in prison discipline—to temper justice with mercy in the treatment of criminals—and to declare that the penalty of violated law performed but half its duty, if, in ordaining the punishment, it did not provide also for the reformation of the offender. [9]The Pennsylvania code recognized but two capital crimes, treason and murder, while at the same time, in Eng-

9. Capital offences.

land, nearly two hundred offences were declared, by various acts of parliament, to be worthy of the punishment of death. CHARLES II. 1660—1685.

130 Having passed over that important period in our history which is connected with the reign of Charles the Second, we now proceed to give a sketch of such cotemporary events in English and American history as occurred during the reign of the succeeding English sovereign.

JAMES II. 1685—1688.

131. [1]We have stated that, on the death of Charles the Second, in 1685, the duke of York, the king's eldest brother, acceded to the throne with the title of James II. His reign was short and inglorious, distinguished by nothing but a series of absurd efforts to render himself independent of parliament, and to establish Popery in England, although he at first made the strongest professions of his resolution to maintain the established government both in church and state.

1. General character of his reign.

132. [2]He began his reign by levying taxes without the authority of parliament: in violation of the laws, and in contempt of the national feeling, he went openly to mass: he established a court of ecclesiastical commission with unlimited powers over the Episcopal church: he suspended the penal laws, by which a conformity had been required to the established religion: and although any communication with the Pope had been declared treason, yet he sent an embassy to Rome, and in return received a nuncio from his Holiness, and with much ceremony gave him a public and solemn reception at Windsor. In this open manner the king shocked the principles and prejudices of his Protestant subjects, foolishly confident of his ability to reestablish the Catholic religion, although the Roman Catholics in England did not comprise at this time the one-hundredth part of the nation.

2. Unpopular measures at the beginning of his reign.

133. [3]An important event of this reign was the rebellion of the duke of Monmouth, a natural son of Charles II. who hoped, through the growing discontents of the people at the tyranny of James, to gain possession of the throne; but after some partial successes he was defeated, made prisoner, and beheaded. [4]After the rebellion had been suppressed, many of the unfortunate prisoners were hung by the king's officers, without any form of trial; and when, after some interval, the inhuman Jeffries was sent to preside in the courts before which the prisoners were arraigned, the rigors of law were made to equal, if not to exceed, the ravages of military tyranny. [5]The juries were so awed by the menaces of the judge that they gave their verdict as he dictated, with precipitation: neither age, sex, nor station, was spared: the innocent were often involved with the guilty; and the king himself applauded the conduct of Jeffries, whom he afterwards rewarded for his services with a peerage, and vested with the dignity of chancellor.

3. Rebellion of the duke of Monmouth.

4. Severities.

5. Inhumanity of Jeffries. Rewarded by the king.

134. [6]As the king evinced, in all his measures, a settled purpose of invading every branch of the constitution, many of the nobility and great men of the kingdom, foreseeing no peaceable redress of their grievances, finally sent an invitation to William, prince of Orange, the stadtholder* of the United Dutch Provinces, who had married the king's eldest daughter, and requested him to come over and aid them by his arms, in the recovery of their laws and liberties. [7]About the middle of November, 1688, William landed[a] in England at the head of an army of fourteen thousand men, and

6. William of Orange invited to England.

7. Invasion of England by William, and flight of James.

a. Nov. 15, new style.

* From *stadt*, a city, and *houder*, holder: the chief magistrate of the United Provinces of Holland.

ANALYSIS.

was every where received with universal satisfaction. James was abandoned by the army and the people, and even by his own children, and in a moment of despair he formed the resolution of leaving the kingdom, and soon after found the means of escaping privately to France.

Feb. 1689.

1. *New settlement of the Crown.*

135. [1]In a convention parliament, which met soon after the flight of James, it was declared that the king's withdrawal was an abdication of the government, and that the throne was thereby vacant; and after a variety of propositions a bill was passed, settling the crown on William and Mary—the prince and princess of Orange; the succession to the princess Anne, the next eldest daughter of the late king, and to her posterity after that of the princess of Orange. [2]To this settlement of the crown a declaration of rights was annexed, by which the subjects of controversy that had existed for many years, and particularly during the last four reigns, between the king and the people, were finally determined; and the powers of the royal prerogative were more narrowly circumscribed, and more exactly defined than in any former period of English history.

2. *Declaration of Rights.*

3. *Relations of James with the American colonies.*

136. [3]In his relations with the American colonies, James pursued the policy which had been begun by his brother. [4]The charter of Massachusetts having been declared to be forfeited, James at first appointed a temporary executive government, consisting of a president and council, whose powers were to extend over Maine, New Hampshire, Massachusetts and New Plymouth; and soon after he established a complete tyranny in New England, by combining the whole legislative and executive authority in the persons of a governor and council to be named by himself. Sir Edmund Andros rceived the office of governor-general.

4. *Establishment of a new government in New England.*

5. *His proceedings against Rhode Island and Connecticut.*

137. [5]It being the purpose of James to consolidate all the British colonies under one government, measures were immediately taken for subverting the charters of Rhode Island and Connecticut, both of which colonies were now charged with making laws repugnant to those of England. Writs of *quo warranto* were issued against them, but the eagerness of the king to accomplish his object with rapidity, caused him to neglect to prosecute the writs to a judicial issue, and the charters were thereby saved from a legal extinction, but Andros arbitrarily dissolved the institutions of these colonies, and by the authority of the royal prerogative alone assumed to himself the exercise of supreme power.

6. *Character of the government of Andros.*

138. [6]The government of Andros, in obedience to the instructions of his royal master, was exceedingly arbitrary and oppressive, and he often took occasion to remark 'that the colonists would find themselves greatly mistaken if they supposed that the privileges of Englishmen followed them to the ends of the earth; and that the only difference between their condition and that of slaves, was, that they were neither bought nor sold.'

7. *Proceedings of James against other colonies, arrested by the English Revolution.*

8. *Insurrection in New England.*

139. [7]In 1688 New York and New Jersey submitted to the jurisdiction of Andros. A writ of *quo warranto* was issued against the charter of Maryland also, and that of Pennsylvania would doubtless have shared the same fate had not the Revolution in England arrested the tyranny of the monarch. [8]When some vague intelligence of this event reached New England, the smothered rage of the people broke forth, and a sudden insurrection over threw the government of Andros—sent him prisoner to England—and restored the ancient forms of the charter governments.

9. *Revolution of 1688; changes effected by it.*

140. [9]The important events in England, of which the new settlement of the crown and the declaration of rights are the closing scenes, are usually designated as the English Revolution, or, the

Glorious Revolution of 1688. This Revolution gave to England a liberal theory of government, based on the avowed principle that the public good is the great end for which positive laws and governments are instituted. The doctrine of passive obedience to the crown, which the princes of the house of Stuart had ever labored to inculcate—which the crown lawyers and churchmen had so long supported, henceforth became so obnoxious to the altered feeling and sentiments of the people, that succeeding sovereigns 'scarcely ventured to hear of their hereditary right, and dreaded the cup of flattery that was drugged with poison.'* This was the great change which the Revolution effected—the *crown* became the creature of the *law*;—and it was henceforth conceded that the rights of the monarch emanated from the parliament *and the people.*

WILLIAM AND MARY 1688—1702.

141. [1]This Revolution forms an important era in American, as well as in English history—intimately connected as the rights and liberties of the colonies then were with the forms and principles of government that prevailed in the mother country. [2]From this time, until we approach the period of the American Revolution, the relations between England and her colonies present great uniformity of character, and are marked by no great excesses of royal usurpation, or of popular jealousy and excitement. Hence that portion of our colonial history which dates subsequent to the English Revolution, embracing more than half of our colonial annals; has but a slight connection with the political history of England. [3]The several important wars, however, in which England was engaged during this latter period, extended to America; and an explanation of their causes and results will show a connection between European and American history, that will serve to give more enlarged and accurate views of the later than an exclusive attention to our own annals would furnish.

1. *This revolution an important era in American as well as in English history.*

2. *Subsequent relations between England and the colonies.*

3. *Subsequent wars in which England was engaged.*

142. [4]Moreover, these wars, in connection with the growing importance of colonial commerce, exerted a powerful influence in acquainting the several colonies with each other; thereby developing their mutual interests,—softening the asperities and abating the conflicting jealousies which separated them—and, finally, gathering them in the bonds of one political union. [5]The early portion of our colonial history presents a continuous conflict between liberal and arbitrary principles, and shows why we are a free people:—the latter portion, subsequent to the English Revolution, exhibits the causes which rendered us a united people.

4. *Influence of these wars upon the colonies.*

5. *Character of our early, and of our later colonial history.*

143. [6]In England the first part of the Revolution had been effected by a coalition of the two great parties in the nation, the Whigs and the Tories, but the final settlement of the crown upon William and Mary was almost entirely the work of the former party. In Scotland, there was, from the first, an entire separation of these opposing parties; and the Tories, finding themselves in the minority, silently withdrew from the national convention which made a tender of the royal dignity to the prince and princess of Orange.

6. *Political parties in England and Scotland at the time of the Revolution of 1688.*

144. [7]The Scottish adherents of James then resolved to appeal to arms in support of their late sovereign, but after they had gained the battle of Killicrankie,[a] their forces gradually dispersed, and the cause of James became hopeless in Scotland. [8]In the meantime, Louis XIV. of France openly espoused the cause of the fallen monarch, and furnished him with a fleet, with which, on the 12th of March, 1689, James landed in Ireland, where the whole power was

7. *Rebellion in Scotland.*

a. June. 1689.

8. *Cause of James espoused by the French monarch.*

* Hallam.

ANALYSIS.

in the hands of the Catholics, who remained faithful to him. [1]The course taken by the French monarch led to a declaration of war by England against France on the seventeenth of May of the same year.

1. *War declared against France.*

145. [2]A bloody war raged in Ireland until the autumn of 1691, when the complete reduction of the country was effected. About twelve thousand men, the adherents of James, passed over to France, and were taken into the pay of the French monarch. [3]The war with France continued, involving most of the powers of the continent, nearly all of which were united in a confederacy with William, for the purpose of putting a stop to the encroachments of Louis. A detailed history of England during this war would be little less than a history of all Europe. [4]On the 20th of September, 1697, the war, after a continuance of nine years, and after having entailed upon England a national debt of seventeen millions sterling, was terminated by the treaty of Ryswick. Louis XIV. was thereby compelled to give up nearly all his European conquests, and to acknowledge William as king of England.

2. *War in Ireland terminated.*

3. *War with France.*

4. *Terminated by the treaty of Ryswick.*

146. [5]James the Second died at Saint Germains, in France, in September, 1701, having for some time previous laid aside all thoughts of worldly grandeur, and devoted himself to the concerns of religion, according to the ceremonies of the Catholic church, and the rigid austerities of the Jesuits, of which society he was a member. [6]On his death his youthful son, James, then only eleven years of age, was immediately proclaimed,* by Louis, the lawful sovereign of England, which so exasperated the English nation that the whole kingdom joined in a cry for war with France. [7]But while preparations were making for the approaching conflict, William was suddenly removed by death,[a] in the fifty-second year of his age, and the fourteenth of his reign. His excellent consort died seven years before him.

5. *Death of James II.*

6. *His son proclaimed king.*

7. *Death of king William.*

a. March 19, new style, 1702.

147. [8]The war which distinguished the present reign, and which is known in American history as "King William's war," necessarily brought into collision the trans-Atlantic colonies of France and England. The prominent events of that war, so far as they affect America, will be found related in other portions[b] of this work. [9]By the treaty of Ryswick, the two contracting powers mutually agreed to restore to each other all American conquests that had been made during the war, but the boundary lines were reserved for the determination of commissioners to be subsequently appointed. France retained, with the exception of the eastern half of Newfoundland, the whole north-eastern coast and adjacent islands of North America beyond Maine, together with the Canadas and the valley of the Mississippi. Both powers claimed the country of the Five Nations, and while England extended her pretensions as far east as the Saint Croix, France claimed as far west as the Kennebec.

8. "*King William's war.*"

b. See p. 197.

9. *Terms of the treaty of Ryswick.*

148. [10]The governments of the colonies had been left in a very unsettled state at the close of the preceding reign, and they now underwent some alterations, which gave them, in general, greater permanency, but no addition of political privileges; for William was cautious not to surrender any accessions to the royal prerogative, which his predecessor had put into his hands, and which he could legally retain. [11]When the insurrection broke out in Massachusetts, on the reception of the news of the revolution in England, a division existed among the people, and they hesitated to resume the exercise of the powers of the former charter government. [12]The English Con

10. *General policy of William towards the colonies.*

11. *Massachusetts at the time of the Revolution of 1688.*

* It is asserted that Louis was influenced to take this course by the entreaties and blandishments of Madame de Maintenon.

vention parliament showed a disposition to favor the restoration of the Massachusetts charter, by voting its abolition a grievance; but the Tory party having soon after gained the ascendency in the House of Commons, no farther hope of relief was entertained from that quarter, and when the subject was presented to the king a new charter was offered, but the restoration of the old one was denied.

12. Proceedings in England relative to the Massachusetts charter.

149. [1]By the new charter Massachusetts became a royal government, the appointment of the governor and other executive officers being reserved to the crown. Judges, formerly elected by the people, were now to be appointed by the governor and council: the governor was empowered to convoke, adjourn, and dissolve the legislative asesmbly, or general court, at pleasure, and he possessed a negative on the acts of the legislature. To the king was reserved the power of cancelling any law within three years after its enactment. [2]In one respect the new charter exhibited greater liberality than the old one, which was silent on the subject of religious toleration. The new charter enfranchised all forms of Christianity, except, unhappily, the Roman Catholic. [3]In the establishment of the governor's council, Massachusetts was favored beyond any other of the royal governments. In other royal provinces that body was appointed by the king; in Massachusetts it was to be appointed, in the first instance, by the king, but ever after it was to be elected in joint ballot by the members of the council and the representatives of the people.

1. Terms of the new charter.

2. Religious toleration in Massachusetts.

3. Establishment of the governor's council.

150. [4]Connecticut and Rhode Island retained their charters, of which there had been no legal surrender; and king William, usually as cautious not to encroach upon legal rights, as he was to retain all the powers which the laws gave him, allowed the government of the people to remain unaltered. The king's governor of New York indeed claimed, as a part of the royal prerogative, the command of the militia of these colonies, but the people resisted, and the king, in council, afterwards decided[a] that the ordinary power of the militia in Connecticut and Rhode Island belonged to their respective governments. These two New England colonies, happy in the enjoyment of their early chartered rights, remained perfect democracies until the American Revolution.

4. Situation of Connecticut and Rhode Island during the reign of William.

a. April 29, 1694.

151. [5]New York remained a royal government after the accession of William, and, after the dissensions excited by the unfortunate Leisler had subsided, continued to receive its governors at the king's pleasure. [6]The surrender of the proprietary governments of the two divisions of New Jersey to Andros, in 1688, had legally merged the sovereignty over the whole in the crown. Yet after the English revolution, the proprietaries partially resumed their authority, but during the whole reign of William the entire province was in a very unsettled condition, the king leaving the settlement of the government to the courts of law and the parliament. In the first year of the reign of Anne the controversy was adjusted, when New Jersey was taken under the jurisdiction of the crown, and annexed to the government of New York.

5. Situation of New York.

6. Of New Jersey.

152. [7]After the revolution of 1688, William Penn, the proprietary of Pennsylvania, and then residing in England, was generally suspected of adhering to the interests of his former patron, James the Second, and a charge was preferred against him by a worthless individual, of being engaged in a treasonable conspiracy in favor of the exiled tyrant. In consequence of the suspicions against him, after having been several times arrested, questioned, and released, he for a while lived in concealment. Moreover, some disturbances had arisen in Pennsylvania, relative

7. Penn's suspected adherence to James the Second; the charges against him, deprived of his government, &c.

ANALYSIS.

to the administration of justice; and it was alleged that the laws had been administered there in the name of the banished king, long after the government of William and Mary had been acknowledged in the other colonies. These various causes induced the English crown to take into its own hands the government of Pennsylvania, by the appointment of Benjamin Fletcher as governor of the province. [1]But William Penn was not without friends among men of influence in England, and the king being at length undeceived in his suspicions against him, in 1694 a royal warrant was issued for reinstating him in his proprietary rights.

1. His government restored to him.

153. [2]The proprietary of Maryland was less fortunate. The revolution in England was a "Protestant" revolution; and when news of its success reached Maryland, the "Catholic" government there, which hesitated to proclaim the new sovereigns, was overthrown by a convention of associates who united "for the defence of the Protestant religion" and "the rights of William and Mary." [3]Lord Baltimore, then in England, after a delay of two years, was cited to answer, before the king's council, the charges preferred against him. Although convicted of no charge but his adherence to the Catholic religion, yet he was deprived, by act of council, of the political administration of the province, although he was suffered to retain the patrimonial interests secured by the charter.

2. Events in Maryland at the time of the revolution of 1688.

3. Proceedings against Lord Baltimore.

154. [4]Virginia experienced little change in her government and privileges by the English revolution. Her existing institutions were regarded as more permanently established by that event, and although the king continued to appoint her governors, yet her legislative assemblies, fully imbued with the spirit of liberty, were ever after able to restrain any serious encroachments on the rights of the people. [5]To the proprietaries of the Carolinas the English revolution gave increased security for their vested rights; but domestic discord long disturbed the quiet of these southern provinces.

4. Virginia, how affected by the revolution.

5. The Carolinas.

ANNE. 1702—1714.

155. [6]We now proceed to notice briefly the most important events of the reign of Queen Anne, who succeeded to the throne of England on the death of William in 1702. She was married to George, prince of Denmark, but the administration of the government was wholly in the hands of the queen. [7]She immediately adopted the military views of her predecessor, and formidable preparations were made for carrying on a vigorous war with France.

6. Queen Anne.

7. Military preparations.

156. [8]The war that commenced soon after the accession of Anne, originated in causes far deeper than the insult which the French monarch had thrown upon the English nation, by acknowledging the son of James as England's legitimate sovereign. While each of the great states of Europe was very naturally desirous of augmenting its own power and influence, each was then, as now, jealous of any growing superiority on the part of another which might tend to destroy that "balance of power," on which the general tranquillity and safety of Europe were thought to depend. [9]The conquests of Louis XIV. had previously jostled the scales of this "balance," and the hope of restoring their equilibrium, and thus saving his own country from ruin, had been the principal inducement that led William of Orange, one of the greatest men of the age, to aspire to the throne of England.

8. The great cause of European wars at this period.

9. Conquests of Louis XIV.

157. [10]Although the war which ended in the treaty of Ryswick had checked and reduced the power of Louis, it had not humbled his ambitious views, which soon involved England in another war, known in European history as the "War of the Spanish Succes-

10. His ambitious views after the treaty of Ryswick.

ANNE. 1702—1714.

sion." [1]The immediate events that led to that war were the following. On the death of Charles the Second of Spain, in the year 1700, the two claimants of the Spanish throne were the archduke Charles of Austria, and Philip of Anjou, nephew of the French monarch. Both these princes endeavored by their emissaries to obtain from Charles, on his sick bed, a declaration in favor of their respective pretensions; but although the Spanish monarch was strongly in favor of the claims of the archduke his kinsman, yet the gold and the promises of Louis prevailed with the Spanish grandees to induce their sovereign to assign by will, to the duke of Anjou, the undivided sovereignty of the Spanish dominions. The archduke resolved to support his claims by the sword, while the possible, and not improbable union of the crowns of France and Spain in the person of Philip,* after the death of Louis, was looked upon by England, Germany,† and Holland, as an event highly dangerous to the safety of those nations; and on the 15th of May, 1702, these three powers declared war against France, in support of the claims of the archduke to the Spanish succession.

1. The immediate events that led to the war of the Spanish Succession.

158. [2]The events of this war are too numerous to be related here in detail. The famous Austrian prince Eugene was associated with the English duke of Marlborough, the greatest general of the age, of whom it is said, that he never laid siege to a place which he did not take, nor fought a battle which he did not win. The splendid victories of Blenheim,‡ Ramilies,§ Oudenarde,‖ and Malplaquet,¶ humbled the power of Louis to such a degree that he was constrained to solicit peace.

2. Events of the war in Europe

159. [3]During the progress of the war the circumstances of Europe had been materially changed by the death of the emperor of Austria early in 1711, and the election of the archduke Charles in his room. [4]The union of the crowns of Spain and Austria in the person of Charles, henceforth began to be looked upon, by some of the smaller states of Europe, with as much dread as the threatened union of France and Spain in the person of Philip; and a general desire was felt for a treaty of pacification, which should secure the preservation of the balance of power from the dangers that were threatened by the success of either of the parties in the present contest.

3. Change in the circumstances of Europe.

4. Causes that induced a general desire for peace.

160. [5]A general peace was finally concluded by the treaty of Utrecht, on the 11th of April, 1713, by the terms of which the French king acknowledged the title of Anne to the throne of England, and agreed to cede Newfoundland and Hudson's Bay to that

5. General terms of the treaty of Utrecht. (Oo-trekt.)

---

* Before the end of the war of the Spanish Succession, death had removed the dauphin of France, heir to the throne, together with his son and grandson; so that there remained only a sickly infant in the cradle between Philip and the throne of France.

† The emperor of Austria is often mentioned in history as the emperor of Germany,—and while the terms *Germany* and *Austria* are sometimes used as synonymous, they are at other times used to denote distinct and separate countries. The reason is this: ancient Austria was one of the principal provinces of Germany, and as it was the particular province in which the emperor resided, and over which he exercised *all* the powers of sovereignty, while in the other provinces *some* of these powers were given away to numerous dukes, princes, &c., the province of Austria is usually mentioned in history as *the empire*, while the other German states are often spoken of as *Germany*. About one-third of Austria is now composed of German states; the other third comprises Hungary, Gallicia, Dalmatia, &c., and other small appendages.

‡ August 13th, 1704. By French writers called the battle of Hochstadt.

§ May 23d, 1706.

‖ July 11th, 1708.

¶ September 11th, 1709. In this battle, the French lost the honor of the day, but the allies lost the greatest number of men. Numerous other battles were fought with various success, but in these four actions the French lost, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, 80,000 men, and the allies nearly 40,000.

ANALYSIS.

kingdom; but the French were left in possession of the island of Cape Breton. The undefined Acadia or Nova Scotia was to be retained by England, according to its ancient boundaries; and France agreed "never to molest the Five Nations subject to the dominion of Great Britain." Philip retained the crown of Spain and the Spanish American possessions; but he relinquished all pretensions to the crown of France. To Charles, now emperor of Austria, was secured the possession of the kingdom of Naples, the duchy of Milan, and the Spanish Netherlands.

1. A long series of wars ended by it.

2. American events of the war of the Spanish Succession.

161. [1]Thus ended the war of the Spanish Succession, in a treaty which closed the long series of wars for the balance of power in Europe. [2]Those events of the war that occurred in America will be found related in the histories of the several American colonies, and need not be repeated here.

3. Article in the treaty dishonorable to England.

4. The Assiento Company.

5. Engagement of England to import slaves into America.

6. Principal stockholders under this engagement.

162. [3]An article in the treaty of Utrecht, highly important to America, and dishonorable to the commercial policy of England, was that by which England became the great monopolist of the African slave trade. [4]A French mercantile corporation, established in 1701, with the title of the Assiento Company, had contracted to supply the Spanish American settlements with slaves, in conformity with a treaty between France and Spain. [5]The privileges of this company were now transferred to English merchants, and England engaged to import into Spanish America, within thirty-three years, on certain specified terms, one hundred and forty-four thousand negroes, or, as they were called in trade language, *Indian pieces* [6]As great profits were anticipated from the trade, Philip V., of Spain, took one quarter of the capital stock of the Company, and Queen Anne reserved to herself another quarter; and thus his *most Catholic majesty*, and the Protestant *defender of the Faith*, laying aside their religious and political jealousies, became the greatest slave merchants in Christendom.

7. Effects of this monopoly upon England and Spain, and upon the relations of the latter power with the American colonies.

a. In 1739. See p. 263.

163. [7]The effects of this monopoly turned a portion of the trade of the American colonies into new channels, and by opening a partial and restricted commerce with the Spanish islands, gave occasion to disputes between England and Spain, and their respective colonies, which finally resulted in war.[a] From the period of the treaty of Utrecht, Spain became intimately involved, by her commercial relations, with the destinies of the British American colonies. Like France, she was henceforth their enemy while they, as dependencies of Great Britain, tended to strengthen the power of that kingdom; but, from the same motives of policy, like France she was the friend of their independence.

GEORGE I. 1714—1727.

b. Aug. 12, new style, 1714.

8. Discontents and rebellion in Scotland.

9. Landing of the Pretender in Scotland.

164. On the death of Anne, in 1714,[b] George I., elector of Hanover, the first prince of the house of Brunswick, ascended the throne of England. He was a German prince, totally ignorant of the language, constitution, and manners of the people over whom he was made the supreme ruler. [8]A coalition ministry of the whigs and tories had been in power during most of the two preceding reigns, but the tories were now excluded from all share of the royal favor. This policy gave umbrage to that party, and occasioned such discontents that a rebellion, headed by the earl of Mar, broke out in Scotland, the object of which was to secure the throne to the "Pretender," son of James II. [9]Early in January, 1716, the Pretender himself landed in Scotland, but, finding his cause there desperate, his forces having been overcome in battle, he soon returned to France. Many of the leaders among the rebels were captured and executed.

10. Foreign transactions of this reign.

165. [10]The foreign transactions of this reign present few events of

interest. A short war with Spain commenced in 1718, when Sir George Byng destroyed the Spanish fleet in the Mediterranean. The accession of George I. excited little interest in any of the North American colonies, except New England, where it was hailed with joy, as a triumph of whig principles

GEORGE I. 1714—1727.

166. On the death of George I. in 1727, his son, George II. then in the forty-fifth year of his age, ascended the throne. [1]Although a change of ministry had been anticipated, yet Sir Robert Walpole, a man of extraordinary talents, and a prominent leader of the whig party, continued at the head of the government for the space of nearly fifteen years, during most of which time England enjoyed tranquillity; but in 1739 peace was interrupted by a war[a] with Spain. [2]For many years the English merchants had complained that great injury had been done to their trade in the West Indies, by illegal seizures made by the Spanish *guarda-costas*,* under the pretext of the right of search for contraband goods; and that English mariners had been treated with great insolence and cruelty, in defiance of common justice and humanity.

GEORGE II. 1727—1760.

1. *Sir Robert Walpole.*

a. Declared by England Nov. 3rd.

2. *Complaints of England against Spain.*

167. [3]On the other hand, Spain complained that England encouraged a contraband traffic with the Spanish islands, and as she claimed the right of sovereignty over those western seas, she based on it the right of search, which England had confirmed to her by successive treaties. Spain protested, also, against the fortifications that had recently been erected in Georgia, which she claimed as a part of Florida; and she charged England with eluding the payment of a large sum of money due on the Assiento contract for the privilege of importing negroes into her islands. [4]The true cause of the war, however, was, that Spain would not allow English merchants to smuggle with impunity; and the real object sought by England was free trade with the Spanish colonies—the overthrow of a national monopoly like that which England claimed the right of establishing in reference to her own American possessions, but which she denied to other nations. [5]Thus England, blindly acting under the influence of her own immediate self interests, engaged in a war to advance those principles of commercial freedom which her own colonies afterwards took up arms against her to defend. [6]The Spanish and the English colonies did not fail to improve upon the lessons taught them in this war, until both had obtained emancipation from the commercial bondage imposed upon them by their mother countries.

3. *Complaints of Spain against England.*

4. *The true cause of the war; and object sought by England.*

5. *Policy which England promoted by this war.*

6. *Effects of the war upon the colonies.*

168. [7]Immediately after the declaration of war, the vessels of each nation, in the ports of the other, were confiscated; and powerful armaments were fitted out by England, to seize the American possessions of Spain, and by the latter power to defend them; while pirates from Biscay harassed the home trade of Britain. [8]Early in December 1739, the English Admiral Vernon took, plundered, and destroyed Portobello; but an expedition on a large scale against Carthagena, the strongest place in Spanish America, was a total failure. [9]Late in 1740, Commodore Anson was sent to attack the Spanish settlements on the Pacific, but his fleet met with numerous disasters by sea, and in June 1744 returned to England by way of China and the Cape of Good Hope, with only a single vessel, but richly laden with the spoils of the voyage. [10]The British American colonies freely contributed their quotas of men, and contributions of money, to aid England in carrying on

7. *Commencement of the war.*

8. *Attacks on Portobello and Carthagena.*

9. *Expedition of Commodore Anson.*

10. *Efforts of the colonies in this war.*

* The *guarda-costas* were revenue cutters,—vessels employed to keep the coast clear of smugglers.

ANALYSIS.

the war. But Oglethorpe in vain attempted the conquest of Florida; and in 1742 the Spaniards made an equally fruitless attempt against Georgia.

1. *General European war.*

169. [1]While the war with Spain continued with various success, a general European war broke out, presenting a scene of the greatest confusion, and eclipsing, by its importance, the petty conflicts in America. [2]Charles VI. emperor of Austria, the famous competitor of Philip for the throne of Spain, died in the autumn of 1740,[a] leaving his dominions to his eldest daughter, Maria Theresa, queen of Hungary. Her succession had been guarantied by all the powers of Europe, in a general treaty called the Pragmatic Sanction; yet on the death of the emperor, numerous competitors arose for different portions of his estates.

2. *Causes that led to this war.*

a. Oct.

3. *Claims of the parties interested.*

170. [3]The elector of Bavaria declared himself the proper heir to the kingdom of Bohemia: Augustus Second, king of Poland, claimed the whole Austrian succession, and the king of Spain did the same: the king of Sardinia made pretensions to the duchy of Milan, and Frederic II. of Prussia to the province of Silesia. [4]France, swayed by hereditary hatred of Austria, sought a dismemberment of that empire; while England offered her aid to the daughter of her ancient ally, to preserve the integrity of her dominions. [5]This is the war known in European history as the "War of the Austrian Succession;" while that portion of it which belongs to American history is usually denominated "King George's War."

4. *Positions occupied by France and England.*

5. *Terms by which this war is known in history.*

6. *Declarations of war between France and England.*

171. [6]Although a British army was sent to co-operate with the Austrians against the French and their confederates in 1742, and although king George himself, eager for military glory, joined his army in June 1743, yet England and France were not considered as being at war until 1744, when formal declarations of war were made by both nations. [7]In 1745 Prince Charles Edward, heir of the Stuart family, and Son of the Pretender, landed[b] in Scotland, and led an army against the royal forces; but after having gained a victory in the battle of Preston Pans,[c] he was defeated in the battle of Culloden,[d] and obliged to retire again to France. This was the last effort of the Stuart family to regain possession of the sceptre which they had lost.

7. *Last effort of the Stuart family to regain possession of the throne of England.*

b. Aug.

c. Oct. 2.

d. April 27, 1746.

8. *Events of the war in America.*

9. *Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle.*

e. Oct. 18.

10. *Terms of the treaty.*

172. [8]The events of the war in America, which have already been related, resulted in the capture of Louisburg by the colonies, and the acquisition of the island of Cape Breton. [9]The general treaty of Aix la Chapelle, in 1748,[e] closed for a brief period the war in Europe, and gave a short peace to the American colonies. [10]Neither France nor England gained anything by the war, as all conquests made by either were to be restored. Austria suffered the loss of several territories; the dominions of Prussia were enlarged; and Spain gained, for two branches of her royal family, a small accession of territory. The original source of the differences between England and Spain—the right of British subjects to navigate the Spanish seas without being subject to search, was not mentioned in the treaty; nor were the limits of the French and English possessions in America defined.

11. *Another general European war. By what terms it is known in history.*

173. [11]The boundary disputes which thence arose between France and England, soon led to another war between those countries, called in America the "French and Indian war," the principal details of which have already been given. Although hostilities began in America in 1754, yet no declaration of war was made by either party until 1756, when another general war commenced in

Europe, which is known in European history as the "Seven Years War," and in American history as the "French and Indian War." GEORGE II. 1727—1760.

174. [1]In this war the former relations of several of the European States were entirely changed. France was aided by Austria, Russia, and Sweden, and near the close of the contest by Spain also; while the power of England was strengthened by an alliance with Prussia. [2]The intricate details of the European part of this war would be foreign to our purpose, although far from being devoid of interest. It was during this period that the Great Frederic of Prussia acquired that military glory for which his name is so renowned; that Pitt, afterwards Lord Chatham, acquired his early political fame in the councils of England; and that the arms of Britain were triumphant in every quarter of the globe.

1. *Relations of the European powers at this time.*

2. *Details of the war—Frederic of Prussia, Lord Chatham &c.*

175. [3]The peace of Paris in 1763 terminated the war between all the parties then engaged in it—France, England, Spain and Portugal;—the other European powers having previously withdrawn from their respective alliances. George the Second died[a] before the close of the war, and was succeeded by his grandson George the Third, a prince of narrow capacity, and an obstinate temper, and subject to occasional fits of mental derangement, which, before the close of his long reign of sixty years, increased to confirmed insanity.

3. *Peace of 1763.*

a. Oct. 25, 1760.

GEORGE III. 1760.

176. [4]The remaining portion of our colonial history, in its relations with England subsequent to the treaty of Paris, and the more immediate "Causes which led to the American Revolution," will be detailed in a subsequent chapter. A few remarks on the social and domestic character and condition of the American colonists will close this Appendix.

4. *Remaining portion of our Colonial history.*

---

1. [5]A general knowledge of the gradual progress of agriculture, commerce, and manufactures, in the colonies, will be derived from a perusal of the preceding pages; and little farther desirable information on this subject could be imparted, except by statistical details. Extensive commercial and manufacturing operations require larger accumulations of capital than are often found in new countries, whose industry is usually employed chiefly in agricultural pursuits, which afford the readiest supply of the necessaries of life. Moreover, England ever regarded the establishment of manufactories in her colonies with extreme jealousy, and even prohibited such as would compete with her own, while she endeavored to engross, as far as possible, the carrying trade between America and Europe, in the hands of her own merchants.

5. *Agriculture, commerce, and manufactures, in the colonies.*

2. The state of education, manners, morals, and religion, occasional notices of which have heretofore been given, varied considerably in the different colonies. [7]On the subject of education, it may be remarked that the English government never gave any encouragement to the cultivation of science or literature in the American provinces, except in the solitary instance of a donation by William and Mary in aid of the college, which took its name from them, in Virginia. [8]The following were the views of Sir William Berkeley, a royal governor of Virginia, on the subject of popular education. In a letter descriptive of the state of that province, some years after the Restoration, he says, "I thank God there are no free schools nor printing; and I hope we shall not have these hundred years. For learning has brought heresy, and disobe-

6. *Education, manners, morals, and religion.*

7. *Science and literature in the colonies little encouraged by the British government.*

8. *Views of Sir William Berkeley on the subject of education.*

ANALYSIS.

dience, and sects into the world; and printing divulges them, and commits libels against the government. God keep us from both!"

1. Views of Sir William Keith.

3. [1]Sir William Keith, nominated by the king as governor of Pennsylvania in 1717, expressed the following views in relation to the encouragement of learning in the colonies. "As to the college erected in Virginia," he says, "and other designs of a like nature, which have been proposed for the encouragement of learning, it is only to be observed, in general, that although great advantages may accrue to the mother state both from the labor and luxury of its plantations, yet they will probably be mistaken who imagine that the advancement of literature and the improvement of arts and sciences in our American colonies can be of any service to the British state."

2. Printing presses forbidden in the colonies.

[2]Among the instructions sent by Charles II. to Lord Effingham, appointed governor of Virginia in 1683, the king expressly commanded him to suffer no person within the colony to make use of a printing press on any occasion or pretence whatever. And when Andros was appointed governor of New England, in 1686, he was instructed to allow no printing press to exist, yet this injunction appears not to have been carried into effect.

3. Education in New England.

4. [3]But notwithstanding the many embarrassing discouragements under which the cause of education labored, the colonies of New England, in particular, did not neglect its interests. In Massachusetts, every township containing fifty householders was early required, by law, to establish a public school; and in less than twenty years after the landing of the pilgrims, a college was founded at Cambridge; and such was the reputation of "Old Harvard" that it numbered among its graduates, not only persons from the other colonies, but, often, from England also.

4. Causes which contributed to the general dissemination of knowledge in New England.

5. [4]Among the causes which contributed to the general dissemination of knowledge in New England, a not unimportant one was the strict supervision which the laws required over the morals of the young. Not only vicious indulgences were guarded against, but frivolous amusements were reprobated, and, in their place, sobriety and industry were encouraged. The natural effect of such watchful guardianship was to cultivate a general taste for reading, especially among a people deeply absorbed with the theological controversies of the day.

5. Education, &c in Virginia, and the Southern Colonies.

6. [5]In Virginia and the southern colonies, where the inhabitants, guided in the selection of their dwelling places chiefly by considerations of agricultural convenience, dispersed themselves over the face of the country, often at considerable distances from each other, schools and churches were necessarily rare, and social intercourse but little known. The evils of the state of society thus produced still exist, to a considerable extent, in the southern portions of the Union.

6. Peculiarities of New England colonization.

[6]The colonization of New England was more favorable to the improvement of human character and manners, inasmuch as the Puritans planted themselves in small societies, that they might the better enjoy the ordinances of religion and the means of education, the two prominent objects for which they emigrated to America.

7. Education in the Carolinas and Georgia.

7. [7]The early planters in the Carolinas and Georgia paid very little attention to the interests of education, and for a long period the sons of the wealthy only, received any kind of school education, and for this they were sent to the colleges of Europe, or to the seminaries in the northern colonies.

8. Efforts in North Carolina to make provision for the support of public worship, and the education of youth.

[8]When in 1734, Governor Johnstone of North Carolina urged upon the assembly the importance of making some provision for the support of public worship and the education of youth, that body passed a law, inconsistent with religious liberty, for the support of a particular church, and

also imposed taxes for the purpose of founding schools. The former law retained its force, because it was supported by the spirit of party, but learning was neglected, because, (says the historian of the province,) she belonged to no party at all. [1]Of New York, now so distinguished for the number and excellence of its higher seminaries of learning, and the universal diffusion of the advantages of common school education, early writers say, that the great bulk of the people were strangers even to the first rudiments of science and cultivation, till the era of the American Revolution.

ANALYSIS.

1. *State of education in New York.*

8. [2]The first printing* in the colonies was executed at Boston in 1639, and the first newspaper† was published there in 1704. At this latter period Boston contained five printing offices and many booksellers' shops; while there was then but one bookseller's shop in New York, and not one in Maryland, Virginia, or the Carolinas. [3]It should be remarked, however, that so late as 1696 there were but eight newspapers published in England, although a greater number was published during the period of the Commonwealth.

2. *Printing, and newspapers, in the colonies.*

3. *Newspapers in England.*

9. [4]Grahame says, "The press in America was nowhere entirely free from legal restraint till about the year 1755. In 1723 James Franklin was prohibited by the governor and council of Massachusetts from publishing the *New England Courant* without previously submitting its contents to the revision of the secretary of the province; and in 1754, one Fowle was imprisoned by the House of Assembly of the same province, on *suspicion* of having printed a pamphlet containing reflections on some members of the government. After the year 1730, no officer appears to have been appointed in Massachusetts to exercise a particular control over the press; but prior to that period, the *imprimatur* of a licenser was inscribed on many of the New England publications." [5]In connection with this statement it should be remarked that, until near the close of the seventeenth century, liberty of the press was scarcely known in England. [6]Hume says that "it was not till 1694 that the restraints were taken off, to the great displeasure of the king and his ministers, who, seeing no where, in any government, during present or past ages, any example of such unlimited freedom, doubted much of its salutary effects; and probably thought, that no books or writings would ever so much improve the general understanding of men, as to render it safe to intrust them with an indulgence so easily abused."

4. *Restrictions upon the freedom of the press in the colonies.*

5. *Restrictions upon freedom of the press in England.*

6. *Hume's remarks.*

10. [7]From the statements that have been made, of the scanty advantages of common school education in all the provinces, except in New England—the late establishment of the newspaper press—and the almost utter destitution of higher seminaries of learning, we may form a very just estimate of the slow progress of science and literature in the American colonies. Still there were men of genius, and of science even, in America, prior to the Revolution;—men whose character and attainments reflected honor on the country to which they belonged, and who were ornaments of the age in which they lived.

7. *Slow progress of science and literature in the colonies.*

---

* The first article published was the Freeman's Oath, the second an almanac, and the third an edition of the Psalms. It was half a century later before any printing was executed in any other part of British America. In 1686 the first printing press was established in Pennsylvania, in 1693 in New York, in 1709 in Connecticut, in 1726 in Maryland, in 1729 in Virginia, and in 1730 in South Carolina.

† The Boston Weekly News-Letter. In 1719 the second newspaper was published in the same city, and in the same year the third was published in Philadelphia. In 1725 the first newspaper was published in New York, and in 1732 the first in Rhode Island.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Franklin, Godfrey, Bartram, Rittenhouse, Edwards, &c.*

11. [1]We look upon the scientific discoveries of Franklin,*—upon Godfrey's invention of the quadrant,†—upon the researches of Bartram, a Pennsylvanian Quaker and farmer, whom Linnæus called "the greatest natural botanist in the world,"‡—upon the mathematical and astronomical inventions of Rittenhouse§—and upon the metaphysical and theological writings of Edwards,‖ with the greater pride, when we consider that these eminent men owed their attainments to no fostering care which Britain ever showed for the cultivation of science and literature in her colonies,—that these men were their own instructors, and that their celebrity is wholly of American origin. That the colonies did not progress farther and accomplish *more* in the paths of learning during the period of their pupilage, is not so much America's fault, as Britain's shame.

2. *Abatement of the spirit of bigotry and intolerance in New England.*

12. [2]As we have had occasion frequently to allude to the spirit of bigotry and intolerance which distinguished the early inhabitants of New England, we may here appropriately notice the change in this respect, which all classes of people had undergone long before the period of the Revolution. Although much puritanical strictness and formality still pervaded New England manners, yet religious zeal had become so tempered with charity, that explosions of frenzy and folly, like those exhibited by the early Quakers, and which still continued to occur among some enthusiasts so late as the beginning of the eighteenth century, were no longer treated as offences against religion, but as violations of public order and decency, and were punished accordingly; justice being tempered by prudence and mercy.

3. *Pecuniary compensation for past injustice.*

13. [3]During the administration of Governor Belcher, the assembly of Massachusetts passed laws making pecuniary compensation to the descendants of those Quakers who had suffered capital punishment in the years 1658 and 1659, and also to the descendants of those who had been the victims of the persecutions for witchcraft in 1693. [4]In 1729 the legislature of Connecticut exempted Quakers and Baptists from ecclesiastical taxes; and two years later a similar law was enacted by the assembly of Massachusetts.

4. *Exemptions from ecclesiastical taxes.*

5. *Supposed gravity and coldness of New England manners.*

14. [5]The exceeding strictness of the puritanical laws of New England have led many to form an unworthy opinion of the gravity and coldness of New England manners. And yet we are told by numerous writers that the people were distinguished by innocent

---

* Benjamin Franklin, a well known American philosopher and statesman, born at Boston in Jan. 1706, discovered the identity of lightning and electricity, which led to the invention of the lightning rod.

† Thomas Godfrey, by trade a glazier in the city of Philadelphia, invented the reflecting quadrant, for taking the altitudes of the sun or stars,—an instrument of great use in astronomy and navigation. John Hadley, vice-president of the Royal Society of London, having seen this instrument, took a description of it, and afterwards, in May, 1731, obtained a patent for it.

‡ John Bartram, born in Chester Co., Pennsylvania, in 1701, was a self-taught genius of varied and extensive attainments. He was a member of several eminent foreign societies, and wrote several communications for the British Philosophical Transactions. At the age of seventy he travelled through East Florida, in order to explore its natural productions, and afterwards published a journal of his observations.

§ David Rittenhouse, an eminent American philosopher, was born at Germantown, Pennsylvania, of German parents, in 1732. He was a clock and mathematical instrument maker by trade. He invented the American orrery, and for some time thought himself the inventor of fluxions.

‖ Jonathan Edwards, born at Windsor, Connecticut, in 1703. While engaged in the pastoral charge of the Stockbridge Indians he composed his masterly disquisition on the "Freedom of the Will." From this scene of labor he was removed to the situation of Presidency of Princeton College in New Jersey, where he died in the year 1758. Jonathan Edwards, D.D., son of the preceding, was elected President of Union College in 1799.

hilarity and true politeness. Grahame asserts that "Lord Bellamont was agreeably surprised with the graceful and courteous demeanor of the gentlemen and clergy of Connecticut, and confessed that he found the aspect and address which he thought peculiar to nobility, in a land where this aristocratic distinction was unknown."

ANALYSIS.

15. [1]From the writings of one who resided in Boston in 1686, it appears that "the inhabitants of Massachusetts were at that time distinguished in a very high degree by their cheerful vivacity, their hospitality, and a courtesy, the more estimable, that it was indicative of real benevolence." [2]"Men," says Grahame, "devoted to the service of God, like the first generations of the inhabitants of New England, carried throughout their lives an elevated strain of sentiment and purpose, which must have communicated some portion of its own grace and dignity to their manners." [3]Of the state of manners and morals in Maryland, Virginia, and the southern colonies generally, we cannot give so gratifying an account. While the upper classes of inhabitants among the southern people were distinguished for a luxurious and expensive hospitality, they were too generally addicted to the vices of card-playing, gambling, and intemperance; while hunting and cock-fighting were favorite amusements of persons of all ranks.

1. New England courtesy and hospitality.

2. Just remarks of Grahame.

3. Manners and morals of the more Southern colonies.

16. [4]Grahame has the following not unphilosophical remarks on Virginia hospitality, which is so warmly extolled by Beverley, the early historian of the colony, and the praises of which have been so often reiterated by subsequent writers. "A life like that of the first Virginia colonists," says Grahame, "remote from crowded haunts, unoccupied by a variety of objects and purposes, and sequestered from the intelligence of passing events, is the life of those to whom the company of strangers is peculiarly acceptable. All the other circumstances of such a lot contribute to the promotion of hospitable habits. As, for many of their hours, the inhabitants can find no more interesting occupation, so, of much of their superfluous produce, they can find no more profitable use than the entertainment of visitors."

4. Grahame's remarks on the subject of Virginia hospitality.

17. [5]Hall, in his "Travels in Canada and the United States," says, "Mr. Jefferson told me, that, in his father's time, it was no uncommon thing for gentlemen to post their servants on the main road for the purpose of amicably waylaying and bringing to their houses any travellers who might chance to pass." We are informed of a somewhat similar custom that prevailed among the Quakers of Pennsylvania. [6]Galt, in his Life of West, says, "In the houses of the principal families, the patricians of the country, unlimited hospitality formed a part of their regular economy. It was the custom among those who resided near the highways to make a large fire in the hall, after supper and the last religious exercises of the evening, and to set out a table with refreshments for such travellers as might have occasion to pass during the night; and when the families assembled in the morning they seldom found that their tables had been unvisited."

5. Hall's remarks.

6. Singular custom mentioned by Galt.

18. [7]But whatever diversities in manners, morals, and general condition might have been found in the several colonies in the early periods of their history, yet a gradual assimilation of character, and a gradual advance in wealth, population, and the means of happiness, were observable among all as we approach the period of the Revolution. [8]It cannot be denied, however, that New England colonial character and New England colonial history furnish, on the whole, the most agreeable reminiscences, as well as the most abundant materials for the historian. [9]We also observe much in New

7. General assimilation of manners, morals, &c., as we approach the period of the Revolution.

8. Preference given to New England.

9. Happy prospects and

ANALYSIS.

condition of New England, prior to the Revolution.

England, as we approach the close of her colonial history, that is calculated to gratify the mind that loves to dwell on scenes of substantial felicity. We behold, at this period, a country of moderate fertility occupied by an industrious, hardy, cheerful, virtuous, and intelligent population, a country where moderate labor earned a liberal reward, where prosperity was connected with freedom, where a general simplicity of manners and equality of condition prevailed, and where the future invited with promises of an enlarging expanse of human happiness and virtue. [1]Such was, briefly, the happy condition of New England, and the domestic prosperity of her people, and, partially so at least, of some of the middle colonies, when the gatherings of that storm began to appear, which, for a while, shrouded the horizon of their hopes in darkness and gloom; a period upon which we now look back with feelings of almost terrified awe, at the threatened ruin which impended over our fathers, but with thankful gratitude that the Almighty disposer of events did not desert them when the tempest in its fury was upon them.

1. *These fair prospects overclouded.*

Feelings with which we now contemplate this period of our history.

BATTLE OF BUNKER'S [OR BREED'S] HILL. (See page 350.)

PART III. 1763.

AMERICAN REVOLUTION.

CHAPTER I.

CAUSES WHICH LED TO THE REVOLUTION.

Subject of Chapter I.

1. [1]Of the several wars in which the American colonies of France and England were involved, it has been observed that all, except the last,—called in America the French and Indian War, originated in European interests, and quarrels between the parent states; and that the colonial hostilities were but secondary movements, incidentally connected with the weightier affairs of Europe. [2]In the French and Indian war, however, a different scene was presented: jealousies and disputes of American origin, fomented by ambitious rivalries that began with the planting of the French and English colonies, had extended their influence to the Old World, and brought into hostile collision nearly all the states of Europe.

1. What is said of the several wars in which the American colonies of France and England are involved.

2. Of the French and Indian war.

2. [3]The great value which France and England at this time attached to their possessions in America cannot fail to be remarked in the prodigious efforts which each made for universal dominion there; and yet before the close of

3. Of the value of the American possessions of France and England, and of England's jealousy of her colonies.

ANALYSIS.

the "Seven Years' War," England became so jealous of the growing power of her colonies, and the military spirit which they had displayed, that a diversity of opinion arose in her councils, whether she should retain the Canadas for the security of her colonial population, or restore them to France, in the hope that the vicinity of a rival power would operate as a salutary check upon any aspirations for American independence. Already England secretly feared an event which all her colonial policy tended to hasten, and which, it now began to be seen, every increase of American power rendered more certain.

1. Views and anticipations of the English colonies at this period.

3. [1]Yet whatever may have been the apprehensions of British statesmen, and the views entertained by some leading minds in America, it is evident that the great majority of the colonists indulged at this time no thoughts of separation from the mother country, and that the most they anticipated from the subversion of the French power in America was future exemption from French and Indian wars, and a period of tranquil prosperity, when they should be allowed "to sit under their own vine and fig tree, with none to molest or make them afraid."* [2]But notwithstanding the general feeling of loyalty which prevailed at the conclusion of the French and Indian war, yet scarcely had that struggle ended when a contest arose between the desire of power, on the one hand, and abhorrence of oppression on the other, which finally resulted in the dismemberment of the British empire. [3]The general causes which prepared the minds of the American people for that contest with the parent state may be seen operating throughout their entire colonial history,—in the early encroachments upon their civil rights, and in the later oppressive restrictions upon their commerce, long before any decided acts of oppression had driven them to open resistance.†

2. The nature of the contest that arose after the conclusion of the French and Indian War.

3. The general causes which prepared the minds of the Americans for resistance.

4. By what causes the colonies were socially united as one people.

4. [4]Although the Americans were under different colonial governments, yet they were socially united as one people by the identity of their language, laws, and customs, and the ties of a common kindred; and still more, by a common participation in the vicissitudes of peril and suffering through which they had passed. [5]These and other causes had closely united them in one common interest, and, in the ratio of their fraternal union as

5. What effect these causes had on their attachment to England.

* Hutchinson, an historian of Massachusetts, asserts that "An empire, separate or distinct from Britain, no man then alive expected or desired to see; although, from the common increase of inhabitants in a part of the globe which nature afforded every inducement to cultivate, settlements would gradually extend, and, *in distant ages*, an independent empire would probably be formed."

† The preceding three verses of this chapter have been changed from the school edition of the U. S. Hist.

colonies, had weakened their attachment to the parent land. 1763.

5. [1]Before they left England, they were allied in principle and feeling with the republican, or liberal party; which was ever seeking to abridge the prerogatives of the crown, and to enlarge the liberties of the people. They scoffed at the "divine right of kings," looked upon rulers as public servants bound to exercise their authority for the sole benefit of the governed, and maintained that it is the inalienable right of the subject, freely to give his money to the crown, or to withhold it at his discretion.

1. Republican principles of the people.

6. [2]With such principles, it is not surprising that any attempt on the part of Great Britain to tax her colonies, should be met with determined opposition; and we are surprised to find that severe restrictions upon American commerce, highly injurious to the colonies, but beneficial to England, had long been submitted to without open resentment.

2. In view of such principles, what we are surprised to find.

7. [3]Such were the navigation acts, which, for the benefit of English shipping, declared[a] that no merchandise of the English plantations should be imported into England in any other than English vessels;—which, for the benefit of English manufacturers, prohibited[b] the exportation from the colonies, and the introduction from one colony into another, of hats and woollens of domestic manufacture;—which forbade hatters to have, at one time, more than two apprentices;—which prohibited[c] the importation of sugar, rum, and molasses, without the payment of exorbitant duties;—which forbade[d] the erection of certain iron works, and the manufacture of steel; and which prohibited the felling of pitch and white pine trees, not comprehended within inclosures.

3. Early restrictions on American commerce.

a. First Navigation Act, 1651; confirmed and extended in 1660. See. pp. 173-4, and 304.

b. 1732.

c. 1733.

d. 1750.

8. [4]Although parliament, as early as 1733, had imposed duties on sugar and molasses imported into the colonies, yet the payment of them was for many years evaded, or openly violated, with but little interference by the British authorities. [5]In 1761 an attempt was made to enforce the act, by the requisition, from the colonial courts, of "writs of assistance;" which were general search-warrants, authorizing the king's officers to search for suspected articles which had been introduced into the provinces without the payment of the required duties. [6]In Boston, violent excitements prevailed; the applications for the writs were met by the spirited opposition of the people, and the bold denunciations of Thatcher, Otis, and others. [7]In 1763, the admiralty undertook to enforce the strict letter of the laws; vessels engaged in the contraband commerce were

4. Duties imposed on sugar and molasses.

5. Writs of assistance.

6. What occurred in Boston.

1763.

7. What was done in 1763.

ANALYSIS.

seized and confiscated; and the colonial trade with the West Indies was nearly annihilated.

1764.

1. *What in 1764.*

2. *Mr. Grenville's resolution in favor of taxing the colonies.*

a. March 10.

9. [1]In 1764, the sugar act was re-enacted; accompanied by the first formal declaration, on the part of parliament, of the design of taxing the colonies. [2]At the same time, Mr. Grenville, the prime minister, introduced a resolution, "That it would be proper to charge certain stamp duties on the colonies." The resolution was adopted[a] by the House of Commons, but the consideration of the proposed act was postponed to the next session of parliament; giving to the Americans, in the mean time, an opportunity of expressing their sentiments with regard to these novel measures of taxation.

3. *Intelligence of these proceedings, and what was done by the colonies.*

10. [3]The colonies received the intelligence of these proceedings with a general feeling of indignation. They considered them the commencement of a system of revenue, which, if unresisted, opened a prospect of oppression, boundless in extent, and endless in duration. The proposed stamp-act was particularly obnoxious. Numerous political meetings were held; remonstrances were addressed to the king, and the two houses of parliament; and agents were sent to London, to exert all their influence in preventing, if possible, the intended act from becoming a law.

4. *Arguments urged in favor of taxing the colonies.*

11. [4]While England asserted her undoubted right to tax the colonies, the latter strongly denied both the justice and the constitutionality of the claim. The former maintained that the colonies were but a portion of the British empire; that they had ever submitted, as in duty bound, to the jurisdiction of the mother country; that the inhabitants of the colonies were as much represented in parliament as the great majority of the English nation; that the taxes proposed were but a moderate interest for the immense sums which had already been bestowed in the defence of the colonies, and which would still be required, for their protection; and that protection itself is the ground that gives the right of taxation.

5. *Arguments opposed to taxation.*

12. [5]On the other hand it was maintained, as a fundamental principle, that taxation and representation are inseparable; that the colonies were neither actually nor virtually represented in the British parliament; and that, if their property might be taken from them without their consent, there would be no limit to the oppression which might be exercised over them. They said they had hitherto supposed, that the assistance which Great Britain had given them, was offered from motives of humanity, and not as the price of their liberty; and if she now wished pay for it, she must make an allowance for the assistance

she herself had received from the colonies, and for the advantages she had gained by her oppressive restrictions on American commerce; and that, as for future protection, the colonies had full confidence in their ability to defend themselves against any foreign enemy. **1765.**

13. [1]Notwithstanding the murmurs which had arisen from every quarter, the British ministers were not to be diverted from their plan; and early in 1765, the stamp act passed[a] the House of Commons by a majority of five to one,—the House of Lords,[b] without any opposition,—and soon after received[c] the royal assent. This act ordained that instruments of writing, such as deeds, bonds, notes, and printed pamphlets, almanacs, newspapers, &c., should be executed on stamped paper; for which a duty should be paid to the crown. The act was to go into operation on the first day of November of the same year.

1. *The Stamp Act.*

a. Feb. 7.

b. March 8.

c. March 22.

14. [2]When the news of the passage of this act reached America, a general indignation spread through the country; breaking forth, in some places, in acts of outrage and violence; and in others assuming the spirit of calm but determined resistance. [3]At Boston and Philadelphia, the bells were muffled and rung a funeral peal; at New York, the act was carried through the streets with a death's head affixed to it, and styled "The folly of England and the ruin of America." [4]The stamps themselves, in many places, were seized and destroyed; the houses of those who sided with the government were plundered; the stamp officers were compelled to resign; and the doctrine was openly avowed, that England had no right to tax America.

2. *Indignation of the colonies.*

3. *How manifested at Boston, Philadelphia, and New York.*

4. *Stamps, and stamp officers, &c.*

15. [5]In the assembly of Virginia, Patrick Henry introduced[d] a series of seven resolutions; the first four asserting the rights and privileges of the colonists; the fifth declaring the exclusive right of that assembly to tax the inhabitants of that colony; and the other two asserting that the people were "not bound to yield obedience to any law or ordinance whatsoever," designed to impose taxation upon them, other than the laws and ordinances of the general assembly; and that any person who, "By writing or speaking," should maintain the contrary, should be deemed "an enemy" to the colonies.

5. *The Virginia Resolutions.*

d. May, 1765.

16. [6]In the heat of the discussion which followed, Henry boldly denounced the policy of the British government; and, carried by the fervor of his zeal beyond the bounds of prudence, he declared that the king had acted the part of a tyrant. Alluding to the fate of other tyrants he exclaimed, "Cæsar had his Brutus, Charles I. his Cromwell, and George the Third,"—here pausing a moment until

6. *Patrick Henry's remarks.*

ANALYSIS.

the cry of "Treason, treason," had ended,—he added, "may profit by their example. If this be treason, make the most of it."

1. *Fate of the resolutions.*
a. May 29.

17. [1]After a violent debate, the first five resolutions were carried[a] by the bold eloquence of Henry, though by a small majority. The other two were considered too audacious and treasonable, to be admitted, even by the warmest friends of America. On the following day, in the absence of Henry, the fifth resolution was rescinded; but the whole had already gone forth to the country, rousing the people to a more earnest assertion of their rights, and kindling a more lively enthusiasm in favor of liberty.

2. *Proceedings of the Assembly of Massachusetts.*
b. June 6.

18. [2]The assembly of Massachusetts had been moved by a kindred spirit; and before the news of the proceedings in Virginia reached them, they had taken[b] the decisive step of calling a congress of deputies from the several colonies, to meet in the ensuing October, a few weeks before the day appointed for the stamp act to go into operation.

3. *State of popular feeling, how exhibited.*

[3]In the mean time the popular feeling against the stamp act continued to increase; town and country meetings were held in every colony; associations were formed; inflammatory speeches were made; and angry resolutions were adopted; and, in all directions, every measure was taken to keep up and aggravate the popular discontent.

4. *Proceedings of the first colonial Congress.*
c. Oct 7.

19. [4]In the midst of the excitement, which was still increasing in violence, the First Colonial Congress met[c] at New York, on the first Tuesday in October. Nine colonies were represented, by twenty-eight delegates. Timothy Ruggles, of Massachusetts, was chosen president. After mature deliberation, the congress agreed on a Declaration of Rights and a statement of grievances. They asserted, in strong terms, the right of the colonies to be exempted from all taxes not imposed by their own representatives. They also concurred in a petition to the king, and prepared a memorial to each house of parliament.

5. *By whom the proceedings were approved, and by whom signed.*

20. [5]The proceedings were approved by all the members, except Mr. Ruggles of Massachusetts, and Mr. Ogden of New Jersey; but the deputies of three of the colonies had not been authorized by their respective legislatures to apply to the king or parliament. The petition and memorials were, therefore, signed by the delegates of six colonies only; but all the rest, whether represented or not, afterwards approved the measures adopted.

6. *Arrival of the first of November.*

21. [6]On the arrival of the first of November, the day on which the stamp act was to go into operation, scarcely a sheet of the numerous bales of stamped paper which had been sent to America, was to be found in the colonies. Most of it had been destroyed, or reshipped to England.

[1]The first of November was kept as a day of mourning. Shops and stores were closed; the vessels displayed their flags at half mast; bells were muffled, and tolled as for a funeral; effigies were hung and burned; and every thing was done to manifest the determined opposition of the people to the act, its authors, and advocates. **1765.**

1. How the day was kept.

22. [2]As by the terms of the act, no legal business could be transacted without the use of stamped paper, business was for a time suspended. The courts were closed; marriages ceased; vessels were delayed in the harbors; and all the social and mercantile affairs of a continent stagnated at once. By degrees, however, things resumed their usual course: law and business transactions were written on unstamped paper; and the whole machinery of society went on as before, without regard to the act of parliament.

2. Effect produced by the Stamp Act on business transactions.

23. [3]About this time the associations of the "*Sons of Liberty*" assumed an extent and importance which exerted great influence on subsequent events. These societies, forming a powerful combination of the defenders of liberty throughout all the colonies, denounced the stamp act as a flagrant outrage on the British constitution. Their members resolved to defend the liberty of the press, at all hazards, and pledged their lives and property for the defence of those who, in the exercise of their rights as freemen, should become the objects of British tyranny.

3. Associations of the "Sons of Liberty."

24. [4]The merchants of New York, Boston and Philadelphia, and, subsequently, of many other places, entered into engagements with each other to import no more goods from Great Britain, until the stamp act should be repealed. [5]Individuals and families denied themselves the use of all foreign luxuries; articles of domestic manufacture came into general use; and the trade with Great Britain was almost entirely suspended.

4. Non-importation agreements.

5. Course taken by individuals and families. The effect.

25. [6]When the accounts of the proceedings in America were transmitted to England, they were received, by the government, with resentment and alarm. Fortunately, however, the former ministry had been dismissed; and, in the place of Lord Grenville, the Marquis of Rockingham, a friend of America, had been appointed first lord of the treasury. [7]To the new ministry it was obvious that the odious stamp act must be repealed, or that the Americans must, by force of arms, be reduced to submission. The former being deemed the wisest course, a resolution to repeal was introduced into parliament. **1766.**

6. News of these proceedings received in England; change of ministry.

7. Course taken by the new ministry.

26. [8]A long and angry debate followed. The resolution was violently opposed by Lord Grenville and his adherents; and as warmly advocated by Mr. Pitt, in the House of Commons, and by Lord Camden in the House of

8. Proceedings which attended the repeal of the Stamp Act. **1766.**

ANALYSIS.

March.

1. *Mr. Pitt's remarks.*

Peers. Mr. Pitt boldly justified the colonists in opposing the stamp act. [1]"You have no right," said he, "to tax America. I rejoice that America has resisted. Three millions of our fellow-subjects, so lost to every sense of virtue, as tamely to give up their liberties, would be fit instruments to make slaves of the rest." He concluded by expressing his deliberate judgment, that the stamp act "ought to be repealed, absolutely, totally, and immediately."

2. *Declaratory act.*

a. March 18.

27. [2]The repeal was at length carried;[a] but it was accompanied by a declaratory act, designed as a kind of salvo to the national honor, affirming that parliament had power to bind the colonies in all cases whatsoever.

3. *How the repeal was received in London.*

[3]The repeal was received with great joy, in London, by the manufacturers and friends of America. The shipping in the river Thames displayed their colors, and houses were illuminated throughout the city.

4. *In America.*

[4]The news was received in America with lively expressions of joy and gratitude. Public thanksgivings were held; the importation of British goods was again encouraged; and a general calm, without a parallel in history, immediately succeeded the storm which had raged with such threatening violence.

5. *Continued hostility of government.*

28. [5]Other events, however, soon fanned the flame of discord anew. The passage of the declaratory act might have been a sufficient warning that the repeal of the stamp act was but a truce in the war against American rights.

6. *Change in the ministry.*

b. July, 1766.

7. *New scheme of taxing America.*

[6]The Rockingham ministry having been dissolved, a new cabinet was formed[b] under Mr. Pitt, who was created Earl of Chatham. [7]While Mr. Pitt was confined by sickness, in the country, Mr. Townsend, chancellor of the exchequer, revived the scheme of taxing America. By him a bill was introduced into parliament, imposing duties on glass, paper, painters' colors, and tea.

1767.

8. *Passage of the bill.*

c June 29.

9. *Other obnoxious bills passed.*

29. [8]In the absence of Mr. Pitt the bill passed with but little opposition, and was approved[c] by the king. [9]A bill was also passed establishing a board of trade in the colonies, independent of colonial legislation; and another, suspending the legislative power of the assembly of New York, until it should furnish the king's troops with certain supplies at the expense of the colony.

10. *Excitement produced.*

[10]The excitement produced in America, by the passage of these bills, was scarcely less than that occasioned by the passage of the stamp act, two years before.

11. "*Colonial assemblies.*" "*New associations.*" "*Political writers.*"

30. [11]The colonial assemblies promptly adopted spirited resolutions against the odious enactments; new associations, in support of domestic manufactures, and against the use and importation of British fabrics, were entered into; the political writers of the day filled the columns of

1768.

the public papers with earnest appeals to the people; and, already, the legislative authority of parliament over the colonies, instead of being longer the subject of doubt, began to be boldly denied. The assembly of Massachusetts sent[a] a circular to the other colonies, entreating their co-operation in obtaining a redress of grievances.

"Legislative authority of Parliament."

a. Feb.

"Massachusetts circular."

31. [1]This circular highly displeased the British ministry, who instructed the governor of Massachusetts to require the assembly, in his majesty's name, to "*rescind*" the resolution adopting the circular; and to express their "disapprobation of that *rash* and *hasty* proceeding." [2]The assembly, however, were not intimidated. They passed a nearly unanimous vote not to rescind; and citing, as an additional cause of complaint, this attempt to restrain their right of deliberation, reaffirmed their opinions in still more energetic language. [3]Governor Bernard then dissolved the assembly, but not before they had prepared a list of accusations against him, and petitioned the king for his removal.

1. Requisitions of the British ministry.

2. Proceedings of the Assembly.

3. Of the Governor.

32. [4]These proceedings were soon after followed by a violent tumult in Boston. A sloop having been seized[b] by the custom-house officers for violating some of the new commercial regulations, the people assembled in crowds, attacked the houses of the officers, assaulted their persons, and, finally, obliged them to take refuge in Castle William,* situated at the entrance of the harbor. [5]At the request of the governor, who had complained of the refractory spirit of the Bostonians, General Gage, the commander-in-chief of the British forces in America, was ordered to station a military force in Boston, to overawe the citizens, and protect the custom-house officers in the discharge of their duties.

4. Tumult in Boston.

b. June 10.

5. Military orders.

33. [6]The troops, to the number of 700, arrived from Halifax, late in September, and, on the first of October, under cover of the cannon of the ships, landed in the town, with muskets charged, bayonets fixed, and all the military parade usual on entering an enemy's country. [7]The selectmen of Boston having peremptorily refused to provide quarters for the soldiers, the governor ordered the state-house to be opened for their reception. The imposing display of military force served only to excite the indignation of the inhabitants; the most irritating language passed between the soldiers and the citizens; the

6. Arrival and landing of royal troops.

7. How received, and how regarded by the inhabitants.

* *Castle William* was on Castle Island, nearly three miles S.E. from Boston. In 1798 Massachusetts ceded the fortress to the United States. On the 7th Dec., 1799, it was visited by President Adams, who named it *Fort Independence*. Half a mile north is Governor's Island, on which is *Fort Warren*. Between these two forts is the entrance to Boston Harbor. (See Map, p. 349.)

ANALYSIS.

former looking upon the latter as rebels, and the latter regarding the former as the instruments of a most odious tyranny.

1769.

1. *Odious proceedings of parliament.* Feb. 1769.

34. [1]Early in the following year, both houses of parliament went a step beyond all that had preceded—censuring, in the strongest terms, the conduct of the people of Massachusetts,—approving the employment of force against the rebellious, and praying the king to direct the governor of Massachusetts to cause those guilty of treason to be arrested and sent to England for trial.

2. *How received by the colonial assemblies.*

[2]These proceedings of parliament called forth, from the colonial assemblies, still stronger resolutions, declaring the exclusive right of the people to tax themselves, and denying the right of his majesty to remove an offender out of the country for trial.

3. *Events in Virginia, Carolina, and Massachusetts.*

35. [3]The refractory assemblies of Virginia and North Carolina were soon after dissolved by their governors. The governor of Massachusetts having called upon the assembly of that province to provide funds for the payment of the troops quartered among them, they resolved that they never would make such provision. The governor, therefore, prorogued the assembly, and, soon after being recalled, was succeeded[a] in office by Lieutenant-governor Hutchinson.

a. Aug.

1770.

4. *Affray in Boston.*

36. [4]In March of the following year, an event occurred in Boston, which produced a great sensation throughout America. An affray having taken place between some citizens and soldiers, the people became greatly exasperated; and, on the evening of the 5th of March, a crowd surrounded, and insulted a portion of the city guard, under Captain Preston, and dared them to fire. The soldiers at length fired, and three of the populace were killed and several badly wounded.

March 5.

5. *Events that followed.*

37. [5]The greatest commotion immediately prevailed. The bells were rung, and, in a short time, several thousands of the citizens had assembled under arms. With difficulty they were appeased by the governor, who promised that justice should be done them in the morning. Upon the demand of the inhabitants, the soldiers were removed from the city. Captain Preston and his company were arrested and tried for murder. Two of the most eminent American patriots, John Adams and Josiah Quincy, volunteered in their defence. Two of the soldiers were convicted of manslaughter, the rest were acquitted.

6. *Lord North's partial repeal act.*

38. [6]On the very day of the Boston outrage, Lord North, who had been placed at the head of the administration, proposed to parliament the repeal of all duties

imposed by the act of 1767, except that on *tea*. The bill passed, though with great opposition, and was approved[a] by the king; but the Americans were not satisfied with this partial concession, and the non-importation agreements were still continued against the purchase and use of tea. 1770.

a. April 12.

The effect.

39. [1]In 1772, by a royal regulation, provision was made for the support of the governor and judges of Massachusetts, out of the revenues of the province, independent of any action of the colonial assemblies. [2]This measure the assembly declared to be an "infraction of the rights of the inhabitants granted by the royal charter." 1772.

1. *Royal regulation in 1772.*

2. *How regarded by the Assembly.*

40. [3]In 1773, the British ministry attempted to effect, by artful policy, what open measures, accompanied by coercion, had failed to accomplish. A bill passed parliament, allowing the British East India Company to export their tea to America, free from the duties which they had before paid in England; retaining those only which were to be paid in America. [4]It was thought that the Americans would pay the small duty of three-pence per pound, as they would, even then, obtain tea cheaper in America than in England. 1773.

3. *Next measures of the British ministry.*

4. *Thought that the Americans would pay the duty.*

41. [5]In this, however, the parliament was mistaken. Although no complaint of oppressive taxation could be made to the measure, yet the whole principle against which the colonies had contended was involved in it; and they determined, at all hazards, to defeat the project. [6]Vast quantities of tea were soon sent to America; but the ships destined for New York and Philadelphia, finding the ports closed against them, were obliged to return to England without effecting a landing.

5. *Why the colonies resisted the project.*

6. *Tea sent to New York and Philadelphia.*

42. [7]In Charleston the tea was landed, but was not permitted to be offered for sale; and being stored in damp cellars, it finally perished. [8]The tea designed for Boston had been consigned to the particular friends of Governor Hutchinson, and permission to return it to England was positively refused. But the people as obstinately refused to allow it to be landed. In this position of the controversy, a party of men disguised as Indians, boarded the ships; and, in the presence of thousands of spectators, broke open three hundred and forty-two chests of tea, and emptied[b] their contents into the harbor.

7. *Tea sent to Charleston.*

8. *Destruction of tea at Boston*

b. Dec. 16.

43. [9]In the spirit of revenge for these proceedings, parliament soon after passed[c] the Boston Port Bill; which forbade the landing and shipping of goods, wares, and merchandise, at Boston, and removed the custom-house, with its dependencies, to Salem. [10]The people of Salem, however, nobly refused to raise their own fortunes on the 1774.

9 *Boston Port Bill.*

c. March 31.

10. *Generosity of Salem and Marblehead.*

ANALYSIS.

ruins of their suffering neighbors; and the inhabitants of Marblehead* generously offered the merchants of Boston the use of their harbor, wharves, and warehouses, free of expense.

1. *Measures taken against Massachusetts.*

a. May 20.

44. [1]Soon after, the charter of Massachusetts was subverted;[a] and the governor was authorized to send to another colony or to England, for trial, any person indicted for murder, or any other capital offence, committed in aiding the magistrates in the discharge of their duties. [2]The Boston Port Bill occasioned great suffering in Boston. The assembly of the province resolved that "The impolicy, injustice, inhumanity, and cruelty of the act, exceeded all their powers of expression." [3]The Virginia assembly appointed the 1st of June, the day on which the bill was to go into effect, as a day of "fasting, humiliation, and prayer."

2. *Resolution adopted by the assembly.*

3. *The Virginia assembly.*

4. *Proceedings of the second colonial congress.*

Oct.

45. [4]In September, a second colonial congress, composed of deputies from eleven colonies, met at Philadelphia. This body highly commended the course of Massachusetts in her conflict with "wicked ministers;"—agreed upon a declaration of rights;—recommended the suspension of all commercial intercourse with Great Britain, so long as the grievances of the colonies were unredressed; voted an address to the king, and likewise one to the people of Great Britain, and another to the inhabitants of Canada.

5. *Their effect on the British government.*

6. *General Gage.*

Sept.

46. [5]The proceedings of the congress called forth stronger measures, on the part of the British government, for reducing the Americans to obedience. [6]General Gage, who had recently been appointed governor of Massachusetts, caused Boston neck to be fortified, and, seizing the ammunition and military stores in the provincial arsenals at Cambridge and Charlestown, conveyed them to Boston.

7. *Proceedings of the assembly of Massachusetts.*

Oct.

47. [7]On the other hand, the assembly of Massachusetts having been dissolved by the governor, the members again met, and resolved themselves into a provincial congress. They appointed committees of "safety" and "supplies;"—voted to equip twelve thousand men, and to enlist one-fourth of the militia as minute-men, who should be ready for action at a moment's warning. [8]Similar preparations, but less in extent, were made in other colonies.

8. *Other colonies.*

1775.

Feb., March.

9. *Final measure of determined oppression on the part of England.*

48. [9]As the last measures of determined oppression, a bill was passed for restraining the commerce of the New England colonies; which was afterwards extended to embrace all the provinces except New York and North Carolina. The inhabitants of Massachusetts were declared

* *Marblehead*, originally a part of Salem, is about fifteen miles N.E. from Boston, and is situated on a rocky peninsula, extending three or four miles into Massachusetts Bay.

rebels; and several ships of the line, and ten thousand troops, were ordered to America, to aid in reducing the rebellious colonies to submission. **1775.**

49. [1]The Americans, on the other hand, having no longer any hope of reconciliation, and determined to resist oppression, anxiously waited for the fatal moment to arrive, when the signal of war should be given. Though few in numbers, and feeble in resources, when compared with the power which sought to crush them, they were confident of the justice of their cause, and the rectitude of their purposes; and they resolved, if no other alternative were left them, to die freemen, rather than live slaves. *1. Determined resistance of the Americans.*

CHAPTER II.

EVENTS OF 1775.

Subject of Chapter II.

1. [2]In the beginning of April, the royal troops in Boston numbered nearly 3000 men. [3]With so large a force at his disposal, General Gage indulged the hope, either of awing the provincials into submission, or of being able to quell any sudden outbreak of rebellion. [4]Deeming it important to get possession of the stores and ammunition which the people had collected at various places, on the night of the 18th of April he secretly despatched a force of eight hundred men, to destroy the stores at Concord,* sixteen miles from Boston. *2. Royal troops in Boston. 3. Views of Gen. Gage. 4. Measures taken by him.*

2. [5]Notwithstanding the great precautions which had been taken to prevent the intelligence of this expedition from reaching the country, it became known to some of the patriots in Boston, who despatched confidential messengers along the supposed route; and early on the morning of the 19th, the firing of cannon, and the ringing of bells, gave the alarm that the royal troops were in motion. *5. His designs discovered.*

3. [6]At Lexington† a number of the militia had assembled, as early as two o'clock in the morning; but as the intelligence respecting the regulars was uncertain, they were dismissed, with orders to appear again at beat of drum. At five o'clock, they collected a second time, to *6. Events at Lexington.*

---

* *Concord* is in Middlesex County, sixteen miles N.W. from Boston. A marble monument, erected in 1836, marks the spot where the first of the enemy fell in the war of the Revolution.

† *Lexington* is ten miles N.W. from Boston, on the road to Concord. In 1799 a small monument, with an appropriate inscription, was erected four or five rods westward from the spot where the Americans were fired upon. (See Map, p. 184.)

ANALYSIS.

the number of seventy, under command of Captain Parker. The British, under Colonel Smith and Major Pitcairn, soon made their appearance. The latter officer rode up to the militia, and called out, "Disperse, you rebels, throw down your arms and disperse;" but not being obeyed, he discharged his pistol and ordered his soldiers to fire. Several of the militia were killed, and the rest dispersed.

1. At Concord.

4. [1]The detachment then proceeded to Concord, and destroyed a part of the stores; but the militia of the country having begun to assemble in numbers, a skirmish ensued, and several were killed on both sides. [2]The British then commenced a hasty retreat,—the Americans pursuing, and keeping up a continual fire upon them. Fortunately for the British, they were met at Lexington by a reenforcement of nine hundred men with two field-pieces, under Lord Percy. The united forces then moved rapidly to Charlestown, and, the following day, crossed over to Boston. [3]During this expedition, the British lost in killed, wounded, and missing, about two hundred and eighty;—the provincials about ninety.

2. The retreat of the British.

3. Losses sustained.

4. Consequences that followed the battle of Lexington.

5. [4]Intelligence of these events spread rapidly through Massachusetts and the adjoining provinces. The battle of Lexington was the signal of war—the militia of the country hastily took up arms and repaired to the scene of action; and, in a few days, a line of encampment was formed from Roxbury to the river Mystic,* and the British forces in Boston were environed by an army of 20,000 men. Ammunition, forts, and fortifications, were secured for the use of the provincials; and the most active measures were taken for the public defence.

5. Expedition of Allen and Arnold.

May.

6. [5]A number of volunteers from Connecticut and Vermont, under Colonel Ethan Allen and Benedict Arnold, formed and executed the plan of seizing the important fortresses of Ticonderoga and Crown Point, on the western shore of Lake Champlain, and commanding the entrance into Canada. The pass of Skeenesborough, now Whitehall,† was likewise secured; and by this fortunate expedition, more than one hundred pieces of cannon, and other munitions of war, fell into the hands of the provincials.

6. British army in Boston.

a. May 25.

7. [6]These events were soon followed by others of still greater importance, in the vicinity of Boston. The British troops had received[a] reenforcements, under three dis-

* *Mystic*, or Medford River, flows into Boston Harbor, N.E. of Charlestown. (See Map, p. 184; and Map, p. 349.)

† *Whitehall* is situated on both sides of Wood Creek, at its entrance into the southern extremity of Lake Champlain. Being at the head of navigation, on the lake, and on the line of communication between New York and Canada, it was an important post. (See Map, p. 272 and Note, p. 230.)

tinguished generals,—Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne; which, with the garrison, formed a well disciplined army, of from ten to twelve thousand men. [1]General Gage, being now prepared to act with more decision and vigor, issued* a proclamation, declaring those in arms rebels and traitors; and offering pardon to such as would return to their allegiance, and resume their peaceful occupations. From this indulgence, however, Samuel Adams and John Hancock, two distinguished patriots, were excepted; as their crimes were deemed too flagitious to admit of pardon.

1775.

1. Gen. Gage's proclamation.

a. June 12.

8. [2]As the British were evidently prepared to penetrate into the country, the Americans first strengthened their intrenchments across Boston neck; but afterwards, learning that the views of the British had changed, and were then directed towards the peninsula of Charlestown, they resolved to defeat this new project of the enemy. [3]Orders were therefore given to Colonel Prescott, on the evening of the 16th of June, to take a detachment of one thousand Americans, and form an intrenchment on Bunker Hill;* a high eminence which commanded the neck of the peninsula of Charlestown.

2. Hostile measures adopted by the Americans.

3. Orders given to Col. Prescott.

9. [4]By some mistake the detachment proceeded to *Breed's Hill*,† an eminence within cannon shot of Boston; and, by the dawn of day, had erected a square redoubt, capable of sheltering them from the fire of the enemy. [5]Nothing could exceed the astonishment of the British, at beholding, on the following morning, this daring advance of the Americans. As the eminence overlooked the city of Boston, it was immediately perceived that a powerful battery, planted there, would soon compel the British to evacuate the place. [6]A heavy fire was therefore commenced on the Americans, from vessels in the harbor, and from a fortification on Copp's Hill, in Boston; but with little effect; and about noon, a force of three thousand regulars, commanded by Gen-

4. His mistake.

5. Astonishment of the British.

June 17.

6. Measures taken by them.

PLAN OF THE SIEGE OF BOSTON 1775.

* *Bunker's Hill* is in the northern part of the peninsula of Charlestown, and is 113 feet in height. (See Map.)

† *Breed's Hill*, which is eighty-seven feet high, commences near the southern exremity of Bunker's Hill, and extends towards the south and east. It is now usually called Bunker's Hill, and the monument on its summit, erected to commemorate the battle on the same spot, is called Bunker Hill Monument. This nonument is built of Quincy granite, is thirty feet square at the base, and fifteen at the top; and rises to the height of 220 feet.

ANALYSIS.

eral Howe, crossed over to Charlestown, in boats, with the design of storming the works.

1. Advance against the American works.

10. [1]Landing at Moreton's Point,* on the extremity of the peninsula, the English formed in two columns, and advanced slowly, allowing time for the artillery to produce its effect upon the works. [2]In the mean time the surrounding heights, the spires of churches, and the roofs of houses in Boston, were covered with thousands of spectators, waiting, in dreadful anxiety, the approaching battle. [3]While the British were advancing, orders were given by General Gage to set fire to the village of Charlestown; by which wanton act two thousand people were deprived of their habitations; and property to a large amount, perished in the flames.

2. Spectators of this scene.

3. Burning of Charlestown.

4. Account of the battle.

11. [4]The Americans waited in silence the advance of the enemy to within ten rods of the redoubt, when they opened upon them so deadly a fire of musketry, that whole ranks were cut down; the line was broken, and the royal troops retreated in disorder and precipitation. With difficulty rallied by their officers, they again reluctantly advanced, and were a second time beaten back by the same destructive and incessant stream of fire. At this critical moment General Clinton arrived with reenforcements. By his exertions, the British troops were again rallied, and a third time advanced to the charge, which at length was successful.

5. The mode of attack.

6. Disadvantages of the Americans.

12. [5]The attack was directed against the redoubt at three several points. The cannon from the fleet had obtained a position commanding the interior of the works, which were battered in front at the same time. [6]Attacked by a superior force,—their ammunition failing,—and fighting at the point of the bayonet, without bayonets themselves,—the provincials now slowly evacuated their intrenchments, and drew off with an order not to have been expected from newly levied soldiers. [7]They retreated across Charlestown Neck, with inconsiderable loss, although exposed to a galling fire from a ship of war, and floating batteries, and intrenched themselves on Prospect Hill,† still maintaining the command of the entrance to Boston.

7. Their retreat.

8. The two armies.

9. Forces engaged, and losses on each side.

13. [8]The British took possession of and fortified Bunker's Hill; but neither army was disposed to hazard any new movement. [9]In this desperate conflict, the royal forces engaged consisted of three thousand men; while

* *Moreton's Point* is S.E. from Breed's Hill, at the eastern extremity of the peninsula. (See Map.)

† *Prospect Hill* is a little more than two miles N.W. from Breed's Hill. (See Map.)

1775.

the Americans numbered but fifteen hundred.* The loss of the British, in killed and wounded, was more than a thousand; that of the Americans, only about four hundred and fifty; but among the killed was the lamented General Warren.

14. [1]In the mean time the American congress had assembled[a] at Philadelphia. Again they addressed the king, and the people of Great Britain and Ireland, and, at the same time, published[b] to the world the reasons of their appeal to arms. [2]"We are reduced," said they, "to the alternative of choosing an unconditional submission to the tyranny of irritated ministers, or resistance by force. The latter is our choice. We have counted the cost of this contest, and find nothing so dreadful as voluntary slavery." [3]Having voted to raise an army of 20,000 men, they unanimously elected[c] George Washington commander-in-chief of all the forces raised or to be raised for the defence of the colonies, resolving that they would "assist him and adhere to him, with their lives and fortunes, in the defence of American liberty."

1. *Proceedings of Congress at this time.*
a. May 10.
b. Dated July 6.
2. *Language used by them.*
3. *Other measures adopted.*
c. June 15.

15. [4]Washington, who was present, with great modesty and dignity accepted the appointment, but declined all compensation for his services, asking only the remuneration of his expenses. [5]At the same time the higher departments of the army were organized by the appointment of four major-generals, one adjutant, and eight brigadier-generals. Washington soon repaired[d] to Cambridge, to take command of the army, which then amounted to about 14,000 men. These were now arranged in three divisions;[e] the right wing, under General Ward, at Roxbury; the left, under General Lee, at Prospect Hill; and the centre at Cambridge, under the commander-in-chief.

4. *Terms on which Washington accepted the command.*
5. *Organization and arrangement of the army.*
d. July 12
e. See Map, p. 349.

16. [6]In entering upon the discharge of his duties, Washington had a difficult task to perform. The troops under his command were undisciplined militia,—hastily collected,—unaccustomed to subordination,—and destitute of tents, ammunition, and regular supplies of provisions. [7]But by the energy and skill of the commander-in-chief, aided, particularly, by General Gates, an officer of experience, order and discipline were soon introduced; stores were collected, and the American army was soon enabled to carry on, in due form, a regular siege. [8]General Gage having been recalled, he was succeeded by Sir William Howe, in the chief command of the English forces in America.

6. *Difficulties that Washington had to encounter.*
7. *What objects were soon effected.*
8. *Changes in the British army.*

* NOTE.—Yet Stedman, and some other English writers, erroneously state, that the number of the Provincial troops engaged in the action was three times that of the British.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Difficulties with the royal governors.*

a. May.

17. [1]During the summer, royal authority ended in the colonies;—most of the royal governors fleeing from the popular indignation, and taking refuge on board the English shipping. Lord Dunmore, the governor of Virginia, having seized[a] a quantity of the public powder, and conveyed it on board a ship, the people assembled in arms, under Patrick Henry, and demanded a restitution of the powder, or its value. Payment was made, and the people quietly dispersed.

2. *Hostilities committed by Lord Dunmore.*

b. Dec. 8.

c. Jan. 1, 1776.

18. [2]Other difficulties occurring, Lord Dunmore retired on board a man-of-war,—armed a few ships,—and, by offering freedom to such slaves as would join the royal standard, collected a force of several hundred men, with which he attacked[b] the provincials near* Norfolk;† but he was defeated with a severe loss. Soon after, a ship of war arriving from England, Lord Dunmore gratified his revenge by reducing Norfolk to ashes.[c]

3. *Resolution of congress to invade Canada.*

4. *First movements in this expedition.*

5. *What prevented the capture of St. Johns.*

d. Pronounced, O-Nooah.

6. *The command given to Montgomery.*

19. [3]The capture of Ticonderoga and Crown Point having opened the gates of Canada, congress resolved to seize the favorable opportunity for invading that province; hoping thereby to anticipate the British, who were evidently preparing to attack the colonies through the same quarter. [4]For this purpose, a body of troops from New York and New England was placed under the command of Generals Schuyler and Montgomery, who passed up Lake Champlain, and, on the 10th of September, appeared before St. John's‡ the first British post in Canada.

20. [5]Opposed by a large force, and finding the fort too strong for assault, they retired to, and fortified Isle Aux Noix,[d] 115 miles north of Ticonderoga. [6]Soon after, General Schuyler returned to Ticonderoga to hasten reenforcements; but a severe illness preventing his again joining the army, the whole command devolved upon General Montgomery.

7. *Course pursued by him.*

e. Oct. 13.

21. [7]This enterprising officer, having first induced the Indians to remain neutral, in a few days returned to St. John's, and opened a battery against it; but want of ammunition seriously retarded the progress of the siege. While in this situation, by a sudden movement he surprised, and, after a siege of a few days, captured[e] Fort Chambly,§ a few miles north of St. John's, by which he

---

* This affair occurred at a small village called *Great Bridge*, eight miles S. from Norfolk. The commanding officer of the enemy, and thirty of his men, were either killed or wounded.

† *Norfolk*, Virginia, is on the N.E. side of Elizabeth River, eight miles above its entrance into Hampton Roads. The situation is low, and the streets are irregular, but it is a place of extensive foreign commerce.

‡ *St. John's* is on the W. side of the River Sorel, twenty miles S.E. from Montreal, and twelve miles N. from the Isle Aux Noix.

§ *Chambly* is on the W. side of the Sorel, ten miles N. from St. John's.

obtained several pieces of cannon, and a large quantity of powder. [1]During the siege of St. John's, Colonel Ethan Allen, having with extraordinary rashness forced his way to Montreal, with only eighty men, was defeated, captured, and sent to England in irons.

1775.

1. *Col. Allen.*

22. [2]On the third of November St. John's surrendered, after which Montgomery proceeded rapidly to Montreal, which capitulated on the 13th; Governor Carleton having previously escaped with a small force to Quebec. Having left a garrison in Montreal, and also in the Forts Chambly and St. John's, Montgomery, with a corps of little more than three hundred men, the sole residue of his army, marched towards Quebec, expecting to meet there another body of troops which had been sent from Cambridge to act in concert with him. [3]This detachment, consisting of about a thousand men, under the command of General Arnold, had, with amazing difficulty and hardships, passed up the Kennebec, a river of Maine, and crossing the mountains, had descended the Chaudiere,[a]* to Point Levi, opposite Quebec, where it arrived on the 9th of November.

2. *Surrender of St. Johns and Montreal, and march towards Quebec.*

3. *Arnold's march to Canada.*

a. Pronounced, Sho-de-are.

23. [4]On the 13th, the day of the surrender of Montreal, Arnold crossed the St. Lawrence, ascended the heights where the brave Wolfe had ascended[b] before him, and drew up his forces on the Plains of Abraham, but finding the garrison ready to receive him, and not being sufficiently strong to attempt an assault, he retired to Point aux Trembles, twenty miles above Quebec, and there awaited the arrival of Montgomery.

13th & 14th.

4. *Course pursued by him after his arrival.*

b. See p. 282.

24. [5]On the arrival[c] of the latter, the united forces, numbering in all but nine hundred effective men, marched to Quebec, then garrisoned by a superior force under command of Governor Carleton. A summons to surrender was answered by firing upon the bearer of the flag. After a siege of three weeks, during which the troops suffered severely from continued toil, and the rigors of a Canadian winter, it was resolved, as the only chance of success, to attempt the place by assault.

5. *Events that occurred after the arrival of Montgomery.*

c. Dec. 1.

25. [6]Accordingly, on the last[d] day of the year, between four and five o'clock in the morning, in the midst of a heavy storm of snow, the American troops, in four columns, were put in motion. While two of the columns were sent to make a feigned attack on the Upper Town,[e] Montgomery and Arnold, at the head of their respective divisions, attacked opposite quarters of the Lower Town.[e] [7]Mont-

6. *The plan of attack.*

d. Dec. 31.

e. See Note and Map, p 280.

7. *The fall of Montgomery.*

* The *Chaudiere* rises in Canada, near the sources of the Kennebec, and flowing N.W., enters the St. Lawrence six miles above Quebec. It is not navigable, owing to its numerous rapids

ANALYSIS.

gomery, advancing upon the bank of the river by the way of Cape Diamond, had already passed the first barrier, when the discharge of a single cannon, loaded with grape shot, proved fatal to him,—killing, at the same time, several of his officers who stood near him.

1. Result of the attack.

26. [1]The soldiers shrunk back on seeing their general fall, and the officer next in command ordered a retreat. In the mean time Arnold had entered the town, but, being soon severely wounded, was carried to the hospital, almost by compulsion. Captain Morgan, afterwards distinguished by his exploits[a] at the South, then took the command; but, after continuing the contest several hours, against far superior and constantly increasing numbers, and at length vainly attempting a retreat, he was forced to surrender the remnant of his band prisoners of war.

a. See p. 399.

2. Brief account of Montgomery.

27. [2]The fall of Montgomery was deplored by friends and foes. Born of a distinguished Irish family, he had early entered the profession of arms;—had distinguished himself in the preceding French and Indian war;—had shared in the labors and triumph of Wolfe; and, ardently attached to the cause of liberty, had joined the Americans, on the breaking out of the Revolution. [3]Congress directed a monument to be erected to his memory; and in 1818, New York, his adopted state, caused his remains to be removed to her own metropolis, where the monument had been placed; and near that they repose.

3. His memory honored by congress: and by New York.

4. Condition of the army after the repulse.

28. [4]After the repulse, Arnold retired with the remainder of his army to the distance of three miles above Quebec, where he received occasional reenforcements; but at no time did the army consist of more than 3000 men, of whom more than one-half were generally unfit for duty.

5. Retreat of the army.

[b]General Thomas, who had been appointed to succeed Montgomery, arrived early in May; soon after which, Governor Carleton receiving reenforcements from England, the Americans were obliged to make a hasty retreat; leaving all their stores, and many of their sick, in the power of the enemy.

6. Treatment of the sick.

29. [6]The latter were treated with great kindness and humanity, and after being generously fed and clothed, were allowed a safe return to their homes; a course of policy which very much strengthened the British interests in Canada.

7. Farther events of the retreat.

[7]At the mouth of the Sorel the Americans were joined by several regiments, but were still unable to withstand the forces of the enemy. Here General Thomas died of the small-pox, a disease which had prevailed extensively in the American camp. After retreating from one post to another, by the 18th of June the Americans had entirely evacuated Canada.

1776.

CHAPTER III.

EVENTS OF 1776.

Subject of Chapter III.

1. [1] At the close of the year 1775, the regular troops under Washington, in the vicinity of Boston, numbered but little more than 9000 men; but by the most strenuous exertions on the part of congress, and the commander-in-chief, the number was augmented, by the middle of February, to 14,000. [2] Perceiving that this force would soon be needed to protect other parts of the American territory, congress urged Washington to take more decisive measures, and, if possible, to dislodge the enemy from their position in Boston.

1. The American forces in the vicinity of Boston.

2. More decisive measures urged.

2. [3] In a council of his officers, Washington proposed a direct assault; but the decision was unanimous against it; the officers alledging, that, without incurring so great a risk, but by occupying the heights[a] of Dorchester, which commanded the entire city, the enemy might be forced to evacuate the place. [4] Acquiescing in this opinion, Washington directed a severe cannonade[b] upon the city; and, while the enemy were occupied in another quarter, on the evening of the fourth of March, a party of troops, with intrenching tools, took possession of the heights, unobserved by the enemy; and, before morning, completed a line of fortifications, which commanded the harbor and the city.

3. What plan was proposed by Washington, and what by his officers.

a. See Map, p. 349.

4. Events that followed.

b. March 2d, 3d, 4th.

3. [5] The view of these works excited the astonishment of the British general, who saw that he must immediately dislodge the Americans, or evacuate the town. [6] An attack was determined upon; but a furious storm rendering the harbor impassable, the attack was necessarily deferred; while, in the mean time, the Americans so strengthened their works, as to make the attempt to force them hopeless. No resource was now left to General Howe but immediate evacuation.

5. Astonishment of the British.

6. What prevented an attack; and what, finally, was the only resource left to the British.

4. [7] As his troops and shipping were exposed to the fire of the American batteries, an informal agreement was made, that he should be allowed to retire unmolested, upon condition that he would abstain from burning the city. Accordingly, on the 17th, the British troops, amounting to more than 7000 soldiers, accompanied by fifteen hundred families of loyalists, quietly evacuated Boston, and sailed for Halifax. [9] Scarcely was the rear-guard out of the city, when Washington entered it, to the great joy of the inhabitants, with colors flying, and drums beating, and all the forms of victory and triumph.

7. Agreement made.

March 17.

8. Departure of the British.

9. Entrance of Washington into Boston.

ANALYSIS.

1. *The army proceeds to New York.*

5. [1]Washington, ignorant of the plans of General Howe and of the direction which the British fleet had taken, was not without anxiety for the city of New York. Therefore, after having placed Boston in a state of defence, the main body of the army was put in motion towards New York, where it arrived early in April.

2. *Gen. Lee: Sir Henry—Clinton; plan of the British, &c.*

6. [2]General Lee, with a force of Connecticut militia, had arrived before the main body, about the time that Sir Henry Clinton, with a fleet from England, appeared off Sandy Hook. Clinton, foiled in his attempt against New York, soon sailed south; and at Cape Fear River was joined[a] by Sir Peter Parker, who had sailed[b] with a large squadron directly from Europe, having on board two thousand five hundred troops, under the command of the Earl of Cornwallis. The plan of the British was now to attempt the reduction of Charleston.

a. May 3.
b. From Cork, Feb. 12.

3. *Preparations to receive the enemy.*

7. [3]General Lee, who had been appointed to command the American forces in the Southern States, had pushed on rapidly from New York, anxiously watching the progress of Clinton; and the most vigorous preparations were made throughout the Carolinas, for the reception of the hostile fleet. [4]Charleston had been fortified, and a fort on Sullivan's Island,* commanding the channel leading to the town, had been put in a state of defence, and the command given to Colonel Moultrie.

4. *Defence of Charleston.*

5. *Attack on Sullivan's Island.*

8. [5]Early in June, the British armament appeared[c] off the city, and having landed a strong force under General Clinton, on Long Island,[d] east of Sullivan's Island, after considerable delay advanced against the fort, and commenced a heavy bombardment on the morning of the 28th. Three of the ships that had attempted to take a station between the fort and the city were stranded. Two of them were enabled to get off much damaged, but the third was abandoned and burned. [6]It was the design of Clinton to cross the narrow channel which separates Long Island from Sullivan's Island, and assail the fort by land, during the attack by the ships; but, unexpectedly, the channel was found too deep to be forded, and a strong force, under Colonel Thompson, was waiting on the opposite bank ready to receive him.

c. June 4.
d. See Map, p. 256.
June 28.

6. *What design of Gen. Clinton was defeated.*

7. *Conduct of the garrison of the fort.*

9. [7]The garrison of the fort, consisting of only about 400 men, mostly militia, acted with the greatest coolness and gallantry,—aiming with great precision and effect, in the midst of the tempest of balls hailed upon them by the enemy's squadron. [8]After an engagement of eight hours,

8. *Result of the action.*

* *Sullivan's Island* is six miles below Charleston, lying to the N. of the entrance to the harbor, and separated from the mainland by a narrow inlet. (See Map, p. 256.)

1776.

from eleven in the forenoon until seven in the evening, the vessels drew off and abandoned the enterprise. [1]In a few days the fleet, with the troops on board, sailed for New York, where the whole British force had been ordered to assemble.

1. Departure of the fleet.

10. [2]In this engagement the vessels of the enemy were seriously injured, and the loss in killed and wounded exceeded 200 men. The admiral himself, and Lord Campbell, late governor of the province, were wounded,—the latter mortally. The loss of the garrison was only 10 killed and 22 wounded. [3]The fort, being built of palmetto, a wood resembling cork, was little damaged. In honor of its brave commander it has since been called Fort Moultrie. [4]This fortunate repulse of the enemy placed the affairs of South Carolina, for a time, in a state of security, and inflamed the minds of the Americans with new ardor.

2. The loss on each side.

3. The fort, and its brave commander.

4. Effects of this repulse of the enemy.

11. [5]The preparations which England had recently been making for the reduction of the colonies, were truly formidable. By a treaty with several of the German princes, the aid of 17,000 German or Hessian troops had been engaged; 25,000 additional English troops, and a large fleet, had been ordered to America; amounting, in all, to 55,000 men, abundantly supplied with provisions, and all the necessary munitions of war; and more than a million of dollars had been voted to defray the extraordinary expenses of the year.

5. Formidable warlike preparations of England.

12. [6]Yet with all this threatening array against them, and notwithstanding all the colonies were now in arms against the mother country, they had hitherto professed allegiance to the British king, and had continually protested that they were contending for their just rights and a redress of grievances. [7]But as it became more apparent that England would abandon none of her claims, and would accept nothing but the total dependence and servitude of her colonies, the feelings of the latter changed; and sentiments of loyality gave way to republican principles, and the desire for independence.

6. Professed allegiance of the colonies.

7. Change in their feelings.

13. [8]Early in May, congress, following the advance of public opinion, recommended to the colonies, no longer to consider themselves as holding or exercising any powers under Great Britain, but to adopt "Such governments as might best conduce to the happiness and safety of the people." [9]The recommendation was generally complied with, and state constitutions were adopted, and representative governments established, virtually proclaiming all separation from the mother country, and entire independence of the British crown. [10]Several of the colonies, likewise, in-

8. The colonies advised to adopt new governments.

9. How far complied with.

10. Instructions given by the colonies to their delegates

ANALYSIS.

structed their delegates to join in all measures which migh be agreed to in congress, for the advancement of the interests, safety, and dignity of the colonies.

June 7.

1. *Resolution offered in congress by Richard Henry Lee.*

14. [1]On the 7th of June, Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, offered a resolution in congress, declaring that "The United Colonies are, and ought to be, free and independent states;—that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown;—and that all political connexion between them and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved." [2]This resolution was debated with great earnestness, eloquence, and ability; and although it finally passed, it at first encountered a strong opposition from some of the most zealous partizans of American liberty. Having at length been adopted by a bare majority, the final consideration of the subject was postponed to the first of July.

2. *How received.*

3. *Committee appointed, and for what purpose.*

15. [3]In the mean time a committee,—consisting of Thomas Jefferson, John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, Roger Sherman, and Robert R. Livingston,—was instructed to prepare a declaration in accordance with the object of the resolution. [4]This paper, principally drawn up by Mr. Jefferson, came up for discussion on the first of July; and, on the fourth, received the assent of the delegates of all the colonies; which thus dissolved their allegiance to the British crown, and declared themselves free and independent, under the name of the thirteen United States of America.

4. *The declaration and its adoption.*

July 4.

5. *Rejoicings of the people.*

16. [5]The declaration of independence was every where received by the people with demonstrations of joy. Public rejoicings were held in various parts of the Union; the ensigns of royalty were destroyed; and nothing was forgotten that might tend to inspire the people with affection for the new order of things, and with the most violent hatred towards Great Britain and her adherents.

6. *Military events about the time of the declaration of independence.*

a. June 11.

b. July 12.

17. [6]Before the declaration of independence, General Howe had sailed[a] from Halifax,—had arrived at Sandy Hook on the 25th of June,—and, on the second of July, had taken possession of Staten Island. Being soon after joined[b] by his brother, Admiral Howe, from England, and by the forces of Clinton from the south, he found himself at the head of an army of 24,000 of the best troops of Europe. Others were expected soon to join him, making, in the whole, an army of 35,000 men. [7]The design of the British was to seize New York, with a force sufficient to keep possession of the Hudson River,—open a communication with Canada,—separate the Eastern from the Middle States,—and overrun the adjacent country at pleasure.

7. *Design of the British.*

1776.

18. [1]To oppose the designs of the enemy, the American general had collected a force, consisting chiefly of undisciplined militia, amounting to about 27,000 men; but many of these were invalids, and many were unprovided with arms; so that the effective force amounted to but little more than 17,000 men. [2]Soon after the arrival of the fleet, Lord Howe, the British admiral, sent a letter, offering terms of accommodation, and directed to "George Washington, Esq."

1. Forces under the command of the American general.

2. Letters of Lord Howe to General Washington.

19. This letter Washington declined receiving; asserting that, whoever had written it, it did not express his public station; and that, as a private individual, he could hold no communication with the enemies of his country. A second letter, addressed to "George Washington, &c. &c. &c.," and brought by the adjutant-general of the British army, was in like manner declined. [3]It appeared, however, that the powers of the British generals extended no farther than "to grant pardons to such as deserved mercy." [4]They were assured, in return, that the people were not conscious of having committed any crime in opposing British tyranny, and therefore they needed no pardon.

3. Powers of the British generals.

4. What they were assured in return.

20. [5]The British generals, having gained nothing by their attempts at accommodation, now directing their attention to the prosecution of the war, resolved to strike the first blow without delay. [6]Accordingly, on the 22d of August, the enemy landed on the southern shore of Long Island, near the villages of New Utrecht* and Gravesend;† and having divided their army into three divisions, commenced their march towards the American camp, at Brooklyn, then under the command of General Putnam.

5. Their next resolution.

Aug. 22.

6. Landing of the enemy, and their march towards the American camp.

21. [7]A range of hills, running from the Narrows to Jamaica, separated the two armies. Through these hills were three passes,—one by the Narrows,—a second by the village of Flatbush,‡—and a third by the way of Flatland;§ the latter leading to the right, and intersecting, on the heights, the road which leads from Bedford‖ to Jamaica. [8]General Grant, commanding the left division of the army,

7. The country which separated the two armies.

8. Order of the British advance.

BATTLE OF LONG ISLAND.

* *New Utrecht* is at the W. end of Long Island, near the Narrows, seven miles below New York City. (See Map.) [Pronounced Oo-trekt.]

† *Gravesend* is a short distance S.E. from New Utrecht, and nine miles from New York. (See Map.)

‡ *Flatbush* is five miles S.E. from New York. It was near the N.W. boundary of this town that the principal battle was fought. (See Map.)

§ *Flatland* is N.E. from the village of Gravesend, and about eight miles S.E. from New York. (See Map.)

‖ The village of *Bedford* is near the heights, two or three miles S.E. from Brooklyn. (See Map.)

ANALYSIS.

proceeded by the Narrows; General Heister directed the centre, composed of the Hessian regiments; and General Clinton the right.

1 *Beginning and progress of the battle.*

Aug. 26.

Aug. 27.

22. [1]Detachments of the Americans, under the command of General Sullivan, guarded the coast, and the road from Bedford to Jamaica. On the evening of the 26th, General Clinton advanced from Flatland,—reached the heights, and, on the morning of the 27th, seized an important defile, which, through carelessness, the Americans had left unguarded. With the morning light he descended with his whole force by the village of Bedford, into the plain which lay between the hills and the American camp. In the mean time Generals Grant and De Heister had engaged nearly the whole American force, which had advanced to defend the defiles on the west,—ignorant of the movements of Clinton, who soon fell upon their left flank.

2. *Result of the action.*

3. *Washington during the action.*

23. [2]When the approach of Clinton was discovered, the Americans commenced a retreat; but being intercepted by the English, they were driven back upon the Hessians; and thus attacked, both in front and rear, many were killed, and many were made prisoners. Others forced their way through the opposing ranks, and regained the American lines at Brooklyn. [3]During the action, Washington passed over to Brooklyn, where he saw, with inexpressible anguish, the destruction of many of his best troops, but was unable to relieve him.

4. *Losses sustained on each side.*

5. *The consequences of this defeat to the Americans.*

24. [4]The American loss was stated by Washington at one thousand, in killed, wounded, and prisoners; and by the British general, at 3,300. Among the prisoners were Generals Sullivan, Stirling, and Woodhull. The loss of the British was less than 400. [5]The consequences of the defeat were more alarming to the Americans than the loss of their men. The army was dispirited; and as large numbers of the militia were under short engagements of a few weeks, whole regiments deserted and returned to their homes.

6. *Next movements of the enemy.*

a. Aug. 28.

7. *Retreat of the Americans.*

Aug. 29, 30.

8. *The British fleet.*

25. [6]On the following day[a] the enemy encamped in front of the American lines, designing to defer an attack until the fleet could co-operate with the land troops. [7]But Washington, perceiving the impossibility of sustaining his position, profited by the delay; and, on the night of the 29th, silently drew off his troops to New York; nor was it until the sun had dissipated the mist on the following morning, that the English discovered, to their surprise, that the Americans had abandoned their camp, and were already sheltered from pursuit. [8]A descent upon New York being the next design of the enemy, a part of their fleet doubled Long Island, and appeared in the Sound;

while the main body, entering the harbor, took a position nearly within cannon shot of the city. **1776.**

26. [1]In a council of war, held on the 12th of September, the Americans determined to abandon the city; and, accordingly, no time was lost in removing the military stores, which were landed far above, on the western shore of the Hudson. [2]The commander-in-chief retired to the heights of Harlem,* and a strong force was stationed at Kingsbridge,† in the northern part of the island.

1. Council of war.

2. Positions taken by the Americans.

27. [3]On the 15th, a strong detachment of the enemy landed on the east side of New York Island, about three miles above the city, and meeting with little resistance, took a position extending across the island at Bloomingdale,‡ five miles north of the city, and within two miles of the American lines. [4]On the following day[a] a skirmish took place between advanced parties of the armies, in which the Americans gained a decided advantage; although their two principal officers, Colonel Knowlton and Major Leitch, both fell mortally wounded. [5]Washington commended the valor displayed by his troops on this occasion, and the result was highly inspiriting to the army.

Sept. 15.

3. The enemy advance upon New York.

4. Skirmish that followed.

a. Sept. 16.

5. Its effect upon the army.

28. [6]General Howe, thinking it not prudent to attack the fortified camp of the Americans, next made a movement with the intention of gaining their rear, and cutting off their communication with the Eastern States. [7]With this view, the greater part of the royal army left New York, and passing into the Sound, landed[b] in the vicinity of Westchester;§ while, at the same time, three frigates were despatched up the Hudson, to interrupt the American communications with New Jersey. [8]By the arrival of new forces, the British army now amounted to 35,000 men.

6. Object of the British general.

7. Course taken to accomplish it.

b. Oct. 12.

8. Numbers of the enemy.

29. [9]Washington, penetrating the designs of the enemy, soon withdrew the bulk of his army from New York Island, and extended it along the western bank of Bronx River,‖ towards White Plains;¶ keeping his left in advance of the British right. [10]On the 28th, a partial action was fought at White Plains, in which the Americans

9. Position taken by Washington.

Oct. 28.

10. Action at White Plains.

---

* *Harlem* is seven and a half miles above the city, (distance reckoned from the City Hall.)

† *Kingsbridge* is thirteen miles above the city, at the N. end of the island, near a bridge crossing Spuyten Devil Creek, the creek which leads from the Hudson to the Harlem River. (See Map, next page.)

‡ *Bloomingdale* is on the W. side of the Island. Opposite, on the E. side, is Yorkville.

§ The village of *Westchester* is situated on Westchester Creek, two miles from the Sound, in the southern part of Westchester County, fourteen miles N.E. from New York. The troops landed on Frog's Point, about three miles S.E. of the village. (See Map. next page.)

‖ *Bronx* River rises in Westchester County, near the line of Connecticut, and after a course of twenty-five miles, nearly south, enters the Sound (or East River) a little S.W. from the village of Westchester. (See Map, next page.)

¶ *White Plains* is in Westchester County, twenty-seven miles N.E. from New York. (See Map, next page.)

ANALYSIS.

1. *Washington's change of position.*

were driven back with some loss. [1]Soon after, Washington changed his camp, and drew up[a] his forces on the heights of North Castle,* about five miles farther north.

a. Nov. 1.

2. *Next movement of the British general.*

3. *Next movements of Washington.*

30. [2]The British general, discontinuing the pursuit, now directed his attention to the American posts on the Hudson, with the apparent design of penetrating into New Jersey. [3]Washington, therefore, having first secured the strong positions in the vicinity of the Croton† River, and especially that of Peekskill,‡ crossed the Hudson with the main body of his army, and joined General Greene in his camp at Fort Lee;§ leaving a force of three thousand men on the east side, under Colonel Magaw, for the defence of Fort Washington.‖

Nov. 16.

4. *Attack on Fort Washington.*

5. *Attempt against Fort Lee, and the result.*

b. Nov. 18.

31. [4]On the 16th, this fort was attacked by a strong force of the enemy, and after a spirited defence, in which the assailants lost nearly a thousand men, was forced to surrender. [5]Lord Cornwallis crossed[b] the Hudson at Dobbs' Ferry,¶ with six thousand men, and proceeded against Fort Lee, the garrison of which saved itself by a hasty retreat; but all the baggage and military stores fell into the possession of the victors.

6. *Retreat of the Americans, and condition of the army.*

32. [6]The Americans retreated across the Hackensack,** and thence across the Passaic,†† with forces daily dimin-

---

WESTCHESTER COUNTY.

FORTS LEE AND WASHINGTON.

* The *Heights of North Castle*, on which Washington drew up his army, are three or four miles S.W. from the present village of North Castle. (See Map.)

† The *Croton* River enters Hudson River from the east, in the northern part of Westchester County, thirty-five miles north from New York. (See Map.) From this stream an aqueduct has been built, thirty-eight miles in length, by which the city of New York has been supplied with excellent water. The whole cost of the aqueduct, reservoirs, pipes, &c., was about twelve millions of dollars.

‡ *Peekskill* is on the E. bank of the Hudson, near the northwestern extremity of Westchester County, forty-six miles N. from New York. (See Map, p. 377.)

§ *Fort Lee* was on the west side of Hudson River, in the town of Hackensack, New Jersey, three miles southwest from Fort Washington, and ten north from New York. It was built on a rocky summit, 300 feet above the river. The ruins of the fortress still exist, overgrown with low trees. (See Map.)

‖ *Fort Washington* was on the east bank of the Hudson, on Manhattan or New York Island, about eleven miles above the city (See Map.)

¶ *Dobbs' Ferry* is a well-known crossing-place on the Hudson, twenty-two miles N. from New York City. There is a small village of the same name on the E. side of the river. (See Map.)

** *Hackensack* River rises one mile west from the Hudson, in Rockland Lake, Rockland County, thirty-three miles N. from New York. It pursues a southerly course, at a distance of from two to six miles W. from the Hudson, and falls into the N. Eastern extremity of Newark Bay, five miles west from New York. (See Map, next page.)

†† The *Passaic* River rises in the central part of Northern New Jersey, flows an easterly course until it arrives within five miles of the

ishing by the withdrawal of large numbers of the militia, who, dispirited by the late reverses, returned to their homes, as fast as their terms of enlistment expired; so that, by the last of November, scarcely three thousand troops remained in the American army; and these were exposed in an open country, without intrenching tools, and without tents to shelter them from the inclemency of the season. **1776.**

33. [1]Newark,* New Brunswick,† Princeton,‡ and Trenton, successively fell into the hands of the enemy, as they were abandoned by the retreating army; and finally, on the eighth of December, Washington crossed the Delaware, then the only barrier which prevented the British from taking possession of Philadelphia. So rapidly had the pursuit been urged, that the rear of the one army was often within sight and shot of the van of the other. *1. Retreat through New Jersey, and pursuit by the British.*

34. [2]Congress, then in session at Philadelphia, adjourned[a] to Baltimore,§ and soon after invested[b] Washington with almost unlimited powers, "To order and direct all things relating to the department and to the operations of war." [3]The British general, awaiting only the freezing of the Delaware to enable him to cross and seize Philadelphia, arranged about 4000 of his German troops along the river, from Trenton to Burlington. Strong detachments occupied Princeton and New Brunswick. The rest of the troops were cantoned about in the villages of New Jersey. *2. Course pursued by congress.* a. Dec. 12. b. Dec. 20. *3. Positions of the British troops.*

35. [4]On the very day that the American army crossed the Delaware, the British squadron, under Sir Peter Parker, took possession of the island of Rhode Island,[c] together with the neighboring islands, Prudence,[c] and Conanicut;[c] by which the American squadron, under Commodore Hop- Dec. 8 *4. Fleet Commod. Hopkins.* c. See Map p. 2[illegible]5

Hackensack, whence its course is S. fourteen miles, until it falls into the N. Western extremity of Newark Bay. (See Map.)

* *Newark*, now a city, and the most populous in New Jersey, is situated on the W. side of Passaic River, three miles from its entrance into Newark Bay, and nine miles W. from New York. (See Map.)

† *New Brunswick* is situated on the S. bank of Raritan River, ten miles from its entrance into Raritan Bay at Amboy, and twenty-three miles S.W. from Newark. It is the seat of Rutgers' College, founded in 1770. (See Map.)

‡ *Princeton* is thirty-nine miles S.W. from Newark. It is the seat of the "College of New Jersey," usually called Princeton College, founded at Elizabethtown in 1746, afterwards removed to Newark, and, in 1757, to Princeton. The Princeton Theological Seminary, founded in 1812, is also located here. (See Map.)

§ *Baltimore*, a city of Maryland, is situated on the N. side of the Patapsco River, fourteen miles from its entrance into Chesapeake Bay, and ninety-five miles S.W. from Philadelphia. (See Map, p. 465.)

SEAT OF WAR IN NEW JERSEY.

ANALYSIS.

Dec. 13.
1. *Generals Lee and Sullivan.*

kins, was blocked up in Providence River, where it remained a long time useless. [1]On the 13th, General Lee, who had been left in command of the forces stationed on the Hudson, having incautiously wandered from the main body, was surprised and taken prisoner by the enemy. His command then devolving on General Sullivan, the latter conducted his troops to join the forces of Washington, which were then increased to nearly seven thousand men.

2. *Bold plan formed by Washington.*

36. [2]In the state of gloom and despondency which had seized the public mind, owing to the late reverses of the army, Washington conceived the plan of suddenly crossing the Delaware, and attacking the advanced post of the enemy, before the main body could be brought to its relief. [3]Accordingly, on the night of the 25th of December, preparations were made for crossing the river, in three divisions. General Cadwallader was to cross at Bristol,* and carry the post at Burlington;† General Ewing was to cross a little below Trenton,‡ and intercept the retreat of the enemy in that direction; while the commander-in-chief, with twenty-four hundred men, was to cross nine miles above Trenton, to make the principal attack.

Dec. 25.
3. *How it was to be carried into effect.*

4. *Obstacles encountered.*

37. [4]Generals Ewing and Cadwallader, after the most strenuous efforts, were unable to cross, owing to the extreme cold of the night, and the quantity of floating ice that had accumulated in this part of the river. [5]Washington alone succeeded, but it was three o'clock in the morning[a] before the artillery could be carried over. The troops were then formed into two divisions, commanded by Generals Sullivan and Greene, under whom were Brigadiers Lord Stirling, Mercer, and St. Clair.

5. *Account of the enterprise; the battle which followed; and the result.*

a. Dec. 26.

38. Proceeding by different routes, they arrived at Trenton about eight o'clock in the morning, and commenced a nearly simultaneous attack upon the surprised Hessians, who, finding themselves hemmed in by the Americans on the north and west, and by a small creek and the Delaware River on the east and south, were constrained to lay down their arms, and surrender at discretion. About one

* *Bristol* is a village on the Pennsylvania side of the Delaware, two miles above Burlington. (See Map, preceding page.)

† *Burlington* is on the E. bank of the Delaware, twelve miles S.W. from Trenton, and seventeen N.E. from Philadelphia. (See Map, preceding page.)

‡ *Trenton*, the capital of New Jersey, is situated on the E. bank of the Delaware River, ten miles S.W. from Princeton, and twenty-seven N.E. from Philadelphia. The Assumpink Creek separates the city on the S.E. from the borough of South Trenton. (See Map; and also Map preceding page.)

thousand were made prisoners, and between thirty and forty were killed and wounded. About 600 of the enemy, who were out on a foraging party, escaped to Bordentown.* Among the killed was Colonel Rahl, the commanding officer. **1776.**

39. [1]As the British had a strong force at Princeton, and likewise a force yet remaining on the Delaware, superior to the American army, Washington, on the evening of the same day, recrossed into Pennsylvania with his prisoners. [2]This unexpected and brilliant success suddenly elevated the public mind from despondency to extreme confidence. About 1400 soldiers whose terms of service were on the point of expiring, agreed to remain six weeks longer: and the militia from the neighboring provinces again began to join the army.

1. Washington recrosses the Delaware.

2. Effects produced upon the Americans by this brilliant enterprise.

40. [3]The British general, startled by this sudden reanimation of an enemy whom he had already considered vanquished, resolved, though in the depth of winter, to recommence operations. Lord Cornwallis, then in New York, and on the point of sailing for England, hastily returned to New Jersey, with additional troops, to regain the ground that had been lost.

3. Its effect upon the British general.

41. [4]Nor was Washington disposed to remain idle. On the 28th of December he boldly returned into New Jersey, and took post at Trenton, where the other divisions of the army, which had passed lower down, were ordered to join him. General Heath, stationed at Peekskill, on the Hudson, was ordered to move into New Jersey with the main body of the New England forces, while the newly raised militia were ordered to harass the flank and rear, and attack the outposts of the enemy. [5]The British had fallen back from the Delaware, and were assembling in great force at Princeton—resolved to attack Washington in his quarters at Trenton, before he should receive new reenforcements.

Dec. 28.

4. New movements of the army of Washington.

5. Operations of the British in the mean time.

42. [6]Such was the situation of the opposing armies at the close of the year. Only a week before, General Howe was leisurely waiting the freezing of the Delaware, to enable him to take quiet possession of Philadelphia, or annihilate the American army at a blow, should it not previously be disbanded by the desertion of its militia. But, to the astonishment of the British general, the remnant of the American army had suddenly assumed offensive operations; and its commander, although opposed by far superior forces, now indulged the hope of recovering, during the winter, the whole, or the greater part of New Jersey.

6. Situation of the opposing armies at the close of the year.

* *Bordentown* is on the E. bank of the Delaware, seven miles southeast from Trenton. (See Map, p. 363.)

ANALYSIS.

CHAPTER IV.

EVENTS OF 1777.

Subject of Chapter IV.

1. Events on the night of the first of January.

1. [1]On the night of the first of January, Generals Mifflin and Cadwallader, with the forces which lay at Bordentown and Crosswicks,* joined Washington at Trenton, whose whole effective force did not then exceed five thousand men. [2]In the afternoon of the next day,[a] the van of the army of Lord Cornwallis reached Trenton; when Washington immediately withdrew to the east side of the creek[b] which runs through the town, where he drew up his army, and commenced intrenching himself.

2. The afternoon of the next day.

a. Jan. 2.

b. See Map, p. 364.

2. The British attempted to cross in several places, when some skirmishing ensued, and a cannonading commenced, which continued until nightfall; but the fords being well guarded, the enemy thought it prudent to wait for the reenforcements which were near at hand, designing to advance to the assault on the following morning.

3. Situation of the American army.

3. [3]Washington again found himself in a very critical situation. To remain and risk a battle, with a superior and constantly increasing force, would subject his army, in case of repulse, to certain destruction; while a retreat over the Delaware, then very much obstructed with floating ice, would, of itself, have been a difficult undertaking, and a highly dangerous one to the American troops when pursued by a victorious enemy. [4]With his usual sagacity and boldness, Washington adopted another extraordinary but judicious scheme, which was accomplished with consummate skill, and followed by the happiest results.

4. Sagacity and boldness of Washington.

5. In what manner he eluded the enemy.

c. Jan. 3.

4. Kindling the fires of his camp as usual, and having left a small guard and sentinels to deceive the enemy, he silently despatched his heavy baggage to Burlington; and then,[c] by a circuitous route, unperceived, gained the rear of the enemy, and pressed on rapidly towards Princeton; designing to attack, by surprise, the British force at that place, which was about equal to his own.

6. Battle of Princeton, and losses sustained by each party.

5. [6]A part of the British, however, had already commenced their march, and were met by the Americans, at sunrise, a mile and a half from Princeton,† when a brisk conflict ensued, in which the American militia at

---

* *Crosswicks* is a small village on the south side of a creek of the same name, four miles E from Bordentown. The creek enters the Delaware just N. of Bordentown village. (See Map p. 363.)

† This battle was fought on the N.E. side of Stony Brook, one of the head waters of the Raritan, about a mile and a half S W. from Princeton. (See Map, p. 363.)

1777.

first gave way; but Washington soon coming up with his select corps, the battle was restored. One division of the British, however, broke through the Americans; the others, after a severe struggle, and after losing nearly four hundred men in killed and wounded, retreated towards New Brunswick. The American loss was somewhat less than that of the British, but among the killed was the highly esteemed and deeply regretted General Mercer.

1. *Course of Cornwallis.*

6. [1]When the dawn of day discovered to Lord Cornwallis the deserted camp of the Americans, he immediately abandoned his own camp, and marched with all expedition towards New Brunswick; fearing lest the baggage and military stores collected there should fall into the hands of the enemy. [2]As he reached Princeton almost at the same time with the American rear-guard, Washington again found himself in imminent danger. His soldiers had taken no repose for the two preceding days, and they were likewise destitute of suitable provisions and clothing; while the pursuing enemy, besides the advantage of numbers, was supplied with all the conveniences, and even the luxuries of the camp.

2. *Situation of each army at this time.*

3. *Movements of Washington.*

7. [3]Not being in a situation to accomplish his designs on New Brunswick, Washington departed abruptly from Princeton, and moved with rapidity towards the upper and mountainous parts of New Jersey, and finally encamped at Morristown,* where he was able to afford shelter and repose to his suffering army. [4]Cornwallis proceeded directly to New Brunswick, where he found the commanding officer greatly alarmed at the movements of Washington, and already engaged in the removal of the baggage and military stores.

4. *Of Cornwallis.*

5. *Successes of Washington.*

8. [5]In a few days Washington entered the field anew,—overran the whole northern part of New Jersey,—and made himself master of Newark, of Elizabethtown, and finally of Woodbridge;† so that the British army, which had lately held all New Jersey in its power, and had caused even Philadelphia to tremble for its safety, found itself now restricted to the two posts, New Brunswick and Amboy;‡ and compelled to lay aside all thoughts of acting offensively, and study self-defence. [6]The people of New Jersey, who, during the ascendency of the British, had been treated with harshness, insult, and cruelty, espe-

6. *Situation and conduct of the people of New Jersey.*

* *Morristown* is a beautiful village, situated on an eminence, thirty-five miles N.E. from Princeton, and eighteen W. from Newark. (See Map, p. 363.)

† *Woodbridge* is a village near Staten Island Sound, fourteen miles S. from Newark. (See Map, p. 363.)

‡ *Amboy* (now Perth Amboy) is situated at the head of Raritan Bay, at the confluence of Raritan River and Staten Island Sound, four miles S. from Woodbridge. It is opposite the southern point of Staten Island. (See Map, p. 363.)

ANALYSIS.

cially by the mercenary Hessian troops, now rose upon their invaders, and united in the common cause of expelling them from the country.

1. *Their successes.*

9. [1]In small parties they scoured the country in every direction,—cutting off stragglers and suddenly falling on the outposts of the enemy, and in several skirmishes gained considerable advantage. At Springfield,* between forty and fifty Germans were killed,[a] wounded, or taken, by an equal number of Jersey militia; and on the 20th of January, General Dickinson, with less than five hundred men, defeated a much larger foraging party of the enemy, near Somerset Court House.† [2]As no important military enterprise took place on either side during the two or three months following the battle of Princeton, Washington seized the interval of repose for inoculating his whole army with the small-pox; a disease which had already commenced its dreadful ravages among his troops, but which was thus stripped of its terrors, and rendered harmless.

a. Jan. 7.

Jan. 20.

2. *Measure taken by Washington for the health of his army.*

3. *Designs of Congress.*

10. [3]Congress in the mean time had returned to Philadelphia, where it was busily occupied with measures for enlarging and supplying the army, and for obtaining aid from foreign powers. [4]So early as the beginning of the year 1776, Silas Deane, a member of congress from Connecticut, was sent to France, for the purpose of influencing the French government in favor of America. Although France secretly favored the cause of the Americans, she was not yet disposed to act openly; yet Mr. Deane found means to obtain supplies from private sources, and even from the public arsenals.

4. *Mr. Deane's embassy to France.*

5. *Dr. Franklin, and others, in Europe.*

11. [5]After the declaration of independence, Benjamin Franklin was likewise sent to Paris; and other agents were sent to different European courts. The distinguished talents, high reputation, and great personal popularity of Dr. Franklin, were highly successful in increasing the general enthusiasm which began to be felt in behalf of the Americans. [6]His efforts were in the end eminently successful: and although France delayed, for a while, the recognition of American independence, yet she began to act with less reserve; and by lending assistance in various ways,—by loans, gifts, supplies of arms, provisions, and clothing, she materially aided the Americans, and showed a disposition not to avoid a rupture with England,

6. *Course taken by France, and aid afforded by her.*

7. *Lafayette, and other volunteers.*

12. [7]The tardy action of the French court was outstripped, however, by the general zeal of the nation,

* *Springfield* is a small village eight miles W. from Newark. (See Map, p. 363.)

† *Somerset Court House* was then at the village of *Millstone*, four miles S. from Somerville, the present county seat, and eight miles W. from New Brunswick. (See Map, p. 363.)

1777.

Numerous volunteers, the most eminent of whom was the young Marquis de Lafayette, offered to risk their fortunes and bear arms in the cause of American liberty. Lafayette actually fitted out a vessel at his own expense, and, in the spring of 1777, arrived in America. He at first enlisted as a volunteer in the army of Washington, declining all pay for his services; but congress soon after bestowed upon him the appointment of major-general.

1. British expedition up the Hudson.

13. [1]Although the main operations of both armies were suspended until near the last of May, a few previous events are worthy of notice. The Americans having collected a quantity of military stores at Peekskill, on the Hudson, in March General Howe despatched a powerful armament up the river to destroy them, when the American troops, seeing defence impossible, set fire to the stores, and abandoned[a] the place. The enemy landed—completed the destruction,—and then returned to New York. [2]On the 13th of April, General Lincoln, then stationed at Boundbrook,* in New Jersey, was surprised by the sudden approach of Lord Cornwallis on both sides of the Raritan.† With difficulty he made his retreat, with the loss of a part of his baggage, and about sixty men.

a. March 23.

April 13.

2. Surprise of Gen. Lincoln.

3. Gen. Tryon's expedition against Danbury.

14. [3]On the 25th of April, 2000 of the enemy, under the command of General Tryon, late royal governor of New York, landed in Connecticut, between Fairfield‡ and Norwalk.§ On the next day they proceeded against Danbury,‖ and destroyed[b] the stores collected there,—burned the town,—and committed many atrocities on the unarmed inhabitants. [4]During their retreat they were assailed[c] by the militia, which had hastily assembled in several detachments, commanded by Generals Arnold, Silliman and Wooster. Pursued and constantly harassed by the Americans, the enemy succeeded in regaining[d] their shipping; having lost, during the expedition, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, nearly three hundred men. [5]The loss of the Americans was much less; but among the number was the veteran General Wooster, then in his seventieth year.

April 25.

b. April 26.

4. Retreat of the enemy.

c. April 27.

d. April 28.

5. Loss of the Americans.

---

* *Boundbrook* is a small village about a mile in length, on the N. side of the Raritan, seven mile. N.W. from New Brunswick. The northern part of the village is called *Middlebrook*. (See Map, p. 363.)

† *Raritan* River, N. J., is formed by several branches, which unite in Somerset County; whence, flowing east, it enters Raritan Bay at the southern extremity of Staten Island. (See Map, p. 363.)

‡ *Fairfield*. See p. 211. The troops landed at Campo Point, in the western part of the town of Fairfield.

§ *Norwalk* village is situated on both sides of Norwalk River, at its entrance into the Sound. It is about forty-five miles N.E. from New York, and ten miles S W. from Fairfield.

‖ *Danbury* is twenty-one miles N. from Norwalk.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Expedition against Sag Harbor.*

May 22.

a. May 23.

2. *Conduct of Col. Meigs rewarded.*

15. [1]Not long afterwards, a daring expedition was planned and executed by a party of Connecticut militia, against a dépôt of British stores which had been collected at Sag Harbor, a post at the eastern extremity of Long Island, and then defended by a detachment of infantry and an armed sloop. On the night of the 22d of May, Colonel Meigs crossed the Sound, and arriving before day, surprised[a] the enemy, destroyed the stores, burned a dozen vessels, and brought off ninety prisoners, without having a single man either killed or wounded. [2]Congress ordered an elegant sword to be presented to Colonel Meigs for his good conduct on this occasion.

3. *Situation of Washington at this time; and plans of the enemy.*

16. [3]While these events were transpiring, Washington remained in his camp at Morristown, gradually increasing in strength by the arrival of new recruits, and waiting the development of the plans of the enemy; who seemed to be hesitating, whether to march upon Philadelphia, in accordance with the plan of the previous campaign, or to seize upon the passes of the Hudson, and thus co-operate directly with a large force under General Burgoyne, then assembling in Canada, with the design of invading the states from that quarter.

4. *Precautions taken against these plans.*

b. See first Note on previous page.

17. [4]As a precaution against both of these movements, the northern forces having first been concentrated on the Hudson, and a large camp under General Arnold having been formed on the western bank of the Delaware, so that the whole could be readily assembled at either point, in the latter part of May Washington broke up his winter quarters, and advanced to Middlebrook,[b]—a strong position within ten miles of the British camp, and affording a better opportunity for watching the enemy and impeding his movements.

5. *Movements of General Howe.*

c. June 12.

6. *Attempts to draw Washington from his position.*

d. June 14.

e. June 19.

f. June 22.

7. *Advance of Washington.*

18. [5]General Howe soon after passed over from New York, which had been his head-quarters during the winter, and concentrated[c] nearly his whole army at New Brunswick; but after having examined the strength of the posts which Washington occupied, he abandoned the design of assaulting him in his camp. [6]He next, with the design of enticing Washington from his position, and bringing on a general engagement, advanced[d] with nearly his whole force to Somerset Court House, with the apparent design of crossing the Delaware. Failing in his object, a few days afterwards he tried another feint, and made as rapid a retreat, first[e] to Brunswick and afterwards[f] to Amboy, and even sent over several detachments to Staten Island, as if with the final intention of abandoning New Jersey.

19. [7]Washington, in the hope of deriving some advantage from the retreat, pushed forward strong detachments

1777.

to harass the British rear, and likewise advanced his whole force to Quibbletown,* five or six miles from his strong camp at Middlebrook. [1]General Howe, taking advantage of the success of his maneuvre, suddenly recalled his troops on the night of the 25th, and the next morning, advanced rapidly towards the Americans; hoping to cut off their retreat and bring on a general action.

1. Gen. Howe's attempt to take advantage of these movements.

June 25.

June 26.

20. [2]Washington, however, had timely notice of this movement, and discerning his danger, with the utmost celerity regained his camp at Middlebrook. [3]The enemy only succeeded in engaging the brigade of Lord Stirling; which, after maintaining a severe action, retreated with little loss. [4]Failing in this second attempt, the British again withdrew to Amboy, and, on the 30th, passed finally over to Staten Island; leaving Washington in undisturbed possession of New Jersey.

2. Washington's escape from the danger.

3. Partial success of the enemy.

4. Their retreat.

June 30.

21. [5]A few days later, the American army received the cheering intelligence of the capture of Major-general Prescott, the commander of the British troops on Rhode Island. Believing himself perfectly secure while surrounded by a numerous fleet, and at the head of a powerful army, he had taken convenient quarters at some distance from camp, and with few guards about his person. On the night of the 10th of July, Colonel Barton, with about forty militia, crossed over to the island in whaleboats, and having silently reached the lodgings of Prescott, seized him in bed, and conducted him safely through his own troops and fleet, back to the mainland. This exploit gave the Americans an officer of equal rank to exchange for General Lee.

5. Capture of General Prescott.

July 10.

22. [6]The British fleet, under the command of Admiral Howe, then lying at Sandy Hook, soon moved to Prince's Bay,† and thence to the northern part of the island. [7]This movement, together with the circumstance that Burgoyne, with a powerful army, had already taken Ticonderoga, at first induced Washington to believe that the design of the British general was to proceed up the Hudson, and unite with Burgoyne. [8]Having taken about 18,000 of the army on board, and leaving a large force, under General Clinton, for the defence of New York, the fleet at length sailed from Sandy Hook on the 23d of July, and being soon after heard from, off the capes of Delaware, Washington put his forces in motion towards Philadelphia.

6. Movement of the British fleet.

7. Apparent design of the British general.

8. Sailing of the fleet, and movements of Washington.

July 23.

---

* *Quibbletown*, now called *New Market*, is a small village five miles E. from Middlebrook. (See Map, p. 363.)

† *Prince's Bay* is on the S.E. coast of Staten Island.

ANALYSIS.

Aug. 25.

1. *Farther movements of the British fleet and army.*

2. *Determination of Washington.*

Sept. 11.

3. *Battle of Brandywine.*

23. [1]The fleet having sailed up the Chesapeake, the troops landed near the head of Elk* River, in Maryland, on the 25th of August, and immediately commenced their march towards the American army, which had already arrived and advanced beyond Wilmington. [2]The superior force of the enemy soon obliged Washington to withdraw across the Brandywine,† where he determined to make a stand for the defence of Philadelphia. [3]On the morning of the 11th of September, the British force, in two columns, advanced against the American position. The Hessians under General Knyphausen proceeded against Chad's Ford,‡ and commenced a spirited attack, designing to deceive the Americans with the belief that the whole British army was attempting the passage of the Brandywine at that point.

4. *Farther events of the battle.*

24. [4]Washington, deceived by false intelligence respecting the movements of the enemy, kept his force concentrated near the passage of Chad's Ford; while, in the mean time, the main body of the British army, led by Generals Howe and Cornwallis, crossed the forks of the Brandywine above, and descended against the American right, then commanded by General Sullivan; which, being attacked before it had properly formed, soon gave way. The day terminated in the success of all the leading plans of the enemy.

a. Sept. 12.

5. *Retreat of the Americans, and losses on each side.*

6. *Pulaski and Lafayette.*

25. [5]During the night, the American army retreated to Chester,§ and the next day[a] to Philadelphia; having lost, during the action, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, more than a thousand men; while the British loss was not half that number. [6]Count Pulaski, a brave Polander, who had joined the Americans, distinguished himself in this action; as did also the Marquis Lafayette, who was wounded while endeavoring to rally the fugitives. Congress soon after promoted Count Pulaski to the rank of brigadier, with the command of the cavalry.

7. *Next movements of Washington.*

PLACES WEST OF PHILADELPHIA.

26. [7]After a few days' rest, Washington resolved to risk another general action, before yielding Philadelphia to the enemy. He therefore recrossed the Schuylkill, and advanced

---

* *Elk River* is formed by the union of two small creeks at Elkton, half way between the Susquehanna and the Delaware, after which its course is S.W., thirteen miles, to the Chesapeake.

† *Brandywine Creek* rises in the northern part of Chester County, Pennsylvania, and flowing S.E., passes through the northern part of Delaware, uniting with Christiana Creek at Wilmington. (See Map; also Map, p. 223.)

‡ *Chad's Ford* is a passage of the Brandywine, twenty-five miles S.W. from Philadelphia. (See Map.)

§ *Chester*, originally called *Upland*, is situated on the W. bank o. Delaware River, fourteen miles S.W. from Philadelphia. (See Map

against the British near Goshen;* but soon after the advanced parties had met,[a] a violent fall of rain compelled both armies to defer the engagement. [1]A few days after, General Wayne, who had been detached with 1500 men, with orders to conceal his movements and harass the rear of the enemy, was himself surprised at night,[b] near Paoli,† and three hundred of his men were killed.

1777.

a. Sept. 16.

1. *General Wayne surprised.*

b. Sept. 20, 21.

27. [2]On a movement of the British up the right bank of the Schuylkill, Washington, fearing for the safety of his extensive magazines and military stores deposited at Reading,‡ abandoned Philadelphia, and took post at Pottsgrove.§ Congress had previously adjourned to Lancaster. On the 23d, the British army crossed the Schuylkill; and on the 26th entered Philadelphia without opposition. The main body of the army encamped at Germantown,‖ six miles distant.

2. *The next movements of the two armies.*

Sept. 23.

Sept. 26.

28. [3]Washington now passed down the Schuylkill to Skippack¶ Creek, and soon after, learning that the British force had been weakened by the withdrawal of several regiments for the reduction of some forts on the Delaware, he attacked the remainder at Germantown, on the 4th of October; but after a severe action, the Americans were repulsed, with the loss of about 1200 men in killed, wounded and prisoners; while that of the enemy was only about half that number. [4]Soon after this event, General Howe broke up his encampment at Germantown, and moved[c] his whole force to Philadelphia.

3. *Battle of Germantown.*

Oct. 4

4. *General Howe at Philadelphia.*

c. Oct. 19.

29. [5]No movement of importance was made by either army until the 22d of the month; previous to which time, important events had transpired in the north, resulting in the total defeat and capture of a powerful British army under General Burgoyne. A connected account of these transactions requires that we should now go back a few months in the order of time, to the beginning of the campaign in the north.

5. *Important events at the North.*

30. [6]Early in the spring of 1777, General Burgoyne, who had served under Governor Carleton in the previous

6. *Gen. Burgoyne.*

---

* *Goshen* is about eighteen miles W. from Philadelphia, and a short distance E. from West chester. (See Map, preceding page.)

† *Paoli* is a small village nearly twenty miles N.W. from Philadelphia. Two miles S.W. from the village is the place where Gen. Wayne was defeated. A monument has been erected on the spot, and the adjoining field is appropriated to a military parade ground. (See Map, preceding page.)

‡ *Reading* is a large and flourishing manufacturing village, on the N.E. branch of the Schuylkill, fifty miles (in a direct line) N.W. from Philadelphia.

§ *Pottsgrove* is on the N.E. side of the Schuylkill, about thirty-five miles N.W. from Philadelphia. (See Map, preceding page.)

‖ *Germantown* lies on a street three miles long, and is centrally distant six miles N.W. from Philadelphia. (See Map, p. 248.)

¶ *Skippack* Creek is an eastern branch of Perkiomen Creek, which it enters about twenty-three miles N.W. from Philadelphia. *Perkiomen* Creek enters the Schuylkill from the N., about twenty-two miles from Philadelphia. (See Map, preceding page.)

ANALYSIS.

campaign, arrived[a] at Quebec; having received the command of a powerful force, which was designed to invade the states by the way of Lake Champlain and the Hudson.

a. May 6.

June 16. *His army.*

31. On the 16th of June, Burgoyne, at the head of his army, which consisted of more than seven thousand British and German troops, and several thousand Canadians and Indians, left St. John's for Crown Point, where he established[b] magazines; and then proceeded to invest[c] Ticonderoga.* [1]At the same time a detachment of about two thousand men, mostly Canadians aud Indians, proceeded by the way of Oswego, against Fort Schuyler,[d] on the Mokawk; hoping to make an easy conquest of that post, and afterwards to rejoin the main army on the Hudson.

b. Arrived June 30.

c. July 2.

1. *Expedition against Fort Schuyler.*

d. N. p. 376.

2. *Course pursued by St. Clair.*

32. [2]On the approach of the enemy, General St. Clair, who commanded at Ticonderoga with a force of but little more than 3000 men, unable to defend all the outworks, withdrew to the immediate vicinity of the fort. [3]The British troops, now extending their lines in front of the peninsula, invested the place on the northwest; while their German allies took post on the opposite side of the lake, in the rear of Mount Independence, which had likewise been fortified, and was then occupied by the Americans. [4]St Clair had at first contemplated the erection of fortifications on Mount Defiance, which commands the peninsula; but finding his numbers insufficient to garrison any new works, the design was abandoned.

3. *Investment of Ticonderoga.*

4. *Design of fortifying Mt. Defiance abandoned.*

5. *Fortified by the British.*

33. [5]The English generals, perceiving the advantage that would be gained if their artillery could be planted on the summit of Mount Defiance, immediately undertook the arduous work; and on the fifth[e] of the month the road was completed, the artillery mounted, and ready to open its fire on the following morning. [6]St. Clair, seeing no possibility of a longer resistance, immediately took the resolution to evacuate the works, while yet it remained in his power to do so. Accordingly, on the night[f] of the fifth

e. July 5.

6. *Evacuation of Ticonderoga.*

f. July 5, 6.

* The important fortress of *Ticonderoga* was situated at the mouth of the outlet of Lake George, on a peninsula of about 500 acres, elevated 100 feet above Lake Champlain, and surrounded, on three sides, by rocks steep and difficult of access. The only approachable point to the fort was across the neck of the peninsula, a part of which was covered by a swamp, and the other part defended by a breastwork. It was, however, commanded by *Mount Defiance*, a hill 750 feet high, on the S. side of the outlet, and one mile distant. *Mount Independence* is an elevation half a mile distant, on the opposite side of the Lake. (See Map.)

1777.

of July, the fires were suffered to burn out, the tents were struck, and amid profound silence the troops commenced their retreat; but, unfortunately, the accidental burning of a building on Mount Independence, revealed their situation to the enemy.

34. [1]On the following day, the baggage, stores, and provisions, which had been embarked on South River, or Wood Creek,[a] were overtaken and destroyed at Skeenesborough.[b] The rear division of the main body, which had retreated by way of Mount Independence, was overtaken at Hubbardton,* on the morning of the 7th, and after an obstinate action, was routed with considerable loss. At length the remnants of the several divisions arrived[c] at Fort Edward, on the Hudson, the Head-quarters of General Schuyler; having lost, in the late reverses, nearly two hundred pieces of artillery, besides a large quantity of warlike stores and provisions.

1. *Retreat and reverses of the Americans.*

a. N. p. 230.

b. Note p. 348, and Map, p. 273.

July 7.

c. July 12.

35. [2]Unable to retain Fort Edward with his small force, which then numbered but little more than four thousand men, General Schuyler soon after evacuated that post and gradually fell back along the river until he had retired to the islands at the mouth of the Mohawk. [3]Here, by the arrival of the New England militia under General Lincoln, and several detachments from the regular army, his number was increased, by the middle of August, to thirteen thousand men. [4]The celebrated Polish hero, Kosciusko, was in the army as chief engineer.

2. *Course of General Schuyler*

3. *Reenforcements received by him.*

4. *Kosciusko*

36. [5]General Schuyler, in his retreat, had so obstructed the roads, by destroying the bridges, and felling immense trees in the way, that Burgoyne did not reach Fort Edward until the 30th of July. [6]Here finding his army greatly straitened for want of provisions, and it being difficult to transport them from Ticonderoga, through the wilderness, he despatched[d] Colonel Baum, a German officer of distinction, with 500 men, to seize a quantity of stores which the Americans had collected at Bennington.†

5. *Difficulties of Burgoyne.*

July 30.

6. *His attempt to supply his army.*

d. Aug. 6.

37. [7]This party, being met[e] near Bennington by Colonel Stark, at the head of the New Hampshire militia, was entirely defeated; and a reenforcement which arrived the same day, after the discomfiture, was likewise defeated by Colonel Warner, who fortunately arrived with a continental regiment at the same time. The loss of the enemy in the two engagements was about seven hundred men,—

7. *Defeat of his troops near Bennington.*

e. Aug. 16.

* *Hubbardton* is in Rutland Co., Vermont, about seventeen miles S.E. from Ticonderoga.

† *Bennington* village, in Bennington County, Vermont, is about thirty-five miles S.E. from Fort Edward. The battle was fought on the western border of the town of Bennington, and partly within the town of Hoosick, in the state of New York

ANALYSIS.

the greater part prisoners,—while that of the Americans was less than one hundred.

1. *Effect of the battle of Bennington.*

38. [1]The battle of Bennington, so fortunate to the Americans, caused a delay of the enemy at Fort Edward nearly a month; during which time news arrived of the defeat of the expedition against Fort Schuyler.* [2]This fortress, under the command of Colonel Gansevoort, being invested[a] by the enemy, General Herkimer collected the militia in its vicinity, and marched to its relief; but falling into an ambuscade he was defeated,[b] and mortally wounded. At the same time, however, a successful sortie from the fort penetrated the camp of the besiegers, killed many, and carried off a large quantity of baggage. Soon after, on the news of the approach of Arnold to the relief of the fort, the savage allies of the British fled, and St. Leger was forced to abandon[c] the siege.

2. *Siege and defence of Fort Schuyler.*

a. Aug. 3.

b. Aug. 6.

c. Aug. 22.

3. *Next movement of Burgoyne.*

d. Sept. 13, 14.

4. *Positions of the two armies.*

39. [3]About the middle of September Burgoyne crossed[d] the Hudson with his whole army, and took a position on the heights and plains of Saratoga.† [4]General Gates, who had recently been appointed to the command of the northern American army, had moved forward from the mouth of the Mohawk, and was then encamped near Stillwater.‡ Burgoyne continued to advance, until, on the 18th, he had arrived within two miles of the American camp. [5]On the 19th of September some skirmishing commenced be-

5. *First battle of Stillwater.*

Sept. 19.

* *Fort Schuyler* was situated at the head of navigation of the Mohawk, and at the carrying place between that river and Wood Creek, whence boats passed to Oswego. In 1758 *Fort Stanwix* was erected on the spot; but in 1776 it was repaired and named *Fort Schuyler*. The fort occupied a part of the site of the present village of Rome, in Oneida County. It has been confounded by some with a Fort Schuyler which was built, in the French wars, near the place where Utica now stands, but which, at the time of the revolution, had gone to decay. (See Map.)

† *Saratoga* is a town on the west bank of the Hudson, from twenty-six to thirty-two miles north from Albany. Fish Creek runs through the northern part of the town. On the north side of its entrance into the Hudson is the village of Schuylerville, immediately south of which, on the ruins of Fort Hardy, which was built during the French and Indian wars, occurred the surrender of Burgoyne. The place then called Saratoga was a small settlement on the south side of Fish Creek.—(The map on the left shows the towns of Saratoga and Stillwater, with the locality of the battles of Sept. 12th and Oct. 7th; that on the right, the camps of Gates and Burgoyne, at the time of the surrender, with the site of Fort Hardy.)

‡ The town of *Stillwater* is on the W. bank of the Hudson, from eighteen to twenty-six miles N. from Albany. The village of the same name adjoins the river, about twenty-one miles N. from Albany In this town, three or four miles N. from the village, were fought the battles of Sept. 19th and Oct. 7th. (See Map.)

tween scouting parties of the two armies, which soon brought on a general battle, that continued three hours without any intermission. Night put an end to the contest. The Americans withdrew to their camp, while the enemy passed the night under arms on the field of battle. Both parties claimed the victory, but the loss of the enemy was the greatest. **1777.**

40. [1]Burgoyne now intrenched himself for the purpose of awaiting the expected co-operation of General Clinton, from New York. His Canadian and Indian forces began to desert him, and, cut off in a great measure from the means of obtaining supplies of provisions, he was soon obliged to curtail his soldiers' rations. [2]On the 7th of October, an advance of the enemy towards the American left wing, again brought on a general battle, which was fought on nearly the same ground as the former, and with the most desperate bravery on both sides; but at length the British gave way, with the loss of some of their best officers, a considerable quantity of baggage, and more than four hundred men, while the loss of the Americans did not exceed eighty.

1. Situation of Burgoyne's army

Oct. 7.

2. Battle of the 7th of October.

41. [3]On the night[a] after the battle the enemy fell back to a stronger position, and the Americans instantly occupied their abandoned camp. [4]Soon after, Burgoyne retired[b] to Saratoga, and endeavored to retreat to Fort Edward; but finding himself surrounded, his provisions reduced to a three days' supply, and despairing of relief from General Clinton, he was reduced to the humiliating necessity of proposing terms of capitulation; and, on the 17th of October, he surrendered his army prisoners of war.

a. Oct. 7, 8.

3. Next movements of the two armies.

4. Circumstances that compelled Burgoyne to surrender.

b. Oct. 8, 9.

Oct. 17.

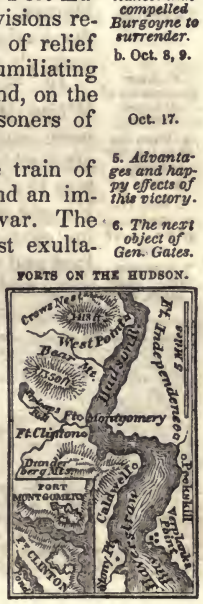
42. [5]The Americans thereby acquired a fine train of brass artillery, nearly five thousand muskets, and an immense quantity of other ordinary implements of war. The news of this brilliant victory caused the greatest exultation throughout the country, and doubts were no longer entertained of the final independence of the American colonies.

5. Advantages and happy effects of this victory.

6. The next object of Gen. Gates.

43. [6]The army of Gates was immediately put in motion to stop the devastations of General Clinton, who had proceeded up the Hudson with a force of 3000 men, with the hope of making a diversion in favor of Burgoyne. [7]Forts Clinton* and Montgomery, after a severe assault, fell into

FORTS ON THE HUDSON.



* *Fort Clinton* was on the W. side of the Hudson River, at the northern extremity of Rockland County, and on the S. side of Peploops Kill. On the north side of the same stream, in Orange County, was *Fort Montgomery*. (See Map.)

ANALYSIS.

7. *Movements of General Clinton.*
a. Oct. 6.
b. N. p. 225
c. Oct. 13.

his hands,[a]—and the village of Kingston[b] was wantonly burned,[c]—but on hearing the news of Burgoyne's surrender, Clinton immediately withdrew to New York. [1]At the same time, Ticonderoga and all the forts on the northern frontier were abandoned by the British, and occupied by the Americans. [2]In the latter part of October, 4000 of the victorious troops of the north proceeded to join the army of Washington; and we now return[d] to the scene of events in the vicinity of Philadelphia.

1. *The Northern posts.*
2. *Destination of the troops of the north.*
d. See p. 373.

3. *The command of the Delaware.*

44. [3]A short distance below Philadelphia, the Americans had fortified Forts Mifflin* and Mercer,† on opposite sides of the Delaware, by which they retained the command of the river, and thus prevented any communication between the British army and their fleet, then moored at the head of Delaware Bay.

4. *Defence and abandonment of Forts Mercer and Mifflin.*

45. [4]Both these forts were attacked by the enemy on the 22d of October. The attack on Fort Mercer, then garrisoned by less than 500 men, was made by nearly 2000 Hessian grenadiers, who, after forcing an extensive outwork, were finally compelled to retire with a loss of nearly 400 of their number. The Hessian general, Count Donop, was mortally wounded, and fell into the hands of the Americans. The attack on Fort Mifflin was at first alike unsuccessful; but after a series of attacks, the fort was at length abandoned,[e]—the garrison retiring to Fort Mercer. In a few days Fort Mercer was abandoned,[f] and the navigation of the Delaware was thus opened to the enemy's shipping.

e. Nov. 16.
f. Nov. 18.

5. *Other movements of the two armies.*
g. From the 2d to the 8th of Dec.
h. Dec. 8.
i. Dec. 11.

46. [5]Soon after these events, Washington advanced to White Marsh,‡ where numerous unsuccessful attempts[g] were made by Howe to draw him into an engagement; after which, the British general retired[h] to winter quarters in Philadelphia. [6]Washington encamped[i] at Valley Forge,§ where his troops passed a rigorous winter, suffering extreme distress, from the want of suitable supplies of food and clothing. [7]Many officers, unable to obtain their pay, and disheartened with the service, resigned their

6. *Distresses of the Americans.*
7. *Resignations; murmurs, &c.*

* *Fort Mifflin* was at the lower extremity of Mud Island, near the Pennsylvania side of the Delaware, seven or eight miles below Philadelphia. It is still kept in repair, and is garrisoned by U. S. troops. (See Map, p. 248.)

† *Fort Mercer*, now in ruins, was a little above, at Red Bank, on the New Jersey side, and little more than a mile distant from Fort Mifflin. It was then, and is now, enshrouded by a gloomy pine forest. (See Map.)

‡ *White Marsh* is situated on Wissahickon Creek, eleven miles N.W. from Philadelphia. (See Map, p. 248.)

§ *Valley Forge* is a deep and rugged hollow, on the S.W. side of the Schuylkill, twenty miles N.W. from Philadelphia. Upon the mountainous flanks of this valley, and upon a vast plain which overlooks it and the adjoining country, the army of Washington encamped. Through the valley flows Valley Creek. At its junction with the Schuylkill is now the small village of Valley Forge (See Map, p. 372.)

commissions; and murmurs arose in various quarters, not only in the army, but even among powerful and popular leaders in congress. **1777.**

47. [1]The brilliant victory at Saratoga was contrasted with the reverses of Washington in New York, New Jersey, and Pennsylvania; and a plot was originated for placing General Gates at the head of the armies. Washington, however, never relaxed his exertions in the cause of his country; and the originators of the plot at length received the merited indignation of the army and the people.

1. Design to supplant Gen. Washington.

48. [2]After the colonies had thrown off their allegiance to the British crown, and had established separate governments in the states, there arose the farther necessity for some common bond of union, which would better enable them to act in concert, as one nation. [3]In the summer of 1775, Benjamin Franklin had proposed to the American congress articles of confederation and union among the colonies; but the majority in congress not being then prepared for so decisive a step, the subject was for the time dropped, but was resumed again shortly before the declaration of independence, in the following year.

2. Necessity of some bond of union among the states.

3. Proposition of Dr. Franklin

49. [4]On the 11th of June,[a] congress appointed a committee to prepare a plan of confederation. A plan was reported by the committee in July following, and, after various changes, was finally adopted by congress on the 15th of November, 1777. [5]Various causes, the principal of which was a difference of opinion with respect to the disposition of the vacant western lands, prevented the immediate ratification of these articles by all the states; but at length those states which claimed the western lands having ceded them to the Union, for the common benefit of the whole, the articles of confederation were ratified by Maryland, the last remaining state, on the first of March, 1781; at which time they became the constitution of the country.

4. Action of Congress respecting a plan of confederation.

a. 1776.

5. Ratification of the articles of confederation by the States.

50. [6]The confederation, however, amounted to little more than a mere league of friendship between the states; for although it invested congress with many of the powers of sovereignty, it was defective as a permanent government, owing to the want of all means to enforce its decrees. [7]While the states were bound together by a sense of common danger, the evils of the plan were little noticed; but after the close of the war they became so prominent as to make a revision of the system necessary.[b]

6. Character of the confederation.

7. What led to a revision of the system.

b. See p. 410.

ANALYSIS.

CHAPTER V.

Subject of Chapter V.

EVENTS OF 1778.

1. Expectations of the British ministry, and vain opposition to their policy.

1. [1]Previous to the defeat of Burgoyne, the British ministry had looked forward, with confidence, to the speedy termination of the war, by the conquest of the rebellious colonies. The minority in parliament endeavored, in vain, to stay the course of violent measures, and the warlike policy of the ministers was sustained by powerful majorities in both houses. [2]But the unexpected news of the surrender of the entire northern British army, produced a great change in the aspect of affairs, and plunged the nation into a dejection as profound as their hopes had been sanguine, and the promises of ministers magnificent.

2. Effect produced by the surrender of Burgoyne.

3. Conciliatory bills of Lord North.

a. Feb.

b. March 11.

2. [3]Lord North, compelled by the force of public opinion, now came forward[a] with two conciliatory bills, by which England virtually conceded all that had been the cause of controversy between the two countries, and offered more than the colonies had asked or desired previous to the declaration of independence. These bills passed rapidly through parliament, and received the royal assent.

4. Proposals made to congress, and the result.

5. Unworthy act of one of the commissioners.

3. [4]Commissioners were then sent to America, with proposals for an amicable adjustment of differences; but these were promptly rejected by the congress, which refused to treat with Great Britain until she should either withdraw her fleets and armies, or, in positive and express terms, acknowledge the independence of the states. [5]One of the commissioners then attempted to gain the same ends by private intrigue and bribery,—which coming to the knowledge of congress, that body declared it incompatible with their honor to hold any correspondence or intercourse with him.

6. Treaty with France.

Feb. 6.

7. By whom signed, and when ratified.

4. [6]Soon after the rejection of the British terms of accommodation, congress received the news of the acknowledgment of American independence by the court of France, and the conclusion of a treaty of alliance and commerce between the two countries. [7]The treaty was signed the sixth of February, by Benjamin Franklin, Silas Deane, and Arthur Lee, on the part of America, and was ratified by congress on the fourth of May following.

8. Stipulations of the treaty.

5. [8]In the second part of the treaty it was stipulated, that should war occur between France and England, the two parties should assist each other with council and with arms, and that neither should conclude truce or peace

with Great Britain without the consent of the other. [1]This treaty was considered equivalent to a declaration of war by France against Great Britain; and the two European powers made the most active preparations for the approaching contest. **1778.**

1. How this treaty was regarded.

6. [2]A French fleet, under command of Count D'Estaing, was despatched[a] to America, with the design of blockading the British fleet in the Delaware, while Washington should hold the land forces in check in New Jersey. [3]But Admiral Howe had already anticipated the scheme, and before the arival of D'Estaing, had sailed for New York, where all the British forces had been ordered to concentrate. General Clinton, who had succeeded General Howe in the command of the land forces, evacuated Philadelphia on the 18th of June, and with about eleven thousand men, and an immense quantity of baggage and provisions, commenced his retreat towards New York.

2. First hostile measures of France.

a. April 18.

3. The movements of Admiral Howe and Gen. Clinton.

June 18.

7. [4]Washington, whose numbers exceeded those of Clinton, followed cautiously with the main body of his army, while detachments were sent forward to co-operate with the Jersey militia in harassing the enemy, and retarding their march. [5]The commander-in-chief was anxious to try a general engagement, but his opinion was overruled in a council of officers. [6]Nevertheless, when the British had arrived at Monmouth,* Washington, unwilling to permit them to reach the secure heights of Middletown† without a battle, ordered General Lee, who had been previously exchanged, to attack their rear.

4. Of Washington.

5. General engagement prevented.

6. Orders given Lee.

8. [7]On the morning of the 28th, the light-horse of Lafayette advanced against the enemy, but, being briskly charged by Cornwallis and Clinton, was forced to fall back. Lee, surprised by the sudden charge of the enemy, ordered a retreat across a morass in his rear, for the purpose of gaining a more favorable position; but part of his troops, mistaking the order, continued to retreat, and Lee was compelled to follow, briskly pursued by the enemy. At this moment, Washington, coming up, and both surprised and vexed at observing the retreat, or rather flight of the troops, addressed Lee with some warmth, and ordered him to rally his troops and oppose the enemy.

7. Events on the morning of the 28th.

---

* *Monmouth*, now the village of *Freehold*, in Monmouth County, is about eighteen miles S.E. from New Brunswick. The principal part of the battle was fought about a mile and a half N.W. from the village, on the road to Englishtown. (See Map; also Map, p. 363.)

† *Middletown* is a small village twelve miles N.E. from Monmouth, on the road to Sandy Hook. The *Heigh's* mentioned are the *Nevisink Hills*, bordering Sandy Hook Bay on the south. (See Map, p 363.)

BATTLE OF MONMOUTH.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Progress and end of the contest.*

9. [1]Stung by the reproaches of his general, Lee made extreme exertions to rally, and, having disposed his troops on more advantageous ground, opposed a powerful check to the enemy, until at length, overpowered by numbers, he was forced to fall back, which he did, however, without any confusion. The main body soon coming up in separate detachments, the battle became general, and was continued until night put an end to the contest. [2]Washington kept his troops under arms during the night, designing to renew the battle on the coming morning; but Clinton, in the mean time, silently drew off his troops, and proceeded rapidly on his route towards New York.

2. *Events of the following night.*

3. *Losses sustained.*

10. [3]The British left upon the field of battle about three hundred killed; while the loss of the Americans was less than seventy. On both sides many died of the intense heat of the weather, added to the fatigue of the day. [4]General Lee, who had been deeply irritated by the reprimand of Washington on the day of battle, addressed to him two haughty and offensive letters, demanding reparation. [5]The result was the arrest of Lee, and his trial, by a court martial, on the charges of disobedience of orders, misbehavior before the enemy, and disrespect to the commander-in-chief. He was found guilty, and was suspended from his command one year. He never rejoined the army, but died in seclusion at Philadelphia, just before the close of the war.

4. *Conduct of Gen. Lee.*

5. *His arrest, trial, &c.*

6. *Subsequent movements of the two armies.*

11. [6]After the battle of Monmouth, the British proceeded without farther molestation to Sandy Hook, whence they were taken on board the British fleet, and transported[a] to New York. Washington proceeded to White Plains, where he remained until late in autumn, when he retired to winter quarters at Middlebrook,[b] in New Jersey. [7]On the 11th of July the fleet of Count D'Estaing appeared off Sandy Hook, but being unable to pass the bar at the entrance of New York Bay, was forced to abandon the design of attacking the British fleet, and, by the advice of Washington, sailed for Newport, in Rhode Island. [8]Soon after the departure of D'Estaing, several vessels arrived at New York, and joined the British fleet; when Admiral Howe, although his squadron was still inferior to that of the French, hastened to Rhode Island for the relief of General Pigot.

a. July 5.

b. N. p. 369.

7. *Fleet of Count D'Estaing.*

8. *The British fleet.*

9. *Movements of Generals Sullivan, Greene, and Lafayette.*

12. [9]In the mean time General Sullivan, with a detachment from Washington's army, and with reenforcements from New England, had arrived at Providence, with the design of co-operating with the French fleet in an attack on the British force stationed at Newport. Sullivan was subsequently joined by Generals Greene and Lafayette,

and the army took post at Tiverton,[a] whence, on the 9th of August, it crossed the eastern passage of the bay, and landed on the northern part of Rhode Island.[b] 1778.

a. N. p. 193, and Map, p. 215.
b. N. p. 217.

13. [1]A simultaneous attack by land and sea had been planned against the British; but, on the morning of the tenth, the fleet of Lord Howe appeared in sight, and D'Estaing immediately sailed out to give him battle. [2]While each commander was striving to get the advantage of position, and at the very moment when they were about to engage, a violent storm arose, which parted[c] the combatants, and greatly damaged the fleets.

1. *What prevented an attack.* Aug. 10.
2. *Naval engagement prevented.*
c. Aug. 12.

14. [3]On the 20th, D'Estaing returned to Newport, but soon sailed[d] to Boston to repair damages, contrary to the strong remonstrances of the Americans. The British fleet returned to New York. [4]General Sullivan, in the mean time, had advanced to the siege of Newport, but seeing the allied fleet retire, he was forced to withdraw his army. The English pursued, and attacked[e] him in the northern part of the island, but were repulsed with considerable loss. On the night of the 30th Sullivan regained the mainland, narrowly escaping being intercepted by General Clinton, who arrived the next[f] day, with a force of four thousand men and a light squadron, for the relief of Newport.

Aug. 20.
3. *Course taken by the fleets.*
d. Aug. 22.
4. *The army of Sullivan in the mean time.*
e. Aug. 29.
Aug. 30.
f. Aug. 31

15. [5]Finding Newport secure, General Clinton returned to New York, and soon after detached General Grey on an expedition against the southern shores of Massachusetts, and the adjoining islands. Arriving[g] in Buzzard's Bay,* a place of resort for American privateers, he burned about seventy sail of shipping,—destroyed a large amount of property in New Bedford† and Fair Haven, and made a descent[h] upon Martha's Vineyard. A similar expedition,[i] under the command of Captain Ferguson, was soon after undertaken against Little Egg Harbor,‡ in New Jersey, by which a considerable amount of stores fell into the hands[j] of the enemy.

5. *Expeditions of Gen. Grey and Capt. Ferguson.*
g. Sept. 5
h. Sept. 7.
i. Sailed Sept. 30.
j. Oct. 6.

16. [6]In the early part of the summer, a force of about 1600 tories and Indians, under the command of Col. John Butler and the Indian chieftain Brandt, appeared near the flourishing settlements in the valley of Wyoming,§ situated

6 *Attack on Wyoming.*

* *Buzzard's Bay* lies on the S. coast of Massachusetts, E. from Rhode Island. The distance from the head of this bay across the peninsula of Cape Cod is only five miles.

† *New Bedford* is a large village on the west side of an arm of the sea that sets up from Buzzard's Bay. A bridge near the centre of the village connects it with *Fair Haven* on the E. side of the stream.

‡ *Little Egg Harbor* Bay, River, and Town, lie at the southeastern extremity of Burlington Co., about sixty-five miles south from Sandy Hook. The British troops passed about fifteen miles up the river.

§ The name *Wyoming* was applied to a beautiful valley on both sides of the Susquehanna in the present county of Luzerne, Pennsylvania. The small village of Wyoming is on the W side of the Susquehanna, nearly opposite Wilkesbarre.

ANALYSIS.

on the banks of the Susquehanna. About 400 of the settlers, who marched out to meet the enemy, were defeated[a] with the loss of nearly their whole number. The fort at Wyoming was then besieged, but the garrison, being drawn out to hold a parley with the besiegers, was attacked, and nearly the whole number was slain.[b]

a. July 3.

b. July 4.

1. *Farther cruelties of the assailants.*

17. [1]The remnant in the fort, having sent a flag of truce to know what terms must be expected, received in reply, "The hatchet." When compelled to surrender at last, their women and children were shut up in the houses and barracks, and consumed in one general conflagration. The last fort offered no resistance, and shared the same fate. All the settlements were then ravaged and desolated by fire and sword, with the most cold-blooded and remorseless barbarity. The tories appeared to vie with, and even to surpass the savages in these scenes of horror.

2. *Retaliatory expeditions.*

18. [2]A retaliatory expedition was undertaken in October, against the Indians on the upper branches of the Susquehanna; and one early in the following year, by Col. Clark, against the settlements established by the Canadians west of the Alleghanies. [3]The tory settlers, filled with dismay, hastened to swear allegiance to the United States; and the retreats of the hostile tribes on the Wabash* were penetrated, and their country desolated.

3. *Their success.*

4. *Attack on Cherry Valley.*

c Nov. 11, 12.

19. [4]In November, a repetition of the barbarities of Wyoming was attempted by a band of tories, regulars, and Indians, who made an attack[c] upon the Cherry Valley† settlement in New York. Many of the inhabitants were killed, and others were carried into captivity; but the fort, containing about two hundred soldiers, was not taken. [5]These excursions were the only events, requiring notice, which took place in the middle and northern sections of the country during the remainder of the year 1778. The scene of events was now changed to the south, which henceforth became the principal theatre on which the British conducted offensive operations.

5. *Remainder of the year. Scene of events changed.*

6. *Movements of the hostile fleets.*

d. Nov. 3.

e. Nov. 3.

20. [6]Early in November the Count D'Estaing sailed[d] for the West Indies, for the purpose of attacking the British dependencies in that quarter. On the same day, the British admiral Hotham sailed[e] from Sandy Hook; and in December, he was followed by Admiral Byron, who

* The *Wabash* River rises in the western part of Ohio, and after running a short distance N.W. into Indiana, passes S.W. through that state, and thence S. to the Ohio River, forming about half the western boundary of Indiana.

† *Cherry Valley*, town and village, is in Otsego Co., N. Y., fifty-two miles W. from Albany, and about fifteen S. from the Mohawk River. It was first settled in 1740. The luxuriant growth of Wild Cherry gave it the name of *Cherry Valley*, which was for a time applied to a large section of country S. and W. of the present village.

had superseded Admiral Howe in the command of the British fleet. [1]In November Col. Campbell was despatched[a] from New York, by General Clinton, with a force of about 2000 men, against Georgia, the most feeble of the southern provinces.

1778.

1. *Colonel Campbell sent against Georgia.* a. Nov. 27.

21. [2]Late in December the troops landed[b] near Savannah, which was then defended by the American general, Robert Howe, with about 600 regular troops, and a few hundred militia. General Howe had recently returned from an unsuccessful expedition against East Florida, and his troops, still enfeebled by disease, were in a poor condition to face the enemy. Being attacked[c] near the city, and defeated, with the broken remains of his army he retreated up the Savannah, and took shelter by crossing into South Carolina.

2. *Loss of Savannah* b. Dec. 29.

c. Dec. 29.

22. [3]Thus the capital of Georgia fell into the hands of the enemy;—the only important acquisition which they had made during the year. The two hostile armies at the north, after two years' maneuvering, had been brought back to nearly the same relative positions which they occupied at the close of 1776; and the offending party in the beginning, now intrenching himself on New York Island, was reduced to the use of the pickaxe and the spade for defence. [4]In the language of Washington, "The hand of Providence had been so conspicuous in all this, that he who lacked faith must have been worse than an infidel; and he, more than wicked, who had not gratitude to acknowledge his obligations."

3. *Result of the campaign, and the relative positions of the two armies at its close.*

4. *How this result was viewed by Washington.*

CHAPTER VI.

EVENTS OF 1779.

Subject of Chapter VI.

1. [5]The military operations during the year 1779, were carried on in three separate quarters. The British force at the south was engaged in prosecuting the plan of reducing Georgia and South Carolina; the forces of Washington and Clinton were employed in the northern section of the Union; and the fleets of France and England contended for superiority in the West Indies.

1779.

5. *Operations of the year 1779, how conducted.*

2. [6]Soon after the fall of Savannah, General Prevost, with a body of troops from East Florida, captured[d] the fort at Sunbury,* the only remaining military post in Georgia;

6. *Events that succeeded the fall of Savannah.* d. Jan. 9.

* *Sunbury* is on the S. side of Medway River, at the head of St. Catharine's Sound, about twenty-eight miles S.W. from Savannah.

ANALYSIS.

a. July 3.

on the banks of the Susquehanna. About 400 of the settlers, who marched out to meet the enemy, were defeated[a] with the loss of nearly their whole number. The fort at Wyoming was then besieged, but the garrison, being drawn out to hold a parley with the besiegers, was attacked, and nearly the whole number was slain.[b]

b. July 4.

1. *Farther cruelties of the assailants.*

17. [1]The remnant in the fort, having sent a flag of truce to know what terms must be expected, received in reply, "The hatchet." When compelled to surrender at last, their women and children were shut up in the houses and barracks, and consumed in one general conflagration. The last fort offered no resistance, and shared the same fate. All the settlements were then ravaged and desolated by fire and sword, with the most cold-blooded and remorseless barbarity. The tories appeared to vie with, and even to surpass the savages in these scenes of horror.

2. *Retaliatory expeditions.*

3. *Their success.*

18. [2]A retaliatory expedition was undertaken in October, against the Indians on the upper branches of the Susquehanna; and one early in the following year, by Col. Clark, against the settlements established by the Canadians west of the Alleghanies. [3]The tory settlers, filled with dismay, hastened to swear allegiance to the United States; and the retreats of the hostile tribes on the Wabash* were penetrated, and their country desolated.

4. *Attack on Cherry Valley.*

c. Nov. 11, 12.

19. [4]In November, a repetition of the barbarities of Wyoming was attempted by a band of tories, regulars, and Indians, who made an attack[c] upon the Cherry Valley† settlement in New York. Many of the inhabitants were killed, and others were carried into captivity; but the fort, containing about two hundred soldiers, was not taken. [5]These excursions were the only events, requiring notice, which took place in the middle and northern sections of the country during the remainder of the year 1778. The scene of events was now changed to the south, which henceforth became the principal theatre on which the British conducted offensive operations.

5. *Remainder of the year. Scene of events changed.*

6. *Movements of the hostile fleets.*

d. Nov. 3.

e. Nov. 3.

20. [6]Early in November the Count D'Estaing sailed[d] for the West Indies, for the purpose of attacking the British dependencies in that quarter. On the same day, the British admiral Hotham sailed[e] from Sandy Hook; and in December, he was followed by Admiral Byron, who

* The *Wabash* River rises in the western part of Ohio, and after running a short distance N.W. into Indiana, passes S.W. through that state, and thence S. to the Ohio River, forming about half the western boundary of Indiana.

† *Cherry Valley*, town and village, is in Otsego Co., N. Y., fifty-two miles W. from Albany, and about fifteen S from the Mohawk River. It was first settled in 1740. The luxuriant growth of Wild Cherry gave it the name of *Cherry Valley*, which was for a time applied to a large section of country S. and W. of the present village.

had superseded Admiral Howe in the command of the British fleet. [1]In November Col. Campbell was despatched[a] from New York, by General Clinton, with a force of about 2000 men, against Georgia, the most feeble of the southern provinces.

1778.

1. *Colonel Campbell sent against Georgia.*
a. Nov. 27.

21. [2]Late in December the troops landed[b] near Savannah, which was then defended by the American general, Robert Howe, with about 600 regular troops, and a few hundred militia. General Howe had recently returned from an unsuccessful expedition against East Florida, and his troops, still enfeebled by disease, were in a poor condition to face the enemy. Being attacked[c] near the city, and defeated, with the broken remains of his army he retreated up the Savannah, and took shelter by crossing into South Carolina.

2. *Loss of Savannah*
b. Dec. 29.
c. Dec. 29.

22. [3]Thus the capital of Georgia fell into the hands of the enemy;—the only important acquisition which they had made during the year. The two hostile armies at the north, after two years' maneuvering, had been brought back to nearly the same relative positions which they occupied at the close of 1776; and the offending party in the beginning, now intrenching himself on New York Island, was reduced to the use of the pickaxe and the spade for defence. [4]In the language of Washington, "The hand of Providence had been so conspicuous in all this, that he who lacked faith must have been worse than an infidel; and he, more than wicked, who had not gratitude to acknowledge his obligations."

3. *Result of the campaign, and the relative positions of the two armies at its close.*
4. *How this result was viewed by Washington.*

CHAPTER VI.

EVENTS OF 1779.

Subject of Chapter VI.

1779.

1. [5]The military operations during the year 1779, were carried on in three separate quarters. The British force at the south was engaged in prosecuting the plan of reducing Georgia and South Carolina; the forces of Washington and Clinton were employed in the northern section of the Union; and the fleets of France and England contended for superiority in the West Indies.

5. *Operations of the year 1779, how conducted.*

2. [6]Soon after the fall of Savannah, General Prevost, with a body of troops from East Florida, captured[d] the fort at Sunbury,* the only remaining military post in Georgia;

6. *Events that succeeded the fall of Savannah.*
d. Jan. 9.

* *Sunbury* is on the S. side of Medway River, at the head of St. Catharine's Sound, about twenty-eight miles S.W. from Savannah.

ANALYSIS.

a. See p. 211
b. July 5.
c. 7th—12th.

men, was despatched against the maritime towns of Connecticut. In this expedition New Haven[a] was plundered,[b] and East Haven, Fairfield, and Norwalk, were reduced to ashes.[c] Various acts of cruelty were committed on the defenceless inhabitants; and yet the infamous Tryon boasted of his clemency, declaring that the existence of a single house on the coast was a monument of the king's mercy.

1. *Recapture of Stony Point.*

12. [1]While Tryon was desolating the coasts of Connecticut, the Americans distinguished themselves by one of the most brilliant achievements which occurred during the war. This was the recapture of Stony Point, on the Hudson. [2]On the 15th of July General Wayne advanced against this fortress, and arrived at the works in the evening, without being perceived by the enemy. Dividing his force into two columns, both marched in order and silence, with unloaded muskets and fixed bayonets.

July 15.
2. *Time and plan of the attack.*

3. *Success of the enterprise.*
15th, 16th.
4. *The losses on each side.*

13. [3]As they were wading through a deep morass, which was covered by the tide, the English opened upon them a tremendous fire of musketry, and of cannon loaded with grape shot; but nothing could check the impetuosity of the Americans. They opened their way with the bayonet,—scaled the fort,—and the two columns met in the centre of the works. [4]The British lost upwards of six hundred men in killed and prisoners, besides a large amount of military stores. The American loss was about one hundred.

5. *Paulus Hook.*
d. July 19.
6. *By what these successes were counterbalanced.*
7. *The attack on Penobscot.*
e. Arrived July 25.
f. Aug. 13.

14. [5]Soon after the taking of Stony Point, Major Lee surprised[d] a British garrison at Paulus Hook,*—killed thirty, and took one hundred and sixty prisoners. [6]These successes, however, were more than counterbalanced by an unsuccessful attempt on a British post which had recently been established on the Penobscot River. [7]A flotilla of 37 sail fitted out by Massachusetts, proceeded against the place.[e] After a useless delay, during a siege of 15 days, the Americans were on the point of proceeding to the assault, when a British fleet suddenly made its appearance, and attacked[f] and destroyed the flotilla. Most of the soldiers and sailors who escaped made their way back by land, through pathless forests, enduring the extremities of hardship and suffering.

8. *Hostilities of the Six Nations.*
9. *Expedition sent against them.*

15. [8]The Six Nations, with the exception of the Oneidas, incited by British agents, had long carried on a distressing warfare against the border settlements. [9]To check their depredations, a strong force under the command of Gen.

* *Paulus Hook*, now Jersey City, is a point of land on the W. side of the Hudson, opposite New York City. (See Map, p. 220.)

eral Sullivan, was sent against them during the summer of this year. Proceeding[a] up the Susquehanna, from Wyoming, with about three thousand men, at Tioga Point* he was joined[b] by General James Clinton, from the banks of the Mohawk, with an additional force of 1600.

1779.

a. July 31.

b. Aug. 22.

16. [1]On the 29th of August they found a body of Indians and tories strongly fortified at Elmira,† where was fought the "Battle of the Chemung," in which the enemy were defeated with such loss that they abandoned all thoughts of farther resistance. [2]Sullivan then laid waste the Indian country as far as the Genesee River,‡ burned forty villages, and destroyed more than one hundred and fifty thousand bushels of corn. [3]The Indians were greatly intimidated by this expedition, and their future incursions became less formidable, and less frequent.

Aug. 29.

1. "*Battle of the Chemung.*"

2. *Next measures of Gen. Sullivan.*

Aug., Sept.

3. *Effect of the expedition.*

17. [4]Early in September, the Count D'Estaing, returning from the West Indies, appeared[c] with his fleet on the coast of Georgia, and soon after, in concert with the American force under General Lincoln, laid siege to Savannah. After the expiration of a month, an assault was made[d] on the enemy's works, but the assailants were repulsed with the loss of nearly a thousand men in killed and wounded. Count Pulaski, a celebrated Polish nobleman, who had espoused the cause of the states, was mortally wounded.

4. *The siege of Savannah.*

c. Sept. 9.

d. Oct. 9.

18. [5]The repulse from Savannah was soon followed by the abandonment of the enterprise—Count D'Estaing again departing[e] with his whole fleet from the American coast, and General Lincoln retreating[e] into South Carolina. Late in October, Sir Henry Clinton, fearing an attack from the French fleet, ordered his forces in Rhode Island to withdraw to New York. The retreat[f] was effected with so much haste, that the enemy left behind them all their heavy artillery, and a large quantity of stores.

5. *Events that followed the repulse from Savannah.*

e. Oct. 18.

f. Oct. 25.

19. [6]During the summer of this year, Spain, anxious to recover Gibraltar,§ Jamaica, and the two Floridas, seized the favorable opportunity for declaring[g] war against Great Britain. [7]An immense French and Spanish armada soon after appeared[h] on the coast of Britain, with the evident design of invading the kingdom; but a variety of disasters defeated the project.

6. *Declaration of war by Spain.*

g. June 16.

7. *Attempt to invade Great Britain.*

h. Aug.

8. *What defeated the project.*

20. [8]At the very time when a landing was designed at Ply-

---

* *Tioga Point* is at the confluence of the Tioga River and the Susquehanna, in the northern part of Pennsylvania. The village of Athens now occupies the place of Sullivan's encampment.

† *Elmira*, formerly called *Newtown*, is situated on the N. side of the Chemung or Tioga River, about twenty miles N.W. from Tioga Point.

‡ The *Genesee* River rises in Pennsylvania, and running N. through New York, enters Lake Ontario seven miles N. of Rochester.

§ *Gibraltar* is a well known, high and narrow promontory, in the S. of Spain, on the strait which connects the Atlantic with the Mediterranean. (See Map, p. 429.)

ANALYSIS.

a. Aug.

mouth, a violent gale[a] from the northeast drove the combined fleet from the channel into the open sea. Added to this, a violent epidemic, raging among the soldiers, swept off more than five thousand of their number. [1]The important post of Gibraltar, however, was soon after besieged by the combined fleets of France and Spain, and the siege was vigorously carried on, but without success, during most of the remaining three years of the war.

1. *Siege of Gibraltar.*

See p. 429.

Sept. 23.

2. *Naval battle on the coast of Scotland.*

3. *Events of the battle.*

b. Good Man Richard.

21. [2]On the 23d of September, one of the most bloody naval battles ever known was fought on the coast of Scotland, between a flotilla of French and American vessels under the command of Paul Jones, and two English frigates that were convoying a fleet of merchantmen. [3]At half past seven in the evening, the ship of Jones, the Bon Homme Richard,[b] of 40 guns, engaged the Serapis, a British frigate of 44, under command of Captain Pearson. The two frigates coming in contact, Jones lashed them together, and in this situation, for two hours, the battle raged with incessant fury, while neither thought of surrendering.

22. While both ships were on fire, and the Richard on the point of sinking, the American frigate Alliance came up, and, in the darkness of the night, discharged her broadside into the Richard. Discovering her mistake, she fell with augmented fury on the Serapis, which soon surrendered. Of three hundred and seventy-five men that were on board the vessel of Jones, three hundred were killed or wounded. The Richard sunk soon after her crew had taken possession of the conquered vessel. At the same time the remaining English frigate, after a severe engagement, was captured.

4. *Result of the military events of 1779.*

5. *Condition of the American army and the people.*

23. [4]Thus terminated the most important military events of 1779. The flattering hopes inspired in the minds of the Americans, by the alliance with France in the former year, had not been realized; and the failure of every scheme of co-operation on the part of the French fleet, had produced a despondency of mind unfavorable to great exertions. [5]The American army was reduced in number, and badly clothed; the national treasury was empty; congress was without credit; and the rapidly diminishing value of the paper currency of the country, brought distress upon all classes,—occasioned the ruin of thousands, and even threatened the dissolution of the army.

6. *Resources of Great Britain, and her renewed exertions for the conquest of the colonies.*

24. [6]On the part of Britain, a far different scene was presented. Notwithstanding the formidable combination of enemies which now threatened her, she displayed the most astonishing resources, and made renewed exertions for the conquest of the colonies. Parliament voted for the

service of the year 1780, eighty-five thousand seamen, and thirty-five thousand troops, in addition to those already abroad; and, for the service of the same year, the House of Commons voted the enormous sum of one hundred millions of dollars. **1780.**

CHAPTER VII.

EVENTS OF 1780.

Subject of Chapter VII.

1. [1]DURING the year 1780, military operations were mostly suspended in the North, in consequence of the transfer of the scene of action to the Carolinas. [2]Late in December of the previous year, Sir Henry Clinton, leaving General Knyphausen at New York, sailed[a] with the bulk of his army to the South, under convoy of Admiral Arbuthnot, and arrived on the coast of Georgia late in January. On the 10th of February he departed from Savannah for the siege of Charleston, then defended by General Lincoln, and after taking possession[b] of the islands south of the city, crossed[c] the Ashley River with the advance of the army, and on the first of April commenced erecting batteries within eight hundred yards of the American works.

1. Scene of military operations for the year 1780.

2. Movements of Gen. Clinton previous to the commencement of the siege of Charleston.

a. Dec. 26, 1779.

b. Feb. 11.

c. March 29; April 1.

2. [3]On the 9th of April, Admiral Arbuthnot, favored by a strong southerly wind and the tide, passed Fort Moultrie with little damage, and anchored his fleet in Charleston harbor, within cannon shot of the city. [4]A summons[d] to surrender being rejected, the English opened[d] their batteries upon the town. [5]The Americans, in the mean time, in order to form a rallying point for the militia, and, possibly, succor the city, had assembled a corps under the command of General Huger on the upper part of Cooper River, at a place called Monk's Corner.* Against this post Clinton sent a detachment of fourteen hundred men, commanded by Webster, Tarleton, and Ferguson, which succeeded in surprising[e] the party,—putting the whole to flight,—and capturing a large quantity of arms, clothing, and ammunition.

April 9.

3. Admiral Arbuthnot.

4. Summons to surrender.

d. April 9.

5. Gen. Huger, and the detachment sent against him.

e. April 14.

3. [6]Soon after, an American corps was surprised[f] on the Santee,† by Colonel Tarleton. The enemy overran

6. Successes of the British.

f. May 6.

---

* *Monk's Corner* is on the W. side of Cooper River, thirty miles N. from Charleston. (See Map, next page.)

† *Santee River*, the principal river of South Carolina, is formed by the confluence of the

ANALYSIS.

May 6.

the country on the left side of the Cooper River,—Fort Moultrie surrendered on the 6th of May,—and Charleston thus found itself completely inclosed by the British forces, with no prospect of relief, either by land or by sea. In this extremity, the fortifications being mostly beaten down,

May 12

and the enemy prepared for an assault, on the 12th of May the city surrendered. General Lincoln and the troops under his command became prisoners of war.

1. *Expeditions sent into the country by Clinton.*

4. [1]Having possession of the capital, General Clinton made preparations for recovering the rest of the province, and for re-establishing royal authority. Three expeditions which he despatched into the country were completely successful. One seized the important post of Ninety-six;* another scoured the country bordering on the Savannah; while Lord Cornwallis passed the Santee, and made himself master of Georgetown.† [2]A body of about 400 republicans, under Colonel Buford, retreating towards North Carolina, being pursued by Colonel Tarleton, and overtaken[a] at Waxhaw Creek,‡ was entirely cut to pieces. [3]Many of the inhabitants now joined the royal standard; and Clinton, seeing the province in tranquillity, left Lord Cornwallis in command of the southern forces; and, early in June, with a large body of his troops, embarked[b] for New York.

2. *Col. Buford.*

a. May 29.

3. *Success of the royal cause, and departure of Clinton.*

b. June 5.

4. *How the British were annoyed.*

5. [4]But notwithstanding the apparent tranquillity which prevailed at the time of Clinton's departure, bands of patriots, under daring leaders, soon began to collect on the frontiers of the province, and, by sudden attacks, to give much annoyance to the royal troops. [5]Colonel Sumpter, in particular, distinguished himself in these desultory excursions. In an attack[c] which he made on a party of British at Rocky Mount§ he was

5. *Col. Sumpter.*

c. July 30.

SEAT OF WAR IN SOUTH CAROLINA.

Wateree from the E. and the Congaree from the W., eighty-five miles N.W. from Charleston. Running S.E. it enters the Atlantic about fifty miles N.E. from Charleston. (See Map.)

* The post of *Ninety-six* was near the boundary line between the present Edgefield and Abbeville Counties, S. Carolina, five miles S.W. from the Saluda River, and 150 miles N.W. from Charleston. (See Map.)

† *Georgetown* is on the W. bank of the Pedee, at its entrance into Winyaw Bay, about sixty miles N.E. from Charleston (See Map.)

‡ *Waxhaw Creek*, rising in North Carolina enters the Wateree or the Catawba from the E., 155 miles N.W. from Charleston. (See Map.)

§ *Rocky Mount* is at the northern extremity of the present Fairfield County, on the W. bank of the Wateree, 135 miles N.W from Charleston. (See Map.)

1780.

repulsed, but not disheartened. He soon after surprised and completely defeated[a] a large body of British regulars and tories posted at Hanging Rock.* [1]This partisan warfare restored confidence to the republicans,—disheartened the loyalists,—and confined to more narrow limits the operations of the enemy.

a. Aug. 6.

1. *Effects of this partisan warfare.*

6. [2]In the mean time a strong force from the North, under General Gates, was approaching for the relief of the southern provinces. The British general, Lord Rawdon, on receiving tidings of the approach of Gates, concentrated his forces at Camden,† where he was soon after joined[b] by Lord Cornwallis from Charleston. On the night of the 15th of August, Gates advanced from Clermont,‡ with the view of surprising the British camp. At the same time Cornwallis and Rawdon were advancing from Camden, with the design of surprising the Americans.

2. *Movements of Gates and Rawdon.*

b. Aug. 13, 14.

7. [3]The two vanguards met in the night near Sanders' Creek, when some skirmishing ensued, and in the morning a general engagement commenced[c] between the two armies. The first onset decided the fate of the battle. The Virginia and Carolina militia wavering, the British charged them with fixed bayonets, and soon put them to flight; but the Maryland and Delaware regiments sustained the fight with great gallantry, and several times compelled the enemy to retire. At length, being charged in the flank by Tarleton's cavalry,—surrounded,—and overwhelmed by numbers, they were forced to give way, and the rout became general.

3. *Battle of Sanders' Creek.*

c. Aug. 16.

8. [4]The Americans lost in this unfortunate engagement, in killed, wounded, and captured, about a thousand men, besides all their artillery, ammunition wagons, and much of their baggage.§ The Baron de Kalb, second in command, was mortally wounded. The British reported their loss at three hundred and twenty-five. [5]With the remnant of his forces Gates rapidly retreated to Hillsboro',‖ in North Carolina.

4. *Losses of each party in this action.*

5. *Retreat of Gates.*

6. *Sumpter's corps.*

BATTLE OF SANDERS' CREEK.

9. [6]The defeat of Gates was soon followed

* *Hanging Rock* is a short distance E. from the Catawba or Wateree River, in the present Lancaster County, and about thirty-five miles N. from Camden. (See Map, preceding page.)

† *Camden* is on the E. bank of the Wateree, 110 miles N.W. from Charleston. The battle of the 16th took place a little N. from Sanders' Creek, about eight miles N. from Camden. (See Map; also Map, preceding page.)

‡ *Clermont* is about thirteen miles N. from Camden. (See Map, preceding page.)

§ (The British accounts, Stedman, ii. 210, Andrews iv. 30, &c., estimate the American loss at about 2000.)

‖ *Hillsboro'*, in N. Carolina, is situated on one of the head branches of the Neuse River, thirty-five miles N. W. from Raleigh.

ANALYSIS.

by the surprise and dispersion of Sumpter's corps. This officer, who had already advanced between Camden and Charleston, on learning the misfortune of his superior retired promptly to the upper parts of Carolina, but at Fishing-Creek* his troops were surprised by Tarleton's cavalry, and routed[a] with great slaughter.

a. Aug. 18.

1. *Measures adopted by Cornwallis.*

10. [1]Cornwallis, again supposing the province subdued, adopted measures of extreme severity, in order to compel a submission to royal authority. Orders were given to hang every militia man who, having once served with the British, had afterwards joined the Americans; and those who had formerly submitted, but had taken part in the recent revolt, were imprisoned, and their property was taken from them or destroyed. [2]But these rigorous measures failed to accomplish their object; for although the spirit of the people was overawed, it was not subdued. The cry of vengeance rose from an exasperated people, and the British standard became an object of execration.

2. *Effect of these measures.*

3. *Col. Ferguson and his party.*

11. [3]In September, Cornwallis detached Colonel Ferguson to the frontiers of North Carolina, for the purpose of encouraging the loyalists to take arms. A considerable number of the most profligate and abandoned repaired to his standard, and, under the conduct of their leader, committed excesses so atrocious, that the highly exasperated militia collected to intercept their march, and arming themselves with whatever chance threw in their way, attacked the party in the post which they had chosen at King's Mountain.† [4]The attack[b] was furious, and the defence exceedingly obstinate; but after a bloody fight, Ferguson himself was slain, and three hundred of his men were killed or wounded. Eight hundred prisoners were taken, and amongst the spoil were fifteen hundred stands of arms. The American loss was about twenty.

4. *Battle of King's Mountain.*
b. Oct. 7.

5. *Successes of Gen. Sumpter.*

12. [5]Notwithstanding the defeat of General Sumpter, he had again collected a band of volunteers, with which he continued to harass the enemy; and although many plans were laid for his destruction, they all failed in the execution. In an attack[c] which was made on him by Major Wemys, the British were defeated, and their commanding officer taken prisoner.‡ On the 20th of November he was attacked by Colonel Tarleton, at Blackstocks,§

c. Nov. 12, at Broad River.

---

* *Fishing Creek* enters the Wateree from the W., about thirty miles N.W. from Camden (See Map, p. 392.)

† *King's Mountain* is an eminence near the boundary between N. Carolina and S. Carolina, W. of the Catawba River. (See Map, p. 392.)

‡ This occurred on the eastern bank of Broad River (a northern branch of the Congaree,) at a place called *Fishdam Ferry*, 52 miles N.W. from Camden. (See Map, p. 392.)

§ *Blackstocks* is on the southern bank of Tiger River (a western branch of Broad River,) in the western part of Union County, seventy-five miles N.W. from Camden. (See Map, p. 392.) (There is another place called Blackstocks in Chester County, forty miles east from this.)

but after a severe loss Tarleton was obliged to retreat, leaving Sumpter in quiet possession of the field. **1780.**

13. [1]Another zealous officer, General Marion, likewise distinguished himself in this partisan warfare, and by cutting off straggling parties of the enemy, and keeping the tories in check, did the American cause valuable service. [2]No farther events of importance took place in the South during the remainder of the year, and we now return to notice the few which occurred during the summer in the northern provinces.

1. Gen. Marion.

2. Events during the remainder of the year.

14. [3]Early in June, five thousand men, under General Knyphausen, passed[a] from Staten Island into New Jersey, —occupied Elizabethtown,—burned Connecticut Farms,* —and appeared before Springfield; but the advance of a body of troops from Morristown, induced them to withdraw. Soon after, the enemy again advanced into New Jersey, but they were met and repulsed by the Americans at Springfield.

3. General Knyphausen's expedition into New Jersey.

a. June 7.

15. [4]On the 10th of July the Admiral de Ternay arrived at Newport,[b] with a French fleet, having on board six thousand men, under the command of the Count de Rochambeau. Although high expectations had been indulged from the assistance of so powerful a force against the enemy, yet no enterprise of importance was undertaken, and the operations of both parties, at the North, were mostly suspended during the remainder of the season.

4. Arrival of Admiral de Ternay, and military operations during the remainder of the season.

b. In Rhode Island

16. [5]While defeat at the South, and disappointment at the North, together with the exhausted state of the finances, and an impoverished country, were openly endangering the American cause, domestic treachery was secretly plotting its ruin. [6]The traitor was Arnold;—one of the first to resist British aggression, and, hitherto, one of the most intrepid defenders of American liberty. In recompense for his distinguished services, congress had appointed him commandant at Philadelphia, soon after the evacuation of that city by the English.

5. Dangers at this time threatening the American cause.

6. Who was the traitor, and what is said of him.

17. [7]Here he lived at great expense, indulged in gaming, and, having squandered his fortune, at length appropriated the public funds to his own uses. Although convicted by a court-martial, and reprimanded by Washington, he dissembled his purposes of revenge, and having obtained the command of the important fortress of West Point,† he privately engaged to deliver it into the hands

7. The habits and character of Arnold, and the treason that he meditated.

* *Connecticut Farms*, now called *Union*, is six miles S.W. from Newark, on the road from Elizabethtown to Springfield.

† The important fortress of West Point is situated on the west bank of the Hudson, fifty-two miles from New York City. It is the seat of the United States Military Academy, established by act of Congress in 1802. (See Map, p. 377.)

ANALYSIS.

of the enemy, for 10,000 pounds sterling, and a commission as brigadier in the British army.

1. *Major Andre.*

18. [1]To Major Andre, aid-de-camp to Sir Henry Clinton, and adjutant-general of the British army, a young and amiable officer of uncommon merit, the business of negotiating with Arnold was intrusted. [2]Having passed up the Hudson, near to West Point, for the purpose of holding a conference with the traitor, and being obliged to attempt a return by land; when near Tarrytown* he was stopped[a] by three militia soldiers,—John Paulding, David Williams, and Isaac Van Wert; who, after searching their prisoner, conducted him to Colonel Jameson, their commanding officer. [3]Andre was incautiously suffered to write to Arnold; when the latter, taking the alarm, immediately escaped on board the Vulture, a British vessel lying in the river.

2. *Circumstances under which he was made prisoner.*

a. Sept. 23.

3. *Arnold's escape.*

4. *The fate of Andre.*

19. [4]The unfortunate Andre was tried by court-martial; upon his own confession he was declared a *spy*, and, agreeably to the laws and usages of nations, was condemned to death. [5]Arnold received the stipulated reward of his treason; but even his new companions viewed the traitor with contempt, and the world now execrates his name and memory. [6]Each of the captors of Andre received the thanks of congress, a silver medal, and a pension for life.

5. *What more is said of Arnold.*

The captors of Andre.

7. *Circumstances under which England declared war against Holland.*

20. [7]In the latter part of this year, another European power was added to the open enemies of England. Holland, jealous of the naval superiority of Britain, had long been friendly to the American cause; she had given encouragement and protection to American privateers, and had actually commenced the negotiation of a treaty with congress, the discovery of which immediately called forth a declaration[b] of war on the part of England.

b. Dec. 20.

8. *Situation of England at this period.*

21. [8]Thus the American Revolution had already involved England in war with three powerful nations of Europe, and yet her exertions seemed to increase with the occasions that called them forth. Parliament again granted a large amount of money for the public service of the coming year, and voted the raising of immense armaments by sea and land.

---

* *Tarrytown* is on the E. bank of the Hudson, twenty-eight miles N. from New York. (See Map, p. 362.) Andre was arrested about a quarter of a mile N. from the village. He was executed and buried on the W. side of the river, a quarter of a mile west from the village of Tappan, a few rods south of the New Jersey line.

SURRENDER OF LORD CORNWALLIS. (See page 406.)

1781.

CHAPTER VIII

EVENTS OF 1781.

Subject of Chapter VIII.

1. Relative situations of the two armies at the beginning of this year

1. [1]THE condition of the army of Washington, at the beginning of the year 1781, was widely different from that of the royal forces under the command of Clinton. While the latter were abundantly supplied with all the necessaries and comforts which their situation required, the former were suffering privations arising from want of pay, clothing, and provisions, which at one time seriously threatened the very existence of the army.

2. Revolt of the Pennsylvania troops.

2. [2]So pressing had the necessities of the soldiers become, that, on the first of January, the whole Pennsylvania line of troops, to the number of one thousand three hundred, abandoned their camp at Morristown,—declaring their intention of marching to the place where congress was in session, in order to obtain a redress of their grievances.

3. Course taken by the mutineers.

3. [3]The officers being unable to quell the sedititon, the mutineers proceeded in a body to Princeton, where they were met by emissaries from Sir Henry Clinton, who sought to entice them into the British service. Indignant at this attempt upon their fidelity, they seized the British agents, and delivered them to General Wayne, to be treated as spies.

4. Difficulties with them adjusted.

4. [4]A committee from congress, and also a deputation from the Pennsylvania authorities met them, first at Princeton, and afterwards at Trenton; and after liberal con-

ANALYSIS.

cessions, and relieving their necessities in part, induced those whose terms of service had not expired, to return to their duties, after a short furlough. [1]Being offered a reward for apprehending the British emissaries, they nobly refused it; saying, that their necessities had forced them to demand justice from their own government, but they desired no reward for doing their duty to their country against her enemies.

1. *Offer of reward.*

5. [2]This mutiny, and another in the Jersey line which was instantly suppressed, aroused the attention of the states, and of congress, to the miserable condition of the troops, and called forth more energetic measures for their relief. [3]Taxation was resorted to, and readily acquiesced in; and money, ammunition, and clothing, were obtained in Europe; but the most efficient aid was derived from the exertions of Robert Morris, a wealthy merchant of Philadelphia, whom congress had recently appointed superintendent of the treasury.

2. *Effect of this mutiny, and one in the Jersey line.*

3. *By what means the wants of the army were supplied.*

6. [4]He assumed the collection of taxes, contracted to furnish flour for the army, and freely used his own ample means and personal credit to sustain the government. In the course of the year the Bank of North America was established under his care, which exerted a highly beneficial influence upon the currency, and upon public credit. It has been asserted, that to the financial operations of Robert Morris it was principally owing that the armies of America did not disband, and that congress was enabled to continue the war with vigor and success.

4. *Robert Morris, and benefits attributed to his aid.*

7. [5]Early in January of this year, General Arnold, then a brigadier in the royal army, made a descent upon Virginia, with a force of 1600 men, and such a number of armed vessels as enabled him to commit extensive ravages on the unprotected coasts. Having destroyed[a] the public stores in the vicinity of Richmond,[b] and public and private property to a large amount in different places, he entered[c] Portsmouth,[d] which he fortified, and made his head-quarters; when a plan was formed by Washington to capture him and his army.

5. *Arnold's depredations in Virginia.*

a. Jan. 5.

b. N. p. 162.

c. Jan. 20.

d. N. p. 387.

8. [6]Lafayette, with a force of 1200 men, was sent into Virginia; and the French fleet, stationed at Rhode Island, sailed[e] to co-operate with him; but the English being apprized of the project, Admiral Arbuthnot sailed from New York,—attacked[f] the French fleet, and compelled it to return to Rhode Island. Thus Arnold escaped from the imminent danger of falling into the hands of his exasperated countrymen. [7]Soon after, the British general Philips arrived[g] in the Chesapeake, with a reenforcement of 2000 men. After joining Arnold he took the command of the

6. *Attempt to seize him, and its failure.*

e. March 8.

f. March 16.

7. *Gen. Philips.*

g. March 26.

forces, and proceeded to overrun and lay waste the country with but little opposition. **1781.**

9. [1]After the unfortunate battle near Camden, mentioned in the preceding chapter,[a] congress thought proper to remove General Gates, and to appoint General Greene to the command of the southern army. [2]Soon after taking the command, although having a force of but little more than two thousand men, he despatched General Morgan to the western extremity of South Carolina, in order to check the devastations of the British and loyalists in that quarter. [3]Cornwallis, then on the point of advancing against North Carolina, unwilling to leave Morgan in his rear, sent Colonel Tarleton against him, with directions to "push him to the utmost."

1. Change of officers after the battle of Camden. a. See. p. 393. *2. First measure taken by General Greene.* *3. Cornwallis.*

10. [4]Morgan at first retreated before the superior force of his enemy, but being closely pursued, he halted at a place called the Cowpens,* and arranged his men in order of battle. [5]Tarleton, soon coming up, confident of an easy victory, made an impetuous attack[b] upon the militia, who at first gave way. The British cavalry likewise dispersed a body of the regular troops, but while they were engaged in the pursuit, the Americans rallied, and in one general charge entirely routed the enemy, who fled in confusion. [6]The British lost three hundred in killed and wounded; while five hundred prisoners, a large quantity of baggage, and one hundred dragoon horses, fell into the hands of the conquerors. The Americans had only twelve men killed and sixty wounded.

4. Course pursued by Morgan. *5. Battle of the Cowpens.* b. Jan. 17. *6. Loss sustained by each party.*

11. [7]On receiving the intelligence of Tarleton's defeat, Cornwallis, then on the left bank of the Broad River,† destroyed his heavy baggage, and commenced a rapid march towards the fords of the Catawba,‡ hoping to arrive in time to intercept the retreat of Morgan before he could pass that river. [8]After a toilsome march, Morgan succeeded in reaching the fords, and crossed[c] the river in safety; but only two hours later the van of the enemy appeared on the opposite bank. It being then in the evening, Cornwallis halted and encamped; feeling confident of overtaking his adversary in the morning. During the night a heavy rain raised the waters of the river, and rendered it impassable for two days.

7. Attempt of Cornwallis to intercept Morgan. *8. His pursuit, and Morgan's escape.* c. Jan. 29. *9. Second disappointment of Cornwallis.*

12. [9]At this time General Greene, who had left the

---

* *Cowpens* is near the northern boundary of S. Carolina, in Spartanburg district, five miles S. from Broad River. (See Map, p. 392.)

† *Broad River* rises in the western part of N. Carolina, and flowing S. into S. Carolina receives Pacolet and Tiger Rivers from the W., and unites with the Saluda two miles N. from Columbia to form the Congaree. (See Map, p. 392.)

‡ *Catawba* is the name given to the upper part of the Wateree. Cornwallis crossed at *Gowan's Ford*, 30 miles N. from the northern boundary of S. Carolina. (Map, p. 392.)

ANALYSIS.

main body of his army on the left bank of the Pedee,* opposite Cheraw,† arrived[a] and took the command of Morgan's division, which continued the retreat, and which was soon followed again in rapid pursuit by Cornwallis. Both armies hurried on to the Yadkin, which the Americans reached first; but while they were crossing,[b] their rear-guard was attacked by the van of the British, and part of the baggage of the retreating army was abandoned. Again Cornwallis encamped, with only a river between him and his enemy; but a sudden rise in the waters again retarded him, and he was obliged to seek a passage higher up the stream. [1]The rise of the waters, on these two occasions, was regarded by many as a manifest token of the protection which Heaven granted to the justice of the American cause.

a. Jan. 31.

b. Feb. 2, 3.

1. *How this rise of the waters was regarded.*

13. [2]After crossing the Yadkin, General Greene proceeded to Guilford Court House, and after being joined[c] by the remainder of his army,[d] continued his retreat towards Virginia, still vigorously pursued by Cornwallis, who a third time reached[e] the banks of a river,[f] just as the American rear-guard had crossed safely to the other side. [3]Mortified at being repeatedly disappointed after such prodigious efforts, Cornwallis abandoned the pursuit, and turning slowly to the South, established himself at Hillsboro'.[g]

2. *The retreat after crossing the Yadkin.*

c. Feb. 7.

d. See 12th verse.

e. Feb. 15.

f. The Dan.

3. *Termination of the pursuit.*

g. N. p. 393.

14. [4]Soon after, General Greene, strengthened by a body of Virginians, recrossed[h] the Dan‡ into Carolina. Learning that Tarleton had been sent into the district between Haw§ and Deep Rivers, to secure the cooperation of a body of loyalists who were assembling there, he sent Col. Lee with a body of militia to oppose him. On the march, Lee fell in with the loyalists, three hundred and fifty in number, who, thinking they were meeting Tarleton, were easily surrounded.[i] While they were eager to make themselves known by protestations of loyalty, and cries of "Long live the king," the militia fell upon them with fury, killed the greater portion, and took the remainder prisoners.

4. *Next movements of General Greene; and fate of a company of loyalists.*

h. Feb. 21, 22.

i. Feb. 25.

15. [5]Having received additional reenforcements, which increased his number to 4400 men, Greene no longer avoided an engagement, but advancing to Guilford Court House,* posted his men on advantageous ground, and

5. *Battle of Guilford Court House.*

* The *Great Pedee* River rises in the Blue Ridge, in the northwestern part of N. Carolina, and flowing S.E. through S. Carolina, enters the Atlantic through Winyaw Bay, sixty miles N.E. from Charleston. In N. Carolina it bears the name of *Yadkin* River.

† *Cheraw* is on the W. bank of the Pedee, ten miles S. from the N. Carolina line. (See Map, p. 392.) The Americans crossed the Yadkin near Salisbury.

‡ *Dan River*, rising in the Blue Ridge, in the southern part of Virginia, and flowing E. unites with the Staunton to form the Roanoke.

§ *Haw River* from the N.W., and *Deep River*, from the W., unite in Chatham County, thirty miles S.W. of Raleigh, to form Cape Fear River.

there awaited the enemy. Here, on the 15th of March, he was attacked by Cornwallis in person. At the first charge, the Carolina militia retreated in disorder. The regular troops, however, sustained the battle with great firmness; but after an obstinate contest a general retreat was ordered, and the Americans fell back several miles, leaving the field in the possession of the enemy. [1]The American loss, in killed and wounded, was about 400; but the number of fugitives, who returned to their homes, increased the total loss to 1300. The British loss was about 500, among whom were several valuable officers.

1781.

March 15.

1. *Losses of each party.*

16. [2]The result of the battle was little less than a defeat to Cornwallis, who was unable to profit by the advantage which he had gained. He soon retired to Wilmington,[a] and after a halt of nearly three weeks, directed his march[b] upon Virginia. [3]General Greene, in the mean time, defiling to the right, took the daring resolution of re-entering South Carolina; and, after various changes of position, encamped on Hobkirk's Hill,† a little more than a mile from Lord Rawdon's post at Camden.

2. *Result of the battle, and next movements of Cornwallis.*

a. April 7.

b. April 25.

3. *Course taken by General Greene.*

17. [4]Here he was attacked on the 25th of April, and so strongly did victory for a time incline to the side of the Americans, that Greene despatched a body of cavalry to intercept the enemy's retreat. A Maryland regiment, however, vigorously charged by the enemy, fell into confusion; and in spite of the exertions of the officers, the rout soon became general. The killed, wounded, and missing, on both sides, were nearly equal.

April 25.

4. *Battle of Hobkirk's Hill.*

18 [5]Soon after, Lord Rawdon evacuated[c] Camden, and retired with his troops beyond the Santee River; when, learning that Fort Watson‡ had surrendered, and that Fort Mott,§ together with the posts at Granby‖ and Orangeburg,¶ were closely invested, he retreated still farther, and encamped at Eutaw Springs.** These posts, together

5. *Retreat of Lord Rawdon.*

c. May 10.

* *Guilford Court House*, now Greensboro', the capital of Guilford County, is between the sources of Haw and Deep Rivers, about eighty miles N.W. from Raleigh. (See Map.)

† *Hobkirk's Hill.* (See Map.)

‡ *Fort Watson* was on the E. bank of the Santee, in the S.W. part of Sumpter County, about fifty-five miles from Camden. (See Map, p. 392.)

§ *Fort Mott* was on the S. bank of the Congaree, near its junction with the Wateree, about forty miles S. from Camden. (See Map, p. 392.)

‖ *Granby* is on the S. bank of the Congaree, thirty miles above Fort Mott. (See Map, p. 392.)

¶ *Orangeburg* is on the E. bank of the North Edisto, twenty-five miles S.W. from Fort Mott. (See Map, p. 392.)

** *Eutaw Springs* is the name given to a small stream that enters the Santee from the S., at the N.W. extremity of Charleston district, about fifty miles from Charleston. (See Map, p. 392.)

BATTLE OF GUILFORD COURT HOUSE.

BATTLE OF HOBKIRK'S HILL.

ANALYSIS. with Augusta, soon fell into the hands of the Americans; and by the 5th of June the British were confined to the three posts—Ninety-six, Eutaw Springs, and Charleston.

1. *Siege, and assault of Ninety-six*

19. [1]After the retreat of Lord Rawdon from Camden, General Greene proceeded to Fort Granby, and thence against Ninety-six, a place of great natural strength, and strongly fortified. After prosecuting the siege of this place nearly four weeks, and learning that Lord Rawdon was approaching with reenforcements, General Greene determined upon an assault, which was made on the 18th of June; but the assailants were beaten off, and the whole army raised the siege, and retreated, before the arrival of the enemy.

June 18.

2. *Movements of the two armies after the repulse at Ninety-six.*

20. [2]After an unsuccessful pursuit of the Americans, again Lord Rawdon retired, closely followed by the army of Greene, and took post at Orangeburg, where he received a reenforcement from Charleston, under the command of Col. Stewart. Finding the enemy too strong to be attacked, General Greene now retired,[a] with the main body of his army, to the heights* beyond the Santee, to spend the hot and sickly season, while expeditions under active officers were continually traversing the country, to intercept the communications between Orangeburg and Charleston. [3]Lord Rawdon soon after returned to England, leaving Colonel Stewart in command of his forces.

a. July.

3. *Change of British commanders.*

4. *Fate of Col. Hayne.*

21. [4]Before his departure, a tragic scene occurred at Charleston, which greatly irritated the Carolinians, and threw additional odium on the British cause. This was the execution of Colonel Isaac Hayne, a firm patriot, who, to escape imprisonment, had previously given in his adhesion to the British authorities. When the British were driven from the vicinity of his residence, considering the inability to protect, as a discharge of the obligation to obey, he took up arms against them, and, in this condition, was taken prisoner.

5. *Lord Rawdon's efforts.*

6. *Justice of the measure disputed.*

22. He was brought before Col. Balfour, the commandant of Charleston, who condemned him to death, although numerous loyalists petitioned in his favor. [5]Lord Rawdon, a man of generous feelings, after having in vain exerted his influence to save him, finally gave his sanction to the execution. [6]The British strongly urged the justice of the measure, while the Americans condemned it as an act of unwarrantable cruelty.

7. *Battle of Eutaw Springs.*

23. [7]Early in September, General Greene again ad-

* The *Santee Hills* are E. of the Wateree River, about twenty miles south from Camden. (See Map, p. 392.)

vanced upon the enemy, then commanded by Colonel Stewart, who at his approach, retired to Eutaw Springs.[a] On the 8th the two armies engaged, with nearly equal forces. The British were at first driven in confusion from the field, but at length rallying in a favorable position, they withstood all the efforts of the Americans, and after a sanguinary conflict, of nearly four hours, General Greene drew off his troops, and returned to the ground he had occupied in the morning. During the night, Colonel Stewart abandoned his position, and retired to Monk's Corner.[b] [1]The Americans lost, in this battle, in killed, wounded, and missing, about 300 men. The loss sustained by the enemy was somewhat greater.

1781.

a. N. p. 401.

b. N. p. 391.

1. *Losses of each party.*

24. [2]Shortly after the battle of Eutaw Springs, the British entirely abandoned the open country, and retired to Charleston and the neighboring islands. These events ended the campaign of 1781, and, indeed, the revolutionary war, in the Carolinas. [3]At the commencement of the year, the British were in possession of Georgia and South Carolina; and North Carolina was thought to be at their mercy. At the close of the year, Savannah and Charleston were the only posts in their possession, and to these they were closely confined by the regular American troops, posted in the vicinity, and by the vigilant militia of the surrounding country.

2. *Close of the campaign in the Carolinas.*

3. *Change of circumstances that had occurred during the year.*

25. [4]Though General Greene was never decisively victorious, yet he was still formidable when defeated, and every battle which he fought resulted to his advantage. To the great energy of character, and the fertility of genius which he displayed, is, principally, to be ascribed, the successful issue of the southern campaign.

4. *What is remarked of General Greene.*

26. [5]Having followed, to its termination, the order of the events which occurred in the southern department, we now return to the movements of Cornwallis, who, late in April, left Wilmington,[c] with the avowed object of conquering Virginia. Marching north by the way of Halifax,* and crossing, with little opposition, the large and rapid rivers that flow into Roanoke and Albemarle Sounds, in less than a month he reached[d] Petersburg,† where he found the troops of General Philips, who had died a few days before his arrival. [6]The defence of Virginia was at that time intrusted principally to the Marquis de Lafayette, who, with a force of only three thousand men, mostly

5. *Movements of Cornwallis since April.*

c. See p. 401.

d. May 20.

6. *The defence of Virginia.*

* *Halifax*, in N. Carolina, is situated on the W. bank of the Roanoke River, at the head of sloop navigation, about 150 miles N. from Wilmington.

† *Petersburg*, Virginia, is on the S. bank of Appomattox River, twelve miles above its entrance into James River.

ANALYSIS.

militia, could do little more than watch the movements of the enemy, at a careful distance.

1. *Course of Cornwallis.*

27. [1]Unable to bring Lafayette to an engagement, Cornwallis overran the country in the vicinity of James River, and destroyed an immense quantity of public and private property. [2]An expedition under Tarleton penetrated to Charlottesville,* and succeeded in making prisoners of several members of the Virginia House of Delegates, and came near seizing the governor of the state, Thomas Jefferson. [3]After taking possession of Richmond and Williamsburg, Cornwallis was called to the sea-coast by Sir Henry Clinton; who, apprehensive of an attack by the combined French and American forces, was anxious that Cornwallis should take a position from which he might reenforce the garrison of New York if desirable.

2. *Tarleton's expedition.*

3. *Cornwallis called to the sea-coast.*

4. *Events that occurred during the march of Cornwallis.*

a. July 6.

28. [4]Proceeding from Williamsburg to Portsmouth, when on the point of crossing the James River he was attacked[a] by Lafayette, who had been erroneously informed that the main body had already crossed. General Wayne, who led the advance, on seeing the whole of the British army drawn out against him, made a sudden charge with great impetuosity, and then hastily retreated with but little loss. Cornwallis, surprised at this bold maneuver, and perhaps suspecting an ambuscade, would not allow a pursuit.

5. *Next movements of Cornwallis.*

b. From Aug. 1—22.

29. [5]After crossing James River he proceeded to Portsmouth; but not liking the situation for a permanent post, he soon evacuated the place, and concentrated[b] his forces at Yorktown,† on the south side of York River, which he immediately commenced fortifying. Gloucester Point, on the opposite side of the river, was held by a small force under Colonel Tarleton.

6. *Plan of Washington, and movements of the French troops.*

7. *The plan abandoned.*

30. [6]In the mean time, General Washington had formed a plan of attacking Sir Henry Clinton; and late in June the French troops from Rhode Island, under Count Rochambeau, marched to the vicinity of New York, for the purpose of aiding in the enterprise. [7]The intention was abandoned, however, in August, in consequence of large reenforcements having been received by Clinton,—the tardiness with which the conti-

SIEGE OF YORKTOWN.

* *Charlottesville* is about sixty-five miles N.W. from Richmond. It is the seat of the University of Virginia, an institution planned by Mr. Jefferson. The residence of Mr. Jefferson was at *Monticello*, three miles S.E. from Charlottesville.

† *Yorktown*, the capital of York County, Virginia, is on the S. side of York River, about seven miles from its entrance into the Chesapeake. (See Map.)

nental troops assembled,—and the fairer prospect of success which was opened by the situation of Cornwallis. **1781.**

31. [1]A French fleet, commanded by the Count de Grasse, was expected soon to arrive in the Chesapeake; and Washington, having effectually deceived Clinton until the last moment, with the belief that New York was the point of attack, suddenly drew off the combined French and American army, and, after rapid marches, on the 30th of September appeared before Yorktown. *1. Sudden departure of the combined armies.* Sept. 30.

32. [2]The Count de Grasse had previously entered[a] the Chesapeake, and, by blocking up James and York Rivers, had effectually cut off the escape of Cornwallis by sea; while a force of two thousand troops, under the Marquis St. Simon, landed from the fleet, and joined Lafayette, then at Williamsburg, with the design of effectually opposing the British, should they attempt to retreat upon the Southern States. [3]A British fleet from New York, under Admiral Graves, made an attempt to relieve Cornwallis, and to intercept the French fleet bearing the heavy artillery and military stores, from Rhode Island. A partial action took place[b] off the capes, but the French avoided a general battle, and neither party gained any decided advantage. The object of the British, however, was defeated. *2. The retreat of Cornwallis cut off, both by sea and by land.* a. Aug. 28, 30. *3. Attempt to relieve Cornwallis.* b. Sept. 5

33. [4]After General Clinton had learned the destination of the army of Washington, hoping to draw off a part of his forces, he sent Arnold on a plundering expedition against Connecticut. [5]Landing[c] at the mouth of the river Thames, Arnold proceeded in person against Fort Trumbull, a short distance below New London,* which was evacuated[c] on his approach. New London was then burned,[c] and public and private property to a large amount destroyed. *4. Expedition sent to Connecticut.* *5. What Arnold accomplished in person.* c. Sept. 6.

34. [6]In the meantime a party had proceeded against Fort Griswold, on the east side of the river, which, after an obstinate resistance, was carried by assault.[d] When Colonel Ledyard, the commander of the fort, surrendered his sword, it was immediately plunged into his bosom; and the carnage was continued until the greater part of the garrison was killed or wounded. [7]This barbarous inroad did not serve the purpose of Clinton in checking the advance of Washington against Cornwallis. *6. Capture of Fort Griswold.* d. Sept. 6. *7. The purpose of this barbarous inroad.*

35. [8]In the siege of Yorktown the French were posted in front, and on the right of the town, extend- *8. Arrangement of the combined forces at the siege of Yorktown.*

* *New London*, in Connecticut, is situated on the W. bank of the River Thames, three miles from its entrance into Long Island Sound. *Fort Trumbull* is situated on a projecting point, about a mile below the city. *Fort Griswold* is situated opposite Fort Trumbull, on an eminence in the town of Groton. (See Map.)

ANALYSIS.

ing from the river above to the morass in the centre, where they were met by the Americans, who extended to the river below.[a] [1]On the evening of the ninth of October, the batteries were opened against the town, at a distance of 600 yards; and so heavy was the fire, that many of the guns of the besieged were soon dismounted, and silenced, and the works in many places demolished. Shells and red hot balls reached the British ships in the harbor, several of which were burned. [2]On the evening of the 11th the besiegers advanced to within three hundred yards of the British lines.

a. See the Map.

1. *The batteries opened, and with what effect.*

2. *Advance made on the 11th.*

Oct. 14.

36. [3]On the 14th, two redoubts, in advance and on the left of the besieged, were carried by assault; the one by an American, and the other by a French detachment. These were then included in the works of the besiegers. On the 16th, nearly a hundred pieces of heavy ordnance were brought to bear on the British works, and with such effect that the walls and fortifications were beaten down, and almost every gun dismounted.

3. *Events of the 14th; and progress of the siege.*

37. [4]No longer entertaining any hopes of effectual resistance, on the evening of the same day Cornwallis attempted to retreat by way of Gloucester Point; hoping to be able to break through a French detachment posted in the rear of that place, and, by rapid marches, to reach New York in safety. [5]Frustrated in this attempt by a violent storm, which dispersed his boats after one division had crossed the river, he was reduced to the necessity of a capitulation; and, on the 19th, the posts of Yorktown and Gloucester, containing more than seven thousand British soldiers, were surrendered to the army of Washington, and the shipping in the harbor to the fleet of De Grasse.

4. *Attempt of the British to retreat.*

5. *Surrender of Yorktown.*

Oct. 19.

38. [6]Five days after the fall of Yorktown, Sir Henry Clinton arrived[b] at the mouth of the Chesapeake, with an armament of 7000 men; but learning that Cornwallis had already surrendered, he returned to New York. [7]The victorious allies separated soon after the surrender. The Count de Grasse sailed[c] for the West Indies; Count Rochambeau cantoned his army, during the winter, in Virginia; and the main body of the Americans returned to its former position on the Hudson, while a strong detachment under General St. Clair was despatched to the south, to reenforce the army of General Greene.

6. *Clinton's arrival.*

b. Oct. 24.

7. *Disposition made of the allied forces.*

c. Nov. 5.

39. [8]By the victory over Cornwallis, the whole country was, in effect, recovered to the Union—the British power was reduced to merely defensive measures—and was confined, principally, to the cities of New York, Charleston, and Savannah. At the news of so important a victory, transports of exultation broke forth, and triumphal cele

8. *Effect of this important victory.*

brations were held throughout the Union. [1]Washington set apart a particular day for the performance of divine service in the army; recommending that "all the troops should engage in it with serious deportment, and that sensibility of heart which the surprising and particular interposition of Providence in their favor claimed."

1781.

1. *Religious appointment made by Washington.*

40. [2]Congress, on receiving the official intelligence, went in procession to the principal church in Philadelphia, "To return thanks to Almighty God for the signal success of the American arms," and appointed the 13th of December as a day of public thanksgiving and prayer.

2. *What was done by congress on this occasion.*

CHAPTER IX.

CLOSE OF THE WAR, AND ADOPTION OF THE CONSTITUTION.

Subject of Chapter IX.

1. [3]WHEN intelligence of the defeat and capture of Cornwallis reached London, the king and ministry evinced a determination still to continue the war for the reduction of the "rebellious colonies;" but, fortunately, the war had become almost universally unpopular with the British nation. [4]From the 12th of December to the 4th of March, repeated motions were made in the House of Commons for terminating the war; and on this latter day[a] the House resolved, that those who should advise the king to continue the war on the continent of North America, should be declared enemies of the sovereign and of the country.

3. *Determination of the king and ministry to continue the war.*

4. *Proceedings of the House of Commons.*

1782.

a. March 4.

2. [5]On the 20th of March the administration of Lord North was terminated, and the advocates of peace immediately came into power. Early in May, Sir Guy Carleton, who had been appointed to succeed Sir Henry Clinton in the command of all the British forces, arrived at New York, with instructions to promote the wishes of Great Britain for an accommodation with the United States. In accordance with these views, offensive war mostly ceased on the part of the British, and Washington made no attempts on the posts of the enemy. The year 1782, consequently, passed without furnishing any military operations of importance; although the hostile array of armies, and occasional skirmishes, still denoted the existence of a state of war.

March 20.

5. *Retirement of Lord North, and events that followed.*

3. [6]On the 30th of November, 1782, preliminary articles of peace were signed at Paris, by Mr. Oswald, a commissioner on the part of Great Britain, and John Adams,

Nov. 30.

6. *Articles and treaties signed in this and in the following year*

ANALYSIS.

Benjamin Franklin, John Jay, and Henry Laurens, on the part of the United States. Preliminary articles of peace between France and England were likewise signed on the 20th of January following; and on the 3d of September, of the same year, definitive treaties of peace were signed by the commissioners of England with those of the United States, France, Spain, and Holland.

1783. Jan. 20. Sept. 3.

1. Terms of the treaty between England and the United States.

4. [1]By the terms of the treaty between England and the United States, the independence of the latter was acknowledged in its fullest extent; ample boundaries were allowed them, extending north to the great lakes, and west to the Mississippi,—embracing a range of territory more extensive than the states, when colonies, had claimed; and an unlimited right of fishing on the banks of Newfoundland was conceded. [2]The two Floridas, which had long been held[a] by England, were restored to Spain.

2. The Floridas.

a. Since 1763.

April 19, 1783.

3. Remaining events of the year 1783.

5. [3]On the 19th of April, the eighth anniversary of the battle of Lexington, a cessation of hostilities was proclaimed in the American army; and on the 3d of November, the army was disbanded by general orders of congress. Savannah was evacuated by the British troops in July, New York in November, and Charleston in the following month.

4. Difficulties attending the disbanding of the army.

6. [4]Notwithstanding all had looked forward with joyful hope to the termination of the war, yet the disbanding of the American army had presented difficulties and dangers, which it required all the wisdom of congress and the commander-in-chief to overcome. Neither officers nor soldiers had, for a long time, received any pay for their services; and although, in 1780, congress had adopted a resolution promising half pay to the officers, on the conclusion of peace, yet the state of the finances now rendered the payment impossible. The disbanding of the army would, therefore, throw thousands out of the service, without compensation for the past, or substantial provision for the future.

5. Fears of an insurrection.

7. [5]In this situation of affairs, it was feared that an open insurrection would break out, and that the army would attempt to do itself the justice which the country was slow to grant. [6]In the midst of the excitement, an anonymous address, since ascertained to have been written by Major John Armstrong,—composed with great ingenuity, and recommending an appeal to the fears of congress, and the people, was circulated[b] through the army; calling a meeting of the officers, for the purpose of arranging the proper measures for obtaining redress. Such was the state of feeling in the army, that a war between the civil and the military powers appeared inevitable.

6. Address circulated through the army.

b. March 11.

1783.

8. [1]The firmness and prudence of Washington, however, succeeded in averting the danger. Strong in the love and veneration of the people and the army, and possessing an almost unbounded influence over his officers, he succeeded in persuading the latter to disregard the anonymous call, and to frown upon all disorderly and illegal proceedings for obtaining redress. [2]In a subsequent meeting, called by Washington himself, General Gates presiding, the officers unanimously declared, that "No circumstances of distress or danger should induce a conduct that might tend to sully the reputation and glory which they had acquired at the price of their blood, and eight years' faithful services," and that they still had "unshaken confidence in the justice of congress and their country."

1. What was effected by the influence of Washington.

2. What was done in a subsequent meeting called by him.

9. [3]Not long after, congress succeeded in making the proper arrangements for granting the officers, according to their request, five years' full pay, in place of half pay for life; and four months' full pay to the army, in part payment for past services. [4]Their work completed,—their country independent,—the soldiers of the revolution returned peaceably to their homes; bearing with them the public thanks of congress in the name of their grateful country.

3. Arrangements made by congress.

4. Return of the soldiers to their homes.

10. [5]Washington, having taken leave of his officers and army, repaired to Annapolis, where congress was then in session; and there, on the 23d of December, before that august body of patriots and sages, and a large concourse of spectators,—in a simple and affectionate address, after commending the interests of his country to the protection of Heaven, he resigned his commission as commander-in-chief of the American army.

5. Circumstances of Washington's resignation.

11. [6]After an eloquent and affecting reply by General Mifflin, then president of the congress, Washington withdrew. He then retired to his residence at Mount Vernon, exchanging the anxious labors of the camp, for the quiet industry of a farm, and bearing with him the enthusiastic love, esteem, and admiration of his countrymen.

6. His retirement to private life.

12. [7]Independence and peace being now established, the public mind, relieved from the excitement incident to a state of war, was turned to examine the actual condition of the country. In addition to a foreign debt of eight millions of dollars, a domestic debt of more than thirty millions, due to American citizens, and, principally, to the officers and soldiers of the revolution, was strongly urged upon congress for payment. [8]But by the articles of confederation congress had not the power to discharge

7. Condition of the country at this period.

8. The debt incurred during the war.

ANALYSIS.

debts incurred by the war; it could merely recommend to the individual states to raise money for that purpose.

1. The states called upon for funds.

13. [1]The states were therefore called upon for funds to discharge, in the first place, the arrears of pay due to the soldiers of the revolution.

2. What prevented their compliance.

[2]The states listened to these calls with respect, but their situation was embarrassing; —each had its local debts to provide for, and its domestic government to support,—the country had been drained of its wealth, and taxes could not be collected; and, besides, congress had no binding power to compel the states to obedience.

3. Insurrection in Massachusetts. (Shay's Insurrection.)

[3]Some of the states attempted, by heavy taxes upon the people, to support their credit, and satisfy their creditors. In Massachusetts, an insurrection was the consequence, and an armed force of several thousand men was necessary to suppress it.[a]

a. In 1787.

4. Necessity of a closer union of the states.

14. [4]With evils continually increasing, the necessity of a closer union of the states, and of an efficient general government, became more and more apparent.

5. Convention at Annapolis.

[5]A convention of commissioners from six states, held at Annapolis, in September, 1786, for the purpose of establishing a better system of commercial regulations, led to a proposition for revising the articles of confederation.

1787.

6. Convention at Philadelphia in 1787.

[6]Accordingly, a convention of delegates, from all the states, except Rhode Island, met[b] at Philadelphia for this purpose in 1787. Finding the articles of confederation exceedingly defective as a form of government, the convention rejected their former purpose of revising them, and proceeded to the consideration of a new constitution.—

b. May.

7. New territorial government formed.

[7]In July of this year, a large extent of territory north of the Ohio River was formed into a territorial government by the general congress, and called the Northwestern Territory.

8. The new constitution, and its adoption.

15. [8]After four months' deliberation a constitution was agreed[c] on, which, after being presented to congress, was submitted to conventions of the people in the several states for the r ratification. Previous to, and during the year

c. Sept. 17.

1788.

1788, majorities of the people in eleven of the states adopte l the constitution, although not without strong opposition; as many believed that the extensive powers, which the new government gave to the rulers, would be dangerous to the liberties of the people.

9. Party names.

16. [9]The supporters of the constitution, who advocated a union of the several states under a strong government, were denominated *Federalists*, and their opposers *anti-Federalists*.

10. Election of officers under the new government.

[10]Provision having been made for the election of officers under the new government, George Washington was unanimously elected[d] President of the United States for the term of four years, and John Adams Vice-president.

d. Votes counted April 6.

APPENDIX

TO THE REVOLUTION.

1775.

1. [1]In the preceding sketch of the Revolution, we have dwelt principally on those events alone that are immediately connected with American history; the limits to which we were confined seldom permitting us to look beyond the American continent to observe the relations which England sustained, during that period, with the other powers of Europe. [2]From the point of view that we have taken, however, it will be seen that we could derive only an inadequate knowledge of the magnitude of the contest in which England was involved by the revolt of her American colonies; and it is believed that our history will acquire additional interest and importance in our eyes by a better understanding of the British councils during the period of our Revolution, and by a more circumstantial account of the European wars and alliances entered into against England, in support of American Independence.

1. Character of the preceding sketch of the Revolution.

2. Importance of taking a more enlarged view of the subject.

2. [3]So recently had America become known to most Europeans, except by its geographical position on the maps of the globe, that the sudden appearance of a civilized nation there, disputing its possession with one of the greatest powers in Europe, filled all minds with astonishment. The novelty of the spectacle—the magnitude of the interests involved in the controversy—a jealousy of the power of England, and detestation of her tyranny, and the idea of an independent empire in the New World, awakened universal attention; and a general wish prevailed throughout Europe, that the Americans might be successful in gaining their independence. [4]None, however, regarded the struggle with more intense interest than the French people, whom recent defeats, national antipathy, and the hope of seeing the humiliation of a dreaded rival, no less than the natural impulse in favor of men struggling against their oppressors, stimulated to give every encouragement to the cause of the Americans.

3. The light in which the struggle of England with her colonies was viewed by Europeans generally.

4. How regarded by the French people.

3. [5]Even the people of England were divided in opinion on the subject of the justice of taxing the Americans, and the policy of employing forcible measures to constrain their submission. [6]In parliament the opposition to the ministerial measures was vehement, and sustained by such men as the Earl of Chatham and Lord Camden, Mr. Burke, Mr. Fox, and the Marquis of Rockingham. [7]Even the city of London presented,[a] through their lord-mayor, an address, remonstrance, and petition to the throne, deprecating the measures of the ministerial party, and entreating his majesty to dismiss "immediately and forever from his councils, those ministers and advisers who encouraged the establishment of arbitrary power in America."

5. By the people of England.

6. By parliament.

7. The city of London.

a. April 10. 1775.

4. [8]A majority of the people in the trading towns disapproved of hostilities, as injurious to the interests of commerce; but throughout the nation generally, the lower classes, fully persuaded that the Americans were an oppressed people, showed the strongest aversion to the war; and such was the popular feeling against the ministerial measures, that the recruiting service was greatly obstructed by it. [9]When intelligence of the battle of Lexington was

8. By the people in the trading towns, &c.

9. Effects produced in London by intelligence of the battle of Lexington.

ANALYSIS.

received, it excited a great commotion in the city of London, and a violent remonstrance against the measures of parliament was immediately published, accompanied by the severest censures upon those who had advised the king to make war upon his American subjects.

1. Petition and address to the throne.

5. [1]The more moderate party in London, presented to the throne "an humble petition and address," which, although expressed in terms more cool and temperate than the remonstrance, attributed to his majesty's ministers the disturbances in America—asserted the attachment of the colonies to Great Britain—and justified their conduct upon those principles of freedom on which the British constitution itself was based. [2]The answer which the king deigned to give to this address, was, that while the constituted authority of government was openly resisted by the Americans, it was necessary to enforce those measures by which alone the dignity and interests of the realm could be duly maintained.

2. Answer of the king.

3. Discontents in the army; and conduct of the Earl of Effingham.

6. [3]The general discontent also reached the officers of the army. When the regiment to which the Earl of Effingham belonged was ordered to America, that nobleman promptly resigned his commission, declaring that his honor and his conscience would not permit him to shed the blood of his fellow subjects in America, who were contending for their liberties. The Earl had, from youth, been attached to the military profession, and had distinguished himself in foreign service. The example of so eminent an individual was not without its influence upon others, and several officers, of the same political opinions as the Earl, declined serving against America. The course pursued by these individuals, although it did not pass uncensured, conferred upon them a high degree of popularity. The Earl of Effingham received the public thanks of the city of London for his behavior, and was honored with the same testimony of approbation from the city of Dublin.

4. Former political distinctions revived.

7. [4]The difficulties with America were also the cause of reviving, at this period, the nearly dormant political distinctions of whig and tory,[a] with all the party violence and inveteracy that had marked the civil dissensions in England during the latter years of the reign of Queen Anne. [5]From the violent altercations and continual bickerings carried on between the opposing parties, it seemed that not only America, but England also, would soon become a scene of mutual hostilities.

a See p. 303.

5. Violence of party feelings.

6. Character of the tory party, as represented by their opponents.

8. [6]The tories, who had been zealously attached to the Stuart family, and to the arbitrary principles which they cherished, were now accused of instigating a war upon the American subjects of Britain, because the latter had ventured to assert their just rights and liberties. The whole course of the tory party was brought up in review before the nation—they were declared the unscrupulous advocates of arbitrary power, and to their pernicious councils and machinations were attributed nearly all the disgraces abroad, and dissensions at home, which England had suffered since the present reigning family had come into power.

7. Character attributed to the whigs.

9. [7]On the other hand, the whigs were reproached with being the genuine descendants and representatives of those republican incendiaries who had once subverted royalty and overturned the constitution, and who, during the commonwealth, had carried on the most sanguinary proscription for opinion's sake, and ever since the settlement of the crown on the princes of the house of Hanover, whenever their party was in the ascendency, had been as tyrannical in maintaining themselves in authority as the most ultra of those whom they taxed with being the favorers of absolute monarchy.

1775.

10. [1]The tories also declared themselves the true friends of English freedom—friends of the constitution—the supporters of king and parliament, in whom was vested the keeping of the liberties of England, and whose united will was the supreme law, ever expressing the sentiments of a majority of the people. Parliament, said the tories, had resolved upon using force, if necessary, in order to reduce the Americans to obedience. Such was now the law of the land, and ought to be considered the voice of the nation. Maintaining the justness and the political necessity of complying with the will of the legislature, the tories declared themselves the strict observers of the laws of their country, and charged the whigs with being disturbers of the public peace, and with treasonable attacks upon the constitution, tending to the encouragement of sedition and rebellion.

1. Defence made by the tories.

11. [2]In reply to these charges, the whigs declared themselves more intent on the substantial preservation of liberty, than on the formal mode of doing it; that when parliament became corrupt, the people were not bound to submit to their betrayers; that a very considerable part of the British empire totally disapproved of the measures adopted by the ministry; that in England alone it was far from being certain that a majority approved of those measures; and that if a just computation should be made of the inhabitants of Britain, Ireland, and the Colonies, a very large majority would be found against them. The whigs declared their respect for public opinion, which they looked upon as more worthy of regard than any formal act of the legislature.

2. Defence made by the whigs.

12. [3]The tories ascribed exclusive power to the parliament, and denied any accountability to the people; the whigs regarded the parliament as composed of deputies of the people, who have no rights or powers but in common with their constituents, whose will alone the former were bound to obey in transacting the public business of the nation. While the whigs admitted that it was advisable, for the sake of public tranquillity, to refrain from violence in opposing the unjust measures of a majority in parliament, unless instant and intolerable mischiefs were threatened, they, at the same time, maintained the right of individuals to reprobate such measures with all imaginable explicitness and indignation, whenever they appeared contrary to the public interests. Such were the characters of the two great parties which now divided the British nation on the subject of the American controversy, and such was the general tenor of the arguments by which they defended their respective measures and principles.

3. Real nature of the principles of the two parties.

13. [4]During the brief recess of parliament in the summer of 1775, the Duke of Grafton withdrew a second time* from the king's council, on account of his opposition to the coercive measures adopted by a majority of the ministers against America. Requesting an audience of the king, he stated to his majesty the reasons why he could no longer take any part in the administration of the government. The king listened to him with attention, but vainly endeavored to convince him of the justice, the policy, and the necessity of the war.

4. The Duke of Grafton.

14. [5]On the assembling of parliament in October,[a] the session was opened by an elaborate speech from the throne, containing charges

5. Opening of parliament in 1775.

a. Oct. 26, 1775.

* The Duke of Grafton was a zealous whig, and was at this time Lord-privy-seal. Previously, Jan. 28th, 1770, he had resigned the office of first Lord-commissioner of the treasury, when Lord North was appointed his successor, under whom was formed the famous tory administration, which exercised the powers of government during the succeeding twelve years.

ANALYSIS.

against the colonies of engaging in a desperate conspiracy, with the design of establishing an independent empire in America. The most decisive measures were recommended for putting an end to the rebellion, and parliament was informed that, with this view the military and naval establishments of the kingdom had been increased, and that friendly offers of foreign assistance had been received. The king's speech breathed, throughout, a spirit of the most inveterate animosity against the colonies, and nothing less than unconditional submission was held out as the price by which peace was to be purchased.

1. Course pursued by the Marquis of Rockingham.

15. [1]When the usual motion was made in the house of lords for an address in answer to the speech from the throne, the Marquis of Rockingham condemned, in the most pointed terms, the measures recommended by the king. He denied that the colonies had aimed at independence; "but what," said he, "they never originally intended, we may certainly drive them to; they will undoubtedly prefer independence to slavery." His lordship concluded an excellent speech by moving an amendment to the address, expressive of his views of the proper means for restoring order to the distracted affairs of the British empire. After a long and vehement debate, the amendment was rejected, on the final motion, by seventy-six voices to thirty-three.

2. Effects of the debate, and protest of the minority.

16. [2]The debate was not without its salutary effect upon the nation, in enlightening it upon the true grounds of the war with America. The following spirited protest was entered upon the journal of the house of lords, by the minority, who opposed the address. "We have beheld with sorrow and indignation," say their lordships, "freemen driven to resistance by acts of oppression and violence. We cannot consent to an address which may deceive his majesty and the public into a belief of the confidence of this house in the present ministry, who have disgraced parliament, deceived the nation, lost the colonies, and involved us in a civil war against our clearest interests, and upon the most unjustifiable grounds wantonly spilling the blood of thousands of our fellow subjects."

3. Motions of the Duke of Grafton.

4. Bill of Mr. Burke.

17. [3]In the latter part of November, several motions, made in the house of lords by the Duke of Grafton, for estimates of the state of the army in America, and the additional force requisite for the ensuing campaign, were negatived without a division. [4]A few days later Mr. Burke brought in a bill in the lower house "for quieting the present troubles in America," the basis of which was a renunciation of the exercise of taxation, without reference to the question of right, but a reservation of the power of levying duties for the regulation of commerce, leaving the disposal of the money so raised to the colonial assemblies. [5]This conciliatory plan received the votes of one hundred and five members, but two hundred and ten voted against it.

5. Fate of this bill.

6. Prohibitory bill of Lord North.

7. Violent opposition of the whigs to this bill.

18. [6]Soon after, a prohibitory bill was introduced by Lord North, interdicting all trade and intercourse with the colonies, declaring their property, whether of ships or goods, on the high seas or in harbor, forfeited to the captors, and amounting, in fact, to an absolute declaration of war. [7]This bill roused the utmost fury of the whig opposition, who declared it a formal abdication of the British government over the colonies, leaving no alternative but absolute conquest on the one side, or absolute independence on the other It was observed that the guardian genius of America had this day presided in the British councils—that the present bill answered all the purposes desired by the most violent Americans, by inducing the people of the colonies to unite in the most inflexible deter-

1775.

mination to cast off all dependence on the parent state, and establish an independent government of their own. It was therefore sarcastically moved that the title of the present bill should be changed, so as to purport to be a bill for carrying more effectually into execution the resolves of the American Congress. [1]The original bill was carried in the house by one hundred and ninety-two votes against sixty-four.

1. *Bill carried in the house.*

19. [2]In the house of lords the opposition to the bill was equally violent. It was declared that the bill was framed in the hour of fatality to Britain—that it created a new country and a new nation, —planting them in that vast region where once stood the one half of the British empire—giving them new inclinations and new interests —teaching them to look upon what remained of that empire as their most dangerous and inveterate foe, and to league themselves with all its enemies. [3]What most irritated the Americans in this debate was the character of the defence given to the bill by the celebrated jurist, Lord Mansfield. He declared that the war had commenced, that Britain had already passed the Rubicon, and that they were not now at liberty to consider the original questions of right and wrong, justice or injustice.* [4]A declaration, from so eminent an individual, that the justice of the cause was no longer to be regarded, excited the astonishment of the colonists, and cemented their union. [5]The bill finally passed the upper house without a division.

2. *Opposition in the house of lords.*

3. *Defence of the bill by Lord Mansfield.*

4. *Effect produced by Lord Mansfield's course.*

5. *Final passage of the bill.*

1776.

Feb. 20.

20. [6]Notwithstanding the continual large majorities in favor of ministerial measures, on the 20th of February, 1776, Mr. Fox made a violent attack upon the ministry, by moving that a committee be appointed "to inquire into the ill success of his majesty's arms in America." [7]During the debate that followed, the weakness and folly of the administration were fully exposed, and ministers were obliged to acknowledge that "ill success had hitherto attended the operations of the war," but they declared that "more vigorous measures would now be pursued, and that it would be highly improper to enter into the examinations proposed, until the measures now resolved upon were tried, and the event known." [8]Like all attempts to penetrate the veil of secrecy by which the movements of the ministry were shrouded, the motion of Mr. Fox was negatived by a large majority.

6. *Motion of Mr. Fox.*

7. *Character of the debate.*

8. *Fate of the motion*

21. [9]When the treaties recently entered into between the king and the Landgrave of Hesse Cassel, the Duke of Brunswick, and other German princes, for hiring large bodies of their troops to aid in the prosecution of the war with America, were laid before the house, with the request for supplies, all the ardor of the opposition was again revived. [10]The reasons urged by the ministry for hiring foreign troops, was, the difficulty of obtaining a sufficient number of men within the kingdom; besides, could they be obtained, they were inexperienced in war, and it was impolitic to withdraw them from the pursuits of commerce and manufactures, when a sufficient number of experienced veterans could be hired, equal to the best troops in Europe.

9. *Treaties for hiring German troops.*

Feb. 29.

10. *Ministerial defence of these treaties.*

22. [11]To these arguments the opposition replied, that an application to the petty princes of Germany for succors to enable Britain to subdue her own subjects, was humiliating in the extreme, and dis-

11. *Arguments of the opposition against them.*

* Lord Mansfield declared: "If we do not get the better of America, America will get the better of us." As applicable to the present case he quoted the laconic speech of a gallant officer in the army of Gustavus Adolphus, who, pointing to the enemy, said to his soldiers, "See you those men yonder! kill them, my lads, or they will kill you."

ANALYSIS.

graceful in the eyes of Europe. Besides, the terms on which these troops were obtained were denounced as exorbitant, and the German princes were characterized as princely butchers who traded in human blood, and sold their subjects, like so many beasts for the slaughter. [1]A levy money of seven pounds ten shillings was to be given for each soldier, and a large subsidy was to be granted to the German princes, and continued two years after the return of their troops. But what excited the greatest indignation, was, that twelve thousand of these troops, the Hessians, were to remain under the sole command and control of their own general.

1. Some of the terms of these treaties.

23. [2]While the ministers maintained that the terms were not unreasonable, considering the distance, and the nature of the service, they held out to the nation the most positive assurances that so great a body of veteran troops need no more than show itself in America to terminate the war. [3]But men well conversant in military affairs, and well acquainted with America, declared that so vast a country, with a united people, could not be conquered by any number of troops, however great, in one, or even two campaigns. [4]In the house the court party prevailed by a majority, in favor of the supplies, of two hundred and forty two to eighty-eight voices.

2. Assurances of ministers.

3. Opposition statements.

4. Result in the house.

March 5, 1776.

24. [5]The treaties were not less vigorously opposed in the house of peers, in consequence of a motion of the duke of Richmond for an address to the king, requesting him to countermand the march of the German auxiliaries, and to give immediate orders for a suspension of hostilities, in order that a treaty might be entered into which should compose the differences between Great Britain and her colonies. [6]The Duke of Cumberland "lamented that Brunswickers, once the advocates of liberty in Europe, should now be sent to subjugate it in America." [7]On the final question in the house of peers, the ministry were sustained by one hundred votes against thirty-two.

5. Duke of Richmond's motion in the house o peers.

6. Remarks of the Duke of Cumberland.

7. Result in the house of peers.

March 11, 1776.

25. [8]After the decision of this matter, another was brought forward that occasioned a still greater ferment. On the 11th of March the Secretary of War gave notice that the sum of eight hundred and forty-five thousand pounds would be necessary to defray the extraordinary expenses of the land forces engaged in the American war during the preceding year. The exorbitancy of this demand was shown by the opposition, by a reference to previous victorious campaigns, and, among others, to that of 1760, which was crowned with success by the conquest of Canada. It was declared that no less than one hundred pounds, to a man, had been expended upon the harassed and suffering garrison of Boston, and yet the previous campaign had been disgraceful to the British arms. Gallant victories in Europe were ludicrously contrasted with those of Lexington and Bunker's Hill, and the River Mystic with the Rhine and the Danube. [9]The ministry were overwhelmed with a torrent of wit, ridicule, argument, and invective, but they stood their ground on the approbation and authority of parliament, relying more securely on the strength of their numbers, than on the justice of their cause. They attributed the ill success of the past campaign to the unexpected obstinacy of the colonies; and the expenditures that had been so severely censured, to the novelty and difficulty of carrying on so distant a war. [10]Declaring that the colonists had grown more haughty in their demands since the commencement of hostilities, and that nothing but the most stubborn opposition was henceforth to be expected from them, they now called upon parliament to let forth the full vengeance of the kingdom

8. Violent debate occasioned by the statement of the secretary of war.

9. Defence of the ministry.

10. Their call for vengeance against the colonies.

against these incorrigible offenders. [1]After the most violent altercation, the motion for supply was carried by a majority of one hundred and eighty, against fifty-seven.

1776.

1. Result of this debate.

26. [2]On the 14th of March, another important attempt was made in the house of lords, for the purpose of arresting hostilities. On that day the Duke of Grafton moved that an address should be presented to the throne, requesting that "in order to prevent the farther effusion of blood, a proclamation might be issued, declaring that if the colonies shall present a petition to the commissioners appointed under the late act,* setting forth what they consider to be their just rights and real grievances, that in such a case his majesty will consent to a suspension of arms; and that assurance shall be given them that their petition shall be received, considered, and answered."

2. Important motion of the Duke of Grafton for arresting hostilities.

27. [3]Among the arguments in support of this motion, it was considered peculiarly appropriate, as tending to allay the asperity of the Americans, at a time when the doctrine of unconditional submission had been advocated in the other house—a doctrine which clearly tended to increase the repugnance of the Americans to a reconciliation, and to excite them to make the most deperate efforts to gain their independence. [4]Another circumstance to which the Duke of Grafton alluded, as presenting a proper motive to induce the country to suspend the blows it was preparing to strike, was the certain intelligence which had been received, that two French gentlemen, bearing, as there was good reason to believe, an important commission, had recently held a conference with General Washington, and been introduced by him to the congress, with whom conferences had been actually commenced. [5]Such reasonings, however, were totally ineffectual with the ministerial party, who declared the impossibility of an effectual resistance of the Americans, and their utter disbelief of French interference. [6]The motion of the duke was rejected by a vote of ninety-one voices to thirty-nine. [7]This debate put an end to all attempts at conciliatory measures for the present. The opposition, seeing all their efforts fruitless, retired for a while from the unequal struggle, and war was left to do its work of havoc and desolation. [8]On the 23d of May the session of parliament was closed by a speech from the throne, in which the king expressed "his hope that his rebellious subjects would yet be awakened to a sense of their errors; at the same time expressing his confidence that if due submission could not be obtained by a voluntary return to duty, it would be effected by a full exertion of the great force intrusted to him."

3. Arguments in support of this motion.

4. Important circumstance mentioned by the Duke.

5. These reasonings ineffectual.

6. Motion rejected.

7. Efforts of the opposition suspended.

8. Close of the session

28. [9]Thus we have described, briefly, the state of feeling that existed in England, both in and out of parliament, on the subject of the controversy with America. The whole nation was violently agitated by the conflict of opinions, but the people were far more equally divided on this grand question than their representatives in parliament. [10]The king was zealous for the prosecution of the war, conceiving that the dignity of the crown was best vindicated by measures of coercion. The tory party almost universally, and a great portion of the landed interest, together with a great majority of the clergy of the established church, coincided with the views and feelings of the monarch, and were ardent in their wishes to see the colonies reduced to unconditional submission.

9. State of feeling on the subject of the American controversy.

10. Views of the king, of the tory party, and of the clergy of the established church.

* The act here referred to was one empowering the King's commissioners in America merely to grant pardons on submission; thus holding out a delusive show of peace, without furnishing the means indispensable for its attainment.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Opposed by the whigs, the commercial part of community generally, and dissenters of all sects.*

[1]On the other hand, the great body of the whigs, who had been in power during most of the period since the English revolution, till the accession of the present sovereign, together with the commercial part of the community generally, and the whole body of dissenters, and sectaries of all denominations, regarded the war with abhorrence, and threw the weight of their combined influence into the scales of the opposition.

2. *Injuries to British commerce.*

29. [2]During the summer of 1776, strong suspicions began to be entertained by the ministry, of unfriendly designs from abroad, and already British commerce began to suffer seriously from American cruisers. The trade of the British West India Islands, in particular, was involved in great distress, and such was the amount of supplies which these islands ordinarily derived from America, that their deprivation caused the prices of many necessaries of life to rise to four or five times their former value. [3]It was computed in London, at the close of the year 1776, that the losses of merchants, and of government during the year, by the vessels employed as transports for troops and stores, amounted to little less than eleven hundred thousand pounds.

3. *Losses in the year 1776.*

4. *American privateering encouraged by France and Spain.*

30. [4]What was exceedingly irritating to the British government, were the unusual facilities offered by other nations to American privateers in the disposition of their prizes. The ports of France and Spain, especially those of the former power, were freely open to the Americans, both in Europe, and in the French and Spanish colonies; and there the Americans found ready purchasers for their prizes, while, from the French West India Islands, privateers were fitted out under American colors, with commissions from Congress, to cover their depredations upon the British shipping in those seas. [5]Remonstrances were indeed made by the British ministry to the court of France, which produced some restraint on these practices, which were publicly disavowed; but it was evident that they were privately encouraged, and that the French government secretly favored the cause of the Americans.

5. *Remonstrances by the British government.*

Oct. 31, 1776.

6. *King's speech at the opening of parliament.*

31. [6]On the last day of October the session of parliament was again opened, and a speech from the throne, alluding to the declaration of American independence, informed the two houses that the Americans "had rejected, with circumstances of indignity and insult, the means of conciliation held out to them by his majesty's commissioners, and had presumed to set up their rebellious confederacies as independent states." The defeats which the Americans had sustained at Brooklyn and on the Hudson, were alluded to, as giving the strongest hopes of the most decisive good consequences; but his majesty, notwithstanding, informed parliament that it was necessary to prepare for another campaign.

7. *Manner in which the king's speech was treated.*

8. *Amendment to the ministerial address.*

32. [7]The king's speech, under the established pretext of its being the speech of the minister, was treated with great severity, and met with a determined opposition from the minority. [8]When addresses, echoing the sentiments of the speech, were brought forward in both houses, an amendment of a totally different character was likewise moved, in the house of commons by Lord Cavendish, and in the house of lords by the Marquis of Rockingham. The amendment concluded with the following peculiarly spirited and striking declaration.

9. *Concluding declaration of the amendment.*

33. [9]"We should look," it asserted, "with shame and horror on any event that would tend to break the spirit of any portions of the British nation, and bow them to an abject and unconditional submission to any power whatsoever; that would tend to annihilate their liberties, and subdue them to servile principles and passive

habits by the force of foreign mercenary arms; because, amidst the excesses and abuses which have happened, we must respect the spirit and principles operating in these commotions. Our wish is to regulate, not to destroy; for those very principles evidently bear so exact an analogy with those which support the most valuable part of our own constitution, that it is impossible, with any appearance of justice, to think of wholly extirpating them by the sword in any part of the British dominions, without admitting consequences, and establishing precedents, the most dangerous to the liberties of this kingdom." [1]After a violent debate, the amendment was rejected in the house of commons by a majority of two hundred and forty-two to eighty-seven, and in the house of peers by ninety-one to twenty-six. [2]Fourteen of the peers joined in a protest, in which they inserted the proposed amendment, in order that it might remain a perpetual memorial on the journals of that house.

1776.

1. Rejection of the amendment.

2. Protest of the peers.

34. [3]The next movement of the opposition was a motion, by Lord Cavendish, "that the house should resolve itself into a committee, to consider of the revisal of all acts of parliament, by which his majesty's subjects think themselves aggrieved." [4]This motion was based upon a proclamation of his majesty's commissioners in America, by which the colonies were assured that, if they would return to their allegiance, the original subjects of grievance should be removed. [5]The motion was opposed, however, with great warmth by the ministerial party, who declared that it tended to disgrace the commissioners, and defeat their endeavors to obtain the most advantageous terms for the kingdom. [6]In the sequel of the debate the ministry asserted that, until the congress had rescinded the declaration of independence, no treaty could be entered into with America.

3. Motion of Lord Cavendish.

4. Based upon what.

5. Opposition to the motion

6 Assertion of the ministry.

35. [7]This assertion, coupled with the insidious offers of a redress of grievances, was received with great indignation by the opposition, who declared it a declaration of the extremities of war, or unconditional submission,—a condition that could not be enforced without the effusion of oceans of blood, and one that held out to America the option only of slavery or death. [8]The motion of Lord Cavendish was rejected by a vote of one hundred and nine to forty-seven; and from this time many of the whig members, seeing their opposition ineffectual and nugatory, and that the weight of numbers baffled all arguments, withdrew from the house whenever questions relating to America were proposed, and, during the remainder of the session, a clear field was left to the ministry,—the vast supplies demanded by them being granted in almost empty houses, without examination or debate.

7. How received by the opposition.

8. Rejection of the motion of Lord Cavendish, and withdrawal of many whigs from the house.

36. [9]The number of seamen was now increased to forty-five thousand for the ensuing year; the expense of the navy amounted to nearly twenty millions of dollars, and four and a half millions were voted to discharge its previous debt. [10]The expenses for the land service amounted to more than twelve millions of dollars, besides the extraordinaries of the preceding year, which exceeded five millions. [11]New contracts were also entered into for additional troops from Germany.

9. Situation of the navy.

10. Expenses for the land service.

11. New contracts for troops.

1777.

37. [12]The advanced age and infirm state of health of the Earl of Chatham, had prevented him from taking an active part in the disputes which were agitating both houses of parliament, but unwilling that the present session should pass without some public testimony of his abhorrence of the war, he determined to make one effort more for conciliation. [13]On the 30th of May, 1777, he repaired to the

12 Earl of Chatham.

13 His appearance at the house of lords and motion for conciliation.

ANALYSIS.

house of lords, wrapped in flannels, and bearing a crutch in each hand, and there moved that "an humble address be presented to his majesty, advising him to take the most speedy and effectual measures for putting a stop to the present unnatural war against the colonies, upon the only just and solid foundation, namely, the removal of accumulated grievances."

Remarks of the Earl in support of this motion.

38. [1]This motion the aged Earl supported with all the powers of his early eloquence, and the still greater weight of his character. "We have tried for unconditional submission of the Americans," said he, "let us now try what can be gained by unconditional redress. The door of mercy has hitherto been shut against them; you have ransacked every corner of Germany for boors and ruffians to invade and ravage their country; for to conquer it, my lords, is impossible—you cannot do it. I may as well pretend to drive them before me with this crutch. I am experienced in spring hopes and vernal promises, but at last will come your equinoctial disappointment.

2. Continuation of his remarks.

39. [2]"Were it practicable, by a long continued course of success, to conquer America, the holding it in subjection afterwards will be utterly impossible. No benefit can be derived from that country to this, but by the good will and pure affection of the inhabitants: this is not to be gained by force of arms; their affection is to be recovered by reconciliation and justice only If ministers are correct in saying that no engagements are entered into by America with France, there is yet a moment left; the point of honor is still safe; a few weeks may decide our fate as a nation."

3. Grounds on which the motion was resisted.

40. [3]The motion of the Earl was vigorously resisted by the administration, on the ground, principally, that America had taken up arms with a settled resolution of a total separation from the mother country, and that if the present causes of altercation had not arisen, other pretexts would have been found to quarrel with Great Britain. [4]The ministry positively denied any danger from France, and the motion was lost by a vote of ninety-nine to twenty-eight. [5]On the 7th of June the session was terminated, by a speech from the throne, in which the two houses were complimented for the unquestionable proofs they had given of their clear discernment of the true interests of the country. [6]Such was the haughty arrogance of the court party at this period, that, when the American government, then having a considerable number of British prisoners in its possession, proposed to the English ambassador at Paris to exchange them for an equal number of Americans, Lord North returned for answer, that "the king's ambassador receives no application from rebels, unless they come to implore his majesty's mercy."

4. The motion lost.

June 7.

5. Close of the session.

6. Arrogance of the court party.

Nov. 20.

7. Speech from the throne at the opening of parliament in November.

41. [7]On the twentieth of November parliament again assembled, and was opened by a speech from the throne, expressing his majesty's "confidence that the spirit and intrepidity of his forces would be attended with important successes," and "that the deluded and unhappy multitude would finally return to their allegiance." [8]The addresses brought forward in reply in both houses, by the friends of the ministerial party, were opposed by amendments recommending measures of accommodation, and an immediate cessation of hostilities.

8. Ministerial addresses in reply, and amendments.

9. Remarks of Lord Chatham

42. [9]The amendment in the house of lords was moved by Lord Chatham himself, who, in the course of his remarks, declared, "If I were an American, as I am an Englishman, while a foreign troop were landed in my country, I never would lay down my arms,—never, never, never." [10]The employment of Indians in

10. The employment of Indians.

the American war, which had been advocated by Lord Suffolk, secretary of state, on the ground that it was "perfectly justifiable to use all the means that God and Nature had put into their hands," was denounced by Lord Chatham as a species of barbarity equally abhorrent to religion and humanity,—shocking to every precept of morality, and every sentiment of honor. [1]But notwithstanding the earnest appeals against the address, it was sustained in both houses by the usual large majorities.

1777.

1. *The ministerial addresses sustained.*

43. [2]On the third of December the catastrophe of Burgoyne at Saratoga was announced. Unusual excitement was produced by this intelligence, and although the grief and concern for this disastrous defeat were general, yet the bitter invective and reproaches which it drew on the ministers, whose ignorance and incapacity were assigned as the cause of the disgrace, were not, on that account, the less severe. [3]The high tone of ministers was somewhat lowered, and Lord North, with great apparent dejection, acknowledged "that he had indeed been unfortunate, but that his intentions were ever just and upright."

Dec. 3.

2. *Intelligence of the defeat of Burgoyne.*

3. *Admission of Lord North.*

44. [4]Various motions were now made in both houses, for copies of the orders and instructions sent to General Burgoyne, and for papers relative to the employment of the Indians, but without success. [5]The immense supplies demanded by the ministry for carrying on the war, excited the astonishment of all. The ministers explained, by saying that these extraordinary expenses were owing to the extremely hostile disposition of the country where the war was raging,—that no supplies of any kind could be purchased there, and that all must be transported thither at a prodigious expense, unprecedented in any former wars.

4. *Motions for information.*

5. *Reasons alleged for the immense supplies demanded.*

45. [6]About the middle of December parliament adjourned over to the 20th of January,—a measure that was violently opposed by the whig opposition, who declared the impolicy, at so critical a juncture, of indulging in so long a recess. [7]But the ministry had an important object in view. The recent defeat of Burgoyne, and the continual disappointments attending every ministerial measure, had made such an impression on the public mind, that a general averseness to the recruiting service was manifested throughout the kingdom, and the exorbitant demands for supplies had also created general uneasiness. A new method of increasing and furnishing the army was resolved upon, which, it was feared, the whig opposition in parliament would have seriously interrupted.

1778.

6. *Adjournment of parliament opposed by the whigs.*

7. *Object of the ministry.*

46. [8]During the recess an application was made to the prominent members of the tory party throughout the kingdom, to come forward in aid of the measures which they had advocated, and, by supplying funds, and furnishing recruits, to reanimate the military spirit of the nation. [9]Several cities seconded the views of the ministry. Liverpool and Manchester, Edinburgh and Glasgow, each engaged to raise a regiment of a thousand men. But the city of London rejected the measure; and the motion to aid the ministry was negatived in the common council by a majority of one hundred and eighty to no more than thirty. [10]The tory party in Bristol were foiled in a similar manner; and in Norfolk the opposition to the ministry was so powerful, that, instead of procuring assistance, a petition, signed by five thousand four hundred individuals, was sent up to parliament, reprobating the American war with the utmost freedom and asperity.

8. *Applications for aid.*

9. *Favored by several cities, but rejected by others.*

10. *Tory party defeated in Bristol and Norfolk.*

47. [11]When parliament again assembled, these free subscriptions, and voluntary levies of men, accomplished by ministerial influence, met with the severest animadversions of the whig opposition, on

11. *Animadversions against the voluntary subscriptions and levies*

ANALYSIS.

the ground that they were violations of the letter and spirit of the constitution, and, as such, furnished precedents dangerous to the liberties of the people [1]On the second of February Mr. Fox delivered one of the most able speeches ever listened to in the house, on the "state of the British nation," which he concluded by moving an address, that, on account of the imminence of the danger to which the realm was exposed at home, "none of the troops remaining in Britain, or in the garrisons of Gibraltar or Minorca, should be sent to America." [2]Although the motion was rejected, by a majority of two hundred and fifty-nine against one hundred and sixty-five, yet the vote showed an increasing minority in opposition to the ministry.

Feb. 2.

1. *Speech and motion of Mr. Fox.*

2. *Rejection of the motion.*

Feb. 17.

48. [3]On the 17th of February Lord North came forward with a conciliatory plan for terminating the difficulties with America,—renouncing parliamentary taxation of the colonies, and authorizing the appointment of commissioners with full powers to treat with Congress "as if it were a legal body," and without a preliminary renunciation of American independence. [4]These proposals were accompanied by an able speech from the minister, in defence of his own conduct, but in a style so different from the arrogance which he had formerly assumed, as to lead to the conjecture that some powerful motive had induced the ministry to adopt such an alteration of measures.

3. *Conciliatory proposals of Lord North.*

4. *His speech on that occasion.*

49. [5]The whigs made no opposition to the plan of conciliation, so unexpectedly submitted, but they were not the less severe upon the defence of his conduct set up by the minister. [6]Mr. Fox said that "the minister's arguments might be collected in one point, his excuses comprised in one apology,—in one single word—ignorance:—a total and palpable ignorance of every part of the subject. The minister had hoped, and he was disappointed;—he expected a great deal, and found little to answer his expectations;—he thought the Americans would have submitted to his laws, and they resisted them;—he thought they would have submitted to his arms, and they had defeated them;—he made conciliatory propositions, and he thought they would succeed, but they were rejected." [7]In the course of his remarks Mr. Fox first announced the startling fact, which ministers had kept from parliament, that, eleven days before, a treaty had been actually signed[a] at Paris between France and America.

5. *The ministerial plan countenanced by the whigs.*

6. *Sarcastic remarks of Mr. Fox.*

7. *American treaty with France announced.*

a. Feb. 6.

50. [8]On the 13th of March a formal notification of this treaty was made to the English government, by the French minister; and, on the 16th, Lord Weymouth, secretary of state for foreign affairs, brought the same before the house of commons. [9]The notification of the French minister, after declaring that a treaty of amity and commerce had been concluded between France and the "United States of America," expressed a desire, on the part of the former, to cultivate a good understanding with the British court, but concluded with an insinuation that the court of France was determined to protect the commerce of its subjects in America, and had in consequence concerted "eventual measures" for that purpose.

8. *Formal notification of this treaty.*

9. *The communication of the French minister.*

51. [10]Such a notification was regarded as highly insulting, and as amounting, in fact, to a virtual declaration of war; and addresses were moved, assuring the king of the firm support of parliament in repelling the unprovoked aggressions of the French nation. [11]In both houses, amendments, declaring that the present ministry ought no longer to be intrusted with the conduct of public affairs, were warmly supported by the opposition, but were rejected, on the final vote, by large majorities.

10. *Spirit in which the notification was met by parliament.*

11. *Character of the amendments to the addresses.*

1778.

52. [1]The declaration of France in favor of America, the great increase of her navy, and the assembling of large bodies of troops on her northern frontier, led to serious debates in both houses on the state of the nation. [2]The commons unanimously passed a vote of credit, to enable the king to put the country in a state of immediate defence, and in the house of lords a motion was made[a], by the Duke of Richmond, to recall the fleet and army from America, and to station both where they might protect those parts of the British dominions that were most exposed to the enemy. [3]The Duke of Richmond supported this motion by one of the most resolute and animated speeches ever heard in that assembly. He exposed the profusion of the finances, in the administration; the impaired credit and commerce of the nation; and the defective state of the navy; all which he attributed to the imprudence and incapacity of the present ministers, and he concluded by insisting that the only measure of safety was an immediate recognition of the independence of the colonies, and an accommodation with them upon the most advantageous terms that could be obtained.

1. Serious debates in both houses.

2. Vote of credit, and motion of the Duke of Richmond.

a. April 7.

3. Speech in support of this motion.

53. [4]But in the opinions advanced by the Duke of Richmond, and supported by the whole Rockingham party, the opposition were not unanimous. The Earls of Chatham, Temple, and Shelburne, and other lords who had thus far uniformly acted against the ministry, deprecated the utter relinquishment of America, as the greatest of all political evils that could befal the British nation.

4. Division among the opposition.

54. [5]The subject of debate thus brought forward was one of the very greatest importance, and it received additional interest from the circumstance that it called forth the last political effort of that great statesman and patriot, the Earl of Chatham. On that day this eminent man, pale and emaciated, and bowed down with the infirmities of age, made his last appearance at the house, to bear his decided testimony against a measure which he conceived to involve the degradation and dishonor of his country. As he was supported into the house by his friends, all the lords arose out of respect, and remained standing until he had taken his seat.

5. The last appearance of the Earl of Chatham in the house of peers.

55. [6]When the Duke of Richmond had finished his brilliant effort, Lord Chatham arose, and began by lamenting that his bodily infirmities had so long prevented him, at this important crisis, from attending his duties in parliament. "But my lords," said he, "I rejoice that the grave has not closed upon me; that I am still left alive to lift up my voice against the dismemberment of this ancient and noble monarchy. Pressed down as I am by the load of infirmity, I am little able to assist my country in this most perilous conjuncture; but while I have sense and memory, I never will consent to tarnish the lustre of this nation by an ignominious surrender of its rights and fairest possessions. Shall this great kingdom, that has survived the Danish depredations, the Scottish inroads, the Norman conquest, and that has seen, unawed, the threatened invasion of the Spanish armada, now fall prostrate before the house of Bourbon?—now stoop so low as to tell its ancient and inveterate enemy, Take all we have, only give us peace! It is impossible. I am not, I confess, well informed of the resources of this kingdom, but I trust it has still sufficient to maintain its just rights. But my lords, any state is better than despair. Let us at least make one effort—and, if we fall, let us fall like men."

6. His memorable speech on that occasion.

56. [7]The Duke of Richmond arose, and endeavoured to prove that the conquest of America by force of arms,—a measure which the noble earl himself had never advocated, was utterly imprac-

7. Reply of the Duke of Richmond.

ANALYSIS.

ticable; and that it was wiser to secure her friendship by a treaty of alliance, than to throw her into the arms of France. [1]The earl of Chathan, greatly moved during the reply, made an eager effort to rise at its conclusion, but after two or three unsuccessful attempts fell back in his seat in a fainting fit. [2]The house immediately adjourned—the Earl was conveyed into an adjoining apartment, and medical attendance was procured, but after lingering some few weeks, he expired on the 11th of May, in the 70th year of his age.

1. *The scene that followed.*

2. *Death of the Earl of Chatham.*

57. [3]A letter of Lord Camden speaks of this last effort of the Earl of Chatham in the following terms. "The Earl spoke, but was not like himself. His words were shreds of unconnected eloquence, and flashes of the same fire that he, Prometheus-like, had stolen from heaven, and which were then returning to the place whence they were taken." [4]What were the ideas of the Earl of Chatham with regard to the proper plan for settling the difficulties with America, at this period, when she had firmly resolved to maintain her independence, cannot now be ascertained: but it is wholly improbable, from the uniform tenor of his language and policy, that he would ever have employed coercive means for accomplishing a reconciliation.

3. *Letter of Lord Camden.*

4. *Views of the Earl of Chatham in relation to America.*

June 3, 1778.

58. [5]On the third of June parliament was prorogued by the king, without any effectual measures having been taken to terminate the existing war, while a new one was just on the eve of breaking out with France. [6]Although the British commissioners, who had proceeded to America, had made concessions far greater than the colonies had asked previous to the declaration of independence, yet congress, having already formed an alliance, offensive and defensive, with France, had now neither the will nor the power to recede from the position which it had taken. The day of reconciliation had passed, the British empire had been dismembered of its fairest inheritance, and the king of England had forever lost the brightest jewel in his crown.

5. *Prorogation of parliament.*

6. *Unsuccessful efforts of the British commissioners, and situation of the American controversy at this time.*

59. [7]Although war had not yet been declared between France and England, yet both nations were making vigorous preparations for the contest which was now inevitable. The French navy now equalled, if it did not surpass that of England, nor was France disposed to keep it idle in her ports. [8]On the thirteenth of April, a French fleet of twelve sail of the line and four large frigates, commanded by Count d'Estaing, left Toulon, a port on the Mediterranean, and passing the straits of Gibraltar on the 15th of May, sailed immediately for the American coast. [9]In the mean time a much larger fleet commanded by the Count d'Orvilliers, had assembled at Brest, destined to scour the seas of Europe, and to distract the British councils by keeping alive upon the coast of Britain the fear of an invasion.

7. *Warlike preparations of France and England.*

8. *Fleet of Count D'Estaing.*

9. *Fleet at Brest.*

June 17.

60. [10]On the 17th of June, the English Admiral Keppel fell in with and attacked three French frigates on the western coast of France, two of which he captured; but the third, the Belle Poule, after a desperate fight, escaped by running on shore. [11]The French government then ordered reprisals against the vessels of Great Britain, and the English went through the same formalities, so that both nations were now in a state of actual war.

10. *Capture of French vessels.*

(Bel. Pool.)

11. *Reprisals ordered by both nations.*

12 *Naval engagements between the fleets of Keppel and D'Orvilliers.*

61. [12]On the 23d of July the British and French fleets, the former consisting of thirty ships of the line and several frigates, commanded by Admiral Keppel; and the latter consisting of thirty two ships of the line and a greater number of frigates, commanded by Count d'Orvilliers[a], came in sight of each other near the Isle

a. Pronounced Dor-veel-vär.

of Ouessant.[a] After maneuvering four days, a partial engagement ensued on the 27th, and the loss on both sides was nearly equal. The French fleet retired, however, during the following night, and the next day entered with full sails the harbor of Brest, while the British fleet returned to Plymouth. **1778.**

a. Ou-es-sang.

62. [1]In the following autumn and winter, the West Indies were the principal seat of the naval operations of France and England. [2]Early in September, the governor of the French island of Martinico attacked,[b] and easily reduced, the English island of Dominica, where he obtained a large quantity of military stores. [3]In December, the English admiral Barrington made an attack[c] on the French island of St. Lucia lying a short distance south of Martinico. Already had the French been driven into the interior of the island, and many of their posts had been taken, when, on the evening of the fourteenth, the French fleet of Count d'Estaing suddenly made its appearance before the harbor, in which the fleet of Barrington was at anchor.

1. *Naval operations in the West Indies.*
2. *Dominica conquered by the French.*
b. Sept. 7.
3. *The English attack St. Lucia.*
c. Dec. 13.

63. [4]Twice on the following day the latter was attacked by the superior fleet of D'Estaing, which was repulsed with considerable loss. On the 16th D'Estaing landed a force of five thousand men, with which he proceeded to attack the English General Meadows, who was strongly intrenched on the island. But here also the French were unsuccessful, and after three separate charges they were obliged to retire, with a loss of fifteen hundred men in killed and wounded. [5]On the 28th D'Estaing re-embarked his troops, and on the following day sailed to Martinico. On the 30th the island of St. Lucia capitulated to the English. During several months after this event a sort of tacit truce subsisted between the English and the French forces in the West Indies, the former being much the most powerful by sea, and the latter by land.

4. *Repulses of the French forces.*
Dec 16
Dec. 28.
5. *Withdrawal of D'Estaing, capitulation of St. Lucia, tacit truce, &c.*

64. [6]While these naval events were occurring in America, the French and the English settlements in the East Indies had also become involved in hostilities. Soon after the acknowledgment of American independence by the court of France, the British East India Company, convinced that a quarrel would now ensue between the two kingdoms, despatched orders to its officers at Madras, to attack the neighboring post of Pondicherry, the capital of the French East India possessions. That place was accordingly besieged in the latter part of August, by a force of ten thousand men, natives and Englishmen, and after a vigorous resistance, in which one third of its garrison were either killed or wounded, was compelled to surrender on the 16th of October following. Other losses in that quarter of the globe followed, and during one campaign the French power in India was nearly annihilated.

6. *Hostilities between the French and the English in the East Indies.*

65. [7]The session of the English parliament, which commenced on the 26th of November, was attended with the usual whig opposition to the designs and plans of the ministerial party, but no apparent progress was made towards a peaceable termination of the American war. [8]The most important event of the session was a royal message, somewhat unexpectedly presented to both houses, informing them of a declaration of hostilities on the part of Spain. [9]On the 16th of June, 1779, the count Almadovar, the Spanish ambassador at the court of London, presented a manifesto to the British ministry, setting forth the reasons that had induced Spain to unite with France in supporting the independence of the former British American colonies.

7. *Proceedings of parliament.*
8. *Most important event of the session.*
1779.
9. *Manifesto of the Spanish ambassador.*

66. [10]This event, which had long been predicted by the whig opposition, called forth very severe reflections on the conduct of the

10. *Severe reflections on the conduct of ministers.*

ANALYSIS

ministers, who had treated with contempt all warnings of danger from that quarter,—insisting that "Spain could have no interest in joining the enemies of Britain,—that she had colonies of her own, and would not set them so bad an example as to encourage the independence of the rebellious colonies of other nations." [1]But notwithstanding the exceeding bitterness that was manifested towards the ministry, and the new attempts of the opposition to produce a reconciliation with America, all parties united in the resolution to support, with the utmost spirit and vigor, the war against both branches of the house of Bourbon. [2]On the 3d of July the session was closed by a speech from the throne, in which the king mentioned, as a happy omen, that the increase of difficulties seemed only to augment the courage and constancy of the nation.

1. *Universal determination to support the war against France and Spain.*

July 3.

2. *Speech from the throne.*

67. [3]During this season the French were more successful in the West Indies than they had been in the previous autumn and winter. [4]While the British fleet, now commanded by Admiral Byron, was absent, having sailed to convoy out of danger the homeward trade ships, D'Estaing seized the opportunity to attack the island of St. Vincents, which capitulated on the 17th of June. [5]He next sailed for the island of Grenada, where he arrived on the 2d of July. An obstinate defence was made by the governor, Lord Macartney, but he was compelled in a short time to surrender at discretion. [6]About the same time Lord Byron returned, and the two fleets came in sight of each other on the 6th of July, when an indecisive action ensued, as the French, notwithstanding their superiority, avoided coming to a close engagement. [7]Soon after, D'Estaing sailed north, capturing several British vessels on his way, and on the 9th of September anchored[a] off the mouth of the Savannah.

3. *Successes of the French in the West Indies.*

4. *Reduction of St. Vincents.*

5. *Of Grenada.*

6. *Naval engagement July 6th.*

7. *D'Estaing proceeds to Savannah.*

a. See p. 389.

68. [8]Early in this year a French fleet attacked and captured[b] without difficulty the British forts and settlements on the rivers Senegal and Gambia, on the western coast of Africa; but an attack, by a large force, upon the British islands of Guernsey and Jersey, situated in the British channel, near the coast of France, was repulsed[c] with severe loss to the assailants. [9]This enterprise was productive of considerable benefit, however, to the United States, as it occasioned so great a delay of a fleet of several hundred merchantmen, and transports with supplies, that were about to sail for New York, as seriously to embarrass the operations of the British army in that quarter. [10]In the month of August the combined fleets of France and Spain, consisting of nearly seventy ships of the line, besides a large number of frigates, and a multitude of other armed vessels, entered the British channel, and occasioned great alarm along the southern coasts of England; but no landing was attempted, and not the least impression was made on the naval strength of the kingdom.[d]

8. *British settlements on the coast of Africa captured.*

b. Feb.

Attack on Guernsey and Jersey.

c. May 1.

9. *How beneficial to the United States.*

10. *Threatened invasion of England.*

d. See p. 389.

69. [11]During the session of parliament, which commenced on the 25th of November, 1779, and ended on the 8th of July following, the opposition continued their efforts, and on several occasions, particularly on subjects relating to the prodigious expenditure of the public money, the ministry were left in the minority. [12]In the following year, 1780, England was seriously threatened with a formidable opposition from several of the northern powers of Europe. Since the alliance of France and the United States, Holland had carried on a lucrative commerce with the former power, supplying her with naval and military stores, contrary to the faith of treaties, which had not only occasioned complaints on the part of England, but also the seizure of vessels laden with exceptionable cargoes

11. *Opposition in parliament.*

1780.

12. *Difficulties between Holland and England.*

On the other hand Holland also complained, with justice, that numbers of her vessels, not laden with contraband goods, had been seized and carried into the ports of England. **1780.**

70. [1]On the 1st of January, 1780, Commodore Fielding fell in with a fleet of Dutch merchant ships, in the British channel, convoyed by a small squadron of men of war. Requesting permission to visit the ships, to ascertain if they carried contraband goods, and being refused by the Dutch admiral, he fired a shot ahead of him, and was answered by a broadside. Commodore Fielding returned the fire, when the Dutch admiral struck his colors, and refusing to separate from his convoy, he accompanied it into Plymouth, although informed that he was at liberty to prosecute his voyage. [2]The states of Holland resented the indignity, and made a peremptory demand upon the English court for reparation and redress, to which, however, no attention was paid. In truth, England preferred an open war with Holland, to the clandestine assistance which she was giving to France.

1. Meeting of an English and a Dutch fleet—and the result.

2. Demand for reparation.

71. [3]Other powers, however, now united with Holland in complaints against England, respecting the violated rights of neutrality. In these proceedings Catharine empress of Russia took the lead, and induced Denmark and Sweden to unite with her in an "Armed Neutrality," which had for its object the protection of the commerce of those nations from the vexations to which it was subject from British interference, under the claim of "right of search for contraband goods." [4]The joint declaration of these powers asserted that neutral ships should enjoy a free navigation from one port to another, even upon the coasts of belligerent powers: that all effects conveyed by such ships, excepting only warlike stores or ammunition, should be free; and that whenever any vessel should have shown, by its papers, that it was not the carrier of any contraband article, it should not be liable to seizure or detention. It was declared that such ports only should be deemed blockaded, before which there should be stationed a sufficient force to render their entrance perilous. [5]To enforce the terms of this confederation the three allied powers agreed to keep a considerable part of their naval forces in readiness "to act wherever honor, interest, or necessity, should require." [6]Prussia, Portugal, and Germany, afterwards acceded to the terms of the "armed neutrality." [7]Fear of the consequences alone, which must have resulted from the refusal, obliged England to submit to this exposition of the laws of nations, and of the rights of neutral powers.

3. "Armed neutrality" of the northern powers.

4. Joint declaration of these powers.

5. Measures for enforcing the terms of this confederation.

6. Other states join the confederacy.

7. Why England submitted to this exposition of the laws of nations.

72. [8]Immediately after the declaration of war by Spain, that power had commenced the blockade of Gibraltar, both by sea and land, in the hope of recovering that important fortress. Early in 1780, the British Admiral Rodney was despatched with a powerful fleet to its relief. On his way he fell in with and captured, on the 8th of January, a Spanish squadron of seven ships of war, and a number of transports; and on the 16th he engaged a larger squadron off Cape St. Vincent, and captured six of their heaviest vessels, and dispersed the remainder. These victories enabled him to afford complete relief to the garrisons of Gibraltar and of Minorca, after which he sailed for the West Indies, in quest of the French fleet in that quarter, commanded by Admiral Guichen.

8. Siege of Gibraltar:—relieved by Admiral Rodney.

73. [9]On the 17th of April the two fleets met and a partial engagement ensued, the French fleet, as usual, declining to come to close quarters. Other partial encounters took place, during the month of May, but as the French vessels possessed the advantage

9. Partial naval engagements.

ANALYSIS.

in sailing, they chose their own time and position for attack, relying on their ability to elude a pursuit. [1]In August the English suffered a very heavy loss in the capture of the outward bound East and West India fleets of merchant vessels, by the Spaniards, off the western coast of France. Besides the loss of a vast amount of supplies and military stores, three thousand seamen and troops became prisoners to the Spaniards.

Aug.

1. *Heavy loss of the English.*

74. [2]On the 20th of December Great Britain published a declaration of war against Holland, induced by the discovery that a commercial treaty was in process of negotiation between that country and the United States. This measure was totally unexpected by Holland, and met with the severest censures in England. [3]Hostilities were commenced by detaining the shipping of the Dutch in the different ports of Great Britain. Instructions were also despatched to the commanders of the British forces in the West Indies, to proceed to immediate hostilities against the Dutch settlements in that quarter.

2. *War declared by England against Holland.*

1781.

3. *Manner in which hostilities were commenced.*

75. [4]The most important of these was the island of St. Eustatia, a free port, which abounded with riches, owing to the vast conflux of trade from every other island in those seas. [5]This island was wholly unaware of the danger to which it was exposed, when on the third of February, 1781, Admiral Rodney suddenly appeared before it, and sent a peremptory order to the governor to surrender the island and its dependencies within an hour. Utterly incapable of making any defence, the island surrendered without any stipulations. [6]The amount of property that thereby fell into the hands of the captors was estimated at four millions sterling. [7]The settlements of the Dutch situated on the north-eastern coast of South America soon after shared the same fate as Eustatia.

4. *Island of St. Eustatia.*

5. *Its capture by the English.*

Feb. 3.

6. *Amount of property taken.*

7. *Other Dutch settlements.*

76. [8]In the month of May the Spanish governor of Louisiana completed the conquest of West Florida from the English, by the capture[a] of Pensacola. [9]In the West Indies the fleets of France and England had several partial engagements during the months of April, May, and June, but without any decisive results. [10]In the latter part of May a large body of French troops landed on the island of Tobago, which surrendered to them on the 3d of June. [11]In the month of August a severe engagement[b] took place on the Dogger Bank,* north of Holland, between a British fleet, commanded by Admiral Parker, and a Dutch squadron, commanded by Admiral Zoutman. Both fleets were rendered nearly unmanageable, and with difficulty regained their respective coasts.

8. *Conquest of West Florida by the Spaniards.*

a. May 10.

9. *Naval engagements in the West Indies.*

10. *Tobago surrendered to the French.*

b. Aug. 5.

11. *Naval engagement on the Dogger Bank.*

77. [12]After the surrender of Lord Cornwallis at Yorktown, in October, the war with the United States was considered[c] virtually at an end, both in America and in England; but with France, Holland, and Spain, hostilities were carried on more vigorously than ever. [13]The siege of Gibraltar was continued by the Spaniards with great vigor, and the soldiers of the garrison, commanded by Governor Elliott, were greatly incommoded by the want of fuel and provisions. They were likewise exposed to an almost incessant cannonade from the Spanish batteries, situated on the peninsula which connects the fortress with the main land. During three weeks, in the month of May, 1781, nearly one hundred thousand shot or shells were thrown into the town. [14]But while the eyes of Europe were turned, in suspense, upon this important fortress, and

12. *The war, after the surrender of Cornwallis*

c. See p. 406.

13. *Siege of Gibraltar continued.*

14. *Sally of the garrison.*

* This is a long and narrow sand bank in the North Sea or German Ocean, extending from Jutland, on the west coast of Denmark, nearly to the mouth of the Humber, on the eastern coast of England.

while all regarded a much longer defence impossible, suddenly, on the night of the 27th of November, a chosen body of two thousand men from the garrison sallied forth, and, in less than an hour, stormed and utterly demolished the enemy's works. The damage done on this occasion was computed at two millions sterling. **1781.** Nov. 27.

78. [1]In the month of February following, the island of Minorca, after a long siege, almost as memorable as that of Gibraltar, surrendered[a] to the Spanish forces, after having been in the possession of England since the year 1708. [2]During the same month the former Dutch settlements on the northeastern coast of South America, were recaptured by the French. St. Eustatia had been recaptured in the preceding November. Other islands in the West Indies surrendered to the French, and the loss of the Bahamas soon followed. [3]For these losses, however, the British were fully compensated, by an important naval victory, gained by Admiral Rodney, over the fleet of the Count de Grasse, on the 12th of April, in the vicinity of the Carribbee Islands. In this obstinate engagement, most of the ships of the French fleet were captured,—that of Count de Grasse among the number, while the loss of the French, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, was estimated at ten or twelve thousand men. The loss of the English, including both killed and wounded, amounted to about eleven hundred.

1782.

1. Surrender of Minorca to Spain.

a. Feb. 5.

2. Recaptures from England, and other losses sustained by her.

3. Important naval victory gained by the English.

79. [4]During this season, the fortress of Gibraltar,* which had so long bid defiance to the power of Spain, withstood one of the most

4. Continued siege of Gibraltar.

* GIBRALTAR, the *Calpe* of the Greeks, formed, with Abyla on the African coast, the "Pillars of Hercules." The fortress stands on the west side of a mountainous promontory or rock, projecting south into the sea about three miles, and being from one half to three quarters of a mile in breadth. The southern extremity of the rock, called Europa Point, is eleven and a half miles north from Ceuta in Africa. Its north side, fronting the long narrow isthmus which connects it with the main-land, is perpendicular, and wholly inaccessible. The east and south sides are steep and rugged, and extremely difficult of access, so as to render any attack upon them, even if they were not fortified, next to impossible, so that it is only on the west side, fronting the bay, where the rock declines to the sea, and the town is built, that it can be attacked with the faintest prospects of success. Here the fortifications are of extraordinary extent and strength. The principal batteries are so constructed as to prevent any mischief from the explosion of shells. Vast galleries have been excavated in the solid rock, and

ANALYSIS.

1. *Immense preparations for attacking the fortress.*

memorable sieges ever known. [1]The Spaniards had constructed a number of immense floating batteries in the bay of Gibraltar; and one thousand two hundred pieces of heavy ordnance had been brought to the spot, to be employed in the different modes of assault. Besides these floating batteries, there were eighty large boats, mounted with heavy guns and mortars, together with a vast multitude of frigates, sloops, and schooners, while the combined fleets of France and Spain, numbering fifty sail of the line, were to cover and support the attack. Eighty thousand barrels of gunpowder were provided for the occasion, and more than one hundred thousand men were employed, by land and sea, against the fortress.

2. *Attack on the 13th of September, 1782.*

80. [2]Early in the morning of the 13th of September, the floating batteries came forward, and, at ten o'clock, took their stations about a thousand yards distant from the rock of Gibraltar, and began a heavy cannonade, which was seconded by all the cannon and mortars in the enemy's lines and approaches. At the same time the garrison opened all their batteries, both with hot and cold shot, and during several hours a tremendous cannonade and bombardment were kept up on both sides, without the least intermission.

3. *Burning of the Spanish batteries.*

[3]About two o'clock, the principal of the Spanish floating batteries was discovered to emit smoke, and towards midnight it was plainly seen to be on fire. Other batteries began to kindle; signals of distress were made; and the enemy's boats came to their assistance,

4. *The confusion completed, and the batteries abandoned to the flames.*

in order to take the men out of the burning vessels. [4]Here they were interrupted by the English gun-boats, which now advanced to the attack, and, raking the whole line of batteries with their fire, completed the confusion. The batteries were soon abandoned to the flames, or to the mercy of the English.

5. *Humanity of the British seamen.*

81. [5]At the awful spectacle of several hundred of their fellow soldiers exposed to almost inevitable destruction, the Spaniards ceased firing, when the British seamen, with characteristic humanity, rushed forward and exerted themselves to the utmost to save those who were perishing in the flames and the waters. About four hundred Spaniards were thus saved,—but all the floating batteries were consumed, and the combined French and Spanish forces

6. *Siege abandoned.* Oct.

were left incapable of making any farther effectual attack. [6]Soon after, Gibraltar was relieved with supplies of provisions, military stores, and additional troops, by a squadron sent from England for that purpose, when the farther siege of the place was abandoned.

7. *Continuance of hostilities in the East Indies.*

82. [7]This was the last transaction of importance during the continuance of the war in Europe. In the East Indies the British settlements had been engaged, during several years, in hostilities with the native inhabitants, who were conducted by the famous Hyder Ally, and his son, Tippoo Saib,—often assisted by the fleets and land forces of France and Holland. The events of the war in that quarter were highly interesting and important, but our limits will not permit us to give a detail of them. Hostilities continued in the East Indies until the arrival of the news of a general peace in Europe.

8. *Preliminary articles of peace between England and the United States.*

83. [8]On the 30th of November preliminary articles of peace were signed between Great Britain and the United States, which were to be definitive as soon as a treaty between France and Great Britain should be concluded.

9. *Proceedings in Parliament.*

[9]When the session of parliament opened,

---

mounted with heavy cannon; and communications have been established between the different batteries by passages cut in the rock, to protect the troops from the enemy's fire. The town, containing a population of about 20,000 inhabitants, exclusive of about 3000 troops, lies on a bed of red sand, at the foot of the rock, on the northwest side. (See the Map.)

on the 5th of December, considerable altercation took place, on account of the terms of this provisional treaty, but a large majority were found to be in favor of the peace thus obtained. [1]The independence of the United States being now recognized by England, the original purpose of France was accomplished; and all the powers at war being exceedingly desirous of peace, preliminary articles were signed by Great Britain, France, and Spain, on the 20th of January, 1783. [2]By this treaty, France restored to Great Britain all her acquisitions in the West Indies during the war, excepting Tobago, while England surrendered to her the important station of St. Lucia. On the coast of Africa, the settlements in the vicinity of the river Senegal were ceded to France,—those on the Gambia to England. In the East Indies, France recovered all the places she had lost during the war, to which were added others of considerable importance. Spain retained Minorca and West Florida, while East Florida was ceded to her in return for the Bahamas. [3]It was not until September, 1783, that Holland came to a preliminary settlement with Great Britain, although a suspension of arms had taken place between the two powers in the January preceding.

1782.

1. *Preliminary articles of peace between England, France, and Spain.*

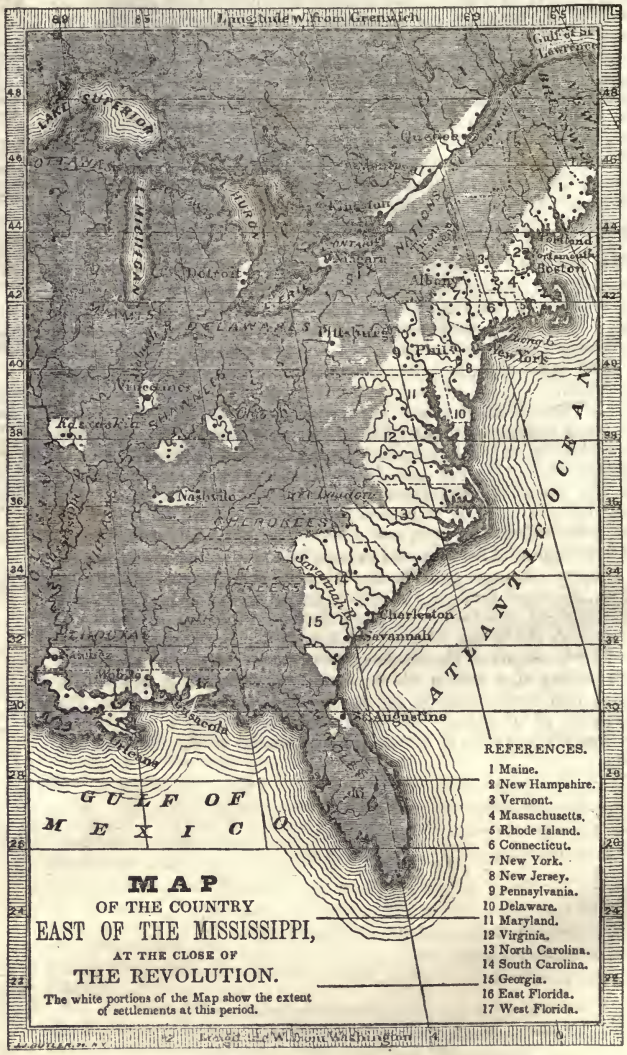
1783.

2. *General terms of these articles.*

3. *Peace with Holland.*

84. [4]Thus closed the most important war in which England had ever been engaged,—a war which arose wholly out of her ungenerous treatment of her American colonies. The expense of blood and treasure which this war cost England was enormous; nor, indeed, did her European antagonists suffer much less severely. The United States was the only country that could look to any beneficial results from the war, and these were obtained by a strange union of opposing motives and principles, unequalled in the annals of history. France and Spain, the arbitrary despots of the old world, had stood forth as the protectors of an infant republic, and had combined, contrary to all the principles of their political faith, to establish the rising liberties of America. They seemed but as blind instruments in the hands of Providence, employed to aid in the founding of a nation which should cultivate those republican virtues that were destined yet to regenerate the world upon the principles of universal intelligence, and eventually to overthrow the time-worn system of tyrannical usurpation of the few over the many.

4. *Remarks on the character of the war, and the parts taken in it by France and Spain.*


Longitude W. from Greenwich
Gulf of St. Lawrence
LAKE SUPERIOR
MICHIGAN
HURON
Quebec
Kingston
Detroit
Niagara
Albany
Portland
Portsmouth
Boston
Pittsburg
Phila.
New York
Long I.
Vincennes
Nashville
Charleston
Savannah
Augustine
Pensacola
Orleans
GULF OF MEXICO
ATLANTIC OCEAN
REFERENCES.
1 Maine.
2 New Hampshire.
3 Vermont.
4 Massachusetts.
5 Rhode Island.
6 Connecticut.
7 New York.
8 New Jersey.
9 Pennsylvania.
10 Delaware.
11 Maryland.
12 Virginia.
13 North Carolina.
14 South Carolina.
15 Georgia.
16 East Florida.
17 West Florida.
MAP
OF THE COUNTRY
EAST OF THE MISSISSIPPI,
AT THE CLOSE OF
THE REVOLUTION.
The white portions of the Map show the extent of settlements at this period.
Longitude W. from Washington

PART IV.

THE UNITED STATES.

FROM THE ORGANIZATION OF THE GOVERNMENT UNDER THE FEDERAL CONSTITUTION, IN 1789, TO THE YEAR 1845.

Period embraced in Part IV.

CHAPTER I.

WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION,

Subject of Chapter I.

FROM APRIL 30, 1789, TO MARCH 4, 1797.

1789.

1. [1]On the 30th of April, 1789, Washington appeared before congress, then assembled in the city of New York, and taking the oath of office required by the constitution, was proclaimed President of the United States.* [2]In an impressive address to both houses of congress, he expressed his distrust in his own qualifications for the important office to which the partiality of his country had called him —offered his "supplications to that Almighty Being who rules over the universe, and presides in the councils of nations," that He would "consecrate to the liberties and happiness of the people of the United States a government instituted by themselves,"—and that He would enable all "employed in its administration, to execute, with success, the functions alloted to their charge."

1. Washington inaugurated president.

2. His address on that occasion.

2. [3]Adhering to the principles upon which he had acted while commander-in-chief, he now likewise declined all pecuniary compensation for his presidential duties, and closed by requesting congress to accompany him, in humble supplication, to the benign Parent of the human race, for the divine blessing on all those measures upon which the success of the government depended. [4]Immediately after the address, both houses of congress, with the president, attended divine service; and with this public acknowledgment of a Supreme Being as the ruler of the universe, and

3. Principles to which he still adhered: close of his address.

4. Manner in which the new government was commenced.

---

* Washington was inaugurated in the gallery of the old City Hall which stood on the site of the present Custom House, in Wall Street.

ANALYSIS.

controller of human actions and human destiny, the government under the new constitution was commenced.

1. The legislature during its first session.
a. Ending Sept. 29.

3. [1]The legislature, during its first session[a]* was principally occupied in providing revenues for the long exhausted treasury; in organizing the executive departments; in establishing a judiciary; and in framing amendments to the constitution.

2. Measures taken for providing a revenue, and for encouraging American shipping.

[2]For providing a revenue, duties were levied on the tonnage of vessels, and likewise on foreign goods imported into the United States. For the purpose of encouraging American shipping, these duties were made unequal; being the heaviest on the tonnage of foreign vessels, and on goods introduced by them.

3. Departments established to aid the president.

4. [3]To aid the president in the management of the affairs of government, three executive departments were established,—styled department of foreign affairs, or of state; department of the treasury, and department of war; with a secretary at the head of each.

4. Duties required of the heads of these departments.

[4]The heads of these departments had special duties assigned them; and they were likewise to constitute a council, which might be consulted by the president, whenever he thought proper, on subjects relating to the duties of their offices.

5. The power of removal.

[5]The power of removing from office the heads of these departments, was, after much discussion, left with the president alone.

6. Appointments made.

[6]Thomas Jefferson was appointed secretary of state, Hamilton of the treasury, and Knox of the war department.

7. The national judiciary, and amendments to the constitution.

5. [7]A national judiciary was also established during this session of congress; consisting of a supreme court, having one chief justice, and several associate judges; and circuit and district courts, which have jurisdiction over certain cases specified in the constitution. John Jay was appointed chief justice of the United States, and Edmund Randolph attorney-general. Several amendments to the constitution were proposed by congress, ten of which were subsequently ratified by the constitutional majority of the states.

8. The states that last adopted the constitution.

[8]In November North Carolina adopted the constitution, and Rhode Island in the May following, thus completing the number of the thirteen original states.

1790.

9. Hamilton's plan for maintaining public credit.
b. Jan. 15.

6. [9]Early in the second session, the secretary of the treasury brought forward,[b] at the request of congress, a plan for maintaining the public credit. He proposed, as a measure of sound policy and substantial justice, that the general government should assume, not only the public foreign and domestic debt, amounting to more than

* A *Session* of Congress is one sitting, or the time during which the legislature meets daily for business. Congress has but one session annually; but as the existence of each congress continues during two years, each congress has two sessions. Thus we speak of the 1st session of the 20th congress;—the 2d session of the 25th congress, &c.

fifty-four millions of dollars, but likewise the debts of the states, contracted during the war, and estimated at twenty-five millions. **1790.**

7. [1]Provision was made for the payment of the foreign debt without opposition; but respecting the assumption of the state debts, and also the full payment of the domestic debt,—in other words, the redemption of the public securities, then, in a great measure, in the hands of speculators who had purchased them for a small part of their nominal value, much division prevailed in congress; but the plan of the secretary was finally adopted. *1. Success of the plan.*

8. [2]During this year a law was passed, fixing the seat of government, for ten years, at Philadelphia; and afterwards, permanently, at a place to be selected on the Potomac. [3]In 1790, the "Territory southwest of the Ohio," embracing the present Tennessee, was formed into a territorial government. *2. Permanent seat of government.* *3. Territorial government formed.*

9. [4]During the same year, an Indian war broke out on the northwestern frontiers; and pacific arrangements having been attempted in vain, an expedition, under General Harmar, was sent into the Indian country, to reduce the hostile tribes to submission. Many of the Indian towns were burned, and a large quantity of corn destroyed; but in two battles,[a] near the confluence of the rivers St. Mary's* and St. Joseph's in Indiana, between successive detachments of the army and the Indians, the former were defeated with considerable loss. *4. Indian war on the northwestern frontiers.* a. Oct. 1, and 22

10. [5]Early in 1791, in accordance with a plan proposed by the secretary of the treasury, an act was passed by congress for the establishment of a national bank, called the Bank of the United States, but not without the most strenuous opposition; on the ground, principally, that congress had no constitutional right to charter such an institution. **1791.** *5. Establishment of a national bank.*

11. [6]During the same year, Vermont,† the last settled of the New England states, adopted the constitution, and was admitted[b] into the Union. The territory of this state had been claimed both by New York and New Hampshire;—each had made grants of land within its limits; but in 1777 the people met in convention, and proclaimed Vermont or *New Connecticut*, an independent state. Ow- *6. Vermont, its history, &c.* b. Feb. 18.

* The *St. Mary's* from the S. and St. Joseph's from the N. unite at Fort Wayne, in the N.E. part of Indiana, and form the *Maumee*, which flows into the west end of Lake Erie.

† VERMONT, one of the Eastern or New England States, contains an area of about 8000 square miles. It is a hilly country, and is traversed throughout nearly its whole length by the Green Mountains, the loftiest points of which are a little more than 4000 feet high. The best lands in the state are W. of the mountains, near Lake Champlain; but the soil generally, throughout the state, is better adapted to grazing than to tillage. The first settlement in the state was at Fort Dummer, now Brattleboro'. A fort was erected here in 1723, and a settlement commenced in the following year.

ANALYSIS.

ing to the objections of New York, it was not admitted into the confederacy; nor was the opposition of New York withdrawn until 1789, when Vermont agreed to purchase the claims of New York to territory and jurisdiction by the payment of 30,000 dollars.

1. *Another expedition planned against the Indians.*

2. *Account of the expedition and the defeat of General St. Clair.*

12. [1]After the defeat of General Harmar in 1790, another expedition, with additional forces, was planned against the Indians, and the command given to General St. Clair, then governor of the Northwestern Territory. [2]In the fall of 1791, the forces of St. Clair, numbering about 2000 men, marched[a] from Fort Washington,* northward, about eighty miles, into the Indian country, where, on the 4th of November, they were surprised in camp,† and defeated with great slaughter. Out of 1400 men engaged in the battle, nearly 600 were killed. Had not the victorious Indians been called from the pursuit to the abandoned camp in quest of plunder, it is probable that nearly the whole army would have perished.

a. Sept. and Oct.

1792.

3. *Early history of Kentucky.*

13. [3]On the 1st of June, 1792, Kentucky,‡ which had been previously claimed by Virginia, was admitted into the Union as a state. The first settlement in the state was made by Daniel Boone and others, at a place called Boonesboro',§ in the year 1775. During the early part of the revolution, the few inhabitants suffered severely from the Indians, who were incited by agents of the British government; but in 1779 General Clarke, as before mentioned,[b] overcame the Indians, and laid waste their villages; after which, the inhabitants enjoyed greater security, and the settlements were gradually extended.

b. See p. 384.

4. *Election of 1792.*

5. *Events in France.*

1793.

6. *Mr Genet: gratitude of the Americans to France.*

c. In April.

14. [4]In the autumn of 1792 General Washington was again elected president of the United States, and John Adams vice-president. [5]At this time the revolution in France was progressing, and early in 1793 news arrived in the United States of the declaration of war by France against England and Holland. [6]About the same time Mr. Genet arrived[c] in the United States, as minister of the French republic, where he was warmly received by the people, who remembered with gratitude the aid which

---

* *Fort Washington* was on the site of the present Cincinnati, situated on the N. side of the Ohio River, near the S.W. extremity of the state of Ohio. The city is near the eastern extremity of a pleasant valley about twelve miles in circumference.

† The camp of St. Clair was in the western part of Ohio, at the N.W. angle of Dark County. Fort Recovery was afterwards built there. Dark County received its name from Colonel Dark, an officer in St. Clair's army.

‡ KENTUCKY, one of the Western States, contains an area of about 42,000 square miles The country in the western parts of the state is hilly and mountainous. A narrow tract along the Ohio River, through the whole length of the state, is hilly and broken, but has a good soil. Between this tract and Greene River is a fertile region, frequently denominated the garden of the state. The country in the S.W. part of the state between Greene and Cumberland Rivers, is called "The Barrens," although it proves to be excellent grain land.

§ *Boonesboro'* is on the S. side of Kentucky River, about eighteen miles S.E. from Lexington

France had rendered them in their struggle for independence, and who now cherished the flattering expectation that the French nation was about to enjoy the same blessings of liberty and self-government. **1793.**

15. [1]Flattered by his reception, and relying on the partiality manifested towards the French nation, Mr. Genet assumed the authority of fitting out privateers in the ports of the United States, to cruise against the vessels of nations hostile to France; and likewise attempted to set on foot expeditions against the Spanish settlements in Florida and on the Mississippi, although the president had previously issued[a] a proclamation, declaring it to be the duty and interest of the United States to preserve the most strict neutrality towards the contending powers in Europe.

1. Course pursued by Mr. Genet.

a. May 9.

16. [2]As Mr. Genet persisted in his endeavors, in opposition to the efforts and remonstrances of the president, and likewise endeavored to excite discord and distrust between the American people and their government, the president requested[b] his recall; and in the following year his place was supplied by Mr. Fauchet,[c] who was instructed to assure the American government that France disapproved of the conduct of his predecessor.

2. His recall, and his successor.

b. July.

c. Pronounced, Fo-shā.

17. [3]After the defeat of St. Clair in 1791,[d] General Wayne was appointed to carry on the Indian war. In the autumn of 1793 he built Fort Recovery near the ground on which St. Clair had been defeated, where he passed the winter. In the following summer he advanced still farther into the Indian country, and built Fort Defiance;* whence he moved down the Maumee,[e] and, on the 20th of August, at the head of about 3000 men, met the Indians near the rapids,† completely routed them, and laid waste their country.

3. Events at the west after the defeat of St. Clair.

d. See p. 436.

1794.

e. N. p. 435.

Aug. 20.

18. [4]An act, passed in 1791, imposing duties on domestic distilled spirits, the first attempt at obtaining a revenue from internal taxes, had, from the beginning, been highly unpopular in many parts of the country, and especially with the anti-federal or democratic party. During this year, the attempts to enforce the act led to open defiance of the laws, in the western counties of Pennsylvania. After two ineffectual proclamations[f] by the president, the display of a large military force was necessary in order to quell the insurgents.

4. Troubles from taxation.

f. Aug. 7, and Sept. 25.

---

* *Fort Defiance* was situated at the confluence of the River Au Glaize with the Maumee, in the N.W. part of Ohio, and at the S.E. extremity of Williams County.

† The rapids of the Maumee are about eighteen miles from the mouth of the river. The British then occupied Fort Maumee, at the rapids, on the N. side of the river, a short distance above which, in the present town of *Waynesfield*, the battle was fought.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Complaints between Gt. Britain and the United States.*

2. *Of what the former was accused.*

3. *The latter.*

4. *What result was feared.*

19. [1]Since the peace of 1783, between Great Britain and the United States, each party had made frequent complaints that the other had violated the stipulations contained in the treaty. [2]The former was accused of having carried away negroes at the close of the war, of making illegal seizures of American property at sea, and of retaining possession of the military posts on the western frontiers. [3]The latter was accused of preventing the loyalists from regaining possession of their estates, and British subjects from recovering debts contracted before the commencement of hostilities. [4]To such an extent had the complaints been carried, that, by many, another war between the two countries was thought to be inevitable.

5. *Measure taken for adjusting difficulties.*

a. Nov. 19. 1795.

6. *Ratification of this treaty, and its terms.*

b June.

20. [5]For the purpose of adjusting the difficulties, and preventing a war, if possible, Mr Jay was sent to England; where he succeeded in concluding[a] a treaty, which, early in the following year, was laid before the senate for ratification. [6]After a long debate, and a violent opposition by the democratic party, and the friends of France throughout the country, the treaty was ratified[b] by the senate, and signed by the president. By the terms of the treaty, the western posts were to be surrendered* to the United States; compensation was to be made for illegal captures of American property; and the United States were to secure to British creditors the proper means of collecting debts, which had been contracted before the peace of 1783.

7. *Treaty concluded at Fort Greenville.*

c. Aug. 3.

8. *Treaty with Spain.*

21. [7]During the same year, a treaty was concluded[c] at Fort Greenville,† with the western Indians; by which the various tribes ceded to the United States a large tract of country in the vicinity of Detroit, and west of Ohio. [8]In October, a treaty was concluded with Spain; by which the boundaries between the Spanish possessions of Louisiana and Florida, and the United States, were settled; the right of navigating the Mississippi, from its source to the ocean, was secured to the United States; and New Orleans‡ was granted to them, as a place of deposit, for three years.

---

* The British retained possession of Michigan, by means of their post at Detroit, until 1796.

† *Fort Greenville* was built by General Wayne in 1793, on a western branch of the Miami, and on the site of the present town of Greenville, the capital of Dark County, Ohio. *Fort Jefferson* was six miles S.W. of it, and *Fort Recovery* twenty-two miles N.E.

VICINITY OF NEW ORLEANS.

‡ *New Orleans*, now the capital of the state of Louisiana, is on the E. bank of the Mississippi River, 105 miles from its mouth, by the river's course. It was first settled by the French in 1717. The level of the city is from three to nine feet *below* the level of the river, at the highest water. To protect it from inundation, an embankment, called the *Levee*, has been raised on the border of the river, extending from forty-three miles below the city, to 120 miles above it (See Map.)

22. [1]A treaty was concluded[a] with Algiers, and the continuance of peace was to be secured by the payment of an annual tribute to the dey, in accordance with the long established practice of European nations. [2]In June, 1796, the "Territory southwest of the Ohio" was erected into an independent state, by the name of Tennessee,* and admitted into the Union.

1795.

1. *Peace established with Algiers.*

a. Sept.

1796.

2. *State of Tennessee.*

23. [3]As the second term of Washington's administration would expire in the spring of 1797, Washington previously made known his intention to retire from public life. His farewell address,[b] on that occasion, to the people of the United States, abounds with maxims of the highest political importance, and sentiments of the warmest affection for his country. [4]On the retirement of the man on whom alone the people could unite, the two great parties in the United States brought forward their prominent leaders for the executive office of the nation.

3. *Washington's retirement from office, and his farewell address.*

b. Sept.

4. *On his retirement what was done.*

24. [5]The federalists, dreading the influence of French sentiments and principles,—attached to the system of measures pursued by Washington, and desiring its continuance in his successor, made the most active efforts to elect John Adams; while the republicans, believing their opponents too much devoted to the British nation, and to British institutions, made equal exertions to elect Thomas Jefferson. [6]The result was the election of Mr. Adams as president, and Mr. Jefferson as vice-president. The inauguration of the former took place on the 4th of March, 1797.

5. *Principles of the two parties.*

6. *Result of the election of 1796*

CHAPTER II.

ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION,

Subject of Chapter II.

FROM MARCH 4, 1797 TO MARCH 4, 1801.

1. [7]DURING the administration of Washington, the condition of the country had been gradually improving. A sound credit had been established, funds had been provided for the gradual payment of the national debt, treaties had been concluded with the western Indian tribes, and with England, Spain, and the Barbary powers, and the agricultural and commercial wealth of the nation had in-

7. *Situation of the country during Washington's administration.*

* TENNESSEE, one of the Western States, contains an area of about 43,000 square miles. The Cumberland Mountains, crossing the state in the direction of N.E. and S.W., divide it into two parts, called East Tennessee and West Tennessee. The western part of the state has a black, rich soil: in the eastern part the valleys only are fertile. The first settlement in Tennessee was made at Fort Loudon (see Note, p. 283) in 1757.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Difficulties with France.*

2. *How the different parties regarded the war between France and England.*

3. *Course adopted by the French ministers.*

4. *Course of the French Directory.*

5. *Treatment of the American minister.*

6. *Course pursued by the president.*

7. *Advances towards a reconciliation.*

8. *Result of the embassy.*

1798.

9. *Preparations for war.*

a. In May.

b. July.

creased beyond all former example. [1]But in the mean time, difficulties with France had arisen, which threatened to involve the country in another war.

2. [2]On the breaking out of the war between France and England, consequent upon the French revolution, the anti-federal or republican party warmly espoused the cause of the French; while the government, then in the hands of the federal party, in its attempts to preserve a strict neutrality towards the contending powers, was charged with an undue partiality for England. [3]The French ministers, who succeeded Mr. Genet, finding themselves, like their predecessor, supported by a numerous party attached to their nation, began to remonstrate with the government, and to urge upon it the adoption of measures more favorable to France.

3. [4]The French Directory, failing in these measures, and highly displeased on account of the treaty recently concluded between England and the United States, adopted regulations highly injurious to American commerce; and even authorized, in certain cases, the capture and confiscation of American vessels and their cargoes. [5]They likewise refused to receive the American minister, Mr. Pinckney, until their demands against the United States should be complied with. Mr. Pinckney was afterwards obliged, by a written mandate, to quit the territories of the French republic.

4. [6]In this state of affairs, the president, by proclamation, convened congress on the 15th of June; and, in a firm and dignified speech, stated the unprovoked outrages of the French government. [7]Advances were again made, however, for securing a reconciliation; and, for this purpose, three envoys, at the head of whom was Mr. Pinckney, were sent to France.

5. [8]But these, also, the Directory refused to receive; although they were met by certain unofficial agents of the French minister, who explicitly demanded a large sum of money before any negotiation could be opened. To this insulting demand a decided negative was given. Two of the envoys, who were federalists, were finally ordered to leave France; while the third, who was a republican, was permited to remain.

6. [9]These events excited general indignation in the United States; and vigorous measures were immediately adopted[a] by congress, for putting the country in a proper state of defence, preparatory to an expected war. Provision was made for raising a small standing army, the command of which was given[b] to General Washington, who cordially approved the measures of the government.

A naval armament was decided upon, captures of French vessels were authorized, and all treaties with France were declared void. **1798.**

7. [1]The land forces however were not called into action; and after a few encounters at sea, in which an American armed schooner was decoyed into the power of the enemy, and a French frigate captured, the French Directory made overtures of peace. The president, therefore, appointed[a] ministers, who were authorized to proceed to France, and settle, by treaty, the difficulties between the two countries.

1. Partial hostilities, and measures for settling the difficulties.

[a] 1799.

8. [2]Washington did not live to witness a restoration of peace. After a short illness, of only a few hours, he died at his residence at Mount Vernon, in Virginia, on the 14th of December, at the age of sixty-eight years. [3]When intelligence of this event reached Philadelphia, congress, then in session, immediately adjourned. On assembling the next day, the house of representatives resolved, "That the speaker's chair should be shrouded in black, that the members should wear black during the session, and that a joint committee, from the senate and the house, should be appointed to devise the most suitable manner of paying honor to the memory of the man first in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen."

2. Death of Washington.

Dec. 14.

3. Proceedings of congress on receiving intelligence of this event.

9. [4]In accordance with the report of the committee, and the unanimous resolves of congress, a funeral procession moved from the legislative hall to the German Lutheran church, where an impressive and eloquent oration was delivered by General Lee, a representative from Virginia. The people of the United States were recommended to wear crape on the left arm, for thirty days. This recommendation was complied with, and a whole nation appeared in mourning. In every part of the republic, funeral orations were delivered; and the best talents of the nation were devoted to an expression of the nation's grief.

4. Public mourning on this occasion.

10. [5]Washington was above the common size; his frame was robust, and his constitution vigorous, and capable of enduring great fatigue. His person was fine; his deportment easy, erect and noble; exhibiting a natural dignity, unmingled with haughtiness, and conveying the idea of great strength, united with manly gracefulness. His manners were rather reserved than free; he was humane, benevolent, and conciliatory; his temper was highly sensitive by nature, yet it never interfered with the coolness of his judgment, nor with that prudence which was the strongest feature in his character. His mind was great and powerful, and though slow in its operations, was sure in its conclusions. He devoted a long life to the welfare

5. The personal appearance, manners, and character of Washington.

ANALYSIS.

of his country; and while true greatness commands respect, and the love of liberty remains on earth, the memory of Washington will be held in veneration.

1800.

1. Events of the years 1800 and 1802.

11. [1]During the summer of 1800, the seat of government was removed from Philadelphia to Washington, in the District of Columbia.* During the same year the territory between the western boundary of Georgia and the Mississippi River, then claimed by Georgia, and called the Georgia western territory, was erected into a distinct government, and called the Mississippi Territory. Two years later, Georgia ceded to the United States all her claims to lands within those limits. [2]In September,[a] a treaty was concluded at Paris, between the French government, then in the hands of Bonaparte, and the United States; by which the difficulties between the two countries were happily terminated.

2. Treaty with France.
a. Sept. 30.

3. Efforts of parties towards the close of Adams's administration.

4. Unpopularity of the federal party.

12. [3]As the term of Mr. Adams's administration drew towards its close, each of the great parties in the country made the most strenuous efforts,—the one to retain, and the other to acquire the direction of the government. [4]Mr. Adams had been elected by the predominance of federal principles, but many things in his administration had tended to render the party to which he was attached unpopular with a majority of the nation.

5. Principal causes of public discontent.

13. [5]The people, ardently attached to liberty, had viewed with a jealous eye those measures of the government which evinced a coldness towards the French revolution, and a partiality for England; because they believed that the spirit of liberty was here contending against the tyranny of despotism. The act for raising a standing army, ever a ready instrument of oppression in the hands of kings, together with the system of taxation by internal duties, had been vigorously opposed by the democratic party; while the *Alien* and *Sedition* laws increased the popular ferment to a degree hitherto unparalleled.

6. Alien and sedition laws.

14. [6]The "alien law," authorized the president to order any foreigner, whom he should judge dangerous to the peace and safety of the United States, to depart out of the country, upon penalty of imprisonment. The "sedition

DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA.

* The *District of Columbia* is a tract of country ten miles square, on both sides of the Potomac River, about 120 miles from its mouth by the river's course. In 1790 it was ceded to the United States by Virginia and Maryland, for the purpose of becoming the seat of government. It includes the cities of Washington, Alexandria, and Georgetown. WASHINGTON CITY stands on a point of land between the Potomac River and a stream called the Eastern Branch. The *Capitol*, probably the finest senate house in the world, the cost of which has exceeded two millions of dollars, stands on an eminence in the eastern part of the city. The President's house is an elegant edifice, a mile and a half N.W. from the capitol. (See Map.)

1800.

law," designed to punish the abuse of speech and of the press, imposed a heavy fine and imprisonment for "any false, scandalous, and malicious writing against the government of the United States, or either house of congress, or the president." [1]These laws were deemed, by the democrats, highly tyrannical; and their unpopularity contributed greatly to the overthrow of the federal party.

1. How these laws were regarded, and what was their effect.

15. [2]In the coming election, Mr. Jefferson and Mr. Burr were brought forward as the candidates of the democratic party, and Mr. Adams and Mr. Pinckney by the federalists. After a warmly contested election, the federal candidates were left in the minority. Jefferson and Burr had an equal number of votes; and as the constitution provided that the person having the greatest number should be president, it became the duty of the house of representatives, voting by states, to decide between the two. After thirty-five ballotings, the choice fell upon Mr. Jefferson, who was declared to be elected President of the United States, for four years, commencing March 4th, 1801. Mr. Burr, being then the second on the list, was consequently declared to be elected vice-president.

2. The presidential election of the year 1800.

CHAPTER III.

JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION,

Subject of Chapter III.

FROM MARCH 4, 1801, TO MARCH 4, 1809.

1801.

1. [3]ON the accession of Mr. Jefferson to the presidency, the principal offices of government were transferred to the republican party. The system of internal duties was abolished, and several unpopular laws, passed during the previous administration, were repealed.

3. Changes that followed the accession of Mr. Jefferson.

2. [4]In 1802, Ohio,* which had previously formed a part of the Northwestern Territory, was erected into a state,[a] and admitted into the Union. During the same year, the Spanish governor of Louisiana, in violation of a recent treaty,[b] closed[c] the port of New Orleans against the United States. This caused great excitement, and a

4. State of Ohio: treaty with Spain, and its violation.

a. Constitution adopted in November.
b. Concluded in 1795. See page 438.
c. Oct.

---

* OHIO, the northeastern of the Western States, contains an area of about 40,000 square miles. The interior of the state, and the country bordering on Lake Erie, are generally level, and in some places marshy. The country bordering on the Ohio River, is generally hilly, but not mountainous. The most extensive tracts of rich and level lands in the state, border on the Scioto, and the Great and Little Miami. On the 7th of April, 1788, a company of forty-seven individuals landed at the spot where Marietta now stands, and there commenced the first settlement in Ohio.

ANALYSIS.

proposition was made in congress, to take possession of all Louisiana.

1. *Purchase of Louisiana.*

3. [1]A more pacific course, however, was adopted. In 1800, Louisiana had been secretly ceded to France, and a negotiation was now opened with the latter power, which resulted in the purchase[a] of Louisiana for fifteen millions of dollars. In December,[b] 1803, possession was taken by the United States. [2]That portion of the territory embracing the present state of Louisiana, was called the "Territory of Orleans;" and the other part, the "District of Louisiana," embracing a large tract of country extending westward to Mexico and the Pacific Ocean.

1803.

a. April 30.

b. Dec. 20.

2. *How divided and named.*

3. *War with Tripoli.*

4. [3]Since 1801 war had existed[c] between the United States and Tripoli, one of the piratical Barbary powers. In 1803, Commodore Preble was sent into the Mediterranean, and after humbling the Emperor of Morocco, he appeared before Tripoli with most of his squadron. The frigate Philadelphia, under Captain Bainbridge, being sent into the harbor to reconnoitre, struck upon a rock, and was obliged to surrender[d] to the Tripolitans. The officers were considered prisoners of war, but the crew were treated as slaves. This capture caused great exultation with the enemy; but a daring exploit of lieutenant, afterwards Commodore Decatur, somewhat humbled the pride which they felt in this accession to their navy.

c. War declared by the Bashaw, June 10, 1801.

d. Oct. 31, 1803.

1804.

4. *Recapture of the frigate Philadelphia.*

5. [4]Early in February[e] of the following year, Lieutenant Decatur, under the cover of evening, entered the harbor of Tripoli in a small schooner, having on board but seventy-six men, with the design of destroying the Philadelphia, which was then moored near the castle, with a strong Tripolitan crew. By the aid of his pilot, who understood the Tripolitan language, Decatur succeeded in bringing his vessel in contact with the Philadelphia; when he and his followers leaped on board, and in a few minutes killed twenty of the Tripolitans, and drove the rest into the sea.

e. Feb. 3.

6. Under a heavy cannonade from the surrounding vessels and batteries, the Philadelphia was set on fire, and not abandoned until thoroughly wrapped in flames; when Decatur and his gallant crew succeeded in getting out of the harbor, without the loss of a single man. [5]During the month of August, Tripoli was repeatedly bombarded by the American squadron under Commodore Preble, and a severe action occurred[f] with the Tripolitan gun-boats, which resulted in the capture of several, with little loss to the Americans.

5. *Account of the war with Tripoli continued.*

f. Aug. 3.

6. *Death of Hamilton.*

7. [6]In July, 1804, occurred the death of General Ham-

ilton, who fell in a duel fought with Colonel Burr, vice-president of the United States. Colonel Burr had lost the favor of the republican party, and being proposed for the office of governor of New York, was supported by many of the federalists, but was openly opposed by Hamilton, who considered him an unprincipled politician. A dispute arose, and a fatal duel[a] was the result.* [1]In the fall of 1804, Jefferson was re-elected president. George Clinton, of New York, was chosen vice-president.

1804.

a. July 11.

1. *Election of 1804.*

8. [2]At the time of Commodore Preble's expedition to the Mediterranean, Hamet, the legitimate sovereign of Tripoli, was an exile; having been deprived of his government by the usurpation of a younger brother. Mr. Eaton, the American consul at Tunis, concerted,[b] with Hamet, an expedition against the reigning sovereign, and obtained of the government of the United States permission to undertake it.

2. *Hamet: expedition planned by him and Eaton.*

1805.

b. Feb. 23.

9. [3]With about seventy seamen from the American squadron, together with the followers of Hamet and some Epyptian troops, Eaton and Hamet set out[c] from Alexandria† towards Tripoli, a distance of a thousand miles, across a desert country. After great fatigue and suffering, they reached[d] Derne,‡ a Tripolitan city on the Mediterranean, which was taken[e] by assault. After two successful engagements[f] had occurred with the Tripolitan army, the reigning bashaw offered terms of peace; which being considered much more favorable than had before been offered, they were accepted[g] by Mr. Lear, the authorized agent of the United States.

3. *Account of that expedition.*

c. March 6.

d. April 26.

e. April 27.

f. May 18, and June 10.

g. Treaty concluded June, 3, 1805.

10. [4]In 1805 Michigan became a distinct territorial government of the United States. Previous to 1802, it formed, under the name of Wayne County, a part of the Northwestern Territory. From 1802 until 1805 it was under the jurisdiction of Indiana Territory.

4. *Michigan.*

11. [5]In 1806 Colonel Burr was detected in a conspiracy, the design of which was to form, west of the Alleghany Mountains, an independent empire, of which he was to be the ruler, and New Orleans the capital; or, failing in this project, it was his design to march upon Mexico, and establish an empire there. He was arrested and brought to trial in 1807, on the charge of treason, but was released for want of sufficient evidence to convict him.

1806.

5. *Conspiracy and trial of Col. Burr.*

12. [6]The wars produced by the French revolution still

6. *Wars produced by the French Revolution.*

* Hamilton fell at Hoboken, on the New Jersey side of the Hudson River, opposite the city of New York.

† *Alexandria*, the ancient capital of Egypt, founded by Alexander the Great in the year 331, A. C., is situated at the N.W. extremity of Egypt, on a neck of land between the Mediterranean Sea and Lake Mareotis.

‡ *Derne* is about 650 miles E. from Tripoli.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Relative positions of England and France.*

continued to rage, and at this time Napoleon, emperor of France, triumphant and powerful, had acquired control over nearly all the kingdoms of Europe. [1]England alone, unsubdued and undaunted, with unwavering purpose waged incessant war against her ancient rival; and though France was victorious on land, the navy of England rode triumphant in every sea. [2]The destruction of the ships and commerce of other nations was highly favorable to the United States, which endeavored to maintain a neutrality towards the contending powers, and peaceably to continue a commerce with them.

2. *Position of the United States.*

3. *Blockade from Brest to the Elbe.*

a. May 16.

13. [3]In May, 1806, England, for the purpose of injuring the commerce of her enemy, declared[a] the continent from Brest* to the Elbe† in a state of blockade, although not invested by a British fleet; and numerous American vessels, trading to that coast, were captured and condemned.

4. *Retaliatory French decree.*

b. Nov. 21.

5. *Farther prohibition, and effect of these measures.*

c. Jan. 7.

[4]Bonaparte soon retaliated, by declaring[b] the British isles in a state of blockade; and American vessels trading thither became a prey to French cruisers. [5]Early in the following year, the coasting trade of France was prohibited[c] by the British government. These measures, highly injurious to American commerce, and contrary to the laws of nations and the rights of neutral powers, occasioned great excitement in the United States, and the injured merchants loudly demanded of the government redress and protection.

6. *Pretensions and claims of the British government.*

14. [6]In June, an event of a hostile character occurred, which greatly increased the popular indignation against England. That power, contending for the principle that whoever was born in England always remained a British subject, had long claimed the right, and exercised the power of searching American ships, and taking from them those who had been naturalized in the United States, and who were, therefore, claimed as American citizens.

June 22.

7. *Attack on the frigate Chesapeake.*

15. [7]On the 22d of June, the American frigate Chesapeake, then near the coast of the United States, having refused to deliver up four men claimed by the English as deserters, was fired upon by the British ship of war Leopard. Being unsuspicious of danger at the time, and unprepared for the attack, the Chesapeake struck her colors, after having had three of her men killed, and eighteen wounded. The four men claimed as deserters were then transferred to the British vessel. Upon investigation it was ascertained that three of them were American citizens, who

---

* *Brest* is a town at the northwestern extremity of France.

† The *Elbe*, a large river of Germany, enters the North Sea or German Ocean between Hanover and Denmark, 750 miles N.E. from Brest.

had been impressed by the British, and had afterwards escaped from their service. **1808.**

16. [1]This outrage upon a national vessel was followed by a proclamation of the president, forbidding British ships of war to enter the harbors of the United States, until satisfaction for the attack on the Chesapeake should be made by the British government, and security given against future aggression. [2]In November, the British government issued[a] the celebrated "*orders in council*," prohibiting all trade with France and her allies; and in December following, Bonaparte issued[b] the retaliatory Milan decree,* forbidding all trade with England and her colonies. Thus almost every American vessel on the ocean was liable to be captured by one or the other of the contending powers.

1. President's proclamation.

2. Further hostile measures of France and England against each other, and their effect on American commerce.

a. Nov. 11.
b. Dec. 17.

17. [3]In December, congress decreed[c] an embargo, the design of which was, not only to retaliate upon France and England, but also, by calling home and detaining American vessels and sailors, to put the country in a better posture of defence, preparatory to an expected war. The embargo failing to obtain, from France and England, an acknowledgment of American rights, and being likewise ruinous to the commerce of the country with other nations, in March,[d] 1809, congress repealed it, but, at the same time, interdicted all commercial intercourse with France and England **1809.**

3. American embargo act, from its passage to its repeal.

c. Dec. 22
d. March 1.

18. [4]Such was the situation of the country at the close of Jefferson's administration. Following and confirming the example of Washington, after a term of eight years Jefferson declined a re-election, and was succeeded[e] in the presidency by James Madison. George Clinton was re-elected vice-president.

4. Close of Jefferson's administration, and the ensuing election.

e. March 4 1809.

CHAPTER IV.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION,

Subject of Chapter IV.

FROM MARCH 4, 1809, TO MARCH 4, 1817.

WAR WITH ENGLAND.

SECTION I.—EVENTS OF 1809, '10, '11.

Of Section I

1. [5]SOON after the accession of Mr. Madison to the presidency, he was assured by Mr. Erskine, the British

5. The Erskine negotiation, and its result.

* So called from *Milan*, a city in the N. of Italy, whence the decree was issued.

ANALYSIS.

minister at Washington, that the British "orders in council,"[a] so far as they affected the United States, should be repealed by the 10th of June. The president, therefore, proclaimed that commercial intercourse would be renewed with England on that day. The British government, however, disavowed the acts of its minister; the orders in council were not repealed; and non-intercourse with England was again proclaimed.

a. See p. 447.

Aug. 10.

1810.

1. *Decree issued, and decree revoked by Bonaparte in 1810.*

2. [1]In March, 1810, Bonaparte issued[b] a decree of a decidedly hostile character, by which all American vessels and cargoes, arriving in any of the ports of France, or of countries occupied by French troops, were ordered to be seized and condemned; but in November of the same year, all the hostile decrees of the French were revoked, and commercial intercourse was renewed between France and the United States.

b. March 23.

2. *Hostile course still pursued by England.*

3. [2]England, however, continued her hostile decrees; and, for the purpose of enforcing them, stationed before the principal ports of the United States, her ships of war, which intercepted the American merchantmen, and sent them to British ports as legal prizes. On one occasion, however, the insolence of a British ship of war received a merited rebuke.

1811.

3. *Encounter at sea.*

4. [3]Commodore Rogers, sailing in the American frigate President, met,[c] in the evening, a vessel on the coast of Virginia. He hailed, but instead of a satisfactory answer, received a shot, in return, from the unknown vessel. A brief engagement ensued, and the guns of the stranger were soon nearly silenced, when Commodore Rogers hailed again, and was answered that the ship was the British sloop of war Little Belt, commanded by Captain Bingham. The Little Belt had eleven men killed and twenty-one wounded, while the President had only one man wounded.

c. May 16.

4. *Indian war at the west, and "Battle of Tippecanoe."*

5. [4]At this time the Indians on the western frontiers had become hostile, as was supposed through British influence; and in the fall of 1811, General Harrison, then governor of Indiana Territory,* marched against the tribes on the Wabash. On his approach to the town of the Prophet, the brother of the celebrated Tecumseh, the principal chiefs came out and proposed[d] a conference, and requested him to encamp for the night. Fearing treachery, the troops slept on their arms in order of battle. Early on the following morning[e] the camp was furiously assailed, and a bloody and doubtful contest ensued; but

d. Nov. 6.

e. Nov. 7.

* *Indiana Territory*, separated from the Northwestern Territory in 1800, embraced the present states of Indiana and Illinois

after a heavy loss on both sides, the Indians were finally repulsed.* **1811.**

SECTION II.

PRINCIPAL EVENTS OF 1812.

Subject of Section II.

DIVISIONS.—*I. Declaration of War, and Events in the West.—II. Events on the Niagara Frontier.—III. Naval Events.* *Its Divisions.*

I. DECLARATION OF WAR, AND EVENTS IN THE WEST.— **1812.**

1. [1]Early in April, 1812, congress passed[a] an act laying an embargo, for ninety days, on all vessels within the jurisdiction of the United States. On the 4th of June following, a bill declaring war against Great Britain passed the house of representatives; and, on the 17th, the senate; and, on the 19th, the president issued a proclamation of war.[b]

1. The embargo of 1812, and the declaration of war.

a. April 4.

b. Act declaring war adopted by both houses June 18th.

2. [2]Exertions were immediately made to enlist 25,000 men; to raise 50,000 volunteers; and to call out 100,000 militia for the defence of the sea-coast and frontiers. Henry Dearborn, of Massachusetts, an officer of the revolution, was appointed major-general and commander-in-chief of the army.

2. Preparations for war.

3. [3]At the time of the declaration of war, General Hull, then governor of Michigan Territory, was on his march from Ohio to Detroit, with a force of two thousand men, with a view of putting an end to the Indian hostilities on the northwestern frontier. Being vested with an authority to invade the Canadas, "if consistent with the safety of his own posts," on the 12th of July he crossed the river Detroit,† and encamped at Sandwich,‡ with the professed object of marching upon the British post at Malden.§

3. Movements of Gen. Hull.

4. [4]In the mean time, the American post at Mackinaw‖ was surprised, and a surrender demanded; which was the first intimation of the declaration of war that the garri-

4. Losses sustained by the Americans.

* This battle, called the *Battle of Tippecanoe*, was fought near the W. bank of Tippecanoe River, at its junction with the Wabash, in the northern part of Tippecanoe County, Indiana.

† *Detroit River* is the channel or strait that connects Lake St. Clair with Lake Erie. (See Map.)

‡ *Sandwich* is on the E. bank of Detroit River, two miles below Detroit. (See Map.)

§ *Fort Malden* is on the E. bank of Detroit River, fifteen miles S. from Detroit, and half a mile N. from the village of Amherstburg. (See Map.)

‖ *Mackinaw* is a small island a little E. from the strait which connects Lake Michigan with Lake Huron, about 270 miles N.W. from Detroit. The fort and village of Mackinaw are on the S.E. side of the island.

VICINITY OF DETROIT.

ANALYSIS.

son had received. The demand was precipitately complied with,[a] and the British were thus put in possession of one of the strongest posts in the United States. Soon after, Major Van Horne, who had been despatched by General Hull to convoy a party approaching his camp with supplies, was defeated[b] by a force of British and Indians near Brownstown.*

a. July 17.

b. Aug. 5.

1. *Retreat of Gen. Hull.*

5. [1]General Hull himself, after remaining inactive nearly a month in Canada, while his confident troops were daily expecting to be led against the enemy, suddenly recrossed, in the night of the 7th of August, to the town and fort of Detroit, to the bitter vexation and disappointment of his officers and army, who could see no reason for thus abandoning the object of the expedition. [2]He now sent[c] a detachment of several hundred men, under Colonel Miller, to accomplish the object previously attempted by Major Van Horne. In this expedition a large force of British and Indians, the latter under the famous Tecumseh, was met[d] and routed with considerable loss, near the ground on which Van Horne had been defeated.

Aug. ".

2. *Expedition of Col. Miller.*

c. Aug. 8.

d. Aug. 9.

Aug. 16.

3. *Surrender of Detroit.*

6. [3]On the 16th of August General Brock, the British commander, crossed the river a few miles above Detroit, without opposition, and with a force of about 700 British troops and 600 Indians, immediately marched against the American works. While the American troops, advantageously posted, and numbering more than the combined force of the British and Indians, were anxiously awaiting the orders to fire, great was their mortification and rage, when all were suddenly ordered within the fort, and a white flag, in token of submission, was suspended from the walls. Not only the army at Detroit, but the whole territory, with all its forts and garrisons, was thus basely surrendered[e] to the British.

e. Aug. 16.

4. *How the event was regarded by the British.*

7. [4]The enemy were as much astonished as the Americans at this unexpected result. General Brock, in writing to his superior officer, remarked, "When I detail my good fortune you will be astonished." [5]General Hull was afterwards exchanged for thirty British prisoners, when his conduct was investigated by a court-martial. The court declined giving an opinion upon the charge of treason, but convicted him of cowardice and unofficer-like conduct. He was sentenced to death, but was pardoned by the president; but his name was ordered to be struck from the rolls of the army.

5. *Gen. Hull's trial.*

II. Events on the Niagara Frontier.[f]—1. [1]During

f. See Map, next page.

* *Brownstown* is situated at the mouth of Brownstown Creek, a short distance N. from the mouth of Huron River, about twenty miles S.W. from Detroit. (See Map, p. 449.)

the summer, arrangements were made for the invasion of Canada from another quarter. A body of troops, consisting mostly of New York militia, was collected on the Niagara frontier, and the command given to General Stephen Van Rensselaer. Early on the morning of the 13th of October, a detachment of two hundred and twenty-five men, under Colonel Solomon Van Rensselaer, crossed the river, gained possession of the heights of Queenstown,* and took a small battery near its summit. Van Rensselaer was wounded at the landing, and the assault was led by Captains Ogilvie and Wool.

1812.

1. Preparations for invading Canada, and attack on Queenstown.

2. [2]At the very moment of success, the enemy received a reenforcement of several hundred men under General Brock. These attempted to regain possession of the battery, but were driven back by an inferior force under Captain Wool, and their leader, General Brock, was killed. In the afternoon the British received a strong reenforcement from Fort George,† while all the exertions of General Van Rensselaer, during the day, could induce only about one thousand of his troops to cross the river. These were attacked by a far superior force, and nearly all were killed or taken prisoners, in the very sight of twelve or fifteen hundred of their brethren in arms on the opposite shore, who positively refused to embark.

2. Remaining events that occurred at Queenstown.

3. [3]While these men asserted that they were willing to defend their country when attacked, they professed to entertain scruples about carrying on offensive war by invading the enemy's territory. [4]Unfortunately, these principles were entertained, and the conduct of the militia on this occasion defended by many of the federal party, who were, generally, opposed to the war.

3. Reasons offered for refusing to embark.

4. Extent of these principles.

4. [5]Soon after the battle of Queenstown, General Van Rensselaer retired from the service, and was succeeded[a] by General Alexander Smyth, of Virginia. [6]This officer issued an address,[b] announcing his resolution of retrieving the honor of his country by another attack on the Canadian frontier, and invited the young men of the country to share in the danger and glory of the enterprise. But after collecting between four and five thousand men, sending a small party across[c] at Black Rock,‡ and making a show of passing with a large force, the design was suddenly abandoned, to

5. Change of officers.
a. Oct. 14.
6. Proceedings of Gen. Smyth.
b. Nov. 10.
c. Nov. 23

NIAGARA FRONTIER.

* *Queenstown*, in Upper Canada, is on the W. bank of Niagara River, at the foot of Queenstown Heights, seven miles from Lake Ontario. (See Map.)

† *Fort George* was on the W. bank of Niagara River, nearly a mile from Lake Ontario. (See Map.)

‡ *Black Rock* is on the E. bank of Niagara River, two and a half miles N. from Buffalo, of which it may be considered a suburb. (See Map.)

ANALYSIS.

the great surprise of the troops. Another preparation for an attack was made, and the troops were actually embarked, when they were again withdrawn, and ordered to winter quarters.

Dec.

1. *Events of the war thus far.*

III. Naval Events.—1. [1]Thus far the events of the war, on the land, had been unfavorable to the Americans; but on another element, the national honor had been fully sustained by a series of unexpected and brilliant victories.

Aug. 19.

2. *The Constitution and Guerriere.*

a. Off the coast of Massachusetts.

[2]On the 19th of August, the American frigate Constitution, of forty-four guns, commanded by Captain Isaac Hull, engaged the British frigate Guerriere, of thirty-eight guns, commanded by Captain Dacres; and after an action[a] of thirty minutes compelled her to surrender. The Guerriere was made a complete wreck. Every mast and spar was shot away, and one-third of her crew was either killed or wounded.

3. *The Wasp and the Frolic.*

b. Oct. 18.

2. [3]In October, an American sloop of war, the Wasp, of eighteen guns, Captain Jones commander, while off the coast of North Carolina, captured[b] the brig Frolic, of twenty-two guns, after a bloody conflict of three-quarters of an hour. On boarding the enemy, to the surprise of the Americans, only three officers and one seaman were found on the forecastle; while the other decks, slippery with blood, were covered with the dead and the dying. The loss of the Frolic was about eighty in killed and wounded, while that of the Wasp was only ten. On the same day the two vessels were captured by a British seventy-four.

4. *The frigates United States and Macedonian.*

c. Oct. 25.

d. West of the Canary Islands.

3. [4]A few days later,[c] the frigate United States, of forty-four guns, commanded by Commodore Decatur, engaged[d] the British frigate Macedonian, of forty-nine guns. The action continued nearly two hours, when the Macedonian struck her colors, being greatly injured in her hull and rigging, and having lost, in killed and wounded, more than 100 men. The United States was almost entirely uninjured. Her loss was only five killed and seven wounded. The superiority of the American gunnery in this action was remarkably conspicuous.

5. *The constitution and Java.*

e. Dec. 29.

4. [5]In December, the Constitution, then commanded by Commodore Bainbridge, achieved a second naval victory; capturing[e] the British frigate Java, carrying forty-nine guns and 400 men. The action occurred off St. Salvador,* and continued more than three hours. Of the crew of the Java, nearly 200 were killed and wounded; of the Constitution, only thirty-four. The Java, having been made a complete wreck, was burned after the action.

* *St. Salvador* is a large city on the eastern coast o Brazil.

5. [1]In addition to these distinguished naval victories, others, less noted, were frequently occurring. Numerous privateers covered the ocean, and during the year 1812, nearly three hundred vessels, more than fifty of which were armed, were captured from the enemy, and more than three thousand prisoners were taken. Compared with this, the number captured by the enemy was but trifling. The American navy became the pride of the people, and in every instance it added to the national renown.

1812.

1. Other naval successes.

SECTION III.

PRINCIPAL EVENTS OF 1813.

Subject of Section III.

DIVISIONS.—*I. Events in the West and South.—II. Events in the North.—III. Naval Events.*

Its Divisions.

I. EVENTS IN THE WEST AND SOUTH.—1. [2]In the beginning of 1813, the principal American forces were arranged in three divisions. *The army of the West* was commanded by General Harrison; *the army of the centre*, under General Dearborn, was on the southern shore of Lake Ontario, and on the Niagara frontier; and *the army of the North*, under General Hampton, on the shores of Lake Champlain.

2. Arrangement of the American forces in 1813

2. [3]Shortly after the disaster which befell the army under General Hull, the militia of the Western States, promptly obedient to the calls of their country, assembled in great numbers at different and distant points, for the defence of the frontier, and the recovery of the lost territory. [4]It was the design of General Harrison to collect these forces at some point near the head of Lake Erie, from which a descent should be made upon the British posts at Detroit and Malden.

3. Events at the west, soon after Hull's surrender.

4. Harrison's design.

3. [5]On the 10th of January, General Winchester, with about 800 men, arrived at the rapids[a] of the Maumee. Learning[b] that parties of British and Indians were about to concentrate at the village of Frenchtown,* thirty miles in his advance, on the River Raisin;† at the earnest solicitation of the inhabitants he detached[c] a small party under Colonels Lewis and Allen for their protection.

Jan. 10.

5. The force under Gen. Winchester.

a. N. p. 437.

b. Jan. 13.

c. Jan. 17

---

* *Frenchtown* is on the north bank of the River Raisin, near its mouth, about twenty-five miles S.W. from Detroit. The large village that has grown up on the S. side of the stream at this place, is now called *Monroe*. (See Map, p. 449.)

† The River *Raisin*, so named from the numerous grape-vines that formerly lined its banks, enters Lake Erie from the W. two and a half miles below the village of Monroe. (See Map p 449.)

ANALYSIS.

a. Jan. 18.
b. Jan. 20.

[1]This party, finding the enemy already in possession of the town, successfully attacked[a] and routed them; and having encamped on the spot, was soon after joined[b] by the main body under General Winchester.

1. *Battle of Frenchtown.*

4. [1]Here, early on the morning of the 22d, the Americans were attacked by General Proctor, who had marched suddenly from Malden with a combined force of fifteen hundred British and Indians. The Americans made a brave defence against this superior force, and after a severe loss on both sides, the attack on the main body was for a time suspended; when General Proctor, learning that General Winchester had fallen into the hands of the Indians, induced him, by a pledge of protection to the prisoners, to surrender the troops under his command.

2. *Treatment of the wounded prisoners.*
c. Jan. 22.
d. Jan. 23.

5. [2]The pledge was basely violated. General Proctor marched back[c] to Malden, leaving the wounded without a guard, and in the power of the savages, who wantonly put to death[d] those who were unable to travel—carried some to Detroit for ransom at exorbitant prices—and reserved others for torture. If the British officers did not connive at the destruction of the wounded prisoners, they at least showed a criminal indifference about their fate.

3. *Movements of General Harrison at this time.*
e. Jan. 23.
f. Feb. 1.

6. [3]General Harrison, who had already arrived at the rapids of the Maumee, on hearing of the fate of General Winchester, at first fell back,[e] expecting an attack from Proctor, but soon advanced[f] again with about 1200 men, and began a fortified camp; which, in honor of the governor of Ohio, he named Fort Meigs.* [4]On the 1st of May, the fort was besieged by General Proctor, at the head of more than 2000 British and Indians.

May 1.
4. *Of General Proctor.*

May 5.
5. *Gen. Clay.*

7. [5]Five days afterwards, General Clay, advancing to the relief of the fort, at the head of 1200 Kentuckians, attacked and dispersed the besiegers; but many of his troops, while engaged in the pursuit, were themselves surrounded and captured. [6]On the 8th of May, most of the Indians, notwithstanding the entreaties of their chief, Tecumseh, deserted their allies; and, on the following day, General Proctor abandoned the siege, and again retired to Malden.

May 8.
6. *Abandonment of the siege.*
May 9.

7. *Movements of the British and Indians in July, and siege of Fort Sandusky.*
g. July 21.

8. [7]In the latter part of July, about 4000 British and Indians, the former under General Proctor, and the latter under Tecumseh, again appeared[g] before Fort Meigs, then commanded by General Clay. Finding the garrison prepared for a brave resistance, General Proctor, after a few

* *Fort Meigs* was erected at the rapids of the Maumee, on the S. side of the river, nearly opposite the former British post of Maumee, and a short distance S.W. from the present village of Perrysburg.

days' siege, withdrew[a] his forces, and with 500 regulars and 800 Indians, proceeded against the fort at Lower Sandusky,* then garrisoned by only 150 men under Major Croghan, a youth of twenty-one. [1]A summons, demanding a surrender, and accompanied with the usual threats of indiscriminate slaughter in case of refusal, was answered by the young and gallant Croghan with the assurance that he should defend the place to the last extremity.

1813.

a. July 23.

1. *Summons to surrender.*

9. [2]A cannonade from several six-pounders and a howitzer was opened upon the fort, and continued until a breach had been effected, when about 500 of the enemy attempted to carry the place by assault.[b] They advanced towards the breach under a destructive fire of musketry, and threw themselves into the ditch, when the only cannon in the fort, loaded with grape shot, and placed so as to rake the ditch, was opened upon them with terrible effect. The whole British force, panic struck, soon fled in confusion, and hastily abandoned the place, followed by their Indian allies. The loss of the enemy was about 150 in killed and wounded, while that of the Americans was only one killed and seven wounded.

2. *Attack on Fort Sandusky.*

b. Aug. 2.

10. [3]In the mean time, each of the hostile parties was striving to secure the mastery of Lake Erie. By the exertions of Commodore Perry, an American squadron, consisting of nine vessels carrying fifty-four guns, had been prepared for service; while a British squadron of six vessels, carrying sixty-three guns, had been built and equipped under the superintendence of Commodore Barclay.

3. *Efforts made for the mastery of Lake Erie.*

11. [4]On the tenth of September the two squadrons met near the western extremity of Lake Erie. In the beginning of the action the fire of the enemy was directed principally against the Lawrence, the flag-ship of Commodore Perry, which in a short time became an unmanageable wreck, having all her crew, except four or five, either killed or wounded. Commodore Perry, in an open boat, then left her, and transferred his flag on board the Niagara; which, passing through the enemy's line, poured successive broadsides into five of their vessels, at half pistol shot distance. The wind favoring, the remainder of the squadron now came up, and at four o'clock every vessel of the enemy had surrendered.

Sept. 10.

4. *Battle on Lake Erie.*

12. [5]Intelligence of this victory was conveyed to Harrison in the following laconic epistle: "We have met the enemy, and they are ours." The way to Malden being

5. *Events that followed the action.*

* *Lower Sandusky* is situated on the W. bank of Sandusky River, about fifteen miles S. from Lake Erie.

ANALYSIS.

a. Sept. 27.

now opened, the troops of Harrison were embarked,[a] and transported across the lake; but General Proctor had already retired with all his forces. He was pursued, and

Oct. 5.

on the 5th of October was overtaken on the river Thames,* about eighty miles from Detroit.

1. *Battle of the Thames.*

13. [1]His forces were found advantageously drawn up across a narrow strip of woodland, having the river on the left, and on the right a swamp—occupied by a large body of Indians under Tecumseh. On the first charge, the main body of the enemy in front was broken; but on the left the contest with the Indians raged for some time with great fury. Animated by the voice and conduct of their leader, the Indians fought with determined courage, until Tecumseh himself was slain. The victory was complete; nearly the whole force of Proctor being killed or taken. By a rapid flight Proctor saved himself, with a small portion of his cavalry.

2. *Effects of the victory.*

14. [2]This important victory effectually broke up the great Indian confederacy of which Tecumseh was the head; recovered the territory which Hull had lost; and

3. *Influence of Tecumseh.*

terminated the war on the western frontier. [3]But before this, the influence of Tecumseh had been exerted upon the southern tribes, and the Creeks had taken up the hatchet, and commenced a war of plunder and devastation.

4. *Attack on Fort Mims; how retaliated.*

15. [4]Late in August,[b] a large body of Creek Indians surprised Fort Mims,† and massacred nearly three hun

b. Aug. 30.

dred persons: men, women, and children. On the receipt of this intelligence, General Jackson, at the head of a body of Tennessee militia, marched into the Creek country. A detachment of nine hundred men under General Coffee surrounded a body of Indians at Tallushatchee,‡ east of the

c. Nov. 3.

Coosa River, and killed[c] about two hundred, not a single warrior escaping.

d. Nov. 8, Nov. 29: and Jan. 22, 1814.

16. [1]The battles[d] of Talladega,§ Autosse,‖ Emucfau,¶

SEAT OF THE CREEK WAR.

* The *Thames*, a river of Upper Canada, flows S.W., and enters the southeastern extremity of Lake St. Clair. The battle of the Thames was fought near a place called the Moravian village.

† *Fort Mims*, in Alabama, was on the E. side of Alabama River, about ten miles above its junction with the Tombigbee, and forty miles N.E. from Mobile. (See Map.)

‡ *Tallushatchee* was on the S. side of Tallushatchee Creek, near the present village of Jacksonville, in Benton County. (See Map.)

§ *Talladega* was a short distance E. from the Coosa River, in the present County of Talladega, and nearly thirty miles south from Fort Strother at Ten Islands. (Map.)

‖ *Autossee* was situated on the S. bank of the Tallapoosa, twenty miles from its junction with the Coosa. (Map.)

¶ *Emucfau* was on the W. bank of the Tallapoosa, at the mouth of Emucfau Creek, about thirty-five miles S.E. from Talladega. (See Map.)

1813.

and others, soon followed; in all which the Indians were defeated, although not without considerable loss to the Americans. The Creeks made their last stand at the great bend of the Tallapoosa; called by the Indians Tohopeka,* and by the whites Horse Shoe Bend.

1. Other battles between the Americans and the Indians.

17. [2]Here about one thousand of their warriors, with their women and children, had assembled in a fort strongly fortified. To prevent escape, the bend was encircled by a strong detachment under General Coffee, while the main body under General Jackson advanced against the works in front. These were carried by assault; but the Indians, seeing no avenue of escape, and disdaining to surrender, continued to fight, with desperation, until nearly all were slain. Only two or three Indian warriors were taken prisoners. In this battle[a] the power of the Creeks was broken, and their few remaining chiefs soon after sent in their submission.

2. Battle of Tohopeka, or Horse Shoe Bend.

a. March 27, 1814.

18. [3]With the termination of the British and Indian war in the west, and the Indian war in the south, the latter extending into the spring of 1814, we now return to resume the narrative of events on the northern frontier.

3. To what events we now return.

II. EVENTS IN THE NORTH.—1. [4]On the 25th of April, General Dearborn, with 1700 men, embarked at Sackett's Harbor,† on board the fleet of Commodore Chauncey, with the design of making an attack on York,‡ the capital of Upper Canada, the great depository of British military stores, whence the western posts were supplied. [5]On the 27th the troops landed, although opposed at the water's edge by a large force of British and Indians, who were soon driven back to the garrison, a mile and a half distant.

4. Expedition undertaken by Gen. Dearborn in April.

5. Events at the landing.

2. [6]Led on by General Pike, the troops had already carried one battery by assault, and were advancing against the main works, when the enemy's magazine blew up, hurling immense quantities of stone and timber upon the advancing columns, and killing and wounding more than 200 men. The gallant Pike was mortally wounded, and the troops were, for a moment, thrown into confusion; but recovering from the shock, they advanced upon the town, of which they soon gained possession. General Sheaffe escaped with the principal part of the regular

6. Events which attended the capture of York.

* *Tohopeka*, or *Horse Shoe Bend*, is about forty miles S.E. from Talladega, near the N.E. corner of the present Tallapoosa County. (See Map, previous page.)

† *Sackett's Harbor* is on the S. side of Black River Bay, at the mouth of Black River, and at the eastern extremity of Lake Ontario.

‡ *York*, which has now assumed the early Indian name of *Toronto*, is situated on the N.W. shore of Lake Ontario, about thirty-five miles N. from Niagara.

ANALYSIS.

troops, but lost all his baggage, books, and papers, and abandoned public property to a large amount.

1. *Attack on Sackett's Harbor.*

3. [1]The object of the expedition having been attained, the squadron returned to Sackett's Harbor, but soon after sailed for the Niagara frontier. The British on the opposite Canadian shore, being informed of the departure of the fleet, seized the opportunity of making an attack on Sackett's Harbor. On the 27th of May, their squadron appeared before the town, and on the morning of the 29th, one thousand troops, commanded by Sir George Prevost, effected a landing.

May 29.

2. *The result.*

4. [2]While the advance of the British was checked by a small body of regular troops, General Brown rallied the militia, and directed their march towards the landing; when Sir George Prevost, believing that his retreat was about to be cut off, re-embarked his troops so hastily, as to leave behind most of his wounded.

3. *Events on the Niagara frontier.*

5. [3]On the very day of the appearance of the British before Sackett's Harbor, the American fleet and land troops made an attack on Fort George, on the Niagara frontier; which, after a short defence, was abandoned[a] by the enemy. The British then retreated to the heights at the head of Burlington Bay,* closely pursued by Generals Chandler and Winder at the head of a superior force. In a night attack[b] on the American camp, the enemy were repulsed with considerable loss; although in the darkness and confusion, both Generals Chandler and Winder were taken prisoners.

a. May 27.

b. June 6.

4. *Events during the remainder of the summer.*

6. [4]During the remainder of the summer, few events of importance occurred on the northern frontier. Immediately after the battle of the Thames, General Harrison, with a part of his regular force, proceeded to Buffalo,† where he arrived on the 24th of October. [5]Soon after, he closed his military career by a resignation of his commission. General Dearborn had previously withdrawn from the service, and his command had been given to General Wilkinson.

5. *Change of officers.*

6. *Plans of Gen. Armstrong.*

7. [6]General Armstrong, who had recently been appointed secretary of war, had planned another invasion of Canada. The army of the centre, under the immediate command of General Wilkinson, and that of the North, under General Hampton, were to unite at some point on the St. Lawrence, and co-operate for the reduction of Montreal.

---

* *Burlington Bay* is at the western extremity of Lake Ontario, thirty-five miles W. from Niagara.

† *Buffalo City*, N. Y., is situated at the northeastern extremity of Lake Erie, near the outlet of the lake, and on the N. side of Buffalo Creek, which constitutes its harbor. (Map p. 451.)

1813.

8. [1]After many difficulties and unavoidable delays, late in the season the scattered detachments of the army of the centre, comprising about 7000 men embarked[a] from French Creek,* down the St. Lawrence. [2]The progress of the army being impeded by numerous parties of the enemy on the Canada shore, General Brown was landed and sent in advance to disperse them. On the 11th an engagement occurred near Williamsburg,† in which the Americans lost more than 300 in killed and wounded. The British loss was less than 200. On the next day the army arrived at St. Regis,‡ when General Wilkinson, learning that the troops expected from Plattsburg§ would be unable to join him, was forced to abandon the project of attacking Montreal. He then retired with his forces to French Mills,‖ where he encamped for the winter.

1. Embarkation of troops for Montreal.

a. Nov. 5.

2. Progress and result of the expedition.

9. [3]In the latter part of the year, a few events deserving notice occurred on the Niagara frontier. In December, General McClure, commanding at Fort George, abandoned[b] that post on the approach of the British; having previously reduced the Canadian village of Newark¶ to ashes.[c] A few days later, a force of British and Indians surprised and gained possession[d] of Fort Niagara; and in revenge for the burning of Newark, the villages of Youngstown,** Lewiston,†† Manchester,‡‡ and the Indian Tuscarora village§§ were reduced to ashes. On the 30th, Black Rock and Buffalo were burned.

3. Events on the Niagara frontier in the latter part of the year.

b. Dec. 12.

c. Dec. 10

d. Dec. 18.

Dec. 30.

III. NAVAL EVENTS, AND EVENTS ON THE SEA-COAST. —1. [4]During the year 1813, the ocean was the theatre of many sanguinary conflicts between separate armed vessels of England and the United States. [5]On the 24th of February, the sloop of war Hornet, commanded by Captain Lawrence, engaged[e] the British brig Peacock, of about equal force. After a fierce conflict of only fifteen minutes, the Peacock struck her colors, displaying, at the same time,

4. Naval conflicts of the year 1813.

5. Engagement between the Hornet and the Peacock.

e. Off the coast of Demarara.

---

* *French Creek* enters the St. Lawrence from the S. in Jefferson County, twenty miles N. from Sackett's Harbor.

† *Williamsburg* is on the northern shore of the St. Lawrence, ninety miles from Lake Ontario, and about the same distance S.W. from Montreal.

‡ *St. Regis* is on the S. bank of the St. Lawrence, at the northwestern extremity of Franklin County, N. Y., twenty-five miles N. E. from Williamsburg.

§ *Plattsburg*, the capital of Clinton County, N. Y., is situated mostly on the N. side of Saranac River, at its entrance into Cumberland Bay, a small branch of Lake Champlain. It is about 145 miles, in a direct line, from Albany.

‖ The place called *French Mills*, since named *Fort Covington*, from General Covington, who fell at the battle of Williamsburg, is at the fork of Salmon River, in Franklin County, nine miles E. from St. Regis.

¶ *Newark*, now called *Niagara*, lies at the entrance of Niagara River into Lake Ontario, opposite Fort Niagara. (See Map, p. 451.)

** *Youngstown* is one mile S. from Fort Niagara.

†† *Lewiston* is seven miles S. from Fort Niagara. (See Map, p. 451.)

‡‡ The village of *Manchester*, now called *Niagara Falls*, is on the American side of the Great Cataract," fourteen miles from Lake Ontario. (Map, p. 451, and p. 462.)

§§ The *Tuscarora Village* is three or four miles E. from Lewiston. (See Map, p. 451.)

ANALYSIS. a signal of distress. She was found to be sinking rapidly, and although the greatest exertions were made to save her crew she went down in a few minutes, carrying with her nine British seamen, and three brave and generous Americans.

1. *Between the Chesapeake and the Shannon.*

2. [1]The tide of fortune, so long with the Americans, now turned in favor of the British. On the return of Captain Lawrence to the United States, he was promoted to the command of the frigate Chesapeake, then lying in Boston harbor. With a crew of newly enlisted men, partly foreigners, he hastily put to sea on the 1st of June, in search of the British frigate Shannon; which, with a select crew, had recently appeared off the coast, challenging any American frigate of equal force to meet her. On the same day the two vessels met, and engaged with great fury. In a few minutes every officer who could take command of the Chesapeake was either killed or wounded; the vessel, greatly disabled in her rigging, became entangled with the Shannon; the enemy boarded, and, after a short but bloody struggle, hoisted the British flag.

June 1.

2. *Capt. Lawrence, and Lieutenant Ludlow.*

3. [2]The youthful and intrepid Lawrence, who, by his previous victory and magnanimous conduct, had become the favorite of the nation, was mortally wounded early in the action. As he was carried below, he issued his last heroic order, "*Don't give up the ship;*" words which are consecrated to his memory, and which have become the motto of the American navy. The bodies of Captain Lawrence and Lieutenant Ludlow—the second in command—were conveyed to Halifax, where they were interred with appropriate civil and military honors; and no testimony of respect that was due to their memories was left unpaid.

Aug. 14.

3. *The Argus and the Pelican.*

4. [3]On the 14th of August, the American brig Argus, after a successful cruise in the British Channel, in which she captured more than twenty English vessels, was herself captured, after a severe combat, by the brig Pelican, a British vessel of about equal force. [4]In September following, the British brig Boxer surrendered[a] to the American brig Enterprise, near the coast of Maine, after an engagement of forty minutes. The commanders of both vessels fell in the action, and were interred beside each other at Portland, with military honors.

4. *The Enterprise and the Boxer.*

a. Sept. 5.

5. *Capt. Porter, and the frigate Essex.*

5. [5]During the summer, Captain Porter, of the frigate Essex, after a long and successful cruise in the Atlantic, visited the Pacific Ocean, where he captured a great number of British vessels. Early in the following year, the Essex was captured[b] in the harbor of Valparaiso,* by a

b. March 28, 1814.

* *Valparaiso*, the principal port of Chili, is on a bay of the Pacific Ocean, sixty miles N.W from Santiago.

British frigate and sloop of superior force. [1]The numerous privateers, which, during this year, as well as the former, visited all parts of the world, and seriously annoyed the British shipping, in general sustained the high character which the American flag had already gained for daring and intrepidity, and generous treatment of the vanquished. **1813.** 1. *American privateers.*

6. [2]Meanwhile, on the sea-coast, a disgraceful war of havoc and destruction was carried on by large detachments from the British navy. Most of the shipping in Delaware Bay was destroyed. Early in the season, a British squadron entered the Chesapeake, and plundered and burned several villages. At Hampton,* the inhabitants were subjected to the grossest outrages from the brutal soldiery. The blockade of the northern ports fell into the hands of Commodore Hardy, a brave and honorable officer, whose conduct is pleasingly contrasted with that of the commander of the squadron in the Chesapeake. 2. *The war on the seacoast.*

SECTION IV.

PRINCIPAL EVENTS OF 1814.

Subject of Section IV.

DIVISIONS.—*I. Events on the Niagara Frontier.—II. Events in the Vicinity of Lake Champlain.—III. Events on the Atlantic Coast.—IV. Events in the South, and Close of the War.* *Its Divisions*

I. EVENTS ON THE NIAGARA FRONTIER.—1. [3]A few events of Indian warfare, which occurred in the early part of this year, have already been narrated[a] in the previous section. [4]Early in the season, 2000 men, under General Brown, were detached from the army of General Wilkinson, and marched to Sackett's Harbor, but were soon after ordered to the Niagara frontier, in contemplation of another invasion of Canada. **1814.** 3. *Events of Indian warfare.* a. See p. 457. 4. *Movements of General Brown.*

2. [5]Early on the morning of the third of July, Generals Scott and Ripley, at the head of about 3000 men, crossed the Niagara River, and surprised and took possession of Fort Erie† without opposition. On the following day, General Brown advanced with the main body of his forces to Chippeway ;‡ where the enemy, under General Riall, were intrenched in a strong position. On the July 3. 5. *Events that occurred on the 3d, 4th, and 5th of July.*

---

* *Hampton*, in Virginia, is situated north of James River, near its mouth, and on the W. side of Hampton River, about a mile from its entrance into Hampton Roads. (Map, p. 136.)

† *Fort Erie* is on the Canada side of Niagara River, nearly opposite Black Rock. (See Map, p. 451.)

‡ *Chippeway Village* is on the W. bank of Niagara River, at the mouth of Chippeway Creek, two miles S. from the falls, and sixteen miles N. from Fort Erie. The battle of July 5th was fought in the plain on the S. side of the creek. (See Map, next page; also Map, p. 451.)

ANALYSIS.

July 5.

morning of the 5th, General Riall appeared before the American camp, and the two armies met in the open field; but after a severe battle, the enemy withdrew to their intrenchments, with a loss in killed, wounded, and missing, of about 500 men. The total American loss was 338.

1. *Subsequent events that preceded the battle of Lundy's Lane.*

3. [1]General Riall, after his defeat, fell back upon Queenstown, and thence to Burlington Heights,* where he was strongly reenforced by General Drummond, who assumed the command. The Americans advanced and encamped near the Falls of Niagara.† About sunset on the evening of the 25th, the enemy again made their appearance, and the two armies engaged at Lundy's Lane,‡ within a short distance of the Falls, where was fought the most obstinate battle that occurred during the war.

July 25.

2. *The early part of the action.*

4. [2]General Scott, leading the advance, first engaged the enemy, and contended for an hour against a force greatly his superior; when both parties were reenforced by the main bodies of the two armies, and the battle was renewed with increased fury. Major Jessup, in the mean time, had fallen upon the flank and rear of the enemy; and, in the darkness, General Riall and his suite were made prisoners. As the British artillery, placed on an eminence, sorely annoyed the Americans in every part of the field, it became evident that the victory depended upon carrying the battery.

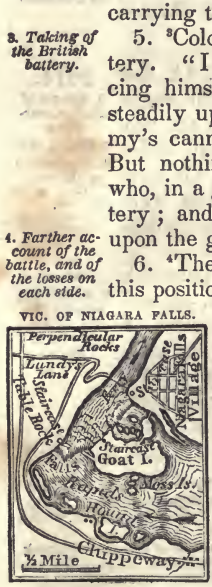
3. *Taking of the British battery.*

5. [3]Colonel Miller was asked if he could storm the battery. "I can try, sir," was the laconic answer. Placing himself at the head of his regiment, he advanced steadily up the ascent, while every discharge of the enemy's cannon and musketry rapidly thinned his ranks. But nothing conld restrain the impetuosity of his men, who, in a desperate charge, gained possession of the battery; and the American line was immediately formed upon the ground previously occupied by the enemy.

4. *Farther account of the battle, and of the losses on each side.*

6. [4]The atttention of both armies was now directed to this position; and three desperate and sanguinary efforts were made by the whole British force to regain it, but without success. In the third at-

VIC. OF NIAGARA FALLS.



* *Burlington Heights* lie W. and S. of Burlington Bay. (See Note, p. 458.)

† *The Falls of Niagara*, between Lakes Erie and Ontario, are probably the greatest natural curiosity in the world. The mighty volume of water which forms the outlet of Lakes Superior, Michigan, Huron, and Erie, is here precipitated over a precipice of 160 feet high, with a roar like that of thunder, which may be heard, at times, to the distance of fifteen or twenty miles. The Falls are about twenty miles N. from Lake Erie, and fourteen S. from Lake Ontario. (See Map; also Map, p. 451.)

‡ *Lundy's Lane*, then an obscure road, is about half a mile N.W. from the Falls. (See Map.)

1814.

tempt General Drummond was wounded, when his forces, beaten back with a heavy loss, were withdrawn; and the Americans were left in quiet possession of the field. The British force engaged in this action was about 5000 men, nearly one-third greater than that of the American. The total loss of the former was 878 men, of the latter 858.

1. Change of officers and events on the Niagara frontier.

7. [1]Generals Brown and Scott having been wounded, the command devolved upon General Ripley, who deemed it prudent to retire to Fort Erie; where, on the 4th of August, he was besieged by General Drummond, at the head of 5000 men. Soon after General Gaines arrived at the fort, and being the senior officer, took the command. Early on the morning of the 15th, the enemy made an assault upon the fort, but were repulsed with a loss of nearly a thousand men,

8. On the 17th of September, General Brown having previously resumed the command, a successful sortie was made from the fort, and the advance works of the besiegers were destroyed. The enemy soon after retired to Fort George, on learning that General Izard was approaching from Plattsburg, with reenforcements for the American army. In November, Fort Erie was abandoned[a] and destroyed, and the American troops, recrossing the river, went into winter quarters at Buffalo,[b] Black Rock,[c] and Batavia.*

a. Nov. 5.
b. N. p. 458.
c. N. p. 451.

2. Movements of General Wilkinson early in the season.

II. EVENTS IN THE VICINITY OF LAKE CHAMPLAIN.— 1. [2]Late in February, General Wilkinson broke up his winter quarters at French Mills,[d] and removed his army to Plattsburg. In March, he penetrated into Canada, and attacked[e] a body of the enemy posted at La Colle,† on the Sorel; but being repulsed with considerable loss, he again returned to Plattsburg, where he was soon after superseded in command by General Izard.

d. See p. 459.
e. March 30.

3. Events that followed the appointment of Gen. Izard

1. [3]In August, General Izard was despatched to the Niagara frontier with 5000 men, leaving General Macomb in command at Plattsburg with only 1500. The British in Canada having been strongly reenforced by the veterans who had served under Wellington, in Europe, early in September Sir George Prevost advanced against Plattsburg, at the head of 14,000 men, and at the same time an attempt was made to destroy the American flotilla on Lake Champlain, commanded by Commodore MacDonough.

4. Attack on the American army and fleet at Plattsburg.

3. [4]On the 6th of September, the enemy arrived at

---

* *Batavia*, the capital of Genesee County, N. Y., is situated on Tonawanda Creek, about forty miles N.E. from Buffalo.

† *La Colle*, on the W. bank of the Sorel, is the first town in Canada, N. of the Canada line. La Colle Mill, where the principal battle occurred, was three miles N. from the village of Odeltown.

ANALYSIS.

a. N. p. 459.

Sept. 11.

Plattsburg. The troops of General Macomb withdrew across the Saranac;[a] and, during four days, withstood all the attempts of the enemy to force a passage. About eight o'clock on the morning of the 11th, a general cannonading was commenced on the American works; and, soon after, the British fleet of Commodore Downie bore down and engaged that of Commodore MacDonough, lying in the harbor. After an action of two hours, the guns of the enemy's squadron were silenced, and most of their vessels captured.

1. *Farther account of the progress and result of the action on the land.*

4. [1]The battle on the land continued until nightfall. Three desperate but unsuccessful attempts were made by the British to cross the stream, and storm the American works. After witnessing the capture of the fleet, the efforts of the enemy relaxed, and, at dusk, they commenced a hasty retreat; leaving behind their sick and wounded, together with a large quantity of military stores. The total British loss, in killed, wounded, prisoners, and deserters, was estimated at 2500 men.

2. *Events on the coast, on the return of spring.*

III. Events on the Atlantic Coast.—1. [2]On the return of spring the British renewed their practice of petty plundering on the waters of the Chesapeake, and made frequent inroads on the unprotected settlements along its borders.

Aug. 19.

3. *Landing and march of Gen. Ross.*

[3]On the 19th of August, the British general, Ross, landed at Benedict, on the Patuxent,* with 5000 men, and commenced his march towards Washington

4. *The American flotilla.*

[4]The American flotilla, under Commodore Barney, lying farther up the river, was abandoned and burned.

5. *Route of the enemy, and events at Bladensburg and Washington.*

b. Aug. 24.

2. [5]Instead of proceeding directly to Washington, the enemy passed higher up the Patuxent, and approached the city by the way of Bladensburg.† Here a stand was made,[b] but the militia fled after a short resistance, although a body of seamen and marines, under Commodore Barney, maintained their ground until they were overpowered by numbers, and the commodore taken prisoner. The enemy then proceeded to Washington, burned the capitol, president's house, and many other buildings, after which they made a hasty retreat to their shipping.

6. *Events at Alexandria.*

3. [6]In the mean time, another portion of the fleet ascended the Potomac, and, on the 29th, reached Alexandria;‡ the inhabitants of which were obliged to purchase the preservation of their city from pillage and burning,

---

* The *Patuxent* River enters the Chesapeake from the N.W., twenty miles N. from the mouth of the Potomac. *Benedict* is on the W. bank of the Patuxent, twenty-five miles from its mouth, and thirty-five miles S.E. from Washington.

† *Bladensburg* is six miles N.E. from Washington. (See Map, p. 442.)

‡ *Alexandria* is in the District of Columbia, on the W. bank of the Potomac, seven miles below Washington. (See Map, p. 442.)

by the surrender of all the merchandise in the town, and the shipping at the wharves. **1814.**

1. [1]After the successful attack on Washington, General Ross sailed up the Chesapeake; and on the 12th of September, landed at North Point,[a] fourteen miles from Baltimore; and immediately commenced his march towards the city. In a slight skirmish General Ross was killed, but the enemy, under the command of Colonel Brooke, continued the march, and a battle of one hour and twenty minutes was fought with a body of militia under General Striker. The militia then retreated in good order to the defences of the city, where the enemy made their appearance the next morning.[b]

1. In the vicinity of Baltimore.

a. See Map, below.

b. Sept. 13.

2. [2]By this time, the fleet had advanced up the Patapsco,* and commenced a bombardment of Fort McHenry,† which was continued during the day and most of the following night, but without making any unfavorable impression, either upon the strength of the work, or the spirit of the garrison. [3]The land forces of the enemy, after remaining all day in front of the American works, and making many demonstrations of attack, silently withdrew early the next morning,[c] and during the following night embarked on board their shipping.

2. Attack on Fort McHenry.

Sept. 13, 14

3. The retreat.

c. Sept. 14.

6. [4]In the mean time the coast of New England did not escape the ravages of war. Formidable squadrons were kept up before the ports of New York, New London, and Boston; and a vast quantity of shipping fell into the hands of the enemy. In August, Stonington‡ was bombarded[d] by Commodore Hardy, and several attempts were made to land, which were successfully opposed by the militia.

4. The war on the coast of New England.

d. Aug. 9, 10, 11, 12.

IV. EVENTS IN THE SOUTH, AND CLOSE OF THE WAR. —1. [5]During the month of August, several British ships of war arrived at the Spanish port of Pensacola, took possession of the forts, with the consent of the authorities, and fitted out an expedition against Fort Bowyer,§ commanding the entrance to the bay and harbor of Mobile.‖ After the loss of a ship of war, and a considerable number of men

5. First movements of the British at the south, during this year.

---

* The *Patapsco* River enters Chesapeake Bay from the N.W., about eighty-five miles N. from the mouth of the Potomac. (See Map.)

† *Fort McHenry* is on the W. side of the entrance to Baltimore Harbor, about two miles below the city. (See Map.)

‡ The village of *Stonington*, attacked by the enemy, is on a narrow peninsula extending into the Sound, twelve miles E. from New London.

§ *Fort Bowyer*, now called *Fort Morgan*, is on Mobile point, on the E. side of the entrance to Mobile Bay, thirty miles S. from Mobile.

‖ *Mobile*, in Alabama, is on the W. side of the river of the same name, near its entrance into Mobile Bay. (See Map, p. 456.)

VICINITY OF BALTIMORE.

ANALYSIS.

in killed and wounded,[a] the armament returned to Pensacola.

a. Fort attacked September 15.

1. *Movements of General Jackson.*

2. [1]General Jackson, then commanding at the South, after having remonstrated in vain with the governor of Pensacola, for affording shelter and protection to the enemies of the United States, marched against the place, stormed[b] the town, and compelled the British to evacuate[c] Florida. Returning to his head-quarters at Mobile, he received anthentic information that preparations were making for a formidable invasion of Louisiana, and an attack on New Orleans.

b Nov. 7.
c. Nov. 8.

2. *His arrival at New Orleans, and the measures adopted by him.*

3. [2]He immediately repaired[d] to that city, which he found in a state of confusion and alarm. By his exertions, order and confidence were restored; the militia were organized; fortifications were erected; and, finally, martial law was proclaimed; which, although a violation of the constitution, was deemed indispensable for the safety of the country, and a measure justified by necessity.

d. Dec. 2.

3. *Arrival of the British squadron,—and engagement on Lake Borgne.*

4. [3]On the 5th of December a large British squadron appeared off the harbor of Pensacola, and on the 10th entered Lake Borgne,* the nearest avenue of approach to New Orleans. Here a small squadron of American gunboats, under Lieutenant Jones, was attacked, and after a sanguinary conflict, in which the killed and wounded of the enemy exceeded the whole number of the Americans, was compelled to surrender.[e]

e. Dec. 14.

4. *Night of Dec. 22d.*

5. [4]On the 22d of December, about 2400 of the enemy reached the Mississippi, nine miles below New Orleans,† where, on the following night, they were surprised by an unexpected and vigorous attack upon their camp, which they succeeded in repelling, after a loss of 400 men in killed and wounded.

5 *Attacks on the American works.*

6. [5]Jackson now withdrew his troops to his intrenchments, four miles below the city. On the 28th of December and 1st of January, these were vigorously cannonaded by the enemy, but without success. On the morning of the 8th of January, General Packenham, the commander-in-chief of the British, advanced against the American intrenchments with the main body of his army, numbering more than 12,000 men.

Jan. 8.

6. *Battle of the 8th of January.*

7. [6]Behind their breastworks of cotton bales, which no balls could penetrate, 6000 Americans, mostly militia, but the best marksmen in the land, silently awaited the attack. When the advancing columns had approached within reach of the batteries, they were met by an inces-

* The entrance to this lake or bay is about sixty miles N.E. from New Orleans. (See also Notes on p. 283.)

† For a description of *New Orleans* see Note, page 438.

sant and destructive cannonade; but closing their ranks as fast as they were opened, they continued steadily to advance, until they came within reach of the American musketry and rifles. The extended American line now presented one vivid stream of fire, throwing the enemy into confusion, and covering the plain with the wounded and the dead. **1815.**

8. [1]In an attempt to rally his troops, General Packenham was killed; General Gibbs, the second in command, was mortally wounded, and General Keene severely. The enemy now fled in dismay from the certain death which seemed to await them; no one was disposed to issue an order, nor would it have been obeyed had any been given. General Lambert, on whom the command devolved, being unable to check the flight of the troops, retired to his encampment, leaving 700 dead, and more than 1000 wounded, on the field of battle. The loss of the Americans was only seven killed and six wounded. The whole British army hastily withdrew and retreated to their shipping. *1. Losses, and retreat of the enemy*

9. [2]This was the last important action of the war on the land. The rejoicings of victory were speedily followed by the welcome tidings that a treaty of peace between the United States and Great Britian had been concluded in the previous December. A little later the war lingered on the ocean, closing there, as on the land, with victory adorning the laurels of the republic. In February, the Constitution captured the Cyane and the Levant off the Island of Maderia;[a] and in March, the Hornet captured the brig Penguin, off the coast of Brazil. The captured vessels, in both cases, were stronger in men and in guns than the victors. *2. Events that followed the battle of New Orleans, and close of the war*

a. N. p. 126.

10. [3]The opposition of a portion of the federal party to the war has already been mentioned.[b] The dissatisfaction prevailed somewhat extensively throughout the New England States; and, finally, complaints were made that the general government, looking upon the New England people with uncalled-for jealousy, did not afford them that protection to which their burden of the expenses of the war entitled them. They likewise complained that the war was badly managed; and some of the more zealous opponents of the administration proposed, that not only the militia, but the revenue also, of the New England States, should be retained at home for their own defence. **1814.** *3. Opposition of the federal party to the war, and complaints of many of the New England people.*

b. See p. 451. See also the appendix.

11. [4]Finally, in December, 1814, a convention of delegates appointed by the legislatures of Massachusetts, Connecticut, and Rhode Island, and a partial representa- *4. Hartford Convention.*

ANALYSIS.

tion from Vermont and New Hampshire, assembled at Hartford, for the purpose of considering the grievances of which the people complained, and for devising some measures for their redress.

1. How regarded by the friends of the administration.

2. Proceedings of the convention.

12. [1]The convention was denounced in the severest terms by the friends of the administration, who branded it with odium, as giving encouragement to the enemy, and as being treasonable to the general government. [2]The proceedings of the convention, however, were not as objectionable as many anticipated; its most important measure being the recommendation of several amendments to the constitution, and a statement of grievances, many of which were real, but which necessarily arose out of a state of war. [3]As the news of peace arrived soon after the adjournment of the convention, the causes of disquiet were removed; but party feelings had become deeply imbittered, and, to this day, the words, "Hartford Convention," are, with many, a term of reproach.

3. Party feelings.

4. Treaty of peace.

Dec. 24.

5. Of the causes which led to the war.

13. [4]In the month of August, 1814, commissioners from Great Britain and the United States assembled at Ghent,* in Flanders, where a treaty of peace was concluded, and signed on the 24th of December following. [5]Upon the subjects for which the war had been professedly declared,—the encroachments upon American commerce, and the impressment of American seamen under the pretext of their being British subjects, the treaty, thus concluded, was silent. The causes of the former, however, had been mostly removed by the termination of the European war; and Great Britain had virtually relinquished her pretensions to the latter.

6. War with Algiers.

7. How peace had been preserved.

8. Advantage taken by the Dey on account of the war with England.

War with Algiers.—1. [6]Scarcely had the war with England closed, when it became necessary for the United States to commence another, for the protection of American commerce and seamen against Algerine piracies. [7]From the time of the treaty with Algiers, in 1795, up to 1812, peace had been preserved to the United States by the payment of an annual tribute. [8]In July, of the latter year, the dey, believing that the war with England would render the United States unable to protect their commerce in the Mediterranean, extorted from the American consul, Mr. Lear, a large sum of money, as the purchase of his freedom, and the freedom of American citizens then in Algiers, and then commenced a piratical warfare against all American vessels that fell in the way of his cruisers. The crews of the vessels taken were condemned to slavery.

* *Ghent*, the capital of E. Flanders, in Belgium, is on the River Scheldt, about thirty miles N.W. from Brussels. Numerous canals divide the city into about thirty islands.

1815.

2. [1]In May, 1815, a squadron under Commodore Decatur sailed for the Mediterranean, where the naval force of the dey was cruising for American vessels. On the 17th of June, Decatur fell in with the frigate of the admiral of the Algerine squadron, of forty-six guns, and after a running fight of twenty minutes, captured her, killing thirty, among whom was the admiral, and taking more than 400 prisoners. Two days later he captured a frigate of twenty-two guns and 180 men, after which he proceeded[a] with his squadron to the Bay of Algiers. [2]Here a treaty[b] was dictated to the dey, who found himself under the humiliating necessity of releasing the American prisoners in his possession, and of relinquishing all future claims to tribute from the United States.

1. *The success of Com. Decatur in the Mediterranean.*

a. Arrived June 28.

2. *Treaty with Algiers.*

b. Treaty concluded June 30.

3. [3]Decatur then proceeded to Tunis, and thence to Tripoli, and from both of these powers demanded and obtained the payment of large sums of money, for violations of neutrality during the recent war with England. [4]The exhibition of a powerful force, and the prompt manner in which justice was demanded and enforced from the Barbary powers, not only gave future security to American commerce in the Mediterranean, but increased the reputation of the American navy, and elevated the national character in the eyes of Europe.

July, Aug.

3. *Treatment of Tunis and Tripoli.*

4. *Effect of these proceedings of Decatur.*

1816.

4. [5]The charter of the former national bank having expired in 1811, early in 1816 a second national bank, called the Bank of the United States, was incorporated,[c] with a capital of thirty-five millions of dollars, and a charter to continue in force twenty years. [6]In December, Indiana* became an independent state, and was admitted into the Union. In the election held in the autumn of 1816, James Monroe, of Virginia, was chosen president, and Daniel D. Tompkins, of New York, vice-president of the United States.

5. *A national bank.*

c. April 10. Commenced operations Jan. 1, 1817.

6. *Other events of* 1816.

* INDIANA, one of the Western States, contains an area of about 36,000 square miles. The southeastern part of the state, bordering on the Ohio, is hilly, but the southwestern is level, and is covered with a heavy growth of timber. N.W. of the Wabash the country is generally level, but near Lake Michigan are numerous sand hills, some of which are bare, and others covered with a growth of pine. The prairie lands on the Wabash and other streams have a deep and rich soil. Indiana was first settled at Vincennes, by the French, about the year 1730.

ANALYSIS.

CHAPTER V.

Subject of Chapter V.

MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION,

FROM MARCH 4, 1817, TO MARCH 4, 1825.

1817.

1. Causes that produced embarrassments in trade and commerce.

1. [1]During the war, the prices of commodities had been high, but at its close they fell to their ordinary level, causing serious pecuniary embarrassments to a large class of speculators and traders, and likewise to all who had relied upon the continuance of high prices to furnish means for the payment of their debts. While foreign goods were attainable only in small quantities and at high prices, numerous manufacturing establishments had sprung up; but at the close of the war the country was inundated with foreign goods, mostly of British manufacture, and the ruin of most of the rival establishments in the United States was the consequence.

2. Agriculture, and settlement of the country.

2. [2]But although the return of peace occasioned these serious embarrassments to the mercantile interests, it at once gave a new impulse to agriculture. Thousands of citizens, whose fortunes had been reduced by the war, sought to improve them where lands were cheaper and more fertile than on the Atlantic coast; the numerous emigrants who flocked to the American shores, likewise sought a refuge in the unsettled regions of the West; and so rapid was the increase of population, that within ten years from the peace with England, six new states had grown up in the recent wilderness.

3. Mississippi territory.
a. See p. 442.

3. [3]In December, 1817, the Mississippi Territory[a] was divided, and the western portion of it admitted into the Union, as the State of Mississippi.* The eastern portion was formed into a territorial government, and called Alabama Territory.

4. Amelia Island and Galveston.

[4]During the same month, a piratical establishment that had been formed on Amelia Island,† by persons claiming to be acting under the authority of some of the republics of South America, for the purpose of liberating the Floridas from the dominion of Spain, was broken up by the United States. A similar establishment at Galveston,‡ on the coast of Texas, was likewise suppressed.

---

* MISSISSIPPI, one of the Southern States, contains an area of about 48,000 square miles The region bordering on the Gulf of Mexico is mostly a sandy, level pine forest. Farther north the soil is rich, the country more elevated, and the climate generally healthy. The margin of the Mississippi River consists of inundated swamps, covered with a large growth of timber. The first settlement in the state was formed at Natches, by the French, in 1716

† *Amelia Island* is at the northeastern extremity of the coast of Florida.

‡ *Galveston* is an island on which is a town of the same name, lying at the mouth of Galveston Bay, seventy-five miles S.W. from the mouth of the Sabine River. (Map, p. 659.)

4. [1]In the latter part of 1817, the Seminole Indians, and a few of the Creeks, commenced depredations on the frontiers of Georgia and Alabama. General Gaines was first sent out to reduce the Indians; but his force being insufficient, General Jackson was ordered[a] to take the field, and to call on the governors of the adjacent states for such additional forces as he might deem requisite.

1817.

1. *Difficulties with the Creeks and Seminoles in 1817.*

a. Dec. 26.

5. [2]General Jackson, however, instead of calling on the governors, addressed a circular to the patriots of West Tennessee; one thousand of whom immediately joined him. At the head of his troops, he then marched into the Indian territory, which he overran without opposition. Deeming it necessary to enter Florida for the subjugation of the Seminoles, he marched upon St. Mark's,[b] a feeble Spanish post, of which he took possession, removing the Spanish authorities and troops to Pensacola. A Scotchman and an Englishman, Arbuthnot and Ambrister, having fallen into his hands, were accused of inciting the Indians to hostilities, tried by a court-martial, and executed.

2. *Course adopted by Gen. Jackson, his invasion of the Indian territory, capture of St. Mark's, and fate of Arbuthnot, and Ambrister.*

b. N. p. 120.

6. [3]He afterwards seized[c] Pensacola itself; and having reduced[d] the fortress of the Barancas,* sent the Spanish authorities and troops to Havanna. [4]The proceedings of General Jackson, in the prosecution of this war, have been the subject of much animadversion. The subject was extensively debated in congress, during the session of 1818–19, but the conduct of the general met the approbation of the president; and a resolution of censure, in the house, was rejected by a large majority.

3. *Capture of Pensacola.*

c. May 24.

d. May 27.

4. *How the proceedings of Gen. Jackson were regarded.*

7. [5]In February, 1819, a treaty was negotiated at Washington, by which Spain ceded to the United States East and West Florida, and the adjacent islands. After a vexatious delay, the treaty was finally ratified by the king of Spain in October, 1820. [6]In 1819, the southern portion of Missouri territory was formed into a territorial government, by the name of Arkansas; and in December of the same year, Alabama† territory was formed into a state, and admitted into the Union. Early in 1820, the province of Maine,‡ which had been connected with Massachusetts since 1652, was separated from it, and became an independent state.

1819.

5. *Cession of Florida to the United States.*

6. *Territorial and state governments formed in 1819 and 1820.*

1820.

8. [7]Missouri had previously applied for admission. A proposition in congress, to prohibit the introduction of sla-

7. *Debate on the Missouri question.*

* This fortress is on the W. side of the entrance into Pensacola Bay, opposite Santa Rosa Island, and eight miles S.W. from Pensacola. (See Map, p. 122.)

† ALABAMA, one of the Southern States, contains an area of about 50,000 square miles. The southern part of the state which borders on the Gulf of Mexico is low and level, sandy and barren; the middle portions of the state are somewhat hilly, interspersed with fertile prairies; the north is broken and somewhat mountainous. Throughout a large part of the state the soil is excellent.

‡ For a description of *Maine*, see Note, p. 190.

ANALYSIS.

very into the new state, arrayed the South against the North, the slaveholding against the non-slaveholding states, and the whole subject of slavery became the exciting topic of debate throughout the Union. [1]The Missouri question was finally settled by a compromise which tolerated slavery in Missouri, but otherwise prohibited it in all the territory of the United States north and west of the northern limits of Arkansas; and in August, 1821, Missouri* became the twenty-fourth state in the Union.

1821.

1. *The compromise.*

9. [2]At the expiration of Mr. Monroe's term of office, he was re-elected with great unanimity. Mr. Tompkins was again elected vice-president. [3]An alarming system of piracy having grown up in the West Indies, during the year 1822 a small naval force was sent there, which captured and destroyed upwards of twenty piratical vessels, on the coast of Cuba. In the following year, Commodore Porter, with a larger force, completely broke up the retreats of the pirates in those seas; but many of them sought other hiding places, whence, at an after period, they renewed their depredations.

2. *Presidential election of 1820.*

3. *Piracies in the West Indies.*

1822.

1823.

10. [4]The summer of 1824 was distinguished by the arrival of the venerable Lafayette, who, at the age of nearly seventy, and after the lapse of almost half a century from the period of his military career, came to revisit the country of whose freedom and happiness he had been one of the most honored and beloved founders. His reception[a] at New York, his tour through all the states of the Union, embracing a journey of more than five thousand miles, and his final departure[b] from Washington, in an American frigate prepared for his accommodation, were all signalized by every token of respect that could be devised for doing honor to the "Nation's Guest."

1824.

4. *Visit of Lafayette to the United States.*

a. Aug. 1824.

b. Sept. 1825.

11. [5]The election of a successor to Mr. Monroe was attended with more than usual excitement, owing to the number of candidates in the field. Four were presented for the suffrages of the people: Adams in the East, Crawford in the South, Jackson and Clay in the West. As no candidate received a majority of the electoral votes, the choice of president devolved upon the house of representatives, which decided in favor of Mr. Adams. Mr. Calhoun, of South Carolina, had been chosen vice-president by the people.

5. *Presidential election of 1824.*

* MISSOURI, one of the Western States, contains an area of about 64,000 square miles This state presents a great variety of surface and of soil. The southeastern part of the state has a very extensive tract of low, marshy country, abounding in lakes, and liable to inundations. The hilly country, N. and W. of this, and south of the Missouri River, is mostly a barren region, but celebrated for its numerous mineral treasures, particularly those of lead and of iron. In the interior and western portions of the state, barren and fertile tracts of hill and prairie land, with heavy forests and numerous rivers, present a diversified and beautiful landscape. The country N. of the Missouri is delightfully rolling, highly fertile, and has been emphatically styled "the garden of the West"

1825.

CHAPTER VI.

J. Q. ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION,

FROM MARCH 4, 1825, TO MARCH 4, 1829.

Period embraced in Adams's administration.

1 [1]DURING the period of Mr. Adams's administration, peace was preserved with foreign nations; domestic quiet prevailed; the country rapidly increased in population and wealth; and, like every era of peace and prosperity, few events of national importance occurred, requiring a recital on the page of history.

1. State of the country during that period.

2. [2]A controversy between the national government and the state of Georgia, in relation to certain lands held by the Creek nation, at one time occasioned some anxiety, but was finally settled without disturbing the peace of the Union. After several attempts on the part of Georgia, to obtain possession of the Creek territory, in accordance with treaties made with portions of the tribe, the national government purchased the residue of the lands for the benefit of Georgia, which settled the controversy.

2. Controversy with Georgia.

1826.

1. [3]On the 4th of July, 1826, the fiftieth anniversary of American independence, occurred the deaths of the two venerable ex-presidents, John Adams and Thomas Jefferson. [4]Both had been among the first to resist the high-handed measures of Great Britain; both were members of the early colonial congresses; the former nominated Washington as the commander-in-chief of the army, and the latter drew up the celebrated Declaration of Independence.

3. Events that occurred on the 4th of July, 1826.

4. Remarks upon the characters of the two ex-presidents

4. Each had served his country in its highest station; and, although one was at the head of the federal, and the other of the anti-federal party, both were equally sincere advocates of liberty, and each equally charitable towards the sentiments of the other. The peculiar circumstances of their death, added to their friendship while living, and the conspicuous and honorable parts which they acted in their country's history, would seem to render it due to their memories, that the early animosities, and now inappropriate distinctions of their respective parties, should be buried with them.

1828.

5. [5]The presidential election of 1828 was attended with an excitement and zeal in the respective parties, to which no former election had furnished a parallel. The opposing candidates were Mr. Adams and General Jackson. In the contest, which, from the first, was chiefly of a personal

5. The election of 1828.

ANALYSIS.

nature, not only the public acts, but even the private lives of both the aspirants were closely scanned, and every error, real or supposed, placed in a conspicuous view. [1]The result of the contest was the election of General Jackson, by a majority far greater than his most sanguine friends had anticipated. John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, was a second time chosen vice-president.

1. Result of the contest.

2. Our presidential elections, viewed as periods of political excitement.

6. [2]Our warmly contested presidential elections are often looked upon by foreigners, just arrived in the country, with much anxiety for the consequences. As the crisis of the election approaches, the excitement becomes intense; but, tempered by reason, it seldom rises beyond a war of words and feelings; and a scene of strife, which, in Europe, would shake a throne to its foundations, is viewed with little alarm in the American republic. A decision of the controversy at once allays the angry elements of discord, and the waves of party strife again sink back to their ordinary level, again to rise harmless, and again subside, at every new election.

CHAPTER VII.

JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION,

FROM MARCH 4, 1829, TO MARCH 4, 1837.

Period embraced in Jackson's administration.

3. Frequent removals from office.

1. [3]The first distinguishing feature in Jackson's administration, was the numerous removals from office, and the appointment of the political friends of the president to fill the vacancies thereby occasioned. This measure, in direct opposition to the policy of the previous administration, excited some surprise, and was violently assailed as an unworthy proscription for opinion's sake; but was defended by an appeal to the precedent afforded by Mr. Jefferson, who pursued a similar course, though to a much smaller extent.

1832.

4. Result of the attempt to recharter the national bank.

2. [4]Early in 1832, a bill was brought forward in congress for rechartering the United States Bank. After a long and animated debate, the bill passed both houses of congress, but was returned by the president, with his objections, and not being repassed by the constitutional majority of two-thirds, the bank ceased to be a national institution on the expiration of its charter in 1836.

5. War with the Sacs, Foxes, and Winnebagoes.

3. [5]In the spring of 1832, a portion of the Sacs, Foxes, and Winnebagoes, in Wisconsin Territory, commenced

hostilities, under the famous chief Black Hawk. After numerous skirmishes, most of the Indians were driven west of the Mississippi. Black Hawk surrendered himself a prisoner, and peace was concluded by a treaty; the Indians relinquishing a large tract of their territory. [1]Black Hawk and a few other chiefs, after having visited Washington, were taken through several other cities on their way homeward, in order to convince them of the vast power and resources of their white neighbors.

1832.

1. *Tour of Black Hawk.*

4. [2]A tariff bill, imposing additional duties on foreign goods, having passed congress during the session which terminated in the summer of 1832, caused, as on several previous occasions, great excitement in the southern portions of the Union. [3]In South Carolina, where the excitement was the greatest, a state convention declared[a] that the tariff acts were unconstitutional, and therefore null and void; that the duties should not be paid; and that any attempt on the part of the general government to enforce the payment, would produce the withdrawal of South Carolina from the Union, and the establishment of an independent government.

2. *Excitement on the subject of a tariff.*

3. *Declaration of the convention of South Carolina.*

a. Nov. 24.

5. [4]This novel doctrine of the right of a state to declare a law of congress unconstitutional and void, and to withdraw from the Union, was promptly met by a proclamation[b] of the president, in which he seriously warned the ultra advocates of "State rights" of the consequences that must ensue if they persisted in their course of treason to the government. He declared that, as chief magistrate of the Union, he could not, if he would, avoid the performance of his duty; that the laws must be executed; and that any opposition to their execution must be repelled: by force, if necessary.

4. *Proclamation of the president.*

b. Dec. 10.

6. [5]The sentiments of the proclamation met with a cordial response from all the friends of the Union, and party feelings were, for the time, forgotten in the general determination to sustain the president in asserting the supremacy of the laws. [6]South Carolina receded from her hostile position, although she still boldly advanced her favorite doctrine of the supremacy of state rights, and, in the person of her distinguished senator, Mr. Calhoun, who had recently resigned the office of vice-president, asserted it even in the halls of congress.

5. *How generally regarded.*

1833.

6. *Course pursued by South Carolina.*

7. [7]Fortunately for the public peace, this cause of discord and contention between the North and the South was in a great measure removed, by a "Compromise bill," introduced[c] by Mr. Clay, of Kentucky. This bill provided for a gradual reduction of duties until the year 1843, when they were to sink to the general level of twenty per

7. *Cause of discord removed.*

c. Feb. 12. Became a law March 3.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Events of March, 1833.*

cent. [1]On the 4th of March, 1833, General Jackson entered upon the second term of his presidency. Martin Van Buren, of New York, had been chosen vice-president.

2. *Removal of the government funds from the bank of the U. States.*

8. [2]In 1833, considerable excitement was occasioned on account of the removal, by the president, from the Bank of the United States, of the government funds deposited in that institution, and their transfer to certain state banks.

3. *Different views taken of this measure.*

[3]The opponents of the administration censured this measure as an unauthorized and dangerous assumption of power by the executive, and the want of confidence which soon arose in the moneyed institutions of the country, followed by the pecuniary distresses of 1836 and 1837, were charged upon the hostility of the president to the Bank of the United States. On the other hand, these distresses were charged to the management of the bank, which the president declared to have become "the scourge of the people."

4. *Cherokee Indians, their condition, &c.*

9. [4]A few events concerning the Cherokees require notice in this portion of our history. These Indians had long been involved in the same difficulties as those which had troubled their Creek neighbors. They were the most civilized of all the Indian tribes; had an established government, a national legislature, and written laws.

5. *Oppressive measures taken in relation to them.*

[5]During the administration of Mr. Adams, they were protected in their rights against the claims of the state of Georgia, but in the following administration, the legislature of Georgia extended the laws of the state over the Indian territory, annulling the laws which had been previously established, and, among other things, declaring[a] that "no Indian or descendant of an Indian, residing within the Creek or Cherokee nations of Indians, should be deemed a competent witness or party to any suit in any court where a white man is a defendant."

a. Dec. 20, 1829.

6. *Decision of the supreme court on this subject, and the course taken by the president.*

10. [6]Although the supreme court of the United States declared the acts of the legislature of Georgia to be unconstitutional, yet the decision of that tribunal was disregarded, and the president of the United States informed the Cherokees that he "had no power to oppose the exercise of the sovereignty of any state over all who may be within its limits;" and he therefore advised them "to abide the issue of such new relations without any hope that he will interfere." Thus the remnants of the Cherokees, once a great and powerful people, were deprived of their national sovereignty, and delivered into the hands of their oppressors.

7. *Treaty with the Cherokees,—sale of their*

11. [7]Yet the Cherokees were still determined to remain in the land of their fathers. But at length, in 1835, a few of their chiefs were induced to sign a treaty for a

sale of their lands, and a removal west of the Mississippi. Although this treaty was opposed by a majority of the Cherokees, and the terms afterwards decided upon at Washington rejected by them, yet as they found arrayed against them the certain hostility of Georgia, and could expect no protection from the general government, they finally decided upon a removal; but it was not until towards the close of the year 1838 that the business of emigration was completed.

1835.

lands—and their final removal.

12. [1]Near the close of the year 1835, the Seminole Indians of Florida commenced hostilities against the settlements of the whites in their vicinity. The immediate cause of the war was the attempt of the government to remove the Indians to lands west of the Mississippi, in accordance with the treaty of Payne's Landing,* executed[a] in 1832, which, however, the Indians denied to be justly binding upon them. [2]Micanopy, the king of the nation was opposed to the removal; and Osceola, their most noted chief, said he "Wished to rest in the land of his fathers, and his children to sleep by his side."

1. The Seminole war, and its cause.

a. May 9.

2. Micanopy and Osceola

13. [3]The proud bearing of Osceola, and his remonstrances against the proceedings of General Thompson, the government agent, displeased the latter, and he put the chieftain in irons. Dissembling his wrath, Osceola obtained his liberty, gave his confirmation to the treaty of removal, and, so perfect was his dissimulation, that he dissipated all the fears of the whites. So confident was General Thompson that the cattle and horses of the Indians would be brought in according to the terms of the treaty, that he even advertised them for sale in December, but the appointed days[b] passed, when it was discovered that the Indians were already commencing the work of slaughter and devastation.

3. Treatment of Osceola, and Indian treachery.

b. Dec. 1, 15.

14. [4]At this time, General Clinch was stationed at Fort Drane,† in the interior of Florida. Being supposed to be in imminent danger from the Indians, and also in great want of supplies, Major Dade was despatched[c] from Fort Brooke, at the head of Tampa Bay, with upward of one hundred men,[d] to his assistance. He had proceeded about half the distance, when he was suddenly attacked[e] by the enemy, and he and all but four of his men were killed; and these four, horribly mangled, afterwards died of their wounds. One of them, supposed to be dead, was thrown into a heap of the slain, about which the Indians danced, in exultation of their victory.

4. Major Dade and his detachment

c. Dec. 24.

d. 8 officers and 102 men.

e. Dec. 28.

---

* *Payne's Landing* is on the Ocklawaha River, a branch of the St. John's, about forty-five miles S.W. from St. Augustine. (See Map, next page.)

† *Fort Drane* is about seventy miles S.W. from St. Augustine. (See Map, next page.)

ANALYSIS.

1. *Death of General Thompson.*

15. [1]At the very time of Dade's massacre, Osceola, with a small band of warriors, was prowling in the vicinity of Fort King.* While General Thompson and a few friends were dining at a store only 250 yards from the fort, they were surprised by a sudden discharge of musketry, and five out of nine were killed.[a] The body of General Thompson was found pierced by fifteen bullets. Osceola and his party rushed in, scalped the dead, and retreated before they could be fired upon by the garrison. The same band probably took part in the closing scene of Dade's massacre on the same day.

a. Dec. 28.

2. *Generals Clinch and Gaines.*

b. Dec. 31.

1836.

c. Feb 29.

3. *Hostilities of the Creek Indians.*

16. [2]Two days later, General Clinch engaged[b] the Indians on the banks of the Withlacoochee ;† and in February of the following year, General Gaines was attacked[c] near the same place. [3]In May several of the Creek towns and tribes joined the Seminoles in the war. Murders and devastations were frequent,—the Indians obtained possession of many of the southern mail routes in Georgia and Alabama, attacked steamboats, destroyed stages, burned several towns, and compelled thousands of the whites who had settled in their territory, to flee for their lives. [4]A strong force, however, joined by many friendly Indians, being sent against them, and several of the hostile chiefs having been taken, the Creeks submitted; and during the summer several thousands of them were transported west of the Mississippi.

4. *Submission of the Creeks.*

5. *Governor Call's expedition into the interior.*

17. [5]In October, Governor Call took command of the forces in Florida, and with nearly 2000 men marched into the interior. At the Wahoo swamp, a short distance from Dade's battle-ground, 550 of his troops encountered a greater number of the enemy, who, after a fierce contest of half an hour, were dispersed, leaving twenty-five of their number dead on the field. In a second engagement, the whites lost nine men killed and sixteen wounded. In none of the battles could the actual loss of the Indians be ascertained, as it is their usual practice to carry off their dead.

SEAT OF THE SEMINOLE WAR IN FLORIDA.

* *Fort King* is twenty miles S.W. from Payne's Landing, and sixty-five miles from St. Augustine (See Map.)

† *Withlacoochee River* enters the Gulf of Mexico, on the west coast of Florida, about ninety-five miles N from Tampa Bay. (See Map.)

1837.

CHAPTER VIII.

VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION.

FROM MARCH 4, 1837, TO MARCH 4, 1841.

Period embraced in Van Buren's administration.

1. [1]IN the election of 1836, Martin Van Buren, of New York, had been chosen president of the United States, and Richard M. Johnson, of Kentucky, vice-president. As Mr. Van Buren was a prominent leader of the party which had secured the election of General Jackson, no change in the general policy of the government was anticipated. [2]Soon after the accession of Mr. Van Buren, the pecuniary and mercantile distresses of the country reached their crisis.

1. Election of 1836, and the anticipated policy of the government.

2. Condition of the country, the extensive failures at that period, and the consequences.

2. During the months of March and April, the failures in the city of New York alone amounted to nearly one hundred millions of dollars. The great extent of the business operations of the country at that time, and their intimate connection with each other, extended the evil throughout all the channels of trade; causing, in the first place, a general failure of the mercantile interests—affecing, through them, the business of the mechanic and the farmer, nor stopping until it had reduced the wages of the humblest day laborer.

3. [3]Early in May, a large and respectable committee from the city of New York, solicited of the president his intervention for such relief as might be within his power; requesting the rescinding of the "specie circular," a delay in enforcing the collection of the revenue duties, and the call of an extra session of congress at an early day, that some legislative remedies might be adopted for the alarming embarrassments of the country. [4]The "specie circular" was a treasury order, which had been issued during the previous administration, the principal object of which was to require the payment of gold and silver, for the public lands, in place of bank bills, or other evidences of money.

3. Requests made of the president by a committee from New York.

4. The specie circular.

4. [5]To the second request the president acceded, but declined to repeal the specie circular, or to call an extra session of Congress. [6]Two days after the decision of the president became known, all the banks in the city of New York suspended specie payments, and this was followed by a similar suspension on the part of the banks throughout the whole country. [7]The people were not the only sufferers by this measure; for, as the deposit

5. Course taken by the president.

6. Events that followed his decision.

7. Sufferers by the suspension.

ANALYSIS.

banks had likewise ceased to redeem their notes in specie, the government itself was embarassed, and was unable to discharge its own obligations.

1. *Call of congress, and bills passed during the session.*

5. [1]The accumulated evils which now pressed upon the country, induced the president to call an extra session of congress, which he had before declined doing. Congress met early in September, and during a session of forty days, passed several bills designed for the relief of the government; the most important of which was a bill authorizing the issue of treasury notes, not exceeding in amount ten millions of dollars. [2]A bill called the *Subtreasury* bill,[a] designed for the safe keeping of the public funds, and intended as the prominent measure of the session, passed the senate; but in the house of representatives it was laid upon the table, after a long and animated discussion.

2. *Sub-treasury bill.*

a. The legal term is Independent Treasury Bill.

3. *Continuance of the Seminole war, treaty concluded by General Jessup, &c.*

6. [3]The Seminole war still continued in Florida, occasioning great expense to the nation, while the sickly climate of a country abounding in swamps and marshes, proved, to the whites, a foe far more terrible than the Indians themselves. After several encounters in the early part of the season, in March, a number of chiefs came to the camp of General Jessup, and signed[b] a treaty purporting that hostilities should immediately cease, and that all the Seminoles should remove beyond the Mississippi.

b. At Fort Dade, March 6.

4. *Violation of the treaty, and events that followed during the summer and fall.*

7. [4]For a time the war appeared to be at an end, but the treaty was soon broken through the influence of Osceola. During the summer several chiefs were captured, and a few surrendered voluntarily. In October, Osceola and several principal chiefs, with about seventy warriors, who had come to the American camp under protection of a flag, were seized[c] and confined by the orders of General Jessup.

c. At Fort Peyton, October 21.

5. *How the capture of Osceola and his warriors has been regarded.*

8. [5]This was the most severe blow the Seminoles had received during the war. By many, the conduct of General Jessup, in seizing Osceola, has been severely censured; but the excuse offered, was, that the Indians had grossly deceived him on a former occasion; that Osceola was treacherous; that no blood was shed by the act; and that a very important service was thereby performed.

6. *Subsequent fate of Osceola.*

[6]Osceola was subsequently placed in confinement at Fort Moultrie,[d] where he died of a fever in January of the following year.

d. In South Carolina.

7. *Continuance of the war,—and battle near Big Water Lake.*

9. [7]On the 1st of December, the army in Florida, stationed at the different posts, was estimated to number nearly nine thousand men. Yet against this numerous force, the Indians still held out with hopes of effectual re-

sistance. On the 25th of the month, Colonel Taylor, at the head of about six hundred men, encountered the Indians on the northern side of the Big Water Lake, in the southern part of the peninsula. After a severe battle of more than an hour, in which twenty-eight of the whites were killed and one hundred and eleven wounded, the enemy was forced to retire, but with what loss is unknown. **1836.**

10. [1]During the years 1837 and 1838, frequent encounters were had with the Indians, although but little appeared to be accomplished towards bringing the war to a close. [2]In 1839, General Macomb, who had received[a] the chief command of the army, induced a number of the chiefs in the southern part of the peninsula to sign[b] a treaty of peace. The Indians were to remain in the country until they could be assured of the prosperous condition of their friends who had emigrated. [3]The general then left Florida. But numerous murders, which occurred immediately after the treaty, destroyed all confidence in its utility; and in June the government of the territory offered a reward of two hundred dollars for every Indian killed or taken.

1838. 1. *The war in 1838.*

1839. 2. *Treaty concluded by General Macomb.* a. April. b. May.

3 *Events that followed this treaty.*

11. [4]The year 1840 passed with numerous murders by the Indians, and frequent contests between small parties of them and the whites. In December, Colonel Harney, who, by his numerous exploits in Indian warfare, had become the terror of the Seminoles, penetrated into the extensive everglades in Southern Florida, long supposed to be the head-quarters of the enemy, where he succeeded in capturing a band of forty, nine of whom he caused to be executed for some previous massacre in which they were supposed to be engaged.

1840. 4. *Events of 1840, and expedition of Col. Harney.*

12. [5]During the session of congress which terminated in the summer of 1840, the Independent-treasury bill, which had been rejected at the extra session of 1837, and which was regarded as the great financial measure of Mr. Van Buren's administration, passed[c] both houses of congress and became a law.

5. *The independent treasury bill passed.*

c. Jan. 23, and June 30.

13. [6]The presidential election of 1840 was probably the most exciting election that had ever occurred in the United States. The trying scenes of financial embarrassment through which the country was then passing, together with what was called "*the experiments* of the government upon the currency," furnished the opponents of the administration with abundant exciting topics for popular party harangues, in the approaching political contest. During several months preceding the election, the whole country was one great arena of political debate, and in the numerous assemblages of the people the ablest men of both parties engaged freely in the discussion.

6. *The presidential election of 1840.*

ANALYSIS.

1. *Candidates, and the result of the election.*

14. [1]The whigs concentrated their whole strength upon William Henry Harrison, the "Hero of the Thames, and of Tippecanoe," while the administration party united with equal ardor in favor of Mr. Van Buren. The result was a signal defeat of the latter, and a success of the whigs by a majority altogether unexpected by them. General Harrison received two hundred and thirty-four of the electoral votes, while Mr. Van Buren received only sixty. John Tyler, of Virginia, was elected vice-president.

CHAPTER IX.

HARRISON'S ADMINISTRATION,

FROM MARCH 4, TO APRIL 4, 1841.

Period embraced in Harrison's administration.

1841.

2. *Inauguration of Gen. Harrison.*

1. [2]On the 4th of March, 1841, William Henry Harrison, in the presence of an unusually large assemblage of the people convened at the capitol in Washington, took the oath prescribed by the constitution, and entered upon the office of president of the United States.

3. *His inaugural address.*

2. [3]His inaugural address was a plain, but able and comprehensive document, expressing his approval of the leading principles of the party which had selected him for the highest office in the gift of the people, and pledging his best endeavors to administer the government according to the constitution, as understood by its framers and early administrators.

4. *Sentiments expressed in the conclusion of the address.*

3. [4]In conclusion, the president expressed his profound reverence for the Christian religion, and his thorough conviction that sound morals, religious liberty, and a just sense of religious responsibility, are essentially connected with all true and lasting happiness. "Let us unite then," said he, "in commending every interest of our beloved country to that good Being who has blessed us by the gifts of civil and religious freedom; who watched over and prospered the labors of our fathers; and who has hitherto preserved to us institutions far exceeding in excellence those of any other people."

5. *First acts of the new administration.*

4. [5]The senate was immediately convened for the purpose of receiving the usual nominations, and a new and able cabinet was formed, at the head of which was placed Daniel Webster, of Massachusetts, as secretary of state.

6. *Events that soon followed.*

[6]But while every thing promised an administration honorable to the executive and useful to the country, rumors of the sudden illness of the president spread through the land;

and scarcely had they reached the limits of the Union, when they were followed by the sad intelligence of his death. **1841.**

5. [1]Just one month from the day of his inauguration, the aged president was a pallid corpse in the national mansion. The event was calculated to make a deep impression upon the people, who had witnessed and taken part in the recent scenes of excitement which had preceded the elevation of one of their number to be the nation's ruler. The hand of Almighty power was acknowledged in the bereavement, teaching that "the Lord alone ruleth." *1. Concluding remarks.*

CHAPTER X.

TYLER'S ADMINISTRATION,

EXTENDING FROM APRIL 4, 1841, TO MARCH 4, 1845.

Period embraced in Tyler's administration.

1. [2]On the death of General Harrison, Mr. Tyler, the vice-president, became the acting president of the United States. During an extra session[a] of congress which had been called by General Harrison, several important measures of exciting interest to the country were brought forward. The sub-treasury bill was repealed; a general bankrupt law was passed; and two separate bills, chartering a bank of the United States, were rejected[b] by the executive veto. The course pursued by the president caused him to be denounced generally, by the whig party, which had elected him to office, and occasioned the resignation of his entire cabinet, with one exception.[c] *2. The extra session that had been called by Harrison.* a. From May 31, to Sept. 13, 1841 b. Aug. 16, and Sept. 9 c. Mr. Webster.

1842.

2. [3]In 1842, an important treaty, adjusting the dispute in relation to the northeastern boundary of the United States was negotiated[d] at Washington, between Mr. Webster, on the part of the United States, and Lord Ashburton on the part of Great Britain. The same year was signalized by the commencement of domestic difficulties in Rhode Island, which at one time threatened serious consequences. *3. Events that occurred in 1842.* d. July. Ratified by U. S. Aug. 20. By G. B. Oct. 14

3. [4]A movement having been made to set aside the ancient charter under which the government of the colony and state had so long been administered,[e] parties were formed with respect to the proper mode of adopting a new constitution. The "suffrage party," having formed and adopted a constitution in a manner declared by their opponents to be in violation of law, chose[f] Thomas W. Dorr governor, and elected a legislature. About the same time the "law and order party," as it was called, chose Samuel W. King governor. In May, 1843, both parties met[g] and organized their respective governments. *4. Commencement of the difficulties in Rhode Island.* e. Since 1663. See p. 218.

1843.

f. April 18. g. May 3, 4.

4. [5]The adherents of the "law and order party" then took *5. Violent measures that followed.*

ANALYSIS.

a. May 16.

active measures to put down what they denominated the rebellion. Great commotion ensued, and several arrests were made. Dorr left the state, but soon returning,[a] a bloody struggle appeared inevitable; but his associates finally dispersed, on the appearance of the government forces, and Dorr, to avoid arrest, fled from the state.

1. *Second rising, and the dispersion of the suffrage party.*

b. At Chepachet.

c. June 25.

1844.

2. *The fate of Dorr.*

d. June.

5. [1]In June, however, considerable numbers of the "suffrage party" made their appearance[b] under arms, and were joined[c] by Dorr, but a body of troops being sent against them, they dispersed without any effectual resistance. [2]Dorr again fled, but, returning after a few months, was arrested, tried[d] for treason, convicted, and sentenced to be imprisoned during life. In the mean time a constitution for the state had been adopted according to the prescribed forms of law. In June, 1845, Dorr was released, although he had refused to accept a pardon on condition of taking the oath of allegiance to the state government.

3. *The last year of Tyler's administration.*

4. *History of Texas.*

(See also page 621.)

6. [3]During the last year of Mr. Tyler's administration, considerable excitement prevailed on the subject of the annexation of Texas to the American Union, a measure first proposed by the government of the former country. [4]Texas, formerly a province of Mexico, but settled mostly by emigrants from the United States, had previously withdrawn from the Mexican republic, and by force of arms had nobly sustained her independence, although unacknowledged by Mexico.

5. *Opposition to annexation, and the arguments against the measure.*

7. [5]The proposition for annexation to the United States was strongly resisted at the North, and by the whig party generally throughout the Union. The impolicy of extending our limits by accessions of foreign territory; the danger of a war with Mexico; the encouragement given to slavery by the admission of an additional slave state; and the increase of power that the South and southern institutions would thereby gain in the national councils, were urged against the measure.

6. *Texas annexed.*

e. April 12.

1845.

f. See p. 672.

7. *Iowa and Florida.*

8. *The election of 1844.*

8. [6]A treaty of annexation, signed[e] by the president, was rejected by congress, but early in the following year a bill was passed, authorizing the president, under certain restrictions, to negotiate with Texas the terms of annexation; and soon after Texas became one of the states of the American Union. [7]During the same session of congress bills were passed providing for the admission of Iowa and Florida, as states, into the Union. [8]The opposing candidates in the election of 1844 were Mr. Clay, of Kentucky and James K. Polk, of Tennessee. The contest resulted in the choice of the latter, who entered on the duties of his office on the 4th of March, of the following year.

March 4.

CHAPTER XI

POLK'S ADMINISTRATION,

FROM MARCH 4, 1845, TO MARCH 4, 1849.

WAR WITH MEXICO.

1845.

1. [1]SCARCELY had Mr. Polk taken his seat as president of the United States, when decided indications of a rupture with Mexico became apparent. [2]Mexico had long viewed the conduct of the American government, in relation to the acquisition of Texas, with exceeding jealousy and distrust: still claiming that country as a part of her own territory, she had declared that she would regard annexation as a hostile act, and that she was resolved to declare war as soon as she received intimation of the completion of the project. [3]In accordance with this policy, immediately after the resolution of annexation had passed the American Congress, and received the sanction of the President, Mr. Almonte,[a] the Mexican Minister at Washington, protesting against the measure as an act of warlike aggression, which he declared Mexico would resist with all the means in her power, demanded his passports and returned home.

1. Rupture with Mexico.

2. Views and declarations of Mexico.

3. The Mexican Minister Almonte.

a. Pronounced Al·mon·ta.

2. [4]On the fourth of July following, Texas assented to the terms of the resolution of annexation, and two days later, fearing that Mexico would carry her threats of war into execution, requested the President of the United States to occupy the ports of Texas, and send an army to the defence of her territory. [5]Accordingly, an American squadron was sent into the Gulf of Mexico, and General Taylor, then in command at Camp Jessup,* was ordered by the American government to move with such of the regular forces as could be gathered from the western posts, to the southern frontier of Texas, to act as circumstances might require. [6]By the advice of the Texan authorities he was induced to select for the concentration of his troops the post of Corpus Christi,† a Texan settlement on the bay of the same name, where, by the beginning of August, 1845, he had taken his position, and at which place he had assembled, in the November following, an army of little more than four thousand men.

4. Acts of Texas.

5. Of the American Government.

6. The movements of Gen. Taylor.

---

* *Camp Jessup* is in the western part of Louisiana, a few miles southwest from Natchitoches, (Natch-i-tosh.)

† *Corpus Christi* is at the mouth of the Nueces River, on the western shore of Corpus Christi Bay, a branch of the Aranzas Bay, about 100 miles from the Rio Grande. (See Map *Cor.* p. 489.)

ANALYSIS.

1846.

1. Circumstances that led to the executive order of 13th January, 1846, and the consequent movements of General Taylor.

3. [1]On the 13th of January, 1846, when it was believed that the Mexicans were assembling troops on their northern frontiers, with the avowed object of re-conquering Texas, and when such information had been received from Mexico as rendered it probable, if not certain, that she would refuse to receive the envoy[a] whom the United States had sent to negotiate a settlement of the difficulties between the two countries, the American President ordered General Taylor to advance his forces to the Rio Grande,* the most southern and western limits of Texas, as claimed by herself: on the 8th of March following the advance column of the army, under General Twiggs, was put in motion for that purpose, and on the 28th of the same month General Taylor, after having established a depôt at Point Isabel,† twenty-one miles in his rear, took his position on the northern bank of the Rio Grande, where he hastily erected a fortress, called Fort Brown, within cannon-shot of Matamoras.‡

a. Mr. Slidell.

2. The notice given by General Ampudia, and the commencement of actual hostilities.

4. [2]On the 26th of April, the Mexican general, Ampudia, gave notice to General Taylor that he considered hostilities commenced, and should prosecute them; and on the same day an American dragoon party of sixty-three men, under command of Captain Thornton, was attacked on the east side of the Rio Grande, thirty miles above Matamoras, and after the loss of sixteen men in killed and wounded, was compelled to surrender. This was the commencement of actual hostilities—the first blood shed in the war.

3. Farther movements of the enemy—General Taylor's march, and the battle of Palo Alto.

5. [3]The movements of the enemy, who had crossed the river above Matamoras, seeming to be directed towards an attack on Point Isabel, for the purpose of cutting off the Americans from their supplies, on the 1st of May General Taylor marched to the relief of that place with his principal force, leaving a small command in defence of Fort Brown. After having garrisoned the depôt, on the 7th of May General Taylor set out on his return. At noon of the next day the Mexican army, numbering about six thousand men, with seven pieces of artillery, was discovered near *Palo Alto*, drawn up in battle array across the prairie through which the advance led. The Americans, although numbering but twenty-three hundred, advanced to the attack, and after an action of about

* The *Rio Grande* (Ree-o-Grahn-dā), or Rio del Norte (Ree-o-del-Nortā), meaning *Great River*, or *River of the North*, rises in the Rocky Mountains north of Santa Fe, and flowing southeast, a distance of nearly 1800 miles, enters the Gulf of Mexico below Matamoras. (See Map.)

† *Point Isabel* is 21 miles N. E. of Matamoras, near the Gulf. The entrance to the *Lagoon*, on the shore of which the village stands, is called *Brazos Santiago*.

‡ *Matamoras* is about 20 miles from the mouth of the Rio Grande, by the windings of the stream. (See Map *m*.)

five hours, which was sustained mostly by the artillery, drove the enemy from their position, and encamped upon the field of battle. The Mexican loss was about one hundred killed,—that of the Americans but four killed and forty wounded, but among those mortally wounded was the lamented Major Ringgold, of the artillery.

1. The battle of Resaca de la Palma.

6. [1]At two o'clock in the afternoon of the next day the American army again advanced, and after a march of two hours came in sight of the enemy, who had taken up a strong position near a place called *Resaca de la Palma*, three miles from Fort Brown, on the borders of a ravine which crossed the road. The action was commenced on both sides by the artillery, but the Mexican guns, managed by General La Vega, were better served than on the former occasion, and their effect soon began to be severely felt. An order to dislodge them was gallantly executed by Captain May, at the head of a squadron of dragoons, which, charging through a storm of grape shot, broke the ranks of the enemy, killed or dispersed the Mexican artillerymen, and took General La Vega prisoner. The charge was supported by the infantry—the whole Mexican line was routed, and the enemy fled in confusion, abandoning his guns and a large quantity of ammunition; and when night closed over the scene, not a Mexican soldier was to be found east of the Rio Grande. [2]On the day following the battle the American army took up its former position at Fort Brown, which had sustained, with little loss, an almost uninterrupted bombardment of seven days from the Mexican batteries in Matamoras.

2. Fort Brown.

3. Effect produced throughout the Union by the news of the capture of Thornton's party.

7. [3]The news of the capture of Captain Thornton's party produced the greatest excitement throughout the Union; it was not doubted that Mexico would receive a severe chastisement; and a war spirit, unknown before to exist, heralded, in anticipation, a series of victories and conquests, terminating only in the "Halls of the Montezumas."* [4]The President, in a message to Congress,[a] declared that Mexico had "invaded our territory, and shed the blood of our fellow-citizens on our own soil," and Congress, adopting the spirit of the message, after declaring that war existed "by the act of the republic of Mexico," authorized the President to accept the services of fifty thousand volunteers, and placed ten millions of dollars at his disposal. [5]The news of the battles of Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma, arriving a few days later,

4. The President and the Congress.

a. May 11th, 1846.

5. Effect produced by the news of the battles of Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma.

* The expression, "*Halls of the Montezumas*," is applied to the palace of the ancient Mexican kings, of the race of the Montezumas.

ANALYSIS.

fanned anew the flame of war: an anticipated march to the Mexican capital, in the ranks of a conquering army, seemed to be viewed but as a pleasant pastime, or a holiday excursion, and the call for volunteers was answered by the prompt tender of the services of more than three hundred thousand men.

1. Preparations for the invasion of Mexico.

8. [1]Most of the summer of 1847 was occupied by the government in preparations for the invasion of Mexico, from several quarters at the same time. A force of about 23,000 men was sent into the field, the largest portion of which, placed under the command of General Taylor, was to advance from Matamoras into the enemy's country in the direction of Monterey:* General Wool, at the head of about 2,900 men, concentrated at San Antonio de Bexar,† was to march upon Chihuahua;‡ while General Kearney, with a force of about 1,700, was to march from Fort Leavenworth,§ in Missouri, upon Santa Fe,‖ the capital of New Mexico.

Forward movement of General Taylor, and his arrival at Monterey.

9. [2]Owing to the difficulties experienced in transporting supplies, and the necessity of drawing them mostly from the United States, by way of New Orleans, General Taylor was unable to commence a forward movement until the latter part of August; and it was the 19th of September when he appeared before Monterey, with an army then numbering only 6,600 men, after having garrisoned several towns on the Rio Grande, through which his route lay. [3]Monterey, the capital of New Leon, was at this time a city of about 15,000 inhabitants, strong in its natural defences, and garrisoned by seven thousand regular and about three thousand irregular troops, under the command of General Ampudia.

Situation of Monterey at this time.

4. Attack on Monterey,—continuation of the fight, and final surrender of the place.

10. [4]On the morning of the 21st of September the attack was commenced, which was continued with great spirit during the day, but without any important results, except the carrying of several fortified heights in the rear of the town. The assault was continued during the 22d, when the Bishop's Palace, a strong position, and the only remaining fortified height in the rear of the town, was gallantly carried by the troops under General Worth. On the morning of the 23d the lower part of the city was stormed by General Quitman, the troops slowly advancing

Sept. 22d.

Sept. 23d.

---

* For the situation of *Monterey* (Mon-ter-ā), see Map letter *t*.

† *San Antonio de Bexar*, the oldest Spanish town in Texas. (See Map, *Bexar*.)

‡ *Chihuahua* (Chee-ooah-ooah) is nearly 700 miles N. W. from the city of Mexico. (See Map.)

§ *Fort Leavenworth* is a military post of the United States on the west side of Missouri River. (See Map.)

‖ *Santa Fe*, the capital of the former Mexican state of New Mexico, is a town of about 4000 inhabitants, 15 miles east of the Rio Grande, and about 1100 miles N. W. from the city of Mexico. (See Map.)

MAP OF MEXICO;
INCLUDING ALSO
OREGON, TEXAS,
AND
CENTRAL AMERICA.
REFERENCES.
Z. State of Zacatecas.
P. State of San Luis Potosi.
G. State and City of Guanaxuato.
Q. State and City of Queretaro.
M. Matamoras.
T. Monterey.
OREGON
MISSOURI TERY
IOWA
WISCONSIN
Lake Superior
Mississippi R.
Missouri R.
INDIAN TERY
MISSOURI
ARKANSAS
LOUISIANA
Ft. Leavenworth
Arkansas R.
Fort Gibson
Red R.
Sabine R.
Ft. Hall
Salt Lake
Columbia R.
Lewis R.
Ft. Colville
Astoria
Ft. Vancouver
Willamette R.
Sacramento R.
St. Francisco
Monterey
NEW CALIFORNIA
INDIAN TRIBES
MEXICO
Colorado R.
Santa Fe
NEW MEXICO
TEXAS
AUSTIN
Rio Bravo
Del Norte
Coahuila
COAHUILA
TAMAULIPAS
NEWLEON
Zacatecas
GUADALAXARA
JALISCO
Valladolid
VALLADOLID
MEXICO
PUEBLA
OAXACA
VERA CRUZ
Tampico
Gulf of Mexico
CHIHUAHUA
Chihuahua
DURANGO
SONORA
Guayamas
OLD CALIFORNIA
SINALOA
Culiacan
Mazatlan
San Blas
South eastern Part of MEXICO; with CENTRAL-AMERICA
Campeche
Vera Cruz
Tabasco
Merida
YUCATAN
Hermosa
Chiapas
GUATIMALA
New Guatemala
St. Salvador
SALVADOR
HONDURAS
Comyagua
NICARAGUA
COSTA RICA
Cartago
Gulf of Panama
CENTRAL AMERICA

ANALYSIS. by digging through the stone walls of the houses. In this way the fight continued during the day, and by night the enemy were confined chiefly to the Citadel, and the Plaza, or central public square of the city. Early on the following morning the Mexican general submitted propositions which resulted in the surrender and evacuation of Monterey—and an armistice of eight weeks, or until instructions to renew hostilities should be received from either of the respective governments.

Sept. 24th.

1. *Farther advance of General Taylor, and captures by the Americans.*

11. [1]On the 13th of October the War Department ordered General Taylor to terminate the armistice and renew offensive operations; and about the middle of November, Saltillo,* the capital of the state of Coahuila, was occupied by the division of General Worth; and late in December General Patterson took possession of Victoria,† the capital of Tamaulipas; while, about the same time, the port of Tampico‡ was captured by Commodore Perry. [2]In the meantime General Wool, after crossing the Rio Grande, finding his march to Chihuahua, in that direction, impeded by the lofty and unbroken ranges of the Sierra Madre, had turned south and joined General Worth at Saltillo; while General Kearney, somewhat earlier in the season, after having performed a march of nearly a thousand miles across the wilderness, had made himself master of Santa Fe, and all New Mexico, without opposition.

2. *Generals Wool and Kearney.*

3. *General Kearney's march to California.*

12. [3]After General Kearney had established a new government in New Mexico, on the 25th of September he departed from Santa Fe, at the head of four hundred dragoons, for the California settlements of Mexico, bordering on the Pacific Ocean; but after having proceeded three hundred miles, and learning that California§ was already in possession of the Americans, he sent back three quarters of his force, and with only one hundred men pursued his way across the continent.

4. *Colonel Doniphan's expedition.*

13. [4]In the early part of December a portion of General Kearney's command, that had marched with him from Missouri, set out from Santa Fe on a southern expedition, expecting to form a junction with General Wool at Chihuahua. This force, numbering only nine hundred men, was commanded by Colonel Doniphan, and its march of

---

* *Saltillo* is about 70 miles S. W. from Monterey, in the southern part of the state of Coahuila.

† *Victoria* is at the western extremity of Tamaulipas (Tam-aw-lee-pas,) near the boundary of San Luis Potosi, and on the northern bank of the river Santander.

‡ *Tampico* (Tam-pe-co) is at the southeastern extremity of Tamaulipas, on the north side of the river Panuco. The *old town* of that name is on the south side of the river. (See Map.)

§ Most of *Upper* or *New California*, which is separated from New Mexico by the Colorado river, is an elevated, dry, and sandy desert. The inhabitable portion extends along the shore of the Pacific about 500 miles, with an average breadth of 40 miles. (See Map.)

1846.

more than a thousand miles, through an enemy's country, from Santa Fe to Saltillo, is one of the most brilliant achievements of the war. During the march this body of men fought two battles against vastly superior forces, and in each defeated the enemy. [1]The Battle of Bracito,* fought on Christmas day, opened an entrance into the town of El Paso,† while that of the Sacramento,‡ fought on the 28th of February, 1847, secured the surrender of Chihuahua, a city of great wealth, and containing a population of more than forty thousand inhabitants.

1. Battles of Bracito and Sacramento.

14. [2]While these events were transpiring on the eastern borders of the Republic, the Pacific coast had become the scene of military operations, less brilliant, but more important in their results. [3]In the early part of June, 1846, Captain Fremont, of the Topographical Corps of Engineers, while engaged at the head of about sixty men in exploring a southern route to Oregon, having been first threatened with an attack by De Castro, the Mexican governor on the California coast, and learning afterwards that the governor was preparing an expedition against the American settlers near San Francisco,§ raised the standard of opposition to the Mexican government in California.

2. Events on the Pacific coast.

3. Proceedings of Capt. Fremont.

15. [4]After having defeated, in several engagements, greatly superior Mexican forces, on the 4th of July Fremont and his companions declared the independence of California. A few days later, Commodore Sloat, having previously been informed of the commencement of hostilities on the Rio Grande, hoisted the American flag at Monterey.‖ In the latter part of July, Commodore Stockton assumed the command of the Pacific squadron, soon after which he took possession of San Diego,¶ and, in conjunction with Captain Fremont, entered the city of Los Angelos** without opposition; and on the 22d of August, 1846, the whole of California, a vast region bordering on the Pacific Ocean, was in the undisputed military possession of the United States. [5]In December following, soon after the arrival of General Kearney from

4. Further events, terminating in the conquest of California.

5. Insurrection in California.

* The battle of *Bracito*, so called from the "Little Arm," or bend in the river near the place, was fought on the east bank of the Rio Grande, about 200 miles north of Chihuahua.

† The town of *El Paso* is situated in a rich valley on the west side of the Rio Grande, 30 miles south from the Bracito.

‡ The battle of *Sacramento* was fought near a small stream of that name, about 20 miles north of the city of Chihuahua.

§ *San Francisco*, situated on the bay of the same name, possesses probably the best harbor on the west coast of America. (See Map.)

‖ *Monterey* (Mon-ter-ā), a town of Upper California, on a bay of the same name, 80 miles south of San Francisco, contained in 1847 a population of about 1000 inhabitants. (See Map.)

¶ *San Diego* is a port on the Pacific nearly west of the head of the Gulf of California.

** *Los Angelos*, or the city of the Angels, is about 100 miles north of San Diego.

ANALYSIS. his overland expedition, the Mexican inhabitants of California attempted to regain possession of the government, but the insurrection was soon suppressed.

1. Situation of General Taylor's army after the close of the armistice of Monterey.

16. [1]We have stated that after the close of the armistice which succeeded the capture of Monterey, the American troops under General Taylor spread themselves over Coahuila and Tamaulipas. In the meantime the plan of an attack on Vera Cruz, the principal Mexican post on the Gulf, had been matured at Washington, and General Scott sent out to take the chief command of the army in Mexico. By the withdrawal of most of the regulars under General Taylor's command for the attack on Vera Cruz, the entire force of the Northern American army, extending from Matamoras to Monterey and Saltillo, was reduced to about ten thousand volunteers, and a few companies of the regular artillery, while at the same time the Mexican General Santa Anna was known to be at San Luis Potosi,* at the head of 22,000 of the best troops in Mexico, prepared to oppose the farther progress of General Taylor, or to advance upon him in his own quarters.

1847.

2. General Taylor's movements in February, 1847.

17. [2]In the early part of February, 1847, General Taylor, after leaving adequate garrisons in Monterey and Saltillo, proceeded with about five thousand men to Agua Nueva,† where he remained until the 21st of the month, when the advance of Santa Anna with his whole army induced him to fall back to Buena Vista,‡ a very strong position a few miles in advance of Saltillo. [3]Here the road runs north and south through a narrow defile, skirted on the west by impassable gullies, and on the east by a succession of rugged ridges and precipitous ravines which extend back nearly to the mountains. On the elevated plateau or table-land formed by the concentration of these ridges, General Taylor drew up his little army, numbering in all only 4,759 men, of whom only 453 were regular troops; and here, on the 22d of February, he was confronted by the entire Mexican array, then numbering, according to Santa Anna's official report, about 17,000 men, but believed to exceed 20,000.

3. Position of General Taylor's army at Buena Vista.

4. The battle of Buena Vista.

18. [4]On the morning of the next day, the 23d of February, the enemy began the attack with great impetuosity; but the resistance was as determined as the assault, and after a hard-fought battle, which was continued

---

* *San Luis Potosi*, the capital of the state of the same name, is situated in a pleasant valley, about 240 miles northwest from the city of Mexico, and more than 300 miles from Saltillo. (See Map.)

† *Agua Nueva* (Ah-goo-ah Noo-ā-vah) is about 14 miles south from Saltillo.

‡ *Buena Vista* (Boo-ā-nah Vees-tah) is about three miles south from Saltillo.

during the greater part of the day, the Mexican force was driven in disorder from the field, with a loss of more than fifteen hundred men. The American loss in killed, wounded, and missing, was seven hundred and forty-six; and, among these, twenty-eight officers were killed on the field. [1]This important victory broke up the army of Santa Anna, and, by effectually securing the frontier of the Rio Grande, allowed the Americans to turn their whole attention and strength to the great enterprise of the campaign, the capture of Vera Cruz, and the march thence to the Mexican capital.

1. The immediate effects of this victory.

19. [2]On the 9th of March, 1847, General Scott, at the head of twelve thousand men, landed without opposition a short distance south of Vera Cruz,* in full view of the city and the renowned castle of San Juan d'Ulloa. On the 12th the investment of the city was completed; on the 18th the trenches were opened, and on the 22d the first batteries began their fire, at the distance of 800 yards from the city. From the 22d until the morning of the 26th, almost one continued roar of artillery prevailed, the city and castle batteries answering to those of the besiegers, and shells and shot were rained upon the devoted town with terrible activity, and with an awful destruction of life and property. At length, just as arrangements had been made for an assault, the governor of the city made overtures of surrender; on the night of the 27th the articles of capitulation were signed, and on the 29th the American flag was unfurled over the walls of the city and castle.

2. The movements of General Scott—the investment of Vera Cruz—bombardment—and capture of the city.

20. [3]The way was now open for the march towards the Mexican capital, and on the 8th of April General Twiggs was sent forward, leading the advance, on the Jalapa road. But Santa Anna, although defeated at Buena Vista, had raised another army, and with 15,000 men had strongly intrenched himself on the heights of Cerro Gordo,† which completely command the only road that leads through the mountain fastnesses into the interior. General Twiggs reached this position on the 12th, but it was not until the morning of the 18th, when the commander-in-chief and the whole army had arrived, that the daring assault was made. Before noon of that day every position of the enemy had been stormed in succession, and three thousand prisoners had been taken,

3. March from Vera Cruz, and the battle of Cerro Gordo.

* *Vera Cruz*, the principal sea-port of Mexico, is built on the spot where Cortez first landed within the realms of Montezuma. The city is defended by the strong fortress of San Juan d'Ulloa, built on an island, or reef, of the same name, about 400 fathoms from the shore. (See Map.)

† The pass of *Cerro Gordo* is about 45 miles, in a direct line, northwest from Vera Cruz.

ANALYSIS.

together with forty-three pieces of bronze artillery, five thousand stand of arms, and all the munitions and materials of the army of the enemy.

1. *Continued advance of the American army, and its situation at Puebla.*

21. [1]On the day following the battle, the army entered Jalapa,* and on the 22d the strong castle of Perote† was surrendered without resistance, with its numerous park of artillery, and a vast quantity of the munitions of war. On the 15th of May the advance under General Worth entered the ancient and renowned city of Puebla;‡ and when the entire army had been concentrated there, in the very heart of Mexico, so greatly had it been reduced by sickness, deaths, and the expiration of terms of enlistment in the volunteer service, that it was found to number only five thousand effective men. [2]With this small force it was impossible to keep open a communication with Vera Cruz, and the army was left for a time to its own resources, until the arrival of further supplies and reinforcements enabled it to march forward to the Mexican capital.

2. *The effect of the smallness of its force.*

3. *Advance of the army from Puebla, until its arrival at San Augustin.*

22. [3]At length, on the 7th of August, General Scott, having increased his effective force to nearly eleven thousand men, in addition to a moderate garrison left at Puebla, commenced his march from the latter place for the capital of the republic. The pass over the mountains, by Rio Frio, where the army anticipated resistance, was found abandoned; a little further on the whole valley of Mexico burst upon the view; and on the 11th the advance division under General Twiggs reached Ayotla,§ only fifteen miles from Mexico. A direct march to the capital, by the national road, had been contemplated, but the route in that direction presented, from the nature of the ground and the strength of the fortifications, almost insurmountable obstacles, and an approach by way of Chalco and San Augustin, by passing around Lake Chalco, to the south, was thought more practicable, and by the 18th the entire army had succeeded in reaching San Augustin, ten miles from the city, where the arrangements were made for final operations.

Aug. 11th.

Aug. 18th.

4. *The situation of Mexico, and the approaches to the city.*

23. [4]The city of Mexico,‖ situated near the western bank of Lake Tezcuco, and surrounded by numerous

---

* *Jalapa*, a city of about 15,000 inhabitants, is 55 miles northwest from Vera Cruz. (See Map.) The well-known medicinal herb *jalap*, a species of the convolvulus, grows abundantly in the vicinity of this town, to which it is indebted for its name.

† *Perote* (Per-o-tā) is about 90 miles, in a direct line, northwest from Vera Cruz. The fortress is about half a mile north from the town of the same name.

‡ *Puebla*, a city of about 60,000 inhabitants, and the capital of the state of the same name, is about 85 miles southeast from the city of Mexico. (See Map.)

§ For the location of the places *Ayotla*, *Chalco*, *San Augustin*, *Chapultepec*, *Churubusco*, *Contreras*, *and San Antonio*, see the accompanying Map.

‖ See description of Mexico, page 116.

canals and ditches, could be approached only by long narrow causeways, leading over impassable marshes, while the gates to which they conducted were strongly fortified. [1]Beyond the causeways, commanding the outer approaches to the city, were the strongly fortified posts of Chapultepec and Churubusco, and the batteries of Contreras and San Antonio, armed with nearly one hundred cannon, and surrounded by grounds either marshy, or so covered by volcanic rocks that they were thought by the enemy wholly impracticable for military operations. [2]Six thousand Mexican troops under General Valencia held the exterior defences of Contreras, while Santa Anna had a force of nearly 25,000 men in the rear, prepared to lend his aid where most needed.

1847.

1. *The posts which defended these approaches.*

2. *The army of the enemy.*

24. [3]In the afternoon of the 19th some fighting occurred in the vicinity of Contreras, and early on the morning of the next day the batteries of that strong position were carried by an impetuous assault, which lasted only seventeen minutes. In this short space of time less than four thousand American troops had captured the most formidable entrenchments, within which were posted seven thousand Mexicans. The post of San Antonio, being now left in part unsupported, was evacuated by its garrison, which was terribly cut up in the retreat.

3. *Capture of Contreras and San Antonio.*

25. [4]The fortified post of Churubusco, about four miles northeast from the heights of Contreras, was the next point of attack. Here nearly the entire army of the

4. *Capture of Churubusco.*

ANALYSIS.

enemy was now concentrated, and here the great battle of the day was fought; but on every part of the field the Americans were victorious, and the entire Mexican force was driven back upon the city, and upon the only remaining fortress of Chapultepec. [1]Thus ended the battles of the memorable 20th of August, in which nine thousand Americans, assailing strongly fortified positions, had vanquished an army of 30,000 Mexicans.

1. Result of the battles of the 20th of August.

26. [2]On the morning of the 21st, while General Scott was about to take up battering positions, preparatory to summoning the city to surrender, he received from the enemy propositions which terminated in the conclusion of an armistice for the purpose of negotiating a peace. With surprising infatuation the enemy demanded terms that were due only to conquerors, and on the 7th of September hostilities were re-commenced. [3]On the morning of the 8th the Molino del Rey, or "King's Mill," and the Casa de Mata, the principal outer defences of the fortress of Chapultepec, were stormed and carried by General Worth, after a desperate assault, in which he lost one fourth of his entire force.

2. Armistice with the enemy.

3. Storming of the Molino del Rey, and the Casa de Mata.

27. [4]The reduction of the castle of Chapultepec itself, situated on an abrupt, rocky height, one hundred and fifty feet above the surrounding grounds, was a still more formidable undertaking. Several batteries were opened against this position on the 12th, and on the 13th the citadel and all its outworks were carried by storm, but not without a very heavy loss to the American army. [5]The battle was continued during the day, on the lines of the great causeways before mentioned, and when night suspended the dreadful conflict, one division of the American army rested in the suburbs of Mexico, and another was actually within the gates of the city. [6]During the night which followed, the army of Santa Anna and the officers of the national government abandoned the city, and at seven o'clock on the following morning the flag of the American Union was floating proudly to the breeze above the walls of the national palace of Mexico. [7]The American army had reached its destination; our soldiers had gained the object of their toils and sufferings; and, as the fruit of many victories, were at last permitted to repose on their laurels, in the far-famed "Halls of the Montezumas."

4. Reduction of the castle of Chapultepec.

5. Continuation of the battle during the 13th.

6. Capture of the city.

7. The result.

1848.

28. [8]The conquest of the Mexican capital was the finishing stroke of the war, and on the 2d of February following the terms of a treaty of peace were concluded upon by the American commissioner and the Mexican government. [9]This treaty, after having received some

8. Conclusion of the war.

9. Ratification of the treaty with Mexico.

modifications from the American Senate, was adopted by that body on the 10th of March, and subsequently ratified by the Mexican Congress at Queretaro,* on the 30th of May of the same year.

1. Its most important provisions.

29. [1]The most important provisions of this treaty are those by which the United States obtains from her late enemy a large increase of territory, embracing all New Mexico and Upper California. [2]The boundary between the two countries is to be the Rio Grande from its mouth to the southern boundary of New Mexico, thence westward along the southern and western boundary of New Mexico to the River Gila,† thence down said river to the Colorado,‡ thence westward to the Pacific Ocean. The free navigation of the Gulf of California, and of the River Colorado up to the mouth of the Gila, is guaranteed to the United States. [3]For the territory and privileges thus obtained, the United States surrendered to Mexico "all castles, forts, territories, places and possessions" not embraced in the ceded territory,—agreed to pay Mexico fifteen millions of dollars, and assumed the liquidation of all debts due American citizens from the Mexican government.

2. Boundary agreed upon, and concessions made by Mexico.

3. Stipulations on the part of the United States.

30. [4]Such was the conclusion of the Mexican war,—a war opposed as impolitic and unjust by one portion of the American people, and as cordially approved by the other, but admitted by all to have established for our nation, by the unbroken series of brilliant victories won by our army, a character for martial heroism which knows no superior in the annals of history, and which fears no rival in the pathway of military glory. [5]But war is seldom without its alloy of bitterness; and in this instance it was not alone its ordinary calamities of suffering, and wretchedness, and death,—the "sighs of orphans, and widows' tears,"—that moderated our exultations; but with our very rejoicings were mingled the deep and sullen notes of discord; and with the laurels of victory, with which fame had encircled the brow of our nation's glory, were entwined the cypress and the yew—emblems of mourning.

4. Policy and justice of the war, and the character it has established for the American people.

5. The alloy that mingles with our rejoicings.

31. [6]The vast extent of unoccupied territory which we had acquired as the result of the conquest, proved an apple of discord in our midst; and the question of the final disposal of the prize was a problem which our pro-

6. The territory acquired by the contest, and the character of the controversy that has

* *Queretaro*, the capital of the state of the same name, is about 110 miles northwest from the city of Mexico.

† The river *Gila* enters the Colorado from the east. (See Map.)

‡ The *Colorado* river, the largest stream in Mexico west of the Cordilleras or Rocky Mountains, rises in the high table-lands of Northern Mexico, and flowing southwest falls into the head of the Gulf of California. (See Map.)

ANALYSIS.

a-isen between the North and the South.

foundest statesmen found it difficult to solve. The South and the North took issue upon it—the former claiming the right of her citizens to remove, with their property in slaves, on to any lands purchased by the common treasure of the republic, and the latter demanding that territory free from slavery at the time of its acquisition, should forever remain so.

1. The presidential election of 1848.

32. [1]The opposing principles of slavery extension and slavery restriction entered largely, as elements of party zeal and political controversy, into the presidential election of 1848; but although the South advocated one line of policy, and the North another, the citizens of neither section were united in the support of either of the three presidential candidates, who were Martin Van Buren, of New York; Lewis Cass, of Michigan; and Zachary Taylor, of Louisiana.

2. The support given to Generals Cass and Taylor.

[2]General Cass, the regular democratic candidate, and General Taylor, the whig nominee, both claimed by their respective parties as favoring southern interests, while the same parties in the North advocated their election for reasons directly opposite, received the principal support of the whig and democratic parties;

3. To Mr. Van Buren.

[3]while Mr. Van Buren, first nominated by a division of the democratic party of New York, and afterwards renominated by a northern "Free Soil" convention held at Buffalo, was urged upon the people by his partisans as the peculiar exponent of the free-soil principles so generally professed by the northern section of the Union.

4. Result of the canvass.

[4]After an exciting political canvass, the election resulted in the choice of Zachary Taylor, by one hundred and sixty-three electoral votes, out of a total of two hundred and ninety. Millard Fillmore, of New York, was chosen Vice President.

1849.

CHAPTER XII.

TAYLOR'S ADMINISTRATION,

FROM MARCH 4, 1849, TO JULY 9, 1850.

Period embraced in Taylor's administration.

5. California.

1. [5]At the time of the accession of General Taylor to the presidency, California, embracing the western portion of the newly-acquired territory of the United States, had already begun to attract a large share of public attention.

6. Its history.

[6]The importance which this country has subsequently attained, in the rapid growth of its population—in its vast mineral resources—its already extensive commerce—

and its rapid advancement to the position of a State in the great American confederacy, demands a brief account of both its early and its recent history.

1. Principal Spanish settlements.

2. [1]The principal Spanish settlements of California were missionary establishments, twenty-one in number; the earliest of which, that of San Diego, was founded in 1769. [2]Established to extend the domain of the Spanish crown, and to propagate the Roman faith by the conversion of the untutored natives, they formed a line of religious posts along the whole western frontier, each a little colony within itself, and, being exclusive in their character, absorbing the lands, the capital, and the business of the country, they suppressed all enterprise beyond their limits, and discouraged emigration.

2. Their object and character.

3. Change made in 1833.

3. [3]California remained thus under ecclesiastical sway until, in 1833, the Mexican government converted the missionary establishments into civil institutions, subject to the control of the state. [4]During the long period of anarchy and discord which followed in Mexico, the missions were plundered by successive governors, and, with few exceptions, their lands were granted away, until scarcely anything but their huge stone buildings remained. [5]Yet the result proved beneficial to the country at large. As the lands were distributed, agriculture increased; the attention of foreigners began to be turned to the country; and from 1833, when scarcely any but native-born inhabitants were found there, up to 1845, the foreign population had increased to more than five thousand.

4. Period of anarchy and discord which followed.

5. Result of these changes

6. Fremont in California.

4. [6]Still, the unsettled condition of the government prevented anything like systematic enterprise; nor was it until 1846, when Fremont and his companions hoisted the American flag and declared California independent of Mexican rule, that the natural capacities of the country for a numerous agricultural population began to be developed. [7]With the belief that California had become, inseparably, a portion of the American Union, emigrants came pouring in, mostly from the United States, to seek their fortunes in a new country under their own flag. [8]Grazing and agriculture were the chief occupations of the people; many little villages sprung up; and everything promised fair for the steady growth of this distant territory on our western borders.

7. Emigration to the country.

8. Favorable prospects thus opened.

9. First report of the discovery of gold.

5. [9]In this tranquil state of affairs the announcement was made in the latter part of February, 1848, that a mechanic, employed in cutting a mill-race on the "American Fork" of the Sacramento, about fifty miles above New Helvetia, or Sutter's Fort, had found numerous particles of gold, and some pieces of considerable size, in the sands

ANALYSIS.

1. *Effects produced by it.*

of the stream. [1]The report spread with rapidity; examinations were made at other points along the stream, and almost everywhere with success; and in a few weeks the newly-discovered gold region was crowded with adventurers, tempted by the glittering prize.

2. *Effects upon labor—rise of prices, &c.*

6. [2]Laborers in the settlements, carried away by the excitement, struck for higher wages, and left their employers; sailors abandoned their vessels in the harbors; the villages were nearly deserted; and, as provisions were scarce, flour and pork arose to forty, and even a hundred dollars per barrel at the mines, butter to a dollar per pound, and common shoes sold for ten or twelve dollars per pair.

3. *The amount of gold first gathered.*

[3]At first, workmen at the mines ordinarily gathered gold to the amount of from twenty to forty dollars per day; and in some instances they obtained from $500 to $1000 a day for each man.

4. *Process of obtaining the gold.*

7. [4]The gold was gathered by washing the earth in pans, or other shallow vessels—the particles of earth being washed away, while the gold, gravel, and sand settled at the bottom. The gravel was then picked out by the hand, and the residue was dried on a board or cloth, when the sand was blown away by a common bellows, or the mouth; the greater weight of the gold causing it to remain behind. In the mountains, the gold was picked out of the rocks in pieces varying from the finest particles to those of five or six ounces in weight.

5. *Present process of mining operations.*

[5]The mining operations have since been carried on in a more scientific manner. The richest gold is now found imbedded in rock quartz, which is broken and ground down, and the gold is then separated by the process of amalgamation with quicksilver.

6. *Population; and the desires of the people.*

8. [6]Already, at the time of the discovery of the mineral wealth of California, the population embraced many enterprising Americans; and now, citizens from the States crowded there in great numbers, carrying with them an ardent attachment to the political institutions of their country, and desiring to see the same established over the land of their adoption.

7. *Their petitions to Congress, and the result.*

[7]For some time they petitioned Congress in vain; as that body, divided on the subject of permitting or prohibiting slavery there, were unable to agree upon the details of a form of government for the new territory.

8. *General Taylor's assurances and advice.*

9. [8]General Taylor, on his accession to the presidency, assured the Californians of his earnest desire to grant them all the protection and assistance in the power of the executive; and advised them to form for themselves, in the meantime, a State government, afterwards to be submitted to Congress for approval.

1849.

10. [1]Acting upon this advice, and encouraged by General Mason, who succeeded General Riley as military governor in April, 1849, the people chose delegates, who met at Monterey in September of the same year, for the purpose of forming a constitution for a State government. The result of their deliberations was the adoption of a State constitution, by which slavery was excluded from the country, in accordance with the decision of a special convention previously held at San Francisco. The new constitution was adopted by the people with great unanimity. Peter H. Burnet was elected chief magistrate, and the first Legislature assembled at San José on the 20th of December, 1849.

1. Proceedings of the people in establishing a government.

11. [2]While California was a prey to anarchy and misrule, incident to the mixed character of its population,—while the project of an independent republic was by some openly avowed,—and while the interests of the people were neglected by the Congress of the United States, which was violently agitated by the clause in the new constitution prohibiting slavery, the Legislature of California manifested, throughout, a noble spirit of devotion to the public good, and a faithful attachment to the American Union.

2. Conduct of the Legislature of California.

12. [3]In the meantime, long standing animosities between Texas and New Mexico were involving those countries, and the general government, in a complication of difficulties. Texas had ever claimed, since she gained her independence of Mexico, that her territory extended to the Rio Grande; and she was determined to extend her authority there also, although the inhabitants of the valley of Santa Fé had ever rejected her pretensions, and resisted her rule. [4]In February, 1850, Texas sent her commissioner to organize counties in New Mexico, and enforce her jurisdiction over the disputed territory; but the United States civil and military governor at Santa Fé, disregarding the claims of Texas, and acting in accordance with instructions from Washington, favored the views of the people of New Mexico, who met in convention and formed a constitution for a State government, which they transmitted to Washington for the approval of the American Congress. The agent of Texas was unable to accomplish his mission.

3. Difficulties between Texas and New Mexico.

1850.

4. Measures taken by Texas, and the result.

13. [5]While California and New Mexico were petitioning for admission as States into the American Union, a similar petition was sent up to Congress by a strange people from the very centre of the vast American wilderness. A few years before, a band of Mormons, or, as they style themselves, "Latter-Day Saints," had collected at Nauvoo, in

5. The Mormon petition, and the Mormon people.

124
122
120
118
Ft. Umpquah
Umpquah R.
OREGON
Lat. of Boston
R. Tlamath
42
Trinity
Humboldt
Mt. Shasta
Shasta
Sacramento River
Feather R.
Humboldt R.
C. MENDOCINO
40
HUMBOLDT L.
PYRAMID L.
Mt. Linn
Hamilton
Yuba
Springfield
CARSON L.
MOUNTAIN L.
Lat. of Washington
Vernon
Sacramento
Sutterville
WALKER L.
Dry Cr.
VALLEJO
San Rafael
Benicia
Mokelumne R.
38
San New York
Pablo
Calaveras R.
Stockton
San Francisco
Stanislaus
Santa Clara
San Jose
Jamestown
Santa Cruz
Lat. of Richmond Va.
San Juan
Mercedes R.
Monterey
Buenaventura
OWENS L.
36
TULA L.
San Miguel
San Luis Obispo
KERN L.
Mohave R.
La Purissima
S. Barbara
Buenaventura
Pueblo de los Angeles
PT. CONCEPTION
34
San Pedro
Santa Anna
SANTA CRUZ I.
CALIFORNIA
San Juan
San Luis
STA. CATALINA I.
San Diego
S. Miguel
32
47
45
43
41
MUNTON & BRO.

the State of Illinois, under the guidance of Joe Smith, their pretended prophet and leader; but as serious dissensions arose between them and the neighboring people, they set out, like the Israelites of old, with "their flocks, their herds, and their little ones," to seek a refuge in the wilderness, far away from those who, while they pitied their fanaticism, hated them, and despised their religion.

1. Establishment of the Mormons in California, and the success of this strange imposture.

14. [1]Passing beyond the Rocky Mountains, they found, in the valley of the Great Salt Lake, in Northern California, a delightful and fertile region, which they chose for their future home, and the seat of a new religion, which, in its infancy, has been little less successful than that of the Arabian impostor. Not from the States only, but even from Europe, the Mormon missionaries brought in their proselytes by hundreds and by thousands: their thrifty settlements rapidly increased; and while they were scarcely thought of by "the world's people" but as a band of outcasts, we find them, in the year 1850, asking to be enumerated as a member of our confederacy, and the American Congress gravely discussing the terms of the admission of the new territory of "Utah!"

2. Death of General Taylor.

15. [2]While Congress was still in session, engaged in acrimonious debate on the various subjects which arose out of the connection of slavery with the new territories, the country was called to mourn the sudden loss of its chief magistrate. Zachary Taylor died at Washington on the 9th of July, after an illness of less than a week. Among his last words were, "I have endeavored to do my duty. I am not afraid to die." His memory will ever be cherished by his countrymen as that of an able and good man. [3]In the language of an eminent political opponent,[a] "The integrity of his motives was never assailed nor assailable. He had passed through a long and active life, neither meriting nor meeting reproach, and, in his last hour, the conviction of the honest discharge of his duty was present to console, even when the things of this life were fast fading away."

3. Character attributed to him by General Cass.

a. General Cass.

ANALYSIS.

CHAPTER XIII.

FILLMORE'S ADMINISTRATION,

FROM JULY 10, 1850, TO MARCH 4, 1853.

Period embraced in Fillmore's administration.

1. Mr. Fillmore's accession to the presidency.

1. [1]On the day following the decease of the President, the Vice President, Millard Fillmore, proceeded to the Hall of the House of Representatives, and there, in accordance with the constitution, and in the presence of both Houses of Congress, took the oath of office as President of the United States. Without commotion, without any military parade, but with republican simplicity, the legitimate successor to the presidency was installed in office, and the wheels of government moved on as harmoniously as ever; presenting to the world a sublime spectacle of the beauty and perfection of self-government.

2. Character of the 1st session of the 31st Congress.

3. The great subjects of discussion.

4. The question of slavery.

2. [2]The first session of the 31st Congress, which opened on the 3d of November, 1849, and closed on the 30th of September, 1850, was one of the longest and most exciting ever held. [3]The great subjects of discussion were, the admission of California with the constitution she had adopted, and the Texas boundary question. [4]With these was involved the long-agitated question of slavery, in all its various phases—respecting the extension of slavery to new territory—its abolition in the District of Columbia, and the restoration of fugitive slaves to their owners.

5. Mr. Clay's bill.

3. [5]Early in the session, before the death of General Taylor, Mr. Clay, at the head of a committee of thirteen, had reported to the Senate a bill providing for the admission of California with the constitution she had adopted —for the organization of the territories of New Mexico and Utah, and for the adjustment of the Texas boundary.

6. Fate of this bill.

[6]This project, which received the name of the "Omnibus Bill," was strongly contested, and crippled by various amendments, until nothing remained but the sections organizing Utah as a separate territory, which passed both houses, and became a law.

7. General result of the discussion.

4. [7]After much discussion, however, the California admission bill, the New Mexico territorial bill, and the Texas boundary, all subsequently passed as separate propositions, very much as they had been proposed by the committee of which Mr. Clay was chairman. By this result, 1st. [8]The vast territory of California, with a seaboard corresponding in latitude to the entire Atlantic

8. Respecting California in particular.

1850.

coast from Boston to Charleston, became a State of the American Union, with a constitution excluding domestic slavery: 2d: [1]The Mormon territory of Utah, embracing the great central basin of the country between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific, was erected into a territorial government, with the declaration that, when admitted as a State, "said territory, or any portion of the same, shall be received into the Union with or without slavery,—as its constitution shall prescribe at the time of the admission:" 3d. [2]New Mexico was erected into a territorial government, with the same provision respecting slavery as in the case of Utah:" 4th. [3]The Texas boundary bill (with the consent of Texas, afterwards obtained) established the dividing line between Texas and New Mexico four degrees east of Santa Fé; and in consideration that Texas relinquished her claims to the territory east of the Rio Grande thus included in New Mexico, the United States agreed to pay her the sum of ten millions of dollars: 5th. [4]An act, called the "Fugitive Slave Law," was passed, providing for the more effectual and speedy delivery, to their masters, of fugitive slaves escaping into the free States: and 6th. [5]An act providing for the suppression of the slave-trade in the District of Columbia, which declares that "if any slave shall be brought into the District of Columbia for the purpose of being sold, or placed in depôt there to be sold as merchandise, such slave shall thereupon become liberated and free."

1. The Mormon territory.

2. New Mexico.

3. Respecting the Texas Boundary bill.

4. The fugitive slave law.

5. The slave-trade in the District of Columbia.

5. [6]These various bills were the results of a compromise of opposing views on the subject of slavery, and in this spirit they were advocated by their supporters: but, as was to be expected, they failed to give entire satisfaction either to the North or to the South. [7]A portion of the South, complaining of the injustice of excluding their citizens from territory purchased by their blood and by the common treasure of the Union, would have rejected California until she struck from her constitution the clause prohibiting slavery; while at the North there was much bitterness of feeling against the fugitive slave law, which exhibited itself in conventions of the people, and in the aid afforded to fugitive slaves escaping to Canada.

6. The compromise.

7. How regarded in different sections of the Union.

1851–2.

6. [8]During the remainder of President Fillmore's administration, little occurred to disturb the quiet tenor of our country's history. [9]At peace with foreign nations, and blessed with almost unexampled prosperity in the various departments of agriculture, commerce, and manufactures, our course is steadily onward in the march of national greatness. [10]The presidential election of 1852, although following closely upon the violent sectional and political

8. The remainder of Fillmore's administration.

9. State of the country, &c.

10. Character and results of the presidential election of 1852.

ANALYSIS.

1852.

contentions of the 31st Congress, was one of unusual quiet, and great moderation of party feeling:—a harbinger of good—a bow of promise spanning the political horizon after the storm has passed away. The result of the political canvass was the election of the democratic candidate, General Franklin Pierce, of New Hampshire, over General Winfield Scott, the candidate of the whig party.

1. The period at which we have now arrived.

Conclusion. [1]At this period in our history—at the beginning of the last half of the nineteenth century—it is wise to review the past, while with feelings of mingled fear and hope we contemplate the future.

2. Two centuries of our history.

3. State of the country during more than two-thirds of that period.

1. [2]Little more than two centuries have elapsed since the first permanent settlement by civilized man was made within the limits of the present United States. [3]During more than two-thirds of that period, while the colonies remained under the government of Great Britain, the English settlements were confined to the Atlantic coast; and at the close of the Revolution, the population numbered only three millions of souls.

4. Changes that immediately followed the Revolution.

Progress of population westward.

2. [4]The separation, perfected by the Revolution, at once opened new fields for exertion and enterprise;—a great change was suddenly made in the character of the American people; and, under the fostering care of republican institutions, the tide of population has rolled rapidly inland; crossing the Alleghanies—sweeping over the vast valley of the Mississippi, and the plains of California—looking down from the heights of the Sierra Nevada—nor resting in its onward course until it has settled on the waters of the Columbia, and the shores of the Pacific.

5. Rapid increase of population.

[5]During the last sixty years of our country's history, the population has increased, in a ratio hitherto unprecedented, from three millions to more than twenty millions of souls.

6. Progress in the arts, &c.

3. [6]Nor has our progress been less rapid in the various arts of civilized life. Our transition has been sudden from the weakness of youth to the vigor of manhood.

7. Power and resources.

[7]In power and resources we already sustain a proud rivalry with the time-honored nations of the Old World, and we rank the first among the republics of the New.

8. Extent of our commerce.

Manufactures.

Agriculture.

[8]Our busy commerce has extended over every sea, and entered every port; and from the Arctic circle to the opposite regions of Polar cold, our canvas whitens in every breeze. Our domestic manufactures, in the amount of capital employed, and in the quality and value of their fabrics, are already competing successfully with those of France and England, while the rewards of agriculture are shedding their blessings on millions of our happy people.

LARGE TOWNS.

a. Portland.
b. Portsmouth.
c. Newburyport.
d. Newport.
e. Rochester.
f. Buffalo.
g. Sackett's Har.
h. Oswego.
i. Utica.
j. Newark.
k. Philadelphia.
l. Pittsburg.
m. Baltimore.
n. Norfolk.
o. New York.
p. Wilmington.
q. Georgetown.
r. Charleston.
s. Savannah.
t. St. Augustine.
u. Pensacola.
v. Mobile.
w. Natchez.
x. Louisville.
y. Cincinnati.
z. Sandusky.
1. St. Louis.
2. Chicago.
3. Milwaukie.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES

CAPITALS.

A. Augusta.
B. Concord.
C. Montpelier.
D. Boston.
E. Providence.
F. Hartford.
G. New Haven.
H. Albany.
I. Trenton.
J. Harrisburg.
K. Dover.
L. Annapolis.
M. Richmond.
N. Raleigh.
O. Columbia.
P. Milledgeville.
Q. Tallahassee.
R. Tuscaloosa.
S. Jackson.
T. New Orleans.
U. Nashville.
V. Frankfort.
W. Columbus.
X. Indianapolis.
Y. Springfield.
Z. Madison City.

ANALYSIS.

1. Facilities of communication.

2. Religion.

Education.

3. Gratitude due for these blessings.

4. The sentiments and hopes we should cherish.

4. [1]Our numerous railroads, telegraphs, and canals, navigable rivers and inland seas, by the facilities of communication which they open, bring closely together the most distant sections of the Union, and do much to harmonize that diversity of feelings and of interests which would otherwise arise. [2]The Bible, and the institutions of Christianity, shed their blessings upon us; and the education of youth, upon which the well-being of society, and the perpetuity of our republican institutions, so greatly depend, is receiving that share of attention which its importance demands. [3]For all these blessings we are bound to acknowledge and adore the invisible hand of Almighty power that has directed and sustained us; for every step in our progress has been distinguished by manifest tokens of providential agency.

1853. [4]Let our prayer then be, that the same God who brought our fathers out of bondage, into a strange land, to found an empire in the wilderness, may continue his protection to their children. Let us indulge the hope, that in this Western World freedom has found a congenial clime; that the tree of liberty which has been planted here may grow up in majesty and beauty, until it shall overshadow the whole land; and that beneath its branches the nations may ever dwell together in unity and love. Let us endeavor to cultivate a spirit of mutual concession and harmony in our national councils; and remembering that the monarchies of the Old World are looking upon us with jealousy, and predicting the day of our ruin, let us guard with sacred faith the boon that has been bequeathed us, and amid all the turmoils of political strife by which we may be agitated, let us ever bear aloft the motto, "*The Union; one and inseparable.*"

APPENDIX

TO THE PERIOD SUBSEQUENT TO THE REVOLUTION.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Government of the United States.*

2. *Character of most federal governments.*

3. *The federal government of 1777.*

1. [1]The government of the United States, like that which existed at one time in Greece, among the Dutch provinces in the low countries, and in Switzerland, is called a federal republic, or a republic composed of several independent states. [2]Most federal governments have been noted for their weakness and inefficiency; anarchy has prevailed among the members: and the result has usually been that the most powerful state has acquired a preponderating control over the rest, or that the federal government has gradually become powerless, and sunk into inaction and obscurity. [3]The latter was the case with the federal government adopted by the American congress in 1777, and under which the states terminated the Revolution. The "Articles of Confederation" were found powerless as a government, when a sense of common danger no longer united the states in a harmony of national councils.[a]

a. See p. 410.

4. *In what manner the constitution of 1789 differs from former federal governments.*

2. [4]The constitution of 1789, however, rests upon a theory until that time unknown in political science. Former federal governments possessed legislative authority only, while the states of which they were composed reserved to themselves the executive powers, or the right of enforcing the laws of the general government; whence it often happened that regulations that were deemed unjust, unconstitutional, or burdensome to any particular member of the confederacy, were evaded, or openly violated. The subjects of the American government, however, are not independent states, jealous of the rights of sovereignty, but private citizens, upon whom the constitution acts without any reference to state lines. When the national government levies a tax, or imposes a duty on merchandize, it is collected by its own officers,—not from the states, but from individuals,—and over all the subjects of its legislation it is possessed of ample powers for enforcing obedience.

5. *Effects of this principle.*

3. [5]It is this principle which gives the federal union of the United States its greatest strength, and distinguishes it from all previous confederations;—which guards against corruption, by rendering the people familiar with all the acts of their government, and by causing them to feel a deep interest in its wise administration.

6. *Early diversity of opinion upon the merits of the constitution, as thus assumed by Great Britain.*

4. [6]It is not surprising that when our present national constitution was first promulgated, the "untried experiment" encountered a wide diversity of opinion. As soon as the convention of 1787 submitted the result of its labors to the people for their approval or rejection, the country became divided into two political parties,—the friends of the law of the enemies of the constitution. [7]The former, who were extension of the plan of government contained in that instrument, were known as *federalists;* and the latter, who disliked some of its provisions, at first took the name of *anti-federalists*, and the blows elder Adams were the leaders of the former. [8]Nothing might be imagined more different than the principle, that the latter.

10. *Different and contradictory expositions of the law of nations.*

14. [10]In 18[illegible] tion, as finally adopted in cor[illegible]nce reexported decisions of [illegible]lt of a series of com[illegible]uddenly, in 1805, principle, that [illegible]nts w[illegible] imported by a neutr[illegible] to the mother cou[illegible]

ANALYSIS.

was submitted to the people, even those members of the convention who had differed most radically upon some of its most leading features, cordially united in urging the people to give it their support, as the best form of government upon which the country could unite. [1]The chief supporters of the constitution, who by their writings contributed most to its adoption, were Hamilton, Jay, and Madison; the former two being federals, and the latter, at a subsequent period, a prominent leader of the anti-federal, or democratic party.

1. Its chief supporters.

2. Chief differences of opinion between parties in 1787.

6. [2]The chief differences of opinion between the parties, in 1787, were upon the subject of the respective powers of the national confederacy and the state governments,—the federalists urging the necessity of a strong central government, while their opponents deprecated any measures that were calculated to withdraw power from the people and the individual states.

3. Successful operation, and subsequent general approval of the constitution.

6. [3]But notwithstanding the objections to the constitution, most of which time has shown to be unfounded, it went into successful operation, and during the first twelve years of the government, from 1789 until 1801, the federalists were the majority, and were able to pursue that policy which they deemed best calculated to promote the great interests of the Union. During this period the constitution became firmly established in the affections of the people, yet the parties which it called forth preserved their identity, although without a uniform adherence to the principles which marked their origin.

4. Jefferson made secretary of state.

5. French revolution—different views entertained of it in America.

7. [4]Mr. Jefferson had resided several years in France, as ambassador to that country, when in 1789 he was recalled to take part in the administration of the government under Washington, as secretary of state. [5]At this time the French revolution was progressing, and had enlisted in its favor the feelings of a portion of the citizens of the United States, who viewed it as a noble effort to throw off a despotism, and establish a republican government; while another portion considered the principles avowed by the "French republicans," and the course they pursued, dangerous to the very existence of civilized society. Of the former class was Mr. Jefferson, and the party of which he was the head adopted his sentiments of partiality to France and animosity towards England. By the federalists, however, the French were regarded with exceeding jealousy and ill-will, notwithstanding the services they had rendered us in the cause of our independence.

6. Charges made by each party against the other.

8. [6]It is not surprising that the feelings which the federalists entertained towards France, should have given them a corresponding bias in favor of England, during the long war which existed between the two countries; nor that their opponents, in the ardor of party zeal, should have charged those who were enemies of France, with being enemies of republicanism, and consequently, friends of monarchy. On the other hand the anti-federalists were charged with a blind devotion to French interests, and with causeless hostility to England, founded upon prejudices which [illegible] independence had excited; while, to render th[illegible] [illegible]ore odious, their leaders, with Jefferson a[illegible] [illegible]d with being deeply tinctured with the sen[illegible] [illegible]school of Infidel philosophy, and with designi[illegible] [illegible]me infidel and jacobinical notions into Am[illegible] [illegible] sanguinary and revolting scenes of [illegible]

[illegible]iefly, the relative positions [illegible] [illegible]en the European w[illegible]

seriously to affect the commercial interests of the United States. Causes of complaint soon arose, both against England and France, which, too often, were palliated, or justified, less according to the merits of the cases, than the prepossessions of the respective parties for or against the aggressors. [2]The first serious aggression on the part of England was an order of council of November 6th, 1793, authorizing the capture of any vessels laden with French colonial produce, or carrying supplies for any French colony.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Complaints both against England and France.*

2. *First serious aggression on the part of England.*

10. [3]This act was doubtless designed, primarily, to injure France, with which country England was then at war, but it was a most lawless invasion of the rights of neutral powers. [4]What seriously aggravated the outrage was the clandestine manner in which the order was issued, no previous notification of it having been given to the United States, who were first made aware of its existence by the destruction of a trade, the enjoyment of which was guaranteed to them by the universal law of nations.

3. *Primary design of England.*

4. *Aggravation of the outrage.*

11. [5]This high handed measure excited universal indignation in the United States; the people demanded retaliation; and a proposition was made in congress to sequester all British property in the United States, for the purpose of indemnifying American merchants; but, fortunately, these and other difficulties were terminated for a while, by the celebrated treaty negotiated by Mr. Jay in 1794. [6]This treaty, concluded at London on the 19th of November, but not ratified by the United States until August of the following year, provided that Great Britain should withdraw all her troops and garrisons from all posts and places within the boundaries of the United States, on or before the first of June, 1796, —that the Mississippi river should be open to both parties—that the United States should compensate British creditors for losses occasioned by legal impediments to the collection of debts contracted before the peace of 1783, and that the British government should make compensation to citizens of the United States for illegal captures of their vessels by British subjects. The United States were allowed, under certain regulations, to carry on only a limited and direct trade with the West Indies.

5. *Feelings produced in the United States: demands for retaliation, and settlement of the difficulties.*

6. *Jay's treaty, 1794.*

12. [7]This treaty was violently denounced by the democratic party, principally on the ground that the interests of France, our former ally, were neglected in it, and that our commercial rights were not sufficiently protected. The federalists defended the treaty, and the results of the following ten years of national prosperity stamped upon the gloomy predictions of their opponents the seal of false prophecy.

7. *Different views entertained of this treaty by the two political parties.*

13. [8]In 1805, however, the war upon American rights was renewed, when the British government, still engaged in hostilities with France, and jealous of the amount of our commerce with the French colonies, adopted a rule, which had governed her policy in the war of 1756, "that neutrals should be restricted to the same commerce with a belligerent, which was allowed to them by that power in time of peace." [9]The foundation of the principle here assumed by Great Britain, and endeavored to be established by her as the law of nations, was, that "the neutral has no right, by an extension of his trade, to afford supplies to the belligerent to ward off the blows of his enemy."

1805.

8. *Renewed aggressions upon American rights.*

9. *Foundation of the principle thus assumed by Great Britain.*

14. [10]In 1801 the declarations of the British ministry, and the decisions of the English admiralty courts, had established the principle, that "the produce of an enemy's colony might be imported by a neutral into his own country, and thence reexported to the mother country of such colony;" but suddenly, in 1805,

10. *Different and contradictory expositions of the law of nations.*

ANALYSIS.

without any previous notice, this principle was subverted by the British government, and large numbers of American vessels, confiding in the British exposition of the law of nations, were seized, carried into British ports, tried, and condemned.

1806.

1. Exasperated state of public feeling, and memorials for a redress of grievances.

Feb. 10.

2. Proceedings in congress in relation to this subject.

15. [1]Such proceedings, on the part of a friendly power, exasperated the American people to the highest degree, and in Boston, Salem, New Haven, New York, Philadelphia, Baltimore, and other cities, both parties, federals and democrats, united in memorializing the general government to take active measures for obtaining a redress of grievances. [2]In consequence of these memorials, the subject was taken up in congress, and on the 10th of February, 1806, the senate unanimously resolved, that the recent capture and condemnation of American vessels and their cargoes, on the part of England, was "an unprovoked aggresssion upon the property of the citizens of the United States,—a violation of their neutral rights,—and an encroachment upon their national independence." A few days later the senate adopted[a] a resolution, by a vote of twenty against six, requesting the President to *demand* of England a restoration of property, and indemnification for losses.

a. Feb. 14.

April.

3. A minister extraordinary sent to England, and a non-importation act passed.

b. April 18.

16. [3]Still the administration resolved upon first adopting the mildest means for obtaining redress, and Mr. William Pinkney was appointed minister extraordinary to the court of London, and united with Mr. Monroe, then resident there; while at the same time a non-importation act against England was passed,[b] as a means of inducing her to abandon her unjust pretensions, and cease her depredations; but, in order to allow time for negotiation, the act was not to go into operation until the following November, and even then, so reluctant was the government to proceed to extremities, that its operation was still farther suspended.

4. English blockade of the coast from Brest to the Elbe.

May 16.

17. [4]So little disposition, however, did England show to redress the grievances of which the United States and other neutral nations complained, that, on the 16th of May, she issued a proclamation, declaring the coasts of France, Germany, and Holland, from Brest to the Elbe, in a state of blockade, although no naval force, adequate to effect a legal blockade, was stationed there. Vessels of neutral nations were allowed to trade to one portion of this coast, only upon conditions that such vessels had not been laden at any port in the possession of the enemies of England, nor were afterwards destined to any such port.

5. Retaliatory Berlin decree.

c. Nov. 21.

6. Justification of this measure.

7. Enforcement of the French and British decrees.

18. [5]In retaliation against England, Bonaparte issued a decree, from his camp at Berlin, in the following November,[c] declaring the British Isles in a state of blockade, and prohibiting all commerce and correspondence with them. [6]This measure was declared to be taken in consideration that England was acting contrary to the rights and laws of nations, and that it was just to oppose to her the same weapons that she used against others. [7]So far as American vessels were concerned, the Berlin decree was not enforced for twelve months, while the British decree was put in rigorous execution immediately after its enactment. [8]Early in January, 1807, the British government prohibited[d] neutrals from trading from one port to another of France or her allies, or any other country, with which Great Britain might not freely trade.

1807.

d Jan. 7.

8. British decree of January, 1807.

9. General terms of the treaty negotiated with England by Mr. Pinkney and Mr. Monroe.

19. [9]On the last day of December, 1806, the American commissioners, Mr. Pinkney and Mr. Monroe, concluded a treaty with England,—the best they could procure, although not in accordance with the instructions which they had received from their own government. They had been instructed to insist that Great Britain should abandon her claims to take from American vessels, on the

high seas, such seamen as should appear to be British subjects, but no formal renunciation of this claim could at any time be obtained from the British ministry. All other important matters of controversy were adjusted by this treaty, to which the British commissioners appended a paper, proposing an informal arrangement, by which the practice of impressment was to be somewhat modified, while the subject of the British claims on this head was to be reserved for future negotiation. ANALYSIS.

20. [1]This treaty was received by Mr. Jefferson, then President of the United States, early in March, 1807; but without consulting the senate,—the coordinate branch of the treaty-making power, he took upon himself the responsibility of rejecting it, and transmitted to the American commissioners instructions to begin the negotiation anew. [2]They were informed that "the President declined any arrangement, formal or informal, which did not comprise a provision against impressments from American vessels on the high seas," and that "without a provision against impressments, substantially such as was contemplated in their original instructions, no treaty was to be concluded."

1. This treaty rejected by Mr. Jefferson.

2. Instructions forwarded to the ministers

21. [3]Had this treaty been laid before the senate, it would probably have been ratified, and thus all the disputes existing with England, upon the subject of commercial rights, would have been adjusted, while the subject of impressment would have been left in no worse condition, certainly, than before. [4]It is now generally admitted that the refusal to ratify this treaty was a serious error on the part of Mr. Jefferson, although not the least palliation of the subsequent aggressions of Great Britain. [5]The federalists asserted that the administration sought a cause of war with England, and, therefore, had no desire to adjust the difficulties with that country, and that it was from an apprehension that the senate would advise the ratification of the treaty, that their opinion on the subject was not requested by Mr. Jefferson.

3. Effects that would probably have been produced if this treaty had been ratified.

4. Error of Mr. Jefferson.

5. Assertions of the federalists on this subject

22. [6]On the 11th of November the British government issued the celebrated "orders in council," prohibiting all trade with France and her allies, except such trade as should be carried on directly from the ports of England or her confederates. [7]These orders, directed openly against the commerce of neutral powers, were defended upon the ground that "nations under the control of France," meaning thereby, especially, the United States, had acquiesced in the Berlin decree of November, 1806; when it was well known that decree had not been enforced against American commerce, and that, consequently, the United States could not have acquiesced in it.

Nov. 11.

6. British orders in council of Nov. 11.

7. The defence of these orders.

23. [8]What rendered the conduct of England more grossly insulting, and deprived her of the plea of "retaliation upon *France*," was an additional order of council of the 25th of the same month, explanatory of that of the 11th, and confirmed by act of parliament of the following year, *permitting* a trade between neutral nations and France and her dependencies, on condition that the vessels engaged in it should enter a British port, pay a transit duty, and take out a license! This was subjecting the commerce of America with all the countries of Europe, except Sweden, at that time the only remaining neutral, to the necessity of being first carried into some English port, and there taxed for the privilege thus conferred upon it! The tax thus imposed often exceeded the original cost of the cargo!

Nov. 25.

8. Additional order in council of Nov. 25.

24. [9]The British orders of the 11th of November were assigned, by Napoleon, as a reason for and justification of the Milan decree

Dec. 17.

9. Napoleon's Milan decree.

ANALYSIS.

of December 17th, which declared that every vessel that should submit to be searched by a British ship,—enter a British port,—or pay a tax to the British government, should be considered English property, and, as such, be good and lawful prize; and, farther, that all trade with England, her allies, or countries occupied by British troops, should be deemed illegal.

1. Peculiar embarrassments to which American commerce was at this time subjected.

25. [1]Thus there was not a single port in Europe to which an American vessel could trade in safety; for if bound to Sweden, the only power not embraced in the decrees of the belligerents, she might be searched by an English privateer, and this would subject her to capture by the next French privateer that might overtake her. It seems, at this day, almost incredible that our country could have suffered such wrongs and indignity, without an immediate declaration of war against both the aggressors.

2. American embargo.

Dec. 22.

26. [2]Information having reached the United States that France also, in accordance with the Berlin decree of November, 1806, had commenced depredations upon American commerce, on the 22d of December congress decreed an embargo, prohibiting American vessels from trading with foreign nations, and American goods or merchandize from being exported,—the mildest mode for procuring redress that could have been adopted.

3. Violent and intemperate opposition of the federal party to the embargo.

[3]This measure met with the most violent opposition from the federal party, who, after vainly endeavoring to prevent its passage through congress, denounced it as unnecessarily oppressive, wicked, tyrannical, and unconstitutional;—dictated by French influence, and the result of a combination between the southern and the western states to ruin the eastern. Throughout the Union public meetings were called, in which the federalists not only expressed their disapprobation of the embargo, but denounced the wickedness of those who caused its enactment, and even called upon the people to set its provisions at defiance. The acts of these meetings were heralded in the federal papers as "*patriotic proceedings;*" incessant appeals were made to fan the passions of the multitude, and in many places the embargo, and the laws enacted to enforce it, were openly and boastingly violated.

4. Effects of the embargo.

27. [4]The embargo, by withholding from England the supplies of raw materials and naval stores which she had been accustomed to receive from the United States, inflicted upon her considerable injury; and had it been duly enforced, as the duty of the government required, little doubt can be entertained that it would have compelled England to relinquish her unjust pretensions against American commerce.

5. Embargo repealed, and an act of non-intercourse passed

1809.

[5]But owing to the clamors against it in the Eastern States—its injurious effects upon the country—and its inefficacy to answer the purpose intended, on account of the opposition it met with, it was repealed on the 1st of March, 1809, but on the same day congress passed a non-intercourse act, prohibiting any French or English vessels from entering the harbors or waters of the United States, and declaring it unlawful to import any goods or merchandize from, or manufactured in, any port of France or Great Britain, or place or country in their possession.

6. Renewal of trade authorized on certain conditions.

[6]At the same time the president was authorized, in case either France or England should revoke her edicts, so that they should cease to violate the neutral commerce of the United States, to declare the same by proclamation, and authorize the renewal of trade with such nation.

7. Non-intercourse act—now regarded by both parties.

28. [7]Yet the non-intercourse act, although a mild and equitable but effectual retaliation upon the belligerents for the injuries which they were inflicting upon our commerce, and expressing a desire on the part of the Union to return to the relations of friend-

ship with both nations, was generally denounced both by federals and democrats, but on totally different grounds;—by the former as a war measure, of unjustifiable severity, against Great Britain, —and by the latter as too feeble and imbecile to effect the objects for which it was intended.*

ANALYSIS.

29. [1]Soon after the accession[a] of Mr. Madison to the presidency, the flattering encouragement was held out, of a speedy adjustment of all difficulties with England. [2]In April, Mr. Erskine, the British minister at Washington, notified[b] the American government that, on the ground that the non-intercourse act "had placed the relations of Great Britain with the United States on an equal footing, in all respects, with other belligerent powers," he was authorized to inform the American government that the British "orders in council," so far as they affected the United States, would be withdrawn on the 10th of June, "in the persuasion that the president would issue a proclamation for the renewal of intercourse with Great Britain." [3]The president therefore issued a proclamation[c] authorizing the renewal of commercial intercourse with England after that day. [4]This measure was unanimously approved by both parties in the United States. The federalists declared Mr. Madison worthy of the lasting gratitude of his country—they contrasted his conduct with that of Mr. Jefferson, to the great disparagement of the latter —hailed "his return to the good old principles of federalism" with enthusiastic delight, and asserted that England had always been ready to do us justice, when not demanded by threats of violence.

a. March 4.
1. *Prospect of an adjustment of difficulties.*
b. April 18, 19
2. *Mr. Erskine's notification to the American government.*
3. *President's proclamation.*
c. April 19.
4 *How regarded by both parties.*

30. [5]But if, as the federalists declared, England had previously been willing to compromise on the terms agreed upon by Mr. Erskine, a surprising change now took place in her councils; for the British government rejected the arrangement, on the ground that her minister had exceeded his instructions. Non-intercourse with England was again proclaimed.[d] [6]The instructions of the British government appear to have been, that England was willing to adjust the difficulties between the two nations, if the United States would take off their restrictions upon English commerce, and continue them against France and her allies; and farther, in order effectually to secure the continuance of non-intercourse with the latter, it was to be stipulated that England should "be considered as being at liberty to capture all such American vessels as should be found attempting to trade with the ports of any of these powers."

5. *The Erskine treaty rejected by England*
d. June 19.
6. *Character of the instructions of the British government to their minister.*

31. [7]These terms, if admitted, would have amounted to nothing less than giving legal force to the British orders in council, by incorporating them into a treaty between England and the United States! [8]Such a mockery of justice, and unparalleled effrontery—adding insult to outrage, showed not only that England was determined to constitute herself the arbitrary mistress of the ocean, but that our long submission to her aggressions was regarded by her as evidence of our fear and weakness.

7. *Effect of these terms if admitted.*
8. *Unparalleled effrontery of England.*

32. [9]But, notwithstanding the result of the negotiation with Mr. Erskine, so wedded were the federalists to the cause of Eng-

9. *Conduct of the federalists, on learning the result of the negotiation with Mr. Erskine*

* The following extracts will illustrate the views entertained of the Non-intercourse Act by the Federalists. Mr. Hillhouse, in a speech on the non-intercourse bill before the Senate, Feb. 22, 1809, said: "Sir, the bill before you is *war*. It is to suspend all intercourse—to put an end to all the relations of amity. What is that but war? War of the worst kind—war under the disguise of non-intercourse. No power having national feelings, or regard to national character, will SUBMIT to such COERCION."

"It is a base attempt to bring on a war with Great Britain. It is FRENCH in every feature.' —*Boston Repertory.*

ANALYSIS.

land, or, such the violence of party feelings by which they were influenced, that the conduct of Great Britain was not only uncensured by them as a party, but justified by many of their leading members, while our own government was charged by them with a blind devotion to *French* interests, and with demanding terms from England which "duty to herself" would never allow her to grant. The whole affair with Mr. Erskine was declared to be a political maneuver, designed to gain popularity to Mr. Madison, should the treaty be ratified, and to excite resentment against England should it be rejected.

1. Aggressive policy of England continued.

33. [1]England continued her aggressive policy until after the commencement of the war, although eminent British statesmen* decried the folly of the orders in council, which had effectually cut off from that country a valuable trade with the United States of fifty millions of dollars annually. [2]Such was the ruinous influence of these measures that large numbers of British manufacturers were reduced to poverty, and the distress among the laboring classes was extreme. [3]At length, in the spring of 1812, the public feeling had increased to such an extent against the non-intercourse policy with America, as to break forth in alarming riots in several parts of England, when the ministry were driven to the necessity of submitting to an inquiry in parliament into the operation and effects of the orders in council. [4]The testimony† adduced presented so frightful a picture of distress, produced by the interruption of the American trade, that, on this ground alone, on the 17th of June an address for the repeal of the orders in council was moved in the house of commons by Mr. Brougham, but was withdrawn on a pledge of the ministry that the orders should be repealed, which was done on the 23d of the month, five days after the declaration of war by the United States, but before that event was known in England.

2. Its effect upon British manufactures.

3. Causes that led to an inquiry in parliament on this subject.

4. Character of the testimony adduced—and final repeal of the orders in council.

34. [5]Of the extent of British depredations upon American commerce, we have information of the most reliable character. By an official statement of the secretary of state, presented to congress on the 6th of July, 1812, it appears that British men-of-war had captured 528 American vessels prior to the orders of council of November, 1807, and subsequent thereto 389. [6]The values of the cargoes of these vessels could not be ascertained with accuracy, but it was estimated at the time, by judicious merchants, that the average value of each cargo and vessel could not be less than 30,000 dollars. But, placing the estimate at 25,000 dollars each, and we have the enormous amount of twenty-two millions nine hundred and twenty-five thousand dollars worth of American property plundered by a nation with whom we were at peace. A portion of the property seized prior to Nov. 11th, 1807, might perhaps be restored; but for that taken subsequent to this period there was

5. Extent of British depredations upon American commerce.

6. Estimated amount of property taken.

* Among others, Mr. Brougham, afterwards Lord Brougham. On the 17th of June, 1812, Lord Brougham moved an address for the repeal of the Orders in Council, &c. The following is extracted from Lord Brougham's remarks. "I have been drawn aside from the course of my statement respecting the importance of the commerce which we are sacrificing to those *mere whimsies*, I can call them nothing else, respecting our abstract rights. That commerce is the whole American market, a branch of trade, in comparison with which, whether you regard its extent, its certainty, or its progressive increase, every other sinks into insignificance. It is a market which, in ordinary times, may take off about thirteen millions* worth of our manufactures; and in steadiness and regularity it is unrivalled."

† "The minutes of the examination, as published by order of Parliament, form a ponderous folio volume of nearly 700 pages, exhibiting a frightful picture of the results of the sinister and absurd policy which dictated the orders in council."—*Olive Branch, by M. Carey.*

* Nearly sixty millions of dollars.

not the least chance of redress. [1]Nor were the evils which we suffered from this plundering system limited to the amount of our property actually captured and confiscated. The restrictions placed upon our trade by the hazards of capture, subjected us to losses far greater than those which have been enumerated. From November 11, 1807. till the very day that war was declared, our commerce with Holland, France, and the north of Italy,—countries at war with England, was nearly annihilated.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Other losses to which the British system subjected us.*

35. [2]We now pass to the consideration of another cause of complaint against England, of a character even more aggravating than her commercial depredations. [3]The subject of the impressment of American seamen by British men-of-war claimed the attention of our government soon after the close of the war of the revolution. The following are the principal grounds of complaint, on the part of the United States, as set forth at various times by the ministers of the latter at the court of London:

2. *Another cause of complaint against England.*

3. *Impressment of American seamen.*

36. [4]1st. England claimed the right of seizing her own subjects, voluntarily serving in American vessels, but invariably refused to surrender American citizens voluntarily serving in British vessels. 2d. She claimed the right of seizing her own subjects, voluntarily serving in American vessels, although they may have been married, *and* settled, *and* naturalized in the United States; while she refused to surrender American seamen *involuntarily* serving in British vessels, if said seamen had been *either* settled, *or* married, in the British dominions. 3d. In practice, the officers of British ships of war, acting at discretion, and bound by no rules, took by force, from American vessels, any seamen whom they *suspected* of being British subjects. [5]It would very naturally be supposed that the proof of the allegiance of such seamen should belong to the British side, but, on the contrary, the most undoubted proof of American citizenship was required, to protect an American citizen from impressment.

4. *The claims, and the practice of England, on this subject.*

5. *The proof thrown upon the American side.*

37. [6]It is now admitted that, under this odious system, several thousand American citizens were from time to time impressed,—held in bondage in the British navy, and compelled to fight the battles of England. [7]Large numbers of Danes, Swedes, and foreigners of various nations, were likewise impressed from American vessels, although their language, and other circumstances, clearly demonstrated that they were not British subjects; and, indeed, English officers repeatedly informed the agents of the United States that they would receive no proof of American citizenship, except in the single case of native Americans, nor surrender foreigners, taken from American ships, on any pretence whatever.

6. *Great extent of impressment now admitted.*

7. *Impressment of foreigners from American vessels.*

38. [8]It is true England admitted that impressed seamen should be delivered up, on duly authenticated proof that they were native American citizens; but this, besides most unjustly throwing the burden of proof on the injured party, provided no effectual remedy for the evil. During the interval of obtaining the required testimony, should, happily, the charitable aid of friends, or of the government, be exerted in behalf of the innocent victim of British tyranny, the unfortunate individual was often carried to a foreign station—or the ship had been taken by the enemy, and he was a prisoner of war—or he had fallen in battle—or, when all apologies for retaining him longer failed, he was returned, penniless, with no remuneration for the servitude to which he had been subjected. Hundreds, and even thousands of well authenticated cases of the forcible impressment of American citizens, both by land and by sea, might be given, with details of the cruelties inflicted upon them, by scourging and imprisonment, on their attempts to escape from

8. *Why the principles on which England professed to act in this matter, provided no effectual remedy for the evil.*

ANALYSIS.

1. *Assertions of the federalists on this subject.*

2. *Facts urged by the democratic party.*

3. *Impressments during a period of 18 months, from March, 1803, to August, 1804.*

4. *Number of impressments probably still greater.*

5. *Impressments during another period of 18 months.*

6. *The foregoing,—the democratic statements.*

7. *Causes of the war of 1775, compared with those of the war of 1812.*

bondage, or refusal to fight against their country, or against nations with whom she was at peace. [1]The federalists, however, asserted that the evils of impressment, of which the democratic party complained, had been greatly exaggerated, in order to delude and deceive the public, and that they formed no just cause of war.

39. [2]The following facts, however, connected with this—that England had not abated her practice or pretensions on the subject of impressment, up to the year 1812, were urged by the democratic party in opposition to the allegations of the federalists. [3]During a period of less than eighteen months, from March 1803 to August 1804, twelve hundred and thirty-two original applications were made to the British government for the release of impressed seamen, claimed to be citizens of the United States. Of this number, 437 were released on proof of American citizenship; 388 were refused to be discharged because they had *no documents* proving American citizenship, and *not* because they were proved to be British subjects; many of them declaring that they had lost their certificates of protection, or had been forcibly deprived of them, or had neglected to obtain any; and only 49 were refused to be discharged upon evidence—declared by the seamen to be false, that they were British citizens. Of the remainder, 120 were refused to be discharged because they had received wages, and were thereby considered as having entered the British service; others because they had married in England—or were on board ships on foreign stations—or were prisoners of war; 210 because their documents were not deemed sufficient; and 163 applications remained unanswered. [4]How many unfortunate Americans were impressed during this period of eighteen months, who had no means of conveying to their government applications for redress, can never be known.

40. [5]From official returns it also appears that between the first of October, 1807, and the thirty-first of March, 1809, a period of eighteen months, our government made demands for the restoration of 873 seamen impressed from American ships. Of this number 287 were restored, but only 98 were detained upon evidence of their being British subjects. The remainder were detained upon various pleas, similar to those previously stated.

41. [6]The foregoing comprise the substance of the democratic or government statements, on the subject of impressment, and commercial aggressions,—urged as one justifiable cause of war. If they are facts, (and no satisfactory refutation of them has yet appeared,*) then was England guilty of the grossest outrages upon our national honor and dignity, and far more serious causes of war existed than those which led to the Revolution. [7]In 1775, our fathers took up arms because they would not be *taxed* by England,

* The best defence, yet written, of the course pursued by the federal party, is contained in Dwight's "History of the Hartford Convention." It cannot fail to be observed, however, in that work, that the subject of *impressment* is passed over very cursorily; and that on the subject of commercial aggression, the main object of the author appears to be, to prove that we had received greater injuries from France than from England. But if this were true, what justification, it may be asked, does it afford of the conduct of the latter power? The author of the "History of the Hartford Convention," states, p. 228, that his "review of the policy and measures of the United States government during the administrations of Mr. Jefferson and Mr. Madison, is designed to show *that an ardent and overweening attachment to revolutionary France, and an implacable enmity to Great Britain, were the governing principles of those two distinguished individuals.*" But the democratic party, probably with as much propriety, retorted the charge by asserting "that an ardent and overweening attachment *to England*, and an implacable enmity *to France*, were the governing principles of the federal party." The truth is, each party went to the *extreme* of denunciation against the other, and party spirit, on both sides, was inflamed to the highest degree.

ANALYSIS.

even a penny a pound on tea—in 1812, because they would not submit to be openly plundered of the merchandize of a legitimate commerce, and because they would not suffer *themselves* to be stolen from their country, and condemned to *slavery* in the galleys of Britain!—[1]And yet, when war was declared, as the only means for obtaining a redress of these grievances, behold! there was a "Peace Party" in our midst, who asserted that America had no just cause to complain of England;—there were distinguished American citizens, and even American legislatures, who asserted, that "the war was founded in falsehood," and "declared without necessity."*

1. The "Peace Party" of 1812.

42. [2]During the six months previous to the declaration of war, although congress was engaged during that time in making ample preparations for the expected emergency, yet the federal presses, very generally, throughout the Union, ridiculed the expectation of war as illusory, and doubtless contributed much to impress the British ministry with the belief that America would still continue to submit to the outrages that had so long been perpetrated against her commerce and seamen.

2. Preparations for war, and course pursued by the federal presses.

43. [3]On the first of June, 1812, the President sent a message to congress, recommending a declaration of war against England. The prominent causes of war, as set forth in the message, and in the report of the committee which submitted a declaration of war, were, the impressment of American seamen, and the British orders in council. On the subject of impressment the president stated, that, under the pretext of searching for British subjects, "thousands of American citizens, under the safeguard of public law and their national flag, had been torn from their country—had been dragged on board ships of war of a foreign nation—and exposed, under the severities of their discipline, to be exiled to the most distant and deadly climes—to risk their lives in the battles of their oppressors—and to be the melancholy instruments of taking away those of their own brethren."

3. President's message recommending a declaration of war

44. [4]On the same subject the committee remarked, that, "while the practice is continued, it is impossible for the United States to consider themselves an independent nation." On the subject of the orders in council the committee stated, that, by them, "the British government declared direct and positive war against the United States. The dominion of the ocean was completely usurped—all commerce forbidden—and every flag which did not subserve the policy of the British government, by paying it a tribute and sailing under its sanction, was driven from the ocean, or subjected to capture and condemnation."

4. Declarations of the committee on the subjects of impressment, and the British orders in council.

45. [5]In the house of representatives of the United States the declaration of war was carried by a vote of only 79 to 49; and in the senate by only 19 to 13; showing a very strong opposition to the measure. [6]A motion to include France in the declaration, was made in the house of representatives, but it was negatived by a very large majority. Only ten votes were given in favor of the proposition, and seven of these were from the democratic party. The federalists had long maintained the propriety of declaring

5. Strong opposition to the declaration of war.

6. Motion to include France in the declaration.

* It cannot be denied that many great and good men were opposed to the declaration of war in 1812, but principally on the ground of its *inexpediency*. Thus, John Jay, a prominent federalist, but a most worthy republican, in a letter of July 28th, 1812, says: "In my opinion, the declaration of war was neither necessary, nor expedient, nor seasonable," but he deprecated, as serious evils, "commotions tending to a dissolution of the Union, or to civil war," and asserted that, "As the war had been constitutionally declared, the people were evidently bound to support it in the manner which constitutional laws prescribed."—*Life of John Jay*, vol. i. p. 445.

ANALYSIS.

war against France, but in a full house only three of their number voted for the measure.

1. Responses to the declaration of war.

46. [1]The reasons set forth by the president and congress for declaring war were responded to by the legislatures of most of the states during their sessions in the following winter, and were declared to be fully justificatory of the measures of the administration.

2. The "peace party," and its objects.

[2]At the same time, however, a "Peace Party" was formed, composed wholly of federalists, and embracing a majority of that party throughout the Union. The object of this party was "to expose the war—the administration—the congress which declared it—and all who supported it, to reprobation—and to force the government to make peace."

3. Protest of the federal members of congress.

47. [3]After the declaration of war, the federal party in congress made a solemn protest, in which they denied the war to be "necessary, or required by any moral duty or political expediency."

4. The general assembly of Connecticut.

[4]In August, the general assembly of Connecticut, in pursuance of a suggestion in the message of the governor, united in a declaration that "they believed it to be the deliberate and solemn sense of the people of the state that the war was unnecessary."

5. Legislature of Massachusetts.

[5]The legislature of Massachusetts asserted that "The real cause of the war must be traced to the first systematical abandonment of the policy of Washington and the friends and framers of the constitution; to implacable animosity against those men, and their universal exclusion from all concern in the government of the country; to the influence of worthless foreigners over the press, and the deliberations of the government in all its branches; and to a jealousy of the commercial states, fear of their power, contempt of their pursuits, and ignorance of their true character and importance."

6. Assertions of the senate of Massachusetts.

48. [6]These were serious charges, but the senate of the same state went still farther, by asserting that "The war was founded in falsehood, and declared without necessity," and that "its real object was extent of territory by unjust conquests, and to aid the late tyrant of Europe in his view of aggrandisement."

7. Report of February, 1814.

[7]In February, 1814, both houses of the legislature of Massachusetts united in a report asserting that the "war was waged with the worst possible views, and carried on in the worst possible manner, forming a union of weakness and wickedness, which defies, for a parallel, the annals of the world."

8. Allegations of the British press: of the Prince Regent: and of the lords of the admiralty.

49. [8]While such was the language of a great majority of the federal party, it is not surprising that similar allegations against our government were made in the public papers of London—that the Prince Regent, afterwards George IV. appealed to the world that England had not been the aggressor in the war—that the lords of the admiralty expressed their regret at the "unprovoked aggression of the American government in declaring war after all the causes of its original complaint had been removed;" and that they declared that the real question at issue was, "the maintenance of those maritime *rights*, which are the sure foundation of the naval glory of England." As the war was declared while the British orders in council continued to be enforced, and American seamen to be impressed, these must have been the maritime *rights* to which the lords of the admiralty referred.

9 Character of the opposition made by the "peace party."

50. [9]After war had been declared, the "Peace Party" threw all possible obstructions in the way of its successful prosecution, separate from open rebellion, and yet reproached the administration for imbecility in carrying it on, and for embarrassments which, in great part, had been occasioned by federal opposition. Associations were formed to obstruct the efforts to obtain loans; and not

only the press, but the pulpit also, exerted its influence to bankrupt the government, and thus compel it to submit to the terms of Great Britain.

ANALYSIS.

51. [1]When the governors of Massachusetts and Connecticut were called upon by President Madison for their respective quotas of militia, to be employed in the public defence, they refused to comply with the requisition, on the ground that the constitution of the United States gave the president the power to call forth the militia only for the specified purposes of 'executing the laws of the Union, suppressing insurrections, and repelling invasions,' and that neither of these contingencies had yet arisen. [2]The governor of Connecticut submitted the subject to the council of state, and the governor of Massachusetts to the supreme court of that state, both which bodies decided that the governors of the states are the persons who alone are to decide when the exigencies contemplated by the constitution have arisen. [3]According to this doctrine, totally at variance with the early federal notions in favor of a *strong central power*, the general government would be virtually divested of all control over the militia, and rendered incapable of providing for "the general defence." Fortunately for the stability of the Federal Union, this question has since been definitively settled, by a decision of the supreme court of the United States, that the authority to decide when the militia are to be called out belongs exclusively to the president.

1. Course pursued by the governors of Massachusetts and Connecticut.

2. Decisions of the council of state of Connecticut, and of the supreme court of Massachusetts.

3. Tendency of this exposition of the constitution, and final settlement of the question.

52. [4]Massachusetts and Connecticut also denied that the president, who is declared by the constitution commander-in-chief of the army and navy, and of the militia when in the actual service of the United States, could delegate his authority of governing the militia to other individuals, or detach parts of the militia corps, or that he could employ them in offensive warfare, such as was contemplated in the invasion of Canada. [5]On these subjects different opinions have been advanced, but the weight of authority is in favor of the powers claimed by the president.

4. Farther exposition of the constitution, as given by Massachusetts and Connecticut.

5. Different opinions on these subjects.

53. [6]The militia of Massachusetts and Connecticut were, indeed, ordered out, by the governors of those states, for the defence of the sea-coast, when those states were actually invaded; and for their services in the defence of the United States ships of war, blockaded at New London in the year 1813, were paid by the general government. [7]After the close of the war, Massachusetts presented the claim of that state for services rendered by her militia in her own defence during the war, but her claim was disallowed by congress.

6. Militia of Massachusetts and Connecticut; when ordered out.

7. Claim presented by Massachusetts after the war.

54. [8]A brief allusion has been made, in another part of this work, to the Hartford Convention, and the subject is again referred to here, in order to notice an oft-repeated charge of "hostility to the *commercial section* of the Union," made by the opposers of the war. [9]In the report of both houses of the Massachusetts legislature in 1814, to which we have before alluded, it is asserted that there existed "an open and undisguised jealousy of the wealth and power of the *commercial states*, operating in continual efforts to embarrass and destroy their commerce," and that the policy pursued by the general government had its foundation in a "deliberate intention" to effect that object. [10]The Hartford Convention, in its address published in January, 1815, also asserts that the causes of the public calamities might be traced to "implacable combinations of individuals or states to monopolize power and office, and to trample, without remorse, upon the rights and interests of the *commercial section* of the Union," and "lastly and principally to a visionary and superficial theory in regard to commerce, accom-

8. Hartford convention.

9. Assertions of the Massachusetts legislature on the subject of commercial jealousies.

10. Assertions of the Hartford convention on this subject.

ANALYSIS.

panied by a *real hatred*, but a feigned regard to its interests, and a ruinous perseverance in efforts to render it an instrument of *coercion* and *war*."

1. *The answer to these charges.*

2. *Effects of commercial restrictions.*

55. [1]To these charges the democratic party responded, by declaring them totally destitute of foundation, in proof of which they furnished statistical comparisons between the commerce of the Middle and the Southern, and the New England states. [2]From these statistics, gathered from official reports, it appeared that commercial restrictions would be likely to inflict a more serious injury, in proportion to population, upon the southern than upon the northeastern states.

3. *Statistical statements of exports of foreign and domestic products and manufactures.*

56. [3]Thus, taking first the year 1800, as convenient for giving the population, we find that the exports of foreign and domestic products and manufactures from Maryland, with a population of about 341,000, *exceeded*, by nearly two per cent., the similar exports from Massachusetts, whose population was about 423,000, and that Maryland, with a population not one quarter more than Connecticut, exported eight times as much as the latter state. South Carolina also, in the year 1800, exported more than Massachusetts, in proportion to her population; and South Carolina and Virginia together, without regard to population, exported, during the twelve years prior to 1803, eight per cent. more than *all* the New England states. During the same period of twelve years, the five southern states of Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia, exported nearly twice as much, of foreign and domestic productions, as the five New England States; and Pennsylvania alone exported nearly the same amount as the latter five. During the ten years from 1803 to 1813, the value of the *domestic* exports from Maryland alone was one half the value of the similar exports from all the New England states. Virginia alone exported *more* than half as much as all the latter, while the five southern states exported nearly twice the amount.

4. *Comparative amount of exports from the three different sections of the Union.*

5. *Exports from New England.*

57. [4]This subject of the commercial interests of the three different sections of the Union,—the Eastern,* the Middle,† and the Southern,‡—at the time of the second war with England, may perhaps be best understood by a general statement of the total amount of the exports of foreign and domestic productions, from the year 1791 to 1813 inclusive. The following, in round numbers, are the results: Eastern section 299 millions of dollars; Middle section 534 millions: Southern section 509 millions. [5]In connection with this statement it should be remarked, that a considerable amount of the exports from New England were the products of southern industry, exported coastwise to the Eastern states, and not enumerated in the tables to which we have referred.

6. *This subject, how affected, if New England had owned the southern shipping.*

58. [6]But admitting, as all will be obliged to do, from these comparative values of exports, that the New England states were far from being the *only* commercial states in the Union, perhaps it may be contended that New England owned the shipping, and did the carrying trade for the Middle and the Southern states. But even if this were true, and had the war entirely arrested the commerce of the country, the Middle and the Southern states would still have been the greatest sufferers, for the value of the products which they annually exported in times of peace, greatly exceeded the

* Massachusetts, New Hampshire, Vermont, Rhode Island, Connecticut.
† New Jersey, Delaware, New York, Pennsylvania.
‡ Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, New Orleans, District of Columbia.

value of the shipping employed in its conveyance; and if *all* those ships had belonged to New England, even then the balance would have been against her.

ANALYSIS.

1. The comparative tonnage of different cities, and sections of the Union.

59. [1]But, in amount of tonnage, the ports of the Middle and the Southern states were not greatly inferior to those of New England. In 1811 the tonnage of Baltimore alone was 103,000 tons; while that of the four minor New England states,—Vermont, New Hampshire, Connecticut, and Rhode Island, was only 108,000. The tonnage of Boston, in 1810, was 149,121, while that of Philadelphia was 125,258, and that of New York 268,548. In 1810 the aggregate tonnage of Norfolk and Charleston was 100,531, while that of the four principal sea-ports of New England, excepting Boston, viz:—Portland, Portsmouth, Newburyport, and Salem, was only 141,981. These statements, it is believed, are a sufficient answer to the federal arguments based upon the superiority of the shipping and commerce of New England.

2. Decline of federalism.

60. [2]After the close of the war with England, the federal party lost its importance, and federalism soon ceased to exist as a distinct party organization. [3]It is, however, often asserted that the *principles* of federalism still remain, in some one or more of the party organizations of the present day, and that they are found wherever constituted authority aims at an additional increase of power, beyond what the most strict construction of our national constitution would authorize. [4]But when these assertions are made, it becomes necessary to ascertain to what era of federalism they refer, and to distinguish between the "Washingtonian Federalism" of 1789, and the "Peace Party" federalism of 1812.

3. What is said of the continued existence of its principles.

4. Different eras of federalism

5. Principles of the federalists in 1789, and during their continuance in power.

61. [5]At the time of the formation of the present constitution, the federalists were in favor of a strong central government,—stronger than that ultimately adopted, while the democrats, or anti-federalists, believed that the present plan gave too much power to the general government, and that the states had surrendered too many of the attributes of sovereignty. While the federalists were in power, during the administrations of Washington and Adams, they were ardent supporters of the constituted authorities, friends of law and order, and zealous defenders of their country's honor. The "alien" and the "sedition" law, which received the most violent censure from the opposing party, were strong federal measures, designed to give additional power and security to the government; and had such laws existed in 1812, and been rigorously enforced, there can be little doubt that numbers of the federal party would have paid the price of their political folly by the penalties of treason. [6]Under Washington and Adams the federalists were ever ready to rally in support of the laws, while the democrats, on the contrary, were then the disorganizers, so far as any existed, and in the western parts of Pennsylvania in particular, during the "whiskey insurrection" of 1794, they organized an armed resistance to the measures of law and government.

6. The democrats, the disorganizers at this time.

7. Great change in the principles of the federalists, after they lost the power to control the government.

62. [7]When the federalists lost the power to control the government, their political principles seemed to undergo a surprising change. Then every increase of executive power was denounced as an "encroachment upon the liberties of the people." The embargo, and the laws to enforce it, were declared to be "a direct invasion of the principles of civil liberty," and an open violation of the constitution;—although similar laws, but far more exceptionable, had received their ardent support only a few years previous.

8. Unjust charge of an attachment to monarchical principles, urged against the federalists.

63. [8]The circumstance that, in the great European contest that originated in the French revolution, the sympathies of the federal-

ANALYSIS.

ists were on the side of England, has been often very unjustly adduced as evidence of their attachment to monarchical principles. With the same propriety, however, might the partiality of the democratic party for French interests, be charged upon them as proof of their attachment to royalty; for France was governed, subsequent to 1804, by a monarch who entertained principles as arbitrary as those which prevailed in the councils of England.

1. Undoubted permanence of their republican principles.

[1]While the federalists of 1812 may, as a party, with justice be charged with encouraging treason to the government, there is no evidence of a desertion, on their part, of republican principles; and had even a separation of the states occurred, which was the design, doubtless, of but very few of the ultraists of the federal party, there is no doubt that New England would still have adhered to that republican form of government which, in 1787 and '88, she so diligently labored to establish. [2]It was the conduct of the federalists in opposing the war of 1812, that has thrown upon federalism the odium which now attaches to it, and which is too often extended to the founders of the party, and its early principles.

2. The odium that now attaches to federalism.

3. Our indebtedness to the great leaders of the federal party.

64. [3]Washington, Adams, and Hamilton, were federalists, and to them we are greatly indebted for our present excellent form of government, and for its energetic administration during the period of its infancy and weakness, when its success was regarded with exceeding doubt and anxiety. [4]When, therefore, it is asserted that Washington, Adams, and Hamilton, were federalists, we should in justice remember that the "Washingtonian" federalism of 1789 was as different from the "Peace Party" federalism of 1812, as patriotic integrity, law, and order, are different from anarchy, treason, and disunion. And to confound the federalism of the former period with that of the latter, were as unjust as to impute the treasonable principles of the whiskey insurrection of 1794, to the democracy which governed the conduct of Madison and Jefferson.

4. Injustice of confounding the principles of the two eras of federalism.

5. Political questions that have arisen since the close of the war of 1812.

65 [5]The various political questions which have agitated the country since the close of the war of 1812, are too intimately connected with the party politics of the present day, to render it profitable to enter upon their discussion in a work of this character:—nor, indeed, when time and distance shall have mellowed and blended the various hues, and softened the asperities which party excitement has given them, is it believed that they will be found to occupy a very prominent place in the pages of the future historian. [6]With the exception of the war with Mexico, they are mostly questions of internal policy, about which political economists can entertain an honest difference of opinion, without indulging in personal animosities, or exciting factious clamors, to the disturbance of public tranquillity. [7]By keeping the waters of political strife in ceaseless agitation, they excite an ever-constant and jealous guardianship of the vessel of state, far more conducive to its safety than a calm which should allow the sailors to become remiss in their duty, and the pilot to slumber at the helm.

6. Character of most of these questions.

7. Effects of their ceaseless agitation.

8. Importance of the Mexican war.

[8]The war with Mexico, whatever other causes may have contributed to inflame the animosities already existing between the belligerent nations, acquires additional importance in the eyes of the American people from its having derived its immediate origin from the circumstances of the long-mooted and controversial project of "Texas annexation." [9]This war, also, by presenting the United States in the new aspect of conquerors on foreign ground, in seeming opposition to their long-established peace policy—by its great military triumphs on the part of an unwarlike people—

9. Circumstances that mark this war as an important era in our history.

ANALYSIS.

by the unwonted displays of martial enthusiasm which it called forth, and by its important results, in extensive territorial acquisitions, with which are connected new and exciting questions of domestic policy, that seem to threaten the very existence of our Union—all tend to mark the present as an important era in our history; whether for weal or for woe, time only can determine. In connection with a brief history of the events of this war, we purpose, then, to review, in the spirit of impartial candor, the circumstances of its origin, and of its results and tendencies, so far as time has developed them.

1. Predictions respecting the colonization of Texas.

[1]When, in 1825, Mexico, by her system of empresario grants, opened the free colonization of Texas to the Anglo-Americans, sagacious minds perceived, in the known activity and enterprise of the latter people, the rapid growth of Texas in population and resources, and predicted that the time was not far distant when she would throw off her dependence upon a nation alien to her in language, laws, and religion; and either assume the attributes of sovereignty, or seek to return to the bosom of that confederacy from which most of her population had been drawn. The results have fully verified these predictions.

2. Arbitrary conduct of Mexico—resistance of Texas—and Texan independence.

[2]Mexico, soon becoming alarmed at the rapid strides of the infant colony to power, and jealous of the desire manifested by the United States to extend her southern limits to the Rio Grande by the purchase of Texas,* sought to overawe the Texan people by military domination, and to break their spirits and cripple their energies by the most odious commercial restrictions, and by the virtual exclusion of additional colonists coming from the United States.† The overthrow of the Federal constitution of 1824, and the acquiescence of all the Mexican States in the military usurpation of Santa Anna, completed the list of grievances of which Texas complained, and induced her to appeal to the right of revolution—"the last right to which oppressed nations resort." In the struggle which followed, victory crowned the efforts of the Texans; they established their independence *de facto*, and by the United States, France, and England, were acknowledged as a sovereign power, capable of levying war, forming treaties, and doing all other acts which independent nations may of right do.

3. Refusal of Mexico to acknowledge the independence of Texas.

[3]The circumstance that Mexico refused to *acknowledge* the known *fact* of Texan independence, could not prejudice, or in any way affect, the rights of other nations treating with the revolted province; for both the laws of nations and the principles of natural equity, require that any people who are independent in point of fact, with a seeming probability in favor of their remaining so, shall be treated as such by other powers, who cannot be expected to decide upon the merits of the controversy between the belligerent parties.

4. Admission of Texas into the American confederacy.

[4]After Texas had maintained her independence during nine years subsequent to the battle of San Jacinto, the United States formed a treaty with her, by which the former Mexican province, but then independent Republic of Texas, was admitted as a State into the American confederacy, with the assumed obligation on the part of the latter, to defend the new acquisition as an integral portion of the American Union.

5. Right of Texas to dispose of herself by treaty.

[5]If Texas was virtually independent, that independence brought with it all the rights and powers of sovereignty; and she was as capable of disposing of herself by treaty, as the most independent nation is of transferring to another power any portion of its territory.

6. Right of the United States to enter into

[6]That the United States, in their sovereign capacity, had an undoubted right to enter

* Book III. p. 132. † Ibid p. 133.

ANALYSIS.

the treaty of annexation.

into the treaty of annexation, notwithstanding the remonstrances of Mexico; and that, as between the United States and Mexico, all this furnished no just ground of complaint on the part of the latter, we think no one acquainted with the fundamental maxims of international law will attempt to deny.*

1. *Complaints and threats of Mexico, and duty of the American government.*

[1]Yet Mexico did make repeated complaints on this subject. Previous to the treaty of annexation, Mexico, by her minister at the seat of the American government, had protested against the measure in contemplation as an aggression upon a friendly power, and had distinctly asserted that she was resolved to declare war as soon as she received intimation of the completion of the project.† The American government, therefore, had every reason to infer, from official information, that war would result from the act of annexation, although many believed that Mexico would not be so foolhardy as to carry her threats into execution. It was the duty of the government, then, to make preparations for war, in proportion to the apprehensions of danger it entertained from any invading force that Mexico might send into the field.

2. *The real cause of the war.*

[2]The advance of General Taylor from Corpus Christi, across the country south of the Nueces, which has since acquired the appellation of the "disputed territory," has often been assigned, among opposing parties of the Americans themselves, as the *cause of the war.* It was never so declared, however, by the Mexican people or government, who have uniformly charged the Americans with "appropriating to themselves an integral part of the Mexican territories;" that is, the province of Texas, as the sole ground on which Mexico had "resolved to declare war," and as the primary cause of the hostilities that followed.‡

3. *Claims to disputed territory.*

[3]Mexico claimed to have no better right to the country south of the Nueces, than to that immediately west of the Sabine, and had she charged, as the cause of the war, the invasion of the so-called "disputed territory," she would, virtually, have relinquished her claim to all the rest of Texas. Mexico maintained that, as between the United States and herself, the whole of Texas was disputed territory, and she professed to engage in the war for the recovery of the whole, and not for a part of the same—to repel the invasion of *Texas*, and not the invasion of the "disputed territory" on the Rio Grande merely. Justice to the position which Mexico herself assumed, and in which she chose to be regarded by other nations, demands the statement that she considered the primary act of annexation as sufficient cause of war on her part, and that the invasion of *her* province of Texas, by the establishment of General Taylor at Corpus Christi, was an additional aggression.

4. *Third cause of complaint.*

[4]In our political disputes among ourselves, *we* have supplied Mexico with a *third* cause of complaint, in the asser-

---

* All that is required for a state or nation to be "entirely free and sovereign," is that "it must govern itself, and acknowledge no legislative superior but God." "If it be totally independent, it is sovereign."—*Marten's Law of Nations*, pp. 23–4.

"A foreign nation does not appear to violate its perfect obligations, nor to deviate from the principles of neutrality, if it treats as an independent nation people who have declared, and still maintain themselves independent."—*Marten's*, p. 79. History abounds with examples in which revolted provinces have been acknowledged and treated as sovereign states by other nations, long before they were recognized as such by the States from which they revolted. *Mr. Webster*, in his speech at Springfield, Massachusetts, September, 1847, said, as reported in the public journals:—"From 1835, when occurred the battle of San Jacinto, to 1842, Mexico had no authority over Texas, no just claim upon her territory. In 1841–2–3, Texas was an independent government; so nominally, so practically, so recognized by our own, and other governments. Mexico had no ground of complaint in the annexation of Texas."

† "The Mexican government is resolved to declare war as soon as it receives intimation of such an act."—Almonte to Mr. Upshur, Nov. 3d, 1843. See also the previous communication of Mr. Bocanegra, the Mexican Minister of Foreign Relations, to our Minister in Mexico, Aug. 23, 1843.

‡ Almonte's letter, Nov. 3d, 1843.

ANALYSIS.

tion that the advance of General Taylor beyond Corpus Christi was into a territory not only belonging to Mexico by right, but to which she had the additional claim of actual possession. But Mexico never urged the invasion of the so-called disputed territory as a distinct cause of complaint, and *we*, in attributing it to her, have found for her a cause of offence which she had failed to discover for herself. In all her complaints against us, Mexico never made any distinction between the Nueces and the Rio Grande. [1]But, admitting that Mexico might, with propriety, have made this latter complaint, her original charges against the American government are then three in number;—annexation; the march of the American army into territory claimed as belonging to Mexico by right; and the invasion of territory in her actual possession. These charges we shall proceed to consider.

1. The three charges against the United States

[2]Viewing the war strictly upon national grounds, and testing its legality, on our part, by acknowledged principles of national law, we think it cannot fail to be admitted that our government stands fully justified in the eyes of the world on the first two of the foregoing charges. We had at least the legal national right to annex Texas, and to defend the acquisition by force of arms. [3]Whether that defence required, or justified, the march of General Taylor from Corpus Christi to the Rio Grande, seems to be the only remaining question at issue, connected with the causes of the war; for since the American government made no declaration of war, but charged the commencement of it upon Mexico, it is altogether irrelevant to the question in dispute whether the United States might or might not have been justified in declaring war on any other grounds than those connected with the Texan controversy.

2. Legal justifiability of the American government.

3. The march to the Rio Grande.

[4]In justification of the march of General Taylor from Corpus Christi to the Rio Grande, across the so-called "disputed territory," it has been alleged, in the first place, that the Rio Grande was the true southwestern boundary of Texas. The truth of this allegation is attempted to be sustained by the following positions:

4. How justified.

1st. [5]That the successful resistance of the Texans to Santa Anna's usurpation, as evidenced by the capitulation of General Cos, Dec. 11th, 1835, and the stipulation of the latter to remove "into the interior of the Republic," and "beyond the Rio Grande," showed that the military government of Santa Anna—a manifest usurpation—never obtained a foothold east of the Rio Grande, below New Mexico.

5. First position in support of this allegation.

2d. [6]That the boundary of the Rio Grande, as set forth in the Texan declaration of independence, was sustained by the success of the Revolution, and afterwards confirmed by the treaty with Santa Anna, which was *ratified* and signed by Filisola, then in command of the Northern Mexican army, and that Filisola was authorized by letter from the Mexican President *ad interim* to do whatever should be necessary to procure the release of Santa Anna, and to save his troops and munitions of war. It is claimed that the obligations and benefits of this treaty were mutual; Texas acquiring the independence of all the territory east of the Rio Grande, and Mexico saving her army, and the life of her President. On the withdrawal of the Mexican army in pursuance of this treaty, the Mexican garrison of Laredo was removed to the west side of the river, and Mexican garrisons were never afterwards kept up on the "Texan" side:—Texas also laid out the country between the Nueces and the Rio Grande into counties.

6. Second position in proof that the Rio Grande was the southwestern boundary of Texas.

3d. [7]That in all the invasions of Texas, two of which occurred in the year 1842, the Mexican troops were driven beyond the Rio Grande.

7. Third position.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Fourth position, by which Mexico admits the possessory claims of Texas as far as the Rio Grande.*

4th. [1]That Mexico herself, although claiming the right of *re-entry* to the whole of Texas, virtually acknowledged the *possessory* claim of the latter as far as the Rio Grande. This acknowledgment, subsequent to the treaty with Santa Anna, is based, among other acts, on the proclamation of the Mexican General Woll, of June 20th, 1844, by order of the Mexican government, of which the third section reads as follows:—"Every individual who may be found at the distance of *one league* from the left bank of the Rio Bravo (Rio Grande) will be regarded as a favorer and accomplice of *the usurpers of that part of the national territory*:" thus admitting that Texas had *usurped*, that is, that she *held possession* of the territory on the left bank of the Rio Grande. Another constructive acknowledgment of the Texan claim is found in Santa Anna's report of the battle of Buena Vista, Feb. 27th, 1847, in which he states that he informed the American General that the Mexicans "could say nothing of peace while the Americans were *on this side of the Bravo*," from which the inference is drawn that the Americans had some claim to the left bank of that stream. In reply to the assertion that General Taylor, on his advance from Corpus Christi, found a Mexican Custom House at Point Isabel, it is stated that it was not a regular Custom House—that the collector resided at Matamoras, where the duties were generally paid, although he occasionally sent a deputy to Point Isabel.

2. *The answer to these positions and arguments.*

[2]These positions are met, in general terms, by the asssertion, that the declaration of Texas that the Rio Grande should be her boundary, did not make it so,—that she aequired no right to the country bordering on that river but that obtained by successful revolution and continued possession,—that the entire valley of Santa Fé, on the east side of the river, which Texas *also* claimed, was never in her possession,—that the country south of that valley, between the Nueces and the Rio Grande, was in great part uninhabited—had been subject to frequent inroads of both parties—Mexicans and Texans, but that, at the commencement of the war, that portion bordering on the Rio Grande was in the actual possession of the Mexicans, whose laws were established over the *Mexican town* of Laredo, and who collected duties at Point Isabel, which circumstances constituted it, virtually, Mexican territory, and that the invasion thereof was equivalent to a declaration of war on the part of the American government.* In reply to the statement, that Texas had laid out the country between the Nueces and the Rio Grande into counties, it is asserted that these were "counties on paper" only. To the allegation that Santa Anna guaranteed, by treaty, the claim of Texas as far as the Rio Grande, it is replied, that the concessions of Santa Anna while in duress—a prisoner of war—were not binding either on himself or on Mexico, —that they were not ratified by the *treaty-making power*, and that they were distinctly repudiated by the Mexican government under the presidency of Bustamente, Santa Anna's successor. To the

* "Corpus Christi is the most western point now occupied by Texas."—Mr. Donaldson (our Chargé to Texas) to General Taylor, June 28, 1845. The letter of Mr. Donaldson to Mr. Buchanan, of July 11th, 1845, admits that the Mexicans were then in possession of "Laredo, and other lower points." Secretary Marcy, in a letter to General Taylor, July 8, 1845, says, "This department is informed that Mexico has some military establishments on the east side of the Rio Grande."

The actual occupancy, by the Mexicans, of several places on the eastern bank of the Rio Grande, is a fact beyond dispute; and it is also as clear that the Texans were in possession of places on the west bank of the Nueces; and that none but armed parties of either people passed over the intermediate space between the two rivers. If *occupancy*, therefore, were to have determined the boundary line between the two people, it is easy to see that the line would have been neither the Nueces nor the Rio Grande, but the highlands of the barren, unoccupied tract between them.

ANALYSIS.

allegation that, in all the invasions of Texas, the Mexican troops were driven beyond the Rio Grande, it is replied that this is not applicable to the valley of Santa Fé, east of the Rio Grande; and that, as to the country between the Nueces and the Rio Grande, although in two cases the Mexican forces were driven out of it, yet that the Texans never *held* possession of the settlements on the eastern banks of that stream thirty days in all.

1. Farther justification of the march to the Rio Grande.

[1]But, as a farther, and perhaps more satisfactory, justification of the advance of General Taylor to the Rio Grande, it is alleged that, under the circumstances of the threats of Mexico to declare war against us in the event of the success of the annexation project,—the hostile spirit manifested by her population,—and her actual assembling of troops on her northern frontiers with the professed object of re-conquering the whole of Texas, we should have been justified in entering upon territory clearly belonging to Mexico, to thwart the designs of our avowed enemy.* The circumstances on which this attempted justification rests are, so far as we can gather them, as follows:—

2. The Mexican "army of invasion."

[2]Immediately after the annexation of Texas, Mexico, in accordance with her threats of war, sent considerable bodies of troops to the vicinity of the Rio Grande, constituting an army which was spoken of by the Mexican press, both as the "army of the North" and as the "army of invasion," and which was openly declared by its commander, Paredes, who was then virtually at the head of the government, to be designed for the re-conquest of Texas.

3. Overthrow of Herrera's administration.

[3]When Herrera was elected President, in August, 1845, and showed a disposition to treat with the United States, his administration was forcibly overthrown by Paredes on the sole ground that it was believed to be opposed to the war for which Paredes had made preparations. The government of Paredes owed its existence to the determination to re-conquer Texas. It had no other basis of support.

4. Refusal of Mexico to negotiate, under Herrera's administration.

[4]Moreover, Mexico, under the administration of Herrera, after acceding to the proposition to receive an envoy "intrusted with full powers to adjust all the questions in dispute between the two governments," subsequently refused to negotiate, evidently from the fear of popular excitement against the peace party, but on the pretence that the United States had sent a general and ordinary minister, when she should have appointed an envoy to adjust the specific differences in dispute between the two countries. A full, distinct, and final refusal to negotiate on a subject which Mexico had declared to be sufficient cause of war, and with reference to which she had officially asserted she would declare war, would have been deemed tantamount to a declaration of war on her part; and Mexico is saved from assuming this position, only to the extent to which her grounds of objection to the reception of our minister were valid.†

---

* "If a sovereign sees himself menaced with an attack, he may take up arms to ward off the blow, and may even commence the exercise of those violences that his enemy is preparing to exercise against him, without being chargeable with having begun an offensive war." —*Marten's Law of Nations*, p. 273.

"The justificative reasons of a war, show that an injury has been received, or so far *threatened* as to authorize a prevention of it by arms."—*Vattel's Law of Nations*, p. 369.

† We sent Mexico a *Plenipotentiary*, a minister intrusted with *full powers* to settle "all the questions in dispute" between the two countries. Mexico maintained that we should have sent her a *commissioner* with powers *limited* to a settlement of the Texan dispute only:—that is, our minister had *too much power*. We wished a settlement of all the matters in dispute between the two countries; for there were matters originating prior to the Texan controversy, which we had formerly declared to be sufficient cause of war against Mexico. Mexico, therefore, was willing to treat for a settlement of her grievances against us, but not for a settlement of our grievances against her.

At the time of the mission of Mr. Slidell, actual war did not exist between Mexico and the United States, and Mexico had no right to demand a commissioner with instructions limited to one portion of the disputes between us. Moreover, modern history is filled with numer-

ANALYSIS.

1. *Further explanation of the position of Mexico.*

[1]After Paredes had usurped the government, the Mexican minister of foreign affairs, in a note to our government, still more distinctly explained the position of Mexico, by declaring that, as a consequence of the previous declaration of Mexico that she would regard the act of annexation as a *casus belli* ("cause of war"), "negotiation was by its very nature at an end, and war was the only recourse of the Mexican government.*

2. *Hostilities authorized by Mexico.*

[2]A few days later,† the Mexican government authorized the general in command on the Texan frontier to carry on hostilities against us "by every means which war permits;" and on the 18th of April, 1846, still before the advance of General Taylor from Corpus Christi was known at the Mexican capital, the Mexican President, Paredes, in a letter to the commander of the Northern army, makes known, in the following language, the *previous* designs and orders of the government. "At the present date," he writes, "I suppose you at the head of that valiant army, either fighting already, or preparing for the operations of a campaign." He further writes, "It is indispensable that hostilities be commenced, *yourself taking the initiative against the enemy.*"‡

3. *Summary of the circumstances that justified the American government.*

[3]The designs of Mexico, as thus developed, were "*war on account of annexation;*" and she never made any concealment of the matter. The prospective declaration of Mexico that she would declare war—her hostile preparations, avowedly for the purpose of invasion—her vacillating conduct, in first consenting to receive an envoy "intrusted with full powers," &c., and then rejecting him, evidently from the fear of a domestic revolution, thus terminating all diplomatic relations between the two countries—together with the subsequent overthrow of the "peace party" administration—the elevation to power of Paredes, the "war President," on the basis of his avowed hostility to the United States—and the positive orders (although then unknown to us) to the Northern army to commence hostilities—were circumstances more than sufficient to justify our government in taking any precautionary measures not necessarily involving actual hostilities.

4. *Precautionary measure of the march to the Rio Grande.*

[4]The march to the Rio Grande, across a territory to which Mexico had perhaps as good a right as any we could advance, but to which we had certainly *some* claims, sufficient at least to make it a matter *clearly in dispute* between the two nations, was a precautionary measure, legally justifiable, in our opinion, by the hostile position of Mexico. Hence

---

ous examples, in which, during actual war, treaties of peace are negotiated by "ministers plenipotentiary" intrusted with full powers to settle all matters in dispute. But further, on this point of etiquette, Mexico was clearly in the wrong, as subsequently acknowledged by Herrera himself, who was at the head of the government that rejected our minister. The Ex-President, in a letter of August 25, 1848, to Santa Anna, says:—"For no other act than showing that there *would be no obstacle* to his (Mr. Slidell's) presenting himself, and having his propositions heard, my administration was calumniated in the most atrocious manner:—for this act alone the revolution, which displaced me from command, was set on foot." On the admission of Mexico herself, therefore, our minister was rejected on a *mere pretence.* Mr. Webster, in his speech at Philapelphia, Dec. 2d, 1846, says: "I repeat, that Mexico is wholly unjustifiable in refusing to receive a minister from the United States."

* Note of the Mexican Minister, March 12th, 1846. † April 4th.

‡ Although the order to General Taylor, to march to the Rio Grande, was given before these *positive orders and declarations* of the Mexican government were known to us, yet the latter show that the inferences of warlike designs against us, which our government had drawn from other sources, were just. We had *very strong grounds* for supposing that Mexico intended to attack us;—we acted on the strength of those suspicions; and the result shows that our suspicions were correct, and thereby affords *legal* justification of the act based upon them. The hostile designs of Mexico against us, previous to the breaking out of the war, have since been abundantly confirmed. The Mexican President, Pena y Pena, in his message read at the opening of the session of 1838, says:—"We have occasion this day to lament that the *peace policy did not at that time* (1835) *prevail.*" It was the *war* policy that prevailed—that induced Mexico to consider us as an enemy—and to order her general to take the "*initiative*" against us.

arose the war, which neither of the belligerents seemed desirous to avoid. ANALYSIS.

[1]We have thus far been considering the origin of the war on national grounds, and as affecting the matter of legal right between the government of Mexico and the government of the United States; and, viewing all the circumstances of the case, we see no reason to reproach our country with bad faith, or with a disregard of the principles of international law; and we believe that impartial history, in reviewing these transactions, will still preserve our national honor untarnished. [2]But whether the conduct of the American *people*, as affecting this war, has or has not been, under all the circumstances, from the settlement of Texas down to the present time, judicious and prudent, and justifiable—what motives aside from the vindication of our national honor, urged forward the American government and people to the war—and whether war might or might not have been avoided by a proper display of moderation on the part of the American Executive, are questions distinct from those we have been considering—presenting the case in its moral aspect, and involving topics of controversy that have long agitated the country, but which our limits will scarcely allow us more than to allude to as existing *facts*, without expressing our individual opinions of them in detail.

1. Result of the legal view of the case.

2. The war considered in its moral aspect.

[3]It has been charged against the Anglo-American settlers of Texas, that they emigrated to that country with the fraudulent design of eventually wresting it from Mexico, and annexing it to the American Union: it was charged also that the American government countenanced the scheme, and essentially aided the Texan revolution by permitting armed bands from the States to join the Texan armies; and, finally, that the Texan Revolution was a war undertaken for the perpetuation of domestic slavery, which had been prohibited in all the territory of the Mexican Republic.

3. Charges against the Texans—the American government—and the Texan Revolution.

[4]That many of the Anglo-American settlers of Texas anticipated the time when their adopted State should form a part of the American confederacy, may be admitted without countenancing any charge of fraud or bad faith on their part towards Mexico; and, certainly, the inducements to emigration were sufficiently strong without the faint hope which the prospect of ultimate "annexation" might have afforded. Besides, no general unity of action or feeling on this subject, on the part of the settlers, is visible up to the time when the continued oppressions of the Mexican government forced on one of the most justifiable revolutions of modern times. [5]Wherein this revolution had any connection with the subject of slavery, history fails to show; for slavery, though nominally prohibited in Texas, was virtually tolerated there by the Mexican government, which attempted no direct interference with the matter. [6]There are no facts to prove that the American *government*, as such, countenanced the revolution, although it is admitted, with philanthropic pride, that thousands of American citizens warmly sympathized with the "rebels," and, as individuals, gave them much aid and comfort. They aided Texas as they had before aided Mexico in her just revolution.* The *government* sent

4. Ultimate views of the Texans.

5. The subject of slavery.

6. The American government, and American citizens.

* "When a people from good reasons take up arms against an oppressor, justice and generosity require that brave men should be assisted in the defence of their liberties. When, therefore, a civil war is kindled in a state, foreign powers may assist that party which appears to them to have justice on its side."—*Vattel's Law of Nations*, p. 218.

"Any foreign prince has a right to lend assistance to the party whom he believes to have justice on his side," &c., "provided, however, that he has not promised to observe a strict neutrality."—*Marten's Law of Nations*, p. 80.

The American government has adopted a *safer* principle than that laid down by the writers quoted above; and if it should sometimes *wink at* individual assistance, in vindica-

ANALYSIS.

an armed force to the Texan frontier to preserve neutrality, although Mexico had already violated the rules of international law, by endeavoring to excite our own Indians to hostilities against her rebellious province.

1. The American people, and the project of annexation.

[1]From the time of the establishment of Texan independence, by the battle of San Jacinto, in 1836, down to March, 1845, the project of "annexation" had been agitated in the United States, causing considerable political excitement, and awakening sectional feelings and jealousies, which subsequent events have tended to imbitter rather than to allay. The project of annexation, although numbering indiscriminately among its adherents and opposers many members from both the great political parties of the country, was very generally favored by the so-called democratic party, and as generally opposed by the whigs. By its opposers at the North it was stigmatized as a "Southern measure," favorable to Southern interests only, giving an alarming increase to the *slave power*, and a firmer hold to the "peculiar domestic institutions" of the South. The spirit of territorial acquisition, pointing to foreign conquests, was reproved, as dangerous to our Union, and a war with Mexico predicted as a certain consequence of annexation. The project was defended on the national grounds that the acquisition of so large and fertile a country would greatly increase our national wealth and resources, give additional security to our commerce in the Gulf of Mexico, and remove the apprehension that Texas might, at some future day, throw herself into the arms of some foreign power, perhaps our enemy.

2. Annexation as a Southern measure.

[2]The measure did certainly favor Southern interests and Southern power; but that the South encouraged it solely on these considerations, would be too sweeping a declaration. Conceding that the South was influenced *mainly* by sectional interests, yet motives of national aggrandizement exerted a powerful influence in the controversy; and when, moreover, one of the great political parties of the country *adopted* the project, the strength of party ties alone brought to it a vast additional array of power. It is true that antagonistic party ties also gave some Southern aid to the opposition, but probably not sufficient to counterbalance the considerations of sectional interests. On the whole, when the project of annexation was consummated, it probably had a large majority of the American people in its favor.

3. Sole cause of the war with Mexico —Its legal justifiability —Moral view of the march to the Rio Grande— Aggressory measures of the American government.

[3]As had been predicted by the opponents of the measure, a war with Mexico followed, growing wholly out of the subject of annexation. We have stated the reasons of our opinion that, as between the government of Mexico and the government of the United States, the war was justifiable on the part of the latter, when judged by acknowledged principles of national law. Still the order of the Executive which occasioned the march of General Taylor from Corpus Christi across the "disputed territory" to Matamoras, the immediate occasion of hostilities, may have been injudicious in a national point of view, and morally unjustifiable. That movement of our troops, although we had the legal *right* to make it, can hardly be supposed to have been thought necessary for the defence of Texas; and being certain to produce hostile collisions, it showed that the policy of the American government, as exhibited in the executive order to General Taylor, was not merely defensive, but that it was aggressory*—that the government not only showed no

---

tion of right and justice against oppression, it would hardly overstep any acknowledged principle of national law.

* General Taylor was instructed that, if he were attacked, or menaced, &c., he was not to act merely on the defensive, but to carry on "aggressive operations."

disposition to avoid a war, but that it actually courted it:—and when, in connection with these circumstances, and with the manner in which the war was carried on, we consider the weakness of Mexico, and that we entertained no fear of the results of her threatened invasion, the presumption is strong that the government, although justifying itself on the broad grounds of national right, still courted the war with a view to *conquest*.*

ANALYSIS.

[1]The strength of these conclusions would, indeed, be greatly weakened by an admission of the importance of the line of the Rio Grande for our defence; and conceding, as we do, that we had the legal *right* to go there, it may be very plausibly urged that not only was the Executive the proper judge of the propriety of the measure, but that, in addition, he would have forfeited the trust reposed in him by his high station, if he had neglected any legitimate means of defence which circumstances had placed in his power. By our possession of Santiago, and the command of the entrance to the Rio Grande, we excluded Mexico from the only ports on the Gulf through which she could have furnished her army with supplies, and forced upon her all the difficulties of a tedious and expensive inland communication. Had we *feared* anything from Mexican invasion, these considerations would be of great weight; but the conclusion is irresistible, that we took advantage of the weakness of Mexico to hold her to a strict accountability for her folly and rashness.

1. *The importance, to us, of the line of the Rio Grande considered.*

[2]It is by no means certain, however, that war would not have occurred if our troops had remained on the line of Corpus Christi and the Nueces; and we think it highly probable that Mexican folly would have urged on an attack even there; but we should then have remained strictly on the defensive, without the reproach of having provoked the contest. Whether, after the first blow had been struck, considerations either of honor or of advantage should have sent our army beyond the Rio Grande, on a career of expensive conquest, against an enemy whose blind folly we should have pitied, whose weakness we despised, and whose territory was so likely to prove an apple of discord in our midst, or whether we should have held on to that only which, before, was rightfully our own, will receive different answers, so long as the same discordant views and opposing interests that favored the annexation of Texas still exist.

2. *Determination of Mexico to engage in war.*

[3]The leading events in the history of the war, terminating in the conquest of the Mexican capital, have been previously narrated.[a] [4]Little more than three centuries before, on the same spot, the Spaniard Cortez, at the head of a mere handful of soldiers, had humbled the pride of the Aztec race, and overthrown an empire whose origin is buried in the gloom of unknown ages. [5]But the

3. *Narrative of the war.*

a. See p. 485.

4. *The Spanish conquest.*

5. *Anglo-*

* "He who with *just cause* of taking arms shall yet begin a war only from *views of interest*, cannot indeed be charged with injustice, but he betrays vicious dispositions; his conduct is reprehensible, and sullied by the badness of his motives."—*Vattel's Law of Nations*, p. 372.

That the war was *carried on* with the object of conquest, we might reasonably infer from the whole course of conduct pursued by the government and its officers. See instructions from the war department to General Kearney, June 3d, 1846, ordering him, in the event of his taking possession of New Mexico and California, to establish "civil governments therein," &c. See instructions to Commodore Sloat, July 12th, 1846, in which "the object of the United States" is clearly stated. See also instructions of 13th of August to Commodore Stockton. Also the *acts* of these officers, as reported by themselves. Pub. Doc. H. Rep. 2d sess. 29th Congress. Yet the President, in his special message of Aug. 4th, 1846, speaks of paying Mexico "a fair equivalent" for any territory she may be willing to cede; and he asserts that "a just and honorable *peace*, and not conquest, is our purpose in the prosecution of the war." In a subsequent message, however, after stating that New Mexico and California are in our possession, he says, "I am satisfied that they should never be surrendered to Mexico." The same reasons that opposed their surrender led to their conquest.

ANALYSIS.

American conquest.

descendants of those same Spanish conquerors, having grown to be a great nation in the land which the prowess of their fathers had won, had in their turn been compelled to yield to another and more powerful race; and the Anglo-American, tracing his origin back through the Teutonic German tribes to the wilds of Scandinavia, had sat down in the pride of conquest in the far-famed valley of *Mexitli*—the seat of the ancient Aztec dominion—and long the glory of the Spanish empire in the New World. War had also made its pathway northward and westward; and over the extended domain of New Mexico, and on the far shores of California, the banner of the invader announced the ONWARD PROGRESS of the Anglo-Saxon race, whose conquering march—the herald of a better civilization—seems directed by the finger of Destiny itself.

1. Views of De Tocqueville.

[1]The following words of a foreign writer, which were penned before Texan independence had wrested from the Celtic Hispano-Mexican the fairest portion of his domain, seem now to have been indued almost with the inspiration of prophecy. "It is not to be imagined," says De Tocqueville, "that the impulse of the Anglo-Saxon race can be arrested. Their continual progress towards the Rocky Mountains has the solemnity of a providential event; and at a period which may be said to be near, they alone will cover the immense space contained between the Polar regions and the Tropics, and extend from the coast of the Atlantic to the shores of the Pacific ocean."

2. Superiority of the Northern races.

[2]Whatever forms of government may prevail; though successive Republics may fade away; and empires be overthrown in the revolutions of ages, the course of nature will continue the same, and the inhabitants of southern climes will continue to give place, in the career of conquest, as they have ever done, to the more hardy races of the North.

3. Guerilla warfare.

[3]The conquest of the Mexican capital, by dispersing the army of the Republic, and depriving the government of its principal resources, was the finishing stroke of the war, although a species of *guerilla*, or bandit warfare, continued for some time to harass the American outposts, cutting off stragglers, capturing supplies, and rendering communication between Vera Cruz and the capital dangerous.

4. Contrast between the Americans and the Mexicans.

[4]The minds of the American people were now turned anxiously towards peace; but the Mexicans, in the gasconade of their vaunted prowess, seemed not to know that they were beaten; for neither was their pride humbled nor their boasting diminished, —their losses were explained as accidents, and their very defeats converted into victories,—and when they talked of peace they demanded indemnity for the evils which the war had inflicted upon them; and the curious spectacle was presented, of the conquerors, still flushed with victory, almost supplicating peace, while the prostrate foe breathed resistance and threatened retaliation.

5. Close of the war, and treaty of peace.

[5]Slowly was the unwilling truth forced home upon the nation, that a continuation of the war offered Mexico no prospect of advantage, and might expose her to the loss of her nationality; and although many distinguished Mexicans still avowed their preference for war, and the governor and council of San Luis Potosi *pronounced* against peace, yet on the 2d of February, 1848, the terms of a treaty were agreed upon at Guadalupe,* near Mexico, by the American commissioner and the Mexican government. This treaty, after having received some modifications from the American Senate, was adopted by that body on the 10th of March, and subsequently ratified by the Mexican Congress, at Queretaro,† on the 30th of May of the same year.

---

* Book III. p. 111. † Book III. p. 90.

ANALYSIS.

[1]Notwithstanding the universal desire to terminate the war, the treaty met with a strong resistance in the American Senate, exhibiting a strange commingling of parties; but the grounds of opposition were various. While it was claimed, on the one hand, that the territory acquired was of immense national importance, on the other it was denied that it constituted any adequate "indemnity" for the war: by some it was said that we should have demanded more, and that we were dishonored in taking so little; by others, who regarded the war as unjust in its origin on our part, the territorial dismemberment of Mexico was stigmatized as *robbery*.

1. *Opposition to the treaty in the American Senate.*

[2]The subjects of controversy that had been called up years before by the proposed annexation of Texas—the increase of Southern power and influence in our national councils, and the dangers to be apprehended from the spirit of territorial aggrandizement, which already whispered of the acquisition, at some future day, of Yucatan, the whole of Mexico, the island of Cuba, and even Canada, were now agitated anew throughout the Union, and with increased acrimony of feeling.

2. *Various subjects of controversy.*

[3]When the final ratification of the treaty by the Mexican government had placed a vast extent of ceded territory irrevocably in our hands, there arose a still more exciting question, that had long been foreseen—one that had been laid asleep, it was thought, forever, by the "Missouri Compromise," but which now again threatened, in its results, to shake the Union to its very centre. The *North* demanded that territory free from slavery at the time of its acquisition, should forever remain so;—asserting that slavery is a local institution—the creature of local law—knowing no existence beyond the jurisdiction of the law that created it by the subversion of *another* law more sacred than any of mere human enactment. The *South* claimed the right of her citizens to an equal enjoyment, with the North, of the territory which was the common property of all the States of the Union, and, consequently, the right of her citizens to remove with their slaves—their property—on to any lands purchased by the common treasure of the Republic. The position assumed by the North would prevent Southern planters from emigrating with their "property" to New Mexico and California; that assumed by the South would give up to the dominion of slavery hundreds of thousands of square miles of territory now free from its influences.

3. *Free territory and slave territory.*

[4]Thus the first fruits of the Mexican war—a war foreshadowed by Texan independence—rendered morally certain by "annexation," and precipitated by the "march to the Rio Grande," were a "bone of contention" among ourselves. [5]The North, with unyielding firmness, rejected any compromise of human rights for the interests of slavery; and the South, with a zeal blind to the dreadful consequences, proclaimed adherence to her position, even to the alternative of disunion. [6]The compromise measures of 1850[a] partially quieted the excitement, but gave entire satisfaction to neither section of the Union; and it is to be expected that the hydra-heads of the old controversy will ever and anon start up anew while slavery exists among us.

4. *The "first fruits" of the war.*

5. *Firmness and zeal of both sections of the Union.*

6. *The compromise measures of 1850.*

a. See p. 505.

[7]The Mexican war, by the example of the dissensions which it has engendered, may afford us a profitable lesson, and restrain the spirit of power and the lust of dominion, so uncongenial to the mild and peace-loving principles of our republican institutions; or, by giving new impulse to the desire of conquest, may hurry us on to a fearful destiny. [8]Why should we any farther enlarge our borders, when our territory is already infinitely greater than we can occupy, and more ample than Republican Rome, in her palm-

7. *Hopes and fears growing out of the war.*

8. *Farther enlargement of our borders.*

ANALYSIS.

iest days, looked upon? Is there not danger that the distant extremes of our Union, growing daily more diverse in interests and feelings, will act as opposing levers of accumulated power, and break the fabric in its centre? And as the eagle of America soars away from the hills of St. Francis for the far shores of California, is there not danger that his pinions may tire in the flight, and that his eye will grow dim in the gaze?

1. Confidence in the final safety of our Union.

[1]But while we admit the possible existence of evils that threaten us in the lust of foreign dominion, and acknowledge the nearer dangers with which our domestic dissensions surround us, we have too much confidence in the sober sense of the people to despair of ultimate safety. Though lowering clouds on the political horizon may occasionally portend an approaching tempest, we trust they will ever be followed, as heretofore, by the "rainbow of peace and hope," that will chase away the gloom, and announce that the danger is past.

2. Inestimable price of our republican institutions.

[2]The rights, the institutions, the freedom that we now enjoy, hallowed by our *Union*, are of inestimable price; and why should we abandon or lose sight of them in domestic wranglings? The flag of our *common* country is endeared to us by the most hallowed associations of *common* dangers, *common* trials and sufferings, *common* victories, and a *common* freedom won beneath it; and rather than its folds should be torn by disunion, or a single star in our glorious constellation lose its brightness, it were a thousand times better that California, with all its mineral wealth, and El Dorados of future promise, had been abandoned to the wild independence of nature in which we found it.

THE
UNITED STATES
and their
TERRITORIES.
Scale of Miles
0 50 100 150
WASHINGTON TERY
OREGON TERRITORY
UTAH
CALIFORNIA
NEW MEXICO
MEXICO
OLD CALIFORNIA
Gulf of California
NEBRASKA TERY
KANSAS TERY
MINESOTA TERY
IOWA
WISCONSIN
MICHIGAN
MISSOURI
INDIANA
OHIO
KENTUCKY
TENNESSEE
ARKANSAS
INDIAN TERY
TEXAS
LOUISIANA
MISSISSIPPI
ALABAMA
GEORGIA
FLORIDA
N. CAROLINA
VIRGINIA
PENNSYLVANIA
NEW YORK
MAINE
CANADA
CANADA WEST
CANADA EAST
GULF OF MEXICO
San Francisco
Los Angelos
San Diego
Monterey
Santa Fe
Albuquerque
Taos
Socorros
Chihuahua
Iowa City
Springfield
Indianapolis
Chicago
Detroit
Lansing
Cleveland
Columbus
Cincinnati
Louisville
Frankfort
Lexington
Nashville
Richmond
Raleigh
Washington
Philadelphia
Harrisburg
Buffalo
Albany
Boston
Concord
Montpelier
Augusta
Montreal
Quebec
Natches
N. Orleans
Mobile
Pensacola
Tallahassee
St. Augustine
Savannah
Columbia
Milledgeville
Tuscaloosa
Jackson
Little Rock
St. Louis
Jefferson City
Austin
Washington
Galveston
Matagorda
Corpus Christi
Matamoras
Saltillo
Buena Vista
Monterey
Rio Grande
Delaware Bay
Chesapeake Bay
L. Superior
L. Michigan
L. Huron
L. Erie
L. Ontario

BOOK III.

EARLY FRENCH SETTLEMENTS,

PRESENT BRITISH PROVINCES OF NORTH AMERICA,

MEXICO, AND TEXAS.

MAP OF THE MOST IMPORTANT PART OF BRITISH AMERICA.

That portion of North America claimed by Great Britain, embraces more than a third part of the entire continent. It is bounded on the north by the Arctic ocean, east by the Atlantic, south by the St. Lawrence, and the great chain of lakes as far westward as the Lake of the Woods, whence the dividing line between the possessions of England and the United States follows the 49th parallel of latitude westward to the Strait of Fuca, and thence through its channel southwest to the Pacific Ocean. The western boundary of British America is in part the ocean, and in part the line of the 141st degree of west longitude. England and Russia advance conflicting claims to the southern portion of this western coast.

The whole area claimed by Britain amounts to about four millions of square miles. The greater portion of this region is a dreary waste, buried most of the year in snow, and producing little that is valuable, except the skins and furs of the wild animals that roam over its surface. Not an eighth part of this vast region has been regularly reduced into provinces, and, of this part, only a small portion has been settled. Those provinces which have been thought sufficiently important to have regular governments established over them are Canada (Upper and Lower, or Canada West and Canada East,) Nova Scotia and Cape Breton, New Brunswick, Prince Edward Island, and Newfoundland. The Canadas are more productive and more populous than all the other provinces united, and are the principal resort of emigrants from the mother country.

Lower Canada, or Canada East, contains an area of more than two hundred thousand square miles, about three thousand of which are supposed to consist of lakes and rivers. The surface of the northern part is hilly and rocky, and the soil generally unproductive. The only fertile tract of any great extent is the upper portion of the valley of the St. Lawrence, extending down the river only as far as Cape Tourment, thirty miles below Quebec, and varying from fifteen to forty miles in width on the north side of the river. There is a similar plain on the south side of the St. Lawrence.

Upper Canada, separated from Lower Canada by the Ottawa River, has no definite boundary on the west, but is generally considered to extend to the heads of the streams which fall into Lake Superior. The whole of this territory contains an area of about one hundred and fifty thousand square miles, although the only settled portion is that contained between the eastern coast of Lake Huron and the Ottawa River. Upper Canada enjoys a climate considerably milder than the Lower province; and the soil, especially in the settled districts north of lakes Erie and Ontario, is generally productive, although considerable tracts are light and sandy

PART I.

EARLY FRENCH SETTLEMENTS, AND PRESENT BRITISH PROVINCES IN NORTH AMERICA.

CHAPTER I.

HISTORY OF CANADA UNDER THE FRENCH.

ANALYSIS.

1. Introduction to the history of Canada.

2. Champlain's treaty with the Algonquins.

1. [1]The proper introduction to the history of Canada has already been given, in the brief account of the voyages of Cartier, Roberval, and Champlain, the latter of whom, sailing as the lieutenant of De Monts, became the founder of Quebec in 1608. [2]During the first winter which he passed at Quebec, Champlain entered into a treaty with the Algonquins, an Indian nation which held an extensive domain along the northern bank of the St. Lawrence. The Algonquins promised to assist the stranger in his attempts to penetrate the country of the Iroquois, on the condition that he should aid them in a war against that fierce people. Champlain appears never to have dreamed of the guilt of making an unprovoked attack upon a nation which had never offended him.

3. Expedition of Champlain in the spring of 1609.

4. The country upon the Sorel, and the lakes discovered by Champlain.

2. [3]In the spring of 1609, Champlain, with two of his countrymen, set out with his new allies, and after passing up the St. Lawrence beyond Lake St. Peter, he reached the mouth of the river Sorel, and, turning to the south, entered the territory of the Iroquois. [4]He found the country bordering upon the Sorel deserted, in consequence of the deadly wars which had for some time been raging between the hostile tribes; nor was it until the party had passed through an extensive lake, which now took the name of Champlain, from its discoverer, and entered a smaller one connected with it, that any of the enemy were discovered. In the encounter which followed, the Iroquois were soon routed, being struck with terror at the havoc made by the unknown instruments of destruction in the hands of the French.

5. Encounter with the Iroquois.

6. Tidings from France and return of Champlain.

3. [6]On the return of Champlain from the expedition, he was greeted with unfavorable tidings from France. The

ANALYSIS.

merchants of that country, having complained loudly of the injury which they, as well as the nation at large, had sustained by the grant of a monopoly of the fur trade to a single individual, the commission of De Monts was revoked, and Champlain, his lieutenant, was obliged to return home. [1]He gave the king a satisfactory account of his transactions, but was unable to procure a renewal of the monopoly. Yet such was his zeal for retaining the settlement, and his perseverance in overcoming obstacles, that, with the aid of some traders of Rochelle, in 1610 he was enabled to return with a considerable reenforcement and fresh supplies.

1. His account to the king, and return to Canada.

4. [2]Soon after his return to the St. Lawrence, he accompanied a party of the Algonquins in another successful expedition against the Iroquois. [4]Before taking leave of his allies, he prevailed on them to allow one of their young men to accompany him to France, while at the same time a Frenchman remained to learn the language of the Indians. [4]Having again visited France, in 1611 he returned with the Indian youth, whom he designed to employ as interpreter between the French and their allies. [5]While awaiting an appointment which he had made with his savage friends, he passed the time in selecting a place for a new settlement, higher up the river than Quebec. After a careful survey, he fixed upon a spot on the southern border of a beautiful island, inclosed by the divided channel of the St. Lawrence, cleared a considerable space, inclosed it by an earthen wall, and sowed some grain. From an eminence in the vicinity, which he named Mont Royal, the place has since been called Montreal.

2. He engages in another expedition against the Iroquois.

3. An exchange.

4. Champlain visits France, and returns again.

5. Selection of a place for a new settlement.

5. [6]Again Champlain found it necessary to visit France, for the purpose of making arrangements for the more extensive operations which he contemplated, and had recommended to his Indian allies. [7]He was so fortunate as almost immediately to gain the favor of the Count de Soissons, who obtained the title of lieutenant-general of New France, and who, by a formal agreement, delegated to Champlain all the functions of that high office. The Count dying soon after, the Prince of Condé succeeded to all the privileges of the deceased, and transferred them to Champlain, on terms equally liberal. [8]As his commission included a monopoly of the fur trade, the merchants were, as usual, loud in their complaints; but he endeavored to remove their principal objections, by allowing such as chose to accompany him to engage freely in the trade, on condition that each should furnish six men to assist in his projects of discovery, and contribute a twentieth of the profits to defray the expenses of settlement.

6. Objects of his next visit to France.

7. He obtains the government of the country.

1612.

a. Oct. 15.

8. His arrangements with the merchants.

6. [1]On his return to New France, Champlain was for a while diverted from his warlike scheme, by the hope of being able to discover the long sought for north-western passage to China. [2]A Frenchman, who had spent a winter among the northern savages, reported that the river of the Algonquins, (the Ottawa,) issued from a lake which was connected with the North Sea; that he had visited its shores, had there seen the wreck of an English vessel, and that one of the crew was still living with the Indians. [3]Eager to ascertain the truth of this statement, Champlain determined to devote a season to the prosecution of this grand object, and with only four of his countrymen, among whom was the author of the report, and one native, he commenced his voyage by the dangerous and almost impassable route of the Ottawa River. The party continued their course until they came within eight days' journey of the lake, on whose shore the shipwreck was said to have occurred.

1613.

1. Champlain's hopes of finding a north-western passage to China.

2. The statement on which his hopes were based.

3. The voyage undertaken by him for this purpose.

7. [4]Here the falsity of the Frenchman's report was made apparent, by the opposing testimony of the friendly tribe with whom he had formerly resided, and he himself, in fear of merited punishment, confessed that all he had said was a complete untruth. [5]He had hoped that the difficulties of the route would earlier have induced his superior to relinquish the enterprise, and that his statement would still be credited, which would give him notoriety, and perhaps lead to his preferment to some conspicuous station. Thus the season was passed in a series of useless labors and fatigues, while no object of importance was promoted.

4. The falsity of the Frenchman's statement.

5. How he hoped to avoid detection, and his motive in making the statement.

8. [6]Champlain, having again visited France, and returned with additional recruits,—ever ready to engage in warlike enterprises with his Indian allies, next planned, in concert with them, an expedition against the Iroquois, whom it was now proposed to assail among the lakes to the westward. Setting out from Montreal, he accompanied his allies in a long route; first up the Ottawa, then over land to the northern shores of Lake Huron, where they were joined by some Huron bands, who likewise considered the Iroquois as enemies.

6. Another expedition against the Iroquois.

1614.

9. [7]Accompanied by their friends, after passing some distance down Lake Huron, they struck into the interior, and came to a smaller expanse of water, which seems to be Lake George, on the banks of which they discovered the Iroquois fort, strongly fortified by successive palisades of trees twined together, and with strong parapets at top. [8]The Iroquois at first advanced, and met their assailants in front of the fortifications, but the whizzing balls from

7. Discovery of the enemy.

Oct.

8. Engagement with them.

ANALYSIS.

the fire-arms soon drove them within the ramparts, and, finally, from all the outer defences. They continued, however, to pour forth showers of arrows and stones, and fought with such bravery that, in spite of all the exertions of the few French and their allies, it was found impossible to drive them from their stronghold.

1. Losses, subsequent attacks, and taunts of the Iroquois.

10. [1]In the first assault, several of the allied chiefs were killed, and Champlain himself was twice wounded. During two or three subsequent days, which were passed before the fort, several petty attacks were made by the savages, but with so little success that the French were always obliged to come to the rescue, while the enemy bitterly taunted the allied Hurons and Algonquins, as unable to cope with them in a fair field, and obliged to seek the odious aid of this strange and unknown race.

2. Champlain detained among the Hurons, and obliged to pass the winter with them.

11. [2]The enterprise being finally abandoned, and a retreat commenced, Champlain, wounded, but not dispirited, claimed the completion of the promise of his allies to convey him home after the campaign. But delays and excuses prolonged the time of his departure. First, guides were wanting, then a canoe, and he soon found that the savages were determined to detain him and his companions, either to accompany them in their future expeditions, or to aid in their defence, in case of an attack from the Iroquois; and he was obliged to pass the winter in the country of the Hurons. [3]In the spring of the following year he was enabled to take leave of his savage allies, soon after which he repaired to Tadoussac, whence he sailed, and arrived in France in the September following.

3. Leaves them in the spring, and sails for France.

1615.

4. Situation of the colony at this time.

12. [4]The interests of the colony were now for some time much neglected, owing to the unsettled state of France during the minority of Louis XIII.; and it was not until 1620 that Champlain was enabled to return, with a new equipment, fitted out by an association of merchants. During his absence the settlements had been considerably neglected, and, after all that had been done for the colony, there remained, when winter set in, not more than sixty inhabitants, of all ages.

1620.

1621.

5. The mercantile association abolished; De Caen governor.

13. [5]In the following year, the association of merchants, which had fitted out the last expedition, was deprived of all its privileges. De Caen being sent out as governor of the colony, the powers of Champlain were for a time suspended. The violent and arbitrary proceedings of the new governor, however, caused much dissatisfaction, in consequence of which, a great part of the population connected with the European traders took their departure. [6]De Caen soon after returning to France, the powers of government again fell into the hands of Cham-

6. Champlain restored.

plain, who turned his attention to discoveries and settlements in the interior. [1]He likewise aided in ratifying a treaty between the Hurons and the Iroquois, by which a short truce was put to the desolating war which had long raged between those kindred but hostile tribes. **1622.** *1. Treaty between the Hurons and the Algonquins.*

14. [2]During several subsequent years the progress of the colony was checked by dissensions in the mother country, caused chiefly by the opposing sentiments of the Catholics and the Protestants, and the attempts of the former to diffuse the Catholic religion throughout the New World. [3]But in 1627, a war breaking out between France and England, the attention of the colony was called to other quarters. Two Calvinists, refugees from France, David and Lewis Kirk, having entered the service of England, were easily induced to engage in an expedition against the French settlements in America. The squadron sailed to the mouth of the St. Lawrence, captured several vessels, and intercepted the communication between the mother country and the colony. *2. Checks to the progress of the colony.* 1627. *3. War between France and England, and expedition against the French settlements.*

15. [4]Port Royal, and the other French settlements in that quarter, soon fell into the hands of the English, and in July, 1629, Sir David Kirk summoned Quebec. The place, being destitute of the means of resistance, soon surrendered, the colonists being allowed to retain their arms, clothing, and baggage, and to such as preferred to depart, a speedy conveyance to France was offered. [5]But before the conquest of New France was achieved, the preliminary articles of peace had been signed, which promised the restitution of all conquests made subsequent to April 14th, 1629; and by the final treaty[a] of March, 1632, France obtained the restitution,—not of New France or Canada only, but of Cape Breton and the undefined Acadia. *4. Conquest of New France by the English.* *5. Peace of 1632.* a. See p. 543.

16. [6]On the restoration of Canada, Champlain was reinvested with his former jurisdiction, which he maintained until his death, which occurred early in 1636. [7]The situation of his successor, Montmagny, was rendered critical by the state of Indian affairs. The war with the Iroquois had broken out afresh, and as the weakness of the French had rendered it impossible for them to afford any aid to their Indian allies, the power of the Algonquins had been humbled, the Hurons were closely pressed, and several of the French settlements were threatened. [8]Another treaty however was ratified, and for some time faithfully observed, and Iroquois, Algonquins, and Hurons, again forgot their deadly feuds, and mingled in the chase as freely as if they had been one nation. *6. Death of Champlain.* 1636. *7. His successor. Indian affairs.* *8. Indian treaty.*

17. [9]During the short interval of peace, the missionaries formed establishments, not only at Quebec and Mon- *9. Missionary establishments among the Indians.*

ANALYSIS.

treal, but they also penetrated into the territory of the savages—collected many of them in villages—and converted thousands to the Catholic faith. Upwards of three thousand Hurons are recorded to have been baptized at one time, and though it was easier to make converts than to retain them, yet many were for a time reclaimed from their savage habits, and very favorable prospects were opened. [1]But this period of repose was soon ended, the Iroquois having, in 1648, again determined to renew the war, and, as it is asserted, without any known cause or pretext whatever.

1. War renewed by the Iroquois.

1648.

2. French settlements attacked.

18. [2]The frontier settlements of the French were attacked with the most fatal precision, and their inhabitants, without distinction of age or sex, involved in indiscriminate slaughter. [3]The Hurons were every where defeated; and their country, lately so peaceable and flourishing, became a land of horror and of blood. The whole Huron nation, with one consent, dispersed, and fled for refuge in every direction. [4]A few afterwards reluctantly united with their conquerors; the greater number sought an asylum among the Chippewas of Lake Superior,—while a small remnant sought the protection of the French at Quebec.

3. The Hurons driven from their country.

4. Fate of the nation.

5. Situation of the French at this time.

19. [5]The Iroquois having completely overrun Canada, the French were virtually blockaded in the three forts of Quebec, Three Rivers, and Montreal; and almost every autumn, bands of hostile invaders swept away the limited harvests raised in the immediate vicinity of these places. [6]Yet again this fierce people, as if satiated with blood, began of their own accord to make overtures of peace, and to solicit the missionaries to teach them the Christian doctrine. [7]In 1656 a French settlement, connected with a mission, was actually established in the territory of the Onondagas. This establishment, however, was of short continuance, for as the other confederate tribes disapproved of the measure, the French were obliged to withdraw. [8]In 1658 the French were compelled to accept humiliating terms of peace, yet even by these means they obtained but little repose. Often, while peace was proclaimed at one station, war raged at another.

6. Overtures of peace by the Iroquois.

1656.

7. Mission at Onondaga.

8. Uncertain peace.

9. Embassy of peace from the Iroquois in 1663.

20. [9]At length, in 1663, it was announced that deputies from the different cantons of the Iroquois were on their way to Montreal, with the professed intention of burying the hatchet so deep that it should never again be dug up, and of planting the tree of peace, whose branches should overshadow the whole land. [10]But unhappily, a party of Algonquins, stung by accumulated wrongs, and resolving on vengeance, determined to violate even the

10. Treaty frustrated by the Algonquins.

sacred character of such a mission, and, having formed an ambuscade, killed nearly all the party. All prospects of peace were thus ended, and war raged with greater fury than ever. **1663.**

21. [1]The Iroquois now rapidly extended their dominion. The Algonquin allies of the French, bordering on the Ottawa, were dispersed, with scarcely an attempt at resistance,—some of them seeking refuge among the islands of Lake Huron, while others penetrated far to the south-west, and formed a junction with the Sioux. The Algonquin tribes of New England were also attacked, and such was the terror excited by the ravages of their invaders, that the cry of "A Mohawk!" echoing from hill to hill, caused general consternation and flight. [2]The Eries, a Huron Nation on the southern borders of the lake which perpetuates their memory, had been previously subdued, and incorporated with their conquerors, their main fortress, defended by 2000 men, having been stormed by only seven hundred Iroquois. [3]The conquest of the Andastes, a still more powerful Huron nation, was completed in 1672, after a war of more than 20 years' duration.

1. Extension of the dominion of the Iroquois.

2. Their subjugation of the Eries.

3. Of the Andastes.

22. [4]While the Iroquois were thus extending their conquests, the French, shut up in their fortified posts, which the enemy had not skill to besiege, beheld the destruction of their allies, without daring to venture to their relief. [5]The environs of the posts were almost daily insulted, and at length the Governor, apprehensive for the safety of Montreal, repaired to France to procure aid, where, after the most earnest solicitation, he could obtain a reinforcement of only a hundred men. [6]Amid these extreme evils, a succession of earthquakes commenced in February 1663, and continued for half a year with little intermission, agitating both the earth and the waters, and spreading universal alarm; yet as they inflicted no permanent injury, the accounts given of them are probably much exaggerated.

4. Humiliating situation of the French.

5. The governor repairs to France for aid.

6. Earthquakes.

23. [7]During the administration of the Marquis de Tracy, who went out as Governor in 1665, the power of the French was considerably augmented by an increase of emigrants, and the addition of a regiment of soldiers,—the whole of whom formed an accession to the colony, exceeding the previous number of its actual members. [8]Three forts were erected on the river Richelieu, (now the Sorel,) and several expeditions were made into the territory of the Iroquois, which checked their insolence, and for a time secured the colony from the inroads of these fierce marauders.

7. Accessions to the colony. **1665.**

8. Forts erected, and expeditions made into the territory of the Iroquois

ANALYSIS.

1. Administration of M. de Courcelles.

2. Huron settlement at Mackinaw, and fort at Cataraqui.

24. [1]During the administration of M. de Courcelles, the successor of De Tracy, the French power was gradually extended to the interior of Canada, and the upper parts of the St. Lawrence. [2]A settlement of Hurons, under the direction of the Jesuit Marquette, was established on the island of Michilimackinac, between lakes Huron and Michigan, a situation very favorable to the fur trade; and the site for a fort was selected at Cataraqui, on Lake Ontario, near the present village of Kingston, an advantageous point for the protection of the trading interests, and for holding the Five Nations in awe. Count Frontenac,
1672. the successor of De Courcelles, immediately upon his accession, caused the fort at Cataraqui to be completed, and it has often, from him, been called Fort Frontenac.

3. Administration of Count Frontenac.

25. [3]Count Frontenac, a man of haughty and domineering temper, conducted the affairs of the colony with spirit and energy, during a period of ten years, when he was recalled, and M. De la Barre appointed in his stead.

4. Of De la Barre.

[4]The latter at first made a show of carrying on the war with considerable energy, and crossed Lake Ontario with
1684. a large force, when, being met by deputies[a] from the Five Nations, he thought it most prudent to yield to their terms, and withdraw his army. [5]The home government being dissatisfied with the issue of this campaign, the governor
1685. was immediately recalled, and in 1685 was succeeded by the Marquis Denonville, who enjoyed the reputation of being a brave and active officer.

a. See p. 41.

5. Succeeded by Denonville.

6. His warlike designs.

26. [6]Although Denonville, on his arrival, made some professions of a wish to maintain peace, yet the opposite course was really intended. [7]Having, under various pretexts allured a number of chiefs to meet him on the banks of Lake Ontario, he secured them and sent them to France as trophies, and afterwards they were sent as slaves to the gallies. [8]This base stratagem kindled the flame of war, and each party prepared to carry it on to the utmost extremity. [9]Denonville was already prepared, and with a force of 800 French regulars, and 1300 Canadians and savages, he embarked from Cataraqui, for the entrance
1687. of the Genesee river. Immediately after landing he constructed a military defence, in which he left a guard of
July. 400 men, while with the main body of his forces he advanced upon the principal town of the Senecas.

7. Treachery to the Natives.

8. War renewed.

9. Expedition against the Iroquois.

27. [10]On approaching the village, he was suddenly attacked, in front and rear, by a large party of the enemy. His troops were at first thrown into confusion, and for a time the battle was fierce and bloody, but the Iroquois were finally repulsed, and did not again make their appearance in the field. [11]Denonville afterwards marched

10. A battle with them.

11. Their country desolated.

upon their villages, with the design of burning them, but they had already been laid in ashes by the retreating Senecas. Some fields of corn were destroyed and provisions burned, but the whole was an empty victory to Denonville. [1]On his return he stopped at Niagara, where he erected a small fort, in which he left a garrison of 100 men. 1687

1. *Fort at Niagara.*

28. [2]Soon after the return of this expedition, the Indians blockaded the two forts Niagara and Cataraqui, the former of which was abandoned, after nearly all the garrison had perished of hunger. Lake Ontario was covered with the canoes of the enemy, the allies of the French began to waver, and had the savages understood the art of siege, they would probably have driven the French entirely from Canada. In this critical situation Denonville was obliged to accept the most humiliating terms from the enemy, and to request back from France the chiefs whom he had so unjustly entrapped and sent thither. 1688.

2. *Indian successes against the French*

29. [3]The treaty, however, was interrupted by an unexpected act of treachery on the part of the principal chief of the Hurons,[a] who, fearing that the remnant of his tribe might now be left defenceless, captured and killed a party of the Iroquois deputies who were on their way to Montreal; and as he had the address to make the Iroquois believe that the crime had been committed at the instigation of the French governor, the flame of war again broke out, and burned more fiercely than ever. [4]The Iroquois soon after made a descent on the Island of Montreal, which they laid waste, and carried off 200 prisoners.

3. *Treaty with the Indians interrupted.*

a. See p. 39

4. *Island of Montreal laid waste.*

30. [5]In this extremity, when the very existence of the colony was threatened, Denonville was recalled, and the administration of the government was a second time intrusted to Count Frontenac. [6]On his arrival, in 1689, he endeavored to open a friendly negotiation with the Iroquois, but the answer which they returned was expressed in lofty and imbittered terms. Entertaining great respect for Frontenac himself, they chose to consider the French governor, whom they called Father, as always one and the same, and complained that his rods of correction had been too sharp and cutting. The roots of the tree of peace which had been planted at Fort Frontenac had been withered by blood, the ground had been polluted by treachery and falsehood, and, in haughty language, they demanded atonement for the many injuries they had received. The French governor, satisfied that nothing could be gained by treaty, immediately prepared to renew the contest. 1689.

5. *Frontenac again governor.*

6. *Attempted negotiation with the Iroquois.*

ANALYSIS.

1. *Designs of Frontenac.*

a. King William's war. See p. 197. and p. 322.

31. [1]As France and England were now engaged in war,[a] in consequence of the English revolution of 1688, Frontenac resolved to strike the first blow against the English, on whose support the enemy so strongly relied.

1690.

2. *Expeditions planned by him.*

3. *Their result.*

[2]In 1690 he fitted out three expeditions, one against New York, a second against New Hampshire, and a third against the province of Maine. [3]The party destined against New York fell upon Corlaer or Schenectady, and completely surprised, pillaged and burned the place. The second party burned the village of Salmon Falls, on the borders of New Hampshire, and the third destroyed the settlement of Casco, in Maine. [4]The old allies of the French, reassured by these successes, began to resume their former energy—the remote post of Michilimackinac was strengthened, and the French were gradually gaining ground, when, from a new quarter, a storm arose which threatened the very existence of their power in America.

4. *Effect of these successes.*

5. *Expeditions against the French.*

32. [5]The northern English colonies, roused by the atrocities of the French and their savage allies, hastily prepared two expeditions against the French, one by sea from Boston against Quebec, and the other by land from New York against Montreal. [6]The first, under Sir William Phipps, captured all the French posts in Acadia and Newfoundland, with several on the St. Lawrence, and had arrived within a few days' sail of Quebec before any tidings of its approach had been received. The fortifications of the city were hastily strengthened, and when the summons[b] to surrender was received, it was returned with a message of defiance. After an unnecessary delay of two days, a landing was effected, but the attacks both by land and by water were alike unsuccessful, and the English were finally reduced to the mortifying necessity of abandoning the place,[c] and leaving their cannon and ammunition in the hands of the enemy. [7]The expedition against Montreal was alike unsuccessful.[d]

6. *The expedition against Quebec.*

b. Oct. 16, 1690.

c. Oct. 22.

7. *Against Montreal.*

d. See p. 230.

1691.

8. *Expedition of Major Schuyler.*

33. [8]In the following year the French settlements on the Sorel were attacked by a party of Mohawks and English under the command of Major Schuyler of Albany, who, after some partial successes, was obliged to withdraw, and the Governor of Canada no longer entertained any fear for the safety of the colony. [9]After several years of partial hostilities, during which the enemy made frequent proposals of peace, to which, however, little credit was attached, as their deputies, encouraged by the English, gradually assumed a loftier tone in their demands, Frontenac at length determined to march his whole force into the enemy's territory. [10]Departing from

9. *Conduct of the Iroquois, and determination of Frontenac.*

10. *Expedition of Frontenac into the territory of the Iroquois.*

Montreal in the summer of 1696, he proceeded to Fort Frontenac, whence he crossed Lake Ontario in canoes, ascended the Oswego river, passed through Onondaga Lake, and arrived at the principal fortress of the enemy, which he found reduced to ashes. The Onondagas had retreated, and the French, having laid waste their territory and that of the Cayugas, returned to Montreal; but the Iroquois rallied, and severely harassed them in their retreat. **1696.**

34. [1]The Iroquois continued the war with various success, until the conclusion of peace[a] between France and England, when, deprived of aid from the English, and jealous of the attempts of the latter to enforce certain claims of sovereignty over their territory, they showed a willingness to negotiate a separate treaty with the French. The death of Frontenac, in 1698, suspended for a time the negotiation, but the pacification was finally effected by his successor, Callieres, in 1700, and the numerous prisoners on both sides were allowed to return. [2]The natives, prisoners to the French, availing themselves of the privilege, eagerly sought their homes, but the greater part of the French captives were found to have contracted such an attachment to the wild freedom of the woods, that nothing could induce them to quit their savage associates.

a 1697. See p. 200

1. *Peace of Ryswick, and subsequent peace between the French and the Iroquois.*

2. *Attachment to savage life.*

35. [3]In 1702 war again broke out[b] between France and England, involving in the contest their transatlantic colonies. The disasters which befel the French arms on the continent, compelled the mother country to leave her colonies to their own resources, while England, elated with repeated triumphs, conceived the design of embracing within her territory all the French possessions in America. [4]The Iroquois preserved a kind of neutrality between the contending parties, although each party spared no pains to secure their co-operation in its favor. [5]The principal operations of the French and their Indian allies were directed mainly against the New England colonies. After several expeditions had been sent by the English against the more eastern French colonies, a powerful armament under the command of Sir Hovenden Walker, was at length prepared for the reduction of Canada. The deepest apprehension prevailed among the French until a report arrived, which proved ultimately correct, that the invading squadron had been wrecked near the mouth of the St. Lawrence.[c] **1711.**

b. Queen Anne's war. See p. 201, and p 324.

3. *Renewed war, and designs of England.*

4. *The Iroquois*

5. *Operations of the French and the English; and attempted reduction of Canada.*

c. See p. 202.

36. [6]In the mean time the French were engaged in a desperate struggle in their western territory, with an Indian tribe called the Outagamies, or Foxes, who projected a plan for the destruction of Detroit, in which they nearly

6 *War between the French and the Foxes Indians.*

ANALYSIS.

succeeded, but they were finally repulsed by the French and their Indian allies. Retreating from Detroit, the Foxes collected their forces on the Fox river of Green Bay, where they strongly fortified themselves; but an expedition being sent against them, they were obliged to capitulate. The remnant of the defeated nation, however, long carried on a ceaseless and harassing warfare against the French, and rendered insecure their communication with the settlements on the Mississippi.

1. Treaty of Utrecht, and situation of the French settlements about the year 1720.

1721.

37. [1]The treaty of Utrecht, in 1713, put an end to hostilities in America, after which time Canada enjoyed a long period of uninterrupted tranquillity. Charlevoix, who visited the principal settlements in 1720 and 1721, gives the best account of their condition at this period. Quebec then contained a population of about 7000 inhabitants, but the entire population of the colony at that period is unknown. The settlements were confined, principally, to the borders of the St. Lawrence, between Montreal and Quebec, extending a short distance below the latter place. Above Montreal were only detached stations for defence and trade. At Fort Frontenac and Niagara a few soldiers were stationed, but there were apparently no traces of cultivation in the vicinity of either of those places. A feeble settlement was found at Detroit, and at Michilimackinac a fort, surrounded by an Indian village. On the whole, however, it appears that, west of Montreal, there was nothing at this time which could be called a colony.

2. Subsequent history of Canada.

3. The American wars of France and England during this period.

38. [2]The subsequent history of Canada, down to the time of its conquest by the English, presents few events of sufficient importance to require more than a passing notice. [3]The wars carried on between France and England during this period, and which involved their American possessions, were chiefly confined to Nova Scotia and the adjacent provinces, while Canada enjoyed a happy exemption from those eventful vicissitudes which form the materials of history. The French, however, gradually secured the confidence of the savage tribes by which they were surrounded, and were generally able to employ them against the English, when occasion required.

1731.

4. Crown Point and Ticonderoga.

5. Fort at Pittsburg

a. (Pronounced Du-kane.)

39. [4]In 1731 the French erected Fort Frederic, (now Crown Point,) on the western shore of Lake Champlain, but surrendered it to the English under General Amherst in 1759. In 1756 they erected the fortress of Ticonderoga at the mouth of the outlet of Lake George. Here occurred the memorable defeat of General Abercrombie in 1758. [5]During the administration of the Marquis du Quesne,[a] in 1754, the fort bearing his name was erected

at the confluence of the Alleghany and Monongahela, where Pittsburgh now stands. [1]The French were likewise encroaching upon Nova Scotia, which had been ceded to England by the treaty of Utrecht in 1713, and in the west they were attempting to complete a line of forts which should confine the British colonists to the territory east of the Alleghanies. [2]These encroachments were the principal cause which led to the "French and Indian war," a war which resulted in the overthrow of the power of France in America, and the transfer of her possessions to a rival nation. An account of that war has already been given in a former part of this work, to which we refer[a] for a continuation of the history of Canada during that eventful period.

1754.

1. *Other encroachments of the French.*

2. *"French and Indian war."*

a. See p. 267.

CHAPTER II

EARLY HISTORY OF LOUISIANA.

1. [3]Having briefly traced the history of the French in Canada down to the time of the final conquest of that country by Great Britain, we now go back a few years to notice the discoveries and settlements made by the French in the valley of the Mississippi, during the period of which we have spoken;—most of which territory also passed under the power of England at the time of the final transfer of the French possessions in Canada and Acadia.

3. *Discoveries and settlements of the French in the valley of the Mississippi.*

2. [4]Soon after the establishment of the French in Canada, several Jesuit missionaries, mingling worldly policy with religious enthusiasm, with the double object of winning souls to Christ and subjects to the king of France, penetrated the Indian wilderness bordering on Lake Huron, and there established several missions,[b] around which were soon gathered, from the rude sons of the forest, throngs of nominal converts to Christianity.

4. *Jesuit missionaries among the Hurons.*

1634.

b. St. Joseph, St. Louis, and St. Ignatius.

3. [5]The missionaries also penetrated the territories of the hostile Iroquois;[c] but after years of toil and suffering they were wholly unsuccessful, both in their attempts at christianizing these ruder people, and in their efforts to seduce them from their alliance with the English. [6]The petty establishments in New York and on the banks of Lake Huron were broken up, and the latter laid in ashes by the Iroquois, during the war which they waged with unrelenting ferocity against their Huron brethren.

5. *Among the Iroquois.*

c. 1655.

6. *Fate of their establishments.*

4. [7]The missionaries then directed their efforts to the

7. *Father Allouez on Lake Superior*

ANALYSIS.

1665.

a. (Pronounced Al-loo-a.)

1. *Among the Chippewas.*

b. Sept.

c. Oct. 1.

2. *His success.*

3. *Dablon and Marquette.*

d. (Es-pre.)

e. 1668.

f. (Mar-ket.)

4. *A great river to the westward heard of, and an expedition planned for its discovery.*

1673.

5. *Route of the party, and discovery of the Mississippi.*

g. June.

h. June 10.

6. *Passage down the Mississippi.*

i. July 17.

7. *The return.*

tribes farther westward, and in 1665 Father Allouéz,[a] passing beyond the straits of Mackinaw, found himself afloat, in a frail canoe, on the broad expanse of Lake Superior. [1]Coasting[b] along the high banks and "pictured rocks" of its southern shore, he entered the bay of Chegoimegon, and landed[c] at the great village of the Chippewas. [2]Although but few of this tribe had ever before seen a white man, yet they listened to the missionary with reverence, and soon erected a chapel, around which they charted their morning and evening hymns, with an apparent devoutness that the white man seldom imitates. [3]The mission of St. Esprit,[d] or the Holy Spirit, was founded, and three years later[e] the missionaries Dablon and Marquette[f] founded another mission at the falls of St. Mary, between lakes Superior and Huron.

5. [4]As the missionaries were active in exploring the country, and collecting from the Indians all the information that could be obtained, it was not long before they heard of a great river to the westward, called by the Algonquins the Mes-cha-ce-be, a name signifying the *Father of Waters*. It was readily concluded that, by ascending this river to its source, a passage to China might be found! and that by following it to its mouth the Gulf of Mexico would be reached, and in 1673 the two missionaries Marquette and Joliet set out from Green Bay for the purpose of making the desired discovery.

6. [5]Ascending[g] the Fox River, whose banks were inhabited by a tribe of Indians of the same name, and passing[h] thence over a ridge of highlands, they came to the Wisconsin, and following its course, on the 17th of June, 1673, they came to the Mes-cha-ce-be, called also in the Iroquois language the *Mis-sis-sip-pi*. The soil on the borders of the stream was found to be of exceeding fertility, and Father Marquette, falling on his knees, offered thanks to heaven for so great a discovery.

7. [6]They now committed themselves to the stream, which bore them rapidly past the mouths of the Missouri, the Ohio, and the Arkansas, at which last they stopped, where they found Indians in the possession of articles of European manufacture, a proof that they had trafficked with the Spaniards from Mexico, or with the English from Virginia. Though convinced that the mighty river which they had discovered must have its outlet in the Gulf of Mexico, yet as their provisions were nearly expended, the adventurers resolved to return.[i] [7]Passing up the Mississippi with incredible fatigue, they at length arrived at the Illinois, which they ascended till they reached the heights that divide its waters from those which enter Lake

Michigan. Thence Marquette returned to the Miami Indians, to resume his labors as a missionary, while Joliet proceeded to Quebec, to give an account of the discovery to Frontenac, then governor of Canada. **1673.**

8. [1]Marquette dying[a] soon after, and Joliet becoming immersed in business, the discovery of the Great River seemed almost forgotten, when attention to it was suddenly revived by another enterprising Frenchman. Robert de La Salle, a man of courage and perseverance, stimulated by the representations of Joliet, repaired[b] to France and offered his services to the king, promising to explore the Mississippi to its mouth, if he were provided with the necessary means. [2]A ship well manned and equipped was furnished him, and accompanied by the Chevalier de Tonti, an Italian officer who had joined him in the enterprise, he sailed from Rochelle on the 14th of July, 1678.

a. May, 1675.

1. The passion for discovery slumbers, but is revived by La Salle

b. 1677.

2. La Salle sails from France.

1678.

9. [3]On arriving at Quebec he proceeded immediately to Fort Frontenac, where he built a barge of ten tons, with which he conveyed his party across Lake Ontario, "The first ship that ever sailed on that fresh water sea;" after which, near the mouth of Tonnewanta creek, he constructed another vessel which he called the Griffin, on board of which he embarked in August, 1679, with forty men, among whom was Father Hennepin, a distinguished Jesuit missionary, and a worthy successor of the venerated Marquette. Passing through lakes Erie, St. Clair, and Huron, he stopped at Michilimackinac, where he erected a fort of the same name, whence he proceeded to Green Bay, where he collected a cargo of furs, which he despatched for Niagara in the Griffin, but which was never heard of afterwards.

3. His arrival in Canada, and voyage to Green Bay.

Aug.

10. [4]From Green Bay he proceeded in bark canoes nearly to the head of Lake Michigan, and at the mouth of St. Joseph River built a fort, which he called Fort Miami. After waiting here some time in vain for the Griffin, the party proceeded[c] westward to the Illinois River, and after passing down the same beyond Lake Peoria they erected a fort, which La Salle named *Crève-cœur*,[d] the Broken Heart, indicating thereby his disappointment occasioned by the loss of the Griffin, the jealousy of a portion of the savages, and the mutinous spirit exhibited by his own men. [5]From this place he sent out a party under Hennepin to explore the sources of the Mississippi.

4. Proceeds up Lake Michigan, and thence to the Illinois River, where he erects a fort.

c. Dec. 3.

1680.

d. (Pronounced Crave-kyur.)

5. Exploring party under Hennepin.

11. [6]At Fort Crève-cœur La Salle remained until the succeeding March, when, leaving Tonti and his men among the Illinois Indians, he departed for Canada, for

6. Departure of La Salle for Canada.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Tonti's return to Lake Michigan.*

2. *History of the exploring party.*

the purpose of raising recruits and obtaining funds. [1]Tonti, after erecting a new fort, remained, surrounded by hostile savages, until September, when he was obliged to abandon his position and retire to Lake Michigan, on whose borders he passed the winter. [2]In the mean time the small party under Hennepin had ascended the Mississippi beyond the Falls of St. Anthony, and had been made prisoners by the Sioux, by whom they were well treated. At the expiration of three months, however, they were released, when they descended the Mississippi, and passed up the Wisconsin, whence they returned to Canada.

1682.

3. *La Salle again on the Illinois.*

4. *He discovers the Mississippi, and passes down the stream to its mouth.*

12. [3]The spring of 1682 found La Salle again on the banks of the Illinois. [4]Having at length completed a small vessel, he sailed down that tributary till he reached the "Father of Waters." Floating rapidly onward with the current, and occasionally landing to erect a cross, and proclaim the French king lord of the country, La Salle passed the Arkansas, where Joliet and Marquette had terminated their voyage, but still the stream swept onward, and the distance appeared interminable. All began to despair except La Salle, who encouraged his men to persevere, and at length the mouths of the Mississippi were discovered, discharging their enormous volume of turbid waters into the Gulf of Mexico.

5. *La Salle names the country Louisiana.*

6. *His return to Quebec, and thence to France.*

7. *Greatness of the achievements of La Salle.*

13. [5]To the territories through which La Salle had passed, he gave the name of Louisiana, in honor of the reigning monarch of France, Louis XIV. [6]Anxious to communicate in person his discoveries to his countrymen, he hastened back to Quebec, and immediately set sail for his native land, where he was received with many marks of distinction. [7]He had nobly redeemed his promise, and given to his sovereign a territory vast in extent, and unequalled in fertility and importance; which, spanning like a bow the American continent, and completely hemming in the English possessions, might have rendered France the mistress of the New World.

1684.

8. *Preparations for colonizing Louisiana, and settlement of St. Louis, in Texas.*

1685.

a. Feb. 18.

9. *Death of La Salle, and breaking up of the settlement.*

1687.

b. Jan 12.

14. [8]Early in 1684 preparations were made for colonizing Louisiana, and in July La Salle sailed from Rochelle for the mouth of the Mississippi, with four vessels and two hundred and eighty persons, and everything requisite for founding a settlement. But the expedition failed to reach the point of its destination, and the colonists were landed[a] at the head of the Bay of Matagorda in Texas, where the settlement of St. Louis was formed. [9]After two years had been passed here, during which time several unsuccessful attempts were made to discover the Mississippi, La Salle departed[b] with sixteen men

for the purpose of travelling by land to the Illinois, but on the route he was shot[a] by a discontented soldier, near a western branch of Trinity River. Although the settlement at Matagorda was soon after broken up by the Indians, yet as the standard of France had first been planted there, Texas was thenceforth claimed as an appendage to Louisiana. **1687.**

a. March 20. See also p. 622.

15. [1]For several years after the death of La Salle, the few French who had penetrated to the western lakes and the Mississippi, were left to their own resources, and as their numbers were unequal to the laborious task of cultivating the soil, trading in furs became their principal occupation. [2]A small military post appears to have been maintained in Illinois, many years after its establishment by Tonti and La Salle, and about the year 1685 a Jesuit mission was established at Kaskaskia, the oldest permanent European settlement in Upper Louisiana, and long after the central point of French colonization in that western region.

1. Situation of the early French settlers in the western country.

2. Military post in Illinois, and mission at Kaskaskia.

16. [3]After the treaty of Ryswick, which closed King William's War, the attention of the French government was again called to the subject of effectually colonizing the valley of the Mississippi; and in 1698 Lemoine D'Iberville, a brave and intelligent French officer, sought and obtained a commission for planting a colony in the southern part of the territory which La Salle had discovered, and for opening a direct trade between France and that country. [4]Sailing in October with four vessels, a company of soldiers, and about two hundred emigrants, and having been joined, on his voyage, by a ship of war from St. Domingo, in January, 1699, he anchored[b] before the island of Santa Rosa,[c] near which he found the Fort of Pensacola, which had recently been established by a body of Spaniards from Vera Cruz.

3. Other attempts to colonize the valley of the Mississippi **1698.**

4. Voyage of D'Iberville. **1699.**

b. Jan. 27.
c. See Map, p. 122.

17. [5]Proceeding thence farther westward, D'Iberville landed on the Isle of Dauphine, at the eastern extremity of Mobile Bay, discovered the river Pascagoula, and, on the second of March, with two barges reached the Mississippi, which had never before been entered from the sea. Having proceeded up the stream nearly to the mouth of the Red River, returning he entered the bayou which bears his name, passed through Lakes Maurepas and Pontchartrain,[d] and erected a fort at the head of the Bay of Biloxi, around which he collected the colonists, whom he placed under the command of his brother Bienville, and, on the ninth of May following, sailed for France. [6]Thus began the colonization of Lower Louisiana. But the nature of the soil, the warmth of the cli-

5. His exploration of the country, erection of a fort, and return to France.

d. See Notes pp. 283-4.

6. Causes that retarded the prosperity of the colony

ANALYSIS.

1701.

1. *Settlement of Alabama.*

a. In 1702.

mate, and the character of the colonists, made prosperity impossible. On the return of Iberville, in December 1701, he found only 150 of the colonists alive. [1]The unhealthiness of the post at Biloxi induced him to remove the colony to the western bank of Mobile river; and thus commenced[a] the first European settlement in Alabama.

2. *Bancroft's description of the situation and prospects of the French colonists of Louisiana at this period.*

18. [2]The situation and prospects of the French colonists of Louisiana at this period are thus described by Bancroft: "Louisiana, at this time, was little more than a wilderness, claimed in behalf of the French king. In its whole borders there were scarcely thirty families. The colonists were unwise in their objects;—searching for pearls, for the wool of the buffalo, or for productive mines. Their scanty number was dispersed on discoveries, or among the Indians in quest of furs. There was no quiet agricultural industry. Of the lands that were occupied, the coast of Biloxi is as sandy as the desert of Lybia; the soil on Dauphine Island is meagre; on the Delta of the Mississippi, where a fort had been built, Bienville and his few soldiers were insulated and unhappy,—at the mercy of the rise of waters in the river; and the buzz and sting of musquitoes, the hissing of the snakes, the cries of alligators, seemed to claim that the country should still, for a generation, be the inheritance of reptiles,—while at the fort of Mobile, the sighing of the pines, and the hopeless character of the barrens, warned the emigrants to seek homes farther inland."

3. *The English colonies compared with French Louisiana.*

1712.

b. Sept. 14.

4. *The exclusive trade of Louisiana granted to Crozat.*

19. [3]While the English colonies east of the Alleghanies continued to increase in prosperity, Louisiana, so long as it continued in the possession of France, was doomed to struggle with misfortune. [4]In 1712, Louis XIV., weary of fruitless efforts at colonization, and doubtless glad to relieve himself of a burden, granted[b] to Anthony Crozat, a wealthy merchant, the exclusive trade of Louisiana for twelve years. But although the plans of Crozat were wisely conceived, yet meeting with no success in establishing commercial relations with the neighboring Spanish provinces, and the English managing to retain the principal control of the Indian trade, he became weary of his grant, and in 1717 surrendered all his privileges.

1717.

5. *Population of Louisiana in 1717.*

[5]At this period all the French inhabitants of the colony, including those of every age, sex, and color, did not exceed seven hundred persons.

6. *The monopoly of the Louisiana trade granted to the Mississippi Company.*

20. [6]Notwithstanding the failure of Crozat, still the prospective commercial importance of Louisiana, and the mineral resources which that region was supposed to contain, inflamed the imaginations of the French people, and

in September, 1717, the Western Company, or, as it is usually called, the Mississippi Company, instituted under the auspices of John Law, a wealthy banker of Paris, received, for a term of twenty-seven years, a complete monopoly of the trade and mines of Louisiana, with all the rights of sovereignty over the country, except the bare nominal title, which was retained by the king. [3]In August of the following year, eight hundred emigrants arrived at Dauphine Island, some of whom settled around the bay of Biloxi, others penetrated to the infant hamlet of New Orleans,* which had already been selected by Bienville as the emporium of the French empire of Louisiana; and others, among whom was Du Pratz, the historian of the colony, soon after proceeded to Fort Rosalie, which had been erected in 1716 on the site of the present city of Natchez.

1717.

1718. Aug.

1. *Additional emigrants, and new settlements.*

21. [2]In 1719, during a war[a] with Spain, Pensacola was captured,[b] but within seven weeks it was recovered[c] by the Spaniards, who in their turn attempted to conquer the French posts on Dauphine Island and on the Mobile. Pensacola was soon after again conquered by the French, but the peace of 1721 restored it to Spain, and the River Perdido afterwards remained the dividing line between Spanish Florida and French Louisiana. [5]But by this time a change had taken place in the fortunes of the Mississippi Company, which, sustained only by the fictitious wealth which the extravagant credit system of Law had created, lost its ability to carry out its schemes of colonization when that bubble burst, and, with its decaying greatness, the expenditures for Louisiana mostly ceased. [4]The odium now attached to the Company was extended to the colony. The splendid visions of opulence and the gay dreams of Elysian happiness, which had been conjured up by the imaginative French, in the delightful savannas of the Mississippi, were destined to give place to gloomy representations of years of toil in a distant wilderness, rewarded by poverty,—and of loathsome marshes, infested by disgusting reptiles, and generating the malaria of disease and death.

1719.

a. See p. 327.
b. May 14.
c. June 29.

2. *War with Spain.*

1721.

3. *Failure of the Mississippi Company.*

4. *Change in the prospects of the Louisiana colony.*

22. [5]Yet the colony, now firmly planted, was able to survive the withdrawal of its accustomed resources and the disgrace in which it was innocently involved, although it had many serious difficulties to encounter. Petty wars broke out with the natives; the settlements, widely separated, could afford little assistance to each other; agriculture was often interrupted, followed by seasons of scar-

1722.

5. *Difficulties that the colony had to encounter.*

* A solitary hut appears to have been erected here in 1717. See p 438.

ANALYSIS.

city; and scenes of riot and rebellion occurred among the French themselves. [1]In 1729 the French post at Natchez was entirely destroyed by the Indian tribe which has given its name to the place. The commandant of this post, stimulated by avarice, demanded of the Natches the site of their principal village for a plantation. Irritated by oft repeated aggressions, the Indians plotted revenge. On the morning of the 28th of November they collected around the dwellings of the French; the signal was given, the massacre began, and before noon the settlement was in ruins. The women and children were spared for menial services; only two white men were saved; the rest, including the commandant, and numbering nearly two hundred souls, perished in the slaughter.

1729.

1. *Destruction of the French post at Natches.*

23. [2]The French from the Illinois, from New Orleans, and the other settlements, aided by the Choctas, hastened to avenge their murdered countrymen. In January following the Choctas surprised[a] the camp of the Natches, liberated the French captives, and, with but trifling loss on their own side, routed the enemy with great slaughter. A French detachment, arriving[b] in February, completed the victory and dispersed the Natches, some of whom fled to the neighboring tribes for safety, others crossed the Mississippi, whither they were pursued,—their retreats were broken up, and the remnant of the nation nearly exterminated. The head chief, called the Great Sun, and more than four hundred prisoners were shipped to Hispaniola, and sold as slaves.—[3]In 1732 the Mississippi Company relinquished[c] its chartered rights to Louisiana; and jurisdiction over the country, and control of its commerce, again reverted to the king. [4]The population then numbered about five thousand whites, and perhaps half that number of blacks.

2. *The French avenged by the destruction of the Natches tribe.*

1730.

a. Jan. 29.

b. Feb. 8.

1731.

1732.

c. April 10.

3. *Mississippi Company.*

4. *Population in 1732.*

24. [5]The Chickasas, claiming jurisdiction over an extensive region, had ever been opposed to French settlements in the country: they had incited the Natches to hostilities, and had afforded an asylum to a body of them after their defeat: they also interrupted the communications between Upper and Lower Louisiana; and thus, by dividing, weakened the empire of the French. [6]It was therefore thought necessary to humble this powerful tribe, and the French government planned the scheme and gave the directions for an invasion of the Chickasa territory. Accordingly, early in 1736, after two years had been devoted to preparations, the whole force of the southern colony, under the command of Bienville, then governor, was ordered to assemble in the land of the Chickasas by the 10th of May following, where D'Artaguette,[d] the

5. *Hostility of the Chickasas.*

6. *An invasion of their territory planned.*

1736.

d. (Dar-ta-get.)

commandant of the northern posts, at the head of all his troops, was expected to join them. **1736.**

25. [1]The youthful D'Artaguette, at the head of about fifty French soldiers and more than a thousand Red men, reached the place of rendezvous on the evening before the appointed day, where he remained until the 20th, awaiting the arrival of Bienville; but hearing no tidings of him, he was induced by the impatience of his Indian allies, to hazard an attack on the Chickasa forts. Two of these were captured; but while attacking the third, the brave commandant was wounded, and fell into the hands of the enemy. Checked by this disaster, the Indian allies of the French precipitately fled and abandoned the enterprise. *1. The expedition of D'Artaguette.*

26. [2]Five days later, Bienville arrived[a] at the head of a numerous force of French, Indians, and negroes, but in vain attempted to surprise the enemy. The Chickasas were strongly intrenched; an English flag waved over their fort; and they were assisted in their defence by four English traders from Virginia. A vigorous assault was made, and continued nearly four hours, when the French and their allies were repulsed with the loss of nearly two thousand men. The dead, and many of the wounded, were left on the field of battle, exposed to the rage of the enemy. A few skirmishes followed this defeat, but on the 29th the final retreat began, and in the last of June Bienville was again at New Orleans. *2. May 25. 2. The arrival of Bienville, and his repulse by the Chickasas.*

27. [3]Three years later, more extended preparations were made to reduce the Chickasas. Troops from the Illinois, from Montreal, and Quebec, with Huron, Iroquois, and Algonquin allies, made their rendezvous in Arkansas; while Bienville, having received aid from France, advanced at the head of nearly three thousand men, French and Indians, and built Fort Assumption, on the site of the present Memphis* in Tennessee. [4]Here the whole army assembled in the last of June, and here it remained until March of the following year without attempting any thing against the enemy, suffering greatly from the ravages of disease and scarcity of provisions. [5]When, finally, a small detachment was sent into the Chickasa country, it was met by messengers soliciting peace, which Bienville gladly ratified, and soon after disbanded his troops. [6]Yet the peace thus obtained was only nominal; for the Chickasas, aided by the English, kept **1739.** *3. Extensive preparations to reduce the Chickasas.* *4. Inactivity of the French forces.* **1740.** *5. Peace concluded.* *6. Peace interrupted.*

* *Memphis* is in Shelby county, Tennessee, in the south-west corner of the State. It is situated on an elevated bluff on the Mississippi River, immediately below the mouth of Wolf, or Loosahatchie River.

ANALYSIS. the French at a distance, and continued to harass their settlements for many years.

1. *General tranquillity of Louisiana.*

28. [1]Except the occasional difficulties with the Chickasas, Louisiana now enjoyed a long season of general tranquillity and comparative prosperity, scarcely interrupted by the "War of the Succession,"[a] nor yet by the "French and Indian War,"[b] which raged so fiercely between the more northern colonies of France and England. [2]Yet the treaty of 1763* made a great change in the prospects of Louisiana. France had been unfortunate in the war, and, at its close, was compelled to cede to England not only all Canada and Acadia, but most of Louisiana also. By the terms of the treaty the western limits of the British possessions in America were extended to the Mississippi River—following that river from its source to the river Iberville, and thence passing through Lakes Maurepas and Pontchartrain to the Gulf of Mexico. On the eastern bank of the Mississippi, France saved from the grasp of England only the city and island† of New Orleans, and even these, the centre of her power in that region, together with the vast but indefinite western Louisiana, she foolishly ceded away to Spain.

a. See pp. 203 and 328.

b. See pp. 267 and 329.

2. *Louisiana, as affected by the treaty of 1763.*

3. *Causes that induced Spain to take part against England in the "French and Indian war."*

29. [3]This latter kingdom, jealous of the increasing power of the British in America, and alarmed for the safety of her own possessions there, had formed an alliance with France in the summer of 1761, and, in the following winter, had broken off friendly communications with England. These proceedings were followed by a declaration of war by England against Spain in the early part of January,[c] 1762. [4]Before the end of the same year, Spain suffered many severe losses, among which was the important city of Havanna,—the key to her West India and Mexican possessions. [5]In the treaty of peace which soon followed, Spain, in order to recover Havanna, was obliged to cede the Floridas to England. To compensate her for this loss, occasioned by espousing the quarrels of France, this latter power, by a secret article signed the same day with the public treaty, agreed to surrender to Spain all the remaining portion of Louisiana not ceded to England. This closing article of the treaty deprived France of all her possessions on the continent of North America.‡

1762.

c. Jan. 4.

4. *Losses suffered by Spain.*

5. *Causes that induced the cession of part of Louisiana to Spain.*

---

* By some writers this is called the peace of "1762." The preliminary articles were signed Nov. 3d, 1762. The definitive treaty was concluded Feb. 10, 1763.

† What is often mentioned in history as the "Island of Orleans," is that strip of land which was formed into an island by the bayou or channel of Iberville, which formerly flowed from the Mississippi into the small river Amité, and thence into Lake Maurepas. But this tract is now no longer an island, except at high flood of the Mississippi. See note, *Iberville*, p. 283.

‡ England, however, gave up to France the small islands of St Pierre and Miguelon, near Newfoundland, and also the islands of Martinico, Guadaloupe, Marigalante, Desirade, and St. Lucia, in the West Indies.

1764.

30. [1]This arrangement was for some time kept secret from the inhabitants of Louisiana, and when it was first made known by D'Abadie, the governor, in 1764, so great an aversion had the colonists to the Spanish government that the consternation was general throughout the province. [2]Spain, however, neglected for some years to take full possession of the country, and until 1769 the administration remained in the hands of the French, although, in the previous year, the court of Madrid had sent out as governor, Don Antonio D'Ulloa. [3]In 1769 Ulloa was replaced by the Spanish general, O'Reilly, by birth an Irishman, who brought with him a force of four thousand men for the purpose of reducing the Louisianians to submission, should resistance to the Spanish authorities be attempted.

1. The secrecy of this cession, and the aversion of the French colonists to the Spanish government.

2. Delay of Spain in taking possession of the country.

3. O'Reilly sent out as governor.

31. [4]Although the more determined talked of resistance, yet the troops landed without opposition, and O'Reilly began his administration with a show of mildness that did much to calm the excitement of the people. Soon, however, his vindictive disposition was manifested in the imprisonment and execution of several of the most distinguished men of the colony, who had manifested their attachment to France before the arrival of O'Reilly; and so odious did the tyranny of this despot become, that large numbers of the population, among them many of the wealthy merchants and planters, emigrated to the French colony of St. Domingo.

4. Tyranny of his administration.

32. [5]In 1770 O'Reilly was recalled, and under a succession of more enlightened governors, Louisiana again began to increase in population and resources. [6]The country continued to enjoy undisturbed repose during most of the war of the American Revolution, until, in 1779, Spain took part[a] in the contest against Great Britain. [7]Galvez, then governor of Louisiana, raised an army with which he attacked and gained possession of the British posts at Natchez and Baton Rouge, and those on the rivers Iberville and Amite. [8]In 1780 the post of Mobile fell into his hands; and early in the following year, after obtaining aid from Havana, he sailed against Pensacola. Being overtaken by a furious tempest, his fleet was dispersed; but, sailing again, he effected a landing on the island of Santa Rosa, where he erected a fort, and soon after, with his fleet, entered the Bay of Pensacola. The English then abandoned the city and retired to Fort George, which General Campbell, the commandant, defended for some time with great valor. But the powder magazine having exploded,[b] the principal redoubt was demolished, and Campbell found himself under the necessity of surrendering.[c] [9]By this conquest West Florida

5. His recall.

6. Louisiana during the American Revolution.

a. See p. 425.

7. Successes of Galvez against the British.

1781.

8. Mobile and Pensacola captured by him.

b. May 8.

c. May 10.

9. The Floridas secured to Spain by treaty.

ANALYSIS.

returned under the dominion of Spain, and at the close of the war the possession of the two Floridas, with enlarged limits, was ratified to her by treaty.

1783.

1. Treaty between the United States and Spain in 1795.

33. [1]Few events of importance occurred in Louisiana from the close of the American Revolution until 1795, when Spain ceded to the United States the free navigation of the Mississippi, with a right of deposit at New Orleans for produce and merchandize, to continue for three years, or until an equivalent establishment should be assigned them on another part of the banks of the Mississippi.

2. Designs of the Spanish governor of Louisiana.

[2]Carondelet, the Spanish governor, knowing the great value of these privileges to the Western States, had for some time entertained the design of separating the eastern valley of the Mississippi from the rest of the Union, and uniting it to Louisiana.

3. How affected by the treaty of 1795.

[3]But the treaty with Spain, if its stipulations should be fulfilled, would destroy all his hopes of accomplishing this scheme; as he knew that the people of the west, after obtaining what was so indispensable to their prosperity, would no longer have any motive in listening to his insidious proposals.

4. Other terms of the treaty, [illegible] violated.

[4]The treaty farther guarantied to the United States possession of all the posts then held by Spain on the east bank of the Mississippi, north of the 31st parallel of latitude; but these Carondelet persisted in retaining, in violation of the treaty, as a means of accomplishing his plans.

1797.

5. The Mississippi closed against the American trade.

a. Oct. 16.

34. [5]These posts were surrendered in 1797, during the administration of Gayoso de Lemos, who had succeeded Carondelet, but the Spanish officers still continued to infringe on the rights of the Americans, and in 1802 the Mississippi was entirely closed[a] to the American trade.

6. Excitement occasioned.

[6]These measures produced great excitement in the Western States, and a proposition was made in Congress to occupy New Orleans by force.

7. Mr. Jefferson.

[7]Fortunately, however, Mr. Jefferson, then president of the United States, had the prudence and sagacity to adopt a wiser course, and one which resulted in the acquisition to the American Union of all Louisiana.

8. Treaty of San Ildephonso, and Mr. Jefferson's design of purchasing the city and island of New Orleans.

[8]On the first of October, 1800, a treaty, called the treaty of San Ildephonso, had been concluded between France and Spain, by the third article of which Louisiana was receded to the former power. This cession was purposely kept secret, by the contracting parties, nearly two years; and when Mr. Jefferson was informed of it, he conceived the possibility of purchasing the city and island of New Orleans from the French government, and thereby satisfying the demands of the Western States, by securing to them the free navigation of the Mississippi.

9. Commissioners sent by him to France.

[9]In March, 1803, Mr. Monroe was sent to France commissioned with

full powers to treat for the purchase. Mr. Livingston, our minister then in Paris, was associated with him in the negotiation. **1803.**

35. [1]Unexpectedly, Bonaparte, then at the head of the French government, proposed to cede all Louisiana, instead of a single town and a small extent of territory which Mr. Monroe had been authorized to ask. [2]Although the powers of the American plenipotentiaries extended only to the purchase of the French possessions on the east bank of the Mississippi, and to the offer of two millions of dollars for the same, yet they did not hesitate to assume the responsibility of negotiating for all Louisiana, with the same limits that it had while in the possession of Spain. On the 30th of April the treaty was concluded; the United States stipulating to pay fifteen million dollars for the purchase. The treaty was ratified by Bonaparte on the 22d of May, and by the government of the United States on the 21st of October following.

1. Proposal of Bonaparte.

2 Purchase of all Louisiana by the United States.

36. [3]Although Louisiana had been ceded to France in October, 1800, yet it was not until the 30th of November, 1803, that France took possession of the country, and then only for the purpose of formally surrendering it to the United States, which was done on the 20th of September of the same year. [4]From that moment, when Louisiana became part of the American Union, the interests of the upper and lower sections of the valley of the Mississippi were harmoniously blended: the vast natural resources of that region of inexhaustible fertility began to be rapidly developed; and an opening was made through which American enterprise, and free institutions, have since been carried westward to the shores of the Pacific. [5]The importance, to us, of the acquisition of Louisiana, can scarcely be over-estimated, in considerations of national greatness. It must yet give us the command of the commerce of two oceans, while the valley of the Mississippi, so long held in colonial abeyance, so little valued in the councils of Europe, seems destined to become, as the centre of American power—the MISTRESS OF THE WORLD.

3. The transfer from Spain to France, and from France to the United States.

4. Change in the prospects of Louisiana.

5. Importance, to us, of the purchase of Louisiana, and probable future destiny of that region.

CHAPTER III.

HISTORY OF CANADA UNDER THE ENGLISH.

1. [1]The history of Canada, subsequent to the peace of 1763, is so intimately connected with that of the United

6. Course pursued in the present chapter.

ANALYSIS.

States, and so much of it has been embraced in former pages of this work, that we shall pass briefly over those portions common to both, and shall dwell on such events only as are necessary to preserve the history of Canada entire.

1. French and Indian war.

2. [1]The causes which led to the French and Indian war—the history of that eventful period—and the terms of the final treaty which closed the contest, have already been given. [2]By the articles of capitulation entered into on the surrender of Quebec, the Marquis de Vaudreuile[a] Cavagnal, then governor, obtained liberal stipulations for the good treatment of the inhabitants, the free exercise of the Catholic faith, and the preservation of the property belonging to the religious communities. [3]The change of dominion produced no material change in the condition of the country. All offices, however, were conferred on British subjects, who then consisted only of military men and a few traders, many of whom were poorly qualified for the situations they were called to occupy. They showed a bigoted spirit, and an offensive contempt of the old French inhabitants; but the new governor, Murray, strenuously protected the latter, and, by his impartial conduct, secured their confidence and esteem.

2. Terms obtained for the Canadians, by the articles of capitulation.

a. (Vo-droo-eel.)

3. Changes effected by the change of dominion.

1775.

3. [4]On the breaking out of the war of the American Revolution, the French Canadians maintained their allegiance to the British crown. [5]With a view to conciliate them, the "Quebec Act," passed in 1774, changed the English civil law, and introduced in its place the ancient French system, with the exception of the criminal branch, which continued to be similar to that of England. The French language was also directed to be employed in the courts of law, and other changes were made which gratified the pride of the French population, although they were far from giving universal satisfaction, especially as they were not attended with the grant of a representative assembly. [6]Only one serious attempt, on the part of the Americans, was made during the Revolution, to reduce Canada, after which the Canadians united with the British, and, assisted by the Six Nations, (with the exception of the Oneidas,) carried on a harassing warfare against the frontier settlements of New York.

4. The French Canadians during the Revolution.

5. The Quebec Act—changes introduced by it, &c.

6. Attempts of the Americans to reduce Canada, &c.

1783.

4. [7]The issue of the war of the Revolution was attended with considerable advantage to Canada. A large number of disbanded British soldiers, and loyalists from the United States, who had sought refuge in the British territories, received liberal grants of land in the Upper Province, bordering on the St. Lawrence and Lake Ontario, and at this period are dated the first permanent settlements

7. First settlements in Upper Canada, and liberality shown to the settlers.

in Upper Canada. The new settlers, termed "United Empire Loyalists," received not only an ample supply of land, but also farming utensils, building materials, and subsistence for two years. [1]By their exertions, aided by government, a wonderful change was soon produced, and a great extent of wilderness converted into fruitful fields. [2]On the site of Fort Frontenac was founded Kingston, which gradually rose into importance, and was long the capital of the Upper Province. [3]The town of York, since called Toronto, from its Indian name, was founded a few years later by General Simcoe, through whose influence a considerable number of emigrants, chiefly from the United States, were induced to settle in its neighborhood.

1783.

1. Changes produced by their exertions.

2. Kingston.

3. Toronto.

5. [4]The people continuing to petition for, and *demand* a representative government, in 1791 their requests were granted, and Canada was divided into two provinces, Upper and Lower, over which representative governments were established, on a basis resembling that of the British constitution. [5]For each province a governor was appointed by the crown, who had the same power in convoking, proroguing, and dissolving the representative assembly that the king has in England. [6]A legislative council was established, the members of which were appointed for life by the king. The attributes of the council were similar to those of the House of Lords in England,—having power to alter and even to reject all bills sent up from the lower house, which, however, could not become law until they had received the sanction of the assembly.

1791.

4. Division of Canada, and establishment of representative governments.

5. The governor and his powers.

6. The legislative assembly and its attributes.

6. [7]There was also an executive council, appointed by the king, whose duty it was to advise the governor, and aid him in performing the executive functions. [8]The representative assembly in each province had little direct power, except as forming a concurrent body of the general legislature. [9]Each provincial government had jurisdiction over all matters pertaining to the province, with the exception of the subject of religion, its ministers and revenues, and the waste lands belonging to the crown,—any acts affecting which subjects were invalid until they had been brought before the parliament of England, and received the sanction of the king.

7. The executive council.

8. The representative assembly.

9. Jurisdiction of each provincial government; how limited.

7. [10]Soon after the accession of General Prescott to the office of governor of the Lower Province, in 1797, numerous complaints were made respecting the granting of lands,—the board for that purpose having appropriated large districts to themselves, and thereby obstructed the general settlement of the country. [11]In 1803 a decision of the chief justice of Montreal declared slavery incon-

1797

10. Complaints respecting the granting of lands.

1803.

11. Abolition of slavery.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Sir James Craig.*

sistent with the laws of the country, and the few individuals held in bondage received a grant of freedom. [1]In 1807, apprehensions being felt of a war with the United States, Sir James Craig, an officer of distinction, was sent out as governor-general of the British provinces.

1812.

2. *The war of 1812.*

a. See Madison's Administration.

3. *Dissensions after the close of the war.*

4. *Early complaints and demands of the Assembly.*

8. [2]The principal events of the war of 1812, so far as they belong to Canadian history, have already been related in another portion of this work.[a] [3]Soon after the close of that war internal dissensions began to disturb the quiet of the two provinces, but more particularly that of Lower Canada. [4]So early as 1807, the assembly of the province made serious complaints of an undue influence of other branches of government over their proceedings, but in vain they demanded that the judges, who were dependent upon the executive and removable by him, should be expelled from their body.

1815.

5. *Sir Gordon Drummond, and Sir John Sherbrooke.*

6. *Changes introduced by the latter.*

9. [5]During the administration of Sir Gordon Drummond, in 1815, discontents began again to appear, but by the vigorous and conciliatory measures of Sir John Sherbrooke, who went out as governor in 1816, harmony was again restored. [6]He accepted the offer formerly made by the assembly to pay the expenses of the government out of the funds of the province, and instead of a specified sum for that purpose, to be perpetually established, consented to accept an amount merely sufficient to meet the current expenses.

1818.

7. *Administration of the Duke of Richmond.*

10. [7]In 1818 Sir John Sherbrooke was succeeded by the Duke of Richmond, who, departing from the conciliatory policy of his predecessor, introduced an innovation that led to a long and serious conflict between the executive and the assembly. Instead of submitting a detailed estimate of expenditures for each particular object, the whole amount alone was specified, under several heads. This change the assembly refused to sanction, but voted a sum in accordance with the estimates of the preceding year, in which the several items were specified. With this vote, however, the legislative council refused to concur, and the duke, expressing his displeasure with the assembly, drew from the colonial treasury the sum which he had demanded.

1819.

8. *Succession of Lord Dalhousie to the office of governor.*

9. *His controversy with the assembly, and final compromise.*

11. [8]In September, 1819, the life and government of the duke were suddenly terminated by an attack of hydrophobia, and in 1820 Lord Dalhousie was appointed governor of Canada. [9]He immediately became involved in the same difficulties with the assembly that his predecessor had encountered, and assuming even a higher tone, demanded a large sum as a permanent annual grant for the uses of the government. But the assembly still ad

hered to their purposes, until, finally, a compromise was effected, it being agreed that the actual expenses of government should be paid from funds of which the crown claimed the entire disposal, while the assembly should be left uncontrolled in the appropriations for popular objects affecting the more immediate interests of the province, and that the estimates for both purposes should be given in detail. **1820.**

12. [1]In the year 1823 the popular cause was strengthened by the insolvency of the receiver-general, or treasurer of the province, who proved to be indebted to the public more than four hundred thousand dollars. An inquiry into his accounts had long been vainly demanded by the assembly. [2]When in the following year the governor presented his estimates, the assembly took higher grounds, and denied the right of the crown to specify for what objects the public revenue should be appropriated. The unlawfulness of the appropriations was strongly insisted upon, and the amount demanded declared exorbitant.

1. Insolvency of the receiver-general.

2. New position assumed by the assembly.

13. [3]During the absence of Lord Dalhousie, in 1825, the government was administered by Sir Francis Burton, who, by yielding nearly all the points in dispute, succeeded in conciliating the assembly. [4]With each concession, however, the demands of the representatives increased, and they now claimed the right of an uncontrolled disposal of the whole revenue. [5]On the return of Lord Dalhousie in 1826, the concessions of Sir Francis Burton were disallowed, and the dissensions were renewed with increased violence. [6]On the meeting of the assembly in 1827, Mr. Papineau,[a] a popular leader in opposition to the measures of the administration, was elected speaker, but the governor refused to sanction his appointment, and the house continuing obstinate in its purpose, no session was held during the following winter. **1825.**

3. Administration of Sir Francis Burton.

4. Increasing demands of the assembly.

5. Renewed dissensions, on the return of Lord Dalhousie.

6. Papineau elected speaker of the assembly.

a. Pa-pe-no.

14. [7]In 1828, a petition, signed by 87,000 inhabitants of Canada, was presented to the king, complaining of the conduct of Lord Dalhousie, and of previous governors, and urging a compliance with the demands of the assembly. [8]The petition was referred to a committee of the House of Commons, which reported generally in its favor—condemning appropriations from the public revenue without the sanction of the representatives of the people—advising that even the income claimed by the crown should be placed under the control of the assembly—that a more liberal character should be conferred on the legislative and executive councils—that the public lands should be assigned in a more beneficial manner, and that a thorough and effectual redress of grievances should be made. **1828.**

7. Petition to the king.

8. Its reference to a committee of the house of commons, and their report.

ANALYSIS.

1. Report gratifying to the Canadians.

Sir James Kempt:—Judges, popular leaders, &c.

15. [1]This report was received by the Canadians with the greatest satisfaction, and their joy was increased when, near the close of the same year, Sir James Kempt was sent out as governor, with instructions to carry the recommendations of the committee into effect. The judges, although they refused to resign their places in the assembly, withdrew from its sittings; and seats in the executive council were even offered to Neilson, Papineau, and other popular leaders.

1830.

2. Lord Aylmer.

3. His instructions from the home government.

16. [2]In 1830 Lord Aylmer succeeded to the government, with assurances of his intentions to carry out, so far as depended on him, the reforms begun by his predecessor. [3]The home government, however, had instructed him that certain casual revenues, arising from the sale of lands, the cutting of timber, and other sources, were still to be considered as belonging to the crown, and were to be appropriated chiefly to the payment of the stipends of the clergy of the Established Church.

1831.

4. Opposing declarations of the assembly.

5. List of grievances.

a. March 8.

6. Concessions of the British government.

17. [4]When these instructions became known, the designs of government met with violent opposition, and the assembly declared that "under no circumstances, and upon no consideration whatever, would it abandon or compromise its claim of control over the whole public revenue." [5]A long list of grievances was also drawn up[a] and presented to the governor, who transmitted the same to the British government, with his admission that many of the complaints were well founded,—at the same time eulogizing the loyal disposition of the people of Canada. [6]Soon after, the British government yielded to the principal demands of the colonial assembly, by transferring to it all control over the most important revenues of the province.

7. Demands of the British government.

8. The course taken by the assembly in relation to these demands.

18. [7]In return, permanent salaries were demanded for the judges, the governor, and a few of the chief executive officers. [8]The assembly consented to make the required provision for the judges, but on the condition that the casual revenues, which had been sought to be reserved to the crown, should be appropriated for this purpose. This condition, however, the home government refused to accede to. A large majority of the assembly voted against making a permanent provision for the governor, and other executive officers, on the ground that the executive, not being dependent on the representatives of the people for a naval and military establishment, would, in case of such permanent settlement, have been entirely free from that provincial control and dependence essential to the public security and welfare.

9. Demands of the assembly for a change of the legislative council.

19. [9]The representatives were now completely at issue with the crown, and the breach continually widened. The

assembly began to specify conditions on which certain salaries should be paid to officers of government, and, as a radical measure of reform, next demanded that the legislative council, hitherto appointed by the crown,[a] should be abolished, and a new one, similar to the American senate, substituted in its place, with members elected by the people. [1]Early in 1833 a petition was transmitted to the king, signed by Papineau, then speaker of the house of assembly, strenuously urging this democratic measure, and the calling of a provincial congress to make the necessary arrangements. [2]In reply to this petition, the British ministry declared the proposed change altogether inconsistent with the very existence of monarchical institutions, and, evidently irritated by the course of the assembly, very imprudently alluded to "the possibility that events might unhappily force upon Parliament the exercise of its supreme authority to compose the internal dissensions of the colonies, and which might lead to a modification of the charter of the Canadas."

1832.

a. See verse 5.

1833.

1. *The petition of 1833.*

2. *The reply of the British ministry.*

20. [3]This despatch, and particularly the implied threat, excited the highest indignation in the assembly, which now refused to pass any bill of supply whatever, and the session of 1834 was passed in the preparation of another long list of grievances. The complaints closed with a peremptory demand for an elective legislative council, without which, the assembly declared, nothing would satisfy the Canadian people. [4]While affairs remained in this unsettled state, some changes were made in the British ministry, and in the autumn of 1835 the Earl of Gosford was sent out as governor of Canada. He professed conciliatory views, intimated the readiness of government to place the entire revenue at the disposal of the assembly, and conveyed an indirect intimation that the subject of the desired change in the legislative council would receive proper consideration.

1834.

3. *Continued opposition, and complaints of the assembly.*

1835.

4. *The Earl of Gosford, and his professions*

21. [5]But the good understanding, occasioned by the conciliatory language and conduct of the governor, was suddenly interrupted when the real nature of the instructions furnished him by the British government became known. [6]Lord Gosford had concealed his instructions, with the object, as was supposed, of first obtaining from the assembly the supplies which he needed; but his designs were discovered before he had reaped the fruits of his duplicity. [7]Sir Francis Bond Head, who had been sent out as governor of Upper Canada, seemingly unapprised of Lord Gosford's intentions, had made public a part of the instructions furnished both governors. [8]The ministry had declared, in relation to an elective legislative council,

5. *The good understanding between the assembly and the governor interrupted.*

6. *The course that had been taken by Lord Gosford.*

7. *By Sir Francis Head*

8. *Declaration of the ministry relative to an elective council.*

ANALYSIS.

that "The king was most unwilling to admit, as open to debate, the question whether one of the vital principles of the provincial government shall undergo alteration."

1. *Excitement, and course pursued by the assembly.*

22. [1]Intense excitement followed this development;—the assembly not only complained of disappointment, but charged the governor with perfidy; the customary supplies were withheld, and no provision was made for the public service. [2]In the autumn of 1836, the majority of the assembly, in an address presented to the governor, declared their positive adherence to their former demands for an elective council,—maintained that they themselves, in opposition to the then existing legislative council, "the representatives of the tory party," were the only legitimate and authorized organ of the people,—and, finally, they expressed their resolution to grant no more supplies until the great work of justice and reform should be completed.

1836.

2. *Character of the address presented to the governor, by the assembly, in 1836.*

3. *The crisis.*

23. [3]Matters had now arrived at a crisis in which the monarchical features of the provincial administration were to be abandoned by the British ministry, or violent measures adopted for carrying on the existing government. [4]Early in 1837 the British parliament, by a vote of 318 to 56, declared the inexpediency of making the legislative council elective by the people, and of rendering the executive council[a] responsible to the assembly. [5]Intelligence of this vote occasioned violent commotions in the Canadas, and various meetings of the people were held, in which it was affirmed that the decision of parliament had extinguished all hopes of justice, and that no farther attempts should be made to obtain redress from that quarter. [6]A general convention was proposed to consider what farther measures were advisable, and a recommendation was made to discontinue the use of British manufactures, and of all articles paying taxes.

1837.

4. *Vote of Parliament on Canadian affairs.*

a. See verse 6.

5. *Violent commotions, public meetings, &c.*

6. *Convention proposed, &c.*

24. [7]In consequence of this state of things, and learning that the people were organizing for violent measures under the influence of Papineau, early in June Lord Gosford called upon the governor of New Brunswick for a regiment of troops, and issued a proclamation warning the people against all attempts to seduce them from their allegiance. [8]Meetings of the loyalists were also held in Montreal and Quebec, condemning the violent proceedings of the assembly, and deprecating both the objects and the measures of the so-called patriot party.

7. *Call for troops, and governor's proclamation.*

8. *Meetings of the loyalists.*

25. [9]In August Lord Gosford called a meeting of the provincial legislature, and submitted measures for amending the legislative council, but the representatives adhered to their former purposes of withholding supplies until all

9. *Meeting of the legislature in August, and the result.*

1837.

their grievances should be redressed, when the governor, expressing his regret at measures which he considered a virtual annihilation of the constitution, prorogued the assembly. [1]A recourse to arms appears now to have been resolved upon by the popular leaders, with the avowed object of effecting an entire separation from the parent state. [2]A central committee was formed at Montreal; an association called "The Sons of Liberty," paraded the streets in a hostile manner, and a proclamation was emitted by them, denouncing the "wicked designs of the British government," and calling upon all friends of their country to rally around the standard of freedom.

1. Resolution now adopted by the popular leaders.

2. Central Committee,—"Sons of Liberty," &c.

26. [3]In the county of Two Mountains, north of the Ottawa, and adjoining Montreal on the west, the people deposed their magistrates, and reorganized the militia under officers of their own selection, and British authority entirely ceased in that quarter. [4]These proceedings were soon after imitated in six of the more populous counties lying southward of the St. Lawrence, where all persons holding offices under the crown were compelled to resign their situations, or leave the country. [5]Loyalist associations, however, were formed in opposition to these movements, and the Catholic clergy, headed by the bishop of Montreal, earnestly exhorted the people to take no part in the violent proceedings of the "Patriot party."

3. Hostile proceedings in the county of Two Mountains.

4. In the counties south of the St. Lawrence

5. Opposition to the movements of the 'Patriot party.'

27. [6]In Montreal the "Sons of Liberty" were attacked[a] in the streets and dispersed by the loyalists, and, although none were killed, several were dangerously wounded. The office of the Vindicator newspaper was destroyed, and the house of Papineau, the great agitator, was set on fire by the victors, but rescued from the flames. [7]Exaggerated reports of this affair spread through the country, increasing the general ferment, and giving new strength to the cause of the disaffected. [8]It being announced that resistance was assuming a more organized form, the government issued warrants for the arrest of twenty-six of the most active patriot leaders, of whom seven were members of the assembly, including Papineau, the speaker of that body.

6. Disturbances in Montreal.

a. Nov. 6.

7. Effects produced by the reports of this affair.

8. Warrants for the arrest of the Patriot leaders.

28. [9]Several were apprehended, but Papineau could not be found. A body of militia, sent to make some arrests in the vicinity of St. Johns, on the Sorel, succeeded in their purpose, but on their return they were attacked by a party of the insurgents, and the prisoners were rescued. [10]In the latter part of November, strong detachments of government troops, commanded by Colonels Gore and Wetherall, were sent to attack armed bodies of the insurgents, assembled under Papineau, Brown, and Neilson,

9. Arrests and rescue of prisoners.

10. Armed detachments sent against the insurgents.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Repulse of Colonel Gore.*

a. Nov. 23.

2. *Success of Colonel Wetherall.*

b. Nov.

3. *The result of this expedition.*

at the villages of St. Dennis and St. Charles, on the Sorel. [1]Colonel Gore proceeded against St. Dennis, which he attacked[a] with great spirit, but was repulsed with a loss of ten killed, ten wounded, and six missing. [2]Colonel Wetherall was more successful. Although St. Charles was defended by nearly a thousand men, the place was carried after a severe engagement,[b] in which the insurgents lost nearly three hundred in killed and wounded. [3]This affair suppressed the insurrection in that quarter. The peasantry, panic struck, threw down their arms; Neilson was taken prisoner; and Brown and Papineau sought safety by escaping to the United States.

4. *Expedition in December.*

5. *Insurgents defeated at St. Eustache.*

c. Dec. 14.

6. *Surrender of St. Benoit, and tranquillity restored.*

29. [4]In December thirteen hundred regular and volunteer troops were sent against the districts of Two Mountains and Terrebonne, which were still in a state of rebellion. [5]At St. Eustache an obstinate stand was made[c] by the insurgents, who were finally defeated with severe loss. Numbers of the inhabitants were remorselessly massacred, and their beautiful village burned. [6]The village of St. Benoit, which had been the chief seat of insurrection, surrendered without resistance, but such was the rage of the loyalists, who had been plundered and driven out of the country, that they reduced a large portion of the village to ashes. Several of the patriot leaders were taken, and at the close of the year 1837 the whole province of Lower Canada was again in a state of tranquillity.

7. *State of affairs in Upper Canada.*

8. *Events in 1836 and 1837.*

30. [7]In the mean time Upper Canada had become the theatre of important events. A discontented party had arisen there, demanding reforms similar to those which had been the cause of dissensions in the lower province, and especially urging the necessity of rendering the legislative council elective by the people. [8]In 1836 the assembly had stopped the ordinary supplies, but in the following year, when a new election for members was held, the influence of the governor, Sir Francis Head, succeeded in causing the election of a majority of members friendly to the existing government.

9. *On the breaking out of the insurrection in the lower province.*

10. *Contemplated attack upon Toronto.*

d. Dec. 5.

11. *Design abandoned.*

31. [9]From this time tranquillity prevailed until the breaking out of the insurrection in the lower province, when the leaders of the popular party, who had long desired a separation from Great Britain, seized the opportunity for putting their plans in execution. [10]During the night of the 5th of December, 1837, about five hundred men, under the command of Mackenzie, assembled at Montgomergy's Tavern, four miles from Toronto, with the view of taking the city by surprise. [11]Several persons proceeding to the city were taken prisoners, but one of them escaping, the alarm was given, and by morning three

1837.

hundred loyalists were mustered under arms, and the design of attacking the place was abandoned. [1]On the 7th the loyalists marched out to attack the insurgents, who were easily dispersed, and many of them taken prisoners.

Dec. 7.
1. *Dispersion of the insurgents.*

33. [2]In a few days several thousands of the militia were mustered under arms for the defence of the government, and it being understood that Duncombe, another popular leader, had assembled a body of the insurgents in the London District, Colonel M'Nab was sent thither to disperse them. On his approach the patriot leaders disappeared, their followers laid down their arms, and tranquillity was restored throughout the province.

2. *Arming of the Militia, and restoration of tranquillity.*

33. [3]Mackenzie, however, having fled to Buffalo, succeeded in kindling there a great enthusiasm for the cause of the "Canadian Patriots." A small corps was quickly assembled; Van Rensselaer, Sutherland, and others, presented themselves as military leaders; possession was taken of Navy Island,[a] situated in the Niagara channel; and fortifications were there commenced which were defended by thirteen pieces of cannon. [4]Recruits flocked to this post until their numbers amounted to about a thousand. [5]Colonel M'Nab soon arrived with a large body of government troops, but without the materials for crossing the channel, or successfully cannonading the position of the insurgents.

3. *Events at Buffalo, and seizure of Navy Island by the insurgents.*

a. See Map p. 451.

4. *Their numbers.*

5. *Government troops.*

34. [6]Much excitement prevailed along the American frontier, and volunteers from the states began to flock in in considerable numbers to aid the cause of the 'patriots.' [7]But the American president, Mr. Van Buren, issued two successive proclamations, warning the people of the penalties to which they would expose themselves by engaging in hostilities with a friendly power, and also appointed General Scott to take command of the disturbed frontier, and enforce a strict neutrality.

6. *Volunteers from the States in aid of the Patriots*

7. *Course pursued by the American government.*

35. [8]In the mean time a small steamer, named the Caroline, had been employed by the insurgents in conveying troops and stores from Fort Schlosser, on the American shore, to Navy Island. Captain Drew, having been instructed by Colonel M'Nab to intercept her return, but not being able to meet the boat in the channel, attacked[b] her at night, while moored at the American shore. At least one of the crew was killed, and the vessel after being towed to the middle of the stream, was set on fire and abandoned, when the burning mass was borne downward by the current, and precipitated over the Falls.

8. *Destruction of the steamer Caroline*

b. Dec. 29-30.

36. [9]This act, occurring within the waters of the United States, occasioned much excitement throughout the Union, and led to an angry correspondence between

9. *Excitement occasioned by this act.*

ANALYSIS.

1838.

1. *Evacuation of Navy Island by the insurgents.*

the British and the American minister. [1]After the arrival of General Scott on the frontier, effective measures were taken to prevent farther supplies and recruits from reaching Navy Island, when, the force of the assailants continually increasing, and a severe cannonade having been commenced by them, the insurgents evacuated their position on the 14th of January. [2]Van Rensselaer and Mackenzie, escaping to the United States, were arrested by the American authorities, but admitted to bail. [3]A number of the fugitives fled to the west, and under their leader, Sutherland, formed an establishment on an island in the Detroit channel. After meeting with some reverses,[a] this party also voluntarily disbanded.

Jan. 14.

2. *Van Rensselaer and Mackenzie.*

3. *The party under Sutherland.*

a. Feb. and March.

4. *The Earl of Durham governor-general of British America.*

5. *Causes of his resignation.*

37. [4]Tranquillity was now restored to both Canadas—parliament made some changes in the constitution of the lower province—and in May, 1838, the Earl of Durham arrived at Quebec, as governor-general of all British America. [5]Having taken the responsibility of banishing to Bermuda, under penalty of death in case of return, a number of prisoners taken in the late insurrection, and charged with the crime of high treason, his conduct met with some censure in the British parliament, which induced him to resign his commission, and on the 1st of November he sailed from Quebec, on his return to England.

Nov. 1.

6. *Sir Francis Head's resignation.*

7. *His character.*

8. *Incursions by bands of the Americans.*

38. [6]Sir Francis Head had previously resigned the office of governor of Upper Canada, on account of some disapprobation which the British ministry had expressed in relation to his conduct. [7]He was a stern monarchist, and condemned all measures of conciliation towards the Canadian republicans. [8]In June, soon after his departure, several bands of the Americans, invited by the 'patriots,' crossed the Niagara channel, but were driven back by the militia. A party also crossed near Detroit, but after losing a few of their number, were compelled to return.

Nov. 3.

9. *Rebellion in the Montreal District.*

10. *Events at Napierville and Odelltown.*

39. [9]On the 3d of November, only two days after the departure of the Earl of Durham, a fresh rebellion, which had been organizing during the summer along the whole line of the American frontier, broke out in the southern counties of Montreal District. [10]At Napierville, west of the Sorel, Dr. Neilson and other leaders had collected about 4000 men, several hundred of whom were detached to open a communication with their friends on the American side of the line. These were attacked and repulsed by a party of loyalists, who afterwards posted themselves in Odelltown chapel, where they were in turn attacked by a large body of the insurgents, headed by Neilson himself, but after a severe engagement the latter were obliged to retreat with considerable loss.

1838.

40. [1]In the meantime seven regiments of the line, under the command of Sir James McDonnell, crossed the St. Lawrence and marched upon Napierville, but on their approach the insurgents dispersed. So rapid were the movements of the government troops that the insurrection in Lower Canada was entirely suppressed at the expiration of only one week after the first movement. [2]A few days after these events, several hundred Americans sailed from the vicinity of Sacketts Harbor and landed near Prescott, where they were joined by a number of the Canadians. On the 13th of November they were attacked by the government troops, but the latter were repulsed, with the loss of eighteen in killed and wounded. On the 16th they were attacked by a superior force, when nearly the whole party surrendered, or were taken prisoners.

1. Dispersion of the insurgents, and suppression of the insurrection in Lower Canada. Nov. 11.

2. Incursions of Americans from Sackett's Harbor, and their final defeat. Nov. 13.

Nov. 16.

41. [3]Notwithstanding the ill success of all the invasions hitherto planned on the American side of the line in aid of the Canadian insurgents, on the 4th of December a party of about two hundred crossed from Detroit, and landing a few miles above Sandwich, dispersed a party of British, and burned the barracks and a British steamer, but being attacked by a larger body of British on the same day, they were defeated and dispersed. A number of the prisoners were ordered to be shot by the Canadian authorities immediately after the engagement.

3. Incursion from Detroit, and the result. Dec. 4.

42. [4]These events, occurring in the latter part of 1838, closed the "Canadian Rebellion." [5]Throughout the disturbances, the American government, acting upon principles of strict neutrality, had zealously endeavored, as in duty bound, to prevent its citizens from organizing within its borders, for the purpose of invading the territory of a friendly power; yet doubtless a majority of the American people sympathized with the Canadians, and wished success to their cause. [6]The exceedingly defective organization of the insurgents, their want of concert, their irresolution, and the want of harmony among their leaders, show that the Canadian people, however great may have been the grievances of which they complained, were at that time totally unprepared to effect a forcible separation from the mother country.

4. End of the rebellion.

5. Course taken by the American government throughout these disturbances,—and feelings of the American people.

6. The Canadian people unprepared for a forcible separation from the mother country.

1840.

43. [7]As the last great event in Canadian history, on the 23d of July, 1840, the British parliament, after much discussion, passed an act by which the provinces of Upper and Lower Canada were united into one, under the name of the Province of Canada. [8]The form of government adopted was similar to that previously existing in each province,—consisting of a governor appointed by her Majesty, a legislative council, and a representative

7. Union of the two Canadas.

8. Form of government adopted.

ANALYSIS.

1. *The legislative council.*

2. *Members of the assembly.*

3. *The public revenue.*

4. *Concluding remarks.*

assembly. The former executive council was abolished. [1]The members of the legislative council were to consist of such persons, not being fewer than twenty, as the governor should summon with her Majesty's permission,—each member to hold his seat during life. [2]The members of the representative assembly were to be elected by the people, but no person was eligible to an election who was not possessed of land, free from all incumbrances, to the value of five hundred pounds sterling.

44. [3]The duties and revenues of the two former provinces were consolidated into one fund, from which seventy-five thousand pounds sterling were made payable, annually, for the expenses of the government. After being subject to these charges the surplus of the revenue fund might be appropriated as the legislature saw fit, but still in accordance with the recommendations of the governor. [4]Such are briefly the general features of the present constitution of Canada. Only a few of the evils, so long complained of, have been removed, and the great mass of the people have yet but little share either in the choice of their rulers, or in the free enactment of the laws by which the province is governed.

CHAPTER IV.

NOVA SCOTIA.

5. *Geographical position of Nova Scotia.*

a. See Map, p. 504.

6. *Extent, surface, soil, &c.*

1. [5]Nova Scotia, according to its present limits, forms a large peninsula,[a] separated from the continent by the Bay of Fundy, and its branch Chignecto, and connected with it by a narrow isthmus between the latter bay and the Gulf of St. Lawrence. [6]The peninsula is about 385 miles in length from northeast to southwest, and contains an area of nearly sixteen thousand square miles. The surface of the country is broken, and the Atlantic coast is generally barren, but some portions of the interior are fertile.

1605.

7. *Early history of the country.*

b. See Map, p. 504.

1614.

c. See pp. 134 and 168.

1621.

8. *Grants to Sir William Alexander.*

2. [7]The settlement of Port Royal, (now Annapolis[b]) by De Monts, in 1605, and also the conquest of the country by Argall, in 1614, have already been mentioned.[c] France made no complaint of Argall's aggression, beyond demanding the restoration of the prisoners, nor did Britain take any immediate measures for retaining her conquests. [8]But in 1621 Sir William Alexander, afterwards Earl of Stirling, obtained from the king, James I., a grant of Nova

Scotia and the adjacent islands, and in 1625 the patent was renewed by Charles I., and extended so as to embrace all Canada, and the northern portions of the United States. [1]In 1623 a vessel was despatched with settlers, but they found the whole country in the possession of the French, and were obliged to return to England without effecting a settlement.

1625.

1. *Vessel sent out in 1623.*

3. [2]In 1628, during a war with France, Sir David Kirk, who had been sent out by Alexander, succeeded in reducing Nova Scotia, and in the following year he completed the conquest of Canada, but the whole country was restored by treaty in 1632.

1628.

2. *Conquest and restoration of Canada.*

1632.

4. [3]The French court now divided Nova Scotia among three individuals, La Tour, Denys, and Razillai, and appointed Razillai commander-in-chief of the country. The latter was succeeded by Charnisé,[a] between whom and La Tour a deadly feud arose, and violent hostilities were for some time carried on between the rivals. At length, Charnisé dying, the controversy was for a time settled by La Tour's marrying the widow of his deadly enemy, but soon after La Borgne[b] appeared, a creditor of Charnisé, and with an armed force endeavored to crush at once Denys and La Tour. But after having subdued several important places, and while preparing to attack St. John, a more formidable competitor presented himself.

3. *Apportionment of the country among the French, and the violent feuds that followed.*

a. (Char-ne-sa.)

b. (Born.)

5. [4]Cromwell, having assumed the reins of power in England, declared war against France, and, in 1654, despatched an expedition against Nova Scotia, which soon succeeded in reducing the rival parties, and the whole country submitted to his authority. [5]La Tour, accommodating himself to circumstances, and making his submission to the English, obtained, in conjunction with Sir Thomas Temple, a grant of the greater part of the country. Sir Thomas bought up the share of La Tour, spent nearly 30,000 dollars in fortifications, and greatly improved the commerce of the country; but all his prospects were blasted by the treaty of Breda[c] in 1667, by which Nova Scotia was again ceded to France.

1654.

4. *Nova Scotia conquered by the English in 1654.*

5. *Grant to La Tour and Sir Thomas Temple; and recession of the country to France.*

c. See p. 303.

1667.

6. [6]The French now resumed possession of the colony, which as yet contained only a few unpromising settlements,—the whole population in 1680 not exceeding nine hundred individuals. [7]The fisheries, the only productive branch of business, were carried on by the English. [8]There were but few forts, and these so weak that two of them were taken and plundered by a small piratical vessel. [9]In this situation, after the breaking out of the war with France in 1689,[d] Acadia appeared an easy conquest. The achievement was assigned to Massachusetts. In

6. *Population.*

7. *Fisheries.*

8. *Forts.*

9. *Nova Scotia reduced by the English in 1690, but soon reconquered by the French*

d. See pp. 197 and 321.

ANALYSIS.

1690.

May, 1690, Sir William Phipps, with 700 men, appeared before Port Royal, which soon surrendered; but he merely dismantled the fortress, and then left the country a prey to pirates. A French commander arriving in November of the following year, the country was reconquered, simply by pulling down the English and hoisting the French flag.

1. Conquered by the Bostonians, but ceded to France by the treaty of Ryswick.

7. [1]Soon after, the Bostonians, aroused by the depredations of the French and Indians on the frontiers, sent out a body of 500 men, who soon regained the whole country, with the exception of one fort on the river St. John. Acadia now remained in possession of the English until the treaty of Ryswick in 1697, when it was again restored to France.

1697.

2. War renewed, expeditions against Nova Scotia, and final conquest of the country by the English in 1710.

8. [2]The peace of 1697 was speedily succeeded by a declaration of war against France and Spain in 1702.[a] It was again resolved to reduce Nova Scotia, and the achievement was again left to Massachusetts, with the assurance that what should be gained by arms would not again be sacrificed by treaty. The first expedition, despatched in 1704, met with little resistance, but did little more than ravage the country. In 1707 a force of 1000 soldiers was sent against Port Royal, but the French commandant conducted the defence of the place with so much ability, that the assailants were obliged to retire with considerable loss.[b] In 1710 a much larger force, under the command of General Nicholson, appeared before Port Royal, but the French commandant, having but a feeble garrison, and declining to attempt a resistance, obtained an honorable capitulation.[c] Port Royal was now named Annapolis. From this period Nova Scotia has been permanently annexed to the British crown.

a. See pp. 201 and 324.

b. See p. 202.

1710.

c. See p. 202.

3. The Indians of Nova Scotia.

9. [3]The Indians of Nova Scotia, who were warmly attached to the French, were greatly astonished on being informed that they had become the subjects of Great Britain. [4]Determined, however, on preserving their independence, they carried on a long and vigorous war against the English. In 1720 they plundered a large establishment at Canseau, carrying off fish and merchandise to the amount of 10,000 dollars; and in 1723 they captured at the same place, seventeen sail of vessels, with numerous prisoners, nine of whom they deliberately and cruelly put to death.

4. Their warlike operations against the English.

1720.

1723.

5. Aid obtained from Massachusetts.

6. The Indians defeated, and tranquillity restored.

1728.

10. [5]As the Indians still continued hostile, the British inhabitants of Nova Scotia were obliged to solicit aid from Massachusetts, and in 1728 that province sent a body of troops against the principal village of the Norridgewocks, on the Kennebec. [6]The enemy were sur

prised, and defeated with great slaughter, and among the slain was Father Rallé,[a] their missionary, a man of considerable literary attainments, who had resided among the savages forty years. By this severe stroke the savages were overawed, and for many years did not again disturb the tranquillity of the English settlements. 1728.

a. (Ral-la.)

11. [1]In 1744 war broke out anew between England and France.[b] The French governor of Cape Breton immediately attempted the reduction of Nova Scotia, took Canseau, and twice laid siege to Annapolis, but without effect. The English, on the other hand, succeeded in capturing Louisburg,[c] the Gibraltar of America, but when peace was concluded, by the treaty of Aix la Chapelle, in 1748, the island of Cape Breton was restored to France. 1744. 1748.

b. See pp. 202 and 228.

1. *Events in Nova Scotia during "King George's war."*

c. See p. 205.

12. [2]After the treaty, Great Britain began to pay more attention to Nova Scotia, which had hitherto been settled almost exclusively by the French, who, upon every rupture between the two countries, were accused of violating their neutrality. In order to introduce a greater proportion of English settlers, it was now proposed to colonize there a large number of the soldiers who had been discharged in consequence of the disbanding of the army, and in the latter part of June, 1749, a company of nearly 4000 adventurers of this class was added to the population of the colony. 1749.

2. *Policy of England in relation to Nova Scotia, after the treaty of Aix la Chapelle.*

New colonists.

13. [3]To every private was given fifty acres of land, with ten additional acres for each member of his family. A higher allowance was granted to officers, till it amounted to six hundred acres for every person above the degree of captain, with proportionable allowances for the number and increase of every family. The settlers were to be conveyed free of expense, to be furnished with arms and ammunition, and with materials and utensils for clearing their lands and erecting habitations, and to be maintained twelve months after their arrival, at the expense of the government.

3. *Liberal terms granted to the colonists.*

14. [4]The emigrants having been landed at Chebucto harbor, under the charge of the Honorable Edward Cornwallis, whom the king had appointed their governor, they immediately commenced the building of a town, on a regular plan, to which the name of Halifax was given, in honor of the nobleman who had the greatest share in founding the colony. [5]The place selected for the settlement possessed a cold, sterile and rocky soil, yet it was preferred to Annapolis, as it was considered more favorable for trade and fishery, and it likewise possessed one of the finest harbors in America. [6]Of so great impor-

4. *Founding of Halifax.*

5. *Description of the place.*

6. *Aid furnished by Parliament.*

ANALYSIS.

tance to England was the colony deemed, that Parliament continued to make annual grants for it, which, in 1755, had amounted to the enormous sum of nearly two millions of dollars.

1. Unpleasant situation of the English settlers.

2. Disputes about boundaries.

15. [1]But although the English settlers were thus firmly established, they soon found themselves unpleasantly situated. [2]The limits of Nova Scotia had never been defined, by the treaties between France and England, with sufficient clearness to prevent disputes about boundaries, and each party was now striving to obtain possession of a territory claimed by the other. [3]The government of France contended that the British dominion, according to the treaty which ceded Nova Scotia, extended only over the present peninsula of the same name; while, according to the English, it extended over all that large tract of country formerly known as Acadia, including the present province of New Brunswick. [4]Admitting the English claim, France would be deprived of a portion of territory of great value to her, materially affecting her control over the River and Gulf of St. Lawrence, and greatly endangering the security of her Canadian possessions.

3. Conflicting claims of France and England.

4. Effect of admitting the English claim.

5. Conduct of the French settlers.

16. [5]When, therefore, the English government showed a disposition effectually to colonize the country, the French settlers began to be alarmed, and though they did not think proper to make an open avowal of their jealousy, they employed their emissaries in exciting the Indians to hostilities in the hope of effectually preventing the English from extending their plantations, and, perhaps, of inducing them to abandon their settlements entirely. [6]The Indians even made attacks upon Halifax, and the colonists could not move into the adjoining woods, singly or in small parties, without danger of being shot and scalped, or taken prisoners.

6. Of the Indians.

7. Erection of forts by the French.

a. (Bo-sa-zhoor. See Map, next page.

17. [7]In support of the French claims, the governor of Canada sent detachments, which, aided by strong bodies of Indians and a few French Acadians, erected the fort of Beau Sejour[a] on the neck of the peninsula of Nova Scotia, and another on the river St. John, on pretence that these places were within the government of Canada. [8]Encouraged by these demonstrations, the French inhabitants around the bay of Chignecto rose in open rebellion against the English government, and in the spring of 1750 the governor of Nova Scotia sent Major Lawrence with a few men to reduce them to obedience. At his approach, the French abandoned their dwellings, and placed themselves under the protection of the commandant of Fort Beau Sejour, when Lawrence, finding the enemy too

8. Rebellion of the French, and expedition of Major Lawrence against them.

1750.

strong for him, was obliged to retire without accomplishing his object. **1750.**

18. [1]Soon after, Major Lawrence was again detached with 1000 men, but after driving in the outposts of the enemy, he was a second time obliged to retire. [2]To keep the French in check, however, the English built a fort on the neck of the peninsula, which, in honor of its founder, was called Fort Lawrence.[a] [3]Still the depredations of the Indians continued, the French erected additional forts in the disputed territory, and vessels of war, with troops and military stores, were sent to Canada and Cape Breton, until the forces in both these places became a source of great alarm to the English.

1. Second expedition of Lawrence.

2. Fort Lawrence built.

a. See Map below.

3. Continued causes of alarm to the English.

19. [4]At length, in 1755, Admiral Boscawen commenced the war, which had long been anticipated by both parties, by capturing on the coast of Newfoundland two French vessels, having on board eight companies of soldiers and about 35,000 dollars in specie. [5]Hostilities having thus begun, a force was immediately fitted out from New England, under Lieutenant Colonels Monckton and Winslow, to dislodge the enemy from their newly erected forts.[b] The troops embarked at Boston on the 20th of May, and arrived at Annapolis on the 25th, whence they sailed on the 1st of June, in a fleet of forty-one vessels to Chignecto, and anchored about five miles from Fort Lawrence. **1755.**

4. Commencement of the war by the capture of French vessels.

5. Expedition from New England sent against the French posts on the borders of Nova Scotia.

b. See also p. 271, also Map below.

[6]20. On their arrival at the river Massaguash,[c] they found themselves opposed by a large number of regular forces, rebel Acadians, and Indians, 450 of whom occupied a block-house,[d] while the remainder were posted within a strong outwork of timber. The latter were attacked by the English provincials with such spirit that they soon fled, when the garrison deserted the block-house, and left the passage of the river free. Thence Colonel Monckton advanced against Fort Beau Sejour, which he invested on the 12th of June, and after four days' bombardment compelled it to surrender.

6. Reduction of the French forts at the head of Chignecto Bay.

c. See Map below.

d. See Map

21. [7]Having garrisoned the place, and changed its name to that of Cumberland, he next attacked and reduced another French fort near the mouth of the river Gaspereau,[e] at the head of Bay Verte or Green Bay, where he found a large quantity of provisions and stores, which had been collected for the use of the Indians and Acadians. A squadron sent against the post on the St. John, found it abandoned and destroyed. The success of the expedition secured the tran-

7. Reduction of other posts and final conquest of all French Acadia.

e. See Map.

ANALYSIS.

quillity of all French Acadia, then claimed by the English under the name of Nova Scotia.

1. *State of the war at this time, and apprehensions entertained by the English.*

22. [1]The peculiar situation of the Acadians, however, was a subject of great embarrassment to the local government of the province. In Europe, the war had begun unfavorably to the English, while General Braddock, sent with a large force to invade Canada, had been defeated with the loss of nearly his whole army.[a] Powerful reenforcements had been sent by the French to Louisburg and other posts in America, and serious apprehensions were entertained that the enemy would next invade Nova Scotia, where they would find a friendly population, both European and Indian.

a. See p. 272.

2. *Population, condition, and character of the French Acadians.*

23. [2]The French Acadians at that period amounted to seventeen or eighteen thousand. They had cultivated a considerable extent of land, possessed about 60,000 head of cattle, had neat and comfortable dwellings, and lived in a state of plenty, but of great simplicity. They were a peaceful, industrious, and amiable race, governed mostly by their pastors, who exercised a parental authority over them; they cherished a deep attachment to their native country, they had resisted every invitation to bear arms against it, and had invariably refused to take the oath of allegiance to Great Britain. [3]Although the great body of these people remained tranquilly occupied in the cultivation of their lands, yet a few individuals had joined the Indians, and about 300 were taken in the forts, in open rebellion against the government of the country.

3. *The part they had taken in the war.*

4. *Cruel determination of the English governor and commanders.*

24. [4]Under these circumstances, Governor Lawrence and his council, aided by Admirals Boscawen and Mostyn, assembled to consider what disposal of the Acadians the security of the country required. Their decision resulted in the determination to tear the whole of this people from their homes, and disperse them through the different British colonies, where they would be unable to unite in any offensive measures, and where they might in time become naturalized to the government. Their lands, houses, and cattle, were, without any alleged crime, declared to be forfeited; and they were allowed to carry with them only their money and household furniture, both of extremely small amount.

5. *The measures taken to enforce this tyrannical scheme.*

25. [5]Treachery was necessary to render this tyrannical scheme effective. The inhabitants of each district were commanded to meet at a certain place and day on urgent business, the nature of which was carefully concealed from them; and when they were all assembled, the dreadful mandate was pronounced,—and only small parties of them were allowed to return for a short time to make the

necessary preparations. [1]They appear to have listened to their doom with unexpected resignation, making only mournful and solemn appeals, which were wholly disregarded. When, however, the moment of embarkation arrived, the young men, who were placed in front, absolutely refused to move; and it required files of soldiers, with fixed bayonets, to secure obedience.

1755.

1. *Conduct of the French in this extremity*

26. [2]No arrangements had been made for their location elsewhere, nor was any compensation offered for the property of which they were deprived. They were merely thrown on the coast at different points, and compelled to trust to the charity of the inhabitants, who did not allow any of them to be absolutely starved. Still, through hardships, distress, and change of climate, a great proportion of them perished. So eager was their desire to return, that those sent to Georgia had set out, and actually reached New York, when they were arrested.

2. *Their destitute situation and atempts to return to their country.*

27. [3]They addressed a pathetic representation to the English government, in which, quoting the most solemn treaties and declarations, they proved that their treatment had been as faithless as it was cruel. [4]No attention, however, was paid to this document, and so guarded a silence was preserved by the government of Nova Scotia, upon the subject of the removal of the Acadians, that the records of the province make no allusion whatever to the event.

3. *Their address to the English government.*

4. *Guarded silence of the government of Nova Scotia on this subject.*

28. [5]Notwithstanding the barbarous diligence with which this mandate was executed, it is supposed that the number actually removed from the province did not exceed 7000. [6]The rest fled into the depths of the forests, or to the nearest French settlements, enduring incredible hardships. To guard against the return of the hapless fugitives, the government reduced to ashes their habitations and property, laying waste even their own lands, with a fury exceeding that of the most savage enemy.

5. *The number of those banished.*

6. *Situation of those who remained.*

29. [7]In one district, 236 houses were at once in a blaze. The Acadians, from the heart of the woods, beheld all they possessed consigned to destruction; yet they made no movement till the devastators wantonly set their chapel on fire. They then rushed forward in desperation, killed about thirty of the incendaries, and then hastened back to their hiding-places.*

7. *Their conduct when their houses and chapels were burned.*

30. [8]But few events of importance occurred in Nova Scotia during the remainder of the "French and Indian War," at the close of which, France was compelled to transfer to her victorious rival, all her possessions on the

8 *Nova Scotia during the remainder of the French and Indian war.*

* Murray's British America, vol. ii., p. 140-141. Also Haliburton's Nova Scotia, vol. i., p. 174-198.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Efforts of the provincial government to extend the progress of cultivation and settlement.*

American continent. [1]Relieved from any farther apprehensions from the few French remaining in the country, the government of the province made all the efforts of which it was capable to extend the progress of cultivation and settlement, though all that could be done was insufficient to fill up the dreadful blank that had already been made.

2. *Farther policy of the government with respect to the French Acadians.*

31. [2]After the peace, the case of the Acadians naturally came under the view of the government. No advantage had been derived from their barbarous treatment, and there remained no longer a pretext for continuing the persecution. They were, therefore, allowed to return, and to receive lands on taking the customary oaths, but no compensation was offered them for the property of which they had been plundered. [3]Nevertheless, a few did return, although, in 1772, out of a French population of seventeen or eighteen thousand which once composed the colony, there were only about two thousand remaining.

3. *Their diminished numbers.*

1758.

4. *Legislative assembly.*

5. *Indian treaty of 1761.*

1761.

32. [4]In 1758, during the administration of Governor Lawrence, a legislative assembly was given to the people of Nova Scotia. [5]In 1761 an important Indian treaty was concluded, when the natives agreed finally to bury the hatchet, and to accept George III., instead of the king formerly owned by them, as their great father and friend.

6. *The province during the American Revolution.*

[6]The province remained loyal to the crown during the war of the American Revolution, at the close of which, its population was greatly augmented by the arrival of a large number of loyalist refugees from the United States.

7. *Increase of population, and formation of a separate government for New Brunswick.*

1784.

8. *Cape Breton.*

1820.

[7]Many of the new settlers directed their course to the region beyond the peninsula, which, thereby acquiring a great increase of importance, was, in 1784, erected into a distinct government, under the title of New Brunswick. [8]At the same time, the island of Cape Breton, which had been united with Nova Scotia since the capture of Louisburg in 1748, was erected into a separate government, in which situation it remained until 1820, when it was re-annexed to Nova Scotia.

9. *Nova Scotia previous and subsequent to the peace of 1763.*

33. [9]The most interesting portions of the history of Nova Scotia, it will be observed, are found previous to the peace of 1763, which put a final termination to the colonial wars between France and England. Since that period the tranquillity of the province has been seldom interrupted, and, under a succession of popular governors, the country has continued steadily to advance in wealth and prosperity.

CHAPTER V.

NEW BRUNSWICK.

1. [1]The province of New Brunswick[a] lies between Nova Scotia and Canada, having the state of Maine on the southwest and the Gulf of St. Lawrence on the northeast. It comprises an area of about 28,000 square miles, and is therefore greater in extent than Nova Scotia and Cape Breton united.

1. Situation and extent of New Brunswick.

a. See Map, p. 504.

2. [2]It has an extensive seacoast, and is supplied with noble rivers, two of which, the St. Johns and the Miramichi, traverse nearly the whole territory, and are navigable throughout most of their course. The former falls into the Bay of Fundy on the south, and the latter into the Bay of Miramichi, in the Gulf of St. Lawrence.

2. Seacoast and rivers.

3. [3]The surface of the country is broken and undulating, and towards the western boundary the mountain ranges rise to a considerable height. [4]Adjacent to the Bay of Fundy the soil is exceedingly barren, but in other parts it is generally more fertile than in Nova Scotia. The streams are bordered by the richest meadow lands, while the quality of the soil in the highlands is indicated by a magnificent growth of forest trees of gigantic size, the export of which, for lumber and shipping, has given the province its chief commercial importance.

3. Surface of the country.

4. Soil and forests

4. [5]The name of New Brunswick, and even its existence as a colony, did not commence till 1783. The French comprehended it under the appellation of New France, regarding it more particularly as an appendage to Acadia. The English, in their turn, claimed it as part of Nova Scotia, though they appear never to have taken any measures to improve it.

5. The name, and early history of New Brunswick.

5. [6]After that peninsula had been finally ceded to England,[b] the French demanded New Brunswick as belonging to Canada. To support their claims, they erected forts at the neck of the peninsula, and armed the Acadians and Indians; but the peace of 1763, which gave Canada to the British, ended all dissensions on this subject. [7]Still the country was left nearly unoccupied, except by a few Acadians, who had sought refuge among its forests, from the relentless persecution to which they were exposed.[c]

b. In 1748. See p. 545.

6. The French claims to New Brunswick, and the peace of 1763.

7. Unoccupied state of the country after the peace of 1763.

c. See p. 548.

6. [8]In 1762 some families from New England had settled at Maugerville,[d] about fifty miles up the St. John; and in 1783 they numbered about 800. At the end of the war of the American Revolution, several thousands

d. (Mo-ger-veel.)

8. Settlements at Maugerville, Fredericton, and Madawaska.

ANALYSIS.

1783.

1. *Situation of the colonists.*

of disbanded troops, who had been removed from New England, were located at Fredericton; and a party of Acadians who had settled there, were ordered to Madawaska, to make room for them. [1]These new colonists, however, accustomed to all the comforts of civilized life, endured the most dreadful hardships when first placed in the midst of this wilderness; and it was only after severe suffering and toil, that they could place their families in any degree of comfort.

2. *Sir Guy Carleton's administration of the government.*

1803.

3. *The foundation of the prosperity of New Brunswick.*

7. [2]General Sir Guy Carleton, who was appointed governor in 1785, made great exertions for the improvement of the country, which gradually, though slowly, advanced. In 1803 he returned to England, and from that time to 1817 the government was administered by a succession of presidents. [3]The foundation of the prosperity of New Brunswick was laid in 1809, when heavy duties were levied on timber brought to England from the Baltic, while that from New Brunswick was left free. The export of timber, from that period, continually increased, till it reached its height in 1825, when, in consequence of speculative overtrading, a severe reaction was experienced. Yet since that event, this branch of industry has rallied, and become nearly as extensive as ever, while a new impulse has been given to the prosperity of the country by the arrival of foreign cultivators.

1817.

4. *Successive administrations from 1817 to 1837.*

5. *The successor of Sir John Harvey.*

6. *The north-eastern boundary question.*

8. [4]In 1817 Major General Smith was appointed lieutenant-governor, which office he held till 1823, although during most of that period the affairs of the Province were intrusted to the care of Mr. Chipman and Mr. Bliss, as presidents; but in August, 1824, the latter was succeeded by Sir Howard Douglass, to whose exertions the country was greatly indebted. He was relieved by Sir Archibald Campbell, whose place was supplied in 1837 by Major-general Sir John Harvey, from Prince Edward Island. [5]On the removal of the latter to Newfoundland, the office of governor of New Brunswick was given to Sir W. G. Colebrooke. [6]During the administration of Sir John Harvey, the disputed boundary between Maine and New Brunswick, which had long been a cause of controversy between Great Britain and the United States, threatened to involve the two countries in hostilities; but fortunately, in 1842, this subject of contention was removed, by a treaty[a] which settled the boundary in a manner satisfactory to both parties.

a. See p. 483.

CHAPTER VI.

PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND

1. [1]PRINCE EDWARD, a name substituted for the early one of St. John, is an island in the southern part of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, having Cape Breton on the east, and being separated from the coasts of New Brunswick and Nova Scotia by Northumberland strait,—a channel varying in breadth from nine to forty miles. [2]This island,[a] which has a very irregular outline, is somewhat crescent shaped, having its hollow part towards the Gulf, into which both its boundary capes project. Following its w[illegible]ing outline, its greatest length is about 135 miles, [illegible] its average breadth about 34. It is, however, so deeply indented by bays and inlets, that scarcely any spot is distant more than seven or eight miles from the influx of the tide. The area is estimated at 1,380,700 acres.

1. Situation of Prince Edward Island.

a. See Map, p. 504.

2. Shape of the island;—its length, breadth, inlets, area, &c

2. [3]The surface of the island presents an undulating variety of hill and dale, with the hollows filled with numberless little creeks and lakes. The soil, though light, possesses considerable fertility, with the exception of the swamps and burnt-grounds. Some of the former, when carefully drained, make rich meadow-lands, but the latter, consisting originally of extensive pine forests, which have been destroyed by conflagrations, and which are now overspread with black stumps, mixed with ferns and diminutive shrubs, can seldom be reclaimed.

3. Surface of the island:—its soil, swamps, burnt-grounds, &c

3. [4]By some it has been erroneously supposed that this is the island that was discovered by Cabot, in 1497, and named by him St. John; but it is now generally believed that the land first discovered was a small island on the coast of Labrador. [5]When the French court established in America a vast domain called New France, this insular tract was of course included within its boundaries, yet, with the exception of Champlain's description, there is scarcely any mention of it until 1663, when it appears to have been granted to a French captain by the name of Doublet,[b] but held in subordination to a fishing company established at the small island of Miscou. [6]It seems, however, to have been valued only for fishery, with which view some trifling stations were established.

4. Historical error in relation to this island.

5. Little known of its history until 1663.

b. (Pronounced Doob-lā.)

6. Valued for what.

4. [7]St. John began to emerge from this obscurity only after the treaty of Utrecht in 1713, when, Acadia or Nova Scotia being ceded to Britain, a number of the French

7. The island begins to emerge from its obscurity.

ANALYSIS.

1. Capture of the island, and its restoration to France.

settlers, to whom the British yoke was always odious, sought refuge in this island. [1]When Cape Breton was captured by the New England forces in 1745, St. John shared the same fate; but three years later, both were restored to France by the treaty of Aix la Chapelle.

1758.

2. Its final conquest by the English.

[2]After the second reduction of Louisburg, in 1758, that of St. John again followed, when it became permanently annexed to the British crown.

3. Treatment of the French inhabitants.

5. [3]The French inhabitants, however, numbering at that time four or five thousand, were doomed to the same relentless proscription as their brethren in Nova Scotia; and the pretext was, that a number of English scalps were found hung up in the house of the French governor.

4. Their expulsion from the island.

[4]The details of the expulsion are not stated, but it appears that some of the inhabitants were sent to Canada, some to the southern colonies, and others to France; w[illegible] it is admitted that many contrived to conceal themselves. So complete, however, was the desolation, that, in 1770, twelve years later, only 150 families were found on the island.

5. The peace of 1763.

6. [5]St. John was confirmed to Great Britain by the peace of 1763, but several years elapsed before judicious measures were taken for its settlement.

6. Scheme of Lord Egremont.

[6]Lord Egremont formed a strange scheme, by which it was divided into twelve districts, ruled by as many barons, each of whom was to erect a castle on his own property, while that nobleman was to preside as lord paramount.

7. Plan subsequently adopted.

[7]This ridiculous plan was changed for another not much wiser. In 1767 a division was made into sixty-seven townships, of about 20,000 acres each, which, with some reservations for county towns, were granted to individuals who had claims upon the government.

8. Ineffective measures of the proprietors.

[8]Their exertions to settle the country, however, were not very effective, and when they resolved, as the only means of rendering the property valuable, to sell it in small lots, their prices were too high; and as their rights to the land were conditional, they could not give to settlers that kind of tenure which is the most secure.

9. A separate government given to the island.

7. [9]The proprietors succeeded, however, in 1770, in procuring a government independent of Nova Scotia; though, as already mentioned, there were then only 150 families on the island.

10. The administrations of Mr. Patterson and General Fanning.

[10]Mr. Patterson, first appointed to that office, brought back a number of the exiled Acadians,—emigrants began to arrive in considerable numbers, and in 1773 a constitution was given, and the first House of Assembly called.

11. Contests with the proprietors and settlers.

[11]Governor Patterson, however, and General Fanning who succeeded him in 1789, were involved in contests with the proprietors and settlers, who

accused them of culpable eagerness to acquire landed property for themselves. 1789.

8. [1]Inconvenience having been felt from the circumstance that the island bore the same name as the chief towns in New Brunswick and Newfoundland, its name was changed to Prince Edward, in honor of the Duke of Kent, who, as commander in America, had directed some valuable improvements. [2]In 1803 the Earl of Selkirk, who gave so great an impulse to emigration, carried over an important colony, consisting of about 800 Highlanders. He made the necessary arrangements with so much judgment that the settlers soon became very prosperous; additional emigrants joined them, and in 1840 the Highland colony numbered nearly five thousand.

1. Name of the island changed.

1803.

2. The Highland colony.

9. [3]Governor Desbarres,[a] who succeeded Fanning, though censured for his imprudence, was a man of talent; and at no former period did the colony advance so rapidly as during his administration. [4]In 1813 he was succeeded by Mr. Smyth, whose violent and tyrannical conduct caused a general agitation in the colony. For several years previous to 1823, he had prevented the meeting of the House of Assembly, and when a committee of the inhabitants was appointed to draw up a petition for his removal, he caused them to be arrested. Mr. Stewart, the high sheriff, however, though at the age of sixty-six, made his escape to Nova Scotia and thence to England, where the real state of things was no sooner made known, than the governor was recalled, and Lieutenant-colonel Ready appointed to succeed him.

a. (Pronounced Da-bar.)

3. Administration of Desbarres.

4. Administration of Mr. Smyth.

His tyrannical conduct, and the causes that led to his removal.

10. [5]The conduct of this last officer gave general satisfaction; and in conjunction with the House of Assembly he passed many useful acts, and took various measures to promote the continued improvement of the colony. [6]In 1831 Colonel Young received the appointment, and ruled as lieutenant-governor till 1836, in which year Sir John Harvey was named his successor. Sir John was very popular, but being in 1837 removed to the government of New Brunswick, his place was supplied by Sir Charles A. Fitzroy.

5. Administration of Colonel Ready.

6. Colonel Young and Sir John Harvey.

1837.

11. [7]The elements of society in Prince Edward are similar to those found in the other British colonies. The inhabitants consist, first, of a few Indians; then of about 5000 French Acadians; and next, of emigrants, mostly from Scotland, the natives of which country form about one-half the entire population. [8]The actual population of the island in 1840 was about 40,000.

7. Society in Prince Edward Island.

1840.

8. Population.

ANALYSIS.

CHAPTER VII.

NEWFOUNDLAND.

1. Form, extent, and situation of Newfoundland.

a. See Map page 504.

1. [1]NEWFOUNDLAND, which was discovered by the Cabot's in 1497, is a large island, in the form of an irregular triangle, about 1000 miles in circuit.[a] On the northwestern side, the straits of Belleisle, about ten miles in width, separate it from Labrador; and on the southwest it is about fifty miles distant from Cape Breton, leaving a passage of that breadth into the Gulf of St. Lawrence.

2. The shores, surface, internal resources, &c. of the island.

2. [2]The shores are generally bold and rugged, the surface mountainous, and the soil barren; yet, notwithstanding its scanty internal resources, Newfoundland has formed hitherto, in a commercial view, the most important of all the British possessions in America.

3. The circumstances that give great value to the island.

[3]The surrounding ocean is rich in treasure. Immense fields of ice, detached from the Arctic shores, and annually floated down to the neighborhood of the island, convey on their surface large herds of seal, from which the adventurous seamen draw valuable stores of oil.

The seal and cod fisheries.

To the east the celebrated bank of Newfoundland, composed almost throughout of masses of solid rock, forms an extensive fishing ground of 600 miles in length and 200 in breadth. Here the cod fishery, the most extensive fishery in the world, has for several centuries been constantly increasing in extent, and yet not the slightest diminution of its fruitfulness has ever been observed.*

4. Newfoundland soon after its discovery.

3. [4]Soon after its discovery, Newfoundland became distinguished for its fisheries, over which the English claimed the right of jurisdiction, although the number of their vessels employed on the coast was for a long time less than those of the French or the Spanish.

5. The first permanent settlement on the island.

[5]After several unsuccessful attempts to form a settlement, Mr. Guy, an intelligent merchant of Bristol succeeded in inducing a number of influential persons at court to engage in the undertaking, and in 1610, having been appointed governor of the intended colony, he conveyed thither thirty-nine persons, who constructed a dwelling and storehouse, and formed the first permanent settlement on the island.

1610.

1621.

6. Lord Baltimore's colony.

4. [6]In 1621 Sir George Calvert, afterwards Lord Baltimore, the founder of Maryland, established a Catholic

---

* This is not surprising when it is considered that, according to the statement of the celebrated naturalist, Lewenhoek, more than *nine million* eggs have been counted in a single cod

colony in Newfoundland, where he resided a considerable period. [1]In 1660 the French began to form settlements, which they fortified, showing an evident wish to get possession of the whole island. [2]In 1692 their works at Placentia were partially destroyed by the English, but in 1696 they twice attacked St. John, and the second time, having gained possession of it, set it on fire. Soon after, they reduced all the English stations but two, but the treaty of Ryswick, in 1697, terminated the contest, and restored every thing to the same state as before the commencement of hostilities.

1660.

1. *French settlements.*

1692.

2. *Hostilities between the English and French,—terminated by the treaty of Ryswick.*

1697.

5. [3]The war of the succession, breaking out in 1702, again exposed the colony to the attacks of the French. In 1705 the British colonists were successfully attacked, and in 1708 St. Johns was surprised and completely destroyed, and the French became masters of every English station but one, on the island. [4]The successes of the English, however, on the continent, enabled them, at the treaty of Utrecht in 1713, to redeem all their losses in this distant quarter, and Louis XIV. was compelled to yield up all his possessions in Newfoundland, but he retained for his subjects the right of erecting huts and fishing stages on particular portions of the coast.

1702.

3. *Renewal of hostilities, and successes of the French.*

4. *Newfoundland,—how affected by the treaty of Utrecht.*

1713.

6. [5]In 1729 the colony was withdrawn from its nominal dependence on Nova Scotia, from which period until 1827 the government of the island was administered by naval commanders appointed to cruise on the fishing station, but who returned to England during the winter. Since 1827 the government has been administered by resident governors; and in 1832, at the earnest solicitation of the inhabitants, a representative assembly was granted them.

1729.

5. *Withdrawal from Nova Scotia, and subsequent government of the island.*

7. [6]The present British settlements are in the south-eastern part of the island. [7]St. John, the capital, is situated on the most eastern part of the coast, and after all its improvements, still bears the aspect of a fishing station.

6. *The present British settlements.*

7. *St. John, the capital.*

MAP OF MEXICO;
INCLUDING ALSO
OREGON, TEXAS,
AND
CENTRAL AMERICA.
FOR THE YEAR 1845,
For subsequent changes,
see Map, p. 537.
REFERENCES.
Z. State of Zacatecas.
P. State of San Luis Potosi.
G. State and City of Guanaxuato.
Q. State and City of Queretaro.
M. Matamoras.
T. Monterey.
OREGON
MISSOURI TERRY.
IOWA
WISCONSIN
Lake Superior
INDIAN TERY.
MISSOURI
ARKANSAS
LOUISA
TEXAS
AUSTIN
NEW MEXICO
Santa Fe
INDIAN TRIBES
NEW CALIFORNIA
OLD CALIFORNIA
SONORA
CHIHUAHUA
SINALOA
DURANGO
COAHUILA
NEW LEON
TAMAULIPAS
GUADALAXARA
JALISCO
VALLADOLID
MEXICO
PUEBLA
VERA CRUZ
OAXACA
Gulf of Mexico
Gulf of California
Fraser R.
Columbia
Astoria
Ft. Colville
Lewis R.
Ft. Vancouver
Ft. Wallah Wallah
Willamette R.
Ft. Hall
Salt Lake
Sacramento R.
St. Francisco
Monterey
Colorado R.
Guyamas
Ft. Leavenworth
Arkansas R.
Fort Gibson
Red R.
Sabine R.
Rio Del Norte
Bexar
Mississippi
Missouri R.
Chihuahua
Coahuila
Durango
Zacatecas
Tampico
San Blas
Valladolid
Acapulco
Oaxaca
South eastern Part of MEXICO; with CENTRAL-AMERICA
Campeche
Vera Cruz
Merida
YUCATAN
Tabasco
Balize
Chiapas
GUATIMALA
New Guatimala
HONDURAS
Comyagua
St. Salvador
St. SALVADOR
NICARAGUA
COSTA RICA
Cartago
Gulf of Panama
CENTRAL AMERICA
125 120 115 110 105 100 95 90
50 45 40 35 30 25 20 15 10

PART II.

HISTORY OF MEXICO.

CHAPTER I.

ABORIGINAL MEXICO.

ANALYSIS

1. *Indian tribes of America.*
2. *The Aboriginal Mexicans.*
3. *State of civilization among them.*
4. *An account of their history, why interesting.*
5. *History of the Toltecs, from the year 472 to the founding of the city of Tula.*
6. *Government of the Toltecs.*

1. [1]At the time of the discovery of America, nearly the whole continent was occupied by barbarous and wandering tribes, of whose history little that is authentic can now be learned. [2]The aboriginal Mexicans, however, differed essentially from the great mass of the race to which they apparently belonged. [3]They had made considerable advances in civilization—were an agricultural people—had built flourishing and populous cities,—and were united under a regular system of government. [4]A brief account of their history, of the state of the arts among them, and of their political institutions, national manners, and religion, cannot fail to be interesting and useful, as it will exhibit the human species in a very singular stage of its upward progress from barbarism.

2. [5]The Toltecas, or Toltecs, are the most ancient Mexican nation of which history and fable combined furnish us any accounts. The symbolical representations, or hieroglyphics, from which their history is obtained, and which were found among the Mexicans, represent that in the year 472 of the Christian era they were expelled from their own country, called Tollan, situated somewhere to the north of Mexico, and that, for some time after, they led a migratory and wandering life; but, at the expiration of 104 years, they reached a place about fifty miles to the eastward of the city of Mexico, where they remained twenty years. Thence they proceeded a short distance westward, where they founded a city, called, from the name of their original country, *Tollan*, or *Tula*.*

472.

576.

596.

667.

3. [6]The Toltecas, during their journeys, were con-

* Whence the present city of Tula, near Mexico, is supposed to have derived its name. See Map, p. 569.

ANALYSIS.

1. Their prosperity,—and final destruction of the nation.

ducted by chiefs; but after their final settlement, in the year 667, their government was changed into a monarchy, which lasted nearly four centuries. [1]At the expiration of this time they had increased very considerably in numbers, and had built many cities; but when in the height of their prosperity, almost the whole nation was destroyed by famine and a pestilence.

2. Account of this event, as derived from the Mexican hieroglyphics.

4. [2]The hieroglyphical symbols, from which the account of this event is derived, represent, that, at a certain festive ball made by the Toltecas, the *Sad Looking Devil* appeared to them, of a gigantic size, with immense arms, and, in the midst of their entertainments, embraced and suffocated them; that then he appeared in the form of a child with a putrid head, and brought the plague; and, finally, at the persuasion of the same devil, they abandoned the country Tula, and dispersed themselves among the surrounding nations, where they were well received on account of their superior knowledge and civilization.

3. History of the Chichemecas,—their government, manners, and alliance with the Toltecs.

5. [3]About a hundred years after the dispersion of the Toltecs, their country was occupied by the Chichemecas, who also came from the north, and were eighteen months on their journey. Although less civilized than the Toltecs, they had a regular form of monarchical government, and were less disgusting in their manners than some of the neighboring nations. They formed an alliance with the remnant of the Toltecs, and intermarried with them; the consequence of which was the introduction of the arts and knowledge of the Toltecas, and a change in the Chichemecas, from a hunting to an agricultural people.

4. The Acolhuans. Subsequent history to the time of the Aztecs.

[4]The Chichemecas were soon after joined by the Acolhuans, likewise from the north; after which, the history of the two nations is filled with uninteresting accounts of petty conquests, civil wars, and rebellions, until the appearance of the Aztecs, or Mexicans, also of Indian origin.

1160.

5. Wanderings of the Aztecs.

6. [5]The latter are represented to have left their own country, a great distance to the north of the Gulf of California, in the year 1160, by the command of one of their deities; and, after wandering fifty-six years, to have arrived at the city of Zumpango,* in the valley of Mexico.

6. Remains of buildings supposed to have been erected by them.

[6]During their journey, they are supposed to have stopped some time on the banks of the river Gila, or San Francisco, an eastern branch of the Colorado; where may still be found remains of the buildings which they are said to have constructed.†

* On the eastern shore of the lake of the same name. (See Map, p. 569.)

† The Colorado is the principal stream that enters the head of the Gulf of California. (See Map, p. 558.) The locality of the ruins mentioned above is still put down, on Mexican maps, on the south side of the River Gila, in the state of Sonora. They are denoted as "Ruinas de las Casas de los Aztecas," *Ruins of the Buildings of the Aztecs.*

7. [1]Thence they proceeded until they came to a place about two hundred and fifty miles north-west from Chihuahua,* and now known by the name of *Casa Grande*,[a] on account of a very large building still extant there at the time of the Spanish conquest, and universally attributed to the Aztecs, by the traditions of the country. [2]Thence they proceeded southward to Culiacan,† on a river of the same name, which flows into the Gulf of California about the twenty-fourth degree of north latitude. Here they made a wooden image of their god, and a chair of reeds and rushes to support it, and also appointed four priests, called the "Servants of God," to carry it on their shoulders during their subsequent wanderings.

1160.

1. *Other ruins north-west from Chihuahua.*

a. (Gran-de *great*, Casa *building*.)

2. *The Aztecs at Culiacan.*

Image constructed by them.

8. [3]When the Aztecs left their original habitations they consisted of six tribes; but at Culiacan the *Mexicans* separated from the other five, and, taking their deity with them, continued their journey alone. In the year 1216 they arrived in the valley of Mexico,[b] where they were at first well received; but they were afterwards enslaved by a neighboring prince, who claimed the territory, and who was unwilling to have them remain without paying tribute.

3. *Separation of the Mexicans from the other Aztec tribes, and their arrival in the valley of Mexico.*

1216

b. See *Map*, p. 569.

9. [4]They were finally, however, released from bondage, when they resumed their wanderings, which they continued until the year 1325, when they came to a place on the borders of a lake, where the eagle that had guided them in their journeys rested upon a nopal,‡ where it shortly afterwards died. This was the sign given them by their oracle, designating the place where they were finally to settle; and as soon as they had taken possession of the spot, they erected an altar to the god whom they worshipped. [5]The city which they built here was first called *Tenochtitlan*, and afterwards *Mexico*,§ signifying the place of *Mexitli*, the name of the Mexican god of war.

4. *Subsequent wanderings, until they reach the place of their final settlement.*

1325.

5. *The city of Mexico founded by them.*

10. [6]During the time which intervened from the founding of Mexico to the conquest by the Spaniards, a period of nearty two hundred years, the Mexicans went on gradually increasing in power and resources, and, by conquest and alliances, they extended their dominion, not

6. *The Mexicans, from the founding of Mexico to the conquest by the Spaniards.*

---

* *Chihuahua*, the capital of the state of the same name, is nearly 700 miles N.W. from the city of Mexico. (See Map, p. 558.) (Pronounced Chee-ooah-ooah.)

† *Culiacan* is an old city in the state of Sinaloa, pleasantly situated on the south side of a river of the same name, about forty miles from its entrance into the Gulf of California.

‡ The nopal, (*cactus opuntia*, or Indian fig,) is the plant on which the insect that produces the cochineal is bred. The cochineal, now an important article of commerce, is formed from the dead insect, and is used for giving red colors, especially crimson and scarlet, and for making carmine.

§ See Note and Map, p. 116. Also Map, p. 569.

ANALYSIS.

only over the other Aztec tribes which had accompanied them during most of their wanderings, and which afterwards settled around them, but also over other tribes or nations that spoke languages different from the Aztec or Mexican.

1. Nature of the government of the Mexicans at different periods of their history.

11. [1]Previous to their settlement in the valley of Mexico, the Mexicans continued unacquainted with regal dominion, and were governed in peace, and conducted in war, by such as were entitled to pre-eminence by their wisdom or their valor; but after their power and territories became extensive, the supreme authority finally centred in a single individual; and when the Spaniards, under Cortez, invaded the country, Montezuma was the ninth monarch in order who had swayed the Mexican sceptre, not by hereditary right, but by election. [2]The accounts given of all this history, in the hieroglyphic writings of the Mexicans, and which have been faithfully translated by Spanish writers, are minute and circumstantial; but the details would possess little interest for us.

2. The historical account of these events.

3. The advancement in knowledge made by the Toltecs.

12. [3]According to the histories preserved by the Mexicans,* the Toltecs were more polished than the nations which succeeded them; insomuch that, in after ages, it was customary to distinguish people of learning and ingenuity, by the name of Toltecas. They understood the art of working in gold and silver, and possessed some knowledge of the sciences of astronomy and chronology. [4]It is supposed that about a hundred years before the Christian era they observed the difference between the solar and the civil year; supplying the defect, as we do, by the addition of a day once in four years.

4. Their knowledge of astronomy.

5. The use the Mexicans made of the art of painting.

6. Character of their paintings.

13. [5]The art of painting, which was derived from the Toltecs, was much practised by the Mexicans, as it was only by means of paintings that they recorded their histories. [6]Some of these paintings contained an account of particular historical events; some were mythological; some were codes of laws; while others were astronomical—in which were represented their calendar, the position of the stars, changes of the moon, and eclipses. [7]Great numbers of these were burned by the superstitious Spaniards, who imagined that they contained some emblems of heathen worship.

7. Many of them destroyed by the Spaniards.

8. The most valuable collection now extant.

14. [8]The most valuable collection of these picture writings, which has been preserved, is divided into three parts. The first contains the entire history of the Mexican empire. The second is a tribute-roll, representing what

* It must not be overlooked that the Mexicans here spoken of were *Indians;* although the word *Mexicans* is now applied to the present inhabitants of Mexico, descendants of the Spaniards.

each conquered town paid into the royal treasury. The third is a code of the domestic, political, and military institutions of the Mexicans. [1]There were likewise geographical paintings, or maps, which showed the boundaries of states, the situation of places, the direction of the coasts, and the courses of rivers. Cortez was shown maps of almost the entire coast on the Gulf of Mexico. [2]These paintings were executed on skins, on cloth made of the thread of the aloe, or a kind of palm, on the bark of trees prepared with gum, and upon paper; which last was made of the leaves of a kind of aloe, steeped like hemp, and afterwards washed, stretched, and smoothed. [3]From these symbolical paintings, aided by traditionary songs and narratives, the Mexican children were diligently instructed in the history, mythology, religious rites, laws, and customs of the nation.

1520.

1. Geographical paintings.

2. The materials on which these paintings were executed.

3. Instruction of the young.

15. [4]But in sculpture, casting of metals, and mosaic work,* the Mexicans attained greater perfection than in painting. They had sculptors among them when they left their native country; and many of the Toltecan statues were preserved till the time of the conquest. Statues were made of clay, wood, and stone; and the instruments employed were chisels of copper and of flint. [5]The number of these statues is almost incredible; but so active were the Spanish priests in destroying them, that there are now few vestiges of them remaining. The foundation of the first church in Mexico was laid with idols, when many thousand statues of the Mexican gods were broken in pieces.

4. The art of sculpture among the Mexicans

5. Statues destroyed by the Spaniards.

16. [6]Clavigero† asserts that "the miracles produced by the Mexicans in the casting of metals would not be credible, if, besides the testimony of those who saw them, a great number of curiosities of this kind had not been sent from Mexico to Europe. The works of gold and silver, sent as presents from the conqueror Cortez to Charles V., filled the goldsmiths of Europe with astonishment; who, as several authors of that period assert, declared that they were altogether inimitable. [7]This wonderful art, formerly practised by the Toltecas, the invention of which they ascribed to one of their gods, has been entirely lost by the debasement of the Indians, and the indolent neglect of the Spaniards."

6. Clavigero's account of the casting of metals by the Mexicans.

7. The art now lost.

---

* *Mosaic work* is an assemblage of little pieces of glass, marble, precious stones, &c., of various colors, cemented on a ground of stucco or plaster, in such a manner as to imitate the colors and gradations of painting.

† *Clavigero*, a native of Vera Cruz, in Mexico, in which country he resided thirty-six years was born about the year 1720. Being a Jesuit, on the expulsion of his order from America he settled in Italy, where he employed himself in writing a History of Mexico, which was published in 1780 and 1781, in four volumes octavo.

ANALYSIS.

1. Acosta's account of the Mosaic works of the Mexicans.

17. [1]Acosta, another writer, speaking of the mosaic works of the Mexican artists, made of the feathers of birds, says: "It is wonderful how it was possible to execute works so fine, and so equal, that they appear the performance of the pencil. Some Indians, who are able artists, copy whatever is painted, so exactly, with plumage, that they rival the best painters of Spain."

2. Architecture among the Mexicans.

3. The buildings of the city of Mexico.

18. [2]The Mexicans had some knowledge of architecture; and the ruins of edifices still remain, which are supposed to have been constructed by them previous to their arrival in the valley of Mexico. [3]When the city of Mexico came to its perfection, the houses of the principal people were large, of two or more stories, and constructed of stone and mortar. The roofs were flat and terraced; the floors were smoothly paved with plaster; and the exterior walls were so well whitened and polished, that they appeared, to the excited imaginations of the Spaniards, when viewed from a distance, to have been constructed of silver.

4. Mexican aqueducts.

5. Mexican cities.

6. Population of the city of Mexico.

19. [4]The most remarkable examples of Mexican architecture, however, were their aqueducts; two of which, constructed of stone and cement, conveyed the water to the capital, from the distance of two miles. [5]The number and the greatness of the Mexican cities have probably been much exaggerated by the early Spanish writers, but still they were cities of such consequence as are found only among people who have made considerable progress in the arts of civilized life. [6]From all accounts, we can hardly suppose Mexico, the capital of the empire, to have contained fewer than sixty thousand inhabitants; and some authorities estimate the number at several hundred thousand.

7. Political institutions of the Mexicans.

8. Their form of government.

9. Jurisdiction of the Crown.

10. Fundamental law of the empire.

11. Orders of nobility.

20. [7]From the foundation of the Mexican monarchy to the accession of Montezuma to the throne, the political institutions of the Mexicans appear to have undergone but few changes. [8]The government was an elective monarchy, and the right of election seems to have been originally vested in the whole body of the nobility, but afterwards to have been confined to six of the most powerful, of whom the chiefs of Tezcuco and Tacuba were always two. [9]The jurisdiction of the crown was extremely limited, and all real and effective authority remained in the hands of the nobles. [10]By a fundamental law of the empire, it was provided that the king should not determine concerning any point of general importance, without the approbation of a council composed of the prime nobility.

21. [11]The nobles, possessed of ample territories, were divided into several classes; to each of which peculiar

1520.

titles of honor belonged. It is stated by an author of credibility that there were, in the Mexican dominions, thirty nobles of the highest rank, each of whom had in his territories about a hundred thousand people; and subordinate to these were about three thousand nobles of a lower class. Some of the titles of nobility descended from father to son in perpetual succession; others were annexed to particular offices, or conferred during life, as marks of personal distinction.

22. [1]Below the inferior nobles was the great body of the people, who were in a most humiliating state. [2]The better class of these resembled, in condition, those peasants who, under various denominations, were considered, in Europe, during the prevalence of the feudal system,[a] as instruments of labor attached to the soil, and transferable with it from one proprietor to another. [3]Others, of an inferior class, reduced to the lowest form of subjection, felt all the rigors of domestic servitude. Their condition was held to be so vile, and their lives deemed of so little value, that a person who killed one of them was not subjected to any punishment. [4]So distinct and firmly established were the various gradations of rank, from the monarch down to the meanest subject, and so scrupulous was each class in the exactions of courtesy and respect from inferiors, that the genius and idioms of the language became strongly influenced by it.

1. *Condition of the great body of the people.*
2. *The higher class.*
a. See p. 139.
3. *Condition of the lower class.*
4. *The permanency of these gradations*

23. [5]It is probable that while the power of the Mexican monarch continued to be limited, it was exercised with little ostentation; but that, as his authority became more extensive, the splendor of the government increased. [6]It was in this last state that the Spaniards beheld it; for Montezuma, disregarding the ancient laws, and violating the rights of the nobility, had introduced a pure despotism, and reduced his subjects, of every order, to the level of slaves. [7]The following passages, selected from the writings of the Abbe Clavigero, will give some idea of the state of the ancient capital, and the magnificence of the monarch who governed it at the time of the Spanish conquest.

5. *Ostentation and display of the Mexican monarchy.*
6. *Changes effected by Montezuma.*
7. *Passages selected from the writings of Clavigero.*

24. [8]"All the servants of Montezuma's palace consisted of persons of rank. Besides those who constantly lived in it, every morning six hundred feudatory lords and nobles came to pay court to him. They passed the whole day in the antechamber, where none of their servants were permitted to enter,—conversing in a low voice, and awaiting the orders of their sovereign. The servants who accompanied these lords were so numerous as to occupy

8. *Montezuma's servants, feudatory lords, &c.*

ANALYSIS. three small courts of the palace, and many waited in the streets.

1. The women of the court.

25. [1]"The women about the court were not less in number, including those of rank, servants, and slaves. All this numerous female tribe lived shut up in a kind of seraglio, under the care of some noble matrons, who watched over their conduct; as these kings were extremely jealous, and every piece of misconduct which happened in the palace, however slight, was severely punished. Of these women, the king retained those who pleased him; the others he gave away, as a recompense for the services of his vassals.

2. Forms and ceremonials observed in presence of Montezuma.

26. [2]"The forms and ceremonials introduced at court were another effect of the despotism of Montezuma. No one would enter the palace, either to serve the king, or to confer with him on any business, without pulling off his shoes and stockings at the gate. No person was allowed to appear before the king in any pompous dress, as it was deemed a want of respect to majesty; consequently the greatest lords, excepting the nearest relations of the king, stripped themselves of the rich dress which they wore, or at least covered it with one more ordinary, to show their humility before him.

3. Manner of addressing the king, and receiving his answers.

27. [3]"All persons, on entering the hall of audience, and before speaking to the king, made three bows; saying, at the first, 'Lord;' at the second, 'my Lord;' and at the third, 'great Lord.' They spoke low, and with the head inclined, and received the answer which the king gave them, by means of his secretaries, as attentively and humbly as if it had been the voice of an oracle. In taking leave, no person ever turned his back upon the throne.

4. The dining-room, furniture, utensils, &c.

28. [4]"The audience-hall served also for the dining-room. The table of the monarch was a large pillow, and his seat a low chair. The table-cloth, napkins, and towels were of cotton, but very fine, white, and always perfectly clean. The kitchen utensils were of the earthenware of Cholula,[a] but none of these things ever served the monarch more than once; as, immediately after, he gave them to one of his nobles. The cups in which his chocolate and other drinks were prepared, were of gold, or some beautiful sea-shell, or naturally formed vessels curiously varnished.

a. See p. 73, also Map p. 569.

5. The number and variety of dishes.

6. The king's waiters at table.

29. [5]"The number and variety of dishes at his table amazed the Spaniards who saw them. Cortez says that they covered the floor of a great hall, and that there were dishes of every kind of game, fish, fruit, and herbs of that country. [6]Three or four hundred noble youths

carried this dinner in form; presented it as soon as the king sat down at table, and immediately retired; and, that it might not grow cold, every dish was accompanied with its chafing-dish. **1520.**

30. [1]"The king marked, with a rod which he had in his hand, the meats which he chose, and the rest were distributed among the nobles who were in the ante-chamber. Before he sat down, four of the most beautiful women of his seraglio presented water to him to wash his hands, and continued standing all the time of his dinner, together with six of his principal ministers, and his carver. [2]He frequently heard music during the time of his meal, and was entertained with the humorous sayings of some deformed men whom he kept out of mere state. He showed much satisfaction in hearing them, and observed that, among their jests, they frequently pronounced some important truth.

1. Ceremonies observed at table, &c.

2. The king's buffoons, or jesters.

31. [3]"When he went abroad he was carried on the shoulders of the nobles, in a litter covered with a rich canopy, attended by a numerous retinue of courtiers: and wherever he passed, all persons stopped with their eyes shut, as if they feared to be dazzled by the splendors of royalty. When he alighted from the litter, to walk on foot, carpets were spread before him that he might not touch the earth with his feet."

3. The king's appearance in public

32 [4]In closing this glowing description by Clavigero, it should be remarked that we ought not to judge of the prosperity of the ancient inhabitants of Mexico by what has been said of its emperor, its court, and its capital. [5]Despotism had there produced those fatal effects which it produces every where. The whole state was sacrificed to the capricious pleasures and magnificence of a small number of people. [6]And although the particulars which have been mentioned exhibit the Mexicans as a people considerably refined, yet other circumstances show that their character, and many of their institutions, did not differ greatly from those of other inhabitants of America.

4. Prosperity of the Mexican people

5. Effects of despotism.

6. Character and institutions of the Mexicans.

33. [7]Like the rude tribes around them, the Mexicans were almost constantly engaged in war, which they carried on to gratify their vengeance by shedding the blood of their enemies. [8]All the prisoners taken in battle were sacrificed without mercy, and their flesh was devoured with the same barbarous joy as among the fiercest savages. Sometimes their principal warriors dressed themselves in the skins of their unhappy victims, and danced about the streets, boasting of their own valor, and exulting over their enemies.

7. Their wars.

8. Treatment of prisoners.

34. [9]It is supposed that neither the Toltecs nor the Chi-

9. Human sacrifices,—by whom instituted

ANALYSIS.

1. *Number of victims.*

2. *Opinion of Clavigero.*

3. *Of Zumaraga.*

4. *Authors quoted by Gomara.*

5. *Acosta's statement.*

chemecas permitted human sacrifices; and that it was reserved to the Aztec race to institute the abominable practice. [1]Of the number of victims annually destroyed in this way, we have different and contradictory accounts. [2]Clavigero inclines to the opinion that it was not less than twenty thousand, while other writers make it much more. [3]Zumaraga, the first bishop of Mexico, supposes that, in that capital alone, more than twenty thousand victims were annually sacrificed. [4]Some authors, quoted by Gomara, say that fifty thousand were annually sacrificed in different parts of the empire. [5]Acosta says that there was a certain day of the year on which they sacrificed five thousand victims, and another on which they sacrificed twenty thousand.

6. *The consecration of the great temple of the Mexicans.*

7. *Conclusion arrived at from these accounts.*

35. [6]In the consecration of the great temple of the Mexicans, dedicated to the sun, which, it is related, took place under the reign of the predecessor of Montezuma, it is asserted by numerous historians, that its walls and stairways, its altars and shrines, were consecrated with the blood of more than *sixty thousand victims;* and that *six millions* of people attended at the sacrifice. [7]These accounts are probably greatly exaggerated; but sufficient is known, with certainty, to prove that some thousands of immortal beings were annually immolated to a blind and bloody idolatry.

CHAPTER II.

COLONIAL HISTORY OF MEXICO.*

1. [1]A brief account of the conquest of Mexico by the Spaniards, in the early part of the sixteenth century, has already been given.[a] The conquest vested the sovereignty of the country in the crown of Spain, which guarantied that, on no account should it be separated, wholly or in part, from the Spanish monarchy.

1. *Conquest of Mexico by the Spaniards.*

a. See p. 114.

* The whole extent of MEXICO is equal to nearly one-fourth of Europe, or to two-thirds of the United States and their territories, and is embraced between the 15th and 42d degrees of north latitude. Although the difference of latitude alone would naturally have the effect of producing considerable changes in the temperature of the more distant points, yet it is not to this circumstance, so much as to the peculiarity of its geological structure, that Mexico owes that singular variety of climate by which it is distinguished from most other countries of the world.

The Andes Mountains, after traversing the whole of South America and the Isthmus of Panama, on entering the northern continent separate into two branches, which, diverging to the east and west, but still preserving their direction towards the north, leave in the centre an immense platform or *table-land*, intersected by the higher points and ridges of the great mountain chain by which it is supported, but raised, in the more central parts, to the height of 7000 feet above the level of the sea. In a valley of this table-land, at an elevation of 7000 feet, is situated the city of Mexico. (See Map.)

Upon the whole of this table-land the effect of geographical position is neutralized by the extreme rarefaction of the air; while, upon the eastern and western declivities, it resumes its natural influence as it approaches the level of the sea. On the ascent from Vera Cruz, the changing climates rapidly succeed each other, and the traveller passes in review, in the course of two days, the whole scale of vegetation. The plants of the Tropics are exchanged, at an early period, for the evergreen oak; and the deadly atmosphere of Vera Cruz for the sweet mild air of Jalapa. A little farther, the oak gives place to the fir; the air becomes more piercing; the sun, though it scorches, has no longer the same deleterious effect upon the human frame; and nature assumes a new and peculiar aspect. With a cloudless sky, and a brilliantly pure atmosphere, there is a great want of moisture, and little luxuriancy of vegetation: vast plains follow each other in endless succession, each separated from the rest by a little ridge of

ANALYSIS.

1. *The Catholic religion introduced.*

2. *The native converts to Christianity.*

2. [1]The Catholic religion, introduced into the country by the Spanish invaders, was the only religion that was tolerated in Mexico during the whole period of its colonial existence. [2]In a few years after the conquest, four millions of the natives were induced, by fraud and force, to embrace Christianity. But although they changed their profession, their faith has remained essentially the same. They know little of religion but its exterior forms of worship, and many of them are believed still to retain a secret veneration for their ancient idols.

3. *Slavery of the natives.*

4. *Slight amelioration of their condition.*

3. [3]The establishment of a colonial government was followed by the bondage of the natives, who were reduced to the most cruel and humiliating form of slavery. [4]Although by the labors and influence of the worthy Las Casas* they were finally invested with a few recognized

---

hills, which appear to have formed, at some distant period, the basins of an immense chain of lakes.

Such, with some slight variations, is the general character of the table-lands of the interior. Wherever there is water there is fertility; but the rivers are few and insignificant in comparison with the majestic rivers of the United States; and in the intervals the sun parches, in lieu of enriching the soil. High and barren plains of sand, from which isolated mountains rise to the regions of perpetual snow, occupy a large portion of the interior of Northern Mexico; nor does nature recover her wonted vigor, until the streams which filter from the Andes are sufficiently formed to dispense moisture on their passage to the ocean. As the eastern branch of the Andes gradually disappears, the space fertilized by these streams becomes more extensive, until, in Texas, a low but well wooded country, rich in beautiful rivers, takes the place of the dreary *steppes* of the interior. Almost all the fruits of Europe succeed well on the table lands, while, bordering on the coast of the Pacific and the Gulf of Mexico, tropical fruits are found in abundance. The whole eastern coast, extending back to that point in the slope of the mountains at which tropical fruits cease to thrive, is susceptible of the highest cultivation.

The mineral wealth of Mexico is greater than that of any other country on the globe. Peru, indeed, offers gold in greater abundance, but Mexico has produced more silver than all the rest of the world united. The number of the silver mines which have been worked, or are still worked, is supposed to exceed three thousand; some of which are very productive, but the profits of others are uncertain. The most remarkable mine was that of Valenciana, undertaken by a poor man, who, after a fruitless trial of eleven years, came at length upon a great vein, which, for more than thirty years, yielded more than two millions of dollars annually. Immediately previous to the Mexican revolution, the annual produce of the silver mines of Mexico was estimated at about twenty millions of dollars; but since the revolution the annual average has been only about twelve millions.

As there are no canals, and few navigable rivers in the populous portions of Mexico, the means of communication are at present very defective. The roads are miserable, wheel carriages are scarcely known, and the produce of the country is conveyed almost wholly on the backs of mules. For most of the country there is no home market, and therefore there is little encouragement for industry, beyond the production of the mere necessaries of life. It is probable that Mexico will not soon become much of a manufacturing country, and a great maritime power she cannot be, for her ports on the Atlantic side are barely sufficient for the purposes of commerce. The opening of good roads, and other means of communication, seems to be the wisest course of policy pointed out to Mexico by the natural peculiarities of her situation. This would make her mineral wealth, particularly in iron and the coarser metals, more productive, and would doubtless, in the end, render her one of the richest agricultural nations in the world.

* *Bartholomew de las Casas*, so famous in the annals of the New World, was born at Seville, of a noble family, in the year 1474; and at the age of nineteen accompanied his father in the first voyage made by Columbus. The mildness and simplicity of the Indians affected him deeply, and, on his return to Spain, he embraced the ecclesiastical profession, that he might labor as a missionary in the western hemisphere. But he soon began to feel less for the superstitions of the natives than for the cruelties practised upon them by his remorseless countrymen; and twelve times he crossed the ocean to plead at the foot of the Spanish throne the cause of the wretched Indians. In the hope of striking awe by a character revered among the Spaniards, he accepted the bishopric of Chiapa in Mexico; but, convinced at length that his dignity was an insufficient barrier against the cruelty and avarice which he designed to check, he resigned his see in 1551, and returned to his native country. It was then that this courageous, firm, disinterested man, accused his country before the tribunal of the whole universe. In his account of the tyranny of the Spaniards in America, he accuses them of having destroyed fif-

rights, yet they were still considered as vassals of the crown, and, under the direction of the governors of the districts in which they resided, were obliged to labor at regular periods, either in the fields or in the mines. **1560.**

4. [1]This indirect slavery was gradually abolished about the beginning of the eighteenth century, owing to the increasing abundance and cheapness of native labor; yet the Indians were still deprived, by the Spanish laws, of all the valuable privileges of citizens,—were treated as minors under the tutelage of their superiors—could make no contract beyond the value of ten pounds—were forbidden to marry with the whites—were prohibited the use of fire-arms, and were ruled by petty magistrates appointed by the government, which seemed to aim at keeping the native population in poverty and barbarism.

1. Gradual abolition of slavery.

Laws respecting the natives.

5. [2]Degenerated from the rank which they held in the days of Montezuma, banished into the most barren districts, where their indolence gained for them only a precarious subsistence, or, as beggars, swarming the streets of the cities, basking in the sun during the day, and passing the night in the open air, they afforded, during the long period of the Spanish rule, a melancholy example of that general degradation which the government of Spain brought upon the natives of all the Spanish American colonies.

2. Degenerate condition of the natives, and melancholy example thereby furnished.

6. [3]Nor was the colonial government established over the country at all calculated to promote the interests of the native Spanish population. For nearly three centuries, down to the year 1810, Mexico was governed by viceroys appointed by the court of Spain; all of whom, with one exception, were European Spaniards. Every situation in the gift of the crown was bestowed upon a European; nor is there an instance, for many years before the Revolution, either in the church, the army, or the law, in which the door of preferment was opened to a Spaniard, Mexican born. [4]Through this policy, a privileged *caste**

3. Character and policy of the colonial government, as affecting the interests of the native Spanish population.

4. Effect of this policy of the crown.

---

teen millions of the Indians. The court of Madrid, awakened by the representations of the virtuous Las Casas, and by the indignation of the whole world, became sensible, at last, that the tyranny it permitted was repugnant to religion, to humanity, and to policy, and resolved to break the chains of the Mexicans But they were only partially freed from the tyranny under which they had so long suffered Their liberty was given them, upon the condition that they should not quit the territory where they were settled; and their lands being retained by the Spaniards, they were still obliged to labor for their oppressors.

* Before the Revolution, the population of Mexico was divided into seven distinct castes 1. The old Spaniards, born in Spain, designated as Gachupines. 2. The Creoles, or Whites, of pure European race, born in America, and regarded by the old Spaniards as natives. 3. The Indians, or indigenous copper colored race. 4. The Mestizos, or mixed breeds of Whites and Indians, gradually merging into Creoles as the cross with the Indian race became more remote. 5. The Mulattos, or descendants of Whites and Negroes. 6. The Zambos, or Chinos, descendants of Negroes and Indians. And 7. The African Negroes, either manumitted or slaves.

Of these castes, the Spaniards, Creoles, Indians, and Negroes, were pure, and gave rise, in their various combinations, to the others, which were again subdivided without limit, and each

ANALYSIS. arose, distinct from the Mexican Spaniards in feelings, habits, and interests,—the paid agents of a government whose only aim was to enrich itself, without any regard to the abuses perpetrated under its authority.

1. The viceroys of Mexico;—wealth acquired by them.

7. [1]With a nominal salary of about sixty thousand dollars, the viceroy of Mexico kept up all the pageant of a court during several years, and then returned to his native country with a fortune of one or two millions of dollars, which, it was notorious, he had derived from a system of legalized plunder. [2]The sale of titles and distinctions, usually obtained from the king at the recommendation of the viceroy, was a source of great profit to both; but one still greater was that of granting licenses for the introduction of any article of foreign produce, for which immense sums were paid by the great commercial houses of Mexico and Vera Cruz. [3]So lucrative were the profits accruing from the various species of plundering carried on under the forms of law, that government situations, even without a salary, were in great request, and were found to be a sure road to affluence.

2. The sale of titles and distinctions, and the granting of licenses.

3. Lucrative profits of government situations.

4. Fruitless complaints of the Creoles.

5. Various changes introduced.

6. The spirit of clanship, and the effect of the distinctions thereby occasioned.

8. [4]The complaints of the Creoles, and their attempts to bring notorious offenders to justice, were equally fruitless. [5]The various changes, also, which from time to time the court of Spain introduced, with the avowed object of improving the condition of the people, were unproductive of any material results. [6]The spirit of clanship prevailed over justice and law; and so marked was the distinction kept up between the European and the Mexican Spaniards, that the son who had the misfortune to be born of a Creole mother, was considered, even in the house of his own father, inferior to the European book-keeper or clerk. Of all aristocratical distinctions in Mexico, those of country and of color were the greatest. The word Creole was used

---

being distinguished by a name expressing its participation in the white, or ruling color, which, being the general criterion of nobility, was often the subject of contention.

The Indians, comprising nearly two-fifths of the whole population, consist of various tribes, resembling each other in color, but differing entirely in language, customs, and dress. No less than twenty different Indian languages are known to be spoken in the Mexican territory, and probably the number is much greater. Next to the pure Indians, the Mestizos are the most numerous caste, and indeed few of the middling classes, or those who call themselves Creoles, or Whites, are exempt from a mixture of the Indian blood. From the first breaking out of the Mexican Revolution, the distinctions of castes were all swallowed up in the great vital distinction of *Americans* and *Europeans:* many of the most distinguished characters of the Revolutionary war belonged to the mixed races, and under the system of government first established at the close of the war, all permanent residents, without distinction of color, were entitled to the rights of citizenship, and capable of holding the highest dignities of the state. General Guerrero, who in 1824 was one of the members of the executive power, and in 1829 became President of the Republic, had a strong mixture of African blood in his veins.

The present population of Mexico is estimated at about eight millions. Of this number, about 2,000,000 are whites; about 3,500,000 are Indians, descendants of the original possessors of Mexico; and about 2,500,000 belong to the mixed castes, including a few negroes. The *Mestizos* alone, or mixed breeds of Whites and Indians, number more than *two millions.* To be white was formerly, in Mexico, a badge of considerable distinction. When a Mexican of a mixed caste considered himself slighted by another, he would ask, "Am I not as white as yourself?"

as a term of reproach, and was thought to express all the contempt that it is in the power of language to convey. **1700.**

9. [1]These distinctions, and the mutual antipathies caused by them, were doubtless secretly encouraged by the Spanish government, as the means of retaining, at all times, within its influence, a select and powerful party, whose existence depended on that of the system of which it was the principal support. [2]To render these distinctions more lasting, the great mass of the people were kept in ignorance, and they were taught to believe that they were fortunate in belonging to a monarchy superior in power and dignity to any other in the world. [3]A printing press was conceded to Mexico as a special privilege, while the same boon was denied to some other Spanish colonies. [4]Liberty to found a school of any kind was almost invariably refused, and the municipality of Buenos Ayres was told, in answer to a petition for an establishment in which nothing but mathematics were to be taught, that "learning did not become colonies."

1. Encouragement given to these distinctions and antipathies.

2. Ignorance of the great mass of the people.

3. A printing press.

4. Schools.

10. [5]The most serious causes of disquiet to the Mexican Creoles, however, were the commercial restrictions imposed upon them by the Spanish government. From the first, Spain reserved to herself the exclusive right of supplying the wants of her colonies. No foreigner was permitted to trade with them, nor foreign vessel to enter their ports, nor could a Mexican own a ship. [6]The colonies were forbidden to manufacture any article that the mother country could furnish, and they were compelled to receive from Spain many necessaries with which the fertility of their own soil would have supplied them. [7]The cultivation of the vine and the olive was prohibited, and that of many kinds of colonial produce was tolerated, only under certain limitations, and in such quantities as the mother country might wish to export. [8]By these regulations, those parts of the Spanish dominions that were not enriched by mines of gold and silver, were sunk in poverty, in the midst of their natural riches.

5. Commercial restrictions of the Spanish government.

6. Manufactures forbidden.

7. Products of the soil forbidden to be cultivated.

8. Effects of these regulations.

11. [9]During Queen Anne's War,[a] or, as it was called in Europe, "the war of the Spanish Succession,"[b] France succeeded, for a brief period, in opening a trade with some of the Spanish-American colonies; and by the treaty of Utrecht, in 1713, Great Britain was allowed to send a vessel of five hundred tons, annually, to the fair of Porto-Bello. [10]Some additional privileges were granted between the years 1739 and 1774, at which latter period the interdict upon the intercourse of the colonies with each other was removed; and four years later, the colonial trade, which had hitherto been confined almost exclusively to

9. Trade of other nations with the Spanish colonies.

a. 1702 to 1713. See p. 201.

b. See p. 324.

10 Additional privileges;—trade between the colonies permitted &c.

ANALYSIS.

a. See Note, p 118.

1 *Exclusion of foreigners, and claims of the Spanish court.*

b. See p. 327.

2. *Kennedy's description of the administration of the government in Mexico in the latter part of the 18th century.*

3. *The condition of Mexico immediately previous to the Revolution.*

4. *Different classes of people.*

5 *Public opinion:—the press, &c.*

Seville[a] alone, was opened to seven of the principal ports of Spain. [1]Still, foreigners were excluded from the market thus organized, and the court of Spain claimed, and rigidly enforced the right of an exclusive dominion over the vast seas surrounding its American possessions.[b]

12. [2]A recent writer* gives the following description of the administration of the government in Mexico during the reign of Charles IV., in the latter part of the eighteenth century. "Every office was publicly sold, with the exception of those that were bestowed upon court minions as the reward of disgraceful service. Men, destitute of talent, education, and character, were appointed to offices of the greatest responsibility in church and state; and panders and parasites were forced upon America, to superintend the finances, and preside in the supreme courts of appeal. For the colonists, there was no respite from official blood-suckers. Each succeeding swarm of adventurers, in the eagerness to indemnify themselves for the money expended in purchasing their places, increased the calamities of provinces already wasted by the cupidity of their predecessors. Truly might the Hispano-Americans have exclaimed, 'That which the palmer-worm hath left hath the locust eaten, that which the locust hath left hath the canker-worm eaten, and that which the canker-worm hath left hath the caterpillar eaten,'"

13. [3]The same writer thus forcibly describes the condition of Mexico immediately previous to the events which led to the Revolution. [4]"The condition of Mexico at the beginning of the present century was stamped with the repulsive features of an anarchical and semi-barbarous society, of which the elements were—an Aboriginal population, satisfied with existing in unmolested indigence; a chaos of parti-colored castes, equally passive, superstitious, and ignorant; a numerous Creole class, wealthy, mortified, and discontented; and a compact phalanx of European officials,—the pampered mamelukes of the crown—who contended for and profited by every act of administrative iniquity. [5]Public opinion was unrepresented; there were no popularly chosen authorities, no deliberative assemblies of the people, no independent publications,—for the miserably meagre press was but a shadow,—a light-abhorring phantom, evoked to stifle free discussion by suppressing its cause, and bound to do the evil bidding of a blind, disastrous, and suicidal tyranny."

* Kennedy, in his History of Texas: 2 vols. 8vo. London, 1841.

CHAPTER III.

MEXICO DURING THE FIRST REVOLUTION.

1808.

1. [1]The iniquitous system by which Mexico was governed during a period of nearly three centuries, has been briefly explained in the preceding chapter. As it was not in the nature of things that such a system should be endured any longer than the power to enforce it was retained, we are not surprised to find that the subversion of the Spanish monarchy in Europe was followed by the separation of the colonies from the mother country, and the final establishment of their independence. Those European events that led to this crisis require a brief explanation.

1. Preliminary remarks upon the separation of the colonies from the mother country.

2. [2]Spain, at this period, was a divided and degraded nation. The King, Charles IV., old and imbecile, was ruled by his queen, whose wicked passions were entirely under the influence of the base and unprincipled Godoy, who had been raised, by her guilty love, from a low station, to the supreme conduct of affairs. This ruling junto was held in hatred and contempt by a powerful party, at the head of which was Prince Ferdinand, heir to the throne. While Napoleon, emperor of the French, was secretly advancing his long-cherished schemes for seizing the throne of Spain, the royal family was engaged in petty conspiracies and domestic broils. [3]Terrified at length by a popular outbreak against himself and his minister, the king abdicated the throne in favor of his son Ferdinand.

2. Situation of Spain at this period.

Divisions among the Spaniards, and in the royal family.

Napoleon.

3. Charles IV abdicates the throne.

3. [4]A suitable opportunity was now presented for the interference of Napoleon. In the general confusion which prevailed, French troops crossed the frontiers, occupied the important posts, and a large army under Murat took possession[a] of the capital. [5]In the meantime, Charles IV., regretting the steps he had taken, and asserting that his abdication had been the result of fear and compulsion, appealed to Napoleon, and invoked his assistance in restoring him to the throne. [6]Napoleon however, having succeeded in enticing the whole royal family to Bayonne, compelled both father and son to renounce the throne; and a few days later Joseph Bonaparte, brother of Napoleon, was proclaimed king of Spain.

4. Interference of the French.

a. March 23

5. Charles IV. invokes the assistance of Napoleon.

6. The result of Napoleon's interference.

4. [7]Although the schemes of Napoleon were abetted by a party among the Spaniards themselves, yet the spirit of the nation, generally, was roused by the usurpation, and first a central junta, and then a regency, was established, which was declared to be the only legitimate source of

7. Government established in opposition to the schemes of Napoleon.

ANALYSIS.

1. Its character.

power during the captivity of the sovereign. [1]A democratic constitution, and the sovereignty of the people, were now substituted for the royal prerogative, and the divine right of kings; and the form and spiri of the Spanish government were essentially changed.

2. Effects of these events upon the Spanish population of Mexico.

5. [2]These events created a powerful impression upon the generally ignorant population of Mexico, where, until then, Spain had been regarded as the mother of kingdoms, in whose dominions the sun never set, and whose arms were the terror of the world. [3]As it had ever been an established principle that the Spanish possessions in America were vested in the *crown*, and not in the *state*, the king was the only tie that connected the colonies with the mother country; and they could perceive no justice in the claim by which their obedience was demanded to a government which the Spanish *people* had adopted, in the absence of their monarch.

3. The principle on which the Spanish colonies were attached to the mother country,—and how affected by the recent events.

4. How Spain was regarded by the colonies at this time:—The Spanish Regency; and revolt of the colonies.

6. [4]Moreover, Spain itself, overrun by the arms of France, was regarded as lost: the Spanish regency, swayed by the interests of the merchants at home, and little disposed to correct the abuses that had so long existed, but urged by the clamors of the colonies, pursued a course of policy vacillating in the extreme, until at length, in the early part of 1808, the Spanish American colonies, finally convinced that the mother country would relinquish no attribute of her former power, deposed the European authorities, and transferred the reins of government to juntas, or councils, composed almost exclusively of native Americans. With this general statement of the situation of all the Spanish American colonies in 1810, we return to trace the progress of the revolution in Mexico.

5. Conduct of the Mexican Viceroy, on learning that the Spanish capital was in the possession of a French army.

6. Conduct of the Mexican people.

7. National assembly proposed.

7. [5]When tidings of the dethronement of the Spanish monarch in 1808, and the occupation of the capital by a French army, reached Mexico, the viceroy solicited the support of the people, and declared his determination to preserve, to the last, his fidelity to his and their sovereign. [6]The people, flattered by the importance which was so unexpectedly conceded to them, gladly availed themselves of the opportunity to express their devoted loyalty, and resolved to support the authority of the viceroy. [7]A kind feeling immediately grew up between the government and the Creoles, and as a farther means of conciliating the latter, it was proposed that a national assembly should be called, composed of deputies from the neighboring provinces.

8. Opposed by the European Spaniards.

8. [8]This measure, however, was violently opposed by the European-Spaniards, as being an infraction of their

rights, and in violation of the prerogatives of the crown. [1]Finding that the Viceroy was determined to admit the Creoles to a share in the government, the court of the *Audiencia*, the highest judicial tribunal of Mexico, composed entirely of Europeans, seized[a] the Viceroy, whom they imprisoned, with his principal adherents. [2]The Europeans, both in the capital and in the interior, then formed *Patriotic* associations for the defence of what they termed their *rights*, and armed themselves against the Creoles. [3]Although the latter, unused to arms, submitted for the moment, yet their spirit was aroused, and the subject of controversy became one, not between their sovereign and themselves, as subjects, but between themselves and the comparatively small number of European-Spaniards, as to which should possess the right of administering the government during the captivity of the king.

1808.

1. *The Viceroy imprisoned by the Court of the Audiencia.*

a. Sept. 15.

2. *Arming of the European Spaniards.*

3. *Submission of the Creoles. New character given to the controversy.*

9. [4]The violence and arrogance of the Audiencia increased, among the Creoles, their feelings of hostility to the Europeans, and a general impatience to shake off the yoke of foreign domination was manifested throughout the entire province. [5]The first popular outbreak occurred in the little town of Dŏlŏrēs.* [6]The parish priest, Hidalgo, a man of activity and intelligence, first raised the standard of revolt "for the defence of religion and the redress of grievances." [7]He had long labored with great zeal to increase the resources of his curacy, by introducing the cultivation of the silkworm, and by planting vineyards in the vicinity of the town, when a special order arrived from the capital, prohibiting the inhabitants from making wine, by which they were reduced to the greatest distress. [8]Private motives of discontent were thus added to those which the cura felt in common with his countrymen, and having been joined by one of the officers of a neighboring garrison, and ten of his own parishioners, on the morning of the 16th of September, 1810, just two years after the arrest of the Viceroy, he seized and imprisoned seven Europeans, whose property he distributed amongst his followers.

4. *Effects produced by the violent measures of the Audiencia.*

5. *First popular outbreak.*

1810.

6. *Hidalgo*

7. *Causes which induced him to take up arms.*

8. *Beginning of the revolt.*

Sept. 16.

10. [9]The news of this insurrectionary movement spread rapidly, and was everywhere received with the same enthusiasm. Within three days the force of Hidalgo became so formidable that he was enabled to take possession[b] of San Fĕlípĕ† and San Mĭgŭĕl,‡ the former town contain-

9. *Enthusiasm of the people, and capture of San Felipe and San Miguel.*

b. Sept. 17-18.

---

* *Dolóres* is about twenty-five miles N.E. from the city of Guanaxuato, and about 190 miles N.W. from the city of Mexico.

† *San Felipe*, in the N.W. part of the state of Guanaxuato, is about twenty-five miles north from the capital of that state, and forty-five miles S.W. from San Luis Potosi.

‡ *San Miguel* is in the northern part of the state of Quertaro.

ANALYSIS.

ing a population of sixteen thousand inhabitants, in both of which places the property of the Europeans was confiscated. [1]On the 29th of the same month, Hidalgo, at the head of a force of 20,000 men, chiefly Indians poorly armed, entered the city of Guanaxuáto,* containing a population of 80,000 souls. After a severe struggle he overpowered the garrison, put the Spaniards to death, gave up their property to his troops, and recruited his military chest with public funds amounting to five millions of dollars. [2]On the 17th of October the insurgent force, already numbering nearly 50,000 men, entered Valladolid† without resistance.

Sept. 29.

1. *Taking of the city of Guanazuato.* (Gwah-nah-wah-to.)

2. *Of Valladolid.* Oct. 17.

11. [3]At Valladolid Hidalgo was joined by additional Indian forces, and by several companies of well-armed provincial militia; but a still greater acquisition was the war-like priest, Morélos,[a] who afterwards became one of the most distinguished characters of the Revolution. [4]From Valladolid Hidalgo advanced[b] to Toluca,‡ within twenty-five miles of the capital. [5]In the mean time Venegas, the new Viceroy, had collected about 7000 men in and near the city of Mexico for its defence; a small corps of whom, under the command of Truzíllo, assisted by Iturbíde,[c] a lieutenant in the Spanish service, having advanced to Las Cruces,§ was beaten back[d] by the insurgents. [6]If Hidalgo, at this moment of alarm among the royalists, had advanced upon the capital, the result cannot be doubtful; but contrary to the advice of his officers, he made a sudden and unaccountable retreat, after remaining two or three days within sight of the city.

3. *Accessions to the forces of Hidalgo.*

a. (Mo-rā-los.)

4. *Advance to Toluca.* b. Oct. 19 to 23.

5. *Government troops repulsed at Las Cruces.*

c. (Pronounced E-tur-ve-da.)

d. Oct. 30.

6. *Error of Hidalgo.*

12. [7]The subsequent career of Hidalgo was a series of disasters. On the 7th of November his undisciplined and poorly-armed troops were met and routed in the plains of Acúlco,[e] by the royalist general, Calleja, whose force was composed principally of Creole regiments, which had been induced to take arms against the cause of their countrymen. [8]Ten thousand Indians are said to have perished at Acúlco, but Hidalgo and most of his officers escaped. [9]Calleja soon after entered the city of Guanaxuáto, where he revenged himself and his followers for the excesses which the insurgent populace had previously committed against the Europeans. To avoid the waste of powder and ball, it is said that he cut the throats of the defence-

7. *Defeat of his forces at Aculco.* Nov. 7.

e. (Ah-cool-co.)

8. *His losses in that battle.*

9. *Sanguinary measures of Calleja.*

* *Guanazuáto*, the capital of the state of the same name, is about 190 miles N.W. from the city of Mexico.

† *Valladolid*, the capital of the state of Valladolid, or Michoacan, is situated on a plain more than 6000 feet above the level of the sea, and contains a population of about 20,000 inhabitants. The city is about 140 miles a little north of west from the city of Mexico.

‡ *Toluca* is a large town about forty miles S.W. from the Mexican capital. (See Map, p. 569.

§ *Las Cruces* is a pass in the mountain chain which separates the valley of Mexico from that of Toluca. It is about twelve miles S.W. from the city of Mexico (See Map, p. 569.)

less inhabitants, until the principal fountain of the city literally overflowed with gore. **1810.**

13. [1]Hidalgo retreated to Valladolid, where he caused eighty Europeans to be beheaded; and, proceeding thence to Guadalaxára,* he made a triumphal entrance into that city on the 24th of November. Here he committed another act of cold blooded massacre, which has left a foul blot upon his name. All the Europeans having been thrown into prison, and being soon after charged with a conspiracy against the insurgents, Hidalgo determined to destroy them all. Without any form of trial or previous examination, they were taken out in small parties, and conducted, under the veil of night, to retired parts of the neighboring mountains, where between seven and eight hundred were butchered in secret;—the use of fire-arms being prohibited, for fear of creating any alarm. [2]This remorseless act of barbarity, besides being wholly unjustifiable by the rules of war, was impolitic in the extreme. It prevented many respectable Creoles from joining the insurgents, and as it drove the Spaniards to despair, it furnished them, at the same time, with an excuse for any atrocities which they chose to commit.

Nov. 14.
1. *Retreat of Hidalgo, and his cruelties at Valladolid and Guadalaxara.*
(Gwah-dah-lah hah-rah.)
2. *Impolicy of this remorseless act.*

14. [3]On the 17th of January following, the two armies again met, at the Bridge of Calderon,† a short distance northeast from Guadalaxára, where the insurgents were defeated, although with a smaller loss than at Acúlco. [4]Reduced to about 4000 men, they continued their retreat farther north until they arrived at Saltíllo,‡ nearly 500 miles from the Mexican capital. [5]Here Hidalgo, with several of his officers, left the army, with the design of proceeding to the frontiers of the United States, where they intended to purchase arms and military stores with a part of the treasure which they had saved. On the road they were surprised and made prisoners[a] by the treachery of a former associate. Hidalgo was brought to trial at Chihuáhua[b] by orders of the government, deprived of his clerical orders, and sentenced to be shot. His companions shared his fate.

1811.
Jan. 17.
3. *Defeat of the insurgents at the Bridge of Calderon.*
4. *Their retreat to Saltillo.*
5. *Capture and death of Hidalgo.*
a. March 21.
(Chee-hooah-hooah.)
b. Note, p. 561. July 27.

---

* *Guadalaxara*, the second city in Mexico, is the capital of the state of Jalisco, formerly the province of Guadalaxara. The city is situated in a handsome plain, about fifteen miles S.W. from the River Lerma, or Rio Grande de Santiago. The streets of the city are wide, and many of the houses excellent. There are numerous squares and fountains, and a number of convents and churches. Of the latter, the cathedral is still a magnificent building, although the cupolas of both its towers were destroyed by an earthquake in 1818. In 1827 Guadalaxara contained a mint and four printing presses, all established since the Revolution.

† The *Bridge of Calderon* (Puente de Calderon) is thrown across a northern branch of the Rio Grande de Santiago, forty-five miles N.E. from the city of Guadalaxara. The banks of the stream are precipitously steep. "On the hill towards Guadalaxara there is still a mound of stones, covered with an infinity of little crosses, which denote the spot where the slaughter is said to have been greatest." Ward's Mexico: 1829.

‡ *Saltillo* is a large town in a mountainous region, in the southern part of the province of Coahuila, about seventy miles S.W. from Monterey, (Mon-ter-á.)

ANALYSIS.

1. *Rayon assumes command of the insurgents.*

2. *State of affairs at this period.*

3. *Account of Morelos.*

a. (In Oct. 1810.)

15. [1]On the fall of Hidalgo, Rayón, a young lawyer who had been the confidential secretary of the former, assumed the command of the remains of the forces at Saltillo, and retreated with them upon Zacatecas;* but his authority was acknowledged by none but his own men. [2]Although insurgent forces were organized throughout all the internal provinces, yet there was no concert among their leaders, and the authority of the Viceroy was acknowledged in all the principal cities. [3]In the mean time Morélos, who, after joining Hidalgo, had proceeded[a] with a few servants, six muskets, and a dozen lances, to raise the standard of revolt on the southwestern coast, was beginning to attract the public attention.

4. *His forces, arms, and first success.*

b. (Jan. 25, 1811.)

16. [4]Arriving on the coast, he was joined by a numerous band of slaves, eager to purchase their freedom on the field of battle. Arms, however, were scarce; and twenty muskets, found in a small village, were deemed an invaluable acquisition. With his numbers increased to about a thousand men, he now advanced upon Acapulco.† Being met by the commandant of the district, at the head of a large body of well disciplined troops, he surprised[b] and routed him by a night attack, and thereby gained possession of eight hundred muskets, five pieces of artillery, a quantity of ammunition, and a considerable sum of money. [5]Seven hundred prisoners were taken, all of whom were treated with the greatest humanity. [6]This successful enterprise was the corner-stone of all the later triumphs of Morélos, and from this moment the rapidity of his progress was astonishing.

5. *His treatment of prisoners.*

6. *His later triumphs.*

7. *His victories in 1811, and advance towards the capital.*

1812.

17. [7]By a series of brilliant victories, which were never tarnished by wanton cruelties, during the year 1811 he overcame the several detachments sent against him by Venégas; and in February, 1812, his advanced forces had arrived within twenty miles of the gates of Mexico. [8]The alarm created by this movement drew upon him a more formidable opponent, and Calleja was summoned to defend the capital, with the army which had triumphed at Acúlco and the bridge of Calderón. [9]While these events were transpiring, Rayón had conceived the idea of establishing a national junta, or representative assembly, for the purpose of uniting the people in a more general coalition against the Spanish power.

8. *Calleja summoned to defend the capital.*

9. *Proceedings of Rayon in the meantime.*

10 *Congress of Zitacuaro, and its proceedings.*

18. [10]In accordance with these views, a central government, composed of five members, elected by the people of

* *Zacatecas*, the capital of the state of the same name, is about ninety miles N.W. from the city of San Luis Potosi, and nearly 300 from the Mexican capital. It stands in a ravine, between high hills, in which are numerous mines of silver.

† *Acapulco* is a seaport on the Pacific coast, near the southern extremity of the state of Mexico. (See Map, p. 558.)

1812.

the district, was installed[a] at the town of Zitacuaro,* in the province of Valladolid. This body acknowledged the authority of King Ferdinand, published their edicts in his name, and evinced a liberal and enlightened spirit in all its proceedings; but the flattering hopes at first excited by it among the Creoles were never realized. The good intentions and wisdom of the junta were shown in an able manifesto, transmitted[b] to the Viceroy, and drawn up by General Cos, one of its members. [1]This paper the Viceroy ordered to be burned by the public executioner in the great square of Mexico; but notwithstanding the contempt with which it was treated, it produced a great effect upon the public mind,—enforced, as it was, by the example and successes of Morélos.

a. (Sept. 10, 1811.)

b. March, 1812

1. *Manifesto of the Congress burned by the Viceroy.*

Its effect upon the public mind.

19. [2]Calleja, soon after his arrival at the capital, attacked the forces of Morélos at the town of Cúaútla;† but after a severe action[c] he was repulsed, and obliged to retreat, leaving five hundred dead on the field of battle. [3]Advancing again with additional forces, he commenced[d] the siege of the place in form, which was sustained with great spirit by the besieged, until famine and disease commenced their frightful ravages in the town. [4]So great was the scarcity of food that a cat sold for six dollars, a lizard for two, and rats for one. Yet the soldiers of Morélos endured all their sufferings without repining; and it was not until all hopes of receiving supplies from without were abandoned, that they consented to evacuate the town, which they effected without loss, and unknown to the enemy, on the night of the second of May. [5]It was during the events attending the siege of Cúaútla, that Victoria and Bravo, both young men, first distinguished themselves. At the same time Guerrero, in the successful defence of a neighboring town, began his long and perilous career.

2. *Battle of Cuautla.*

c. Feb. 19, 1812.

3. *Siege of Cuautla.*

d. March 1.

4. *Sufferings and fortitude of the besieged, and final evacuation of the place.*

May 2.

5. *Victoria, Bravo, and Guerrero.* (Brah-vo, Ger-rā-ro.)

20. [6]During the summer, the troops of Morélos were almost uniformly successful in their numerous encounters with divisions of the enemy. [7]In August, after an engagement at a place called the Palmár, or Grove of Palms, that lasted three days, the village to which the Spaniards had retired was stormed[e] by General Bravo, and three hundred prisoners were taken. [8]These prisoners were offered to the Viceroy Venegas, in exchange for

6. *Successes of Morelos in 1812.*

7. *Battle of the Palmar.*

e. Aug. 20.

8. *Cruelty of the Viceroy, and noble conduct of General Bravo.*

---

* *Zitacuaro* is in the eastern part of the province of Valladolid, or Michoacan, about seventy miles west from the city of Mexico.

† *Cúaútla*, (Coo-ah-oot-la,) or Cúaútla Amilpas, a village about sixty miles S.E. from the city of Mexico, is situated in a plain or valley at the foot of the first terrace on the descent from the table-land towards the Pacific. The plains of Cúaútla, together with those of Cuernavaca, a village about thirty miles farther westward, are occupied by numerous sugar plantations, which are now in a state of beautiful cultivation, although they suffered greatly during the Revolution. (See Map, p. 569.)

ANALYSIS.

the father of Bravo, then a prisoner at the capital, and under sentence of death; but the offer was rejected, and the sentence was carried into immediate execution. The noble-hearted son, instead of making reprisals by the massacre of his prisoners, immediately set them at liberty;—"wishing," as he said, "to put it out of his power to avenge on them the death of his father, lest, in the first moment of grief, the temptation should prove irresistible."

Nov.
1. *Expedition against Oaxaca.*
2. *Surrender of Acapulco.*
1813.
a. Aug. 20.
3. *Congress of Chilpanzingo.*
b. Sept. 13.
c. Nov. 13.
Declaration of Independence.
4. *Second battle of the Palmar.*
d. Oct. 18.
5. *March of Morelos upon Valladolid.*
e. Nov. 8.
6. *His repulse, and the subsequent rout of his army.*
f. Dec. 23.

21. [1]In November occurred the famous expedition against Oaxáca,* which was carried by storm, although defended by a strong royalist garrison. [2]In August of the following year, the strongly fortified city of Acapulco surrendered[a] after a siege of six months. [3]In the mean time preparations had been made for the meeting of a National Congress. This body, composed of the original members of the Junta established by Rayón at Zitacuaro, and deputies elected by the neighboring provinces, having assembled[b] at the town of Chilpanzíngo,† there proclaimed[c] the Independence of Mexico; a measure which produced but little impression upon the country; as, from that period, the fortunes of Morélos, the founder and protector of the congress, began to decline. [4]It was during the session of this congress, however, that the royalists sustained, in the second battle of the Palmár, the most serious check which they had received during the whole war. At this place the regiment of Asturias, composed entirely of European troops, who had come out from Spain with the proud title of "the invincible victors of the victors of Austerlitz," was cut off by the insurgent general, Matamóras, after an action[d] of eight hours.

22. [5]Leaving Chilpanzíngo in November,[e] Morélos, with a force of seven thousand men, marched upon Valladolid, where he found a formidable force under Iturbíde, then promoted to the rank of colonel, prepared to oppose him. [6]Rendered too confident by his previous successes, without giving time for his troops to repose, he advanced[f] against the town, but was repulsed with loss. On the following day Iturbíde sallied from the walls, and attacked the insurgents while they were drawn up in review on the plains. At the same time a large body of cavalry coming to the assistance of Morélos, but mistaking him for the enemy, made a furious charge upon his flanks; while Iturbíde, taking advantage of the error, succeeded in putting the whole army of the insurgents to the rout, with the

* *Oaxaca*, the capital of the state of the same name, is on the east side of the River Verde, about 200 miles S.E. from the city of Mexico. "It is the neatest, cleanest, and most regularly built city of Mexico." (*M'Culloch.*)

† *Chilpanzingo* is a large town in the state of Mexico, about fifty-five miles N.E. from Acapulco, and 130 miles south from the city of Mexico.

loss of all their artillery. [1]On the 6th of January following, Morélos was again attacked, and defeated by Iturbíde. In the dispersion which followed, Matamóras was taken prisoner; and although Morélos offered a number of Spanish prisoners in exchange for him, yet Calleja, who had recently replaced Venegas as Viceroy, rejected the proposal, and ordered him to be shot. [2]The insurgents, by way of reprisals, ordered all their prisoners to be put to death.

1814.

Jan. 6.

1. *Again repulsed, and Matamoras taken prisoner and executed.*

2. *Reprisals.*

23. [3]Morélos never recovered from the reverses which he had sustained at Valladolid. Although he displayed as much resolution and activity as ever, yet he lost action after action; all his strong posts were taken; the Congress of Chilpanzíngo was broken up; and several of his best generals died upon the scaffold, or perished on the field of battle. [4]In November, 1815, while convoying, with a small party, the deputies of the congress to a place of safety, he was suddenly attacked[a] by a large body of royalists. Ordering General Bravo to continue the march with the main body, as an escort to the congress, and remarking that his life was of little consequence, provided the congress could be saved, he endeavored with only fifty men to check the advance of the Spaniards. Having sought death in vain during the struggle which ensued, he succeeded in gaining time until only one man was left fighting by his side, when he was taken prisoner.

3. *Subsequent reverses of Morelos.*

1815.

4. *Morelos taken prisoner.*

a. Nov. 5

24. [5]He was at first treated with great brutality, stripped of his clothing, and carried in chains to a Spanish garrison. Here the Spanish commandant, Don Manuel Concha, received him with the respect due to a fallen enemy, and treated him with unusual humanity and attention. Being hastily tried and condemned to death, Don Manuel was ordered to remove him to another Spanish post, where the sentence was to be carried into execution. On arriving there, he dined with Don Manuel, whom he afterwards embraced, aud thanked for his kindness. Having confessed himself, he walked with the most perfect serenity to the place of execution, where he uttered the following simple but affecting prayer: "Lord, if I have done well, thou knowest it; if ill, to thy infinite mercy I commend my soul." He then bound a handkerchief over his eyes, gave the signal to the soldiers to fire, and met death with as much composure as he had ever shown when facing it on the field of battle.

5. *His treatment while a prisoner,—trial and execution*

Dec. 22.

25. [6]After the death of Morélos, the cause of the insurgents languished; for although it was supported in many parts of the country by men of courage and talent, yet no one possessed sufficient influence to combine the operations

6. *The cause of the insurgents after the death of Morelos.*

ANALYSIS.

1. *The principal insurgent chiefs at this time.*

of the whole, and prevent the jarring interests of the different leaders from breaking out into open discord. [1]The principal insurgent chiefs remaining at this time, were Terán, Guerréro, Rayón, Tórrĕs, Brávo, and Victória.

2. *Account of Teran.*

a. Dec. 15.

26. [2]Terán remained mostly in the province of Puebla,* where, after having disbanded[a] the Congress, which had been thrown upon him for protection, he for some time carried on a desultory warfare, in which he was generally successful, although straitened greatly by the want of arms. He was finally compelled to surrender on the 21st of January, 1817. His life having been secured by the capitulation, he lived in obscurity at La Puebla, until the breaking out of the second Revolution in 1821. [3]Guerréro occupied the western coast, where he maintained himself in the mountainous districts until the year 1821, when he joined Iturbide. [4]Rayón commanded in the northern parts of the province of Valladolid.[b] His principal strong-hold was besieged by Iturbide in January, 1815, and an attack upon his works was repelled on the 4th of March following. Finally, during his absence, the fortress surrendered[c] in 1817; and, soon after, Rayón himself, deserted by all his adherents, was taken prisoner. He was confined in the capital until 1821.

3. *Of Guerrero.*

4. *Of Rayon.*

b. (See Map, p. 558.)

c. Jan. 2, 1817.

5. *Account of the Padre Torres.*

(Bax-e-o.)

27. [5]The Padre Torres, vindictive, sanguinary, and treacherous by nature, had established a sort of half-priestly, half-military despotism in the Baxío,† the whole of which he had parcelled out among his military commandants,—men mostly without principle or virtue, and whose only recommendation was implicit obedience to the will of their chief. From his fortress, on the top of the mountain of Los Remedios[d], he was the scourge of the country around,—devastating the most fertile portion of the Mexican territory, and sparing none, whether Creole or Spaniard, who had the misfortune to offend him. Yet under the auspices of this man, existed for a time the only shadow of a government that was kept up by the insurgents. It was called the Junta of Jauixilla, but it possessed little authority beyond the immediate adherents of Torres. [6]Bravo was a wanderer in different parts of the country, opposed by superior royalist forces, until December, 1817, when he was taken prisoner, and sent to the capital.

d. (See Note, p. 589.)

6. *General Bravo.*

7. *Victoria: Plans of the Viceroy against him.*

28. [7]Victoria, at the head of a force of about 2000 men,

* The province of *Puebla* has the provinces of Vera Cruz and Oaxaca on the east, and the province of Mexico on the west (See Map, p. 558.)

† The *Baxio*, celebrated in Mexico as the principal seat of the agricultural resources of the republic, and the scene of the most cruel ravages of the civil war, embraces a part of the states of Querétaro, Michoacan, Guanaxuato, and the southeastern portion of Guadalaxara.

occupied the important province of Vera Cruz,* where he was a constant source of uneasiness to the Viceroy, who at length formed a plan of establishing a chain of fortified posts, sufficiently strong to command the communication between Vera Cruz and the capital, and restrain the incursions of the insurgents. [1]During a struggle of upwards of two years against all the power of the Viceroy, and several thousand regular troops sent out from Spain to quell this last and most formidable of the insurgent chiefs, Victoria was gradually driven from his strong holds; most of his old soldiers fell; the zeal of the inhabitants, in the cause of the Revolution, abated; the last remnant of his followers deserted him; when, still unsubdued in spirit, he was left actually alone. [2]Resolving not to yield on any terms to the Spaniards, he refused the rank and rewards which the Viceroy offered him as the price of his submission, and, unaccompanied by a single attendant, sought an asylum in the solitude of the mountains, and disappeared to the eyes of his countrymen.

1818.

1. Losses gradually sustained by Victoria, and his final desertion by all his followers.

2. His unyielding resolution, and self-banishment

29. [3]During a few weeks he was supplied with provisions by the Indians, who knew him and respected his name; but the Viceroy Apodaca, fearing that he would again emerge from his retreat, sent out a thousand men to hunt him down. Every village that had harbored the fugitive was burned without mercy, and the Indians were struck with such terror by this unexampled rigor, that they either fled at his sight, or closed their huts against him. For upwards of six months he was followed like a wild beast by his pursuers; often surrounded, and on numerous occasions barely escaping with his life. [4]At length it was pretended that a body had been found, which was recognized as that of Victoria, and the search was abandoned.

3. The efforts made by the Viceroy to seize or destroy him.

4. His supposed death.

30. [5]But the trials of Victoria did not terminate here. At one time he was attacked by fever, and remained eleven days at the entrance of a cavern, stretched on the ground, without food, hourly expecting a termination of his wretched existence, and so near death that the vultures were constantly hovering around him in expectation of their prey. One of these birds having approached to feast on his half-closed eyes, he seized it by the neck and killed it. Nourished by its warm blood, he was enabled to crawl to the nearest water to slake his parching thirst. [6]His body was lacerated by the thorny underwood of the tropics, and emaciated to a skeleton; his clothes were

5. Sickness of Victoria, and interesting anecdote of him

6. The kind of life that he led in the mountains.

* The province of Vera Cruz extends about 500 miles along the southwestern coast of the Gulf of Mexico. (See Map, p. 558.)

ANALYSIS.

torn to pieces; in summer he managed to subsist on roots and berries, but in winter, after being long deprived of food, he was often glad to make a repast in gnawing the bones of horses or other animals that he happened to find dead in the woods; and for thirty months he never tasted bread, nor saw a human being.

1. Account of his parting with the last of his companions in 1818.

31. [1]Thus nearly three years passed away, from the time when he was abandoned by all his followers in 1818. The last who had lingered with him were two Indians, on whose fidelity he knew he could rely. As he was about to separate from them, they asked where he wished them to look for him, if any change in the prospects of the country should take place. Pointing, in reply, to a mountain at some distance, particularly rugged and inaccessible, and surrounded by forests of vast extent, he told them that on that mountain, perhaps, they might find his bones. The Indians treasured up this hint, and as soon as the first news of the revolution of 1821 reached them, they set out in quest of Victoria.

2. The search for him in 1821.

32. [2]After having spent six weeks in examining the woods which cover the mountain, finding their little stock of provisions exhausted, and their efforts unavailing, they were about to give up the attempt, when one of them discovered, in crossing a ravine, the print of a foot which he knew to be that of a white man. The Indian waited two days upon the spot, but seeing nothing of Victoria, he suspended upon a tree four little maize cakes, which were all he had left, and departed for his village in order to replenish his wallet; hoping, that if Victoria should pass in the meantime, the cakes would attract his attention, and convince him that some friend was in search of him.

3. Success of the plan which the Indian had adopted.

33. [3]The plan succeeded completely. Victoria, in crossing the ravine two days afterwards, discovered the cakes, which, fortunately, the birds had not devoured. He had been four days without food, and he ate the cakes before the cravings of his appetite would allow him to reflect upon the singularity of finding them on that solitary spot, where he had never before seen the trace of a human being. Not knowing whether they had been left there by friend or foe, but confident that whoever had left them intended to return, he concealed himself near the place, in order to watch for his unknown visitor.

4. Return of the Indian, and his meeting with Victoria.

34. [4]The Indian soon returned, and Victoria, recognizing him, started from his concealment to welcome his faithful follower, who, terrified at seeing a man, haggard, emaciated, and clothed only with an old cotton wrapper, advancing upon him from the bushes with a sword in his hand, took to flight, and it was only on hearing his name

repeatedly called, that he recovered his composure sufficiently to recognize his old general. [1]He was deeply affected at the state in which he found him, and conducted him instantly to his village, where the long lost Victoria was received with the greatest enthusiasm. The report of his reappearance spread like lightning through the province, where it was not credited at first, so firmly was every one persuaded of his death; but when it was known that Guadalûpe Victoria was indeed living, all the old insurgents rallied around him. [2]A farther account of this patriot and friend of his country will be found in connection with later events in Mexican history, in which he was destined to be a prominent actor.

1821.

1. *Reception of Victoria on his reappearance.*

2. *Farther account of this patriot.*

35. [3]About the time of the dispersion of the principal insurgent forces in 1817, a daring attempt was made by a foreigner, Don Xavier Mina, to establish the independence of Mexico on a constitutional basis, without an entire separation from the mother country. Mina, after having been driven from Spain for attempting a rising in favor of the Cortes and the constitution of 1812, turned his attention to Mexico, and resolved to advocate the same cause of liberty there.

3. *Mina's project.*

36. [4]With thirteen Spanish and Italian, and two English officers, he arrived in the United States in the summer of 1816, where he fitted up a brig and a schooner, procured arms, ammunition, and stores, and completed his corps, which included a large proportion of officers. [5]Late in the season he proceeded to Galveston,[a] on the coast of Texas, where he passed the winter, and on the 15th of April, 1817, he landed at Soto la Marina,* in Mexico, with an invading force of only three hundred and fifty-nine men, including officers; of whom fifty one, composing an American regiment under Colonel Perry, deserted him before he commenced his march into the interior of the country.

1816.

4. *His arrival in the United States, and preparations for invading Mexico.*

5. *Proceeds to Texas, and in 1817 lands in Mexico.*

a. (See Note, p. 628.)

1817.

Desertion of a part of his forces.

37. [6]The time chosen by Mina for this invasion, and the circumstances under which it was planned, were exceedingly unfortunate. The revolutionary spirit was already on the decline; the principal leaders of the first insurrection had successively departed from the scene; and the cause of the revolution was sustained only by the chiefs of predatory bands, with whom it was a disgrace to be associated. [7]Mina advocated liberty without a separation from Spain; a principle calculated to awaken little enthusiasm among the people: he was, moreover a Span-

6. *Unfortunate circumstances attending this invasion.*

7. *Principle advocated by Mina, and the disadvantages under which he labored.*

* The village of *Soto la Marina* (Mah-rē-nah) is in the province of Tamaulipas, about 120 miles north from Tampico. It stands upon an elevation on the left bank of the River Santander, about thirty miles from its entrance into the Gulf of Mexico.

ANALYSIS.

iard, and as such could not obtain the confidence of the Spaniard-hating Mexicans, who thus became passive spectators of the contest upon which he was about to enter with the armies of the king.

1. *Mina's advance into the interior.*

a. May 24, 1817.

2. *First collision with the enemy.*

3. *Meeting with a larger force.*

b. June 14.

38. [1]Leaving a hundred men to garrison a fort which he had erected at Soto la Marina, with the remainder of his forces Mina set out[a] for the interior, in the face of several detachments of the royal army, greatly superior to him in numbers. [2]The first collision with the enemy was at Valle de Maiz,* where he routed a body of cavalry, four hundred strong. [3]A few days later, having arrived at the Hacienda or plantation of Peotíllos,† he was met[b] by Brigadier-general Armiñan, at the head of 2000 men, nine hundred and eighty of whom were European infantry.

4. *Circumstances of the engagement, and defeat of the enemy.*

5. *General dispersion of the enemy.*

6. *The Spanish order of the day.*

c. June 19.

7. *Capture of Pinos, and arrival at Sombrero.*

June 24.

39. [4]A part of Mina's detachment having been left in charge of the ammunition and baggage, the remainder, only 172 in number, were posted on a small eminence, where they were soon enveloped by the royalist forces. Having loaded their muskets with buck-shot instead of balls, and rendered desperate by the apparent hopelessness of their situation, they desired to be led down into the plain, where they made so furious a charge upon the Spanish line, that, notwithstanding its immense superiority in numbers, it was broken, and the enemy sought safety in precipitate flight. [5]So great was the panic, that, although there was no pursuit, the dispersion was general. Armiñan and his staff did not stop until they were many leagues from the field of battle; and the cavalry was not heard of for four days. [6]The Spanish order of the day, which was found on the field, expressly forbade quarter. [7]Five days later Mina carried by surprise[c] the fortified town of Pinos,‡ in the province of Zacatecas; and on the 24th of June reached Sombrero,§ where he was welcomed by a body of the insurgents; having effected a circuitous march of 660 miles in thirty-two days, and been three times engaged with an enemy of greatly superior strength.

8. *Mina goes in pursuit of Castanon.*

d. (Cas-tan-yon.)

9. *Defeat of the enemy and Castanon killed.*

40. [8]Allowing his troops only four days of repose at Sombrero, Mina, with a force of four hundred men, many of whom were poorly armed, went in search of the royalist general, Castañon,[d] who commanded a well disciplined corps of seven hundred men. [9]On the 29th of June, the

* The place called *Val-lé de Maiz* is near the River Panuco, in the southern part of the province of San Luis Potosi, near the confines of the table-land.

† *Peotillos* is about thirty-five miles N.W. from San Luis Potosi.

‡ *Pinos* is a small mining town in the central part of the southern portion of the province of Zacatecas.

§ The fortress of *Sombrero*, called by the royalists *Comanja*, was on a mountain height about forty miles N.W. from the city of Guanaxuato.

1817.

two parties met in the plains which divide the towns of San Felípe* and San Juan.† The infantry of Mina, advancing upon the regulars, gave them one volley, and then charged with the bayonet; while the cavalry, after breaking that of the enemy, turned upon the infantry already in confusion, and actually cut them to pieces. Castañon himself was killed, with three hundred and thirty-nine of his men; and more than two hundred prisoners were taken.

1. Other successes of Mina.

41. [1]Soon after, Mina took possession of the Hacienda of Jaral,‡ belonging to a Creole nobleman, but devoted to the royal cause. The owner of the estate fled at the approach of the troops, but one of his secret hoards was discovered, from which about two hundred thousand dollars in silver were taken, and transferred to Mina's military chest. [2]To counterbalance these advantages, the fort at Soto la Marina was obliged to capitulate; and *thirty-seven* men and officers, the little remnant of the garrison, grounded their arms before fifteen hundred of the enemy. At the same time Mina's exertions to organize a respectable force in the Baxio were counteracted by the jealousy of the Padre Torres, who could not be induced to co-operate with a man, of whose superior abilities he was both jealous and afraid. [3]Sombrero was besieged[a] by nearly four thousand regular troops; and during the absence of Mina, the garrison, attempting to cut their way through the enemy, were nearly all destroyed,[b] not fifty of Mina's whole corps escaping. [4]Los Remédios,§ another fortress, occupied by a body of insurgent troops under the Padre Torres, was soon after besieged[c] by the royalists under General Liñan, and Mina, checked by a superior force, was unable to relieve it.

2. Commencement of his reverses.

3. Loss of Sombrero.

a. July 30.

b. Aug. 19.

4. Los Remedios besieged.

c. Aug. 31.

42. [5]Convinced that the garrison must yield unless the attention of the enemy could be diverted to another quarter, Mina, at the head of a body of his new associates, his former soldiers having nearly all fallen, attempted to surprise the city of Guanaxuato. [6]With little opposition his troops had carried[d] the gates, and penetrated into the interior of the town, when their courage and subordination failed them at once, and they refused to advance. The garrison soon rallied, and attacking Mina's division, put it to rout, when a general dispersion ensued. [7]Mina, with a small escort, took the road to Venadíto,‖ where he was

5. Mina's attempt upon the city of Guanaxuato.

6. His partial success, and final defeat.

d. Oct. 24.

7. Mina taken prisoner, and executed.

---

* *San Felipe.* (See Note, p. 577.) (Pronounced Fa-lee-pa.)

† *San Juan*, or San Juan de los Llanos, is about twelve miles from San Felipe.

‡ *El Jaràl* is about twenty-five miles N.E from San Felipe, on the road to San Luis Potosi.

§ *Los Remedios*, called by the royalists San Gregorio, was on one of the mountain heights a short distance S.S.W. from Guanaxuato.

‖ *Venadíto* is a small rancho, or village, on the road from Guanaxuato to San Felipe.

ANALYSIS.

a. Oct. 27.

surprised and captured[a] by the Spanish general Orrantia. By an order from the Viceroy Apodáca he was ordered to be shot, and the sentence was executed on the eleventh of November, in sight of the garrison of Los Remedios.

Nov. 11.

1. *Dissensions among the insurgent leaders—losses—and close of the first revolution.*

43. [1]After the death of Mina, dissensions broke out among the Insurgent leaders; and every town and fortress of note fell into the hands of the Royalists. Torres was killed by one of his own captains; Guerrero, with a small force, was on the western coast, cut off from all communication with the interior; and Victoria, as has been related, had sought refuge in the mountains. In 1819 the revolutionary cause was at its lowest ebb; and the Viceroy declared, in a despatch transmitted to the government at Madrid, that he would answer for the safety of Mexico without an additional soldier.

1819.

2. *Remarks upon the Revolution.*

44. [2]Thus ended the first Revolution in Mexico, with the total defeat and dispersion of the Independent party, after a struggle of nine years, from the time of the first outbreak at the little town of Dolóres. The Revolution was, from the first, opposed by the higher orders of the clergy, and but coldly regarded by the more opulent Creoles, who, conciliated to the government, gave to Spain her principal support during the early part of the contest.

3. *Cruelties perpetrated.*

45. [3]In the distractions of a civil war, which made enemies of former friends, neighbors, and kindred, the most wanton cruelties were often committed by the leaders on both sides. [4]Hidalgo injured and disgraced the cause which he espoused, by appealing to the worst passions of his Indian confederates, whose ferocity appeared the more extraordinary, from having lain dormant so long. [5]But the Spaniards were not backwards in retaliating upon their enemies; and Calleja, the Spanish commander, eclipsed Hidalgo as much in the details of cold blooded massacre, as in the practice of war.

4. *Hidalgo, and his Indian confederates.*

5. *Calleja.*

6. *Morelos.*

46. [6]Morelos was no less generous than brave; and with his fall the most brilliant period of the Revolution terminated. [7]Fresh troops arrived from Spain, and the Viceroy Apodáca, who succeeded Calleja, by the adoption of a conciliatory policy, and the judicious distribution of pardons from the king, reduced the armed Insurgents to an insignificant number. [8]But although the country was exhausted by the ravages of war, and open hostilities quelled, subsequent events show that the spirit of independence was daily gaining ground, and that Spain had entirely lost all those moral influences by which she had so long governed her colonies in the New World.

7. *Policy of the Viceroy Apodaca, and its effect.*

8. *State of the country, and spirit of the people at this period.*

1820.

CHAPTER IV.

MEXICO, FROM THE CLOSE OF THE FIRST REVOLUTION IN 1819, TO THE ADOPTION OF THE FEDERAL CONSTITUTION OF 1824.

Subject of Chapter IV.

1. [1]The establishment of a constitutional government in Spain, in 1820, produced upon Mexico an effect very different from what was anticipated. As the constitution provided for a more liberal administration of government in Mexico than had prevailed since 1812, the increased freedom of the elections again threw the minds of the people into a ferment, and the spirit of independence, which had been only smothered, broke forth anew.

1. Effects produced upon Mexico by the establishment of the Spanish constitution.

2. [2]Moreover, divisions were created among the old Spaniards themselves; some being in favor of the old system, while others were sincerely attached to the constitution. [3]Some formidable inroads on the property and prerogatives of the church alienated the clergy from the new government, and induced them to desire a return to the old system. [4]The Viceroy, Apodáca, encouraged by the hopes held out by the Royalists in Spain, although he had at first taken the oath to support the constitution, secretly favored the party opposed to it, and arranged his plans for its overthrow.

2. Divisions among the old Spaniards.

3. Alienation of the clergy.

4. Designs of the Viceroy.

3. [5]Don Augustin Iturbíde, the person selected by the Viceroy to make the first open demonstration against the existing government, was offered the command of a body of troops on the western coast, at the head of which he was to proclaim the re-establishment of the absolute authority of the king. [6]Iturbíde, accepting the commission, departed from the capital to take command of the troops, but with intentions very different from those which the Viceroy supposed him to entertain. Reflecting upon the state of the country, and convinced of the facility with which the authority of Spain might be shaken off,—by bringing the Creole troops to act in concert with the old insurgents, Iturbíde resolved to proclaim Mexico wholly independent of the Spanish nation.

5. Supposed co-operation of Iturbide in this scheme.

6. Iturbide deceives the Viceroy, and plans the independence of Mexico.

4. [7]Having his head quarters at the little town of Iguala, on the road to Acapulco, Iturbíde, on the 24th of February, 1821, there proclaimed his project, known as the "Plan of Iguála," and induced his soldiers to take an oath to support it. [8]This "Plan" declared that Mexico should be an independent nation, its religion Catholic, and its government a constitutional monarchy. The crown was

1821. Feb. 24.

7. Open revolt of Iturbide.

8. General features of the plan of Iguala.

ANALYSIS.

offered to Ferdinand VII. of Spain, provided he would consent to occupy the throne in person; and, in case of his refusal, to his infant brothers, Don Carlos and Don Francisco. A constitution was to be formed by a Mexican Congress, which the empire should be bound by oath to observe; all distinctions of caste were to be abolished; all inhabitants, whether Spaniards, Creoles, Africans, or Indians, who should adhere to the cause of independence, were to be citizens; and the door of preferment was declared to be opened to virtue and merit alone.

1 *Irresolution and inactivity of the existing government.*

5. [1]The Viceroy, astonished by this unexpected movement of Iturbíde, and remaining irresolute and inactive at the capital, was deposed, and Don Francisco Novello, a military officer, was placed at the head of the government; but his authority was not generally recognized, and Iturbíde was left to pursue his plans in the interior without interruption.

2. *The general rally for independence.*

[2]Being joined by Generals Guerrero and Victoria as soon as they knew that the independence of their country was the object of Iturbíde, not only all the survivors of the first insurgents, but whole detachments of Creole troops flocked to his standard, and his success was soon rendered certain. The clergy and the people were equally decided in favor of independence; the most distant districts sent in their adhesion to the cause, and, before the month of July, the whole country recognized the authority of Iturbíde, with the exception of the capital, in which Novello had shut himself up with the European troops.

1821.

3. *Advance of Iturbide towards the capital, and arrival of a new Viceroy.*

6. [3]Iturbíde had already reached Querétaro* with his troops, on his road to Mexico, when he was informed of the arrival, at Vera Cruz, of a new Viceroy, who, in such a crisis, was unable to advance beyond the walls of the fortress.

4. *The "Treaty of Cordova."*

[4]At Cordova,† whither the Viceroy had been allowed to proceed, for the purpose of an interview with Iturbíde, the latter induced him to accept by treaty the Plan of Iguala, as the only means of securing the lives and property of the Spaniards then in Mexico, and of establishing the right to the throne in the house of Bourbon.

a. Aug. 24.

By this agreement,[a] called the "Treaty of Cordova," the Viceroy, in the name of the king, his master, recognized the independence of Mexico, and gave up the

---

* *Querétaro*, the capital of the state of that name, is situated in a rich and fertile valley, about 110 miles N.W. from the city of Mexico. It contains a population of about 40,000 inhabitants, one-third of whom are Indians. It is supplied with water by an aqueduct ten miles in length, carried across the valley on sixty arches. The inhabitants of the state are employed mostly in agriculture: those of the city, either in small trades, or in woollen manufactories. The city contains many fine churches and convents.

† *Cordova* is a town about fifty miles S.W. from Vera Cruz, on the east side of the foot of the volcano of Orizaba.

capital to the army of the insurgents, which took possession of it, without effusion of blood, on the 27th of September, 1821. **1821.** Sept. 27.

7. [1]All opposition being ended, and the capital occupied, in accordance with a provision of the Plan of Iguala a provisional junta was established, the principal business of which was to call a congress for the formation of a constitution suitable to the country. [2]At the same time a regency, consisting of five individuals, was elected, at the head of which was placed Iturbíde as president, who was also created generalissimo and lord high admiral, and assigned a yearly salary of one hundred and twenty thousand dollars.

1. A provisional Junta.

2. A Regency.

8. [3]Thus far the plans of Iturbíde had been completely successful: few have enjoyed a more intoxicating triumph; and none have been called, with greater sincerity, the saviour of their country. While the second revolution lasted, the will of their favorite was the law of the nation; and in every thing that could tend to promote a separation from Spain, not a single dissenting voice had been heard. [4]But the revolution had settled no principle, and established no system; and when the old order of things had disappeared, and the future organization of the government came under discussion, the unanimity which had before prevailed was at an end.

3. The success of Iturbide's plans, and his universal popularity while the revolution lasted.

4. The change that soon followed.

9. [5]When the provisional junta was about to prepare a plan for assembling a national congress, Iturbíde desired that the deputies should be bound by oath to support the Plan of Iguala in all its parts, before they could take their seats in the congress. To this, Generals Bravo, Guerrero, and Victoria, and numerous others of the old insurgents, were opposed; as they wished that the people should be left unrestrained to adopt, by their deputies, such plan of government as they should prefer. Although Iturbíde succeeded in carrying his point, yet the seeds of discontent were sown before the sessions of the congress commenced.

5. Disagreement between Iturbide and the old insurgent chiefs.

10. [6]When the congress assembled,[a] three distinct parties were found amongst the members. The *Bourbonists*, adhering to the plan of Iguala altogether, wished a constitutional monarchy, with a prince of the house of Bourbon at its head: the *Republican*, setting aside the Plan of Iguala, desired a federal republic; while a third party, the *Iturbidists*, adopting the Plan of Iguala, with the exception of the article in favor of the Bourbons, wished to place Iturbíde himself upon the throne. [7]As it was soon learned that the Spanish government had declared[b] the treaty of Cordova null and void, the Bourbonists ceased to exist as

1822.

a. Feb 24.

6. Parties in the new Congress. Bourbons; Republicans and Iturbidists.

7. Dissolution of the Bourbonist party.

b. (Feb. 13.)

ANALYSIS. a party, and the struggle was confined to the Iturbidists and the Republicans.

1. Iturbide proclaimed Emperor by the army and the populace.

11. [1]After a violent controversy the latter succeeded in carrying, by a large majority, a plan for the reduction of the army; when the partizans of Iturbide, perceiving that his influence was on the wane, and that, if they wished ever to see him upon the throne, the attempt must be made before the memory of his former services should be lost, concerted their measures for inducing the army and the populace to declare in his favor. Accordingly, on the night of the 18th of May, 1822, the soldiers of the garrison of Mexico, and a crowd of the leperos or beggars, by whom the streets of the city are infested, assembled before the house of Iturbide, and amidst the brandishing of swords and knives, proclaimed him emperor, under the title of Augustin the First.

May 18.

2. How the sanction of congress was obtained.

12. [2]Iturbide, with consummate hypocrisy, pretending to yield with reluctance to what he was pleased to consider the "will of the people," brought the subject before congress; which, overawed by his armed partizans who filled the galleries, and by the demonstrations of the rabble without, gave their sanction to a measure which they had not the power to oppose. [3]The choice was ratified by the provinces without opposition, and Iturbide found himself in peaceable possession of a throne to which his own abilities and a concurrence of favorable circumstances had raised him.

3. The choice ratified without opposition.

4. The course which prudence dictated to the monarch elect.

Commencement of his reign.

The struggle between him and the congress

13. [4]Had the monarch elect been guided by counsels of prudence, and allowed his authority to be confined within constitutional limits, he might perhaps have continued to maintain a modified authority; but forgetting the unstable foundation of his throne, he began his reign with all the airs of hereditary royalty. [5]On his accession a struggle for power immediately commenced between him and the congress. He demanded a veto upon all the articles of the constitution then under discussion, and the right of appointing and removing at pleasure the members of the supreme tribunal of justice.

5. Events that led to the forcible dissolution of the assembly.

14. [6]The breach continued widening, and at length a law, proposed by the emperor, for the establishment of military tribunals, was indignantly rejected by the congress. Iturbide retaliated by imprisoning[a] the most distinguished members of that body. Remonstrances and reclamations on the part of congress followed, and Iturbide at length terminated the dispute, as Cromwell and Bonaparte had done on similar occasions before him, by proclaiming[b] the dissolution of the national assembly, and substituting in its stead a junta of his own nomination.

a. Aug. 26.

b. Oct. 30.

15. [1]The new assembly acted as the ready echo of the imperial will, yet it never possessed any influence; and the popularity of Iturbide himself did not long survive his assumption of arbitrary power. [2]Before the end of November an insurrection broke out in the northern provinces, but this was speedily quelled by the imperial troops. [3]Soon after, the youthful general Santa Anna,[a] a former supporter of Iturbide, but who had been haughtily dismissed by him from the government of Vera Cruz, published an address[b] to the nation, in which he reproached the emperor with having broken his coronation oath by dissolving the congress, and declared his determination, and that of the garrison which united with him, to aid in reassembling the congress, and protecting its deliberations.

1822.

1. *The new assembly, and Iturbide's declining popularity.*

Nov.

2. *Insurrection at the north.*

3. *Revolt of Santa Anna.*

a. (Originally spelled *Santana*, and pronounced San-tan-ya.)

b. Dec. 6.

16. [4]Santa Anna was soon joined by Victoria, to whom he yielded the chief command, in the expectation that his name and well known principles would inspire with confidence those who were inclined to favor the establishment of a republic. A force sent out by Iturbide to quell the revolt went over to the insurgents; Generals Bravo and Guerrero took the field on the same side; dissatisfaction spread through the provinces; part of the imperial army revolted; and Iturbide, either terrified by the storm which he had so unexpectedly conjured up, or really anxious to avoid the effusion of blood, called together all the members of the old congress then in the capital, and on the 19th of March, 1823, formally resigned the imperial crown; stating his intention to leave the country, lest his presence in Mexico should be a pretext for farther dissensions. [5]The congress, after declaring his assumption of the crown to have been an act of violence, and consequently null, willingly allowed him to leave the kingdom, and assigned to him a yearly income of twenty-five thousand dollars for his support. With his family and suite he embarked for Leghorn on the eleventh of May.

1823.

4. *Progress of the revolt—disaffection of the imperial troops—and abdication of Iturbide.*

Feb.

March 19

5. *Proceedings of congress, and departure of Iturbide from the country.*

May 11.

17. [6]On the departure of Iturbide, a temporary executive was appointed, consisting of Generals Victoria, Bravo, and Negrete,[c] by whom the government was administered until the meeting of a new congress, which assembled at the capital in August, 1823. This body immediately entered on the duties of preparing a new constitution, which was submitted on the 31st of January, 1824, and definitively sanctioned on the 4th of October following.

6. *Temporary executive appointed—new congress—and constitution formed.*

Aug.

c. (Na-gra-ta.

18. [7]By this instrument, modeled somewhat after the constitution of the United States, the absolute independence of the country was declared, and the several

1824.

7. *The form of government adopted.*

ANALYSIS.

1. *Legislative powers.*

2. *Senators and representatives.*

Mexican Provinces were united in a Federal Republic. [1]The legislative power was vested in a Congress, consisting of a Senate and a House of Representatives. [2]The Senate was to be composed of two Senators from each State, elected by the Legislature thereof, for a term of four years. The House of Representatives was to be composed of members elected, for a term of two years, by the citizens of the States. Representatives were to be at least twenty-five years of age, and Senators thirty, and each must have resided two years in the State from which he was chosen.

3. *The executive.*

4. *The judiciary.*

19. [3]The supreme executive authority was vested in one individual, styled the "President of the United Mexican States," who was to be a Mexican born, thirty-five years of age, and to be elected, for a term of four years, by the Legislatures of the several States. [4]The judicial power was lodged in a Supreme Court, composed of eleven judges and an attorney-general, who were to be Mexican born, thirty-five years of age, and to be elected by the Legislatures of the States in the same manner and with the same formalities as the President of the Republic, and who were not to be removed, unless in cases specified by law.

5. *The state governments.*

6. *Freedom of speech, and of the press.*

7. *Law suits.*

20. [5]The several States composing the confederacy, were "to organize their governments in conformity to the Federal Act; to observe and enforce the general laws of the Union; to transmit annually to the Congress a statement of the receipts and expenditures of their respective treasuries, and a description of the agricultural and manufacturing industry of each State; together with the new branches of industry that might be introduced, and the best mode of doing so." [6]Each was to protect its inhabitants "in the full enjoyment of the liberty of writing, printing, and publishing their political opinions, without the necessity of any previous license, revision, or approbation." [7]No individual was to commence a suit at law, without having previously attempted in vain to settle the cause by arbitration.

8. *Laudable provisions of the Federal Constitution of 1824.*

9. *The objectionable features of that Constitution.*

21. [8]The Mexican constitution displayed a laudable anxiety for the general improvement of the country, by disseminating the blessings of education, hitherto almost totally neglected; by opening roads; granting copy-rights and patents; establishing the liberty of the press; promoting naturalization; and throwing open the ports to foreign trade; and by abolishing many abuses of arbitrary power, which had grown up under the tyranny of the colonial government. [9]Yet some omissions are to be regretted. The trial by jury was not introduced, nor was

the requsite publicity given to the administration of justice. Moreover, on the subject of religion, a degree of intolerance was exhibited, hardly to be expected from men who had long struggled to be free, and who even then bore fresh upon them the traces of their bondage. As if to bind down the consciences of posterity to all future generations, the third article in the constitution declared that "The Religion of the Mexican nation is, *and will be perpetually*, the Roman Catholic Apostolic. The nation will protect it by WISE AND JUST LAWS, *and prohibit the exercise of any other whatever.*"

1824.

Religious intolerance.

22. [1]The fate of the ex-emperor, Iturbide, remains to be noticed in this chapter. From Italy he proceeded to London, and made preparations for returning to Mexico; in consequence of which, Congress, on the 28th of April[9] 1824, passed a decree of outlawry against him. He landed in disguise at Sŏtŏ la Marína, July 14th, 1824; was arrested by General Garza; and shot at Padillo* by order of the provincial congress of Tamaulipas, on the 19th of that month. [2]The severity of this measure, after the services which Iturbide had rendered to the country, in effectually casting off the Spanish yoke, can be excused only on the ground of the supposed impossibility of avoiding, in any other way, the horrors of a civil war. [3]During the year 1824, the tranquillity of the country was otherwise disturbed by a few petty insurrections, which were easily suppressed by the government troops.

1. The fate of the ex-emperor Iturbide.

2. Severity of this measure.

3. Petty insurrections.

CHAPTER V.

MEXICO, FROM THE ADOPTION OF THE FEDERAL CONSTITUTION OF 1824, TO THE COMMENCEMENT OF THE WAR WITH THE UNITED STATES IN 1846.

Subject of Chapter V.

1. [4]On the first of January, 1825, the first congress under the federal constitution assembled in the city of Mexico; and, at the same time, General Guadalùpe Victoria was installed as president of the republic, and General Nicholas Bravo as vice-president. [5]The years 1825 and 1826 passed with few disturbances; the administration of Victoria was generally popular; and the country enjoyed a higher degree of prosperity than at any former or subsequent

1825.
Jan. 1.

4. Meeting of the first Federal Congress.

Victoria president.

5. Administration of Victoria.

---

* *Padillo* is about thirty-five miles southwest from Soto la Marina.

ANALYSIS.

1826.

1. *Rival factions.*

period. [1]But towards the close of the year 1826, two rival factions, which had already absorbed the entire political influence of the country, began seriously to threaten, not only the peace of society, but the stability of the government itself.

2. *Character of the two parties that divided the country.*

2. [2]The masonic societies, then numerous in the country, were divided into two parties, known as the *Escoces* and the *Yorkinos*, or the Scotch and the York lodges. The former, of Scotch origin, were composed of large proprietors, aristocratic in opinion, in favor of the establishment of a strong government, and supposed to be secretly inclined to a constitutional monarchy, with a king chosen from the Bourbon family. The Yorkinos, whose lodge was founded by the New York masons, through the agency of Mr. Poinsett, the envoy of the United States, supported democracy, and opposed a royal or central government, and were generally in favor of the expulsion of the Spanish residents.

3. *Mutual recriminations.*

3. [3]Each party, however, mutually criminated the other, and each was charged with the design of overturning the established institutions of the country.

4. *The elections of 1826.*

[4]In the elections which took place in the autumn of 1826, bribery, corruption, and calumnies of all kinds were resorted to by both parties, and some of the elections were declared null in consequence of the illegality of the proceedings by which they had been effected.

5. *Supposed conspiracies.*

[5]Many supposed conspiracies of the Spaniards and their abettors were denounced by the Yorkinos; and projects for the expulsion of the Spaniards were openly proclaimed.

6. *Charges against the president.*

[6]The president himself was repeatedly charged by each party with favoring the other, and with secretly designing the overthrow of that system which he had spent a life of toil and danger in establishing.

7. *The first open violation of the laws.*

4. [7]The first open breach of the law of the land, and treason to the government, which led the way to scenes of violence and bloodshed, and the final prostration of the hopes of the country, proceeded from the Scotch party; and was designed to counteract the growing influence of the Yorkinos.

1827.

8. *The plan of Montaño.*

a. (Pronounced Mon-tan-yo.)

[8]On the 23d of December 1827, Don Manuel Montaño[a] proclaimed, at Otumba,* a plan for the forcible reform of the government. He demanded the abolition of all secret societies; the dismissal of the ministers of government, who were charged as wanting

* *Otumba* is a small town about forty miles N.E. from the city of Mexico. A short distance S.W. from the town, on the road to San Juan de Teotihuacan, are the ruins of two extensive pyramids of unknown origin, but which are usually ascribed to the Toltecs. One of the pyramids, called the "House of the Sun," is still 180 feet high; the other, called the 'House of the Moon," is 144 feet high. (See Map, p. 558.)

in probity, virtue, and merit; the dismissal of Mr. Poinsett, the minister accredited from the United States, who was held to be the chief director of the Yorkinos; and a more rigorous enforcement of the constitution and the existing laws. **1827.**

5. [1]The plan of Montaño was immediately declared by the Yorkinos to have for its object, 'to prevent the banishment of the Spaniards, to avert the chastisement then impending over the conspirators against independence, to destroy republican institutions, and place the country once more under the execrable yoke of a Bourbon.' [2]General Bravo, the vice-president, and the leader of the Scotch party, who had hitherto been the advocate of law and order, left the capital, and making common cause with the insurgents, issued a manifesto in favor of Montaño, in which he denounced the president himself as connected with the Yorkinos.

1. Denounced by the Yorkinos.

2. Defection of General Bravo.

1828.

6. [3]By this rash and ill-advised movement of General Bravo, the president was compelled to throw himself into the arms of the Yorkinos, and to give to their chief, General Guerrero, the command of the government troops that were detached to put down the rebellion. [4]The insurrection was speedily quelled; and Bravo, whose object was an amicable arrangement, and who would allow no blood to be shed in the quarrel which he had imprudently provoked, surrendered at Tulancingo,* and was banished by a decree[a] of congress, with a number of his adherents.

3. Course taken by the president.

4. The insurrection quelled, and banishment of Bravo.

a. April 15.

7. [5]The leader of the Scotch party being thus removed, it was thought that in the ensuing presidential election, (September, 1828,) the success of General Guerrero, the Yorkino candidate, was rendered certain; but unexpectedly a new candidate was brought forward by the Scotch party, in the person of General Pedraza, the minister of war; who, after an arduous contest, was elected president by a majority of only two votes over his competitor. [6]The successful party now looked forward to the enjoyment of a long period of tranquillity under the firm and vigorous administration of Pedraza; but their opponents were unwilling to bow with submission to the will of the people, expressed according to the forms of the constitution; and asserting that the elections had been carried by fraud and bribery, and that Pedraza was an enemy to the liberties of the country, they determined to redress, by an appeal to arms, the injustice sustained by their chief, upon whose elevation to the presidency the ascendancy of the Yorkino party naturally depended.

5. The election of 1828.

6. Conduct of the Yorkino party after their defeat.

* *Tulancingo* is at the southeastern extremity of the state of Querétaro, about sixty-five miles N.E. from the city of Mexico

ANALYSIS.

1. *Rebellion of Santa Anna.*

(Per-o-tā.)

a. Sept. 10.

8. [1]At this moment Santa Anna, whose name had figured in the most turbulent periods of the Revolution since 1821, appeared on the political stage. Under the plea that the result of the late election did not show the real will of a majority of the people, at the head of 500 men he took possession of the castle of Perote, where he published[a] an address declaring that the success of Pedraza had been produced by fraud, and that he had taken it upon himself to rectify the error, by proclaiming Guerrero president,—as the only effectual mode of maintaining the character and asserting the dignity of the country.

2. *President's proclamation.*

b. Sept. 17.

9. [2]These dangerous principles were met by an energetic proclamation[b] of the president, which called upon the States and the people to aid in arresting the wild schemes of this traitor to the laws and the constitution.

3. *Santa Anna besieged, but escapes.*

[3]Santa Anna was besieged at Perote* by the government forces, and an action was fought under the walls of the castle; but he finally succeeded in effecting his escape, with a portion of his original adherents.

4. *State of feeling in the country.*

[4]So little disposition was shown in the neighboring provinces to espouse the cause of the insurgents, that many fondly imagined that the danger was past.

5. *Santa Anna taken prisoner, but soon restored to liberty.*

[5]Santa Anna, being pursued, surrendered at discretion to General Calderon, on the 14th of December; but before that time important events had transpired in the capital; and the captive general, in the course of twenty-four hours, was enabled to assume the command of the very army by which he had been taken prisoner.

6. *Affairs in the capital.*

10. [6]About the time of the flight of Santa Anna from Perote, the capital had become the rendezvous of a number of the more ultra of the Yorkino chiefs, ambitious and restless spirits, most of whom had been previously engaged in some petty insurrections, but whose lives had been spared by the lenity of the government.

7. *Revolt of a body of the militia.*

1828.

[7]On the night of the 30th of November, 1828, a battalion of militia, headed by the ex-Marquis of Cadena, and assisted by a regiment under Colonel Garcia, surprised the government guard, took possession of the artillery barracks, seized the guns and ammunition, and signified to the president their determination either to compel the congress to issue a decree for the banishment of the Spanish residents within twenty-four hours, or themselves to massacre all those who should fall into their hands.

**Perôte*, about ninety miles in a direct line (120 by the travelled road,) from Vera Cruz, is a small, irregularly built town, situated at the eastern extremity of the table-land, about 8000 feet above the level of the sea. About half a mile from the town is the castle of Perote, one of the four fortresses erected in Mexico by the Spanish government. The other three fortresses were those of San Juan de Ulloa, Acapulco, and San Blas.

1828.

11. [1]It has been asserted that if the president had acted with proper firmness, he might have quelled the insurrection at once; but it appears that he had no force at his disposal sufficiently powerful to render his interference effectual, and the night was allowed to pass in fruitless explanations. [2]On the following morning the insurgents were joined by the leaders of the Guerrero party, a body of the militia, and a vast multitude of the rabble of the city, who were promised the pillage of the capital as the reward of their cooperation. [3]Encouraged by these reenforcements, the insurgents now declared their ulterior views, by proclaiming Guerrero president; while he, after haranguing the populace, left the city with a small body of men to watch the result.

1. Censure against the president. His situation and conduct.

Dec. 1.

2. Accessions to the forces of the insurgents.

3. Their plans, and the conduct of Guerrero

12. [4]In the mean time the government had received small accessions of strength, by the arrival of troops from the country; but all concert of action was embarrassed by the growing distrust of the president, whose indecision, perhaps arising from an aversion to shed Mexican blood, induced many to believe that he was implicated in the projects of the Yorkinos. [5]The whole of the first of December was consumed in discussions and preparations, but on the second, the government, alarmed by the progress of the insurrection, resolved to hazard an appeal to arms, and before evening the insurgents were driven from many of the posts which they had previously occupied; but on the following day, however, they were enabled by their increasing strength to regain them after a severe contest, in which their leader, Colonel Garcia, and several inferior officers, fell; while, on the government side, Colonel Lopez and many others were killed.

4. Government troops: distrust of the president.

5. Events of the second and third of December.

Dec. 2

Dec. 3

13. [6]Discouragement now spread among the government troops, and, during the night of the third, many officers, convinced that the insurrection would be successful, sought safety in flight. [7]On the morning of the 4th the insurgents displayed a white flag, the firing ceased, and a conference ensued, but without leading to any permanent arrangement; for, during the suspension of hostilities, the insurgents received a strong reenforcement under Guerrero himself, and the firing recommenced. [8]The few parties of regular troops that still continued the contest were soon reduced, and the congress dissolved itself, after protesting against the violence to which it was compelled to yield.

6. Discouragement of the government troops.

Dec. 4.

7. Conference, followed by renewed hostilities.

8. Dissolution of the congress.

14. [9]The city rabble now spread themselves like a torrent over the town, where they committed every species of excess. Under pretence of seizing Spanish property, the houses of the wealthy, whether Mexicans or Spaniards, were broken open and pillaged; the Parian, or great com-

Dec. 5, 6.

9. Pillaging of the city.

ANALYSIS.

mercial square, where most of the retail merchants of Mexico had their shops, containing goods to the amount of three millions of dollars, was emptied of its contents in the course of a few hours; [1]nor were these disgraceful scenes checked until after the lapse of two days, when order was restored by General Guerrero himself, whom the president had appointed minister of the war department, in the place of General Pedraza, who, convinced that resistance was hopeless, had retired from the capital.

1. Guerrero and Pedraza

15. [2]A civil war was now seriously apprehended; for Pedraza had numerous and powerful friends, both among the military and the people, and several of the more important states were eager to espouse his cause. [3]Had the contest commenced, it must have been a long and a bloody one, but Pedraza had the generosity to sacrifice his individual rights to the preservation of the peace of his country. [4]Refusing the proffered services of his friends, and recommending submission even to an unconstitutional president in preference to a civil war, he formally resigned the presidency, and obtained permission to quit the territories of the Republic. [5]The congress which assembled on the 1st of January, 1829, declared[a] Guerrero to be duly elected president, having, next to Pedraza, a majority of votes. General Bustamente,[b] a distinguished Yorkino leader, was named vice-president; a Yorkino ministry was appointed; and Santa Anna, who was declared to have deserved well of his country, was named minister of war, in reward for his services.

2. Apprehensions of civil war.

3. Generosity of Pedraza.

4. His resignation of the presidency.

1829.

5. Proceedings of congress.

a. Jan. 6.

b. (Boos-ta-man-ta.)

16. [6]Thus terminated the first struggle for the presidential succession in Mexico,—in scenes of violence and bloodshed, and in the triumph of revolutionary force over the constitution and laws of the land. The appeal then made to arms, instead of a peaceful resort to the constitutional mode of settling disputes, has since been deeply regretted by the prominent actors themselves, many of whom have perished in subsequent revolutions, victims of their own blood-stained policy. The country will long mourn the consequences of their rash and guilty measures.

6. Remarks on the struggle thus terminated.

17. [7]As Guerrero had been installed by military force, it was natural that he should trust to the same agency for a continuance of his power. But the ease with which a successful revolution could be effected, and the supreme authority overthrown by a bold and daring chieftain, had been demonstrated too fatally for the future peace of the country, and ambitious chiefs were not long wanting to take advantage of this dangerous facility.

7. Remarks on the situation of affairs at the time of Guerrero's accession to the presidency.

8. Circumstances under which Guerrero was appointed dictator.

18. [8]A Spanish expedition of 4000 men having landed

[8] July 27.

near Tampico,* for the invasion of the Mexican Republic, Guerrero was invested with the office of dictator, to meet the exigencies of the times. [1]After an occupation of two months, the invading army surrendered to Santa Anna on the 10th of September; but Guerrero, although the danger had passed, manifested an unwillingness to surrender the extraordinary powers that had been conferred upon him. [2]Bustamente, then in command of a body of troops held in readiness to repel Spanish invasion, thought this a favorable opportunity for striking a blow for supremacy. Charging Guerrero with the design of perpetuating the dictatorship, and demanding concessions which he knew would not be granted, he proceeded towards the capital for the ostensible purpose of reforming executive abuses. [3]Santa Anna at first feebly opposed this movement, but at length joined the discontented general. [4]The government was easily overthrown, Guerrero fled to the mountains, and Bustamente was proclaimed his successor. [5]The leading principle of his administration, which was sanguinary and proscriptive, appeared to be the subversion of the federal constitution, and the establishment of a strong central government; in which he was supported by the military, the priesthood, and the great Creole proprietors; while the Federation was popular with a majority of the inhabitants, and was sustained by their votes.

1829.

1. *Surrender of the invading army,—and Guerrero's retention of dictatorial powers.*

2. *Bustamente's rebellion.*

3. *Santa Anna's course.*

4. *Overthrow of Guerrero.*

5. *Bustamente's administration.*

19. [6]In the spring of 1830, Don José Codallos published a "Plan," demanding of Bustamente the restoration of civil authority. Encouraged by this demonstration, Guerrero reappeared in the field, established his government at Valladolid, and the whole country was again in arms. The attempt of Guerrero, however, to regain the supreme power, was unsuccessful. Obliged to fly to Acapulco, he was betrayed into the hands of his enemies by the commander of a Sardinian vessel, conveyed to Oaxáca,[a] tried by a court-martial for bearing arms against the established government, condemned as a traitor, and executed in February, 1831.

1830.

6. *A new revolution, terminated by the death of Guerrero.*

a. Note, p. 582.

1831.

20. [7]After this, tranquillity prevailed until 1832, when Santa Anna, one of the early adherents of Guerrero, but afterwards the principal supporter of the revolution by which he was overthrown, pretending alarm at the arbitrary encroachments of Bustamente, placed himself at the head of the garrison of Vera Cruz,† and demanded a

1832.

7. *Santa Anna takes up arms against the government of Bustamente.*

* *Tampico* (Tam-pé-co) is at the southern extremity of the state of Tamaulipas, 240 miles N.W. from the city of Vera Cruz, and about 250 miles S. from Matamoras. It is on the S side of the River Panuco, a short distance from its entrance into the Gulf of Mexico.

† The city of *Vera Cruz*, long the principal sea-port of Mexico, stands on the spot where Cortez first landed within the realms of Montezuma, (see page 115.) The city is defended by

ANALYSIS.

1. *Character of this movement.*

2. *Termination of the struggle, by agreement between the contending parties.*

a. Dec. 23.

re-organization of the ministry, as a pretext for revolt. [1]The announcement made by Santa Anna was certainly in favor of the constitution and the laws; and the friends of liberty, and of the democratic federal system, immediately rallied to his support. [2]After a struggle of nearly a year, attended by the usual proportion of anarchy and bloodshed, in December, Bustamente proposed an armistice to Santa Anna, which terminated[a] in an arrangement between them, by which the former resigned the government in favor of Pedraza, who had been elected by the votes of the states in 1828; and it was agreed that the armies of both parties should unite in support of the federal constitution in its original purity.

3. *Restoration of Pedraza.*

b. Installed as president, Dec. 26.

1833.

4. *Pedraza's address to the congress.*

5. *Santa Anna elected president.*

6. *Re-establishment of the Federal system.*

21. [3]In the meantime Santa Anna despatched a vessel for the exiled Pedraza, brought him back to the republic, and sent him[b] to the capital to serve out the remaining *three months* of his unexpired term. [4]As soon as congress was assembled, Pedraza delivered an elaborate address to that body, in which, after reviewing the events of the preceding four years, he passed an extravagant eulogium on Santa Anna, his early foe, and recent friend, and referred to him as his destined successor. [5]In the election which followed, Santa Anna was chosen president, and Gomez Farias vice-president. On the 15th of May the new president entered the capital, and on the following day assumed the duties of his office. [6]The federal system, which had been outraged by the usurpations of the centralist leader Bustamente, was again recognized, and apparently re-established under the new administration.

7. *Movement of General Duran.*

c. June 1.

8. *Santa Anna's supposed implication in this movement, and the singular proceedings of Arista.*

22. [7]Scarcely a fortnight had elapsed after Santa Anna had entered on the duties of his office, when General Duran promulgated[c] a plan at San Augustin de las Cuevas,* in favor of the church and the army; at the same time proclaiming Santa Anna supreme dictator of the Mexican nation. [8]Although it was believed that the president himself had secretly instigated this movement, yet he raised a large force, and appointing Arista, one of Bustamente's most devoted partizans, his second in command, left the capital with the professed intention of quelling the revolt. The troops had not proceeded far when Arista suddenly declared in favor of the plan of Duran, at the same time securing the president's person, and proclaiming him dictator.

---

the strong citadel of San Juan de Ulloa, built on an island of the same name, about 400 fathoms from the shore. The harbor of Vera Cruz is a mere roadstead between the town and the castle, and is exceedingly insecure.

* *San Augustin de las Cuevas* (Coo-à-vas) is a village about twelve miles south from the city of Mexico. It was abandoned during the Revolution, and is now little visited, except during the great fair, which is held there annually during the month of May, and which is attended by vast crowds from the capital. (See Map, p. 569.)

23. [1]When news of this movement reached the military in the capital, they proclaimed themselves in its favor with shouts of "Santa Anna for dictator." [2]The vice-president, however, distrusting the sincerity of Santa Anna, and convinced that he was employing a stratagem to test the probability of success in his ulterior aim at absolute power, rallied the federalists against the soldiery, and defeated the ingenious scheme of the president and his allies. [3]Affecting to make his escape, Santa Anna returned to the city, and having raised another force, pursued the insurgents, whom he compelled to surrender at Guanaxuato. Arista was pardoned, and Duran banished; and the victorious president returned to the capital, where he was hailed as the champion of the federal constitution, and the father of his country!

1833.

1. The military of the capital.

2. Measures taken by the vice-president.

3. The conclusion of these singular proceedings.

24. [4]Soon after, Santa Anna retired to his estate in the country, when the executive authority devolved on Farias the vice-president, who, entertaining a confirmed dislike of the priesthood and the military, commenced a system of retrenchment and reform, in which he was aided by the congress. [5]Signs of revolutionary outbreak soon appeared in different parts of the country; and the priests, alarmed at the apparent design of the congress to appropriate a part of the ecclesiastical revenues to the public use, so wrought upon the fears of the superstitious population, as to produce a reaction dangerous to the existence of the federal system.

4. The withdrawal of Santa Anna, and the state of affairs under the management of the vice-president.

5. Signs of revolutionary outbreak.

25. [6]Santa Anna, who had been closely watching the progress of events, deeming the occasion favorable to the success of his ambitious schemes, at the head of the military chiefs and the army deserted the federal republican party and system, and espoused the cause, and assumed the direction of his former antagonists of the centralist faction. [7]On the thirteenth of May, 1834, the constitutional congress and the council of government were dissolved by a military order of the president, and a new revolutionary and unconstitutional congress was summoned by another military order. Until the new congress assembled, the authority of government remained in the hands of Santa Anna, who covertly used his power and influence to destroy the constitution he had sworn to defend.

1834.

6. Santa Anna's desertion of the Federal Republican party.

May 13.

7. His unconstitutional measures in overthrowing the government, and establishing a new one.

26. [8]The several states of the federation were more or less agitated by these arbitrary proceedings. When the new congress assembled, in the month of January, 1835, petitions and declarations in favor of a central government were poured in by the military and the clergy; while protests and remonstrances, on behalf of the federal

8. Effects of these arbitrary proceedings.

1835.

Petitions and protests.

ANALYSIS.

How treated by the congress.

2. Farias deposed.

constitution, were presented by some of the state legislatures and the people. [1]The latter were disregarded, and their supporters persecuted and imprisoned. The former were received as the voice of the nation, and a corrupt aristocratic congress acted accordingly. [2]The vice-president, Gomez Farias, was deposed without impeachment or trial; and General Barragan, a leading centralist, was elected in his place.

3. Disarming of the militia of the States.

4. Tendency towards a centralization of power.

5. Opposition of the state of Zacatecas.

a. See Map, p. 558.

6. Zacatecas reduced to submission.

b. May 11.

27. [3]One of the first acts of congress was a decree for reducing and disarming the militia of the several states. [4]The opinion that the congress had the power to change the constitution at pleasure, was openly avowed; and every successive step of the party in power evinced a settled purpose to establish a strong central government on the ruins of the federal system, which the constitution of 1824 declared could "never be reformed." [5]The state of Zacatecas,[a] in opposition to the decree of congress, refused to disband and disarm its militia, and in April had recourse to arms to resist the measures in progress for overthrowing the federal government. [6]Santa Anna marched against the insurgents in May, and after an engagement[b] of two hours, totally defeated them on the plains of Guadalupe.* The city of Zacatecas† soon surrendered, and all resistance in the state was overcome.

7. The "Plan of Toluca."

8. Supposed origin of this "Plan" The Federal system abolished, and a "Central Republic" established.

28. [7]A few days after the fall of Zacatecas, the "*Plan of Toluca*" was published, calling for a change of the federal system to a central government, abolishing the legislatures of the states, and changing the states into departments under the control of military commandants, who were to be responsible to the chief authorities of the nation,—the latter to be concentrated in the hands of one individual, whose will was law. [8]This "plan," generally supposed to have originated with Santa Anna himself, was adopted by the congress; and on the third of October following, General Barragan, the acting president, issued a decree in the name of congress, abolishing the federal system, and establishing a "Central republic." This frame of government was formally adopted in 1836 by a convention of delegates appointed for the purpose.

9. This change of government protested against by many of the Mexican States.

10. All except Texas reduced to submission.

29. [9]Several of the Mexican states protested in energetic language against this assumption of power on the part of the congress, and avowed their determination to take up arms in support of the constitution of 1824, and against that ecclesiastical and military despotism which was despoiling them of all their rights as freemen. [10]They were

* *Guadalupe* is a small village a few miles west from the city of Zacatecas.

† *Zacatecas*, the capital of the state of the same name, is about 320 miles N.W. from the city of Mexico.

all, however, with the exception of Texas, hitherto the least important of the Mexican provinces, speedily reduced by the arms of Santa Anna. [1]Texas, destitute of numerical strength, regular troops, and pecuniary resources, was left to contend single-handed for her guarantied rights, against the whole power of the general government, wielded by a man whose uninterrupted military success, and inordinate vanity, had led him to style himself "the Napoleon of the West."

1835.

1. Situation of Texas at this time.

30. [2]In several skirmishes between the Texans and the troops of the government in the autumn of 1835, the former were uniformly successful; and before the close of the year the latter were driven beyond the limits of the province. [3]In the meantime, the citizens of Texas, having assembled in convention at San Felipe,[a] there published[b] a manifesto,[c] in which they declared themselves not bound to support the existing government, but proffered their assistance to such members of the Mexican confederacy as would take up arms in support of their rights, as guarantied by the constitution of 1824. [4]Santa Anna, alarmed by these demonstrations of resistance to his authority, and astonished by the military spirit exhibited by the Texans, resolved to strike a decisive blow against the rebellious province.

2. The Mexican troops driven from that province.

3. Manifesto of the citizens of Texas.

a. (See Note, p. 637.)

b. Nov. 7.

c. See p. 645.

4. Alarm of Santa Anna.

31. [5]In November, a daring but unsuccessful attempt was made to arouse the Mexican federalists in support of the cause for which the Texans had taken arms. General Mexia, a distinguished leader of the liberal party in Mexico, embarked[d] from New Orleans with about one hundred and thirty men, chiefly Americans, with a few British, French, and Germans, most of whom supposed that their destination was Texas, where they would be at liberty to take up arms or not in defence of the country. [6]Mexia, however, altered the course of the vessel to Tampico,[e] and caused the party, on landing, to join in an attack on the town. The vessel being wrecked on a bar at the entrance of the harbor, and the ammunition being damaged, a large number of the men engaged in the expedition were taken prisoners; twenty-eight of whom, chiefly Americans, were soon after shot[f] by sentence of a court-martial. Mexia, the leader of the party, escaped to Texas in a merchant vessel.

5. Attempt of Mexia to arouse the Mexican federalists to arms.

d. Nov. 6.

6. His landing at Tampico, and the defeat of his party.

e. (See Note, p. 603.)

f. Dec. 14.

1836.

32 [7]Early in the following year Santa Anna set out[g] from Saltillo[h] for the Rio Grande,* where an army of 8000

7. Santa Anna's preparations for the invasion of Texas.

g. Feb. 1.

h. Note, p. 579

* The *Rio Grande del Norte*, (Ree-o Grahn-da del Nor-ta,) or Great River of the North, called also the Rio Bravo, (Ree-o Brah-vo,) from its rapid current, rises in those mountain ranges that form the point of separation between the streams which flow into the Gulf of Mexico, and those which flow into the Pacific Ocean. It has an estimated course of 1800 miles, with

ANALYSIS.

1. *His arrival at Bexar.* Feb. 12. Feb. 23.

a. See p. 624.

2. *Reduction of Bexar: successes and cruelties of Santa Anna.*

b. (March 6. See p. 651.)

3. *Disappointment of his hopes.*

c. See p. 661.

4. *Brief account of the battle of San Jacinto—defeat and capture of Santa Anna.*

d. April 21.

5. *The life of Santa Anna spared, and an armistice concluded with him.*

6. *Texan independence.*

e. March 2, see p. 654.)

men, composed of the best troops of Mexico, furnished with an unusually large train of artillery, and commanded by the most experienced officers, was assembling for the invasion of Texas. [1]On the twelfth of February Santa Anna arrived at the Rio Grande, whence he departed on the afternoon of the sixteenth, and on the twenty-third halted on the heights near San Antonio de Bexar,[a] where the whole of the invading army was ordered to concentrate.

33. [2]Bexar, garrisoned by only one hundred and forty men, was soon reduced;[b] and in several desperate encounters which followed, the vast superiority in numbers on the part of the invading army gave the victory to Santa Anna, who disgraced his name by the remorseless cruelties of which he was guilty. [3]His hopes of conquest, however, were in the end disappointed; and as he was about to withdraw his armies, in the belief that the province was effectually subdued, he met with an unexpected and most humiliating defeat.[c]

34. [4]He had already advanced to the San Jacinto, a stream which enters the head of Galveston Bay, when he was attacked[b] in camp, at the head of more than 1500 men, by a Texan force of only 783 men, commanded by General Houston, formerly a citizen of the United States, and once governor of the state of Tennessee. Although Santa Anna was prepared for the assault, yet so vigorous was the onset, that in twenty minutes the camp was carried, and the whole force of the enemy put to flight. Six hundred and thirty of the Mexicans were killed during the assault, and the attack which followed; more than two hundred were wounded, and seven hundred and thirty were taken prisoners,—among the latter Santa Anna himself. Of the Texans, only *eight* were killed and *seventeen* wounded—a disparity of result scarcely equalled in the annals of warfare.

35. [5]Although a majority of the Texan troops demanded the execution of Santa Anna, as the murderer of many of their countrymen who had been taken prisoners, yet his life was spared by the extraordinary firmness of General Houston and his officers, and an armistice was concluded with him, by which the entire Mexican force was withdrawn from the province. [6]Texas had previously made

---

but few tributaries. Like most of the great rivers of the American continent, the Rio Grande has its periodical risings. Its waters begin to rise in April, they are at their height early in May, and they subside towards the end of June. The banks are extremely steep, and the waters muddy. At its entrance into the Gulf of Mexico, which is over a shifting sand-bar, with an average of from three to five feet of water at low tide, the width of the Rio Grande is about 300 yards. From the bar to Loredo, a town 200 miles from the coast, the river has a smooth, deep current. Above Loredo it is broken by rapids. When, however, the stream is at a moderate height, there is said to be no obstacle to its navigation.

a declaration of independence, and the victory of San Jacinto[a] confirmed it. [1]Santa Anna, after being detained a prisoner several months, was released from confinement. In the meantime, his authority as president had been suspended, and on his return to Mexico he retired to his farm, where, in obscurity, he was for several years allowed to brood over the disappointment and humiliation of his defeat, the wreck of his ambitious schemes, and his exceeding unpopularity in the eyes of his countrymen.

1836.

a. See p. 661.

1. *Release of Santa Anna, his return to Mexico; and retirement from public life.*

36. [2]On the departure of Santa Anna from the capital for the invasion of Texas, his authority had devolved on General Barragan as vice-president. [3]This individual however, soon died; and in the next election Bustamente was chosen president, having recently returned from France, where he had resided since his defeat by Santa Anna in 1832. [4]His administration was soon disturbed by declarations in favor of federation, and of Gomez Farias for the presidency, who was still in prison; but with little difficulty the disturbances were quelled by the energy of the government.

2. *General Barragan.*

1837.

3. *Bustamente chosen president.*

4. *Disturbances during his administration.*

37. [5]In 1838 the unfortunate Mexia a second time raised the standard of rebellion against the central government. Advancing towards the capital with a brave band of patriots, he was encountered in the neighborhood of Puebla* by Santa Anna, who, creeping forth from his retreat, to regain popularity by some striking exploit, was weakly trusted by Bustamente with the command of the government troops. [6]Mexia lost the day and was taken prisoner; and with scarcely time left for prayer, or communication with his family, was shot, by order of his conquerer, on the field of battle. It is reported that when refused a respite, he said to Santa Anna, "You are right; I would not have granted you half the time had I conquered."

1838.

5. *Mexia's second attempt against the Central government.*

6. *His defeat, and execution.*

38. [7]Early in the same year a French fleet appeared on the Mexican coast, demanding[b] reparation for injuries sustained by the plundering of French citizens, and the destruction of their property by the contending factions,

7. *The French make demands upon Mexico.*

b. March 31.

* *Puebla*, a neat and pleasant city, the capital of the state of the same name, is about eighty-five miles S.E. from the city of Mexico, (see Map, p. 569.) It contains a population of about 60,000 inhabitants, and has extensive manufactories of cotton, earthenware, and wool. The great Cathedral of Puebla, in all its details and arrangements, is the most magnificent in Mexico. The lofty candlesticks, the balustrade, the lamps, and all the ornaments of the principal altar, are of massive silver. The great chandelier, suspended from the dome, is said to weigh *tons*. A curious legend about the building of the walls of the cathedral is believed in by the Indians in the neighborhood, and by a large proportion of the ignorant Spanish population; and the details of the event have been recorded with singular care in the convents of the city. It is asserted that, while the building was in progress, two messengers from heaven descended every night, and added to the height of the walls exactly as much as had been raised by the united efforts of the laborers during the day! With such assistance the work advanced rapidly to its completion, and, in commemoration of the event, the city assumed the name of "Puebla de los Angelos," *Puebla of the Angels.*

ANALYSIS.

1. *Blockade of the coast, and attack upon Vera Cruz.* Dec.

2. *Santa Anna's appearance again.*

and by forcible loans collected by violence. [1]The rejection of the demand was followed by a blockade, and in the winter following the town of Vera Cruz was attacked by the French troops. [2]An opportunity being again afforded to Santa Anna to repair his tarnished reputation and regain his standing with the army, he proceeded to the port, took command of the troops, and while following the French, during their retreat,[a] one of his legs was shattered by a cannon ball, and amputation became necessary.

a. Dec. 5.

1840.

3. *Insurrection in the city of Mexico.*

b. July 15.

39. [3]In the month of July, 1840, the federalist party, headed by General Urrea and Gomez Farias, excited an insurrection[b] in the city of Mexico, and seized the president himself. After a conflict of twelve days, in which many citizens were killed and much property destroyed, a convention of general amnesty was agreed upon by the contending parties, and hopes were held out to the federalists of another reform of the constitution.

4. *Yucatan.*

5. *Its history: union with Mexico.*

6. *Withdrawal from Mexico, and subsequent return to the confederacy.*

40. [4]At the same time Yucatan declared for federalism, and withdrew from the general government. [5]This state had been a distinct captain-generalcy, not connected with Guatemala, nor subject to Mexico, from the time of the conquest to the Mexican revolution, when she gave up her independent position and became one of the states of the Mexican republic. [6]After suffering many years from this unhappy connexion, a separation followed; every Mexican garrison was driven from the state, and a league was entered into with Texas; but after a struggle of three years against the forces of Mexico, and contending factions at home, Yucatan again entered the Mexican confederacy.

1841.

7. *The revolution of* 1841.

c. (See Map, p. 558)

8. *Bombardment of the capital, and downfall of Bustamente.* Sept.

9. *Convention at Tacubaya.*

41. [7]In the month of August, 1841, another important revolution broke out in Mexico. It commenced with a declaration against the government, by Paredes, in Guadalaxara;[c] and was speedily followed by a rising in the capital, and by another at Vera Cruz headed by Santa Anna himself. [8]The capital was bombarded; a month's contest in the streets of the city followed, and the revolution closed with the downfall of Bustamente. [9]In September a convention of the commanding officers was held at Tacubaya;* a general amnesty was declared; and a "plan" was agreed upon by which the existing constitution of Mexico was superseded, and provision made for

* *Tacubaya* is a village about four miles S.W. from the gates of the city of Mexico. (See Map, p. 569.) It contains many delightful residences of the Mexican merchants, but is chiefly celebrated for having been formerly the country residence of the Archbishop of Mexico. The Archbishop's palace is situated upon an elevated spot, with a large olive plantation and beautiful gardens and groves attached to it.

the calling of a congress in the following year to form a new one. **1841.**

42. [1]The "Plan of Tacubaya" provided for the election, in the meantime, of a provisional president, who was to be invested with "all the powers necessary to re-organize the nation, and all the branches of administration." To the general-in-chief of the army was given the power of choosing a junta or council, which council was to choose the president. [2]Santa Anna, being at the head of the army, selected the junta; and the junta returned the compliment by selecting him for president.

1. Provisions of the "Plan of Tacubaya."

2. Exchange of compliments.

43. [3]The new congress, which assembled in June, 1842, was greeted by the provisional president in a speech strongly declaring his partiality for a firm and central government, but expressing his disposition to acquiesce in the final decision of that intelligent body. [4]The proceedings of that body, however, not being agreeable to Santa Anna, the congress was dissolved by him without authority in the December following; and a national junta, or assembly of notables, was convened in its place. [5]The result of the deliberations of that body was a new constitution, called the "Bases of political organization of the Mexican republic," proclaimed on the 13th of June, 1843.

1842.

3. Speech of Santa Anna on the opening of congress.

4. Congress dissolved by Santa Anna and a more pliant assembly convened by him.

5. New constitution formed.

1843. June 13.

44. [6]By this instrument the Mexican territory was divided into *departments*; it was declared that a *popular representative* system of government was adopted; that the supreme power resided in the *nation*; and that the Roman Catholic religion is professed and protected *to the exclusion of all others*. [7]The executive power was lodged in the hands of a president, to be elected for five years; who was to be assisted by a council of government, composed of seventeen persons named by the president, and whose tenure of office is perpetual. [8]The legislative power was to reside in a congress, composed of a chamber of deputies and a senate. [9]An annual income of at least two hundred dollars was to be required for the enjoyment of all the rights of citizenship. [10]Every five hundred inhabitants of a department were to be allowed one elector; twenty of these were to choose one member of the electoral college of the department; and the electoral college again was to elect the members of the chamber of deputies: so that by this third remove from the people the latter were left with scarcely a shadow of authority in the general council of the nation.

6. Its prominent features.

7. The executive, and his assistant council.

8. Legislative power.

9. Rights of citizenship.

10. Composition of the chamber of deputies.

45. [11]One third of the members of the senate were to be chosen by the chamber of deputies, the president of the republic, and the supreme court of justice; and the re-

11. Composition of the senate.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Character of the state assemblies.*

2. *Santa Anna placed at the head of this government.*

3. *Unconstitutional assumption of power by Santa Anna, in opposition to the "Plan of Tacubaya."*

maining two-thirds by the assemblies of the several departments. [1]These assemblies, however, scarcely amounted to more than a species of municipal police, and were almost entirely under the control of the national executive. [2]Under this intricate and arbitrary system of government, Santa Anna himself was chosen president, or as he should with more propriety have been called, supreme dictator of the Mexican nation.

46. [3]By the sixth section of the "Plan of Tacubaya" it had been provided that the *provisional* president should answer for his acts before the first constitutional congress; yet before Santa Anna assumed the office of *constitutional* president, he issued a decree virtually repealing, by his own arbitrary will, that section of the "Plan," by declaring that as the power exercised by him was, by its very tenor, without limitation, the responsibility referred to was merely a 'responsibility of opinion;' and that all the acts of his administration were of the same permanent force as if performed by a constitutional government, and must be observed as such by the constitutional congress.

1844.

4. *Commencement of Santa Anna's administration.*

5. *Proceedings of congress, and condition of the treasury.*

47. [4]Having thus placed himself beyond all responsibility for the acts of his provisional presidency, Santa Anna commenced his administration under the new government, which was organized by the assembling of Congress in January, 1844. [5]The congress at first expressed its accordance with the views of Santa Anna, by voting an extraordinary contribution of four millions of dollars, with which to prosecute a war against Texas; but on his requiring authority for a loan of ten millions, congress hesitated to give its assent, although but a small portion of the former contribution had been realized, and the treasury was destitute, not only of sufficient resources to carry on a war, but even to meet the daily expenses of the government.

6. *Feelings of opposition to Santa Anna's government.*

48. [6]Meanwhile, as affairs proceeded, the opposition against Santa Anna continued to increase, not only in the congress, but also throughout the republic. He had been raised to power by a military revolution, rather than by the free choice of the people; who, regarding with jealousy and distrust the man and his measures, were ready for revolt against a government which they had little share in establishing. [7]On Santa Anna's expressing a wish to retire to his farm for the management of his private affairs, it became the duty of the senate to appoint a president *ad interim*, to officiate during his absence. So strong had the opposition to the dictator become in tha body, that the ministerial candidate, Canalizo, prevailed by only one vote over his opponent, of the liberal party.

The election for a provisional president.

1844.

49. [1]Scarcely had Santa Anna left the capital when the assembly of Guadalaxara, or Jalisco, called[a] upon the national congress to make some reforms in the constitution and the laws; and among other things, to enforce that article of the "Plan of Tacubaya" which made the provisional president responsible for the acts of his administration. [2]Although this measure of the assembly of Jalisco was taken in accordance with an article of the constitution, and was therefore, nominally, a constitutional act, yet it was in reality a revolutionary one, skilfully planned for the overthrow of Santa Anna.

a. Nov. 1.

1. *Proceedings of the assembly of Jalisco.*

2. *The character of this measure.*

50. [3]Up to this time, Paredes, who had commenced the revolution of 1841, had acted with Santa Anna; but now, at the head of a body of troops, in the same province of Guadalaxara, he openly declared against the dictator, and assumed the functions of military chief of the revolution. [4]Several of the northern provinces immediately gave in their adherence to the cause; and Paredes, at the head of 1400 men, advanced to Lagos,* where he established his head quarters, and there awaited the progress of events.

3. *The course taken by Paredes.*

4. *Progress of the revolt.*

51. [5]Santa Anna, then at his residence near Vera Cruz, was immediately invested by Canalizo, the acting president, with the command of the war against Paredes. [6]Collecting the troops in his neighborhood, at the head of 8,500 men he departed from Jalapa, crossed rapidly the department of Puebla, where he received some additional troops, and on the 18th of November arrived at Guadalupe,† a town in the vicinity of the capital. [7]The departments through which he had passed were full of professions of loyalty to his government, and he found the same in that of Mexico; but even at this moment symptoms of the uncertainty of his cause began to appear.

5. *Canalizo.*

6. *March of Santa Anna to the capital.*

Nov. 18.

7. *Professions of attachment to him.*

52. [8]Although congress did not openly support Paredes, yet it seemed secretly inclined to favor the revolution, and, moreover, it insisted that Santa Anna should proceed constitutionally, which he had not done; for he had taken the command of the military in person, which he was forbidden to do by the constitution, without the previous permission of congress. [9]Nevertheless, on the 22d he left Guadalupe for Querétaro, where he expected to assemble a force of 13,000 men, with which to overwhelm the little army of Paredes. [10]On the same day the chamber of deputies voted the impeachment of the minister of war for sign-

8. *Proceedings of the congress.*

9. *March of Santa Anna to Queretaro.*

Nov. 22.

10. *More open demonstrations of congress against Santa Anna.*

* *Lagos* is a small town in the eastern part of Guadalaxara.

† *Guadalupe* is a small village three miles north from the capital. (See Map, p. 569.) It is distinguished for its magnificent *church*, dedicated to the "Virgin of Guadalupe," the *patron-saint of Mexico*. The chapel and other buildings devoted to this saint form a little village of themselves, separate from the small town that has grown up in the vicinity.

ANALYSIS.

ing he order by which Santa Anna held the command of the troops. It also resolved to receive and print the declarations of the departments that had taken up arms, showing, in all this, no friendly disposition towards Santa Anna.

1. Proceedings at Querétaro. Members of the assembly imprisoned by Santa Anna.

53. [1]On arriving at Querétaro, Santa Anna found that, although the military were professedly in his favor, yet the departmental assembly had already pronounced in favor of the reforms demanded by Jalisco. He therefore informed the members that if they did not *re-pronounce* in his favor he would send them prisoners to Perote; and on their refusal to do so, they were arrested by his order.

2. Santa Anna's ministers ordered to appear before Congress.

[2]When news of these proceedings reached the capital, the minister of war and the acting president were immediately ordered to appear before Congress, and to inform that body if they had authorized Santa Anna to imprison the members of the assembly of Querétaro.

3. Arbitrary measures of the ministers.

Dec. 1.

Dec. 2.

Congress dissolved by them.

54. [3]But instead of answering to this demand, on the first of December the ministers caused the doors of Congress to be closed, and guarded by soldiery; and on the following day appeared a proclamation of Canalizo, declaring Congress dissolved indefinitely, and conferring upon Santa Anna all the powers of government, legislative as well as executive; the same to be exercised by Canalizo until otherwise ordered by Santa Anna.

4. Puebla declares against Santa Anna.

Dec. 3.

[4]When intelligence of these proceedings reached Puebla, the garrison and people declared against the government, and offered an asylum to the members of Congress.

5. Revolution in the capital.

Dec. 6.

55. [5]During several days the forcible overthrow of the government produced no apparent effect in the capital, but early on the morning of the sixth the people arose in arms; the military declared in favor of the revolution; and Canalizo and his ministers were imprisoned.

Dec. 7.

6. A new government formed.

[6]On the seventh, Congress reassembled; General Herrera, the leader of the constitutional party, was appointed Provisional President of the Republic, and a new ministry was formed.

7. Rejoicings and festivities on the overthrow of Santa Anna's government.

56. [7]Rejoicings and festivities of the people followed. The tragedy of "Brutus, or Rome made Free," was performed at the theatre in honor of the success of the revolutionists; and every thing bearing the name of Santa Anna, —his trophies, statues, portraits—were destroyed by the populace. Even his amputated leg, which had been embalmed and buried with military honors, was disinterred, dragged through the streets, and broken to pieces, with every mark of indignity and contempt.

1845.

8. Situation and plans of Santa Anna at this period.

57. [8]Santa Anna, however, was still in command of a large body of the regular army, at the head of which, early in January, he marched against Puebla, hoping to

1845.

strike an effective blow by the capture of that place, or to open his way to Vera Cruz, whence he might escape from the country if that alternative became necessary. But at Puebla he found himself surrounded by the insurgents in increasing numbers—his own troops began to desert him—and after several unsuccessful attempts to take the city, on the 11th of the month he sent in a communication offering to treat with and submit to the government. [1]His terms not being complied with, he attempted to make his escape, but was taken prisoner, and confined in the castle of Perote. After an imprisonment of several months, Congress passed a decree against him of perpetual banishment from the country.

Jan. 11.

1. *His capture and banishment.*

58. [2]In the mean time the province of Texas, having maintained its independence of Mexico during a period of nine years, and having obtained a recognition of its independence from the United States, and the principal powers of Europe, had applied for and obtained admission into the American confederacy, as one of the states of the Union. [3]On the 6th of March, 1845, soon after the passage of the act of annexation by the American Congress, the Mexican minister[a] at Washington demanded his passports—declaring his mission terminated, and protesting against the recent act of Congress, by which, as he alleged, "an integral part of the Mexican territory" had been severed from the state to which it owed obedience. [4]On the arrival in Mexico of the news of the passage of the act of annexation, the provisional president, Herrera, issued a proclamation,[b] reprobating the measure as a breach of national faith, and calling upon the citizens to rally in support of the national independence, which was represented as being seriously threatened by the aggressions of a neighboring power.

2. *Situation of Texas at this period.*

March 6.

3. *Course taken by the Mexican minister at Washington.*

a. (Al-monte)

4. *By the Mexican president.*

b. June 4.

59. [5]Small detachments of Mexican troops were already near the frontiers of Texas, and larger bodies were ordered to the Rio Grande, with the avowed object of enforcing the claim of Mexico to the territory so long withdrawn from her jurisdiction, and now placed under the guardianship of a power able and disposed to protect the newly acquired possession. [6]In view of these demonstrations made by Mexico, in the latter part of July the Government of the United States sent to Texas, under the command of General Taylor, several companies of troops, which took a position on the island of St. Joseph's, near Corpus Christi Bay, and north of the mouth of the river Nueces.

5. *Mexican troops on the Texan frontier.*

6. *American troops sent to Texas.*

c. (See Map, p 644.)

July—Aug.

60. [7]In the elections that were held in Mexico in August, Herrera was chosen president, and on the 16th of

7. *Herrera's administration*

Sept. 16.

ANALYSIS.

September took the oath of office in the presence of the Mexican Congress. His administration, however, was of short continuance. Evidently convinced of the inability of Mexico to carry on a successful war for the recovery of Texas, he showed a disposition to negotiate with the United States for a peaceable settlement of the controversy. [1]Paredes, then in command of a portion of the army designed for the invasion of Texas, seized the opportunity for appealing to the patriotism of his countrymen, and declared against the administration of Herrera, with the avowed object of preventing the latter from concluding an arrangement by which a part of the Republic was to be ceded to the United States. On the 21st of December the Mexican Congress conferred upon Herrera dictatorial powers to enable him to quell the revolt, but on the approach of Paredes to Mexico, at the head of six or seven thousand men, the regular army there declared in his favor, and the administration of Herrera was terminated.

1. Revolt of Paredes.

Dec. 21.

2. Herrera's government overthrown.

1846.

61. The hostile spirit which the war party in Mexico, headed by Paredes, had evinced towards the United States, induced the latter to take measures for guarding against any hostile invasion of the territory claimed by Texas; and on the 11th of March, 1846, the army of General Taylor broke up its encampment at Corpus Christi, and commenced its march towards the Rio Grande. On the 28th of the same month it took a position opposite Matamoras. [4]Open hostilities soon followed, the Mexicans making the first attack. The battles of *Palo Alto* and *Resaca de la Palma*, fought on the soil claimed by Texas, resulted in victory to the American arms;—Matamoras* surrendered;—during the 21st, 22d, and 23d of September the heights of Monterey† were stormed, and on the 24th the city capitulated to General Taylor. Upper California had previously submitted to an American squadron, commanded by Commodore Sloat, and the city and valley of Santa Fe‡ had surrendered to General Kearney.

3. Advance of the American army to the Rio Grande.

March.

4. Commencement of hostilities between Mexico and the United States.

The American arms victorious.

Sept 24.

62. [5]Such were the events which opened the war on the frontiers of Mexico. In the mean time another domestic revolution had broken out, and Paredes, while engaged in preparations to meet the foreign enemy, found the power which he had assumed wrested from him. Santa

5 Another revolution in Mexico Santa Anna again at the head of the government.

---

* *Matamoras*, a Mexican town, and the capital of the State of Tamaulipas, (Tam-aw-leé-pas,) once containing 12,000 inhabitants, is situated on the south side of the Rio Grande, about 20 miles from its mouth. (See Map, p. 620.)

† *Monterey*, (Mon-ter-á,) the capital of the State of New Leon, contains a population of about 15,000 inhabitants. (See Map, p. 620.)

‡ *Santa Fe*, the capital of the territory of New Mexico, is a town of about 4000 inhabitants, situated 15 miles E. of the Rio Grande, 1100 miles N.W. from the city of Mexico, and 1000 miles from New Orleans. (See Map, p. 620.)

1846.

Anna had been recalled by the revolutionary party, and entering Mexico in triumph, was again placed at the head of that government which had so recently sat in judgment against him, and which had awarded to him the penalty of perpetual banishment. For an account of the war between the United States and Mexico see Polk's Administration, p. 485.

CONCLUDING REMARKS ON MEXICAN HISTORY

1. With the commencement of the war between the United States and Mexico, in 1846, we close our brief account of the history of the latter country, hoping, though almost against hope, that we have arrived near the period of the *last* of the domestic revolutions that were destined to distract that unhappy land, and looking anxiously forward to the time when PEACE may bestow upon Mexico internal tranquillity, and the blessings of a permanent but *free* government.

2. As Americans, we feel a deep and absorbing interest in all those countries of the New World which have broken the chains of European vassalage, and established independent governments of their own; but as citizens of the first republic on this continent, which, for more than half a century, has maintained an honorable standing among the nations of the earth, without one serious domestic insurrection to sully the fair page of its history, we have looked with unfeigned grief upon the numerous scenes of sanguinary contention which have convulsed nearly all the American republics that have aspired to follow in the path which we have trodden.

3. If the task of tracing the causes of the events which have rendered those republics less peaceful, less prosperous, and less happy than ours, should be an unpleasant one, yet it may not be wholly unprofitable; for it is by the past only that we can safely judge of the future, and by knowing the rocks and shoals on which others have broken, we may be the better enabled to guard against the dangers which, at some future day, may threaten us. In the history of modern Mexico we perceive a combination of nearly all those circumstances that have rendered the South American republics a grief and a shame to the friends of liberal institutions throughout the world; and to Mexico we shall confine ourselves for examples of the evils to which we have referred.

4. Mental slavery, an entire subjection to the will and judgment of spiritual leaders, was the secret of that system of arbitrary rule by which Spain, during nearly three centuries, so quietly governed her American colonies.* As early as 1502 the Spanish monarch was constituted head of the American church; and no separate spiritual jurisdiction of the Roman pontiff was allowed to interfere with the royal prerogative, in which was concentrated every branch of authority, and to which all classes were taught to look for honor and preferment. Under this system, the security of the power of Spain depended upon the ignorance and blind idolatry of the people, whom education would have made impatient of a yoke which comparison would have rendered doubly galling. Spain was held up to the Mexicans as the queen of nations, and the Spanish as the only Christian language; and the people were taught that their fate was inescribably better than that of any others of mankind.

---

* "What have *we* ever known like the colonial vassalage of these States?—When did we or our ancestors feel, like them, the weight of a political despotism that presses men to the earth, or of that religious intolerance which would shut up heaven to all but the bigoted? WE HAVE SPRUNG FROM ANOTHER STOCK—WE BELONG TO ANOTHER RACE. We have known nothing—we have felt nothing—of the political despotism of Spain, nor of the heat of her fires of intolerance."—WEBSTER'S *Speech on the Panama Mission, April* 14, 1826.

5. To perpetuate this ignorance, and effectually guard against foreign influences, the "Laws of the Indies" made it a capital crime for a foreigner to enter the Spanish colonies without a special license from his Catholic majesty, the king of Spain; nor were these licenses granted unless researches in Natural History were the ostensible object of the applicant. All Protestants were indiscriminately condemned as heretics and unbelievers, with whom no good Catholic could hold intercourse without contamination. In Mexico, as well as in Spain, the Inquisition was firmly established, and it discharged its duties with an unbounded zeal and a relentless rigor. Its tendency was, not only to direct the conscience in matters of religion, but to stifle inquiry in everything that could throw light upon the science of politics and government. Modern histories and political writings were rigorously proscribed in Mexico, and so late as 1811, the doctrine of the sovereignty of the people was denounced as a damnable heresy. Doctrines directly opposed to republican principles, and based upon ignorance and prejudice, were thus sedulously interwoven with the religion of the people, and while the intolerant spirit thus inculcated remains, there will be no security for the permanence of republican institutions.

6. From the past history and present prospects of Mexico, compared with those of the United States, we may gather one of the most important lessons that history teaches. Although Mexico was settled nearly a century before the United States, yet the latter had gone through all the discouragements and trials of their colonial existence, steadily progressing in general knowledge and in the growth of liberal principles, had outgrown their vassalage, and firmly established their independence, while Mexico was still groping in spiritual and intellectual darkness, without being fully aware of her enslaved condition. In the case of the United States the declaration of Independence was the deliberate resolve of a united and intelligent people, smarting under accumulated wrongs, rightly appreciating the value of freedom, and with prudent foresight calmly weighing the cost of obtaining it. When once obtained, the virtue and intelligence of the people were sufficient to preserve it, and to guard against its natural liabilities to perversion. A system of government was adopted, republican not only in form but in principle; and standing out prominently as a beacon in the darkness of the age, equal protection and toleration were given to all religious sects.

7. In the case of Mexico, the first resistance to Spanish tyranny was but a sudden and isolated movement of a few individuals, with no ulterior object of freedom; and the masses of the ignorant population who joined in the insurrection were influenced by no higher motives than those of plunder and revenge. A declaration of Independence found the people disunited, ignorant of the nature and extent of the evils under which they were suffering, unaware of their own resources, and ready to follow blindly wherever their chiefs led them. When Independence was at length accomplished, it was merely for one despotism to give place to another, and in the struggle of contending factions a monarchy arose to usurp the liberties of the people.

8 The sudden overthrow of monarchy gave place to a system republican in form, and fair and comely in its proportions, but containing one of the most odious features of despotism. It was declared that one particular religion should be adopted, to the exclusion and prohibition of any other whatever. A principle more illiberal and unrepublican could not have been imagined, and where it prevails, the idea of a *free government* is an absurdity. It was a vain attempt to engraft the freshly budding germs of freedom on the old and withered stalk of tyranny, as unnatural as to hope that the most tender and delicate plant would bud and blossom, in vigor and beauty, on the gnarled oak of the forests. Of all tyranny, that which is exerted over the consciences of the superstitious and the ignorant is the most baneful in its effects. It not only renders its subjects more than willing slaves, and makes them glory in their bondage, but it incapacitates them from appreciating or enjoying the blessings of liberty when freely offered them.

9. Of the present state of learning among the Mexicans, some idea may be

formed, when it is considered, that, so late as 1840, among the entire white population of the country not more than one in five could read and write, and among the Indians and mixed classes, not one in fifty; a startling fact for a republic, and one of the prominent causes of that incapacity for self-government which the people have thus far exhibited. The constitution of 1824 indeed displayed a laudable anxiety for the general improvement of the country and the dissemination of knowledge; but the ease with which that constitution was overthrown by a military despot, and the facility with which subsequent revolutions have been effected, without any object but the restless ambition of their instigators, who hoped to rise to power over the ruins of their predecessors, show the development of no progressive *principle*, and that the people have made little advancement in that knowledge which is requisite to fit them for self-government.

10. As yet there can scarcely be said to be more than two classes among those who are citizens; the church on the one hand, and the army on the other; for the numerous mixed and Indian population is almost wholly unrepresented in the government. The stranger is reminded of this double dominion of military and spiritual power by the constant sound of the drum and the bell, which ring in his ears from morn till midnight, drowning the sounds of industry and labor, and by their paraphernalia of show and parade deeply impressing him with the conviction that there are no republican influences prevailing around him. A large standing army has been maintained, not to guard the nation against invading enemies, but to protect the government against the people; and its leaders have originated all the revolutions that have occurred since the overthrow of the power of Spain.

11. The present condition of Mexico, apart from considerations of the results of the foreign war in which she is engaged, is one of exceeding embarrassment, and many years of peace must elapse, under a wise and permanent administration of government, before she can recover from the evils which a long period of anarchy and misrule has entailed upon her. The country presents a wide field of waste and ruin; agriculture has been checked; commerce and manufactures scarcely exist; a foreign and a domestic debt weigh heavily upon the people; and the morals of the masses have become corrupted. Under such circumstances, the future prospects of Mexico are dark to the eye of hope, and the most gloomy forebodings of those who love her welfare threaten to be realized. While she has been absorbed with domestic contentions, the march of improvement has been pressing upon her borders; and her soil is too fertile, and her mines too valuable, long to lie unimproved, without tempting the cupidity of other nations. Texas, severed from her, not by foreign interference, but by the enterprise of a hardy, united, and intelligent population, that had been invited to her soil to make her waste and wilderness lands fertile, may be to her a warning, and a prophetic page in her history.

12. And whether the Anglo-American race is destined to sweep over the valleys and plains of Mexico, and in that direction carry onward to the shores of the Pacific, the blessings of civil and religious freedom, under the mild and peaceable influences of republican institutions, or whether the Hispano-Mexicans shall continue to rule in the land which they have polluted, in their domestic quarrels, with scenes of violence and blood, and over which the intolerance of spiritual despotism has so long exerted its blighting influence, is a problem which the Mexican people alone can solve. If they will be united under a government of their own choice; if they will foster learning and the arts; cultivate good morals, and banish the *intolerance* of their religion; they may yet become a respected, a great, a powerful, and a happy nation; but if domestic discord and civil wars, fomented by ambitious military chieftains, shall much longer prevail, the nation will be broken into fragments, or her territory seized upon by some more powerful, because more united, more liberal, more intelligent, and more virtuous people.

a. Written in 1846.

MAP OF
TEXAS
For 1845.
Scale of Miles
0 50 100 150 200 250
IOWA
MISSOURI
ARKANSAS
INDIAN TERRITORY
TEXAS
MEXICO
GULF OF MEXICO
St. Peters R.
Sioux R.
James R.
Missouri R.
Platte R.
Ft. Leavenworth
Kanzas R.
James's Peak
Arkansas R.
Taos
Santa Fe
Albuberque
North Fork
South Fork
Canadian R.
Ft. Gibson
Ft. Cattee
Ft. Smith
Red R.
Clarksville
Nacogdoches
Sabine R.
Salado R.
Salt L.
Brazos R.
Ft. Houston
Red R. of Texas
Colorado R.
Trinity R.
Neches R.
Beaumont
Liberty
Austin
Houston
Richmond
Columbus
Gonsales
Seguin
Texanna
Brazoria
S. Antonio de Bexar
Victoria
Goliad
Refugio
S. Patricio
Laredo
Aquaverde
Tubal
Chihuahua
Presidio
Nueces R.
R. Del Norte
R. Pecos
S. Rosa
Coahuila or Monclova
Mier
Revilla
Camargo
Monterey
Matamoras
Mapimi
Saltillo
Point Isabel
Galveston
Lynchburg
Richmond
Columbia
Brazoria
Matagorda
Gulf of Mexico
29 27 25 23 21 15 17
44 42 40 38 36 34 32 30 28 26
106 104 102 100 98 96 94

PART III.

HISTORY OF TEXAS.

CHAPTER I.

TEXAS,* AS A PART OF MEXICO, WHILE UNDER THE SPANISH DOMINION.

[1521 TO 1821.]

1. [1]Before the formation of European settlements in Texas, that country was the occasional resort, rather than the abode, of wandering Indian tribes, who had no fixed habitations, and who subsisted chiefly by hunting and predatory warfare. Like the modern Comanches,[a] they were a wild, unsocial race, greatly inferior to the agricultural Mexicans of the central provinces, who were subdued by Cortez. **1521.**

1. Situation of Texas before the formation of European settlements there.

a. (See Note, p. 625.)

2. [2]The establishment of the Spanish power upon the ruins of the kingdom of Montezuma was not followed immediately by even the nominal occupation of the whole country embraced in modern Mexico. More than a cen-

2. Tardy occupation of the country by the Spaniards.

---

* The territory claimed by Texas, according to a boundary act passed Dec. 19th, 1836, extended from the Sabine to the Rio Grande, and from this latter river and the Gulf of Mexico to the boundary line of the United States; embracing an area of more than 200,000 square miles —a greater extent of surface than is included in the states of New York, Pennsylvania, Virginia, and Ohio. Her present western boundary is about 250 miles east of Santa Fe.

In the vicinity of the coast, and ranging from thirty to seventy-five miles inland, the surface of the country is very level, but singularly free from swamps and marshes. Bordering on the Sabine the country is flat and woody; from the Sabine to Galveston Bay it is mostly a barren prairie, destitute of trees, except on the margin of the water courses. The remaining portion of the coast, southwest from Galveston, is low and sandy, relieved, towards the interior, and on the margins of the streams, by insulated groves and beautiful prairies. The soil of the level region is a rich alluvion of great depth, and owing to its porous character, and its general freedom from stagnant waters, the climate is less unhealthy than in the vicinity of the lowlands of the southern United States.

Beyond the level region is the "rolling country," forming the largest of the natural divisions of Texas, and extending from 150 to 200 miles in width. This region presents a delightful variety of fertile prairie and valuable woodland, enriched with springs and rivulets of the purest water This district possesses all the natural advantages requisite for the support of a dense population The soil is of an excellent quality, the atmosphere is purer than in the low country, and no local causes of disease are known.

The climate of Texas is believed to be superior, on the whole, to that of any other portion of North America; the winters being milder, and the heat of summer less oppressive than in the northeastern section of the United States. The forests of Texas are destitute of that rank undergrowth which prevails in the woody districts of Louisiana and Mississippi; and the level region is generally free from those putrid swamps, the exhalations from which, under the rays of a burning sun, poison the atmosphere, and produce sickness and death. In Texas the banks of the water-courses rise gradually from the beds of the streams, from river to river the country is an open acclivity; while, in the low districts of Louisiana and Mississippi, the banks of the rivers are suddenly abrupt, and the country mostly a swampy and compactly wooded level, retaining the waters of annual inundations, which generate noxious

ANALYSIS.

tury and a half elapsed before a single Spanish post was erected within the limits of the present Texas, and in the tardy progress of Spanish colonization originated the pretensions of France to the Rio Grande, as the southwestern frontier of Louisiana.

1. Discovery of the Mississippi.

3. [1]The discovery by the French, and the exploration of the country bordering on the Mississippi, have already been mentioned in connection with the early history of Louisiana.[a] [2]In the year 1684, La Salle, the pioneer in those western discoveries, sailed[b] from France with four vessels and two hundred and eighty persons, with the design of establishing a colony at the mouth of the Mississippi. Deceived, however, in his reckoning, La Salle failed to reach the place of his destination, and sailing unconsciously southward, he landed on the 18th of February, 1685, at the head of Matagorda Bay,[c] within the limits of the present Texas.

a. See p. 520.

1684.

b. July 24.

2. Landing of La Salle within the limits of Texas.

1685.

c. Note, p. 643.

3. Erection of a fort. Claims of France to the country.

4. [3]Here he built and garrisoned a small fort, and took formal possession of the country in the name of his sovereign; nor did France, while Louisiana was hers, relinquish her claims to the territory thus colonized under her banners. [4]The largest vessel in the expedition of La Salle soon returned to France; two others were lost in the bay; and the fourth, a small sloop, was captured off St. Domingo[d] by Spanish cruisers. [5]La Salle, dissatisfied with his situation, although the country around him, verdant with luxuriant herbage, gave abundant evidence of the fertility of the soil, resolved to seek the Mississippi and establish his colony there.

4. The vessels sent out with La Salle.

d. Note, p. 112.

5. Projected removal of the colony.

6. Departure of La Salle for Canada.

5. [6]After several unsuccessful attempts to discover the Mississippi, his colony being in the meantime threatened with famine, and the surrounding Indians having become hostile, in January, 1687, he departed[e] with sixteen persons, with the desperate resolution of finding his way to Canada by land, whence he intended sailing for France where he hoped to obtain materials for a fresh expedition. [7]On his journey, and while yet within the limits of Texas, he was shot[f] by one of his own men whom he had offended.

1687.

e. Jan. 12.

f. March 19.

7. His death, and the breaking up of the colony.

---

miasma, the cause of malignant fevers. While the midsummer air of the alluvial region of the Mississippi is surcharged with noxious moisture, in Texas gentle breezes blow six months in the year from the south and southwest, and, coming from the waters of the Gulf, or passing over the elevated table-lands of the interior, they give an invigorating freshness to the atmosphere. So delightful is the temperature in the greater portion of Texas proper, that this region has been very appropriately styled the "Italy of America." Here ice is seldom seen; snow is a rare and transient visitor; and even in winter the trees preserve their foliage, and the plains their verdure. The soil and the climate combined admit of two or three crops a year, of fruits and vegetables, and two gardens are common,—one for spring and summer, and one for autumn and winter.

Rheumatisms and chronic diseases are rare in Texas; pulmonary consumption is almost unknown; and, in the opinion of respectable medical men, a residence in this country would be as favorable, to persons of consumptive habits, as the south of Europe or Madeira.

The establishment formed by him at Matagorda was soon after broken up by the Indians. **1687.**

6. [1]When intelligence of La Salle's invasion reached Mexico, the viceroy held a council of war to deliberate on the matter, and an expedition was resolved upon to scour the country, and hunt out the French if any were still remaining. [2]Accordingly, a suitable force was despatched commanded by Captain Alonzo de Leon, who arrived[a] in April, 1689, at the site of La Salle's fort, which he found deserted, and the remains of one of the French vessels that had been wrecked on the coast still visible. [3]De Leon, prompted by the rumor that some of La Salle's companions were wandering about the country with the Indians, visited the tribe of the Asimais, who received him kindly, but he could find no traces of the fugitive Frenchmen. [4]The Spanish commander reciprocated the kindness of the Asimais, on whom he bestowed the name of "*Texas*," since applied to the country they inhabited, and which, in their language, signified "*friends*."

1. Designs of the Spaniards to expel the French from the country.

2. The expedition of De Leon.

a. April 22. 1689.

3. His visit to the As-i-mais.

4. Origin of the name of Texas.

7. [5]On the return of De Leon, he informed the viceroy of the freedom of the country from foreigners, mentioned the amicable disposition of the Indians, and recommended the establishment of missionary posts and garrisons, for the purpose of civilizing the natives, and preventing the intrusion of Europeans. [6]In accordance with this recommendation, one or two unimportant missions were founded in Texas in the year 1690, and two years later a small settlement was made at San Antonio de Bexar.[b]

5. Return of De Leon, and his recommendations to the Viceroy.

6. First Spanish settlements in Texas. 1690.

b. See Note and Map, next page.

8. [7]In 1699, the French, under De Iberville, having formed a few settlements in southern Louisiana, assumed nominal possession of the country from the mouth of the Mobile river to the Bay of Matagorda. [8]Some years later the Spaniards established several posts in the vicinity of the French settlement at Natchitoches,* which they affected to consider within their limits; and by a royal order in 1718, a detachment of fifty light infantry was stationed at Bexar. [9]The French at Natchitoches soon after attacked the neighboring Spanish missions, and obliged the inhabitants to seek a temporary retreat at Bexar; but the French were soon attacked in turn, and obliged to retire beyond the Sabine.

7. The French assume nominal possession of the country.

8. Spanish posts near Natchitoches, and garrison at Bexar. 1718.

9. Hostilities between the French and Spaniards.

9. [10]Although thus driven beyond the limits of Texas, the French did not abandon their claims to the country, and in 1720 they established a small garrison at La Salle's post, and raised there the arms of France anew, with the

10. French garrison at the bay of Matagorda. 1720.

* *Natchitoches*, (pronounced Natch-i-tosh,) is in Louisiana, on the west side of the Red River, about 200 miles from its mouth. It was settled by the French about the year 1717.

ANALYSIS.

1763.
1. *Western Louisiana ceded to Spain in 1763. Receded to France in 1800.*

1800.
a. See p. 528.

1803.
b. See p. 529.
2. *Final cession of Louisiana to the United States.*

1810.
3. *Situation of Texas at the time of the outbreak of the first Mexican revolution.*

4. *Description of the Spanish missionary establishments.*

design of representing the continued assertion of the right of sovereignty. But this post never acquired any importance, and was soon abandoned. [1]In 1763 France ceded to Spain that portion of Louisiana west of the Mississippi River; and the conflicting claims of the two countries to the territory of Texas were for a time settled; but in the year 1800, Louisiana was ceded back[a] to France, with the same undefined limits that it had when previously ceded to Spain. [2]Three years later, the same territory of Louisiana was ceded[b] by France to the United States, by which latter power the claim to Texas was still formally continued, without, however, any attempt to enforce it.

10. [3]At the time of the outbreak of the first Mexican revolution, in 1810, the population of Texas was several thousand less than it was fifty years previous, and the only settlements of importance were those of San Antonio de Bexar,* Nacogdoches,† and La Bahia, or Goliad.‡ A few Spanish garrisons, and missions of the Romish church, scattered through the wilderness of the interior, gathered around them a few miserable Indian proselytes, whose spiritual welfare was generally less cared for than the benefit their labor conferred upon their reverend monitors and masters.

11. [4]These missionary establishments, each consisting of a massive stone fortress and a church, the latter surmounted with enormous bells and decorated with statues and paintings, presented more the appearance of feudal castles than of temples for religious worship. The ruins of some of these structures still remain, with their walls almost entire,—striking monuments of the past, and of the sway of Catholicism over the forests of Texas.

VICINITY OF BEXAR.

* The old Spanish town of *San Antonio de Bexar* was in the central part of western Texas, and was embraced in a curve of the San Antonio River, on its western bank. (See Map.) The town was in the form of an oblong square, and the houses were constructed almost entirely of stone, one story high, and protected by walls from three to four feet in thickness. The Alámo, an oblong inclosure, containing about an acre of ground, and surrounded by a wall between eight and ten feet high and three feet thick, was situated at the northeastern part of the town, on the left bank of the San Antonio River. Below Bexar, at intervals, on the banks of the San Antonio, rose the edifices appropriated to the missions. These, four in number, presented the usual combination of church and fortress, and were constructed of massive stone.

† *Nacogdoches*, (pronounced Nak-og-dosh,) is in the eastern part of Texas, on a branch of the river Neches, near the Sabine. (See Map, p. 620.)

‡ *Goliad*, formerly called *La Bahia*, is beautifully situated on the right bank of the San Antonio River, about 20 miles from the intersection of the San Antonio with the Guadalupe, and about 40 miles N.W. from Copano. (See Map, p. 644.)

12. [1]The plundering habits of the roving Comanches,* and other tribes on the northern frontier, limited the range of missions in that direction; and the policy of Spain, aiming at interposing between her more populous Mexican provinces and the republican states of the north, a wilderness barrier, studiously guarded against the introduction of emigrants in numbers sufficient to reclaim the country from the native Indian. [2]So jealous of foreign influence were the Spanish authorities, that it was made a capital crime for a foreigner to enter the Spanish provinces without a license from the king of Spain; and such was their dread of the Anglo-Americans in particular, that it was a favorite saying of a captain-general of one of the eastern Mexican provinces, that, if he had the power, he would prevent the birds from flying across the boundary line between Texas and the United States.

1810.

1. Spanish policy in relation to the settlement of Texas.

2. Jealousy of foreign influence.

13. [3]Owing to these circumstances, Texas remained almost entirely unknown to the people of the United States until after the breaking out of the Mexican revolution. [4]During the year 1812, Toledo† and Guttierez,‡ Mexican officers attached to the revolutionary cause, and then in the United States, devised a plan for invading the eastern Mexican provinces by the aid of American auxiliaries. Attracted by the excitement of military adventure, about two hundred Americans, mostly the sons of respectable planters in the south-western states, led by officers Magee, Kemper, Locket, Perry, and Ross, and joined by two or three hundred French, Spaniards, and Italians, crossed the Sabine,§ routed a body of royalist troops near Nacogdoches, and on the first of November of the same year took possession of the fortified town of Goliad without resistance.

3. Texas little known to the United States at this period.

1812.

4. The expedition of Toledo and Guttierez in 1812.

Dispersion of royalist troops, and capture of Goliad.

Nov.

14. [5]Here they were besieged during three months by about 2000 Spaniards, whose repeated assaults were suc-

5. Siege of Goliad.

---

* The *Comanches*, still found in Texas in considerable numbers, occupied most of the northern and western portions of the country. They are a nation of robbers, cunning and deceptive, seldom engaging in war where there is a prospect of much opposition, but committing their depredations upon the weak and the defenceless, whom they use every wile to betray by professions of friendship;—deeming it more honorable to murder a man in his sleep than to take him in open combat. They violate their treaties so often that the remark,—"As faithless as a Comanche treaty," has become a Mexican adage. They have learned to tame the wild horses of the prairie, which they ride with the ease and dexterity of Tartars. They are a hardy, temperate race,—avoiding the use of ardent spirits, which they call "fool's water." They live in tents made of buffalo skins. Horse-racing is their favorite pastime.

† Don Jose Alvarez de Toledo.

‡ Don Bernardo Guttierez. (Goot-te-a-reth.)

§ The *Sabine River* rises in the north-eastern part of Texas, in a fertile and well-timbered country, and, after flowing in a S.E. direction about 150 miles, forms, during the remainder of its course, the boundary between Louisiana and Texas. Before entering the Gulf of Mexico, it passes through Sabine Lake, which is about 30 miles long, and from one to seven or eight miles wide, connected with the Gulf by a narrow inlet, with a soft mud bar at the entrance In the lower part of its course, the Sabine passes through an extended and sterile prairie. It is navigable 60 or 70 miles from its entrance into Sabine Lake.

ANALYSIS.

1813.
Feb. 10.

1. *The besieged attack and rout the Spanish forces.*

cessfully repelled. [1]On the tenth of February following, the Americans under Kemper sallied out and met the enemy on the open plain, although outnumbered by them in the proportion of two to one. After a desperate conflict of several hours, the Spaniards were routed and driven from the field, with a loss of three or four hundred in killed and wounded, while the total loss of the victors was less than forty.

2. *Second defeat of the Spaniards.*

a. March 29.

3. *Surrender of Bexar, and capitulation of the royalist troops.*

b. April 1.

15. [2]On the retreat of the Spaniards towards Bexar, they were attacked[a] near the Salado Creek* and defeated, with a result similar to that of the battle of Goliad, and with a farther loss of their military stores, and several thousand head of mules and horses. [3]Resuming his march, Kemper moved on to Bexar, and demanded an unconditional surrender of the town, which met with prompt compliance.[b] The royalist generals, Salcedo and Herrera, and twelve other Spaniards of distinction, made a formal surrender; which was quickly followed by the capitulation of all the royalist troops, then reduced to eight hundred men. [4]The latter were allowed to depart, but the former were condemned to death by a Mexican junto headed by Guttierez, and afterwards massacred in secret, in order to conceal their fate from the Americans.

4. *Massacre of Spanish officers.*

5. *Withdrawal of Kemper from the Mexican cause.*

[5]When the truth, however, became known, a great proportion of the Americans, with Kemper at their head, immediately abandoned the Mexican service, disgusted with a cause stained by such enormities.

6. *Approach of a royalist force.*

c. June 16.

7. *Advice of Ross, and his abandonment of the army.*

16. [6]The invading force, much reduced in numbers by the withdrawal of Kemper and his friends, remained inactive at Bexar until the approach,[c] in June, of a royalist army of four thousand men. [7]Suspicious that the Mexicans were about to abandon their allies, and unite with the Spaniards, Ross urged the necessity of an immediate retreat; but the majority of his officers, rejecting the advice of their superior, determined, at every risk, to abide the issue on the spot. On the same night, Colonel Ross, deserting his men, left the town; and early on the following[d] morning Colonel Perry was chosen to the command.

d. June 17.

8. *Attempted negotiations.*

17. [8]A communication from the royalist general, Elisondo, being received, giving the Americans permission to retire unmolested from Texas, on condition that they would deliver up Guttierez and the other Mexicans who were implicated in the massacre of the Spanish prisoners a contemptuous answer was returned, and all capable of bearing arms, both Mexicans and Americans, prepared

* The *Salado*, a small but beautiful stream which issues from a spring about twelve miles north from Bexar, and passes within three miles east of that place, joins the San Antonio river about fifteen miles below Bexar. (See Map, p. 624.)

for battle. [1]Early on the following morning[a] they advanced against the enemy, whom they found celebrating matins on the eastern bank of the Alesan, four miles west from Bexar. In the conflict which ensued the Spaniards were routed, with the loss of their baggage and artillery, and with a number of killed and wounded nearly equal to the entire force brought against them.

1813.

a. June 18.

1. *The Spanish forces attacked and defeated.*

18. [2]The odium that fell upon Guttierez, who was deemed the prime abettor of the massacre of the Spanish prisoners before mentioned, led to his removal from the supreme command of the revolutionary force in Texas, and to the appointment of General Toledo in his place. [3]On the removal of Guttierez, Kemper returned from the United States, and took post at Bexar at the head of about four hundred Americans, who, with seven hundred Mexicans under Manchaca, a bold, but rude and uneducated native partizan, constituted the only force that could be brought against a royalist army of several thousand men, already advancing under the command of Arredondo, captain-general of the eastern internal provinces.

2. *Removal of Guttierez, and appointment of Toledo to the command of the revolutionary force.*

3. *Return of Kemper.*

The numbers of the opposing forces.

19. [4]At the head of his small force, Toledo, as commander-in-chief, advanced against the enemy, whom he met on the 18th of August, on the western bank of the river Medina.* Kemper and Manchaca, crossing the stream, pressed on with their usual intrepidity; the enemy yielding ground and retreating in good order. [5]In this manner the royalists fell back three miles, when a vigorous onset caused them to break and abandon their cannon. [6]Toledo, fearing that his men were proceeding too far, endeavored to call them from the pursuit; but he was opposed by the fiery valor of Kemper and Manchaca, who issued contrary orders, declaring that there should be no retreat.

Aug. 18.

4. *Attack upon the Spanish forces.*

5. *Their first repulse.*

6. *Conduct of Kemper and Manchaca.*

20. [7]The pursuit, therefore, continued, until, to the surprise of the Americans and Mexicans, the enemy reached their intrenchments, where half their army had been kept in reserve. A most destructive fire was now opened by the entire Spanish force. The Mexicans fled at the first volley, and the Americans, left to sustain the contest alone, were soon beaten back, with greatly diminished numbers, and finally compelled to seek safety in flight. The Mexicans, who basely deserted their standard in the hour of peril, and when victory might still have been secured, suffered but little loss; but nearly all the

7. *Continuance of the pursuit, and final defeat of the combined Mexican and American forces.*

* On the Presidio road, eight or nine miles west from Bexar. The *Medina River* enters the San Antonio about 16 miles below Bexar. (See Map.) It is a handsome stream of clear water, about 80 feet wide, its bed lying about 12 feet below the surface, and its current flowing at the rate of three miles an hour. It has its source in a large fountain, in an extensive valley of the highlands, about 80 miles N.W. from Bexar.

ANALYSIS.

Americans who escaped from the battle field were slain or captured in their flight towards Louisiana. Thus terminated, in total defeat to the insurgents, the battle of the Medina; and with it was suspended, during the five subsequent years, the Mexican revolutionary struggle in Texas.

1. Conduct of the United States towards the contending parties in Mexico.

2. Causes that led to a more accurate knowledge of Texas.

21. [1]After the defeat of the force under Toledo, the more guarded vigilance of the authorities of the United States, acting upon principles of strict neutrality towards the contending parties in Mexico, prevented expeditions on a large scale from crossing the frontiers. [2]Adventurers in small parties, however, occasionally visited Texas, disseminating, on their return, more accurate knowledge of its climate, soil, and natural resources, than had previously been obtained; but the unsettled state of the country, and the doubtful result of the Mexican revolution, prevented emigration, and it was not until the achievement of Mexican independence, in 1821, that any substantial advances were made towards the colonization of Texas.

Recent period of Texan colonization.

3. Temporary establishments on the coast of Texas.

4. Privateers, and piratical establishments.

22. [3]In the meantime, however, the principal bays and harbors of the coast had been explored, and some temporary establishments had been made where flourishing settlements have since been formed. [4]For the purpose of accommodating privateers sailing under the Mexican flag, the agents and partisans of the revolutionists had selected stations at Matagorda,[a] Galveston,* and other places; most of which became piratical establishments, that were eventually broken up by the government of the United States.

a See Map, p. 644.)

5. Mina at Galveston.

1816.

b. See. p. 587.

6. The fate of Perry and his band.

7. Perry's history.

23. [5]It was at Galveston, then containing only a rude mud fort and a few cabins, that Mina passed the winter of 1816 on his unfortunate expedition[b] against Mexico. [6]The fate of the small band of Americans, under Colonel Perry, who accompanied Mina, and who abandoned the expedition at Soto la Marina, deserves to be mentioned. [7]Perry had served in the army of the United States; he was with Kemper in the Texan campaign of 1813; he had a hair-breadth escape at the battle of the Medina, and after his return, he was present at the battle of New Orleans.

---

* The town of *Galveston* is situated at the northeastern extremity of Galveston Island, on the south side of the entrance into Galveston Bay. (See Map, p. 659.) The island, which is destitute of timber, with the exception of two or three live oaks near its centre, is about 30 miles in length, with an average breadth of three or four miles. It runs parallel to the coast, and is separated from the main land by a sound or bay about four miles wide, and from four to eight feet deep. The harbor of Galveston, which is between the town and Pelican Island on the west, is spacious and secure, affording firm anchorage, and has a general depth of from 18 to 30 feet of water. *Pelican Island* is a level sandy tract, embracing several hundred acres.

24. [1]After leaving Mina, as before mentioned, he attempted to return to the United States through Texas. Harassed by royalist troops and hostile Indians, the small but intrepid band fought their way to Goliad, near the Bay of Matagorda. [2]Resolved on attacking this strong position, Perry summoned the garrison to surrender, but while the Spanish commandant was deliberating on the summons, a party of two hundred royalist cavalry appeared. [3]Encouraged by this reenforcement, the garrison sallied out, and in the bloody contest that followed, every man of the Americans was killed except the leader. Perry, seeing all his comrades dead or dying around him, retired to a neighboring tree, and, presenting a pistol to his head, fell by his own hand, rather than surrender to the foe.

1817.

1. His march through Texas.

2. He demands the surrender of Goliad.

3. Battle, and destruction of the entire band of the Americans.

25. [4]Two years after the fall of Perry, General Long, at the head of about three hundred men from the southwestern states, entered Texas, and joined the revolutionists against the Spanish authorities. The expedition, however, proved unfortunate, and disastrous to those engaged in it. Although Goliad was once taken, yet Nacogdoches was destroyed, and the inhabitants of the eastern part of Texas were driven across the Sabine. [5]Long was defeated on the Brazos* and Trinity† rivers, and finally, by the perfidy of the Spanish commandant at Bexar, he and all his force, then amounting to 180 men, were made prisoners and conveyed to the city of Mexico. [6]Here Long was shot by a soldier as he was passing a small band of the military on guard. His men were drafted into the Mexican service, but were finally released and sent home to the United States, through the interference of Mr. Poinsett, the American envoy.‡

1819.

4. General Long's expedition.

5. His force defeated, and finally taken prisoners.

6. Death of Long, and final release of the prisoners

26. [7]To complete the narrative of events in Texas, previous to the separation of Mexico from Spain, it is requisite to notice an attempt by a body of French emigrants to form a settlement on the Trinity River. In 1817, a

7. French emigrants settle in Alabama.

---

* The *Brazos River*, which enters the Gulf about 50 miles S. W. from Galveston Inlet, is a winding stream, the whole extent of which is supposed to be nearly a thousand miles. (See Map, p. 620 and Map, p. 659.) Its waters are often quite red, owing to an earthy deposit of fine red clay. They are also salt, or brackish,—occasioned by one of its branchps running through an extensive salt region and a salt lake. When, in the dry season, the water is evaporated, an extensive plain in this salt region, far in the interior, is covered with crystallized salt. The Brazos runs through a rich country, and is fringed with valuable timber land. Its banks, to the distance of 200 miles from its mouth, are from 20 to 40 feet in depth, and are seldom overflowed.

† *Trinity River*, one of the largest rivers in Texas, rises near the Red River, in its great western bend, and running south-eastwardly enters the north-eastern extremity of Galveston Bay. (See Map, p. 620 and Map, p. 659.) It is generally from 60 to 80 yards wide, and eight or ten feet deep, with a rapid current. It is navigable farther than any other river in Texas, having been ascended, by steam boats, between three and four hundred miles. Its banks are lined with the choicest land, and the best of timber.

‡ Foote's account of General Long's expedition differs somewhat from the above. We have followed Kennedy.

ANALYSIS. number of French officers, soldiers, and laborers, the leaders of whom had been obliged to leave their country on account of the part they had taken in restoring Napoleon to power after his return from Elba, came to the United States, and settled on a tract of land in Alabama, which had been assigned to them on terms almost equivalent to a gift.

1. They remove to Texas. *a. (Re-go.)*

27. [1]Dissatisfied, however, with their situation in Alabama, a part of the company, with Generals Lallemand* and Rigaud[a] at their head, removed to Texas in the winter of 1818, and north of the Bay of Galveston, on Trinity River, selected a spot for a settlement, to which they gave the name of *Champ d'Asile*.† [2]But scarcely had Lallemand began to fortify his post, to prescribe regulations, and to invite other emigrants, when he was informed by the Spanish authorities that he must abandon the settlement or acknowledge the authority of Ferdinand. Unable to resist the force sent against it, the little colony was disbanded, and the unfortunate settlers were driven in poverty from the country.

2. They are driven from the country by the Spanish authorities.

CHAPTER II.

Subject of Chapter II.

EVENTS FROM THE TIME OF THE ESTABLISHMENT OF MEXICAN INDEPENDENCE, TO THE TIME OF THE DECLARATION OF THE INDEPENDENCE OF TEXAS.

[1821 TO 1836.]

3. Period at which we have now arrived.

1. [3]We have now arrived at the period of the second Mexican revolution, when the power of Spain received its final overthrow in the Mexican provinces, and when Texas began to emerge from that obscurity in which she had so long been retained by Spanish indolence and jealousy.

4. Treaty of 1819. *b. See p. 471.*

[4]The treaty of 1819,[b] by which Spain ceded the Floridas to the United States, established the Sabine River as the western boundary of Louisiana, and thus gave to Mexico, on the achievement of her independence, an undisputed claim to the entire province of Texas.

5. Colonization of Texas favored by Mexico.

[5]Anxious to promote the settlement of the country, the Mexican government adopted the most liberal system of colonization; and emigrants in large numbers, mostly from the United

---

* Foote says General *Salleman*, probably a typographical error.

† Pronounced *shawng da-sele*, and signifying, literally, the *Field of the Asylum*,—or "Place of Refuge."

States, began to flow into Texas, the most fertile of the Mexican provinces. **1820.**

2. [1]The leading pioneer in Texan colonization was Stephen F. Austin, whose father, Moses Austin, a native of Durham in Connecticut, visited Bexar as early as 1820, and early in the following year obtained from the government permission to plant a colony in Texas. [2]As Moses Austin died soon after the success of his application had been communicated to him, his son Stephen, in obedience to his father's last injunction, prosecuted the enterprise with vigor, and proceeding immediately to Texas, selected a site for a colony between the Brazos and the Colorado.* Such was the enterprise of Austin, that although he was obliged to return to the United States for emigrants, before the close of the year the hum of industry in the new settlement broke the silence of the wilderness.

1. Stephen Austin and his father.

1821.

2. The founding of Austin's colony in Texas.

Dec.

3. [3]As the grant to Moses Austin had been made by the *Spanish* authorities of Mexico, it became necessary, on the change of government soon after, to have the grant confirmed; and Austin was obliged to leave his colony and proceed to the city of Mexico for that purpose. After much delay the confirmation was obtained, first,[a] from the government under Iturbide, and afterwards,[b] on the overthrow of the monarchy, from the federal government. [4]In consequence, however, of Austin's long detention in Mexico, he found his settlement nearly broken up on his return. Many of the early emigrants had returned to the United States, and others, who had commenced their journey for the colony, doubtful of the confirmation of Austin's grant, had stopped in the vicinity of Nacogdoches, or on the Trinity River; and, in this desultory manner, had commenced the settlement of those districts. [5]But after Austin's return, the affairs of the colony revived; and such was its prosperity, that in twelve years from its first settlement, it embraced a population of ten thousand inhabitants.

3. Confirmation of Austin's grant.

1823.

a. Feb. 18.

b. April 14, 1824.

4. Situation of Austin's colony on his return from Mexico.

5. Subsequent prosperity of the colony.

4. [6]In May, 1824, a decree of the Mexican government was issued, declaring that Texas should be provisionally annexed to the province of Coahuila, until its population and resources should be sufficient to form a separate state, when the connexion should be dissolved. [7]In accordance with this decree, in the month of August, 1824,

1824.

6. Texas annexed to Coahuila.

7. Assembling of the legislature, and formation of a state constitution.

* The *Colorado River*, the second in size within the boundaries of Texas, enters the Bay of Matagorda from the north, by two outlets which are about two miles apart. (See Map, p. 620 and Map, p. 644.) The banks are steep and are seldom overflowed. About 50 miles above Austin are the great falls of the Colorado—a succession of cascades extending about 100 yards, and embracing, in all, a perpendicular height of about 100 feet. Above the falls the river flows with undiminished size and uninterrupted current to the distance of 200 miles;—in these characteristics resembling the Brazos. During the dry season the average depth of the Colorado is from six to eight feet.

ANALYSIS.

the legislature of Coahuila and Texas was assembled, and the two provinces, then first united, became one of the *states* of the Mexican Republic; although the state constitution was not framed and sanctioned until March, 1827.

1825.

1. Colonization law of Coahuila and Texas.

2. Importance of a knowledge of this law.

5. [1]On the 24th of March, 1825, a state colonization law was passed, under which grants in Texas were made to numerous *empresarios*, or contractors, the greater number of whom were from the United States. [2]As most of Texas, with the exception of Austin's first colony, has been settled in accordance with the terms of this law, a brief explanation of the law may be interesting, and may correct some of the mistakes that have existed in relation to the rights of the empresarios or contractors.

3. The provisions of this law.

6. [3]By the law of 1825, the governor of the state was authorized to contract with persons, called empresarios, to settle a certain number of families within specified limits, within six years from the date of the contract. To afford ample choice to settlers, a specified tract, greatly exceeding that expected to be settled, and usually containing several millions of acres, was temporarily set off to the empresario; within the limits of which the contemplated settlement was to be made.

4. Privileges awarded to the empresario and the settlers.

7. [4]For every hundred families introduced by the empresario, he was to receive, as a reward or premium, about 23,000 acres; although the whole thus granted to him was not to exceed what might be regularly allowed for the settlement of eight hundred families. To each *family* thus introduced the law granted a league of land, or about 4,428 acres;—to single men a quarter of a league,—to be increased to a full league when they should marry, and to a league and a quarter should they marry native Mexicans. [5]The entire cost, including surveys, titles, &c., for a league of land obtained in this manner, amounted to little more than four cents per acre.

5. The cost of the land to the settlers.

6. Error with respect to the title of the empresario.

"Texan land scrip."

7. Extent of the empresario's right.

8. [6]Under the erroneous impression that the empresarios received a full title to all the lands included within the limits of their "grants," large quantities of "Texan land scrip" have been bought and sold in the United States, when such "scrip" was utterly worthless, and never had any value in Texas. [7]All that the law allowed the empresario was a regulated proportion of "premium land" in return for his expenses and trouble, and after this had been set apart to him, and the emigrants had obtained their portions, the residue included within the bounds of the grant remained a portion of the public domain; and he who disposed of any part of it by direct contract, or by the sale of "scrip," was guilty of fraud.

9. [1]In all the contracts granted to the empresarios, articles were included expressly stipulating that the settlers should be certified Roman Catholics; and without a certificate to this effect from the authorities of the place where the individual designed to settle, no title to land could be given. [2]This law, however, so totally at variance with the interests of the empresarios, was unscrupulously evaded; and the required certificate, which was considered as a matter of mere form, was invariably given by the Mexican magistrate without hesitation. [3]According to law, the empresario was also bound to establish schools for instruction in the Spanish language, and to promote the erection of places of Catholic worship; yet these requirements were little attended to.

1825.

1. *Conditions of religious faith required of the settlers*

2. *Evasions of the law.*

3. *Duties enjoined upon the empresario respecting schools, churches, &c.*

10. [4]The empresario alone was to judge of the qualifications of those who wished to settle within his grant, and he was considered responsible for their good character, being bound neither to introduce nor suffer to remain in his colony, criminals, vagrants, or men of bad conduct or repute. [5]The idea, entertained by some, that the early colonists of Texas were chiefly criminal outcasts from the neighboring territories, and that such were encouraged to settle there, is wholly erroneous. Although fugitives from justice sometimes sought shelter there, as in all new countries arrests are difficult and escape comparatively easy, yet measures were adopted, both by the government of the state and by the empresarios also, to shield Texas from the intrusions of foreign delinquents.

4. *Respecting the introduction of criminals, vagrants, &c.*

5. *Erroneous ideas respecting the character of the population.*

11. [6]With the exception of Indian troubles, no events occurred to interrupt the quiet of the settlements in Texas until 1826, when an attempt was made in the vicinity of Nacogdoches to throw off the Mexican yoke, and establish a republic by the name of Fredonia. [7]This outbreak originated, principally, in difficulties with the local Mexican officers, and in the discontents of a few individuals, who had either been unsuccessful in their applications for grants of land, or whose contracts had been annulled by the government, and, as the latter asserted, for an ignorant or wilful perversion of the law.

6. *Situation of the settlements.*

1826.

7. *Causes of the Fredonian outbreak.*

12. [8]Besides the expected co-operation of the Texan settlements generally, the revolutionists had entered into an alliance[a] with the agents of a band of Cherokees who had settled within the limits of Texas; and hopes were entertained of effectual aid by auxiliaries from the United States. [9]In the first skirmish,[b] with a small body of government troops, the insurgents were successful; but the Cherokees, upon whom much reliance had been placed, were induced to turn against their allies, whose agents

8. *Aid expected by the Fredonians.*

a. Dec. 21.

1827

b. Jan. 4.

9. *First success of the insurgents, and their final dispersion.*

ANALYSIS.

they murdered; and the emissary sent to arouse the colonists on the Brazos was arrested by Austin himself, who was averse to the project of the Fredonians. A force of three hundred men, despatched by the government to quell the insurrection, was joined, on its march, by Austin and a considerable body of his colonists; but before it reached Nacogdoches, the "Fredonian war" had already terminated by the dispersion of the insurgents.

Jan.

1. *Effect of this insurrection.*

13. [1]This insurrection, although disapproved by a large portion of the Texan colonists, had the effect of shaking the confidence of the Mexican government in all the American emigrants, and led to a gradual change of policy towards them. [2]Under the various pretences of conveying despatches, transporting specie, securing the revenue, or guarding the frontier, troops were sent into Texas,—at first in small companies of from ten to twenty men in each, and at considerable intervals; but these, instead of being recalled, were posted in different garrisons, until, in 1832, the number thus introduced amounted to more than thirteen hundred. [3]There were, however, doubtless, other causes that conspired at the same time, to increase the jealousy of Mexico, and alarm her for the eventual security of Texas.

2. *Mexican garrisons established in Texas.*

3. *Other causes that excited the jealousy of the Mexicans.*

4. *Early proposition of the United States for the purchase of Texas.*

a. Mr. Poinsett.

b. By Mr. Clay, Sec. of State, March 26, 1825.

14. [4]The first American minister[a] accredited to the Mexican republic, was furnished[b] with instructions, showing that his government, notwithstanding the treaty of 1819, still cherished the hope of extending its national jurisdiction, at some future day, to the banks of the Rio Grande. In 1827, the envoy of the United States was authorized to offer the Mexican government one million of dollars for the proposed boundary; and among the considerations that were thought likely to influence Mexico in acceding to the proposal, were, the apparently small value placed upon Texas, and the differences of habits, feelings, and religion, that would necessarily arise between the Mexican population and the Anglo-American settlers of Texas, which would doubtless lead to unpleasant misunderstandings, and eventually, to serious collisions.

1829.

5. *The proposition submitted to Mexico in 1829.*

c. By Mr. Van Buren, Sec. of State, Aug. 25.

15. [5]Two years later, during the first year of General Jackson's presidency, fresh instructions were issued[c] to the American envoy, who was authorized "to go as high as five millions" for a boundary between the highlands of the Nueces* and the Rio Grande; and the inducement to

* The *Nueces River* rises in the Guadalupe mountains, about 240 miles N. W. from Bexar, and running in a S. E. direction enters the bays of Nueces and Corpus Christi, about 120 miles north of the mouth of the Rio Grande. It is a beautiful, deep, narrow, and rapid stream, with steep banks, and is navigable for small boats about 40 miles from its mouth,—and with some improvement the navigation may be extended much farther. (See Map, p. 620 and Map. p. 644.)

make this offer was stated to be "a deep conviction of the real necessity of the proposed acquisition, not only as a guard for the western frontiers and the protection of New Orleans, but also to secure forever, to the inhabitants of the valley of the Mississippi, the undisputed and undisturbed possession of that river." 1829.

16. [1]None of these proposals, however, found favor with the Mexican government, whose altered feelings towards the Anglo-American settlers of Texas, and increasing jealousy of the United States, were exhibited by a decree of the Mexican president Bustamente, dated the sixth of April, 1830. [2]The law promulgated by that decree, and evidently directed against Texas, suspended many contracts of colonization already made, and virtually prohibited the entrance of foreigners from the United States, under any pretext whatever, unless furnished with Mexican passports.

1. Altered feelings of Mexico towards the Texan colonists and the United States.

1830. April 6.

2 Character of the Mexican decree of April 6, 1830.

17. [3]This unforeseen and rigorous enactment subjected the emigrants to great injury and loss. Many, already settled, were denied titles to land; and others, who had abandoned their homes in the United States, were ordered, on their arrival, to leave the country;—being the first intimation they received of the existence of the law. [4]Measures were also taken to induce Mexican families to settle in the new territories, in the hope of counterbalancing, by their influence, the evils apprehended from too large a mixture of foreign population. [5]At the same time additions were made to the garrisons of Texas, and civil authority began to be superseded by martial law.

3 Its effects upon the Texan emigrants.

4. Attempts to introduce a Mexican population.

5. Mexican garrisons and martial law.

18. [6]Encouraged by the general government, the commandants of these garrisons, illegally taking into their own hands the execution of the law of April, 1830, began to commit violent and arbitrary acts, in contravention of the state authorities; and even ventured to infringe upon the personal liberties of the settlers. [7]In 1831, Colonel Bradburn, commandant of the military post at Anahuac,* arrested and imprisoned the state commissioner of Coahuila and Texas, who was acting under a commission from the governor, authorizing him to put the settlers on the the Trinity River in possession of their lands. He also abolished, by a laconic military order, the legally organized municipality of the town of Liberty,† on the Trinity River, and established another at Anahuac, without either the sanction or the knowledge of the state government.

6 Arbitrary acts of Mexican officers.

1831.

7. Proceedings of Bradburn in opposition to the State government.

---

* *Anahuac* is on the east side of Galveston Bay, and on the south side of the mouth of Turtle Creek. (See Map, p. 659.)

† The town of *Liberty* is on the east bank of Trinity River, about twelve miles above its entrance into Galveston Bay. (See Map, p. 659.)

ANALYSIS.

1832.

Imprisonment of citizens at Anahuac.

2. Their release demanded.

a. June.

19. [1]Emboldened by the impunity which attended his violent and unconstitutional proceedings, he next arrested and imprisoned at Anahuac several respectable citizens who had rendered themselves obnoxious to him; one of whom was the gallant Travis, afterwards distinguished for his spirited defence of the Alamo. [2]Incensed by these lawless acts, the colonists, assembling to the number of 150 men, headed by John Austin, respectfully applied for the release of the prisoners.

3. The garrison threatened: declaration of the commandant.

4. Travis.

5. Threats of the colonists.

20. [3]Receiving a refusal, they threatened to reduce the garrison; whereupon the commandant, ordering the prisoners to be pinioned to the ground, declared that the first shot fired by the colonists should be the signal of their fate. [4]Travis, hearing this, called on his friends to fire, and not regard his life, as he would rather die a thousand deaths than permit the oppressor to remain unpunished. [5]In reply to Bradburn's menace, the colonists vowed that if he dared to execute it, the crime and its retribution should be written on the walls of the fort with his best blood.

6. Terms of adjustment.

Violated by Bradburn.

21. [6]After a few shots had been fired, however, terms of adjustment were proposed and accepted; by which the commandant agreed to release the prisoners, on condition that the colonists should previously retire six miles from the fort. [7]But no sooner had the latter withdrawn, than, availing himself of the opportunity to procure some additional military stores, Bradburn retracted his agreement, and bade defiance to the colonists. [8]Leaving his force, Austin then went to Velasco* in quest of artillery; but fearing that Ugartechea, the officer in command at that place, would, in obedience to the orders of Bradburn, attack the colonists on the Brazos during his absence, he decided on dislodging him before he rejoined his friends at Anahuac.

7. Determination of Austin to attack Velasco.

June 26.

8. Account of the attack.

Expertness of the Texan marksmen.

22. [9]Accordingly, with a party of 112 men, the attack was made early on the morning of the 26th of June. Until day dawned the Texans fought at great disadvantage, as they were directed in their fire only by the flash of the guns from the fort; but with the return of light, their skill as marksmen operated with deadly effect. Every Mexican who showed his head above the walls of the fort was shot; the cannon was repeatedly cleared; and the hands that successively held the lighted match, without exposing the rest of the body, were shattered by the rifle, with the precision of expert pistol practice; until at last, Ugartechea, unable to man the bastion with his

* *Velasco* is a town on the north side of the mouth of the Brazos. (See Map, p. 659.)

1832.

terrified mercenaries, ascended it himself, and directed the gun. The Texans, however, admiring his gallant bearing as a soldier, abstained from firing; a parley ensued, and the fort was surrendered. [1]In this affair, eleven Texans were killed, and fifty-two wounded, twelve of them mortally. Of the 125 Mexicans who composed the garrison, about one half were killed, and seventeen lost their hands by rifle shots.*

The surrender.

1. The losses of each party.

23. [2]After the fall of Velasco, Austin conveyed the cannon to the force assembled at Turtle Bayou,† for the siege of Anahuac; but before his arrival the object of the colonists had been accomplished. Piedras, the commandant at Nacogdoches, had started with a force for the relief of Anahuac; but, on his march, he was intercepted by the Texans, and obliged to capitulate. In consideration of being permitted to return unmolested to Nacogdoches, he engaged, as the superior in command, to release the prisoners at Anahuac, and to bring Bradburn to trial. [3]The latter, however, escaped from the fort, and fled to New Orleans.

2. Events that led to the release of the prisoners at Velasco.

3. Bradburn's escape.

24. [4]During these events, the revolution in Mexico was progressing, which resulted in the overthrow of Bustamente, and the restoration of the federal constitution, which had been subverted by him. [5]Santa Anna, who was at the head of the movement against Bustamente, supposing that the object of the Texans was a separation from Mexico, sent against them a fleet of five vessels and four hundred men, under the command of General Mexia,‡ who arrived at the entrance of the Brazos on the 16th of July. [6]Influenced by the representations of the colonists, however, who gave the strongest assurances of their desire to sustain the constitution and the laws according to the principles of the federal republican party headed by Santa Anna, General Mexia was induced to withdraw his troops, taking with him the garrison of the dismantled fort at Velasco. [7]The other garrisons were at the same time withdrawn, and in August, 1832, Texas was free from military domination and internal strife.

4. The revolution in Mexico at this period.

5. General Mexia sent against Texas

July 16.

6. Causes that induced him to withdraw his troops.

7 Situation of Texas in Aug., 1832.

25. [8]In October, of the same year, a convention of the people of Texas assembled at San Felípe,§ for the purpose of framing a memorial to the supreme government,

Oct.

8 Convention at San Felipe.

(Fa-lee-pa.)

* In Foote's "Texas and the Texans," the Texan loss is stated at 7 killed and 27 wounded: that of the Mexicans at 35 killed and 15 wounded.

† *Turtle Bayou*, or Turtle Creek, enters Galveston Bay from the east, a short distance S.E. from the mouth of Trinity River. (See Map, p. 659.)

‡ The same who afterwards fought against Santa Anna, and who invaded Mexico in 1835 and also in 1838, at which latter time he was taken prisoner and shot. (See pp. 607 and 609.)

§ *San Felipe*, or San Felipe de Austin, is a town on the west bank of the Brazos River, about 50 miles N.W from the head of Galveston Bay. It is 150 miles from the Gulf, by the course of the River. (See Map, p. 620)

ANALYSIS.

1. *Convention of April, 1833.*

1833.

for the repeal of the law of April 1830, and for the separation of Texas from Coahuila. [1]In consequence, however, of the non-attendance of a number of the delegates, a second convention for similar purposes was appointed to be held in April of the following year; at which convention a petition for the separation of the two provinces was framed, and the plan of a state constitution adopted.

2. *The petition for the separation of Coahuila and Texas.*

26. [2]The petition represented that Coahuila and Texas were altogether dissimilar in soil, climate, and natural productions; that laws adapted to the one would be ruinous to the other; that the representatives of the former were so much more numerous than those of the latter, that all legislation for the benefit of Texas could emanate only from the generous courtesy of her sister province; that Texas was in continual danger from Indian depredations, without any efficient government to protect her;—that under the present system, owing to the tardy and precarious administration of justice, arising mostly from the remoteness of the judicial tribunals, crimes of the greatest atrocity might go unpunished; thus offering a license to iniquity, and exerting a dangerous influence on the morals of the community at large.

3. *A separate state government requested.*

27. [3]Finally, the petition represesented that Texas possessed the necessary elements for a state government, which she asked might be given her in accordance with the guarantee of the act of May 7th, 1824; and for her attachment to the federal constitution, and to the republic, the petitioners pledged their lives and honors. [4]General Stephen F. Austin was selected to present this petition to the Mexican congress, and, on the rise of the convention, he left Texas for that purpose.

4. *General Austin sent to Mexico.*

5. *The petition presented by him gives offence to the authorities.*

28. [5]On his arrival at the capital, soon after the accession of Santa Anna to the presidency, he presented the petition, and urged the policy and necessity of the measure in the strongest but most respectful manner; but, as he himself wrote back[a] to his friends, 'it was his misfortune to offend the high authorities of the nation, and his frank and honest exposition of the truth was construed into threats.'

a. Aug. 14.

6. *The law of 1830 repealed. Organization of a state government advised by Austin.*

29. [6]He however succeeded, through the influence of his friend Lorenzo de Zavala, then governor of the capital, in obtaining the repeal of the odious article of the law of April 1830; but after having waited until October, without any prospect of accomplishing the object of his mission,—the regular sessions of Congress having been broken up by the prevalence of the cholera—and a revolution raging in many parts of the nation, he wrote back[b] to the municipality of Bexar, recommending that the peo

b. Oct.

ple of Texas should immediately organize a state government without farther delay, as the only course that could save them from anarchy and total destruction. **1833.**

30. [1]The letter of Austin having been received at Bexar, the recommendations contained in it were discussed by the municipality, and being disapproved by the majority, the communication itself was forwarded to the federal authorities in the city of Mexico. [2]Highly incensed by the discovery, the vice-president, Gomez Farias, despatched orders for the arrest of Austin, then on his return to Texas. [3]He was taken at Saltillo, 600 miles from the capital, conveyed back to the city, and imprisoned more than a year, part of the time in the dungeons of the old inquisition, shut out from the light of day, and not allowed to speak to or correspond with any one. [4]After his release, he was detained six months on heavy bail, when, after an absence of nearly two years and a half, he returned to his home early in September, 1835; having witnessed, during his captivity, the usurpation of Santa Anna, and the overthrow of the federal constitution of 1824. [5]In the meantime, important changes were taking place in the condition and prospects of Texas.

1. The authorities of Mexico informed of this advice.

2. Orders for Austin's arrest.

1834.

3. His arrest and imprisonment.

4. His release, and final return to Texas.

5. Changes that had occurred in the meantime.

31. [6]The arbitrary proceedings of Santa Anna, and the collision between him and the general congress, had divided the legislature of Coahuila and Texas into two parties. One of these, assembling at Monclova,* denounced Santa Anna and his political acts, and sustained Viduari, the constitutional governor of the state. The other party, assembling at Saltillo,[a] declared for Santa Anna—issued a proclamation against the congress—annulled the decrees of the state legislature, from the time of its election, in 1833,—invoked the protection of the troops,—and elected a military governor; the majority of the votes being given by officers of the army.

6. The two parties in the legislature of Coahuila and Texas.

June, 1834

a. (See Note p. 579.)

32. [7]Two parties also sprung up among the Americans of Texas; one for proclaiming the province an independent state of the Mexican federation at every hazard: the other, still retaining confidence in the friendly professions of Santa Anna, and opposed to the revolutionary measures of the separatists, although anxious to obtain a state government by constitutional means. [8]By the pleadings of the peace or anti-separation party, the ferment produced by the inflammatory addresses of the separatists was gradually allayed, and an adjustment of differences was also effected between the Coahuilan factions at Saltillo and

7. The two parties among the Americans of Texas.

8. Effects produced by the pleadings of the anti-separatists.

* *Monclova*, the capital of the State of Coahuila, is about 75 miles N. W. from Monterey and about 100 miles from the Rio Grande. It contains a population of about 3,500 inhabitants.

ANALYSIS.

1835.
March 1.

1. *Assembling of the legislature in March, 1835.*

2. *Prodigal disposal of the waste lands of Texas.*

a. March 14.

3. *The character of these proceedings of the Coahuilan faction.*

4. *The general opposition to Santa Anna.*

b. April 22.

"*Exposition*" *sent to the Mexican congress.*

5. *The character of this measure. Santa Anna determines to put down the opposition.*

6. *Dissensions in Coahuila.*

7. *Unpopularity of the governor. His arrest, and final escape.*

Monclova. [1]On the first of March, 1835, the legislature of the state of Coahuila and Texas assembled at Monclova, and Augustin Viesca, who had been elected governor, entered upon the duties of his office.

33. [2]Among the grievances which, at this time, in addition to those before mentioned, were considered by the Texans as an equitable ground of separation from Coahuila, was the prodigal disposal of the valuable waste lands, which lay almost exclusively within the limits of Texas. Large tracts of the public domain had been granted away in 1834 by the state legislature; and in March, 1835, the same wasteful and iniquitous policy was followed up by the private sale[a] of 411 leagues of choice land, for the inadequate sum of 30,000 dollars.

34. [3]The Coahuilan members of the state legislature, anticipating the period of separation, and availing themselves of their majority, thus profusely squandered the resources of their constitutional associates, and deprived Texas of the best portion of her landed capital. These lands were purchased by speculators, and resold by them at a profit; but the transaction excited the deepest indignation among the Texans, who declared it a "violation of good faith," a "death blow" to their rising country, and "an act of corruption in all parties concerned."

35. [4]Against the arbitrary measures of Santa Anna, however, a majority of both parties united. While he was engaged in subjecting to his authority the state of Zacatecas, which had taken up arms against the unconstitutional acts of the new government, the legislature of Coahuila and Texas framed[b] an "exposition to be presented to the general congress, petitioning that no reforms be made in the federal constitution, save in the manner therein prescribed." [5]This measure, virtually a protest against the proceedings of Santa Anna, showed the hostile feelings with which the dictator was regarded by a majority of the members of the legislature, and induced him to despatch his brother-in-law, General Cos, at the head of an armed force, to put down the incipient rebellion.

36. [6]Again the centralist party was organized at Saltillo, powerfully seconded by military influences; while the governor endeavored to prepare for the approaching storm by calling out part of the militia, and applying for a levy of one hundred men in each of the three departments* of Texas. [7]But so unpopular had the governor and the legislature become, in consequence of their misappropriation of the public lands, that the appeal was disre-

* Viz:—that of *Nacogdoches*, of the *Brazos*, and of *Bexar*.

garded by the Texans, and the governor was compelled to seek safety in flight; and although once arrested[a] with all his party, and condemned to the dungeons of the castle of San Juan d'Ulloa, he escaped from his guards, and eventually reached Texas in safety. [1]The state authorities were deposed by the general congress of Mexico, and those refractory members of the legislature who remained in Coahuila, were arrested by military order, imprisoned, and ultimately banished.

1835.

a. June 4.

1. *Overthrow of the state government.*

37. [2]The excitement and confusion produced in Texas by these proceedings, together with the alarming encroachments of the military, were increased by disturbances arising out of opposition to the oppressive amount of custom-house duties, and the vexatious mode of collecting them. [3]In the autumn of 1834 a revenue officer and guard had been stationed at Anahuac. These were assaulted by a number of disaffected persons, disarmed, and obliged to withdraw for a time to San Felipe. In the summer of the following year the malcontents again assailed the collector at Anahuac, and having accomplished their object, withdrew before the authorities could take measures to repel or arrest them.

2. *Excitement in Texas—by what increased.*

3. *Disturbances at Anahuac.*

38. [4]The actors in these high-handed measures were principally a few disappointed land speculators, and ambitious adventurers, who clamored for an open and immediate rupture with the general government; yet a great majority of the colonists condemned the aggressions in the strongest language; and the inhabitants of the Brazos hospitably entertained the ejected officer and his men, and when they could not prevail upon them to return to their post, assisted them to proceed to Bexar.

4. *The actors in these disturbances. How regarded by the colonists generally.*

39. [5]An exaggerated account of the proceedings at Anahuac having reached General Cos, he despatched an officer and an armed schooner to Galveston, to inquire into the affair; but the captain, altogether unfit for his mission, attacked and captured a vessel engaged in the Texan trade, and committed other lawless acts, under the pretext of protecting the revenue. [6]This schooner was soon after captured by an armed merchant vessel from New Orleans, whither it was sent with its commander, on a charge of piratically interrupting the trade of Mexico and the United states. The insolent assumption of authority on the one hand, and the insulting seizure of a Mexican vessel on the other, greatly widened the breach already existing, and imparted greater boldness to those who desired an open rupture.

5. *A Mexican officer sent to inquire into the proceedings at Anahuac.*

6. *The result.*

40. [7]When intelligence of the "Plan of Toluca"[b] reached Texas, together with the favor it received from

b. (See p 606.)

7. *Relations of Texas wit Mexico, as affected by the "Plan of Toluca."*

ANALYSIS.

the usurping authorities of Mexico, it became evident to the people of Texas that the federal system of 1824 was to be dissolved by military force; that the vested rights of Texas under the constitution were to be disregarded and violated; and that the liberties of the people were to have no better guarantee than the capricious will of their most bitter enemies. [1]Hitherto, the great majority of the Texans had opposed violent measures; they had repeatedly declared themselves ready to discharge their duties as faithful citizens of Mexico,—attached by inclination and interest to the federal compact; and they consoled themselves under the many evils which they suffered, with the hope that they would ere long obtain the benefits of good local government, by the acknowledgment of Texas as an independent member of the Mexican Union; nor was it until the course of events demonstrated the fallacy of this hope, that they yielded to despondency, or dreamed of resistance.

1. The views and declarations of the Texans previous to this period.

Sept., 1835.

2. Determination of the Texans to adhere to the constitution of 1824.

3. Preparations of Mexico for the subjugation of Texas.

41. [2]Immediately on the return of Stephen Austin to Texas, after his imprisonment and detention in Mexico, in accordance with his advice committees of safety and vigilance were appointed throughout the country; and the people resolved to insist on their rights under the federal constitution of 1824. [3]In the meantime, intelligence of the threatened invasion of Texas by the forces of Santa Anna was receiving daily confirmation; troops were ordered to Texas both by land and by water; magazines or arms and ammunition were collecting on the western frontier; and the old barracks, at Matamoras, Goliad, and Bexar, were undergoing repairs to receive larger forces.

4. The state governor deposed.

Military orders.

42. [4]The constitutional governor of the state of Coahuila and Texas was deposed by the military, and a new one appointed by Santa Anna; the commandant at Bexar was ordered to march into Texas, and take Zavala and other proscribed Mexicans, be the consequences what they might; and an order was issued by General Cos, requiring the citizens of Brazoria, Columbia,* Velasco, and other places, to surrender their arms; thus providing for their complete prostration to military sway.

Sept. 19.

5. Circular of the Texan Central Committee of Safety.

43. [5]Satisfied that the moment for decisive action had arrived, the central committee of safety issued a circular, dated Sept. 19, and signed by their chairman, Stephen Austin, recommending the organization of the militia, the formation of volunteer companies, and an immediate appeal to arms to repel invasion, as the only alternative left

* *Brazoria* and *Columbia* are towns on the west side of the Brazos, a short distance above its mouth. (See Map, p. 620.)

them to defend their rights, themselves, and their country. **1835.**

[1]The arrival of General Cos at Copano,* about the same time, and his march to Bexar, verified the anticipations of the Texans. [2]His soldiers boasted that they would visit the colonists and help themselves to their property; and Cos himself openly declared his intention to overrun Texas, and establish custom-houses, and detachments of his army, where he thought proper.

1. March of General Cos upon Texas.

2. The boasts of his soldiers.

44. [3]The first hostile movement of the Mexican troops was directed against the town of Gonzalez,† on the east bank of the Guadalupe.‡ Colonel Ugartechea, the commandant at Bexar, in conformity with his instructions to disarm the colonists, having demanded of the municipality a piece of cannon in their possession, which they refused to surrender, sent a detachment of two hundred Mexican cavalry to enforce the requisition. [4]This force arrived on the west bank of the Guadalupe on the 28th of September, and attempted the passage of the river, but was repulsed by eighteen men under Captain Albert Martin, the whole of the available force then at Gonzalez. [5]The Mexicans then encamped on a mound where they remained until the first of October, when they removed and took a strong position seven miles above the town.

3. Detachment of Mexican troops sent against Gonzalez.

4. Opposed by the Texans. Sept. 28.

5. Positions taken by the Mexican troops

45. [6]The Texan force at Gonzalez, having been increased to 168 men by volunteers from Matagorda,§ Galveston, and other places, and suspecting that the object of the Mexicans was to await a reenforcement from Bexar, determined on an immediate attack. [7]On the evening of the first the Texans crossed the river, taking with them the cannon demanded by Ugartechea, and commenced their march towards the Mexican camp. [8]About four o'clock on the following morning they were fired upon by the enemy's pickets, and some skirmishing ensued, when the Mexican commander demanded a conference, which was granted. Having inquired the reason of the attack by the colonists, he was referred to his orders, which commanded him to take by force the cannon in possession of the citizens of Gonzalez.

6. Determination to attack the Mexicans.

Oct. 1.

7. March towards the Mexican camp.

Oct 2.

8. A conference.

---

* *Copano* is at the northern extremity of Copano Bay, which may be considered a western branch of Aransas Bay. (See Map, next page.)

† *Gonzalez* is a town on the Guadalupe river above Victoria.

‡ The *Guadalupe River* enters the Bay of Espiritu Santo from the northwest. (See Map, next page.) It is generally about 150 yards wide, and from five to six feet deep, with remarkably pure waters and very steep banks; but owing to its winding course and the shallowness of Espiritu Santo Bay, it is of little utility as a medium of communication.

§ The town of *Matagorda* is on the north side of Matagorda Bay, and on the east side of the mouth of the Colorado River. (See Map.) *Matagorda Bay*, which is about 60 miles in length, and from six to ten in width, is separated from the Gulf of Mexico by a peninsula varying in breadth from one to two miles. The Bay has from eight to twenty feet depth of water, with a soft muddy bottom, and vessels once within the Bay are as secure as if they were in a dock. *Paso Cavallo*, the entrance into the Bay, has from eight to nine feet depth

ANALYSIS.

1. *Representations made by the Texans.*

46. [1]He was told that this cannon had been presented to them by the authorities under the Federal compact for the defence of the constitution, for which purpose they were then using it; and that they were determined to fight to the last for the constitutional rights of Texas against the usurpations of Santa Anna. [2]The conference terminated without any adjustment, and the action was renewed. The Gonzalez six-pounder was brought to bear upon the Mexicans; the Texans, at the same time, advancing rapidly, until within about two hundred yards of the enemy, when the latter retreated precipitately on the road to Bexar, having sustained a considerable loss in killed and wounded. The colonists, of whom not a man was injured, remained masters of the field, and having collected the spoils of victory returned to Gonzalez.

2. *Renewal of the action, and dispersion of the Mexican force.*

3. *Capture of Goliad.*

Oct. 8.

47. [3]Inspirited by this success, the colonists resolved to attack the Mexicans in their strong holds of Goliad and Bexar; and on the 8th of October the former of these posts was attacked at midnight, and captured by a detachment of fifty men under Captain Collinsworth; and with it were taken stores to the amount of $10,000, with two brass cannon and 300 stand of arms. The garrison, which was commanded by Colonel Sandoval, surrendered after a slight resistance.

---

of water. The pass east of Pelican Island is rapidly closing, and other important changes are taking place by the combined action of the wind and the waves. Southwest of the main pass lies Matagorda Island. Cavallo Island intervenes between the bays of Matagorda and Espiritu Santo, which are connected by two narrow passes of shoal water. Matagorda Bay is surrounded by a fertile prairie country, interspersed with groves of live oak, cedar ash, &c

1835.

48. [1]In this enterprise the colonists were unexpectedly joined by Colonel Milam, who had been taken prisoner with the governor of the state of Coahuila and Texas, at the time of the dispersion of the state authorities in the June previous. After having made his escape, he had wandered alone nearly 600 miles through the wilderness, and, having arrived in the vicinity of Goliad, had thrown himself, faint from the want of food, and almost exhausted, among the tall grass of the prairies, when the approach of armed men arrested his attention. Presuming them to be his Mexican pursuers, he determined to defend himself to the last; but, to his astonishment and joy, he discovered the advancing force to be his fellow colonists, whom he joined in their successful assault on Goliad.

1. Interesting account of Colonel Milam.

49. [2]On the 20th of October, about 300 Texan troops, commanded by Stephen Austin, reached the Salado Creek, about five miles from Bexar, where they took up a secure position to await the arrival of reenforcements. [3]On the 27th of the same month, Colonel James Bowie and Captain Fannin, with a detachment of ninety-two men, proceeded to examine the country below Bexar, for the purpose of selecting a favorable situation for the encampment of the main army. [4]Having obtained a position a mile and a half below, early on the morning of the 28th they were attacked by about 400 Mexican troops, which, after a short engagement, were repulsed with the loss of nearly one hundred men in killed and wounded, while the Texans had but one man killed and none wounded. One cannon and a number of muskets were abandoned to the victors.

Oct. 20.

2. March of Texan troops towards Bexar.

Oct. 27.

3. Detachment under Bowie and Fannin.

Oct. 28.

4. Engagement with a superior Mexican force.

50. [5]While the forces of the hostile armies at Bexar continued their positions, each apparently fearing to commit its fate to the hazard of a general engagement, the Texan colonists were actively engaged in preparations to sustain the position which they had taken, of unyielding opposition to the existing government of Mexico. [6]On the 3d of November a general convention of delegates assembled at San Felipe, and, on the 7th, adopted a Declaration of Rights, setting forth the reasons which had impelled Texas to take up arms, and the objects for which she contended.

5. The Texan colonists at this period.

Nov. 3.

6. Convention at San Felipe, and a declaration of rights adopted.

Nov. 7

51. [7]After setting forth, as causes of the present hostile position of Texas the overthrow of the Federal institutions of Mexico, and the dissolution of the social compact which had existed between Texas and the other members of the confederacy, the Declaration asserted that the people "had taken up arms in defence of their rights and liberties, which were threatened by the encroachments of military despots, and in defence of the republican principles of the

7. The causes assigned for taking up arms against Mexico.

ANALYSIS.

1. The compact of union with Mexico declared to be broken, yet Texas still pledges her adherence to the constitution of 1824.

Federal Constitution of Mexico." [1]Moreover, the compact of union, entered into by Texas and Coahuila with Mexico, was declared to have been broken by the latter, and to be no longer binding on Texas; yet the people pledged themselves to continue faithful to the Mexican government so long as that nation should adhere to the constitution and laws under whose guarantees Texas had been settled, and had become a member of the confederacy.

2. A provisional government for Texas adopted.

52. [2]The convention also proceeded to the formation and adoption of a plan for a provisional government of Texas,—chose Henry Smith governor, with ample executive powers, and Samuel Houston commander-in-chief of the army. [3]General Austin, then with the army, having been appointed a commissioner to the United States, arrived at San Felípe on the 29th of November, to enter upon the duties of his appointment. [4]Edward Burleson, elected to the chief command by the volunteers composing the army, was left to conduct the siege of Bexar.

3. Austin elected commissioner to the United States.

Nov. 29.

4. Burleson.

5. Situation of the besieging force at Bexar.

53. [5]The siege of this place had commenced at the close of the finest month of the Texan year; and while the besiegers were animated by occasional successes, and the hope of speedily terminating the campaign by the reduction of the strongest post in the country, they sustained all their hardships and privations without a murmur. But now, seeing no immediate prospect of accomplishing their enterprise, suffering from insufficient food—unprovided with winter clothing to protect them against the drenching rains and winds of December—their terms of volunteer service having expired—and their families anxious for their return—many of them left the army, and but few arrived; and it was necessary to devise some expedient for keeping a respectable force together.

6. A bounty offered, for retaining the volunteers.

7. An appeal to their patriotism more successful.

54. [6]The provisional government promised a bounty of twenty dollars to each man who would remain with the army until the close of the siege; but this produced but little effect. [7]At a formal parade, an appeal was made to the patriotism of the volunteers; and such as were willing to testify their devotion to the cause by serving thirty days longer, or until Bexar should be taken, were requested to signify their disposition by advancing in front of the line. The expected demonstration was nearly universal; but the men, wearied with idly gazing at the walls of the beleagured town, importuned the general to order an immediate assault. [8]The perils of the undertaking, however, were such as to dissuade a majority of the officers from so rash an enterprise; and on the evening of the 4th of December, the order was actually given to break up the camp and retire into winter quarters.

8. The officers dissuaded from an assault by the dangers of the undertaking.

Dec. 4.

1835.

55. [1]Nor were the fears of the officers for the result of an assault groundless, considering the strength of Bexar, and the numbers of the garrison which defended it, amounting to a thousand regular troops; while the whole Texan force numbered only five hundred men; and these, with very few exceptions, strangers to discipline. [2]Almost every house in San Antonio de Bexar was in itself a little fort, being built of stone, with walls about three feet and a half in thickness. The approaches to the public square, where the bulk of the garrison was posted, had been strongly fortified with breastworks, trenches and palisades, protected by artillery. Cannon were also planted on the roof of the old church in the square, which commanded the town and its environs; and the walled inclosure called the Alámo, on the north-east side of the river, and connecting with the town by two bridges, was strongly defended by artillery. The strength of the place, with a garrison of a thousand efficient troops, was sufficient to protect it against an assault from ten times the number composing the little volunteer army of the Texans.

1. Disparity of the opposing forces.

2. The great strength of Bexar—and its peculiar advantages for defence.

56. [3]In this state of affairs, a few officers, who had been in favor of an assault, held a meeting, and resolved to beat up for volunteers to attack San Antonio. They succeeded in mustering a party of about three hundred men, who chose the war-worn Milam for their leader. [4]The plan he adopted was a judicious combination of the veteran's skill and the volunteer's daring, and showed his thorough knowledge of the materials with which he had to work. Directing Colonel Neil to divert the attention of the Mexicans by making a feint upon the Alámo, Milan prepared, at the same time, to effect a lodgment in the town.

3. An assault determined upon by a volunteer party of 300 men.

4. Milam's plan for the assault

57. [5]At three o'clock in the morning of the 5th of December, Neil commenced a fire upon the Alamo; while Milam, having provided his followers with crowbars and other forcing implements, made an entrance into the suburbs, and took possession of two houses, amidst a heavy discharge of grape-shot and musketry. [6]Bravely maintaining their position, during four days the Texans continued to advance from one point to another, breaking a passage through the stone walls of the houses, and opening a ditch and throwing up a breast-work where they were otherwise unprotected, whilst every street was raked by the enemy's artillery.

Dec. 5.

5. The attacks of the two assaulting divisions.

6. Manner in which the operations against the town were carried on.

58. [7]On the third day of the assault the gallant Milam received a rifle shot in the head, which caused his instant death; but otherwise the loss of the colonists was trifling,

Dec. 7.

7. Death of Milam. Losses of the enemy.

ANALYSIS

while that of the enemy was severe, as the rifle brought them down as often as they showed their faces at a loophole. [1]On the fourth day the Mexicans were reenforced by Colonel Ugartechea with 300 men; but during the following night the Texans penetrated to a building commanding the square, which exposed the bulk of the garrison to their deadly fire. [2]But before the occupants of the house had the benefit of daylight for rifle practice, the black and red flag, which had been waving from the Alamo during the contest, in token of no quarter, was withdrawn, and a flag of truce was sent to the Texans with an intimation that the enemy desired to capitulate.

Dec. 8.
1 *Mexican reenforcements. Progress of the Texans.*

2 *Capitulation proposed.*
Dec. 9.

Dec. 11.
3. *Terms of the capitulation.*

59. [3]On the 11th of December, terms of capitulation were agreed upon and ratified. General Cos and his officers were allowed to retire to Mexico, under their parole of honor that they would not in any way oppose the reestablishment of the Federal constitution of 1824; and the troops were allowed to follow their general, remain, or go to any point they might think proper. [4]A large quantity of military stores, in the town and the fort, was delivered to General Burleson, including nineteen pieces of ordnance, and two swivel guns, several hundred stands of arms, with bayonets, lances, and an abundance of ammunition. [5]On the 15th, General Cos, with his discomfited followers, commenced his march for the interior; and in a few days not a Mexican soldier was to be seen from the Sabine to the Rio Grande.

4. *Property captured.*

Dec. 15.
5. *Withdrawal of the Mexican troops.*

60. [6]Although the fall of Bexar, for a time put an end to the war, yet it was foreseen that another struggle awaited the Texans, more violent than any in which they had hitherto been engaged; and that the whole available force of Mexico would be brought into the field, if necessary, to wipe off the disgrace arising from the unlooked for defeat of one of her ablest generals. Nor was it long before these anticipations were realized. [7]On the 1st of February, less than two months from the date of the capitulation of General Cos, Santa Anna set out from Saltillo for the Rio Grande, where an army of 8000 men, composed of the best troops of Mexico, was assembling for the avowed purpose of exterminating the rebels, and driving the Americans out of Texas.

6. *Anticipations of another and more violent struggle with Mexico.*

1836.
Feb. 1.
7. *Preparations of Santa Anna for effectually recovering Texas.*

61. [8]An unusually large train of artillery followed in the rear of the army, together with an immense mass of baggage, with several thousand mules and horses for its transport; and, indeed, all the preparations were upon a scale of grandeur that contrasted strangely with the contemptuous terms in which the "handful of rebels" was spoken of, whose destruction the expedition was designed

8. *The Mexican artillery, baggage, means of transport, &c.*

1836.

to accomplish. [1]Mexican emissaries were despatched to the north-eastern frontiers of Texas to obtain the co-operation of the Indians on both sides of the line, and remonstrances against the interference of the American people in a "question purely domestic," had been addressed,[a] by the Mexican minister of foreign affairs, to the government of the United States.

1. Attempts to stimulate the Indians against the Texans, and remonstrances against the interference of the Americans.

a (By circular, dated Dec. 30, 1835.)

62. [2]The Mexican government had also declared that armed foreigners, landing on the coast of the Republic, or invading its territory by land, would be deemed pirates, and dealt with as such; and that a like punishment would be awarded to all foreigners who should introduce, either by sea or land, arms or ammunition of any kind for the use of the rebels. [3]In consequence of the representations of the Mexican government on the one side, and the friends of Texas on the other, the Executive of the United States directed Major General Gaines to take command of the troops on the western frontier of Louisiana, for the purpose of preserving a strict neutrality towards the contending parties, and for the arrest of all individuals who might be engaged, under the orders of Santa Anna, in exciting the Indians to war.

2. Penalties threatened against foreigners aiding the Texans.

3. American troops sent to preserve neutrality on the frontiers of the American territory.

63. [4]In the meantime, unfortunate divisions existed in the councils of Texas; and, although not of a serious nature, they were in a measure detrimental to the public interests, where entire unanimity was so requisite. [5]Austin and other influential citizens had gone to the United States as commissioners to obtain the means for carrying on the war. [6]General Houston had been withdrawn from the army to treat with the Indians on the frontier; and a difficulty had arisen between Governor Smith and the council, which resulted in the removal of the former from office.

4. Unfortunate divisions in the councils of Texas.

5. Austin

6. General Houston, Governor Smith, &c.

64. [7]The reduction of Matamoras, a strong Mexican town west of the Rio Grande, had been proposed without due consideration of the difficulties to be surmounted; but the project was finally abandoned in consequence of disagreement among the parties who had undertaken to carry it through. [8]Two-thirds of the disposable force at Bexar, however, had been withdrawn for this and other purposes, notwithstanding the remonstrances of a part of the garrison, and the manifest impropriety of leaving this strong post an easy prey to the enemy in case of attack.

7. Proposed attack on Matamoras.

8. Exposed situation of Bexar

65. [9]Such was the unhappy state of the country, when, on the 7th of February, information reached Colonel Fannin, the commandant at Goliad, that the enemy were advancing in several divisions towards the Rio Grande, and that their troops already collected at Matamoras amounted

Feb. 7.

9. Advance of the enemy towards the Rio Grande.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Fannin's calls upon the provisional government for additional forces to oppose the enemy.*

Feb. 16.

to a thousand men. [1]He immediately wrote to the Provisional Government, complaining of the apathy of the colonists who remained at home, imploring that the militia might be ordered out in mass, and urging the absolute necessity of providing clothing, shoes, &c., for the troops in service, and the immediate supply of ammunition. On the 16th he wrote to the government again, informing it of the routes of the hostile forces, and urgently imploring that twelve or fifteen hundred men might be immediately sent to Bexar, and from five to eight hundred to Goliad, and that an army of reserve might be formed on the Colorado.

2. *Dilatory movements of the colonists, and arrival of Santa Anna at Bexar.*

a. Feb. 23.

Route of Urrea.

66. [2]But the movements of the colonists were too dilatory to meet the approaching crisis; and scarcely had they discerned the gathering of the storm that was to spread havoc and desolation over their fields and dwellings, before Santa Anna, with the van of his forces, had halted[a] on the heights of the Alesan, near San Antonio de Bexar, where the whole invading army was ordered to concentrate, with the exception of a division under General Urrea, which had marched from Matamoras, for the Irish settlement of San Patricio* on the river Nueces.

3. *The Texan force at the Alamo.*

b. Feb. 23.

4. *Letters of Travis calling for aid, and describing his situation.*

67. [3]On the appearance of the Mexicans at Bexar, the Texan force, numbering only 150 men, under the command of William Barret Travis, retired to the Alamo, where were a few pieces of artillery, and among them one eighteen-pounder. [4]Travis immediately sent[b] an express to San Felipe; soliciting men, ammunition, and provisions; and on the following day despatched a second letter, informing the colonists that he had sustained a bombardment and cannonade during twenty-four hours without losing a man; that the enemy had demanded an unconditional surrender, threatening, if the demand were not complied with, to put the garrison to the sword if the fort should be taken; that he had answered the summons with a cannon-shot; and that the flag of Texas still waved proudly from the walls.

5. *His appeals to his countrymen, and his heroic determination never to surrender nor retreat.*

68. [5]Calling on the colonists in the name of liberty, of patriotism, and of everything held dear to the American character, to come to his aid with all despatch, he declared, "*I shall never surrender nor retreat.* The enemy are receiving reenforcements daily, and will, no doubt, increase to four or five thousand men in a few days. Though this call may be neglected, I am determined to sustain myself as long as possible, and die like a soldier

---

* *San Patricio*, which was a thriving Irish settlement before the war, is on the northern bank of the Nueces, 25 or 30 miles above its entrance into Corpus Christi Bay. (See Map, p. 644.)

who never forgets what is due to his own honor and that of his country."

1836.

69. [1]On the 3d of March Travis succeeded in conveying his last letter through the enemy's lines, directed to the convention then sitting at Washington.* [2]He stated that the Mexicans had encircled the Alamo with intrenched encampments on all sides; that since the commencement of the siege they had kept up a heavy bombardment and cannonade; that at least two hundred shells had fallen within the works; but that he had thus far been so fortunate as not to lose a man from any cause, although many of the enemy had been killed.

March 3.
1. *The last letter of Travis.*
2. *Description of his situation.*

70. [3]Earnestly urging that the convention would hasten on reenforcements as soon as possible, he declared that unless they arrived soon, he should have to fight the enemy on their own terms. "I will, however," said he, "do the best I can under the circumstances; and I feel confident that the determined spirit and desperate courage heretofore evinced by my men will not fail them in the last struggle; and although they may be sacrificed to the vengeance of a Gothic enemy, the victory will cost that enemy so dear that it will be worse than a defeat."

3. *The conclusion of his letter.*

71. [4]Nor did subsequent events show, when the anticipated hour of trial came, that the gallant Travis had miscalculated the spirit of the men under his command. With the exception of thirty-two volunteers from Gonzalez, who made their way into the fort on the morning of the first of March, no succor arrived to the garrison, whose physical energies were worn down by their unceasing duties and constant watching, but whose resolution still remained unsubdued. [5]In the mean time the reenforcements of the enemy had increased their numbers to more than 4000 men, with all the means and appliances of war; and this force had been baffled, during a siege of two weeks, in repeated attempts to reduce a poorly fortified post defended by less than two hundred men. [6]These things were humiliating in the extreme to the Mexican generals; and soon after midnight, on the 6th of March, their entire army, commanded by Santa Anna in person, surrounded the fort for the purpose of taking it by storm, cost what it might.

4. *The sufferings, and unsubdued spirit of the garrison.*
5. *The force of the enemy, and their baffled efforts.*
March 6.
6. *A general assault by the whole Mexican army.*

72. [7]The cavalry formed a circle around the infantry for the double object of urging them on, and preventing the escape of the Texans; and amidst the discharge of musketry and cannon, the enemy advanced towards the

7. *Disposition of the forces. They are twice repulsed, but are finally successful.*

* *Washington*, a town on the west bank of the Brazos, about 100 miles north from the head of Galveston Bay.

ANALYSIS. Alamo. Twice repulsed in their attempts to scale the walls, they were again impelled to the assault by the exertions of their officers; and borne onward by the pressure from the rear, they mounted the walls, and, in the expressive language of an eye-witness, "tumbled over like sheep."

1. The last struggle of the garrison.

73. [1]Then commenced the last struggle of the garrison. Travis received a shot as he stood on the walls cheering on his men; and, as he fell, a Mexican officer rushed forward to despatch him. Summoning up his powers for a final effort, Travis met his assailant with a thrust of his sword, and both expired together. The brave defenders of the fort, overborne by multitudes, and unable in the throng to load their fire-arms, continued the combat with the butt-ends of their rifles, until only seven were left, and these were refused quarter. Of all the persons in the place, only two were spared—a Mrs. Dickerson, and a negro servant of the commandant.

2. Evans, Bowie, and Crockett.

74. [2]Major Evans, of the artillery, was shot while in the act of firing the magazine by order of Travis. Colonel James Bowie, who had been confined several days by sickness, was butchered in his bed, and his remains savagely mutilated. Among the slain, surrounded by a heap of the enemy, who had fallen under his powerful arm, was the eccentric David Crockett, of Tennessee. [3]The obstinate resistance of the garrison, and the heavy price which they exacted for the surrender of their lives, had exasperated the Mexicans to a pitch of rancorous fury, in which all considerations of decency and humanity were forgotten. [4]The bodies of the dead were stripped, thrown into a heap and burned, after being subjected to brutal indignities.* [5]No authenticated statement of the loss of the Mexicans has been obtained, although it has been variously estimated at from a thousand to fifteen hundred men.

3. Exasperation of the Mexicans.

4. The bodies of the slain.

5. The loss of the Mexicans.

---

* "In the perpetration of these indignities Santa Anna has been charged with being a lead ing instrument."—*Kennedy's Texas.*

[4] Santa Anna, when the body of Major Evans was pointed out to him, drew his dirk and stabbed it twice in the breast."—*Newell's Revolution in Texas.*

"General Cos drew his sword and mangled the face and limbs of Travis with the malignant feelings of a savage."—*Mrs. Holly's Texas.*

CHAPTER III.

EVENTS, FROM THE DECLARATION OF THE INDEPENDENCE OF TEXAS, TO THE ANNEXATION OF TEXAS TO THE AMERICAN UNION.

Subject of Chapter III.

[1836 TO 1845.]

1. Convention assembled at Washington, on the Brazos.

1. [1]While the events narrated at the close of the preceding chapter were occurring at Bexar, a general convention of delegates had assembled at Washington, on the Brazos, in obedience to a call of the Provisional government, for the purpose of considering the important question, whether Texas should continue to struggle for the reestablishment of the Mexican Federal Constitution of 1824, or make a declaration of independence, and form a republican government. [2]In the elections for delegates, those in favor of a total and final separation from Mexico had been chosen, and on the 2d of March the convention agreed unanimously to a Declaration of Independence, in which the provocations that led to it were recited, and the necessity and justice of the measure ably vindicated.

2. The elections for delegates to the convention.

March 2.

Declaration of Independence.

3. The laws and pledges under which Texas had been colonized.

2. [3]"The Mexican government," the Declaration asserted, "by its colonization laws, invited and induced the Anglo-American population of Texas to colonize its wilderness, under the pledged faith of a written constitution, that they should continue to enjoy that constitutional liberty and republican government to which they had been habituated in the land of their birth, the United States of America.

4. Disappointed expectations of the colonists.

3. [4]"In this expectation they have been cruelly disappointed, inasmuch as the Mexican nation had acquiesced in the late changes made in the government by General Antonio Lopez de Santa Anna, who, having overturned the constitution of his country, now offers to us the cruel alternatives, either to abandon our homes, acquired by so many privations, or submit to the most intolerable of all tyranny, the combined despotism of the sword and the priesthood."

5. Recapitulation of grievances.

4. [5]After a recapitulation of numerous grievances endured from Mexican mal-administration and faithlessness, the Declaration thus continues: "These and other grievances were patiently borne by the people of Texas until they reached that point at which forbearance ceases to be a virtue. [6]We then took up arms in defence of the national constitution. We appealed to our Mexican brethren for assistance; our appeal has been made in vain.

6. The war commenced in defence of the national constitution of Mexico.

ANALYSIS.

Though months have elapsed, no sympathetic response has yet been heard from the interior. We are consequently forced to the melancholy conclusion that the Mexican people have acquiesced in the destruction of their liberty, and the substitution, therefore, of a military government; that they are unfit to be free, and incapable of self-government. The necessity of self-preservation now decrees our eternal political separation.

Conclusion of the declaration.

5. [1]"We, therefore, the delegates of Texas, with plenary powers, in solemn convention assembled, appealing to a candid world for the necessities of our condition, do hereby resolve and DECLARE, that our political connexion with the Mexican nation has forever ended; and that the people of Texas do now constitute a FREE, SOVEREIGN, and INDEPENDENT REPUBLIC, and are fully invested with all the rights and attributes which properly belong to independent states; and conscious of the rectitude of our intentions, we fearlessly and confidently commit the issue to the decision of the Supreme Arbiter of the destinies of nations."

March 17.

2. Constitution adopted, and government organized.

6. [2]Fifty delegates subscribed the Declaration, and on the 17th of the same month, a Constitution for the Republic of Texas was adopted, and executive officers were appointed to perform the duties of the government until the first election under the constitution. David G. Burnett, of New Jersey, the son of an officer of the American Revolution, was appointed Provisional President. [3]In his inaugural address he reminded the delegates, in impressive terms, of the duties which had devolved upon them in the hazardous but glorious enterprise in which they were engaged; referred to that inheritance of gallantry which they had derived from the illustrious conquerors of 1776; and exhorted all to unite, like a band of brothers, with a single eye to one common object, *the redemption of Texas.*

3. Inaugural address of the president.

4. Moral and political rectitude enjoined upon the people.

7. [4]Reminding them that courage is only one among many virtues, and would not alone avail them in the solemn crisis of their affairs, he thus continued: "We are about, as we trust, to establish a name among the nations of the earth; and let us be watchful, above all things, that this name shall not inflict a mortification on the illustrious people from whom we have sprung, nor entail reproach on our descendants. We are acting for posterity; and while, with a devout reliance on the God of battles, we shall roll back the flood that threatens to deluge our borders, let us present to the world such testimonials of our moral and political rectitude as will compel the respect, if not constrain the sympathies, of other and older nations.

5. Allusion to the fall of the Alamo.

8. [5]"The day and the hour have arrived when every

freeman must be up and doing his duty. The Alamo has fallen; the gallant few who so long sustained it have yielded to the overwhelming power of numbers; and, if our intelligence be correct, they have perished in one indiscriminate slaughter; but they perished not in vain! The ferocious tyrant has purchased his triumph over one little band of heroes at a costly price; and a few more such victories would bring down speedy ruin upon himself. Let us, therefore, fellow citizens, take courage from this glorious disaster; and while the smoke from the funeral piles of our bleeding, burning brothers, ascends to Heaven, let us implore the aid of an incensed God, who abhors iniquity, who ruleth in righteousness, and will avenge the oppressed." **1836.**

9. [1]While Santa Anna was concentrating his forces at Bexar, General Urrea, at the head of another division of the army, was proceeding along the line of the coast, where he met with but feeble opposition from small volunteer parties, sent out to protect the retreat of the colonists. [2]At one time, however, a party of thirty Texans, under Colonel Johnson and Dr. Grant, captured a reconnoitering party of Mexicans, led by a person named Rodriguez, who was allowed the privilege of remaining a prisoner on parole, the lives of his men being spared. [3]A short time after, Johnson and Grant, with their followers, were severally surprised by the Mexicans; the captor of one of the parties being the same Rodriguez, who had rejoined his countrymen by violating his parole. Notwithstanding the generosity with which the Mexicans had been treated on a similar occasion, with their customary cruelty they caused their captives to be put to death,[a] with the exception of Johnson and another, who succeeded in making their escape.

1. Route of the enemy under General Urrea.

2. Capture of a party of Mexicans.

3. Texans captured and put to death.

a. March 2.

10. [4]Colonel Fannin, then at Goliad, hearing of the advance of the Mexican army towards the Mission of Refugio,* ordered a detachment of fourteen† men, under Captain King, to effect the removal of some families resident there to a place of safety. King, after a successful skirmish with some Mexican cavalry, lost his way in attempting to retreat, and being surrounded on an open prairie, his ammunition being wet, and no chance of escape left, he was obliged to surrender.[b] Six hours after, he and his men were shot by the command of Urrea.

4. Capture and murder of King and his party.

b. March 16.

* The *Mission of Refugio* is a settlement on the east side of the Refugio River, about 25 miles from Goliad. (See Map, p. 644.) There was a place of the same name on the Mexican side of the mouth of the Rio Grande.

† Note. "According to Newell twenty-eight; but General Urrea's Diary specifies fourteen as the number taken, and I have seen no account of the escape of any."—*Kennedy's Texas*, ii. 201

ANALYSIS.

A courier despatched by Fannin to hasten the return of the detachment shared the same fate.

1. Colonel Ward and his party.

11. [1]No tidings having arrived from King, Fannin despatched a second and larger detachment towards Refugio, under Colonel Ward, the second in command at Goliad. Ward had two engagements with the Mexicans, in the first of which he was victorious; in the second he was overpowered by numbers, and forced to surrender. [2]With his force now reduced to 275 effective men, Fannin was in danger of being overwhelmed by the division of Urrea, whose cavalry was seen within a few miles of Goliad on the 17th of March. Still hoping, however, that Ward would come in, Fannin lingered until the morning of the 18th, when he crossed the river, and commenced a retreat towards Victoria.*

2. Situation of Fannin. His retreat towards Victoria.

March 18.

3. Surrounded by the enemy.

a. (See Map, p. 644.)

4. The enemy repulsed.

5. Indian attack.

12. [3]About two o'clock in the afternoon of the same day, he was overtaken and surrounded on an open prairie[a] by the enemy's cavalry, which was soon after joined by a body of infantry, and some Campeachy Indians. [4]The Texans, forming themselves into a hollow square, facing outwards, successfully resisted and repelled all the charges of the enemy until dusk, when Urrea bethought himself of a more successful plan of attack. [5]The Indians were directed to throw themselves into the tall grass, and approach as near the Texans as possible. This they did, and crawling within thirty or forty paces, they commenced a destructive fire, which wounded fifty and killed four in the space of an hour; but as soon as the darkness rendered the flashes of their guns visible, they were rapidly picked off by the alertness of the Texans, and driven from the ground. [6]Urrea then withdrew his troops about a quarter of a mile on each side, where they rested on their arms during the night. [7]The Mexican loss, during the day, was estimated at five or six hundred men; while that of the Texans was only seven killed and about sixty wounded.

6. Withdrawal of the Mexicans.

7. Losses on each side.

8. Farther defence of the Texans impracticable.

9. A surrender agreed upon.

March 19.

13. [8]During the night the Texans threw up a breastwork of earth, and otherwise fortified themselves with their baggage and ammunition wagons as well as possible; but the morning's light discovered that their labor had been in vain. [9]Urrea had received a reenforcement of 500 fresh troops, with a supply of artillery; against which the slight breastwork of the Texans would have furnished no defence. A surrender, therefore, became necessary: a white flag was hoisted, and terms of capitulation were agreed upon and signed by the Mexican and Texan com-

* *Victoria* is on the east bank of the Guadalupe, nearly 25 miles N.E. from Goliad (See Map, p. 644.)

manders. [1]These terms provided that Fannin and his men should be marched back to Goliad, and treated as prisoners of war; that the volunteers from the United States should be sent to New Orleans at the expense of the Mexican government, and that private property should be respected and restored, and the side-arms of officers given up.

1836.

1. *Terms of the capitulation.*

14. [2]But notwithstanding the capitulation, the truth of which was afterwards denied by Santa Anna, the Texans, after being marched back to Goliad, were stripped of every article of defence, even to their pocket-knives, and served with an allowance of beef hardly sufficient to support life. After being detained here a week, their number, including those of Ward's detachment, amounting to about 400 men, *orders arrived from Santa Anna for their execution*; in accordance, as he afterwards declared, with a law of the supreme government.*

2. *The capitulation violated.*

15. [3]On the morning of the 27th of March, this cruel outrage was consummated; two or three medical men, and some privates employed as laborers, being all who were spared. The prisoners, under the escort of a strong Mexican guard, were taken out of their quarters in four divisions, under various pretexts, and after proceeding about three hundred yards, they were ordered to halt and throw off their blankets and knapsacks. Before they had time to obey the order, without suspecting its object, a fire of musketry was opened upon them, and most of those who escaped the bullets were cut down by the sabres of the

March 27.

3. *Fannin and his men put to death.*

* According to the account given by General Filisola, an Italian by birth, but then in the Mexican service, and next in authority to the commander-in-chief, Santa Anna gave orders to General Urrea, "that under his most strict responsibility, he should fulfil the orders of government, shooting all the prisoners; and as regards those lately made (Fannin and his men) that he should order the commandant of Goliad to execute them—the same instructions being given to Generals Gaona and Sesma with respect to all found with arms in their hands, *and to force those who had not taken up arms, to leave the country.*" This war was designed, therefore, to exterminate the Texans entirely.

After the defeat of the Mexican forces, General Urrea and the other subordinates in command, were anxious to exculpate themselves from the massacre of the prisoners, at the expense of Santa Anna. But General Filisola, who appears to have been a man of honorable feelings, says of Urrea's successes: "For every one of these skirmishes Urrea deserved a court martial, and condign punishment, for having *assassinated* in them a number of brave soldiers, as he might have obtained the same results without this sacrifice."

Santa Anna, when afterwards a prisoner, and reproached with his cruelty to the Texans who had fallen into his power, especially at the Alamo and Goliad, excused himself on the ground that he had acted in obedience to the orders of the Mexican government. To this it was justly replied, that *he* was that government, and that on *him* the responsibility of its orders rested. Santa Anna moreover denied that any terms of capitulation had been entered into with the unfortunate Fannin; and he supported his assertion by a summary of General Urrea's official report, which stated that Fannin surrendered at discretion. On the contrary it is positively maintained by the Texans, and supported by the evidence of three survivors of Fannin's force, that terms of capitulation were agreed upon and *signed* by the Mexican and Texan commanders; and there is no reason for supposing that Fannin and his men would have laid down their arms without an understanding that their lives were to be spared. The prisoners were cheered also by repeated promises of speedy liberation, evidently in accordance with the terms of surrender; and General Filisola, in alluding to Urrea's report of their capture, uses the word *capitulation*, indicating thereby his belief that stipulations had preceded the surrender. But even had Fannin surrendered unconditionally, it would have furnished no palliation for the foul crime with which Santa Anna, as head of the Mexican government, stands charged.

ANALYSIS.

cavalry. [1]A very few, who were uninjured by the first fire, leaped a fence of brushwood, concealed themselves in a thicket, and, swimming the San Antonio,* succeeded in rejoining their countrymen beyond the Colorado.

1. A few escape.

2. Refinement of cruelty.

16. [2]Such was the refinement of cruelty practised upon the prisoners by their unfeeling captors, that, when led unconsciously to execution, their minds were cheered, by specious promises of a speedy liberation, with the thoughts of home. [3]One of the prisoners who escaped relates, that, as the division to which he belonged was complying with the command of the officer to sit down with their backs to the guard, without suspecting its object, a young man named Fenner, on whose mind first flashed a conviction of the truth, suddenly started to his feet, exclaiming—"Boys, they are going to kill us—die with your faces to them like men."

3. Incident related by one of the survivors.

4. The last request of Fannin.

17. [4]Fannin, who had been placed apart from his men, was the only one of the prisoners who was apprised of his intended fate. He asked the favor of being shot in the breast, instead of the head, and that his body might be decently interred; but the last request of the gallant soldier was unheeded, and on the following day his body was discovered lying in the prairie, with the fatal wound in his head.

5. The character of this massacre.

18. [5]This massacre of Fannin and his brave companions in arms, an act of more than barbarian cruelty, stamps with infamy the government which authorized it, and the officers under whose immediate command it was executed.

6. Impolicy of the act.

[6]As a matter of policy, moreover, this systemized butchery of prisoners was an egregious blunder, by which every chance of the establishment of Mexican rule in Texas was utterly swept away. From the hour that the fate of the garrison of the Alámo, and of Fannin and his comrades, was known in the United States, a spirit was awakened among the hardy population of the west, which would never have slumbered while a Mexican soldier remained east of the Rio Grande.

7. The elated hopes of Santa Anna at this period.

19. [7]After the fall of the Alámo, and the capture of Johnson and Grant, Santa Anna was so much elated with his successes, that, under the impression that the enemy would make no farther resistance, he began to apportion his force to different quarters for taking possession of

* The *San Antonio River* flows into the Guadalupe a few miles above the entrance of the latter into the Bay of Espiritu Santo. (See Map, p. 644.) "Four springs, which rise in a small eminence a short distance from San Antonio de Bexar, (see Map, p. 624,) and unite about a mile above the town, form the river, which is 50 yards wide, and 10 or 12 feet deep,—ever pure, ever flowing, and preserving an equality of temperature throughout the year. The rapid waters of the San Antonio, running over a pebbly bed, are remarkably wholesome, and so clear that small fish may be seen distinctly at a depth of ten feet. The river is navigable for small steamboats to within ten miles of Goliad."—*Kennedy.*

1836.

Texas. [1]One division of his army was directed to cross the Colorado and take possession of San Felipe de Austin; another division was to march for Goliad; while a third was ordered to secure the post of Nacogdoches, near the American frontier.

1. The routes prescribed for his forces.

20. [2]The confident spirit which directed these movements was heightened when he heard of the abandonment of Goliad and the capture of Fannin; and believing that his presence in the country was no longer necessary, and that he ought to return to the capital of Mexico, he made preparations for resigning his command to General Filisola. He also announced, in a general order of the day, that the whole brigade of cavalry, and a large portion of the artillery, should be got in readiness to leave Texas, on the 1st of April, for San Luis Potosi.

2. Santa Anna's preparations for leaving Texas, in the belief that the country was already subdued.

21. [3]Remonstrances from some of his generals, however, and information that the Texans showed a disposition to defend the passage of the Colorado, induced him to suspend the order for a return of part of his army, and to relinquish his intention to depart for the Mexican capital. [4]His forces, in several divisions, were ordered to cross the Colorado in different places; and, on the 31st of March, Santa Anna and his staff left Bexar, and followed in the rear of the army.

3. Causes that induced him to relinquish his intentions of immediate return.

4. An advance ordered, and Santa Anna leaves Bexar.

March 31.

22. [5]In the meantime, General Houston, the commander-in-chief of the Texan forces, had remained on the left bank of the Colorado until the 26th of the month, at the head of about 1300 men impatient for action; when, apprehensive of being surrounded with the army that was then the main hope of Texas, he ordered a retreat to San Felipe on the Brazos, which he reached on the 27th. Having secured the best crossing-places of the river, he remained on its eastern bank until the 12th of April, at which time the advanced division of the enemy, led by Santa Anna himself, had reached the river lower down, in the vicinity of Columbia.

5. Movements of the Texan forces under the command of General Houston.

6. Movements of the opposing forces towards the west branch of Galveston Bay.

23. [6]On the 15th the enemy reached Harrisburg,* and on the 16th proceeded to New Washington† and vicinity, at

* *Harrisburg* is on the south side of Buffalo Bayou, a short distance east from Houston. (See Map.)

† *New Washington* is on the west side of the head of Galveston Bay (See Map.)

ANALYSIS.

the head of the west branch of Galveston Bay.* General Houston, in the meantime, diverging from his march eastward with the main body of his army, with the determination of giving battle to Santa Anna, proceeded rapidly towards Harrisburg, the neighborhood of which he reached on the 18th. [1]By the capture of a Mexican courier on the same evening, he fortunately obtained possession of despatches from Filisola, showing the enemy's position, plans, and movements.

April 18. 1. *Capture of a Mexican courier.*

24. [2]On the morning of the 19th, after leaving his baggage, the sick, and a sufficient camp guard in the rear, he crossed Buffalo Bayou† below Harrisburg, and descended the right bank of the stream; and by marching throughout the night, arrived on the morning of the 20th within half a mile of the junction of the Bayou with the San Jacinto River.‡ [3]A short time after halting, the army of Santa Anna, which had been encamped a few miles below, on the San Jacinto, was discovered to be approaching in battle array, and preparations were immediately made for its reception. [4]Some skirmishing ensued, when the enemy withdrew to the bank of the San Jacinto, about three-quarters of a mile from the Texan camp, and commenced fortifications. In this position the two armies remained during the following night.

April 19. 2. *Advance of Houston down Buffalo Bayou.*

April 20. 3. *Approach of Santa Anna.* 4. *Withdrawal of the enemy.*

25. [5]About nine o'clock on the morning of the 21st, the enemy were reenforced by 500 choice troops under the command of General Cos, increasing their effective force to nearly 1600 men; while the aggregate force of the Texas numbered but 783. [6]At half-past three o'clock on the same day, Houston ordered his officers to parade their respective commands, having previously taken measures for the destruction of the bridges on the only road communicating with the Brazos; thus cutting off all possibility of escape for the enemy, should they be defeated.

April 21. 5. *Numbers of the opposing forces.* 6. *The retreat of the enemy cut off.*

26. [7]The troops paraded with alacrity and spirit; the disparity in numbers seeming to increase their enthusiasm, and to heighten their anxiety for the conflict. [8]The order of battle being formed, the cavalry, sixty-one in number,

7. *Enthusiasm of the Texans.* 8. *Order of battle, and advance against the enemy.*

---

* *Galveston Bay* extends about 35 miles from north to south, and from 12 to 18 miles from east to west. The streams that enter it are numerous, the most important of which is Trinity River, from the north. The average depth of water in the bay is nine or ten feet. About 18 miles above Galveston Island the bay is crossed by Red Fish Bar, on which the water is only five or six feet deep. The principal entrance to the bay, between Galveston Island and Bolivar Point, is about half a mile in width. At low water the depth on the bar at the entrance is only ten feet. A southwestern arm of Galveston Bay extends along the coast, to within two or three miles of the Brazos River. There is also an eastern arm called East Bay, at the head of which enters a deep creek whose source is near that of a similar creek that enters Sabine Lake. (See Map, preceding page.)

† *Buffalo Bayou*, flowing from the west, enters the northwestern extremity of Galveston Bay. It is navigable at all seasons for steamboats drawing six feet of water, as far as Houston, about 35 miles from its mouth by the river's course. (See Map, preceding page.)

‡ The *San Jacinto River*, flowing from the north, enters the northwestern extremity of Galveston Bay. It is navigable only a short distance, for small steamboats. (See Map.)

commanded by Colonel Mirabeau B. Lamar, were despatched to the front of the enemy's left for the purpose of attracting their notice, when the main body advanced rapidly in line, the artillery, consisting of two six pounders, taking a station within two hundred yards of the enemy's breastwork. [1]With the exception of the cannon, which commenced a vigorous discharge of grape and canister, not a gun was fired by the Texans until they were within point blank shot of the enemy's lines, when the war-cry, *Remember the Alamo!* was raised. **1836.**

1. *The war-cry.*

27. [2]The thrilling recollections suddenly revived by that well known name, together with the knowledge that the cowardly assassins of Fannin and his comrades were before them, gave new excitement to the Texans, and, in the frenzy of revenge, they threw themselves in one desperate charge on the enemy's works, and after a conflict of fifteen minutes, gained entire possession of the encampment; taking one piece of cannon loaded, four stands of colors, and a large quantity of camp equipage, stores, and baggage.

2. *The desperate charge of the Texans, and rout of the enemy.*

28. [3]Such was the suddenness of the onset, and the fury of the assailants, that the Mexicans, panic struck with dismay, threw down their arms and fled in confusion; losing all thoughts of resistance, in the eagerness to escape from the tempest of bullets and blows that was showered upon them. The Texan cavalry, falling upon the fugitives, and cutting them down by hundreds, completed the work of destruction; and never was a rout more total, or a victory more complete. [4]The whole Mexican army was annihilated—scarcely a single soldier escaping. Of nearly 1600 men who commenced the action, 630 were killed, 208 were wounded, and 730 were made prisoners; while, of the Texan force, only eight were killed, and seventeen wounded.

3. *Farther account of the battle.*

4. *The comparative losses sustained by the two parties.*

29. [5]On the day following the battle, Santa Anna was captured on the banks of Buffalo Bayou, while wandering alone, unarmed, and disguised in common apparel. [6]His captors, ignorant of his name and rank, conveyed him, at his request, to General Houston, who had been wounded in the ankle, and who was found slumbering upon a blanket at the foot of a tree, with his saddle for a pillow; when Santa Anna approached, pressed his hand, and announced himself as president of the Mexican republic, and commander-in-chief of the army. [7]By desire of the Texan commander he seated himself on a medicine chest, but seemed greatly agitated. Some opium having been given him at his request, he swallowed it and appeared more composed. [8]He then said to Houston, "You were born

April 22.

5. *Santa Anna taken prisoner.*

6. *Brought before General Houston.*

7. *His extreme agitation.*

8. *His remark to Houston.*

ANALYSIS.

to no ordinary destiny; you have conquered the Napoleon of the West!"

1. *Santa Anna's anxiety about his fate, and his excuse for the slaughter at the Alamo, and for the massacre at Goliad.*

30. [1]He soon desired to know what disposition would be made of him; but Houston evaded the inquiry, telling him that no assurances could be given until he had ordered all the Mexican troops in Texas beyond the Rio Grande. After some conversation respecting the slaughter of the garrison at the Alámo, and the massacre at Goliad, for which Santa Anna excused himself on the ground that he had acted in obedience to the orders of the Mexican government, Houston gave him the use of his camp bed, and he retired for the night; harassed with anxiety for his fate, and dreading the vengeance of the Texan troops, the majority of whom demanded his execution as the murderer of Fannin and his comrades; and it was only by the exercise of extraordinary firmness on the part of General Houston and his officers, that his life was preserved.

2. *Armistice agreed upon with Santa Anna.*

31. [2]After due deliberation, the Texan general agreed upon an armistice with his prisoner; in accordance with which the several divisions of the Mexican army, then on the Brazos, were ordered by Santa Anna to retire beyond the Colorado; but even before these orders had reached Filisola, who succeeded to the chief command of the army, that officer had seen the necessity of concentrating the Mexican forces, and had actually commenced[a] a countermarch for the purpose of reorganizing. [3]When intelligence of the armistice reached[b] Filisola, he despatched to the Texan camp an officer[c] who understood the English language, with assurances that the conditions of the armistice would be strictly fulfilled.

a. April 27.

3. *Assurances given by Filisola.*

b. April 28.

c. (Gen. Woll.)

4. *Account of the retreat of the Mexican army.*

32. [4]Deluging rains, which converted the rich lands between the Brazos and the Colorado into a mass of mud, rendered the country almost impassable to the retiring invaders. "Had the enemy," observes General Filisola, then commander-in-chief, "met us under these circumstances, on the only road left us, our provisions exhausted, our ammunition wet, and not a musket capable of striking fire, no alternative would have remained but to die or surrender at discretion." The Texans watched the retreat, and had they not been governed by fidelity to their engagements, not a man of the army that was mustered for their extermination would have recrossed the Colorado.

5. *The provisional government at this period.*

6. *Changes of officers.*

33. [5]On the advance of the enemy, the provisional government of Texas had removed to the island of Galveston, where intelligence of the victory of San Jacinto reached it in the afternoon of the 26th of April. [6]General Houston, in consequence of his wound, had, in the mean time, re-

tired from active duty, and General Rusk was appointed to the command of the army; while the office of Secretary of War, previously held by General Rusk, was conferred upon Mirabeau Lamar. [1]From Galveston President Burnet proceeded to the camp of the army at San Jacinto, where he arrived on the 1st of May, and, on the 14th, concluded a convention with Santa Anna, by the terms of which hostilities were immediately to cease between the Mexican and Texan troops; the Mexican army was to retire beyond the Rio Grande; prisoners were to be exchanged, and Santa Anna was to be sent to Vera Cruz as soon as should be thought proper.

1836.

1. *President Burnet:—convention concluded between him and Santa Anna.*

May 1.

May 14.

34. [2]On the same day a secret treaty was signed by President Burnet and Santa Anna, stipulating that the latter should arrange for the favorable reception, by the Mexican cabinet, of a mission from Texas; that a treaty of amity and commerce should be established between the two republics; that the Texan territory should not extend beyond the Rio Grande; and that the immediate embarkation of Santa Anna for Vera Cruz should be provided for; "his prompt return being indispensable for the purpose of effecting his engagements."

2. *The terms of the secret treaty concluded with Santa Anna.*

35. [3]On the 1st of June, Santa Anna and suite embarked at Velasco for Vera Cruz; but some necessary preparations delayed the departure of the commissioners who were to attend him, and on the 3d a party of volunteers arrived from New Orleans, with minds long inflamed against the Mexican President by reports of the atrocities he had sanctioned. [4]The indignation at his release spread among the Texans; and such a commotion was excited that President Burnet, apprehensive of danger to the domestic tranquillity of Texas, ordered the debarkation of the prisoners, who were escorted for safe keeping to Quintana,* on the side of the Brazos opposite Velasco.

June 1.

3. *Santa Anna's departure delayed. arrival of volunteers*

4. *Santa Anna and suite re-landed.*

36. [5]On the same day President Burnet received an address[a] from the army, requesting that Santa Anna might not be released without the sanction of the Congress. [6]To this address the president returned a long and able remonstrance,[b] in which the views of the government, in subscribing the treaty which provided for Santa Anna's release, were defended; and it was urged, that whether the treaty were wise or not, the good faith of Texas was pledged for its consummation. [7]But still the current of public sentiment ran against the liberation of Santa Anna, and even in the cabinet itself there was a difference of opinion on the subject. [8]General Lamar, the Secretary

5. *Address of the army to President Burnet.*

a. Dated "Camp, at Victoria, May 26."

6. *President Burnet's remonstrance to this address.*

b. Dated June 11.

7. *Public sentiment against Santa Anna's liberation.*

8. *Views of General Lamar on this subject.*

* *Quintana*, a town on the south side of the mouth of the Brazos, opposite Velasco. (See Map, p. 659.)

ANALYSIS.

of War, strongly opposed his liberation; regarding him as an abhorred murderer, who had forfeited his life by the highest of all crimes; and, although he disclaimed resorting to the law of retaliation, he asked that even-handed justice might be meted out to the criminal: his crimes being sanguinary in the extreme, he would read his punishment from the code of Draco.

a. June 9.

1. *Santa Anna detained a prisoner.*

37. [1]Although Santa Anna protested[a] against the violation of faith on the part of the government of Texas, he was detained a prisoner; the final disposal of him being reserved for the government about to be established in conformity with the constitution.

Sept.

2. *Organization of the government under the constitution.*

[2]Early in September the new government was organized, Samuel Houston being elected first constitutional President of the republic, and Mirabeau B. Lamar, Vice President.

3. *The subject of annexation to the United States.*

[3]The people had also been required, in the presidential election, to express their sentiments on the subject of annexation to the United States, the result of which was, that all the votes except ninety-three were given in favor of the measure; and Congress soon after passed an act, empowering the president to appoint a minister to negotiate at Washington for the annexation of Texas to the American Union.

4. *Santa Anna's release.*

38. [4]After much discussion, Santa Anna was ultimately released by an act of the Executive, who desired to send him to Washington, with a view to certain diplomatic arrangements to which the government of the United States was to be a party.

5. *His letter to President Jackson.*

b. (In Aug.)

[5]Santa Anna had previously written[b] to President Jackson, expressing his willingness to fulfil his stipulations with General Houston, and requesting his mediation.

6. *The Mexican congress.*

[6]The Mexican Congress, however, by a decree of the 20th of May, had suspended the presidential authority of Santa Anna while a prisoner, and had given information of the same to the government of the United States.

7. *The general belief with regard to Santa Anna's intentions.*

[7]Yet it was generally believed, owing to the friendly professions of Santa Anna, that should he, on his return to his own country, be restored to power, he would use his authority and influence, either for the acknowledgment of Texas as an independent nation, or as a state of the American Union; and, under this impression, General Houston had acceded to his release, and assumed its responsibility.

Dec. 18.

8. *His arrival at Washington, and return to Mexico.*

1837.

9. *His letter to the Mexican minister of war.*

39. [8]On the 18th of December Santa Anna reached Washington, where he held secret conferences with the Executive, and on the 26th of the same month left the city, being furnished by President Jackson with a ship of war to convey him to Vera Cruz, where he arrived on the 20th of February following. [9]He immediately addressed a letter to the minister of war, wherein he disavowed all

1837.

treaties and stipulations whatever as conditional to his release; declaring that, before consenting either willingly or through force to any conditions that might bring reproach upon the independence or honor of his country, or place in jeopardy the integrity of her territory, he would have suffered a thousand deaths! [1]This disavowal, however, was not effectual in restoring him to the favor of his countrymen, whose want of confidence in him was increased by his duplicity; and he was obliged to go into retirement, until another revolution in his unhappy country enabled him to regain the power he had lost.

1. His retirement from public life.

Bancroft Library

40. [2]The battle of San Jacinto gave peace to Texas, and the rank of an independent state among the nations of the earth. [3]On the 3d of March, 1837, her independence was recognized by the government of the United States, which was followed by a recognition and treaties on the part of France[a] in 1839, and on the part of England[b] in 1840. [4]Mexico, however, still maintained a hostile attitude towards her, and by repeated threats of invasion kept alive the martial spirit of the Texans; but the Mexican government, occupied by internal disturbances, or dangers from abroad, was restrained from renewing any serious attempt upon the liberties of the new republic.

2. Effects of the battle of San Jacinto.

March 3.

3. Recognitions of Texan independence.

1839-40.

a. Sept. 25, 1839.

b. Nov. 16, 1840.

4. The position still maintained by Mexico.

41. [5]All endeavors to establish amicable relations with Mexico were unavailing. A diplomatic agent sent to Vera Cruz for that purpose in 1839, was cautioned against attempting to land; the commandant-general giving him to understand, that should he do so, he would be accommodated with lodgings in the city prison. The commandant farther informed him that "he was not aware of the existence of a nation called the republic of Texas, but only of a horde of adventurers, in rebellion against the laws of the Mexican government." [6]In the following year, however, Mexico so far abated her pretensions as to receive a Texan agent, and permit him to submit the basis of a treaty; but on the restoration of Santa Anna to power in 1841, she again assumed a warlike attitude, declaring to the world, that she would never vary her position, "till she planted her eagle standard on the banks of the Sabine."

5. Attempts of Texas, in 1839, to establish amicable relations with Mexico

6. Mexico abates her pretensions in 1840, but again assumes a warlike attitude, on the restoration of Santa Anna to power in 1841.

1841.

42. [7]Early in 1841, General Lamar, then president of Texas, made preparations for sending to Santa Fe three commissioners, who were authorized to take measures for opening a direct trade with that city, and for establishing the authority of the republic over all the territory east of the Rio Grande. [8]This river was claimed by Texas as her western boundary, and had been virtually admitted as such by Santa Anna himself, in the articles of agreement signed by him and President Burnet soon after the battle

7. Design of the Texan government to send commissioners to Santa Fe.

8. The western boundary of Texas.

ANALYSIS.

1. *Improbability that Santa Fe would quietly surrender to the Texans.*

of San Jacinto. [1]Yet Santa Fe was a rich and commercial city, inhabited almost exclusively by Mexicans, and it was not to be supposed that they would willingly surrender it to the Texan authorities, which were regarded as having no rights to the country in their actual possession.

2. *The question of the policy of this expedition.*

43. [2]Under these circumstances this measure of President Lamar was condemned by many of the Texan journals at the time it was undertaken; and its policy became more doubtful when it was proposed to send a military force of several hundred men as an escort to the commissioners, although the principal object, doubtless, was that of protecting them against the warlike Comanches, across whose hunting grounds it was necessary to travel. It could hardly fail to be suspected by the Mexicans, however, that this military force was designed for coercive measures, if the pacific efforts of negotiation should not prove successful.

June 18.

3. *Departure from Austin, and arrival at Spanish settlements.*

44. [3]On the 18th of June, the expedition, under the command of General Hugh McLeod, accompanied by a number of merchants and private gentlemen, comprising in all about 325 persons, left Austin, the capital of Texas, and after a journey of nearly three months, during which time their provisions failed them, the company arrived in two divisions, and at different times, at Spanish settlements in the valley of Santa Fe.

4. *Their first reception.*

[4]Several persons who were sent forward by the advance party, to explain the pacific objects of the expedition, were seized, and immediately condemned to be shot; but after being bound and taken out for execution, their lives were spared by a Mexican officer, who sent them to meet General Armijo, the governor. Two of the party, however, who attempted to escape, were executed.

5. *Surrender of the whole party.*

Oct 17.

Nov.

[5]In the meantime, several thousand troops were concentrating to intercept the Texans, who were all finally induced to surrender their arms, upon the promise of a safe conduct to the frontier, a supply of food for the march home, and the return, to every man, of his property, after the stipulations had been complied with.

6. *The prisoners bound, and started for the city of Mexico.*

7. *Their cruel treatment during the journey.*

45. [6]After their surrender, the Texans were bound, six or eight together, with ropes, and thongs of raw-hide, and in this condition were marched off for the city of Mexico; about 1200 miles distant. Stripped of their hats, shoes, and coats; beaten, and insulted in almost every possible manner; often fastened by a rope to the pommel of the saddle of the horses on which the guard was mounted; dragged upon the ground; marched at times all night and all day; blinded by sand; parched with thirst; and famishing with hunger;—in this manner these unfortunate

men were hurried on to the city of Mexico, which they reached towards the close of December. **1841.**

46. [1]When they arrived at Mexico, they were chained with heavy iron by order of Santa Anna; confined for a while in filthy prisons; and afterwards condemned to labor as common scavengers in the streets of the city. [2]After the lapse of several weeks, one division of the captives was sent to the city of Puebla, and compelled to work in stone quarries, with heavy chains attached to their limbs, and under the supervision of brutal task-masters, some of whom were convicted criminals. [3]Another detachment, including General McLeod and most of the officers of the expedition, was remanded to the castle of Perote, where all, without distinction, were condemned to hard labor, still loaded with chains.

1. Their treatment after their arrival at Mexico.

2. One division sent to Puebla.

3. Another to the castle of Perote.

47. [4]Of the whole company, three were murdered in cold blood on their way to the capital, because they had become wearied; several died there of ill treatment, and disease incurred by exposure and hardships; a few escaped from prison, some were pardoned by the government, and most of the others have since been released.* [5]The treatment of the Santa Fe captives, who became prisoners only through the violated faith of the Mexicans, is but one of numerous examples of the cruel and barbarous policy of the Mexican government during the entire administration of Santa Anna.

4. Subsequent fate of these unfortunate men.

5. The barbarous policy of the Mexican government.

48. [6]Soon after the result of the Santa Fe expedition was known, rumors became more frequent than ever, that Mexico was making active preparations, on a most extensive scale, for a second invasion of Texas; and the well known hostile policy of Santa Anna, who had recently been restored to power, rendered it probable that all the available force of Mexico would be brought in requisition for the recovery of the lost province.

6. Rumors of a Mexican invasion of Texas

49. [7]Early in 1842, intelligence of the assembling of troops west of the Rio Grande produced great excitement throughout Texas. The inhabitants of the frontier towns hastily removed their effects to more secure situations; and even the garrison of San Antonio de Bexar evacuated the place, and retreated to the banks of the Guadalupe. [8]But after all the notes of preparation that had been constantly sounding since the battle of San Jacinto, and notwithstanding the boasting declarations of Santa Anna himself, the invading army, instead of being an advanced

1842.

7. Excitement occasioned—evacuation of Bexar, &c.

8. The result of this long-threatened invasion.

* A highly interesting "Narrative of the Texan Santa Fé Expedition" has been written by Geo. W. Kendall, one of the editors of the New Orleans Picayune, who accompanied the Expedition, and was conveyed a prisoner to Mexico.

ANALYSIS.

corps of twelve or fifteen thousand regular troops, proved to be only a few poorly equipped marauding parties, numbering in all six or eight hundred men, which, after gathering up a large quantity of spoil left behind by the fugitive inhabitants, and plundering[a] San Antonio, hastily retreated, before a Texan force could be brought against them.

a. March 6.

1. *Surrender of Bexar to the Mexicans in September.*

50. [1]In the September following, a Mexican force of about 1200 men, under the command of General Woll, approached Bexar, and after a slight resistance from a small party of Texans, the town was surrendered by capitulation.[b] [2]A few days later, a party of little more than 200 Texans, that had assembled in the Salado bottom, five miles east from Bexar, was attacked by General Woll, but the Mexicans were obliged to withdraw with considerable loss. [3]About fifty Texans, however, coming to the relief of their countrymen, were attacked in an open prairie by a large portion of the Mexican force, and having nothing but small arms with which to defend themselves against a Mexican field-piece, were compelled to surrender. A sanguinary butchery followed, and before it was arrested by the Mexican officers more than half of the prisoners had fallen. [4]These events were soon followed by a hasty retreat of the Mexicans to the west side of the Rio Grande, rapidly pursued by several parties of Texan volunteers.

b. Sept. 11.

2. *Engagement east of Bexar.*

3. *Capture of a party of Texans, and subsequent massacre.*

4. *Retreat of the enemy.*

5. *Preparations for carrying the war west of the Rio Grande.*

51. [5]A general determination to chastise the Mexicans by carrying the war west of the Rio Grande now prevailed throughout Texas, and numerous small volunteer companies were raised for that purpose, but no efficient measures were taken by the government, nor was any regular invasion intended. [6]Early in November about 700 volunteers assembled at Bexar, and were placed under the command of General Somerville, but the return of several companies soon after, reduced this number to 500 men. [7]On the 8th of December this party entered Laredo without resistance, a Mexican town on the east bank of the Rio Grande, and a few days later crossed the river lower down, but soon after, by the orders of their general, and to the great dissatisfaction of most of the troops, recrossed to the Texan side.

Nov

6. *Assembling of volunteers at Bexar.*

Dec. 8.

7. *The Texans on the Rio Grande.*

8. *Return of part of the volunteers, and designs of the remainder.*

9. *Approach to Mier, and arrival of Ampudia.*

52. [8]It appears that no plan of operations had been decided upon, and here the commander and 200 of the troops withdrew and returned to their homes, while 300 men remained, chose a leader from their own party, and declared their determination to seek the enemy. [9]On the 22d of December, a part of this small force crossed the Rio

Grande near the town of Mier,* to which a deputation was sent, demanding provisions and other supplies. These were promised, but before they were forwarded to the Texan camp, a large Mexican force, commanded by Generals Ampudia and Canales, had arrived and taken possession of the town. **1842.**

53. [1]An attack upon Mier was now determined upon, and on the 25th all the troops crossed the Rio Grande for that purpose, and in the evening commenced their march towards the place. [2]The night was dark and rainy, and the Mexican force, more than 2000 strong, was advantageously posted, awaiting the attack. [3]The Mexican picket-guards were driven in, and the little band of intrepid adventurers, forcing its way by slow degrees against a constant fire from the enemy, in spite of repeated attacks, succeeded in effecting a lodgment in a number of stone buildings in the suburbs of the town.

1. An attack upon Mier determined upon.

2. The Mexican force.

3. A lodgment effected in the suburbs.

54. [4]At early dawn the fight was renewed, with increased desperation on the part of the Texans. Several times the Mexican artillery nearest them was cleared, and at length deserted, when the enemy had recourse to the house-tops. These again were cleared, but the overpowering numbers of the enemy enabled them to continue the fight, although column after column, urged on to the attack by their officers, fell by the deadly discharge of the American rifle.

4. Renewal of the fight on the following morning.

55. [5]The action was continued until Ampudia sent a white flag proposing terms of capitulation, accompanied by several Mexican officers, among them General La Vega, to enforce upon the Texans the utter hopelessness of effective resistance, as Ampudia stated that he had 1700 *regular* troops under his command, and that an additional force of 800 was approaching from Monterey. [6]With great reluctance the little band at length surrendered, and marching into the public square, laid down their arms before an enemy ten times their number. [7]In this desperate battle, the loss of the Texans, in killed and wounded, was thirty-five; that of the Mexicans, according to their own statement, was more than five hundred.

5. Terms of capitulation proposed by Ampudia.

6. Surrender of the Texans.

7. The losses of each party.

56. [8]The Texans, although expecting, in accordance with assurances given them, to be detained on the east side of the mountains until exchanged as prisoners of war, were now strongly guarded, and in a few days obliged to commence their march, of nearly a thousand miles, to the city of Mexico. [9]On one occasion, two hundred and four-

8. The prisoners commence their march for the Mexican capital. Dec. 31.

9. Escape of the prisoners, and subsequent surrender.

* *Mier* (pronounced Mear) is on the south side of a small stream called the Rio del Alamo, or Rio Alcantara, a short distance above its entrance into the Rio Grande. (See Map, p. 620.)

ANALYSIS.

teen of the prisoners, although unarmed, rose upon their guard of 300 armed men, killed several, and dispersing the remainder, commenced their journey homewards, but after suffering greatly from hunger and fatigue—many having died, and the rest being ignorant of the way and destitute of ammunition, they were compelled to surrender to a party in pursuit.

1. The punishment.

57. [1]For this attempt at escape, every tenth man among the prisoners was shot by orders of the Mexican government.

2. Subsequent history of the remainder.

[2]The remainder were marched to Mexico, and thence to the castle of Perote, where they were subjected to close confinement. A few escaped, in different ways; about thirty died of cruel treatment; and most of the remainder, after a year's imprisonment, were released through the generous influence of the foreign representatives at the Mexican capital.

3. Remarks.

[3]Such was the result of the Mier expedition—foolishly undertaken, but exhibiting, throughout, the same desperate bravery that has characterized the Texans in all their contests with superior Mexican forces.

4. Desire of the Texans for admission into the American Union.

58. [4]The time had now arrived when the long-cherished hopes of a majority of the Texan people for admission into the American Union were to be realized.

5. The first expression of this wish on their part.

[5]That wish had not been expressed until the constitution of 1824 was overthrown, and the federal compact violated; nor until it had become evident that the Mexican people would make no serious efforts to regain their liberties, of which the despotism of military power had deprived them.

6. Fidelity of Texas to her engagements with Mexico.

[6]Faithful to her engagements until their binding obligation was destroyed against her wishes, and in spite of her efforts to fulfil them, Texas adhered to Mexico even longer than Mexico was true to herself; when she was obliged to throw herself upon the only reserved right that was left her,—the right of revolution—the last right to which oppressed nations resort.

7. The result of the Texan Revolution.

[7]In the brief struggle that followed, victory crowned her efforts—independence was secured and maintained, and other governments acknowledged her claims to be admitted into the family of nations.

8. Avowed design of Texas in asking the United States to recognize her independence.

59. [8]When Texas, soon after the battle of San Jacinto, asked the United States to recognize her independence, it was with the avowed design of treating immediately for the transfer of her territory to the American Union.

9 The opinions of President Jackson on this subject.

[9]The opinions of President Jackson on this subject, as expressed by message to congress, were, that a too early recognition of Texan independence would be unwise, 'as it might subject the United States, however unjustly, to the imputation of seeking to establish the claim of her neighbors to a territory, with a view to its subsequent acquisition by

herself.' [1]He therefore advised that no steps towards recognition should be taken 'until the lapse of time, or the course of events should have proved, beyond cavil or dispute, the ability of the Texan people to maintain their separate sovereignty, and the government constituted by them.' [2]Seemingly opposed to his own views of policy, however, on the last day[a] of his administration, he signed the resolution of congress, for the acknowledgment of Texan independence.

1842.

1. *His advice.*

2. *He signs the resolution of congress, acknowledging the independence of Texas.*

a. March 3, 1837.

60. [3]In August following, General Hunt, the Texan envoy at Washington, addressed[b] a communication to Mr. Forsyth, the American minister, in which he urged at great length the proposition for the annexation of Texas to the American Union. [4]In reply, Mr. Forsyth communicated[c] the decision of President Van Buren, as averse to entertaining the proposition; and among the reasons stated were, "treaty obligations" to Mexico, and "respect for that integrity of character by which the United States had sought to distinguish themselves since the establishment of their right to claim a place in the great family of nations."

3. *General Hunt's communication.*

b. Aug. 4, 1837.

4. *The reply of Mr. Forsyth.*

c. Aug. 25, 1837.

61. [5]The proposed annexation of Texas had caused much excitement in the United States; the manufacturing interests, and the anti-slavery party opposed it; the legislatures of New York, Vermont, Massachusetts, and Ohio called upon Congress to reject the proposition; the opponents of the measure discovering in it an extension of Southern and anti-tariff influence, detrimental to the Northern and middle sections of the Union. [6]The violent spirit which characterized this opposition, and the vituperative terms too frequently applied to the people of Texas, greatly abated their desire for the contemplated union; and in April, 1838, a resolution was introduced[d] into the Texan Congress, withdrawing the proposition. The resolution was approved by the House of Representatives, but was lost in the Senate, although by only one vote. [7]When, however, it was ascertained that foreign nations would not recognize the independence of Texas while she continued to request annexation to the United States, the proposition was formally withdrawn by President Houston, and the measure was approved[e] by the Texan Congress, under the presidency of General Lamar, in January, 1839.

5. *Excitement caused in the United States, and opposition to annexation.*

6. *Effects produced in Texas by this opposition.*

d. April 23, 1838.

7. *Formal withdrawal of the proposition of annexation.*

e. Jan. 23 1839.

62. [8]President Lamar, who entered on the duties of his office in December, 1838, took strong grounds against annexation; declaring, in his first message to Congress, that he "had never been able to perceive the policy of the desired connexion, or discover in it any advantage, either civil, political, or commercial, which could posssibly re-

8. *Views of President Lamar on this subject.*

ANALYSIS.

1. *Increase of public opinion in favor of annexation.*

2. *Arguments for and against the measure.*

sult to Texas." [1]The great majority of the citizens of Texas, however, were still favorable to annexation, and during the succeeding presidency of General Houston, from December 1841, to December 1844, the measure gained additional favor with them, and was the great political topic in the American Congress, and throughout the nation. [2]The arguments for and against the measure took a wide range, being based on constitutional, political, and moral grounds, and were urged with all the zeal characteristic of party politics; but no benefit would result from a repetition of them here.

1845.

3. *The final action of the American Congress, and of Texas, on this subject.*

4. *Constitution, state government, &c.*

63. [3]The final action of the Congress of the United States on the subject took place on the 28th of February, 1845, when the joint resolution of the two houses in favor of the proposed annexation passed the Senate. On the 1st of March they received the signature of the president, and on the 4th of July following a constitutional convention, assembled at Austin, the capital of Texas, assented to the terms proposed by the government of the United States. [4]The convention then proceeded to the formation of a state constitution, which was soon followed by the organization of the state government; and in the winter following the senators of the *State of Texas* took their seats, for the first time, in the national council of the American Union.

5. *The subsequent history of Texas, and her early annals.*

6. *Acquisitions of territory.*

64. [5]Henceforth the history of Texas is merged in that of the republic of which she has become a part, while the new relations thus created give to her early annals an additional interest and importance in the eyes of the American people. [6]Time only can decide whether any acquisitions to our already widely extended territory are to prove salutary or detrimental to our national interests; but while we would deprecate the incorporation with us of a conquered people, estranged from our citizens in customs, language, laws, and religion, we have certainly much *less* to fear from an extension of territory gained, as in the case of Texas, by a re-admission, into our political fold, of our own brethren and countrymen

1798
25

6# 8413861H